This International Student Edition is for use outside of the U.S.

Eleventh Edition

Essentials of Athletic Injury Management

Mc Graw Hill Education

William Prentice

Essentials of

ATHLETIC INJURY MANAGEMENT

This page intentionally left blank

Essentials of

ATHLETIC INJURY MANAGEMENT

ELEVENTH EDITION

William E. Prentice, PhD, ATC, PT, FNATA

Professor, Coordinator of the Sports Medicine Specialization,
Department of Exercise and Sports Science
The University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill
Chapel Hill, North Carolina

Mc Graw Hill Education

ESSENTIALS OF ATHLETIC INJURY MANAGEMENT

Published by McGraw-Hill Education, 2 Penn Plaza, New York, NY 10121. Copyright ©2020 by McGraw-Hill Education. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. No part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written consent of McGraw-Hill Education, including, but not limited to, in any network or other electronic storage or transmission, or broadcast for distance learning.

Some ancillaries, including electronic and print components, may not be available to customers outside the United States.

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 LWI 21 20 19

ISBN 978-1-260-54803-7
MHID 1-260-54803-1

Cover Image: ©*William E. Prentice*

All credits appearing on page or at the end of the book are considered to be an extension of the copyright page.

The Internet addresses listed in the text were accurate at the time of publication. The inclusion of a website does not indicate an endorsement by the authors or McGraw-Hill Education, and McGraw-Hill Education does not guarantee the accuracy of the information presented at these sites.

mheducation.com/highered

Brief Contents

PART I

Organizing and Establishing an Effective Athletic Health Care System 1

1 Fitness Professionals, Coaches, and the Sports Medicine Team: Defining Roles 2
2 Organizing and Administering an Athletic Health Care Program 16
3 Legal Liability and Insurance 32

PART II

Preventing Injuries in an Athletic Health Care System 43

4 Preventing Injuries Through Fitness Training 44
5 Sports Nutrition and Supplements 83
6 Selecting and Using Protective Sports Equipment 105
7 Understanding the Potential Dangers of Adverse Environmental Conditions 127

PART III

Techniques for Treating and Managing Sport-Related Injuries 141

8 Handling Emergency Situations and Injury Assessment 142
9 Bloodborne Pathogens, Universal Precautions, and Wound Care 163
10 Wrapping and Taping Techniques 175
11 Understanding the Basics of Injury Rehabilitation 192
12 Helping the Injured Athlete Psychologically 202

PART IV

Recognition and Management of Specific Injuries and Conditions 211

13 Recognizing Different Sports Injuries 212
14 The Foot and Toes 226
15 The Ankle and Lower Leg 241
16 The Knee and Related Structures 258
17 The Thigh, Hip, Groin, and Pelvis 277
18 The Shoulder Complex 292
19 The Elbow, Forearm, Wrist, and Hand 306
20 The Spine 325
21 The Thorax and Abdomen 341
22 The Head, Face, Eyes, Ears, Nose, and Throat 354
23 General Medical Conditions and Additional Health Concerns 374
24 Substance Abuse 395
25 Preventing and Managing Injuries in Young Athletes 403

Appendixes

Appendix A: Employment Settings for the Athletic Trainer 417
Appendix B: Requirements for Certification as an Athletic Trainer 420
Appendix C: Directional Movements for Body Joints 422

Glossary 430
Index 434

Mc Graw Hill Education
5011333

Contents

Preface xi

Applications at a Glance xvii

PART I

Organizing and Establishing an Effective Athletic Health Care System 1

Chapter 1 Fitness Professionals, Coaches, and the Sports Medicine Team: Defining Roles 2
- What Is Sports Medicine? 3
- Athletic Health Care in Organized Versus Recreational Sports Activities 3
- The Players on the Sports Medicine Team 4
- Summary 13
- Websites 15

Chapter 2 Organizing and Administering an Athletic Health Care Program 16
- Establishing Rules of Operation for an Athletic Health Care Program 16
- Developing a Risk Management Plan 19
- Record Keeping 20
- Developing a Budget 26
- Considerations in Planning an Athletic Health Care Facility 27
- Summary 30

Chapter 3 Legal Liability and Insurance 32
- Legal Concerns 32
- Product Liability 36
- What Types of Insurance Are Necessary to Protect the Athlete? 36
- Reimbursement 38
- Insurance Billing 39
- Insurance to Protect the Professional 39
- Summary 40
- Websites 41

PART II

Preventing Injuries in an Athletic Health Care System 43

Chapter 4 Preventing Injuries Through Fitness Training 44
- Conditioning Seasons and Periodization 44
- Foundations of Conditioning 46
- Warm-Up and Cool-Down 46
- Why Is It Important to Have Good Flexibility? 47
- Why Are Muscular Strength, Endurance, and Power Important for Athletes? 55
- What Physiological Changes Occur to Cause Increased Strength? 57
- Core Stabilization Training 57
- What Are the Techniques of Resistance Training? 59
- Strength-Training Considerations for Female Athletes 74
- Why Is Cardiorespiratory Fitness Important for an Athlete? 75
- What Determines How Efficiently the Body Is Using Oxygen? 76
- What Training Techniques Can Improve Cardiorespiratory Endurance? 77
- Summary 80
- Websites 82

Chapter 5 Sports Nutrition and Supplements 83
- The Nutrients 83
- The Production of Energy from Foodstuffs 89
- What Is a Nutritious Diet? 90
- Dietary Supplements 91
- Popular Eating and Drinking Practices 94

Weight Control and Body Composition 98
Disordered Eating 100
Summary 102
Websites 104

Chapter 6 Selecting and Using Protective Sports Equipment 105
Safety Standards for Sports Equipment and Facilities 105
Legal Concerns in Using Protective Equipment 106
Using Off-the-Shelf Versus Custom Protective Equipment 107
Head Protection 107
Face Protection 111
Trunk and Thorax Protection 114
Lower-Extremity Protective Equipment 118
Elbow, Wrist, and Hand Protection 123
Summary 124
Websites 126

Chapter 7 Understanding the Potential Dangers of Adverse Environmental Conditions 127
Hyperthermia 127
Hypothermia 134
Overexposure to Sun 135
Safety in Lightning and Thunderstorms 136
Summary 137
Websites 139

PART III

Techniques for Treating and Managing Sport-Related Injuries 141

Chapter 8 Handling Emergency Situations and Injury Assessment 142
The Emergency Action Plan 142
Principles of On-the-Field Injury Assessment 145
Primary Survey 145
Conducting a Secondary Assessment 150
Off-Field Assessment 152
Immediate Treatment Following Acute Musculoskeletal Injury 153
Emergency Splinting 154
Moving and Transporting the Injured Athlete 155
Summary 160
Websites 162

Chapter 9 Bloodborne Pathogens, Universal Precautions, and Wound Care 163
What Are Bloodborne Pathogens? 163
Dealing with Bloodborne Pathogens in Athletics 166
Universal Precautions in an Athletic Environment 167
Caring for Skin Wounds 170
Summary 173
Websites 174

Chapter 10 Wrapping and Taping Techniques 175
Elastic Wraps 176
Nonelastic and Elastic Adhesive Taping 180
Common Taping Techniques 183
Kinesio Taping 189
Summary 190
Websites 191

Chapter 11 Understanding the Basics of Injury Rehabilitation 192
Therapeutic Exercise Versus Conditioning Exercise 192
Philosophy of Athletic Injury Rehabilitation 192
Basic Components and Goals of a Rehabilitation Program 193
Using Therapeutic Modalities 198
Criteria for Return to Play 199
Summary 200
Websites 201

Chapter 12 Helping the Injured Athlete Psychologically 202
The Athlete's Psychological Response to Injury 202

Predictors of Injury 203
Goal Setting as a Motivator to Compliance 205
Providing Social Support to the Injured Athlete 205
Return to Competition Decisions 208
Referring the Athlete for Psychological Help 208
Summary 209
Websites 210

PART IV

Recognition and Management of Specific Injuries and Conditions 211

Chapter 13 Recognizing Different Sports Injuries 212
Acute (Traumatic) Injuries 212
Chronic Overuse Injuries 219
The Importance of the Healing Process Following Injury 222
Summary 223
Websites 225

Chapter 14 The Foot and Toes 226
Foot Anatomy 226
Prevention of Foot Injuries 228
Foot Assessment 229
Recognition and Management of Foot Injuries 230
Summary 239
Websites 240

Chapter 15 The Ankle and Lower Leg 241
Ankle and Lower-Leg Anatomy 241
Prevention of Lower-Leg and Ankle Injuries 243
Assessing the Ankle Joint 245
Recognition and Management of Injuries to the Ankle 246
Assessing the Lower Leg 251
Recognition and Management of Injuries to the Lower Leg 251
Summary 255
Websites 257

Chapter 16 The Knee and Related Structures 258
Knee Anatomy 258
Prevention of Knee Injuries 261
Assessing the Knee Joint 262
Recognition and Management of Injuries to the Knee 265
Recognition and Management of Injuries and Conditions Classified as Patellofemoral Pain Syndrome 272
Summary 275
Websites 276

Chapter 17 The Thigh, Hip, Groin, and Pelvis 277
Anatomy of the Thigh, Hip, Groin, and Pelvic Region 277
Assessing Thigh, Hip, Groin, and Pelvis Injuries 278
Prevention of Injuries to the Thigh, Hip, Groin, and Pelvic Region 281
Recognition and Management of Injuries to the Thigh 281
Recognition and Management of Hip and Groin Injuries 284
Recognition and Management of Injuries to the Pelvis 288
Summary 290
Websites 291

Chapter 18 The Shoulder Complex 292
Anatomy of the Shoulder 292
Prevention of Shoulder Injuries 294
Assessing the Shoulder Complex 296
Recognition and Management of Shoulder Injuries 298
Summary 304
Websites 305

Chapter 19 The Elbow, Forearm, Wrist, and Hand 306
Anatomy of the Elbow Joint 306
Assessing Elbow Injuries 306
Prevention of Elbow, Forearm, and Wrist Injuries 308
Recognition and Management of Injuries to the Elbow 309

Anatomy of the Forearm 312
Assessing Forearm Injuries 313
Recognition and Management of Injuries to the Forearm 314
Anatomy of the Wrist, Hand, and Fingers 315
Assessment of the Wrist, Hand, and Fingers 316
Recognition and Management of Wrist and Hand Injuries 316
Recognition and Management of Finger Injuries 320
Summary 323
Websites 324

Chapter 20 The Spine 325
Anatomy of the Spine 325
Preventing Injuries to the Spine 329
Assessment of the Spine 331
Recognition and Management of Cervical Spine Injuries and Conditions 333
Recognition and Management of Lumbar Spine Injuries and Conditions 335
Recognition and Management of Sacroiliac Joint and Coccyx Injuries 338
Summary 339
Websites 340

Chapter 21 The Thorax and Abdomen 341
Anatomy of the Thorax 341
Anatomy of the Abdomen 342
Preventing Injuries to the Thorax and Abdomen 343
Assessment of the Thorax and Abdomen 343
Recognition and Management of Thoracic Injuries 345
Recognition and Management of Abdominal Injuries 348
Summary 352
Websites 353

Chapter 22 The Head, Face, Eyes, Ears, Nose, and Throat 354
Preventing Injuries to the Head, Face, Eyes, Ears, Nose, and Throat 354
Anatomy of the Head 354
Assessing Head Injuries 355
Recognition and Management of Specific Head Injuries 357
Anatomy of the Face 362
Recognition and Management of Specific Facial Injuries 362
Dental Anatomy 363
Preventing Dental Injuries 363
Recognition and Management of Specific Dental Injuries 364
Anatomy of the Nose 365
Recognition and Management of Specific Nasal Injuries 365
Anatomy of the Ear 366
Recognition and Management of Specific Injuries to the Ear 366
Anatomy of the Eye 368
Recognition and Management of Specific Eye Injuries 369
Recognition and Management of Injuries to the Throat 371
Summary 371
Websites 373

Chapter 23 General Medical Conditions and Additional Health Concerns 374
Skin Infections 374
Respiratory Conditions 378
Gastrointestinal Disorders 382
Other Conditions that can Affect the Athlete 383
Cancer 387
Menstrual Irregularities and the Female Reproductive System 388
Sexually Transmitted Diseases (STDs) 390
Summary 392
Websites 394

Chapter 24 Substance Abuse 395
Performance-Enhancing Drugs 395
Recreational Drug Abuse 399
Drug-Testing Programs 400
Summary 401
Websites 402

Chapter 25 Preventing and Managing Injuries in Young Athletes 403
Cultural Trends 403
Physical Maturity Assessment in Matching Athletes 405

Physical Conditioning and Training 406
Psychological and Learning Concerns 407
Coaching Qualifications 408
Common Injuries in the Young Athlete 409
Sports Injury Prevention 410
Summary 413
Websites 416

Appendixes

Appendix A Employment Settings for the Athletic Trainer 417
Appendix B Requirements for Certification as an Athletic Trainer 420
Appendix C Directional Movements for Body Joints 422

Glossary 430
Index 434

Preface

WHO SHOULD USE THIS TEXT?

The eleventh edition of *Essentials of Athletic Injury Management* is written for those students interested in the fitness profession, kinesiology, coaching, or some aspect of sport science or physical education. The majority of students who take courses about the prevention and management of injuries that typically occur in an athletic population have little or no intention of pursuing athletic training as a career. However, it is also true that a large percentage of those students who are taking these courses are doing so because they intend to pursue careers in coaching, fitness, physical education, or other areas related to exercise and sports science. For these individuals, some knowledge and understanding of the many aspects of health care for both recreational and competitive athletes is essential for them to effectively perform the associated responsibilities of their job.

Other students who are personally involved in fitness, or training and conditioning, may be interested in taking a course that will provide them with guidelines and recommendations for preventing injuries, recognizing injuries, and learning how to correctly manage a specific injury. Thus, *Essentials of Athletic Injury Management* has been designed to provide basic information on a variety of topics, all of which relate in one way or another to health care for the athlete.

Essentials of Athletic Injury Management was created from the foundations established by another well-recognized textbook, *Principles of Athletic Training,* currently in its sixteenth edition. Whereas *Principles of Athletic Training* serves as a major text for professional athletic trainers and those individuals interested in sports medicine, ***Essentials of Athletic Injury Management* is written at a level more appropriate for the coach, fitness professional, and physical educator. It provides guidance, suggestions, and recommendations for handling athletic health care situations when an athletic trainer or physician is not available.**

ORGANIZATION AND COVERAGE

The eleventh edition of *Essentials of Athletic Injury Management* provides the reader with the most current information on the subject of prevention and basic care of sports injuries. The general philosophy of the text is that adverse effects of physical activity arising from participation in sport should be prevented to the greatest extent possible. However, the nature of participation in physical activity dictates that sooner or later injury may occur. In these situations, providing immediate and correct care can minimize the seriousness of an injury.

Overall, this text is designed to take the beginning student from general to specific concepts. Each chapter focuses on promoting an understanding of the prevention and care of athletic injuries.

Essentials of Athletic Injury Management is divided into four parts: *Organizing and Establishing an Effective Athletic Health Care System, Preventing Injuries in an Athletic Health Care System, Techniques for Treating and Managing Sport-Related Injuries,* and *Recognition and Management of Specific Injuries and Conditions.*

Part I, *Organizing and Establishing an Effective Athletic Health Care System,* begins in Chapter 1 with a discussion of the roles and responsibilities of all the individuals on the "sports medicine team" who in some way affect the delivery of health care to the athlete. Chapter 2 provides guidelines and recommendations for setting up a system for providing athletic health care in situations where an athletic trainer is not available to oversee that process. In today's society, and in particular for anyone who is remotely involved with providing athletic heath care, the issue of legal responsibility and, perhaps more importantly, legal liability is of utmost concern. Chapter 3 discusses ways to minimize the chances of litigation and also to make certain that both the athlete and anyone who is in any way involved in providing athletic health care are protected by appropriate insurance coverage.

Part II, *Preventing Injuries in an Athletic Health Care System*, discusses a variety of topics that both individually and collectively can reduce the chances for injury to occur. Chapter 4 emphasizes the importance of making certain that the athlete is fit to prevent injuries. Chapter 5 discusses the importance of a healthy diet, giving attention to sound nutritional practices and providing sound advice on the use of dietary supplements. Chapter 6 provides guidelines for selecting and using protective equipment. Chapter 7 looks at

ways to minimize the potentially negative threats of various environmental conditions on the health of the athlete.

Part III, *Techniques for Treating and Managing Sport-Related Injuries*, begins with Chapter 8, which details how to assess the severity of an injury and then provides specific steps that should be taken to handle emergency situations. Chapter 9 provides guidelines that can help reduce the chances of spreading infectious diseases by taking universal precautions in dealing with bloodborne pathogens. Chapter 10 discusses the more common wrapping and taping techniques that can be used to potentially prevent new injuries from occurring and old ones from becoming worse. Chapter 11 includes a brief discussion of the general techniques that may be used in rehabilitation following injury. Chapter 12 discusses the psychology of preparing to compete and proposes recommendations for how a coach should manage an injury.

Part IV, *Recognition and Management of Specific Injuries and Conditions*, begins with Chapter 13, which defines and classifies the various types of injuries that are most commonly seen in the physically active population.

Chapters 14 through 22 discuss injuries that occur in specific regions of the body, including the foot; the ankle and lower leg; the knee; the hip, thigh, groin, and pelvis; the shoulder; the elbow, forearm, wrist, and hand; the spine; the thorax and abdomen; and the head, face, eyes, ears, nose, and throat. Injuries are discussed individually in terms of their most common causes, the signs of injury you would expect to see, and a basic plan of care for that injury. Chapter 23 provides guidelines and suggestions for managing various illnesses and other health conditions that may affect athletes and their ability to play and compete. Chapter 24 focuses specifically on issues related to substance abuse and the potential effects on the athlete. Chapter 25 provides special considerations for injuries that may occur in young athletes.

NEW TO THIS EDITION

Chapter Changes and Additions

Numerous changes and clarifications have been made in content throughout the entire text.

Chapter 1

- Reorganized and updated the roles and responsibilities of athletic trainers according to the latest BOC Practice Analysis.
- Added the role of the physiatrist in caring for the injured athlete.
- Significantly updated the recommended references and the annotated bibliography to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 2

- Added new information on developing a risk management plan.
- Added revised athletic injury record form.
- Significantly updated the recommended references and the annotated bibliography to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 3

- Reorganized and clarified the information on legal liabilities.
- Updated information on insurance.
- Added a new sample insurance information form.
- Updated the recommended references to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 4

- Updated information on and recommendations for the warm-up and cool-down.
- Calisthenic exercises are now referred to more correctly as bodyweight exercises.
- Updated information on calculating a target heart rate for improving cardiorespiratory endurance.
- Significantly updated the recommended references and the annotated bibliography to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 5

- Updated recommendations for percent of calorie intake of carbohydrates, fat, and protein.
- Updated most current information on MyPlate.
- Added new information on food labels.
- Added green tea to most widely used herbs list.

- Added new information on gluten-free diets.
- Updated information on eating organic, natural, and health foods.
- Updated information on glycogen supercompensation.
- Significantly updated the recommended references and the websites to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 6

- Updated list of equipment regulatory agencies.
- Updated information regarding the use of mouth guards.
- Added most recent information about cleated shoes.
- Significantly updated the recommended references to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 7

- Updated information on exercise-associated muscle (heat) cramps.
- Updated Table 7–2 comparing heat disorders.
- Updated the management techniques for treating heat stroke.
- Updated information on lightning safety.
- Added chilblain as a cold disorder.
- Exertional hyponatremia is no longer classified as a heat illness.
- Significantly updated the recommended references to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 8

- Added new recommendation that a "time out" should be used to make certain that all involved with health care are prepared to handle an emergency.
- Updated information on care and management of the unconscious athlete.
- Reordered the life-threatening injuries in the emergency procedures flowchart.
- Made slight adjustments in the CPR Summary table to clarify the procedures.
- Changed the acronym PRICE to POLICE, emphasizing the importance of optimal loading in immediate injury management.
- Updated information on the efficacy of using ice and compression in immediate injury care.
- Updated information on managing care for an athlete with suspected cervical spine injury.
- Updated information on placing the athlete on a spine board.
- Added the most current recommendations from an inter-association task force to consider removing the helmet and shoulder pads by trained personnel prior to transporting an athlete with a suspected cervical spine injury.
- Updated information on the techniques for transporting an athlete with a suspected cervical spine injury from the field to the hospital.
- Significantly updated the recommended references and annotated bibliography to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 9

- Updated statistics on numbers of patients infected by various bloodborne pathogens
- Replaced photos showing various skin wounds.
- Updated Focus Box 9–4 on suggested practices in caring for skin wounds.
- Update Table 9–2 on wound care.
- Significantly updated the recommended references and annotated bibliography to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 10

- Added a new photo of a kinesio taping technique.

Chapter 11

- Reemphasized the discussion that clarifies the purpose of this chapter and gives a caution about who is legally able to suggest or supervise a program of rehabilitation for an injured athlete.

Chapter 12

- Updated information on psychological disorders.

Chapter 13

- Updated information on tendinopathy, tendinitis, and tendinosis.

- Updated information on the cause of muscle cramps.
- Significantly updated the recommended references to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 14

- Significantly updated the recommended references and annotated bibliography to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 15

- Clarified the difference between Achilles tendinitis and Achilles tendinosis.
- Significantly updated the recommended references and annotated bibliography to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 16

- Added new information that clarifies the mechanisms of injury for both noncontact and contact ACL injuries.
- Significantly updated the recommended references and annotated bibliography to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 17

- Added new X-ray photos for Legg-Calve-Perthes disease.
- Significantly updated the recommended references and annotated bibliography to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 18

- Significantly updated the recommended references and websites to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 19

- Added a new photo for a subungual hematoma in the finger.
- Significantly updated the recommended references and annotated bibliography to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 20

- Significantly updated the recommended references and annotated bibliography to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 21

- Significantly updated the recommended references and annotated bibliography to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 22

- Updated information on nasal fractures.
- Updated information on nasal and septal hematomas.
- Updated new photo on tooth fractures.
- Updated and added new information about evaluating concussions that currently uses the SCAT5 as the most accepted evaluation tool.
- Updated causes of tympanic membrane rupture.
- Significantly updated the recommended references and annotated bibliography to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 23

- Updated information on requirements for certification.
- Added new information of treating a sore throat.
- Updated information on signs of indigestion.
- Updated information on diabetes.
- Updated information on exercise during pregnancy.
- Significantly updated the recommended references and annotated bibliography to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 24

- Added new information on heroin use.
- Significantly updated the recommended references, annotated bibliography, and websites to make them as current as possible.

Chapter 25

- Updated Youth Sports Safety Alliance statistics on injuries in youth sports.
- Updated information on early specialization in a single sport and the long-term outcomes of that choice.
- Significantly updated the recommended references, annotated bibliography, and websites to make them as current as possible.

Appendix A

- Updated the information on employment of certified athletic trainers in secondary schools.
- Updated information on requirements for certification.

PEDAGOGICAL FEATURES

- *Chapter objectives.* Objectives are presented at the beginning of each chapter to reinforce learning goals.
- *Focus Boxes.* Important information is highlighted to provide additional content that supplements the main text.
- *Margin information.* Key concepts, selected definitions and pronunciation guides, helpful training tips, and illustrations are placed in margins throughout the text for added emphasis and ease of reading and studying.
- *Illustrations and photographs.* Every illustration and photograph throughout the book is in full color, with over 40 new photographs that will help to enhance the visual learning experience for the student.
- *Critical thinking exercises.* Included in every chapter, these brief case studies correspond with the accompanying text and help students apply the content just learned. Solutions for each exercise are located at the end of the chapters.
- *Athletic injury management checklists.* These checklists help organize the details of a specific procedure when managing athletic health care.
- *Chapter summaries.* Chapter content is summarized and bulleted to reinforce key concepts and aid in test preparation.
- *Review questions and class activities.* A list of questions and suggested class activities follows each chapter for review and application of the concepts learned.
- *Recommended references.* All chapters have a bibliography of pertinent references that includes the most complete and up-to-date resources available.
- *Annotated bibliography.* To further aid in learning, relevant and timely articles, books, and topics from the current literature have been annotated to provide additional resources.
- *Websites.* A list of useful websites is included to direct the student to additional relevant information that can be found on the Internet.
- *Glossary.* A comprehensive list of key terms with their definitions is presented at the end of the text.
- *Appendixes.* For those students interested in learning more about athletic training, Appendixes A and B provide information about employment settings for the athletic trainer and the requirements for certification as an athletic trainer. Appendix C shows the directional anatomic motions of the joints discussed in this text.

INSTRUCTOR'S RESOURCE MATERIALS

Test Bank

McGraw-Hill's Computerized Testing is the most flexible and easy-to-use electronic testing program available in higher education. The program allows instructors to create tests from book-specific test banks. It accommodates a wide range of question types, and instructors may add their own questions. Multiple versions of the test can be created. It is located on Connect.

PowerPoint Presentation

A comprehensive PowerPoint presentation accompanies this text, for use in classroom discussion. The PowerPoint presentation may also be converted to outlines and given to students as a handout. You can easily download the PowerPoint presentation from the McGraw-Hill website at www.mhhe.com/prentice11e. Adopters of the text can obtain the login and password to access this presentation by contacting their local McGraw-Hill sales representative.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Special thanks are extended to Gary O'Brien, my Development Editor and most importantly my "wing-man" on this and several additional projects. As always he has provided invaluable guidance in the preparation of the eleventh edition of *Essentials*

of Athletic Injury Management and I cannot thank him enough for everything he does for me. I would also like to thank Alex Preiss who has been my Editor at McGraw-Hill.

I would also like to thank the following individuals who served as reviewers for their input into the revision of this text:

Steven M. Zinder
University of South Florida

John Lowry
Saginaw Valley State University

Shari Bartz-Smith
Grand Valley State University

David C. Berry
Saginaw Valley State University

Michael W. Goforth
Virginia Tech

Tom Lechtenberg
Northeastern State University

James Michael Lynch
Florida Southern College

Rachel Lindsey
University of Hawaii, Manoa

Jim Racchini
Indiana University of Pennsylvania

Jennifer O'Donoghue
North Carolina State University

Lee Ann Price
Eastern Illinois University

William Zachary Garrett
Marshall University

Finally, I would like to thank my two sons Brian and Zach for always being an important part of everything that I do, and my wife Tena, who over the last two years has demonstrated to all of us the tenuous frailty of the human body and the inspirational resilience of the human spirit.

William E. Prentice

Applications at a Glance

List of professional sports medicine organizations 4
Clarifying roles 8
Athletic injury management checklist 13
Looking to hire a certified athletic trainer? 18
Secondary School Student Athletes' Bill of Rights 18
Rules and policies of the athletic health care facility 19
Suggestions for maintaining a sanitary environment 19
Cleaning responsibilities 20
Recommended health practices checklist 20
Orthopedic Screening Examination 24
Recommended basic health care facility supplies 27
Recommended basic field kit supplies 28
Athletic injury management checklist 30
Athletic injury management checklist 35
Key features and benefits of the Affordable Care Act 37
Athletic injury management checklist 39
Periodization training 45
Principles of conditioning 46
Guidelines and precautions for stretching 50
Techniques for improving muscular strength 60
Progressive resistance exercise terminology 62
Comparison of aerobic versus anaerobic activities 75
Rating of perceived exertion 79
Athletic injury management checklist 80
Vitamins 86
Minerals 88
Most widely used herbs and purposes for use 94
Tips for selecting fast foods 98
Guidelines for weight loss 100
Recognizing the individual with disordered eating 101
Athletic injury management checklist 102
Equipment regulatory agencies 106
Guidelines for purchasing and reconditioning helmets 107
Proper football helmet fit 109
Rules for fitting football shoulder pads 115
Shoe comparisons 119
Athletic injury management checklist 124
Universal WBGT index fluid replacement recommendations 129
Summary and comparison of heat disorders, treatment, and prevention 130
Recommendations for fluid replacement 133
Recommendations for preventing heat illness 133
Athletic injury management checklist 137
Sample emergency action plan 144
Consent form for medical treatment of a minor 145
CPR summary 147
Vital signs 150
Initial management of acute injuries 153
Athletic injury management checklist 160
Transmission of hepatitis B and C viruses and human immunodeficiency virus 165
HIV risk reduction 166
Bloodborne pathogen risk categories for sports 166
Glove removal and use 168
Suggested practices in wound care 171
Care of skin wounds 172
Athletic injury management checklist 173
Taping supplies 181
Athletic injury management checklist 189
Return to running following lower-extremity injury functional progression 197
What are therapeutic modalities used for? 198
Using ice versus heat? 199
Full return to play 199
Athletic injury management checklist 200
Progressive reactions of injured athletes based on severity of injury and length of rehabilitation 203
Nine factors to incorporate into goal setting for the athlete 205
Things a coach or fitness professional can do to provide social support for an injured athlete 206
Athletic injury management checklist 209
Muscles of the foot 228
Caring for a torn blister 237
Managing the ingrown toenail 238
Muscles of the ankle joint 243
Technique for controlling swelling immediately following injury 249
Muscles of the knee joint 260
Muscles of the thigh, hip, and groin 280
Muscles of the shoulder complex 295
Muscles of the elbow 307
Muscles of the forearm 313

Muscles of the wrist, hand, and fingers 318
Muscles of the spine 329
Recommended postures and practices for preventing low back pain 330
Muscles of the abdomen and thorax 342
When an athlete shows *any* signs of a concussion 358
The Graded Symptoms Checklist 359
Common viral, bacterial, and fungal skin infections found in athletes 375
Preventing the spread of MRSA 377
Basic care of athlete's foot 378
Symptoms and management of the acute asthmatic attack 381
Using a metered-dose inhaler 382
Classifying blood pressure 386
Some infectious viral diseases 387
Identifying a woman at risk for female athletic triad 389
Sexually transmitted diseases 391
Identifying an individual who may be using performance-enhancing drugs 396
Examples of caffeine-containing products 396
Examples of deleterious effects of anabolic steroids 397
Banned drugs—common ground 400
Estimated number of young people ages 6–17 enrolled in specific categories of youth sports 404
Tanner stages of maturity 406
Guidelines for Youth Strength Training 407
Sports safety tips 411
Sports parents safety checklist 412
National Action Plan for Sports Safety 413
Athletic injury management checklist 413
Board of certification requirements for certification as an athletic trainer 421

PART I

Organizing and Establishing an Effective Athletic Health Care System

1 Fitness Professionals, Coaches, and the Sports Medicine Team: Defining Roles

2 Organizing and Administering an Athletic Health Care Program

3 Legal Liability and Insurance

1

©William E. Prentice

Fitness Professionals, Coaches, and the Sports Medicine Team: Defining Roles

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Define the umbrella term sports medicine.
- Identify various sports medicine organizations.
- Contrast athletic health care in organized versus recreational sports activities.
- Discuss how fitness professionals, including personal fitness trainers and strength and conditioning coaches, relate to the sports medicine team.
- Describe the role of an individual supervising a recreational program in athletic injury management.
- Analyze the role of the athletic administrator in the athletic health care system.
- Describe the role of the coach in injury prevention, emergency care, and injury management.
- Identify the responsibilities of the athletic trainer in dealing with the injured athlete.
- Describe the role of the team physician and his or her interaction with the athletic trainer.
- Explain how the sports medicine team should interact with the athlete.
- Identify other members of the sports medicine team and describe their roles.

Millions of individuals in our American society participate on a regular basis in both organized and recreational sports or physical activities. There is great demand for well-educated, professionally trained personnel to supervise and oversee these activities. Among those professionals are coaches, fitness professionals such as strength and conditioning specialists and personal fitness trainers, recreation specialists, athletic administrators, and others interested in some aspect of exercise and sports science.

Ironically, participation in any type of physical activity places the "athlete" in situations in which injury is likely to occur. Athletes who engage in organized sports and/or recreational activities have every right to expect that their health and safety will be a high priority for those who supervise or organize those activities. Thus it is essential to have some knowledge about how injuries can best be prevented or at least minimized. Should injury occur, it is critical to be able to recognize that a problem exists, to learn how to correctly provide first-aid care, and to then refer the athlete to the appropriate medical or health care personnel for optimal treatment. However, it must be emphasized that these well-trained professionals are NOT health care professionals. In fact, attempting to provide health care to an injured or ill athlete is illegal in most states and likely violates the practice acts of several different professional health care provider groups licensed by the state to give medical care to an injured athlete.

An athlete is an individual who engages in and is proficient in sports and/or physical exercise.

The intent throughout this text is to provide students who intend to become coaches, fitness professionals, recreation specialists, athletic administrators, physical education teachers, exercise physiologists, biomechanists, sport psychologists, or sports nutritionists with an introduction or exposure to a variety of topics that relate to athletic injury management. This chapter introduces the members of the sports medicine team with whom these professionals are likely to interact throughout their careers. Specific roles and responsibilities of each member of the sports medicine team in managing the health care of the athlete are discussed in detail.

WHAT IS SPORTS MEDICINE?

The term *sports medicine* refers generically to a broad field of health care related to physical activity and sport. The American College of Sports Medicine (ACSM) has used the term sports medicine to describe a multidisciplinary approach to health management or achievement of full potential, including the physiological, biomechanical, psychological, and pathological phenomena associated with exercise and sports. The clinical application of the work of these disciplines is performed to improve and maintain an individual's functional capacities for physical labor, exercise, and sports. It also includes the prevention and treatment of diseases and injuries related to exercise and sports. The field of sports medicine encompasses under its umbrella a number of more specialized aspects of dealing with the physically active or athletic populations that may be classified as relating either to performance enhancement or to injury care and management (Figure 1–1). Those areas of specialization that are primarily concerned with performance enhancement include exercise physiology, biomechanics, sport psychology, sports nutrition, strength and conditioning, personal fitness training, coaching, and physical education. Areas of specialization that focus more on health care and injury/illness management specific to the athlete are the practice of medicine (physicians and physician assistants), athletic training, sports physical therapy, massage therapy, dentistry, osteopathic medicine, orthotists/prosthetists, sports chiropractic, sports podiatry, and emergency medical specialists. Certainly, some of the specializations listed under this umbrella could be concerned with both performance enhancement and injury care and management (e.g., sports nutrition).

Sports Medicine Organizations

A number of professional organizations are dedicated to the field of sports medicine and dictate the

FIGURE 1–1 Areas of specialization under the sports medicine "umbrella."

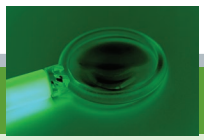
roles that members of their organizations play in providing health care to an injured patient. Professional organizations have many goals: (1) to upgrade the field by devising and maintaining a set of professional standards, including a code of ethics; (2) to bring together professionally competent individuals to exchange ideas, stimulate research, and promote critical thinking; and (3) to give individuals an opportunity to work as a group with a singleness of purpose, thereby making it possible for them to achieve objectives that, separately, they could not accomplish. Addresses and websites for these organizations are listed in *Focus Box 1–1*.

Many professional organizations are dedicated to achieving health and safety in sports.

Many of the national organizations interested in athletic health and safety have state and local associations that are extensions of the larger bodies. National, state, and local sports organizations have all provided extensive support to the reduction of illness and injury risk to the athlete.

ATHLETIC HEALTH CARE IN ORGANIZED VERSUS RECREATIONAL SPORTS ACTIVITIES

The system or methods by which athletic health care is delivered by members of the sports medicine team largely depend on whether the activity is organized or recreational. An organized activity



FOCUS BOX 1–1

List of professional sports medicine organizations

- American Academy of Pediatrics, Council on Sports Medicine and Fitness, 345 Park Boulevard, Itasca, IL 60143 www.aap.org
- American Board of Physical Therapy Specialists, American Physical Therapy Association, 1111 North Fairfax St., Alexandria, VA 22314 www.abpts.org/Certification/Sports/
- American College of Sports Medicine, 401 W. Michigan St., Indianapolis, IN 46202-3233 www.acsm.org
- American Orthopaedic Society for Sports Medicine, 9400 W. Higgins Rd, Suite 300, Rosemont, Illinois 60018 www.sportsmed.org
- National Athletic Trainers' Association, 1620 Valwood Parkway, Suite 115, Carrollton TX 75006 www.nata.org
- National Collegiate Athletic Association, Competitive Safeguards and Medical Aspects of Sports Committee, 700 W. Washington St., P.O. Box 622, Indianapolis, IN 46206-6222 www.ncaa.org
- National Federation of State High School Athletic Associations, P.O. Box 690, Indianapolis, IN 46206 www.nfhs.org
- National Strength and Conditioning Association, 1885 Bob Johnson Dr., Colorado Springs, CO 80906 www.nsca.com
- American Osteopathic Academy of Sports Medicine, 2424 American Lane, Madison, WI 53704 www.aoasm.org

refers to a situation that is generally competitive in which there is some type of team or league involvement, as would be the case with secondary school, collegiate, and professional athletic teams. With organized sports activities, the primary players on the sports medicine team are employed on either a full-time or part-time basis by a school or organization and include the coach, the athletic trainer, and a physician who is designated as a "team" physician. At the collegiate and professional levels, a strength and conditioning coach, a sports nutritionist, a sports massage therapist, and a sport psychologist are also usually involved. In organized sports activities, the athletic health care system is generally well organized and comprehensive, and in many instances the sports medicine coverage would be considered highly sophisticated.

Certainly a recreational sports activity can be competitive. However, a recreational activity is one that is done more for leisure and free time enjoyment and involves a much less formal structure, with many of the organizers being primarily volunteers. These include city- or community-based recreational leagues and teams. Many individuals choose to engage in fitness-oriented exercise activities such as running or weight training as a recreational activity. These "recreational athletes" may decide to hire personal fitness trainers to help them with their fitness programs. Should injury occur, they are likely to consult their family physician, an athletic trainer, a sports chiropractor, or a sports physical therapist. Athletic health care for recreational athletes is generally provided on a fee-for-care basis.

THE PLAYERS ON THE SPORTS MEDICINE TEAM

Providing health care to the athlete requires a group effort to be most effective.[38] The sports medicine team involves a number of individuals, each of whom must perform specific functions relative to caring for the injured athlete.[5,12]

How Does the Fitness Professional Relate to the Sports Medicine Team?

Earlier in this chapter, the term *fitness professional* was used to refer collectively to strength and conditioning coaches, personal fitness trainers, and others interested in exercise and sport sciences. In this group we may also include physical education teachers, exercise physiologists, biomechanists, sport psychologists, and sports nutritionists. If we consider the "sports medicine umbrella" model, the focus of this group is generally on improving performance. Certainly an argument can be made that if athletes achieve a high level of fitness through training and conditioning, they are not only more likely to perform athletically at a higher level but they are also less likely to sustain some type of activity-related injury. Therefore, there is a relationship between those areas that specialize in performance enhancement and those that focus on health care in that both groups are concerned with injury prevention.

Strength and Conditioning Coaches The responsibility for making certain that an athlete is fit for competition depends on the personnel available to oversee this aspect of an athletic program. At the professional level and at most colleges and universities, a full-time strength and conditioning coach is employed to conduct both team and individual training sessions.[13] Many, but not all, strength coaches are certified by the National Strength and Conditioning Association (NSCA).[24] This association has more than 30,000 members. It is the responsibility of the strength and conditioning coach to communicate freely and work in close cooperation with both the athletic trainers and the team coaches to ensure that the athletes achieve an optimal level of fitness.[9] **All strength and conditioning coaches should be certified in CPR/AED (cardiopulmonary resuscitation/automated external defibrillator) by the American Red Cross, the American Heart Association, or the National Safety Council. They should also be certified in first aid by the American Red Cross or the National Safety Council.**

If an athlete is injured and is undergoing a rehabilitation program, it should be the strength and conditioning coach's responsibility to communicate with the athletic trainer, who should dictate how the conditioning program should be limited and/or modified.[22] The athletic trainer must respect the role of the strength and conditioning coach in getting the athlete fit. However, the responsibility for rehabilitating an injured athlete clearly belongs to the athletic trainer. The athletic trainer should be allowed to critically review the training and conditioning program designed by the strength and conditioning coach and to be very familiar with what is expected of the athletes on a daily basis. **The athletic trainer should dictate what an injured athlete can or cannot do when engaging in a strength and conditioning program.**[41]

In the majority of secondary school settings, a strength and conditioning coach is not available. In this situation either the athletic trainer or team coach often assumes the role of a strength and conditioning coach in addition to his or her athletic training or coaching responsibilities. The athletic trainer or coach frequently finds it necessary not only to design training and conditioning programs but also to oversee the weight room and to educate young, inexperienced athletes about getting themselves fit to compete. The athletic trainer must cooperate with team coaches in supervising the training and conditioning program.

Personal Fitness Trainers A personal fitness trainer is responsible for designing comprehensive exercise or fitness programs for an individual client based on that person's health history, capabilities, and objectives for fitness.[18] Once thought of as a service for the rich and famous, people from all income levels are using personal fitness trainers to increase their fitness levels and to get advice about living a healthy lifestyle.

Fitness professionals include:

- strength and conditioning coaches
- personal fitness trainers
- coaches
- others associated with exercise and sport sciences

There are more than 300,000 personal fitness trainers in North America, who offer their services to a variety of people and businesses. Although associations and certification agencies can count the number of personal fitness trainers in their organization, many personal fitness trainers have one or more certifications and belong to more than one professional organization, making it almost impossible to accurately assess the number of certified personal fitness trainers in the United States.

Unfortunately, no single standard qualification is required before a person can practice as a personal fitness trainer.[7] Washington, D.C., is the only jurisdiction in the United States where personal fitness trainers must be registered. About 400 organizations in the United States offer certification to personal fitness trainers. Of that number, only a few are considered legitimate by most professionals. Among the most respected are the American College of Sports Medicine (ACSM), the National Academy of Sports Medicine (NASM), the National Strength and Conditioning Association (NSCA), and the American Council on Exercise (ACE).[21] These organizations have specific requirements based on tested and practical knowledge, mandatory retesting at renewal periods, and continuing education. A recent trend by some of these organizations is to require that their certified personal fitness trainers have a formal educational degree in exercise science or a related field.[23] However, the requirements for other organizations are not so strict. Some award certification after a person takes a correspondence course over the Internet or attends as little as a weekend or single-day training session. Individuals who hire personal fitness trainers should check qualifications and certifications. **All personal fitness trainers should be certified in CPR/AED by the American Red Cross, the American Heart Association, or the National Safety Council. They should also be certified in first aid by the American Red Cross or the National Safety Council.**

Personal fitness training is without question the strongest growth segment of the fitness industry, and

this trend is expected to continue as personal fitness trainers are beginning to offer a variety of services that go beyond a general exercise program.[18] Personal fitness trainers are increasingly providing services in postrehabilitation training, sports conditioning, special medical needs, and weight management to a variety of specific client populations including prenatal women, adolescents, and older persons.

How Does a Recreation Specialist Relate to the Sports Medicine Team?

Recreation specialists organize, plan, and oversee leisure activities and athletic programs in local recreation, camp, and park areas; playgrounds; health clubs and fitness centers; the workplace; and theme parks and tourist attractions. An essential responsibility for any individual overseeing a recreational program is to ensure that the recreational environment is as safe as possible to minimize the risk of injury. Should injury occur to a participant, the recreation specialist should be able to provide immediate and correct first aid and then refer the injured person to appropriate medical personnel. **All recreation specialists should be certified in CPR/AED by the American Red Cross, the American Heart Association, or the National Safety Council. They should also be certified in first aid by the American Red Cross or the National Safety Council.**

Recreation and parks directors serve as advisors to local and state recreation and park commissions and manage comprehensive recreation programs in a variety of settings. They are responsible for developing budgets for recreation programs. *Recreation supervisors* serve as liaisons between the director of the park or recreation center and the recreation leaders. They plan, organize, and manage recreational activities to meet the needs of a variety of populations and oversee recreation leaders. Recreation supervisors with more specialized training may also direct special activities or events or oversee a major activity such as aquatics, gymnastics, or performing arts. *Recreation leaders* are primarily responsible for the daily operation of a recreation program. They organize and direct participants; schedule use of facilities; lead and give instruction in dance, drama, crafts, games, and sports; maintain equipment; and ensure appropriate use of recreation facilities. *Activity specialists* provide instruction and coach groups in specialties such as swimming or tennis. *Camp counselors* lead and instruct campers in outdoor-oriented forms of recreation, such as swimming, hiking, horseback riding, and camping.

A *recreational therapist* may be considered a health care provider. Recreational therapists work in acute health care settings, such as hospitals and rehabilitation centers, or in long-term and residential care facilities. Their job is to treat and rehabilitate individuals with specific health conditions, usually in conjunction or collaboration with physicians, nurses, psychologists, social workers, and physical and occupational therapists. Recreational therapists use leisure activities—especially structured group programs—to improve and maintain their clients' general health and well-being. They also provide interventions that help prevent the client from suffering further medical problems and complications related to illnesses and disabilities.

The Role of the Athletic Administrator in the Sports Medicine Team

Without question, an athletic administrator, overseeing both collegiate and secondary school athletic programs, has a significant role with the sports medicine team. The athletic administrator should have input in hiring personnel who will make up the sports medicine team, including the coaches, the strength and conditioning coach, the athletic trainer, the team physician, a sports nutritionist, and a sport psychologist. It is essential for the athletic administrator to make certain that each individual hired has the appropriate credentials and that he or she is willing and able to work in close cooperation with the other members of the sports medicine team. The athletic administrator should make certain that policies and procedures, a risk management plan, and emergency action plans are developed for the athletic health care system. The administrator is also responsible for establishing a budget for funding all aspects of an athletic health care program, including salaries, supplies, and equipment, and purchasing necessary insurance (see Chapter 2). The consistent support and commitment to an athletic health care program on the part of an athletic administrator can have a tremendous impact on the success of the athletic program.

The Role of a Coach in the Sports Medicine Team

It is critical for the coach to understand the specific roles and responsibilities of each individual who could potentially be involved in the sports medicine team. This becomes even more critical if there is no athletic trainer to oversee the health care and the coach is forced to assume this responsibility. It must be stressed that individual states differ significantly in the laws that govern what nonmedical personnel can and cannot do when providing health care. **Coaches have the responsibility to clearly understand the limits of their ability to function as a health care provider in the state where they are employed.**

All head and assistant coaches should be certified in CPR/AED and first aid.

The coach is directly responsible for preventing injuries by seeing that athletes have undergone a preventive injury conditioning program. The coach must ensure that sports equipment, especially protective equipment, is of the highest quality and is properly fitted. The coach must also make sure that protective equipment is properly maintained.[38] A coach must be keenly aware of what produces injuries in his or her particular sport and what measures must be taken to avoid them (Figure 1–2). A coach should be able, when called on to do so, to apply proper first aid. This knowledge is especially important in serious head and spinal injuries. **All coaches (both head and assistant) should be certified in CPR/AED by the American Red Cross, the American Heart Association, or the National Safety Council. Coaches should also be certified in first aid by the American Red Cross or the National Safety Council.**[30] For the coach, obtaining these certifications is important in being able to provide correct and appropriate first aid and emergency care for the injured athlete. But it is also true that not having these certifications can potentially have some negative legal implications for the coach and his or her employer.

It is essential that a coach thoroughly understand the skill techniques and environmental factors that may adversely affect the athlete. Poor biomechanics in skill areas such as throwing and running can lead to overuse injuries of the arms and legs, whereas overexposure to heat and humidity may cause death. Just because a coach is experienced in coaching does not mean that he or she knows proper skill techniques. Coaches must engage in a continual process of education to further their knowledge in their particular sport through organizations such as the American Sport Education Program (ASEP) or the National Council for Accreditation of Coaching Education (NCACE). When a sports program or specific sport is without an athletic trainer, the coach very often takes over this role.

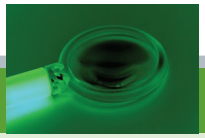
Coaches work closely with athletic trainers; therefore both must develop an awareness of and an insight into each other's roles and responsibilities so that they can function effectively. The athletic trainer must earn the respect of the coaches so that his or her judgment in all medical matters is fully accepted.[14] In turn, the athletic trainer must avoid questioning the abilities of the coaches in their particular fields and must restrict opinions to athletic training matters. To avoid frustration and hard feelings, the coach must coach, and the athletic trainer must conduct athletic training matters. In terms of the health and well-being of the athlete, the physician and the athletic trainer have the last word. The decisions made by the athletic trainer on matters related to health care should always be supported by the athletic administrators.

The Roles and Responsibilities of the Athletic Trainer

It is essential for a coach or other fitness professional who is working with an athletic trainer to gain an appreciation of the roles and responsibilities that an athletic trainer assumes in caring for the athletes (Figure 1–3).[6] If the coach does not have an athletic trainer, many of those responsibilities may fall on the coach.

FIGURE 1–2 The coach is directly responsible for preventing injuries in his or her sport. ©William E. Prentice

FIGURE 1–3 Coaches should work closely with athletic trainers and physicians to provide health care for the injured athlete. ©William E. Prentice



FOCUS BOX 1–2

Clarifying roles

The terms *training* and *athletic training* are often confused. Historically, training implies the act of coaching or teaching. In comparison, athletic training has traditionally been known as a field within the allied health care professions that is concerned with prevention, management, evaluation, and rehabilitation of injuries related to physical activity.[42]

Recently, there has been confusion in the general public among the terms *trainers, certified athletic trainers, personal fitness trainers,* and *strength and conditioning coaches*. A *trainer* refers to someone who trains dogs or horses. A *certified athletic trainer* (certified by the Board of Certification) is a highly educated allied health care professional who is a credentialed specialist in athletic training. These individuals hold the credential ATC. Certified athletic trainers play a major role in the health care of physically active individuals in general and the athlete in particular.[33] Athletic trainers are licensed as health care providers by state licensing boards in 49 of the 50 states (except California) and the District of Columbia. *Personal fitness trainers* may also have some level of certification from any one of at least 400 existing certifying organizations. They are primarily concerned with developing fitness and wellness and improving levels of physical conditioning in a healthy population. Strength and conditioning coaches (certified by the National Strength and Conditioning Association) work primarily with athletes at the professional or collegiate levels to enhance their levels of physical conditioning and optimize performance.

Of all the professionals charged with injury prevention and health care provision for the athlete, perhaps none is more intimately involved with the athlete than the athletic trainer.[38] The athletic trainer is the one individual who deals with the athlete from the time of the initial injury, throughout the period of rehabilitation, until the athlete's complete, unrestricted return to practice or competition.[38] The athletic trainer is most directly responsible for all phases of health care in an athletic environment, including preventing injuries from occurring, providing initial first aid and injury management, evaluating and diagnosing injuries, and designing and supervising a timely and effective program of rehabilitation that can facilitate the safe and expeditious return of the athlete to activity.[4,40,44] Athletic trainers are employed by schools and school systems, colleges and universities, professional athletic teams, sports medicine clinics, corporations in industry, and less "traditional" organizations such as the performing arts, NASCAR, NASA, the military, and medical equipment sales/support (see Appendix A).[19,29]

Employment settings for athletic trainers:

- Schools
- School systems
- Colleges and universities
- Professional teams
- Clinics/hospitals
- Corporations
- NASCAR, NASA, military, etc.
- Performing arts

The athletic trainer must be knowledgeable and competent in a variety of sports medicine specialties if he or she is to be effective in preventing and treating injuries to the athlete.[4,15] A national Board of Certification has established specific requirements that must be met for an individual to become certified as an athletic trainer.[4] These requirements include a combination of both academic coursework and clinical experience in athletic training settings (see Appendix B).[4,31] Once these requirements for certification have been met and the individual passes a certification exam, that person earns the credential **ATC.**[4] *(In this text all references to athletic trainers imply that this individual has met the requirements for certification set forth by the Board of Certification.)* *Focus Box 1–2* further clarifies the differences between an athletic trainer and a personal fitness trainer. The specific roles and responsibilities of the athletic trainer will differ and, to a certain extent, will be defined by the situation in which he or she works.[31] Different states have different requirements as to who can call themselves an athletic trainer. It should be reemphasized that athletic trainers working with athletes should be certified athletic trainers (ATC).

ATC Credential of an individual who is certified as an athletic trainer.

Injury/Illness Prevention and Wellness Promotion
A primary responsibility of the athletic trainer is to educate the athletes and manage risks by making the competitive environment as safe as possible to reduce the likelihood of injury. The athletic trainer is responsible for organizing/arranging physical examinations and preparticipation screenings to identify

Roles and responsibilities of the athletic trainer

- Injury/illness prevention and wellness promotion
- Examination, assessment, and diagnosis
- Immediate and emergency care
- Therapeutic intervention
- Health care administration and professional responsibilities

conditions that predispose an athlete to injury (see Chapter 2), and educating parents, coaches, and athletes about the risks inherent to sports participation. Injury prevention includes (1) ensuring appropriate training and conditioning of the athlete (see Chapter 4); (2) monitoring environmental conditions to ensure safe participation (see Chapter 7); (3) selecting, properly fitting, and maintaining protective equipment (see Chapter 6); (4) explaining the importance of proper nutrition (see Chapter 5) and having a healthy lifestyle; and (5) using medications appropriately.

Examination, Assessment, and Diagnosis The athletic trainer must be skilled in recognizing the nature and extent of an injury through competency in injury evaluation. The athletic trainer must be able to efficiently and accurately evaluate an injury (see Chapter 8). The athletic trainer is responsible for referring the injured athlete to appropriate medical care or support services.

Immediate and Emergency Care Once the initial on-the-field assessment is done, the athletic trainer then must assume responsibility for administering appropriate first aid to the injured athlete and for making correct decisions in the management of acute injury (see Chapter 8).[8,36] Thus the athletic trainer must possess sound skills not only in the initial recognition and evaluation of potentially serious or life-threatening injuries but also in emergency care.

The athletic trainer is required to be certified in CPR/AED and should be certified in first aid by the American Red Cross or the National Safety Council.

Therapeutic Intervention An athletic trainer must be proficient in designing and supervising rehabilitation and reconditioning protocols that make use of appropriate rehabilitative equipment, manual (hands on) therapy techniques, or therapeutic modalities (see Chapter 12). In certain settings the athletic trainer may work closely with physical therapists and/or strength and conditioning specialists in designing functional return to play activities.

Athletic trainers should also recognize patients that may exhibit abnormal social, emotional, and mental behaviors. They should also be able to recognize the role of mental health in injury and recovery, and use intervention strategies to maximize the connection between mental health and restoration of participation. If the athletic trainer recognizes that a problem exists, he or she should refer the patient to the appropriate medical personnel for intervention.[28]

Health Care Administration and Professional Responsibilities The athletic trainer is responsible for the organization and administration of the athletic training program, including maintaining health and injury records for each athlete, developing emergency action plans, requisitioning and maintaining an inventory of necessary supplies and equipment, submitting insurance information to insurance companies, supervising assistants, providing athletic training for students, and establishing policies and procedures for day-to-day operation of the athletic training program (see Chapter 2).

The athletic trainer must educate the general public, in addition to a large segment of the various allied medical health care professions, as to exactly what athletic trainers are and what their roles and responsibilities are. This education is perhaps best accomplished by holding professional seminars, publishing research in scholarly journals, meeting with local and community organizations, and, most important, doing a good and professional job of providing health care to the injured athlete.[34]

1–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A basketball player suffers a grade 2 ankle sprain during midseason of the competitive schedule. After a 3-week course of rehabilitation, most of the athlete's pain and swelling has been eliminated. The athlete is anxious to get back into practice and competitive games as soon as possible, and subsequent injuries to other players have put pressure on the coach to force this player's return. Unfortunately, the athlete is still unable to perform functional tasks (cutting and jumping) essential in basketball.

? Who is responsible for making the decision regarding when the athlete can fully return to practice and game situations?

Responsibilities of the Team Physician

The team physician assumes a number of roles and responsibilities with regard to injury prevention and the health care of the athlete.[1,2,20,27]

Compiling Medical Histories The team physician should be responsible for compiling medical histories and conducting physical examinations for each athlete, both of which can provide critical information that may reduce the possibility of injury.[37] Preparticipation screening by both the athletic trainer and physician is important in establishing baseline

Team physicians must have absolute authority in determining the health status of an athlete who wishes to participate in the sports program.

FIGURE 1–4 In treating the athlete, the physician supervises the athletic trainers. ©William E. Prentice

information to be used for comparison should injury occur during the season.[20]

Diagnosing Injury The team physician should assume responsibility for diagnosing an injury and should be keenly aware of the program of rehabilitation as designed by the athletic trainer following the diagnosis (Figure 1–4).[39] The physician is ultimately responsible for deciding when an injured athlete may return to full activity.[26]

Deciding on Disqualification The physician should determine when an athlete should be disqualified from competition on medical grounds and must have the final say in when an injured athlete may return to activity. The physician's judgment must be based not only on medical knowledge but also on knowledge of the psychophysiological demands of a particular sport.[15]

Attending Practices and Games Under the most ideal circumstances, a team physician should make an effort to attend as many practices, scrimmages, and competitions as possible. This attendance obviously becomes very difficult at an institution with 20 or more athletic teams.[16]

It is essential that the team physician promote and maintain consistently high-quality care for the athlete in all phases of the sports medicine program.[10,25] The team physician may work closely with the athletic trainer and must rely on their abilities as a health care provider.[43]

The Relationship Between the Sports Medicine Team and Athlete

If a coach has an athletic trainer and/or a physician who work together in providing health care, the relationships that exist can significantly affect the success of that team or athletic program.[35] The major concern of everyone on the sports medicine team should always be the athlete. If not for the athlete, the coach, athletic trainer, and team physician would have nothing to do in sports. All decisions made by the physician, coach, and athletic trainer ultimately affect the athlete. **It should be clear that the physician working in cooperation with the athletic trainer assumes the responsibility of making the final decisions about medical care for the athlete from the time of injury until full return to activity.[11] The coach must defer and should always support the decisions of the medical staff in any matter regarding health care for the athlete.**

This is not to say, however, that the coach should not be involved with the decision-making process. For example, during the time the athlete is rehabilitating an injury, there may be drills or technical instruction sessions that the athlete can participate in that will not exacerbate the existing problem. Thus the coach, the athletic trainer, and the team physician should be able to negotiate what the athlete can and cannot do safely in the course of a practice.

1–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

? What are some things that a coach working in cooperation with an athletic trainer can do to help minimize the chances of injury?

Athletes are frequently caught in the middle between coaches who tell them to do one thing and medical staff who tell them something else. Close communication between the coach and athletic trainer is essential so that everyone is on the same page.

Any personal relationship takes some time to grow and develop. The relationship between the coach and the athletic trainer is no different. The athletic trainer must demonstrate to the coach his or her capability to correctly manage an injury and guide the course of a rehabilitation program. It will take some time for the coach to develop trust and confidence in the athletic trainer. The coach must understand that what the athletic trainer wants for the athlete is exactly the same as what the coach wants—to get an athlete healthy and back to practice as quickly and safely as possible.

The injured athlete must always be informed and made aware of the why, how, and when factors that collectively dictate the course of an injury rehabilitation program. Both the coach and the athletic trainer should make it a priority to educate student-athletes about injury prevention and management. Athletes should learn about techniques of training and conditioning that may

reduce the likelihood of injury. They should be well informed about their injuries and about listening to what their bodies are telling them to prevent reinjury.

The Importance of the Family in the Sports Medicine Team

In a secondary or middle school setting, the coach, the athletic trainer, and the physician must also take the time to explain to and inform the parents about injury management and prevention.[3] With an athlete of secondary school age, the parents' decisions regarding health care must be a primary consideration.

In certain situations, particularly at the secondary school and middle school levels, many parents will insist that their child be seen by their family physician rather than by the individual who may be designated as the team physician. It is also likely that the choice of a physician will be dictated by the parents' insurance plan (e.g., health maintenance organization [HMO], preferred provider organization [PPO]). This creates a situation in which the athletic trainer must work and communicate with many different "team physicians." The opinion of the family physician must be respected even if the individual has little or no experience with injuries related to sports.

The coach, athletic trainer, and team physician should make certain that the athlete and his or her family are familiar with the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA), which regulates how individuals who have health information about an athlete can share that information with others and not be in violation of the privacy rule. HIPAA was created to protect a patient's privacy and limit the number of people who could gain access to the athlete's medical records. HIPAA regulations will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 2.

Other Members of the Sports Medicine Team

In certain situations, an injured athlete may require treatment from or consultation with a variety of both medical and nonmedical services or personnel other than the athletic trainer or team physician. After the athletic trainer consults with the team physician about a particular matter, either the athletic trainer or the team physician can arrange for appointments and refer the athlete as necessary. When referring an athlete for evaluation or consultation, the athletic trainer must be aware of the community-based services available to that athlete.

A sports program may use a number of support health services. Those people may include a nurse; physicians in specialties such as orthopedics, dentistry, and podiatry; physician's assistants; strength and conditioning coaches; nutritionists; sport psychologists; exercise physiologists; biomechanists; physical therapists; equipment personnel; and referees.

Nurse/Nurse Practitioner As a rule, the nurse is not usually responsible for the recognition of sports injuries. Education and background, however, render the nurse quite capable in the recognition of skin disease, infections, and minor irritations. The nurse works under the direction of the physician and in liaison with the athletic trainer and the school health services. A nurse practitioner (NP) is a registered nurse with advanced education and clinical training. NPs diagnose and treat common acute and chronic problems, and prescribe and manage medications.

Support personnel concerned with athletes' health and safety:

- Nurse
- Physician
- Dentist
- Podiatrist
- Sports chiropractor
- Orthotist/prosthetist
- Physician's assistant
- Strength and conditioning coach
- Sport psychologist
- Sports physical therapist
- Exercise physiologist
- Biomechanist
- Nutritionist
- Massage therapist
- Emergency medical specialist
- Equipment personnel
- Referee

Physicians A number of physicians with a variety of specializations can aid the sports medicine team in treating the athlete.

Orthopedist The orthopedist is responsible for treating injuries and disorders of the musculoskeletal system. Many colleges and universities have a team orthopedist on their staff.

Dermatologist A dermatologist should be consulted for problems and lesions occurring on the skin.

Gynecologist A gynecologist is consulted in cases where health issues in the female athlete are of primary concern.

Family Medicine Physician A physician who specializes in family medicine is concerned with supervising or providing medical care to all members of a family. Many team physicians in colleges and universities and particularly at the high school level are engaged in family practice.

Internist An internist is a physician who specializes in the practice of internal medicine. An internist treats diseases of the internal organs by using measures other than surgery.

Neurologist A neurologist specializes in treating disorders of and injuries to the nervous system. Consultation with a neurologist is warranted in certain common situations in athletics, such as cases of head injury or peripheral nerve injury.

Ophthalmologist Physicians who manage and treat injuries to the eye are ophthalmologists. An optometrist is an individual who evaluates and fits patients with glasses or contact lenses.

Osteopath An osteopath emphasizes the role of the musculoskeletal system in health and disease, using a holistic approach to the patient. An osteopath incorporates a variety of manual and physical treatment interventions in the prevention and treatment of disease.

Pediatrician A pediatrician is concerned with the practice of caring for or treating injuries and illnesses that occur in young physically active children and adolescents.

Physiatrist A physiatrist provides integrated care in the prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of disorders related to the brain, muscles, and bones, spanning from traumatic brain injury to lower back pain.

Psychiatrist Psychiatry is a medical practice that deals with the diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of mental illness.

Dentist The role of team dentist is somewhat analogous to that of team physician. He or she serves as a dental consultant for the team and should be available for first aid and emergency care. Good communication between the dentist and the coach or athletic trainer should ensure a good dental program. The team dentist has three areas of responsibility:

1. Organizing and performing the preseason dental examination
2. Being available to provide emergency care when needed
3. Fitting mouth protectors

Podiatrist Podiatry, the specialized field dealing with the study and care of the foot, has become an integral part of sports health care. Many podiatrists are trained in surgical procedures, foot biomechanics, and the fitting and construction of orthotic devices for the shoe. Like the team dentist, a podiatrist should be available on a consulting basis.

Physician's Assistants Physician's assistants (PAs) are trained to assume some of the responsibilities for patient care traditionally done by the physician. They assist the physician by conducting preliminary patient evaluations, arranging for various hospital-based diagnostic tests, and dispensing appropriate medications. A number of athletic trainers have also become PAs in recent years.

Strength and Conditioning Coaches Most colleges and universities and some high schools employ full-time strength coaches to advise athletes on training and conditioning programs. Athletic trainers should routinely consult with these individuals to advise them about injuries to a particular athlete and exercises that should be avoided or modified relative to a specific injury.

1–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A new high school has hired a coach to establish and develop the football program. Unfortunately, the school does not have enough funds to also hire an athletic trainer. Thus the coach must assume the responsibility of creating a safe playing environment for the athletes.

? What considerations should the coach make to ensure that his athletes will be competing under the safest possible conditions?

Sport Psychologists The sport psychologist can advise the athlete on matters related to the psychological aspects of the rehabilitation process. The way the athlete feels about his or her injury and how it affects his or her social, emotional, intellectual, and physical dimensions can have a substantial effect on the course of a treatment program and how quickly the athlete may return to competition. The sport psychologist uses a variety of intervention strategies to help the athlete cope with injury.

Sports Physical Therapists Some athletic trainers use sports physical therapists to supervise the rehabilitation programs for injured athletes while the athletic trainer concentrates primarily on getting a player ready to practice or compete. A number of athletic trainers are also physical therapists.

The individual who achieves both certification as an athletic trainer and licensure as a physical therapist is extremely well qualified to function in various sports medicine settings, including both the private clinic and the colleges and universities.

Sports Chiropractors Chiropractors emphasize diagnosis and treatment of mechanical disorders of the musculoskeletal system, thinking that these disorders affect general health by way of the nervous system. They make use of spinal and extremity manipulations in their treatments.

Orthotists/Prosthetists These individuals custom fit, design, and construct braces, orthotics, and support devices based on physician prescriptions.

Exercise Physiologists Exercise physiologists monitor and assess cardiovascular and metabolic effects and mechanisms of exercise, replenishment of fluids during exercise, and exercise for cardiac and musculoskeletal rehabilitation.

Biomechanists Biomechanists are scientists who study and investigate how athletes move. They analyze movement techniques, using mathematical models, and make corrections and adjustments that can potentially increase efficiency of movement, thus improving performance.

Nutritionists Increasingly, individuals in the field of nutrition are becoming interested in athletics. Some large sports programs engage a nutritionist as a consultant who plans eating programs that are geared to the needs of a particular sport. He or she also assists individual athletes who need special nutritional counseling.

Sports Massage Therapists Qualified massage therapists have training and experience in all areas of massage. They may use their skills primarily in the precompetition and postcompetition phases of an athletic event.

Emergency Medical Specialists (EMS) These individuals are indispensable in providing transport to the injured athlete to a medical care facility.[4]

Equipment Personnel Sports equipment personnel are becoming specialists in the purchase and proper fitting of protective equipment. They work closely with the coach and the athletic trainer.

Referees Referees must be highly knowledgeable regarding rules and regulations, especially those that relate to the health and welfare of the athlete. They work cooperatively with the coach and the athletic trainer. They must be capable of checking the playing facility for dangerous situations and equipment that may predispose the athlete to injury. They must routinely check athletes to ensure that they are wearing adequate protective pads.

ATHLETIC INJURY MANAGEMENT CHECKLIST

The following checklist contains things the sports medicine team can do to minimize the chance of injury.

- ❑ Arrange for physical examinations and preparticipation screening.
- ❑ Ensure appropriate training and conditioning of the athlete.
- ❑ Monitor environmental and field conditions to ensure safe participation.
- ❑ Select and maintain properly fitting protective equipment.
- ❑ Educate parents, coaches, and athletes about the risks inherent in sports participation.
- ❑ Teach proper techniques.
- ❑ Be certified in CPR/AED.
- ❑ Be certified in first aid.

SUMMARY

- The term *sports medicine* has many connotations, depending on which group is using it. The term encompasses many different areas of sports related to both performance enhancement and injury care and management.
- Athletic health care is delivered differently in organized and recreational sports activities.
- Both personnel who concentrate on performance enhancement (such as fitness professionals and coaches) and personnel who focus on health care are concerned with injury prevention.
- Providing health care to the athlete requires a group effort to be most effective.
- The coach must ensure that the environment and the equipment that is worn are the safest possible, that all injuries and illnesses are properly cared for, that skills are properly taught, and that conditioning is at the highest level.
- The athletic trainer is responsible for preventing injuries from occurring, providing initial first aid and injury management, evaluating injuries, and designing and supervising a program of rehabilitation that can facilitate the safe return to activity.
- The team physician is responsible for preparticipation health examinations; diagnosing and treating illnesses and injuries; advising and teaching athletic trainers; attending games, scrimmages, and practices; and counseling the athlete about health matters.

- Other members of the sports medicine team may include nurses, physicians in specializations such as orthopedics, dentists, podiatrists, physician's assistants, strength and conditioning coaches, nutritionists, sport psychologists, exercise physiologists, biomechanists, physical therapists, chiropractors, equipment personnel, and referees.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1-1 Ultimately, the team physician is responsible for making that decision. However, that decision must be based on collective input from the coach, the athletic trainer, and the athlete. Remember that everyone in the sports medicine team has the same ultimate goal—returning the athlete to full competitive levels as quickly and safely as possible.

1-2 To help prevent injury, the athletic trainer should (1) arrange for physical examinations and preparticipation screenings to identify conditions that predispose an athlete to injury; (2) ensure appropriate training and conditioning of the athlete; (3) monitor environmental conditions to ensure safe participation; (4) select and maintain properly fitting protective equipment; and (5) educate parents, coaches, and athletes about the risks inherent to sports participation.

1-3 The coach should be responsible for designing an effective conditioning program and ensuring that protective equipment is of the highest quality, properly fitted, and properly maintained; able to apply proper first aid; certified in CPR/AED and first aid; and aware of the environmental factors that may adversely affect the athlete.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. What areas of specialization are encompassed under the general heading of sports medicine?
2. List some of the professional sports medicine organizations.
3. How should the sports medicine team work together to provide optimal health care for the athlete?
4. What are the responsibilities of a coach or fitness professional who becomes responsible for caring for an athlete when an athletic trainer is not available?
5. What are the specific roles of the athletic trainer in overseeing the total health care of the athlete?
6. Discuss the role of the team physician as an important member of the sports medicine team.
7. What special impact can other members of the sports medicine team have in providing health care for the athlete?

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. American College of Sports Medicine. 2017. *ACSM's resources for the personal trainer.* Baltimore, MD: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.
2. American College of Sports Medicine. 2016. Selected issues in injury and illness prevention and the team physician: A consensus statement. *Medicine & Science in Sports & Exercise* 48(1):159–171.
3. Andersen, J. 2010. Professional behaviors for athletic training students. *Athletic Therapy Today* 15(4):13.
4. Board of Certification. 2018. *Practice analysis,* 7th ed. Omaha, NE: Board of Certification.
5. Brukner, P., & Khan, K. 2016. Sports medicine: The team approach. In P. Brukner (ed.), *Clinical sports medicine,* 3rd rev. ed. Sydney: McGraw-Hill.
6. Brumels, K. 2008. Professional role complexity and job satisfaction of collegiate certified athletic trainers. *Journal of Athletic Training* 43(4):373.
7. Ciccolella, M. 2008. A public at risk: Personal fitness trainers without a standard of care. *Professionalization of Exercise Physiology* 11(7):10.
8. Courson, R., et al. 2014. Inter-association consensus statement on best practices for sports medicine management for secondary schools and colleges. *Journal of Athletic Training* 49(1):128–137.
9. Duehring, M. 2010. Profile of high school strength and conditioning coaches. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research* 24(2):538.
10. Dunn, W. 2007. Ethics in sports medicine. *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 35(5):840–844.
11. Grant, M. 2014. Developing expertise in strength and conditioning coaching. *Strength and Conditioning Journal* 36(1):9–15.
12. Hajart, A. 2013. The financial impact of an athletic trainer working as a physician extender in orthopedic practice. *Journal of Medical Management Practice* 29(4):250–254.
13. Hartshorn, M., et al. 2016. Profile of a strength and conditioning coach: Backgrounds, duties, and perceptions. *Strength & Conditioning Journal* 38(6):89–94.
14. Hayden, L. 2011. The role of ATs in helping coaches to facilitate return to play. *International Journal of Athletic Therapy & Training* 16(1):24.
15. Henry, T. 2009. Desirable qualities, attributes, and characteristics of successful athletic trainers—A national study. *Sport Journal* 12(2):1.
16. Herring, S., Kibler, W., & Putukian, M. 2013. Team physician consensus statement: 2013 Update. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise* 45(8):1618–1622.
17. Hoffman, J. 2011. *NSCA's guide to program design (science of strength and conditioning).* Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
18. Howley, E., & Thompson, D. 2016. *Fitness professionals handbook.* Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
19. Kirkland, M. 2005. Increasing diversity of practice settings for athletic trainers. *Athletic Therapy Today* 10:5:1.
20. Koller, D. 2016. Team physicians, sports medicine, and the law An update. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 35(2):245–255.
21. Lofshult, D. 2004. Personal fitness trainer certification. *IDEA Health & Fitness Source* 22(3):15.
22. Malek, M. H., Nalbone, D. P., Berger, D. E., & Coburn, J. W. 2002. Importance of health science education for personal fitness trainers. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research* 16(1):19–24.
23. Massey, C., & Vincent, J. 2013. A job analysis of major college female strength and conditioning coaches. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research* 27(7):2000–2012.
24. Massey, C. 2009. An analysis of the job of strength and conditioning coach for football at a Division II level. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research* 23(9):2493.
25. Matheson, G. 2005. Advocating injury prevention: The team physician's role. *Physician and Sports Medicine* 33(8):1.
26. Matheson, G. 2011. Return-to-play decisions: Are they the team physician's responsibility? *Clinical Journal of Sport Medicine* 21(1):25.
27. McLeod, T., & Bliven, K. 2013. The national sports safety in secondary schools benchmark (N4SB) study: Defining athletic training practice characteristics. *Journal of Athletic Training* 48(4):483–492.
28. Mensch, J., & Miller, G. 2008. *The athletic trainer's guide to psychosocial intervention and referral.* Thorofare, NJ: Slack.
29. Mensch, J., & Mitchell, M. 2008. Choosing a career in athletic training: Exploring the

perceptions of potential recruits. *Journal of Athletic Training* 43(1):70.
30. Nash, C. 2008. Sport coaches' perceived role frames and philosophies. *International Journal of Sports Science & Coaching* 3(4):538.
31. National Athletic Trainers' Association Education Council. 2011. *Athletic training educational competencies*, 5th ed. Dallas, TX: NATA.
32. National Athletic Trainers' Association. 2010. *Role delineation study*, 6th ed. Dallas, TX: NATA.
33. Pecca, F. 2014. Physician satisfaction with residency-trained athletic trainers as physician extenders. *International Journal of Athletic Therapy and Training* 19(2):1–3.
34. Peer, K. 2017. The changing context of sport and medicine's social contract with society: Implications for sports medicine ethics. *International Journal of Athletic Therapy & Training* 22(1):5–10.
35. Pittney, W. 2010. A qualitative examination of professional role commitment among athletic trainers working in the secondary school setting. *Journal of Athletic Training* 45(2):198–204.
36. Potter, B. 2006. Developing professional relationships with emergency medical services providers. *Athletic Therapy Today* 11(3):18.
37. Raab, S., & Wolfe, B. 2011. Characterizations of a quality certified athletic trainer. *Journal of Athletic Training* 46(6):672–679.
38. Sauers, E. 2011. A team approach: Demonstrating sport rehabilitation's effectiveness and enhancing patient care through clinical outcomes assessment. *Journal of Sport Rehabilitation* 20(1):3.
39. Testoni, D., & Hornik, C. 2013. Sports medicine and ethics. *American Journal of Bioethics* 13(10):4–12.
40. Vesci, B. 2010. Current evidence guiding clinical practice in athletic training. *Athletic Training & Sports Health Care: The Journal for the Practicing Clinician* 2(2):57.
41. Wagner, K. 2011. Working with athletic trainers. *Strength & Conditioning Journal* 33(1):53.
42. Wham, G. 2010. Key factors in providing appropriate medical care in secondary school athletics: Athletic training services and budget. *Athletic Therapy Today* 45(1):75–86.
43. Winterstein, A. 2010. The athletic trainer-physician relationship. Athletic training & sports health care. *The Journal for the Practicing Clinician* 2(4):155.
44. Winkelmann, Z., & Eberman, L. 2017. Characteristics of secondary school athletic trainers: Salary, job satisfaction, and perceived percentage of daily practice. *Athletic Training & Sports Health Care: The Journal for the Practicing Clinician.* 9(3):124–132.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

ACSM's resources for the personal trainer, 2017. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.

A guide for working and becoming certified as a personal fitness trainer.

Coburn, J., & Malek, M. 2011. *NSCA's essentials of personal training.* Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

NSCA's Essentials of Personal Training *is the ideal authoritative resource for personal trainers, health and fitness instructors, exercise scientists, and other fitness professionals.*

Hannum, S. 2000. *Professional behaviors in athletic training.* Thorofare, NJ: Slack.

Focuses on essentials of effective career development. Addresses many skills students will require to build their image as health care professionals, such as communication, critical thinking, networking, interpersonal skills, and recognition of cultural differences.

Prentice, W. 2017. *Principles of athletic training: A guide to evidence-based clinical practice*, 16th ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

Discusses the sports medicine team approach, paying particular attention to the role of the athletic trainer in providing health care to the athlete.

Prentice, W. 2017. *The role of the athletic trainer in sports medicine: An introduction for the secondary school student.* New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

Designed to introduce secondary school students who may be interested in pursuing a career in some aspect of health care to the profession of athletic training and the field of sports medicine.

Rehberg, R. 2013. *Sports emergency care: A team approach.* Thorofare, NJ: Slack.

Addresses the specific educational needs of athletic training and emergency medical services students who are preparing to handle emergency medical situations in the sports arena.

Van Ost, L., & Manfre, K. 2013. *Athletic training exam review: A student guide to success.* Thorofare, NJ: Slack.

This text emphasizes the roles and responsibilities of the student athletic trainer necessary to make him or her successful as a health care professional.

WEBSITES

American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons: www.aaos.org

Presents general public information and information to its members. The public information is in the form of patient education brochures and a description of the organization and a definition of orthopedics.

American College of Sports Medicine: www.acsm.org

The mission of the American College of Sports Medicine is to advance and integrate scientific research to provide educational and practical applications of exercise science and sports.

American Orthopaedic Society for Sports Medicine: www.sportsmed.org

Dedicated to educating health care professionals and the general public about sports medicine; access is provided to the American Journal of Sports Medicine and a wide variety of links to related sites.

American Sports Medicine Institute: www.asmi.org

The American Sports Medicine Institute's mission is to improve the understanding, prevention, and treatment of sports-related injuries through research and education. In addition to stating this mission, the site provides access to current research and journal articles.

National Athletic Trainers' Association: www.nata.org

Presents a description of the athletic training profession, the role of an athletic trainer, and how to become involved in athletic training.

National Collegiate Athletic Association (NCAA): www.ncaa.org

Provides general information about the NCAA and the publications that the NCAA circulates; is useful for those working in the collegiate setting.

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

2

©William E. Prentice

Organizing and Administering an Athletic Health Care Program

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Identify the rules of operation that should be enforced in an athletic health care program.
- Explain budgetary concerns for ordering supplies and equipment.
- Explain the importance of the preparticipation physical examination.
- Identify the records that an athletic health care program must maintain.
- Describe a well-designed athletic health care facility.

Operating an effective athletic health care program requires careful organization and administration.[19] This chapter is intended for the individual who at some point may assume some administrative responsibility for an athletic program, perhaps at a secondary or middle school, or even at a community college or small Division III college. In this case, some understanding of the considerations necessary for operating an effective athletic health care program is essential.[14] As stated in Chapter 1, an athletic administrator's consistent support of and commitment to an athletic health care program can have a tremendous impact on the success of the athletic program.[20]

This chapter looks at the administrative tasks required for successful operation of an athletic health care program, including facility design, policies and procedures, budget considerations, organizing preparticipation physical examinations, and record keeping.

ESTABLISHING RULES OF OPERATION FOR AN ATHLETIC HEALTH CARE PROGRAM

Every athletic health care program must develop policies and procedures that carefully delineate the daily routine of the program.[4,32] This is imperative for handling health problems and injuries.[23]

Every athletic health care program must develop policies and procedures that carefully delineate the daily routine of the program.

It is first necessary to decide exactly who will be taken care of in the athletic health care facility. The athletic administrator or school principal must decide the extent to which the athlete will be served. For example, will prevention and care activities be extended to athletes for the entire year, including summer and other vacations, or only during the competitive season? A policy should clarify whether students other than athletes, athletes from other schools, faculty, and staff are to receive care.[15,30] Often legal concerns and the school liability insurance dictate who, other than the athlete, is to be served.[16]

Providing Coverage

A concern of any athletic program is to try to provide the most qualified health care possible to the athlete.[5,14] Unfortunately, as indicated in Chapter 1, budgetary limitations often dictate who is responsible for overseeing the health care program for the athletes.[25] Ideally an institution hires a certified athletic trainer who is primarily responsible.[1,14] In

2–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

The members of the school board at All-American High School voted to allocate $25,000 to renovate a 25-by-40-foot storage space and to purchase new equipment for an athletic training health care facility. The athletic administrator has been asked to provide the school principal with a wish list of what should be included in this facility. It is estimated that the physical renovation will cost approximately $17,000.

? How may this space be best used, and what type of equipment should be purchased to maximize the effectiveness of this new facility?

some cases, schools rely on a nurse to provide care. And in other situations in which there are no athletic trainers or nurses, health care responsibility usually falls on the coach. Regardless of who is in charge of the health care program, policies must be established concerning how to best provide coverage to various athletic teams.[18] Secondary schools with limited available supervision may be able to provide athletic training facility coverage only in the afternoons and during vacation periods. Ideally, high-risk sports should have a certified athletic trainer and physician present at all practices and contests.[36]

Hiring a Certified Athletic Trainer in Secondary Schools

It would be ideal to have certified athletic trainers serve every secondary school in the United States.[1,15] Many of the physical problems that occur later from improperly managed sports injuries could be avoided if proper care from an athletic trainer had been provided initially. Many times a coach is in a situation without an athletic trainer and by default must assume the responsibility for athletic health care. However, this is certainly not an optimal situation. As long ago as 1998, based on a proposal from the American Academy of Pediatrics, the American Medical Association adopted a policy calling for certified athletic trainers to be employed in all high school athletic programs. Although this policy was simply a recommendation and not a requirement, it was a very positive statement supporting the efficacy of employing certified athletic trainers in the secondary schools.[3]

In 2003 the National Athletic Trainers' Association adopted a consensus statement to establish recommendations for the prevention, care, and appropriate management of athletic-related injury and illness specific to the secondary school-aged individual: "The athletic health care team may be comprised of appropriate health care professionals in consultation with administrators, coaches, parents and participants.[27] Appropriate health care professionals could be: certified athletic trainers, team physicians, consulting physicians, school nurses, physical therapists, emergency medical specialists (EMS), dentists, and other allied health care professionals.

"Appropriate medical care of the secondary-school-aged individual involves more than basic emergency care during sports participation. It encompasses the provision of many other health care services. While emergency medical care and event coverage are critical, appropriate medical care also includes activities of ongoing daily athletic health care. The athletic health care team should have a designated athletic health care provider(s) who is educated and qualified to:

1. Determine the individual's readiness to participate.
2. Promote safe and appropriate practice, competition, and treatment facilities.
3. Advise on the selection, fit, function and maintenance of athletic equipment.
4. Develop and implement a comprehensive emergency action plan.
5. Establish protocols regarding environmental conditions.
6. Develop injury and illness prevention strategies.
7. Provide for on-site recognition, evaluation and immediate treatment of injury and illness, with appropriate referrals.
8. Facilitate rehabilitation and reconditioning.
9. Provide for psychosocial consultation and referral.
10. Provide scientifically sound nutritional counseling and education.
11. Participate in the development and implementation of a comprehensive athletic health care administrative system (e.g. personal health information, policies and procedures, insurance, referrals)."[1]

Focus Box 2–1 explains how athletic trainers are employed in secondary schools.

Secondary School Student Athletes' Bill of Rights In 2013 a group called the Youth Sports Safety Alliance, composed of more than 100 professional organizations, released a list of proposed rules and recommendations called the Secondary School Student Athletes' Bill of Rights. This "bill" focuses on protecting students who participate in secondary school sports. It calls for health providers such as athletic trainers and/or doctors to be available at every secondary school participating in interscholastic athletics. *Focus Box 2–2* shows the recommendations included in the Secondary School Student Athletes' Bill of Rights.

FOCUS BOX 2–1

Looking to hire a certified athletic trainer?

1. *Hiring a certified athletic trainer in a faculty-athletic trainer capacity.* This individual is usually employed as a teacher in one of the school's classroom disciplines and performs athletic training duties on a part-time or extracurricular basis. In this instance, compensation usually is on the basis of released time from teaching, a stipend as a coach, or both.
2. *Employing a centrally placed certified athletic trainer for a school district.* In this case the athletic trainer, who may be full- or part-time, is a nonteacher who serves a number of schools. The advantage is savings; the disadvantage is that one individual cannot provide the level of service usually required by a typical school.
3. *Contracting with a clinic to provide a certified athletic trainer.* Most clinical athletic trainers see patients with sports-related injuries during the morning hours in the clinic. In the afternoons, athletic trainers' services are contracted out to local high schools or small colleges for game or practice coverage.

FOCUS BOX 2–2

Secondary School Student Athletes' Bill of Rights

I. Student Athletes have the right to be coached by individuals who are well trained in sport-specific safety and to be monitored by athletic health care team members.
II. Student Athletes have the right to quality, regular preparticipation examinations and each athlete has the right to participate under a comprehensive concussion management plan.
III. Student Athletes have the right to participate in sporting activities on safe, clean playing surfaces, in both indoor and outdoor facilities.
IV. Student Athletes have the right to utilize equipment and uniforms that are safe, fitted appropriately and routinely maintained, and to appropriate personnel trained in proper removal of equipment in case of injury.
V. Student Athletes have the right to participate safely in all environmental conditions where play follows approved guidelines and medical policies and procedures, with a hydration plan in place.
VI. Student Athletes have the right to a safe playing environment with venue-specific emergency action plans that are coordinated by the athletic health care team and regularly rehearsed with local emergency personnel.
VII. Student Athletes have the right to privacy of health information and proper referral for medical, psychosocial, and nutritional counseling.
VIII. Student Athletes have the right to participate in a culture that finds "playing through pain" unacceptable unless there has been a medical assessment.
IX. Student Athletes have the right to immediate, on-site injury assessments with decisions made by qualified sports medicine professionals.
X. Student Athletes have the right, along with their parents, to the latest information about the benefits and potential risks of participation in competitive sports, including access to statistics on fatalities and catastrophic injuries to youth athletes.

Reprinted with permission from the National Athletic Trainers' Association. http://www.youthsportssafetyalliance.org/sites/default/files/docs/Athletes-Bill-of-Rights.pdf.

Athletic Health Care Facility Policies

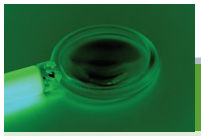
The athletic health care facility should be used only for the prevention and care of sports injuries.[5,14] Too often the athletic health care facility becomes a meeting or club room for teams and athletes. Unless definite rules are established and practiced, room cleanliness and sanitation become an impossible chore. *Focus Box 2–3* lists some important athletic health care facility policies. Specific policies regarding emergency protocols (Chapter 8), lightning (Chapter 10), heat stress (Chapter 10), and fluid replacement (Chapter 10) will be discussed later in the text.

Keeping Facilities Clean

The practice of good hygiene and sanitation is of the utmost importance in an athletic health care program.[32] Preventing the spread of infectious diseases such as MRSA, which is a highly contagious bacterial infection (see Chapter 23), is everyone's responsibility. Athletes should be surrounded by as hygienic an environment as possible, and each individual must practice sound health habits. Chapter 9 discusses the management of blood-borne pathogens. It is important to be aware of and adhere to guidelines for the operation of an athletic care facility as dictated by the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).

Focus Box 2–4 lists guidelines to help maintain a sanitary environment.

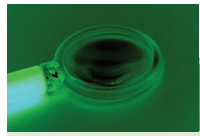
Cleaning responsibilities in most schools are divided between the athletic training or coaching staff and the maintenance crew. Care of permanent



FOCUS BOX 2–3

Rules and policies of the athletic health care facility

- *Cleated shoes are not allowed.* Dirt and debris tend to cling to cleated shoes; therefore cleated shoes should be removed before athletes enter the athletic training facility.
- *Game equipment must remain outside.* Because game equipment such as balls and bats adds to the sanitation problem, it should be kept out of the athletic health care facility. Athletes must be continually reminded that the athletic health care facility is not a storage room for sports equipment.
- *Shoes must be kept off treatment tables.* Because shoes tend to contaminate treatment tables, they must be removed before any care is given to the athlete.
- *Athletes should shower before receiving treatment.* The athlete should make it a habit to shower before being treated if the treatment is not an emergency. This procedure helps keep tables and therapeutic modalities sanitary.
- *Roughhousing and profanity are not allowed.* Athletes must be continually reminded that the athletic health care facility is for injury care and prevention. Horseplay and foul language lower the basic purpose of the athletic health care facility.
- *No food or smokeless tobacco is allowed.*



FOCUS BOX 2–4

Suggestions for maintaining a sanitary environment

- Sweep the gymnasium floors daily.
- Clean and disinfect drinking fountains, showers, sinks, urinals, and toilets daily.
- Air out and sanitize lockers frequently.
- Clean wrestling mats and wall mats daily.
- Urge the use of clean dry towels each day for each individual athlete.
- Issue individual equipment and clothing to each athlete to avoid skin irritations.
- Do not allow swapping of equipment and clothing.
- Launder and change clothing frequently.
- Allow wet clothing to dry thoroughly before the athlete wears it again.

building structures and trash disposal are usually the responsibilities of maintenance, whereas upkeep of specialized equipment falls within the province of the coaches or athletic trainers. Division of routine cleaning responsibilities may be organized as suggested in *Focus Box 2–5*.

Good hygiene and sanitation are essential for an athletic training program.

Establishing Health Habits for the Athlete

To promote good health among the athletes, the coach and/or the athletic trainer should encourage sound health habits. *Focus Box 2–6* provides a checklist that may be a useful guide for coaches, athletic trainers, and athletes.

DEVELOPING A RISK MANAGEMENT PLAN

The individual overseeing an athletic health care program must work in conjunction with the appropriate administrative personnel to develop a systematic risk management plan that covers security issues, fire safety, electrical and equipment safety, and emergency action plans.[6,12,21,26]

Developing an Emergency Action Plan

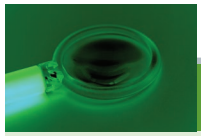
In cooperation with existing community-based emergency health care delivery systems, the individual developing an athletic health care program should develop a systematic plan for accessing the emergency medical system and subsequent transportation of the injured athlete to an emergency care facility.[6,12,21,26] Meetings should be scheduled periodically with EMSs or paramedics who work in the community to make certain that they understand their role as providers of emergency health care.[14] It is important to communicate the special considerations for dealing with athletic equipment issues before an emergency arises.[6] Chapter 8 discusses the emergency action plan in detail. See *Focus Box 8–1* for an example of an emergency action plan. The Emergency Action Plan should be reviewed by administrators and revised on a regular basis.

Providing Emergency Phones

Individuals responsible for overseeing an athletic health care program as well as athletic personnel who are conducting practices or competitions should all have access to wireless phones for the purpose of contacting or communicating with emergency services or medical health care providers should a need arise. Walkie-talkies are also useful when practices or games occur at several different facilities simultaneously. These devices can greatly enhance communication capabilities.

Crisis Management

Crisis management must be a central component of an institution's risk management program.[8] A crisis



FOCUS BOX 2–5

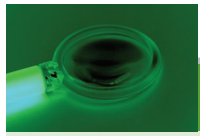
Cleaning responsibilities

The maintenance crew should:

- Sweep floors daily.
- Clean and disinfect sinks and built-in tubs daily.
- Mop and disinfect hydrotherapy area twice a week.
- Refill paper towel and drinking cup dispensers as needed.
- Empty wastebaskets and dispose of trash daily.

The athletic training staff should:

- Clean and disinfect treatment tables daily.
- Clean and disinfect hydrotherapy modalities daily.
- Clean and polish other therapeutic modalities weekly.



FOCUS BOX 2–6

Recommended health practices checklist

- Are the athletes medically cleared to participate?
- Is each athlete insured?
- Do the athletes promptly report injuries, illnesses, and skin disorders to the coach or the athletic trainer?
- Do the athletes practice good daily living habits of resting, sleeping, and proper nutrition?
- Do they shower after practice?
- Do they dry thoroughly and cool off before departing from the gymnasium?
- Do they avoid drinking from a common water dispenser?
- Do they avoid using a common towel?
- Do they avoid exchanging gym clothes with teammates?
- Do they practice good foot hygiene?
- Do they avoid contact with teammates who have a contagious disease or infection such as MRSA or herpes?

could be caused by weather, public health, or act of terror emergencies.[22] Crisis management involves knowing how to respond to a crisis situation quickly and efficiently to protect and ensure the health, safety, and well-being of all those who might inadvertently become victims of the crisis.[8]

RECORD KEEPING

Record keeping is a necessary responsibility in an athletic health care program. **There is no choice when it comes to keeping records!** Keeping records and filling out forms is time-consuming and to some extent annoying. Nevertheless, in a time in which lawsuits are the rule rather than the exception, accurate and up-to-date records are an absolute necessity. Medical records are also critical for accurate and timely assessment and evaluation of practices as well as essential for documentation of practices and activities to ensure that responsibilities and expectations are being met. In addition to keeping medical records, injury reports, treatment logs, personal information cards, injury evaluations and progress notes, supply and equipment inventories, and annual reports must be maintained. In today's health care system, electronic records have for the most part replaced paper records.

Keeping adequate records is of major importance in the athletic health care program.

Administering Preparticipation Health Examinations

The primary purpose of the preparticipation health examination is to identify whether an athlete is at risk before he or she participates in a specific sport.[2,3,13,26,34] The preparticipation examination should consist of a medical history, a physical examination, and a brief orthopedic screening. Information obtained during this examination will establish a baseline to which comparisons may be made following injury.[3] The examination may reveal conditions that could warrant disqualification from certain sports.[2] The examination will also satisfy insurance and liability issues (see Chapter 3).

Preparticipation health examination:

- Medical history
- Physical examination
- Maturity assessment
- Orthopedic screening

The preparticipation physical may be administered on an individual basis by a personal physician (a medical doctor or an osteopath), or it may be done using a station examination system with a team of examiners.[34] Examination by a personal physician has the advantage of yielding an in-depth history and an ideal physician-patient relationship. A disadvantage of this type of examination is that it may not be directed to detection of factors that predispose the athlete to a sports injury.[3]

The most thorough and sport-specific type of preparticipation examination is the station examination.[34] This method can provide the athlete with a detailed examination in a short time. A team of nine people is needed to examine 30 or more athletes. The team should include two physicians, two medically trained nonphysicians (nurse, athletic

2–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

All-American High School offers 18 sports, which are divided into 6 fall, 6 winter, and 6 spring sports. The school has a total of approximately 500 athletes, and approximately 200 of them are involved in the fall sports. A preparticipation exam must be arranged and administered so that each athlete can be cleared for competition.

? How can the preparticipation exams be set up to most efficiently clear 200 athletes for competition in the fall sports?

trainer, physical therapist, or physician's assistant), and five managers, athletic training students, or assistant coaches who are assigned specific tasks during the preparticipation exam based on their level of expertise.

A preparticipation exam should include all of the following items.

Medical History A medical history form should be completed before the physical examination and orthopedic screening; its purpose is to identify any past or existing medical problems. This form should be updated for each athlete every year. Medical histories should be closely reviewed by the physician and the athletic trainer so that they will be prepared should some medical emergency arise. Necessary participation release forms and insurance information should be collected along with the medical history (Figure 2–1).

Physical Examination The physical examination should include assessment of height, weight, body composition, blood pressure, pulse, vision, skin, teeth, ears, nose, throat, heart and lung function,[10] abdomen, lymphatics, genitalia, maturation index, and—if funds allow—urinalysis and blood work (Figure 2–2).

Maturity Assessment Maturity assessment should be part of the physical examination as a means of protecting the young athlete. Most commonly used methods are the circumpubertal (sexual maturity), skeletal, and dental assessments. The Pubertal Development Scale (PDS) is a self-report instrument commonly used to report pubertal growth in adolescent males and females.[28] The adolescents are asked about growth, body hair, skin changes (especially pimples). Additionally, males are asked about changes to voice and growth of facial hair and females are asked about breast development and onset of menstruation. Tanner's five stages of assessment, indicating maturity of secondary sexual characteristics, is the most expedient for use in the station method of examination (see Chapter 25 for detailed discussion).[33]

Orthopedic Screening Orthopedic screening may be done as part of the physical examination or separately by a physician or an athletic trainer. An example of a very quick orthopedic screening examination appears in Table 2–1; it usually takes about 90 seconds. A more detailed orthopedic examination may be conducted to assess strength, range of motion, and stability at various joints.

Sport Disqualification As discussed previously, sports participation involves risks. Most conditions that warrant a recommendation for disqualification can be identified during a preparticipation health evaluation and should be noted in the medical history.[3] Because of the Americans with Disabilities Act, physicians cannot legally disqualify athletes from competing because of an existing medical problem. They can only recommend that the athlete voluntarily choose not to participate. In general, the athlete who has lost one of two paired organs such as eyes or kidneys is cautioned against playing a collision or contact sport.[2] Such an athlete should be counseled into participating in a noncontact sport. The athlete with one testicle, or one or both that are undescended, must be apprised that there is a small risk, which is substantially minimized with the use of an athletic supporter and a protective device.

Release of Medical Records

The coach, athletic trainer, or other members of the sports medicine team may not release an athlete's medical records to anyone either in writing or verbally without written consent. If the athlete wishes to have medical records released to colleges or universities, professional sports organizations, insurance companies, the news media, or any other group or individual, he, she, the parent, or the guardian must sign a waiver that specifies which information is to be released. The only exception to this is the appropriate disclosure of information among those professionals who are involved in providing health care to the injured individual.

HIPAA Regulations The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) regulates how any member of the sports medicine team who has health information about an athlete can share that information with others.[24,35] The regulation guarantees that athletes have access to their medical records, gives them more control over how their protected health information is used and disclosed, and provides a clear avenue of recourse if their medical privacy is compromised. Authorization by an athlete to release medical information is not necessary on a per-injury basis. A blanket authorization signed by the athlete at the beginning of the year will suffice for all injuries and treatment done during the course of participation for that year. These one-time, blanket authorizations

MEDICAL HISTORY FORM

NAME: _____ ID#: _____
BIRTHDATE: _____ SPORT: _____TODAY'S DATE: _____
STATUS: NEW_____ RETURNING _____ SIGNATURE_____

Please answer all questions and explain the yes answers.
1. Have you ever had or been told you have any of the following? Circle your response, date beside yes answers, and explain below.

YES/NO Heat Exhaustion	YES/NO Lung Disease	YES/NO Ulcers	YES/NO Frequent Diarrhea
YES/NO Heat Stroke	YES/NO Kidney Disease/Stones	YES/NO Bleeding from Rectum	YES/NO Migraine Headaches
YES/NO Heart Murmur	YES/NO Rheumatic Fever	YES/NO Blood in Urine	YES/NO Hayfever
YES/NO Heart Palpitations	YES/NO Eating Disorder	YES/NO Unusual Bruising	YES/NO Mononucleosis
YES/NO Diabetes	YES/NO Skin Problems/Rash	YES/NO Unusual Bleeding	YES/NO Weight Loss
YES/NO High Blood Pressure	YES/NO Muscle Cramps (greater than 10 lbs)	YES/NO Hernia	YES/NO High Cholesterol
YES/NO Epilepsy or Seizures	YES/NO Recurring Infections (skin, sinus, etc.)	YES/NO Depression	
YES/NO Anemia	YES/NO Asthma	YES/NO Recurring Anxiety	

Explain: _____
_____

YES/NO 2. Have you had any other major illnesses? Date and Explain: _____
_____

YES/NO 3. Have you ever had surgery? Date and Explain: _____
_____

YES/NO 4. Have you ever been hospitalized for a reason other than surgery? Date and Explain: _____

YES/NO 5. Are you missing any of the following: kidney, eye, testicle (or undescended testicle), or any other organ?
Explain: _____

YES/NO 6. Have you ever experienced significant or recurrent cough, shortness of breath, wheezing, chest pain, chest tightness, or near fainting with exercise? Explain: _____

YES/NO 7. Do you ever feel your heart beating irregular, too fast, or skipping beats? Explain: _____

YES/NO 8a. Are you allergic to any medicines? Explain: _____

YES/NO 8b. Do you have any other allergies (i.e., insect bites, foods, etc.)? Explain: _____

YES/NO 9. Have you been tested for sickle cell trait? Result: _____

YES/NO 10. Do you wear glasses or contact lenses while participating in sports? _____

YES/NO 11. Do you have a broken, chipped, loose, or missing tooth or dental plate? Explain: _____

YES/NO 12. Have you ever fainted? When? _____ Explain: _____

YES/NO 13. Have you ever had a concussion (head injury with or without loss of consciousness)? How many? _____
Date(s): _____

YES/NO 14. Have you ever suffered a neck injury, stinger, or burner? Date(s): _____
Did you have numbness, tingling, weakness, or paralysis? _____

YES/NO 15. Have you ever broken/dislocated a bone/joint (include stress fractures)? Date: _____ Which bone/joint: _____
Date: _____ Which bone/joint: _____

YES/NO 16. Have you had any musculoskeletal injury in the past 3 years? Explain: _____
Is it completely healed? _____

YES/NO 17. Does any joint feel as if it is slipping? _____

YES/NO 18. Do you have a pin, plate, screw or anything metal in your body? _____

YES/NO 19. Do you wear any protective or assistive devices? (e.g., Knee brace) _____

20. Is there a family history of: Family members (e.g., Father, Sister)
YES/NO Heart Disease or Marfan's Syndrome _____ YES/NO High Cholesterol _____
YES/NO Cancer _____ YES/NO Diabetes ____
YES/NO High Blood Pressure _____ YES/NO Other Significant Illnesses or Conditions____
YES/NO Heart Attack or Cardiac Death before Age 50 _____

YES/NO 21. Have you ever been medically disqualified or restricted from participation in a sport or exercise program?
Explain: _____

YES/NO 22. Are you taking any medications currently or routinely (including birth control)? _____
Drug Dose Times/Day_____

YES/NO 23. Are you currently taking supplements to improve performance or for weight control?_____

YES/NO 24. Do you use any tobacco products (cigarettes, chewing tobacco, cigars)? Explain: _____

YES/NO 25. Do you use alcohol? If yes, how much and how often? _____

YES/NO 26. Has anyone ever suggested you need to cut down on your drinking or have you ever had any negative consequences from drinking (injury, ER visit, citation, DUI, etc.)? _____

YES/NO 27. Do you use recreational drugs? If yes, what do you use? _____

YES/NO 28. Do you feel stressed or under pressure? _____

YES/NO 29. Do you experience periods of depression, sadness, or hopelessness? Explain: _____

YES/NO 30. Do you have concerns about your weight? _____

YES/NO 31. Have you ever had issues with disordered eating ?_____

FOR WOMEN ONLY

32. Date of last menstrual period _____

YES/NO 33. Have you ever had a PAP smear? If so, when?_____

34. My periods are now (circle one):
Regular (every 28–35 days) Irregular (every 36 days or more/or less than 21 days) Absent (no periods for 3 months)

YES/NO 35. Do you take birth control pills for any reason? Explain: _____

YES/NO 36. Do you have any gynecological problems (i.e., cramps, PMS, discharge, etc.) Explain: _____

YES/NO 37. Have you ever missed your period for 6 months or more? Explain: _____

YES/NO 38. Have you ever had a sexually transmitted disease? Explain: _____

DO NOT WRITE BELOW THIS LINE

REQUIRED IMMUNIZATIONS VERIFIED? YES/NO
CLEARED /NOT CLEARED/ PENDING
CLINICIAN'S COMMENTS: _____
_____
CLINICIAN'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

FIGURE 2–1 **Sample medical history form.**

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION FORM

NAME: _____ ID#: _____
BIRTHDATE: _____ SPORT: _____TODAY'S DATE: _____
STATUS: NEW_____ RETURNING _____ SIGNATURE: _____

HEIGHT: _____

WEIGHT: _____ BODY MASS INDEX (BMI): _____ % Body Fat: _____

RESTING PULSE: _____

BLOOD PRESSURE (Seated): _____ (Supine): _____ (Standing): _____

VISION: Right Eye 20/_____ Corrected? Yes/No
Glasses_____ Contacts_____
Left Eye 20/_____ Corrected? Yes/No
Glasses_____ Contacts_____
PUPILS: Equal_____ Reactive to Light_____

MUSCULOSKELETAL REGIONS

	Normal	Problems
Neck		
Back		
Shoulder		
Elbow		
Wrist		
Hand/Finger		
Hip		
Knee		
Ankle/Lower Leg		
Foot/Toes		

GENERAL MEDICAL

	Normal	Problems
Heart		
Respiratory/Lungs		
Lymph Nodes		
Neurological		
Skin		
Breast		
Genital		
Eyes		
Ears, Nose, Throat		
Urinary		
Psych		

COMMENTS: _____
_____
_____
Physician/ Athletic Trainer Signature _____ Date: _____

FIGURE 2–2 **Sample physical examination form.**

TABLE 2–1 Orthopedic Screening Examination

Activity and Instruction	To Determine
Stand facing examiner	Acromioclavicular joints; general symmetry
Look at ceiling, floor, over both shoulders; touch ears to shoulders	Cervical spine motion
Shrug shoulders (examiner resists)	Trapezius strength
Abduct shoulders 90 degrees (examiner resists at 90 degrees)	Deltoid strength
Full external rotation of arms	Shoulder motion
Flex and extend elbows	Elbow motion
Arms at sides, elbows 90 degrees flexed; pronate and supinate wrists	Elbow and wrist motion
Spread fingers; make fist	Hand or finger motion and deformities
Tighten (contract) quadriceps; relax quadriceps	Symmetry and knee effusion; ankle effusion
Perform a lunge with each leg	Hip, knee, and ankle motion
Stand with back to examiner	Shoulder symmetry; scoliosis
Knees straight, touch toes	Scoliosis, hip motion, hamstring tightness
Raise up on toes, raise heels	Calf symmetry, leg strength

must indicate clearly what information may be released, to whom, and for what length of time.[24]

FERPA Regulations The Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act (FERPA) is a law that protects the privacy of student educational records. It has been suggested that in some instances medical records should be kept along with a student's educational records and thus the right to privacy of medical records would be protected under FERPA instead of HIPAA. FERPA gives parents certain rights with respect to their children's educational records.[35] These rights transfer to the student when he or she reaches the age of 18 or attends a school beyond the high school level. Students to whom the rights have been transferred are "eligible students." Parents or eligible students have the right to inspect and review the student's educational records maintained by the school. Parents or eligible students have the right to request that a school correct records that they believe to be inaccurate or misleading. Schools must have written permission from the parent or eligible student to release any information from a student's educational records.

Injury Reports

An injury report serves as a record for future reference (Figure 2–3). If the emergency procedures followed are questioned at a later date, a person's memory of the details may be somewhat hazy, but a report completed on the spot provides specific information. In a litigation situation, questions may be asked about an injury that occurred 3 years in the past. All injury reports should be documented in the athletic trainers' records file. The reports should be copied to the physician and the school's health center.

Treatment Log

Each athletic health care facility should have a sign-in log available for the athlete who receives any service. Emphasis is placed on recording treatments for the athlete who is receiving daily therapy for an injury. As with injury records, treatment logs often have the status of legal documents and are used to establish certain facts in a civil litigation, an insurance action, or a criminal action following injury. These are subject to HIPAA and FERPA regulation and must be kept private.

Personal Information Card

An athlete's personal information should be maintained in a file card or database. This card is completed by the athlete at the time of the health examination and serves as a means of contacting the family, personal physician, and insurance company in case of emergency. This information is efficiently stored on a PDA if available.

Injury Evaluation and Progress Notes

The injured athlete should be evaluated by an athletic trainer, physical therapist, or physician who must record this information in some consistent format. If no athletic trainer or physician is available, the coach should either recommend to the parents or make arrangements for the athlete to be seen by a local physician, who must document the diagnosis in a medical record.

ATHLETE/PATIENT INJURY RECORD FORM

Name _____ **Sport** _____ **Date:** ___/ ___/ ___ **Time:** _____ **Injury record number:** _____

Player I.D. _____ **Age:** _____ **Location:** _____ **Intercollegiate-nonintercollegiate**

Initial injury **Recheck** **Reinjury** **Preseason—Practice—Game** **Incurred while participating in sport: yes** _____ **no** _____

Description: **How did it happen?** _____

_____

Initial impression: _____

_____

_____

SITE OF INJURY

1 Right
2 Left
3 Proximal
4 Distal
5 Anterior
6 Posterior
7 Medial
8 Lateral
9 Other

SITE OF EVALUATION

1 Health service
2 Athletic Trn clinic
3 Site-Competition
4 _____

PROCEDURES

1 Physical exam
2 X-ray
3 Splint
4 Wrap
5 Cast
6 Aspiration
7 Other

DISPOSITION

1 Health service
2 Athletic trainer
3 Hospital
4 Physician
5 Other

BODY PART

1 Head
2 Face
3 Eye
4 Nose
5 Ear
6 Mouth
7 Neck
8 Thorax
9 Ribs
10 Sternum
11 Upper back
12 Lower back
13 Shoulder
14 Rotator cuff
15 AC joint
16 Glenohumeral
17 Sternoclavicular
18 Upper arm
19 Elbow
20 Forearm
21 Wrist
22 Hand
23 Thumb
24 Finger
25 MP joint
26 PIP joint
27 Abdomen
28 Hip
29 Thigh
30 Knee
31 Patella
32 Lower leg
33 Ankle
34 Achilles tendon
35 Foot
36 Toes
37 Other

REFERRAL

1 Orthopedic
2 Neurological
3 Int. Med.
4 Mental health
5 ENT
6 Dentist
7 Other

NONTRAUMATIC

1 Dermatological
2 Allergy
3 Influenza
4 Urinary
5 Genitourinary
6 Systemic infection
7 Local infection
8 Other

DISPOSITION OF INJURY

1 No part.
2 Part part.
3 Full part.

STRUCTURE

1 Skin
2 Muscle
3 Fascia
4 Bone
5 Nerve
6 Fat pad
7 Tendon
8 Ligament
9 Cartilage
10 Capsule
11 Compartment
12 Dental
13 _____

NATURE OF INJURY

1 Contusion
2 Strain
3 Sprain
4 Fracture
5 Rupture
6 Tendonitis
7 Bursitis
8 Myositis
9 Laceration
10 Concussion
11 Avulsion
12 Abrasion
13 _____

Degree
1° 2° 3°

Treatment plan _____

Medication _____

Prescription administered
1 Antibiotics
2 Antiinflammatory
3 Decongestant
4 Analgesic
5 Muscle relaxant
6 Enzyme
7 _____

INJECTIONS

1 Corticosteroids
2 Antibiotics
3 Analgesics
4 _____

Previous injury _____

_____

Physician/Athletic Trainer Signature

FIGURE 2–3 **Athletic injury record form.** Courtesy D. Bailey, California State University at Long Beach

Supply and Equipment Inventory

A major responsibility of anyone who oversees athletic health care is to manage a budget, most of which is spent on equipment and supplies. Every year an inventory must be conducted and recorded on such

A significant problem often facing athletic administrators is obtaining an adequate budget.

items as new equipment that is needed, equipment that needs to be replaced or repaired, and expendable supplies that need replenishing.

Annual Reports

Most athletic administrators require an annual report on the functions of the athletic health care program. This report serves as a means for making program changes and improvements. It commonly includes the number of athletes served, a survey of the number and types of injuries, an analysis of the program, and recommendations for future improvements.

DEVELOPING A BUDGET

One of the major problems administrators face is to obtain a budget of sufficient size to permit the institution to perform a creditable job of providing health care to the athlete.[17] Many high schools experience difficulty in providing sufficient funding for athletic health care except for the purchase of tape, bandages, and a medical bag that contains a minimum amount of equipment.[30] Many schools fail to provide a room and any of the special facilities that are needed to establish an effective athletic health care program. Some school boards and administrators fail to recognize that the functions performed in the athletic health care facility are an essential component of the athletic program and that even if no specialist is used, the facilities are nonetheless necessary.[7] Colleges and universities do not usually face this problem to the extent that high schools do. By and large, athletic health care is recognized as an important aspect of the college athletic program.

2–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

One of the responsibilities of overseeing an athletic health care program is maintaining accurate records for every athlete.

? What kinds of records or types of information should be included in these records?

Budgetary needs vary considerably within programs; some require only a few thousand dollars, whereas others spend hundreds of thousands of dollars. The amount spent on building and equipping an athletic health care facility, of course, is entirely a matter of local option. In purchasing equipment, immediate needs as well as availability of personnel to operate specialized equipment should be kept in mind.[7,30]

Budget records should be kept on file so that they are available for use in projecting the following year's budgetary needs. They present a picture of the distribution of current funds and serve to substantiate future budgetary requests. Expenditures for individual items vary in accordance with different administrative philosophies. An annual inventory must be conducted at the end of the year or before replenishing supplies and equipment. Accurate records must be kept to justify future requests.[29]

Ordering Supplies and Equipment

Supplies are expendable and usually are for injury prevention, first aid, and management. Examples of supplies are athletic tape, germicides, and massage lotion. The term *equipment* refers to those items that are not expendable. Equipment may be further divided into fixed and nonfixed. Fixed equipment does not necessarily mean that it cannot be moved but that it is not usually removed from the athletic health care facility. Examples of fixed equipment are icemakers, weight equipment, and electrical therapeutic modalities. Nonfixed equipment refers to nonexpendable items that are less fixed, that may be part of an emergency or field kit, or that may be at the sport site. Examples are blankets, scissors, and training kits. *Focus Boxes 2–7 and 2–8* provide a list of supplies for the athletic health care facility and for a field kit.

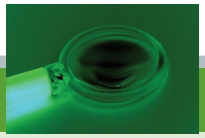
Equipment may be fixed or nonfixed.

Purchasing may be done through direct buy or competitive bid.

Purchasing Systems Purchasing of supplies and equipment must be done through either direct buy or competitive bid. For expensive purchases, an institutional purchasing agent is sent to competing local vendors who quote a price on specified supplies or equipment. Orders are generally placed with the lowest bidder. Smaller purchases or emergency purchases may be made directly from a single vendor.

Additional Budget Considerations

In addition to supplies and equipment, other costs may be included in the operation of an athletic health care program; these costs include telephone and postage, contracts with physicians or clinics for services, ongoing maintenance of equipment (i.e., modalities), professional liability insurance, memberships in professional organizations, the purchase of professional journals or textbooks, travel and expenses for attending professional



FOCUS BOX 2–7

Recommended basic health care facility supplies

Tape

White adhesive, 1½ inch
White adhesive, 1 inch
Liteguard, 2 inch
Elastic, 2 inch
Elastic, 1 inch
Prewrap

Bandages

Bandage strips
Telfa, 2 by 3
Band-Aid Clear Patches
Gauze, 4 by 4 (sterile)
Elastic Wraps, 3, 4, 6 inch
Steri Strips, ¼ inch

Foam and Felt

1-inch felt
⅛-inch adhesive foam
Moleskin

Braces and Splints

Finger splints
Air splint, leg
Velcro, 1 inch (both sides)
Knee immobilizer
Ankle brace, left
Ankle brace, right
Thermoplastic material, 4 inch
Cervical collar (small, medium, large)
Heel cups (medium, large)
Patella strap, large
Wrist immobilizer (left, right, universal)
Ankle braces (xx-small, x-small, small, medium, large, x-large)
Triangular bandage
Slings
Nose guard
Elbow sleeves
Thigh sleeves
Back support (x-small, small, medium, large, x-large)
Knee sleeves
Stockinet, 3 inch

Modalities

Flex All, 1 gallon
Topical analgesic, 5 lb tub
Skin lubricant, 5 lb tub
Gray T-band
Black T-band
Heat packs (medium, large)
Ice bags
Plastic-wrap (small, large)
Lotion, 1 gallon

First Aid

Automated External Defibrillator (AED)
Pocket mask
Cotton rolls (nose plugs)
Tongue depressors
Cotton tip applicators
Non-latex gloves (medium, large)
Cotton balls
Skin-preps
Save-A-Tooth
Penlights
Biohazard bags
Safety goggles

Taping Accessories

Heel and lace pads
Tape adherent spray
Tape remover

Sharps

Scissors
Tweezers
Nail clippers (large, small)
Tape cutters
Shark refill blades

Antiseptics

Hydrogen peroxide
Rubbing alcohol
Sterile water

Skin Treatments

Antibiotic ointment
Second Skin
Baby powder

Eye Treatment

Eye wash
Penlights

Crutches

Large
Medium
Small
Large aluminum

Water

Bottle carriers
Water bottles
Coolers (3, 7, 10 gallon)
Chest

Other

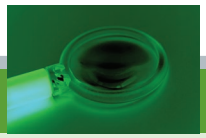
Stools
Spray bottles
Bucket
Cloth towels

meetings, and clothing to be worn in the athletic health care facility.

CONSIDERATIONS IN PLANNING AN ATHLETIC HEALTH CARE FACILITY

For a school or athletic administrator who may have to assume responsibility for planning an athletic health care facility, some guidance and understanding of what should be included in that facility is necessary.[11]

Essential to any sports program is the maximum use of facilities and the most effective use of equipment and supplies.[31] The sports medicine or athletic health care facility must be specially designed to meet the many requirements of an athletic injury management program (Figure 2–4).[31] The size and the layout of the athletic health care facility depend on the scope of the athletic program, including the size and number of teams and athletes, what sports are offered, and the daily traffic flow



FOCUS BOX 2–8

Recommended basic field kit supplies

Adhesive bandages
Tape cutters
Scissors
Eye cover
Save-A-Tooth
Petroleum jelly
Razor blades
Sterile eye irrigating solution
Non-latex gloves
Biohazard bags
Tape spray
Skin lubricant
Gauze pads: 2 by 2, 3 by 3, or 4 by 4
Heel cup
Sling
Hydrogen peroxide
Finger splints
Cotton-tipped applicators
Tongue depressors
Topical analgesic
Lotion
Sunscreen
Tape supplies:
- white adhesive
  - 1 inch, 1½ inch
- heel and lace pads
- prewrap
- elastic adhesive
  - 1 inch, 2 inch, 3 inch

Elastic wraps:
- 2 inch, 3 inch, 4 inch, 6 inch, double 4 inch, double 6 inch

Alcohol
Reusable elastic wrap
Adhesive foam
Adhesive felt
Penlight
Contact lens cases
Contact lens wetting solution
Mirror

patterns in the athletic health care facility.[9] The athletic health care facility should be designed to meet regulations and guidelines established by the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).

Ideally, the athletic health care facility should be designed from a new space. Realistically, it is more likely that an athletic health care facility in a high school would be constructed in an existing classroom; in an old locker room, weight room, team room, cafeteria, or library; in a corner of the gymnasium; or, in some cases, in a storage or a custodian's closet. Therefore, this new athletic health care facility will need to be designed and adapted based on where power supplies, water supplies, heating and air conditioning, and drains already exist. Regardless of where the athletic health care facility is located, it should be considered a medical care facility and organized appropriately.

An area of less than 1,000 square feet is impractical. An athletic health care facility 1,000 to 1,200 square feet in size is satisfactory for most schools. The 1,200-square-foot area (40 feet by 30 feet) permits handling a number of athletes at one time and allows ample room for the bulky equipment needed. A facility of this size is well suited for pregame preparation. Careful planning will determine whether a larger area is needed or is desirable.[11]

The athletic health care facility should be located immediately adjacent to the men's and women's locker rooms. The facility should have an outside entrance from the field or court, making it unnecessary to bring injured athletes in through the building. This door also permits access when the rest of the building is not in use.

The athletic health care facility should be organized to provide distinct areas for (1) taping and bandaging; (2) injury treatment using rehabilitative equipment and/or therapeutic modalities; (3) a wet area for whirlpools, a refrigerator, and an ice machine; and (4) an area where a physician or an athletic trainer can conduct evaluations in privacy. This could be either a separate room or an area separated from the rest

The athletic health care facility is a multipurpose area used for first aid, therapy and exercise rehabilitation, injury prevention, medical procedures such as the physical examination, and athletic training administration.

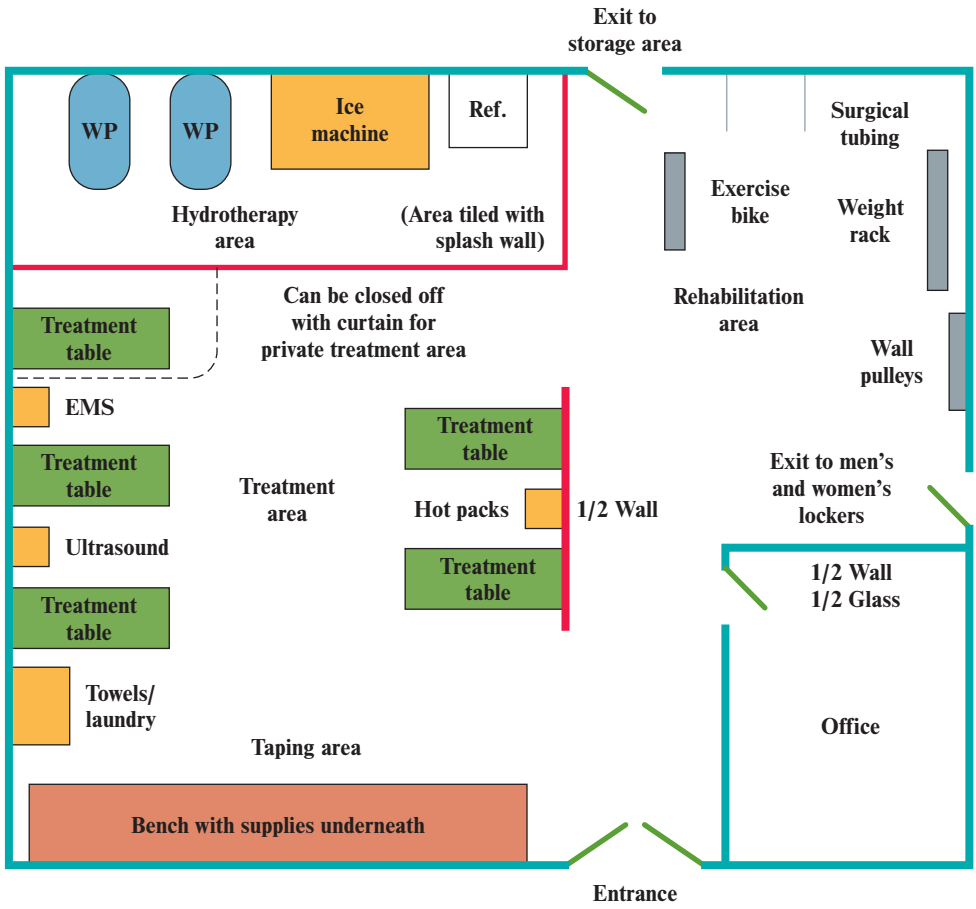


FIGURE 2–4 The ideal athletic health care facility should be well designed to maximize its use.[31]

of the athletic health care facility by a curtain or screen. An office for the athletic trainer should provide for secure storage of medical records and patient files.

Storage Facilities

Many athletic health care facilities lack adequate storage space (Figure 2–5). Often storage facilities are located a considerable distance away, which is extremely inconvenient. Each of the four special service areas should contain storage cabinets and shelves for storing general supplies and the small specialized equipment used in the respective areas. A large walk-in closet is a necessity for storing bulky equipment, coolers, medical supplies, adhesive tape, bandages, and protective devices. Some supplies may require storage in an environment that is temperature controlled. Medications should always be stored in a secure locked cabinet. Another important piece of equipment is a refrigerator for storing frozen ice cups for ice massage and other necessities.[30]

It is essential to have sufficient storage space for supplies and equipment.

FIGURE 2–5 An effective athletic health care program must have appropriate storage facilities that are highly organized. Courtesy of Hausmann Industries

ATHLETIC INJURY MANAGEMENT CHECKLIST

The following is a checklist of things that should be done in organizing and administering an athletic health care program.

- ❑ Establish rules and policies for the athletic health care facility.
- ❑ Arrange for the facilities to be cleaned and maintained in cooperation with the maintenance staff.
- ❑ Establish health habits for the athletes.
- ❑ Arrange for the availability or purchase of emergency phones.
- ❑ Arrange for preparticipation exams for all athletes.
- ❑ Maintain appropriate and necessary injury records (injury reports, medical history, etc.).
- ❑ Develop a budget for purchasing supplies and equipment.
- ❑ Put together a field kit with the appropriate supplies.
- ❑ Find a space of reasonable proportions that can be used for an athletic training room.

SUMMARY

- Organization and administration of the athletic health care program demands significant time and effort on the part of those overseeing the program.
- The athletic health care program best serves the athlete by establishing specific policies and regulations governing the use of available services.
- Preparticipation exams must be given to athletes and should include a medical history, a general physical examination, and an orthopedic screening.
- The individual overseeing the athletic health care program must maintain accurate and up-to-date medical records in addition to the other paperwork necessary for the operation of the athletic training program.
- Budgets should allow for the purchase of equipment and supplies essential for providing appropriate preventive and rehabilitative care for the athlete.
- The athletic health care program can be enhanced by designing or renovating a facility to maximize the potential use of the space available.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

2-1 The athletic health care facility should have specific areas designated for taping and preparation, treatment and rehabilitation, and hydrotherapy, and should have adequate storage facilities that are positioned within the space to allow for an efficient traffic flow. Equipment purchases might include four or five treatment tables and two or three taping tables (these could be made in-house if possible), a large-capacity ice machine, a combination ultrasound/electrical simulating unit, a whirlpool, and various free weights and exercise tubing.

2-2 The preparticipation examination should consist of a medical history, a physical examination, and a brief orthopedic screening. The preparticipation physical may be effectively administered using a station examination system with a team of examiners. A station examination can provide the athlete with a detailed examination in a short time. A team of people is needed to examine this many athletes. The team should include physicians, medically trained nonphysicians (nurses, athletic trainers, physical therapists, or physician's assistants), and managers, student coaches, or assistant coaches.

2-3 The individual overseeing the athletic health care system should keep a record of the medical history, injury reports, a personal individual information card, treatment logs, injury evaluations and progress notes, and a form for release of medical records.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. What major administrative functions must be performed in overseeing an athletic health care program?
2. Design two athletic health care facilities—one for a medium-sized high school and one for a large university.
3. Observe the activities in the athletic health care facility. Pick both a slow time and a busy time to observe.
4. Why do hygiene and sanitation play an important role in athletic health care? How should the athletic training facility be maintained?
5. Fully equip a new medium-sized high school or college athletic health care facility or a clinical facility. Pick equipment from current catalogs.
6. Establish a reasonable health care budget for a small high school, a large high school, and a large college or university.
7. Identify the groups of individuals to be served in the athletic health care facility.
8. Organize a preparticipation health examination for 90 football players.
9. Record keeping is a major function in athletic health care. What records are necessary to keep?
10. Debate what conditions constitute good grounds for medical disqualification from a sport.

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Almquist et al. 2008. Summary statement: Appropriate medical care for the secondary school-aged athlete. *Journal of Athletic Training* 43(4):416–427. © by the National Athletic Trainers' Association, Inc. Used with permission.
2. American Academy of Family Physicians. 2010. *Preparticipation physical evaluation.* Minneapolis, MN: McGraw-Hill.
3. American Academy of Pediatrics. 2010. *Preparticipation physical evaluation*, 4th ed. Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics.
4. Ammon, R., & Southall, R. 2010. *Sport facility management: Organizing events and mitigating risks*. Morgantown, WV: Fitness Information Technology.
5. Anderson, B. 2006. Policies and philosophies related to risk management in the athletic setting. *Athletic Therapy Today* 11(1):10.
6. Anderson, J., Courson, R., et al. 2002. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Emergency planning in athletics. *Journal of Athletic Training* 37(1):99–104.
7. Bagnall, D. 2001. Budget planning key in secondary schools. *NATA News*. Dallas, TX: NATA.
8. Barker, Anita. 2005. Developing a crisis management plan. *Athletics Administration* 40(2):41.
9. Board of Certification. 2013. *BOC facility principles*. www.bocatc.org/imstories/resources/boc_facility_safety_1404af.pdf
10. Borjesson, M. 2011. Is there evidence for mandating electrocardiogram as part of the preparticipation examination? *Clinical Journal of Sports Medicine* 21(1):13–17.
11. Brown, J. 2013. Athletic training facilities. In T. Sawyer (ed.), *Facilities planning for health, fitness, physical activity, recreation and sports*. Champaign, IL: Sagamore Publishing.
12. Cagliano, A., & Grimaldi, S. 2011. A systematic methodology for risk management in the health care sector. *Safety Science* 49(5):695–708.
13. Conley, K., et al. 2014. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Preparticipation physical examinations and disqualifying conditions. *Journal of Athletic Training* 49(1):102–120.
14. Courson, R., Goldenberg, M., et al. 2014. Inter-association consensus statement on best practices for sports medicine management for secondary schools and colleges. *Journal of Athletic Training* 49(1):128–137.
15. DeWitt, T., & Unruh, S. 2012. The level of medical services and secondary school-aged athletes. *Journal of Athletic Training* 47(1): 91–95.
16. Eickhoff-Shemek, J. 2009. *Risk management for health/fitness professionals: Legal issues and strategies*. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.
17. Fried, G. 2015. *Managing sport facilities*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
18. Gallucci, A., & Petersen, J. 2017. The size and scope of collegiate athletic training facilities and staffing. *Journal of Athletic Training* 52(8): 785–794.
19. Gratto, J. 2016. *Management principles for health professionals*. Burlington, MA: Jones and Bartlett Learning.
20. Harrelson, G., Gardner, G., & Winterstein, A. 2016. *Administrative topics in athletic training: Concepts to practice*. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.
21. Herbert, D. 2007. Emergency preparedness recommendations for high school and college athletic programs. *Sports, Parks & Recreation Law Reporter* 21(1):71.
22. Jordan-Meier, J. 2016. *The four stages of highly effective crisis management: How to manage media in the digital age*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
23. Knight, K. L. 2009. Athletic training clinic operations. In K. Knight (ed.), *Developing clinical proficiency in athletic training*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
24. Krager, C. 2017. *HIPAA for health care professionals*. Independence, KY: Cengage Learning.
25. Mazerolle, S., & Raso, S. 2015. Athletic directors' barriers to hiring athletic trainers in high schools. *Journal of Athletic Training* 50(10):1059–1068.
26. Mokris, R., & Hanna, G. 2011. The emergency action plan: A tool for experiential learning. *International Journal of Athletic Therapy & Training* 16(5):41–45.
27. National Athletic Trainers Association. 2003. *Consensus statement: Appropriate medical care for secondary school-age athletes*. Dallas, TX: NATA.
28. Peterson, A. 1988. A self-report measure of pubertal status: Reliability, validity, and initial norms. *Journal of Youth and Adolescence* 17:177–133.
29. Rankin, J., & Ingersoll, C. 2006. *Athletic training management: Concepts and applications*. St. Louis, MO: McGraw-Hill.
30. Ray, R. 2011. Where athletic trainers work: Facility design and planning. In R. Ray & J. Konin (eds.), *Management strategies in athletic training*, 4th ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
31. Sawyer, T. 2017. *Facility design and management for health, fitness, physical activity, recreation and sports facility development*. Champaign, IL: Sagamore Publishing.
32. Schwartz, E. 2015. *Sport facility operations management*. St. Louis, MO: Elsevier.
33. Tanner, M. 1962. *Growth of adolescence*, 2nd ed. Oxford, UK: Blackwell Scientific.
34. Thompson, P., & Arena, R. 2013. ACSM's new preparticipation health screening recommendations from ACSM's guidelines for exercise testing and prescription. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 12(4): 215–217.
35. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. 2015. *Guidance regarding methods for deidentification of protected health information in accordance with the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) privacy rule*. Washington DC: U.S. Government Printing Office.
36. Wham, G., & Saunders, R. 2010. Key factors for providing appropriate medical care in secondary school athletics: Athletic training and budget. *Journal of Athletic Training* 45(1):75–86.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Board of Certification. 2013. *BOC facility principles,* www.bocatc.org/documents/boc-facility-principles

This document provides the means for secondary and postsecondary educational institutions and organizations to self-assess their policies, procedures, and facilities to ensure the safe, effective, and legal provision of athletic health care services.

Rankin, J., & Ingersoll, C. 2006. *Athletic training management: Concepts and applications,* 3rd ed. St Louis, MO: McGraw-Hill.

This text is designed for upper-division undergraduate or graduate students interested in all aspects of organization and administration of an athletic training program. The new edition has been expanded to include coverage of sports medicine clinics, industrial athletic training, the process of seeking employment, third-party reimbursement, financial management, risk management, and information technology, including distance learning and the web.

Ray, R., & Konin, J. 2011. *Management strategies in athletic training,* 4th ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

This was the first text available to cover the principles of organization and administration as they apply to many different employment settings in athletic training. The new edition contains many examples and case studies based on principles of administration presented in the text.

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

3

©William E. Prentice

Legal Liability and Insurance

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Explain legal considerations for anyone acting as a health care provider.
- Define the legal concepts of liability, negligence, torts, assumption of risk.
- Identify measures that can be taken to minimize chances of litigation.
- Describe product liability.
- Identify the essential insurance requirements for protection of the athlete.
- Describe the types of insurance necessary to protect an individual who provides health care to anyone who is injured.

LEGAL CONCERNS

In recent years, negligence suits against physical education teachers, fitness professionals, coaches, athletic trainers, school administrators, and physicians, arising out of sports injuries, have increased both in frequency and in the amount of damages awarded.[3,4,10] An increasing awareness of the many risk factors present in physical activities is essential.

This chapter provides basic information about things that can be done to avoid the risks of litigation, and briefly discusses the types of insurance needed to protect the athlete and the coach, the fitness professional, and the administrator.[26] **Liability** means being legally responsible for the harm one causes another person.[15] A great deal of care must be taken in following policies and procedures to reduce the risk of being sued by an athlete and being found liable for negligence.[11] It is important to reemphasize that **it is essential for everyone to know the legal limitations of his or her responsibilities in providing athletic health care as dictated by the laws and statutes in the specific state where that individual is employed.** Anyone providing any level of health care to an injured athlete must know exactly what his or her limitations are, to avoid overstepping boundaries and risking violation of the regulatory practice acts of various health care groups such as physical therapists and athletic trainers.[23]

liability Being legally responsible for the harm one causes another person.

The Standard of Reasonable Care

Negligence is the failure to use reasonable care—care that persons would normally exercise to avoid injury to themselves or to others under similar circumstances.[12] The **standard of reasonable care** assumes that an individual is neither exceptionally skillful nor extraordinarily cautious but is a person of reasonable and ordinary prudence.[16] Put another way, it is expected that an individual will be thoughtful and careful relative to the situation at hand and will exercise due care in its handling. In most cases in which someone has been sued for negligence, the actions of a hypothetical, reasonably prudent person are compared with the actions of the defendant to ascertain whether the course of action the defendant followed was in conformity with the judgment exercised by such a reasonably prudent person.[16] Essentially, a health care provider is held to a reasonable prudent professional standard, rather than a reasonably prudent person standard.

negligence The failure to use ordinary or reasonable care.

standard of reasonable care Assumes that an individual is a person of reasonable and ordinary prudence.

FIGURE 3–1 **The chances of litigation can be minimized by providing reasonable and prudent care to an injured athlete.** ©William E. Prentice

The standard of reasonable care requires that an individual act according to the standard of care of a person with similar educational background or training.[16] A health care provider who is well educated in his or her field and who is certified and/or licensed must act in accordance with those qualifications (Figure 3–1).

Torts

Torts are legal wrongs committed against the person or property of another.[15] All individuals are expected to conduct themselves without injuring others. When they do so, either intentionally or by negligence, they can be required by a court to pay money to the injured party ("damages"), so that ultimately the defendants need to "fix" their intentional or careless mistake by paying for the harm they cause. Punitive damages can "make them suffer," but those are only awarded for intentional torts. A tort also serves as a deterrent by sending a message that people should expect to pay if they intentionally harm others.

torts Legal wrongs committed against a person.

Such wrongs may emanate from **nonfeasance** (also referred to as an *act of omission*), wherein the individual fails to perform a legal duty; from **malfeasance** (also referred to as an *act of commission*), wherein an individual commits an act that is not legally his or hers to perform; or from **misfeasance,** wherein an individual improperly does something that he or she has the legal right to do.[27] In any instance, if injury results, the person can be held liable. In the case of nonfeasance, an athletic trainer may fail to refer a seriously injured patient for the proper medical attention. In the case of malfeasance, a health care provider may perform a therapeutic treatment that violates the practice of another licensed health care professional and as a result serious medical complications develop. In a case of misfeasance, the health care provider may incorrectly administer a treatment technique or procedure he or she has been trained to perform.

nonfeasance, or an act of omission An individual fails to perform a legal duty.

malfeasance, or an act of commission An individual commits an act that is not legally his or hers to perform.

misfeasance Occurs when an individual improperly does something he or she has the legal right to do.

Negligence If an individual is sued, the complaint typically is for the tort of negligence.[21] To establish negligence, an individual making the complaint must establish four things: (1) a **duty of care** existed between the person injured and the person responsible for that injury; (2) the defendant breached this duty by conduct that fell short of the standard of care; (3) the defendant caused the injury to occur; and (4) personal, property, or punitive damages resulted.[15] If the health care provider breaches a duty to exercise reasonable care, but there is no reasonable connection between the failure to use reasonable care and the injury suffered, the suit for negligence will not succeed.

duty of care A requirement that a person act toward others and the public with watchfulness, attention, caution, and prudence that a reasonable person in the circumstances would. If a person's actions do not meet this standard of care, then the acts are considered negligent, and any damages resulting may be claimed in a lawsuit for negligence.

3–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A softball batter was struck with a pitched ball directly in the orbit of the right eye and fell immediately to the ground. The physical education teacher ran to the player to examine the eye. There was some immediate swelling and discoloration around the orbit; however, the eye appeared to be normal. The player insisted that he was fine and told the teacher that he could continue to bat. After the game, the teacher told the athlete to go back to his room, put ice on his eye, and check in tomorrow. That night the softball player began to hemorrhage into the anterior chamber of the eye and suffered irreparable damage to his eye.

? An ophthalmologist stated that if the athlete's eye had been examined immediately after injury, the bleeding could have been controlled and the athlete would not have suffered any damage to his vision. If the athlete brings a lawsuit against the physical education teacher, what must he prove to win a judgment?

An example of negligence is when an athletic trainer, through improper or careless handling of a therapeutic agent, seriously burns a patient. Another illustration, occurring all too often in sports, is one in which a coach or some other individual moves a possibly seriously injured athlete from the field of play to permit competition or practice to continue and does so either in an improper manner or before consulting those qualified to know the proper course of action. Should a serious or disabling injury result, the individual who made the decision may be found liable.[15]

Athletic trainers employed by an institution have a duty to provide athletic training care to individuals at that institution. An athletic trainer who is employed by the public schools or by a state-funded college or university may be protected by the legal doctrine of **sovereign immunity**, which essentially states that neither the government nor any individual who is employed by the government can be held liable for negligence. However, it should be made clear that the level of protection afforded by sovereign immunity may vary significantly from state to state.[6]

sovereign immunity Neither the government nor any employee can be held liable for negligence.

Clinical athletic trainers have a greater choice than institutional athletic trainers about whom they may choose to treat as a patient. Once the athletic trainer assumes the duty of caring for a patient, the athletic trainer has an obligation to make sure that appropriate care is given.[21] It should be made clear that the athletic trainer, or any other person, is not obligated to provide first-aid care for an injured person outside his or her scope of employment. However, if the athletic trainer chooses to become involved as a caregiver for an injured person, he or she is expected to provide reasonable care consistent with his or her level of training.[17] The **Good Samaritan law** has been enacted in most states to provide limited protection against legal liability to any individual who voluntarily chooses to provide first aid, should something go wrong. As long as the first-aid provider does not overstep the limits of his or her professional training and exercises what would be considered reasonable care in the situation, the provider will not be held liable. Good Samaritan laws vary tremendously from state to state, so it is important for anyone providing health care to know the laws of their state.

Good Samaritan law Provides limited protection to someone who chooses to provide first aid. However, it does not apply to someone who has a duty to act as dictated by the nature of his or her job.

A person possessing more training in a given field or area is expected to possess a correspondingly higher level of competence than is a student. An individual will therefore be judged in terms of his or her performance in any situation in which legal liability may be assessed.[13] It must be recognized that liability per se in all its various aspects is not assessed at the same level nationally, but varies in interpretation from state to state and from area to area. The health care provider therefore should know and acquire the level of competence expected in their particular area. In essence, negligence is conduct that results in the creation of an unreasonable risk of harm to others.[21]

Statutes of Limitation

A **statute of limitation** sets a specific length of time that individuals may sue for damages from negligence.[24] The length of time to bring suit varies from state to state, but in general plaintiffs have between 1 and 5 years to file suit for negligence. The statute of limitation begins to run on a plaintiff's time to file a lawsuit for negligence either from the time of the negligent act or omission that gives rise to the suit or from the time of the discovery of an injury caused by the negligent act or omission. Some states permit an injured minor to file suit up to 3 years after the minor reaches the age of 18.[24] Therefore, an injured minor's cause of action for negligence against an athletic trainer remains valid for many years after the negligent act or omission occurred or after the discovery of an injury caused by the negligent act or omission.[24]

statute of limitation A specific length of time to sue for damages from negligence.

3–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

An administrative assistant is cleaning out a filing cabinet with records from past teams and decides to throw some older medical files away. Concern is expressed about how long these files should be maintained for legal purposes.

? What is the statute of limitations for a minor to file suit?

Assumption of Risk

An athlete assumes the risk of participating in an activity when he or she knows of and understands the dangers of that activity and voluntarily chooses to be exposed to those dangers.[26] An assumption of risk can be expressed in the form of a waiver signed by an athlete or his or her parents or guardian, or it can be implied from the conduct of an athlete under the circumstances of his or

3–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

During a high school gymnastics meet, a gymnast fell off the uneven parallel bars, landing on her forearm. The coach suspected a fracture and decided an X-ray was needed. The gymnast's parents have general health insurance through a PPO, but because the gymnast was in severe pain, she was sent to the nearest emergency room to be treated. Unfortunately, the emergency facility was not on the list of preferred providers, so the insurance company denied the claim. The coach assured the parents that the school would take care of whatever medical costs were not covered by their insurance policy.

? Because the PPO denied the claim, what type of insurance policy should the school carry to cover the medical costs?

her participation in an activity.[3]

Assumption of risk may be asserted as a defense to a negligence suit. The health care provider bears the burden of proving that an individual assumed the risk. One way of proving this, but not the only way, is by producing the document signed by that individual or his or her parents or guardian or by proving that the risk of the activity was known, understood, and voluntarily accepted.[3]

Assumption of risk, however, is subject to many and varied interpretations by courts, especially when a minor is involved. Minors can assume risk, but the court will figure out whether it was reasonable based on the participant's age, intelligence, instructions provided, and other criteria. Although individuals participating in a sports program are considered to assume a normal risk, this assumption in no way excuses those in charge from exercising reasonable care and prudence in the conduct of such activities, or from foreseeing and taking precautionary measures against accident-provoking circumstances.[3,21] In general, courts have been fairly consistent in upholding assumption of risk releases of liability for adults unless there is evidence of fraud, misrepresentation, or duress.[5] The most important thing about assumption of risk and liability relative to the athletic trainer is not about whether the participant assumes the risk of participating, but whether the athletic trainer has fully informed him or her of the risks of treatment, return to play, and other risks.[17]

assumption of risk
The individual, through expressed or implied agreement, assumes that some risk or danger will be involved in the particular undertaking. In other words, a person takes his or her own chances.

ATHLETIC INJURY MANAGEMENT CHECKLIST

You can significantly decrease risk of litigation by paying attention to several key points. The following is a checklist of things that can be done to decrease the risk of litigation.

- ❑ Warn the athlete of the potential dangers inherent in the sport.
- ❑ Supervise constantly and attentively.
- ❑ Properly prepare and condition the athlete.
- ❑ Properly instruct the athlete in the skills of the sport.
- ❑ Ensure that proper and safe equipment and facilities are used by the athlete at all times.
- ❑ Work to establish good personal relationships with the athletes, parents, and coworkers.
- ❑ Establish specific policies and guidelines for the operation of an athletic health care program.[19]
- ❑ Develop and carefully follow an emergency action plan.
- ❑ Make it a point to become familiar with the health status and medical history of the athletes under his or her care so as to be aware of any problems that could present a need for additional care or caution and keep a file that contains medical history, preparticipation exams, and any injury records.
- ❑ Keep good records that document all injuries and rehabilitation records.
- ❑ Document efforts to create a safe playing environment.
- ❑ Have a detailed job description in writing.
- ❑ Obtain written consent for providing health care, particularly when minors are involved.
- ❑ Maintain confidentiality of medical records.
- ❑ Do not dispense either prescription or over-the-counter medications.
- ❑ Obtain certification in CPR/AED and first aid, and maintain those certifications.
- ❑ Don't use or permit the presence of faulty or hazardous equipment.
- ❑ Work cooperatively with the team physician and/or athletic trainer in the selection and use of sports protective equipment, and insist that the best equipment be obtained, properly fitted, and properly maintained.
- ❑ Don't permit injured players to participate unless cleared by the team physician. Players suffering a head injury should not be permitted to reenter the game. In some states a player who has suffered a concussion may not continue in the sport for the balance of the season.

- ❑ Develop an understanding that an injured athlete will not be allowed to reenter competition until, in the opinion of the team physician or the athletic trainer, he or she is psychologically and physically able. Coaches should not allow themselves to be pressured to clear an athlete until he or she is fully cleared by the physician.
- ❑ Follow the express orders of the team physician or athletic trainer at all times.
- ❑ Purchase liability insurance to protect against litigation and be aware of the limitations of the policy.
- ❑ Know the limitations of expertise and the applicable state regulations and restrictions limiting the scope of practice.
- ❑ Use common sense in making decisions about the athlete's health and safety.

PRODUCT LIABILITY

Product liability refers to the liability of any or all parties along the chain of manufacture of any product for damage caused by that product.[8] This includes the manufacturer of component parts, an assembling manufacturer, the wholesaler, and the retail store owner.[8] Products containing inherent defects that cause harm to a consumer of the product, or someone to whom the product was loaned, given, etc., are the subjects of product liability suits. Product liability claims can be based on negligence, strict liability, or breach of warranty depending on the jurisdiction within which the claim is based. Many states have enacted comprehensive product liability statutes, and these statutory provisions can be very diverse. There is no federal product liability law.

Manufacturers of all types of athletic and fitness equipment have a duty to design and produce equipment that will not cause injury as long as it is used as intended. If the product is not used correctly by the consumer, the manufacturer cannot be held liable. An express warranty is the manufacturer's written guarantee that a product is safe. Warning labels placed on football helmets inform the player of possible dangers inherent in using the product. Athletes must read and sign a form indicating that they have read and understand the warning. Any modifications or alterations to equipment such as drilling a hole, adding a strap, etc. will nullify the manufacturers' liability should an injury occur when a person is wearing that equipment. The National Operating Committee on Standards for Athletic Equipment (NOCSAE) establishes minimum standards for equipment that must be met to ensure its safety.

WHAT TYPES OF INSURANCE ARE NECESSARY TO PROTECT THE ATHLETE?

Because of the high cost of medical care, every athlete should be covered by appropriate insurance policies that maximize the benefits should injury occur.[1]

General Health Insurance

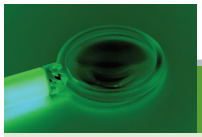
Health insurance is a contract between an insurance company and a policyholder in which the insurance company agrees to reimburse a portion of the total medical bill after some deductible has been paid by the policyholder. During the past 40 years, the insurance industry has undergone a significant evolutionary process. Health care reform initiated in the 1980s was focused on the concept of **managed care**, in which costs of a health care provider's medical care were closely dictated, monitored, and scrutinized by insurance carriers. Higher costs for medical care and a substantial increase in litigation relative to health care providers significantly increased the costs of health insurance.[7] In 2010 the **Affordable Care Act** was signed into law, and it represented a substantial regulatory overhaul of the system of health care in the United States.[2] *Focus Box 3–1* identifies the key features and benefits of the Affordable Care Act. The Affordale Care Act initially mandated that every American must have health insurance or face penalties (fines) designed to theoretically ensure greater coverage of adults and children in the United States while reducing insurance premiums for everyone.[28]

health insurance A contract between the insurance company and policyholder.

managed care Costs of health care are monitored closely by insurance carriers.

Affordable Care Act Mandates the availability of affordable health care insurance for every American.

After numerous extremely contentious legislative, executive and legal challenges to the Affordable Care act over the years since 2010, in 2017 the Tax Act was signed into law. Provisions of the Tax Act that affect healthcare coverage stated that beginning in 2019, individuals or families were no longer required to purchase health insurance under federal law. In addition the government would no longer attempt to collect individual fines for not having health insurance. However, some individual states have created their own laws that will continue to mandate purchasing insurance coverage for all individuals.[22]



FOCUS BOX 3–1

Key Features and Benefits of the Affordable Care Act*

Coverage

- Health plans can no longer limit or deny benefits to children under 19 due to a preexisting condition.
- If you are under 26, you may be eligible to be covered under your parent's employer-sponsored health plan.
- Insurers can no longer cancel your coverage just because you made an honest mistake.
- You now have the right to ask that your plan reconsider its denial of payment.

Costs

- Lifetime limits on most benefits are banned for all new health insurance plans.
- Insurance companies must now publicly justify any unreasonable rate hikes.
- Your premium dollars must be spent primarily on health care—not administrative costs.

Care

- New plans must cover certain preventive services.
- You can choose the primary care doctor you want from your plan's network.
- You can seek emergency care at a hospital outside of your health plan's network and not be turned away or have your claim denied.

*From www.hhs.gov/healthcare/about-the-aca/index.html.

Athletes need to have a general health insurance policy that covers illness, hospitalization, and emergency care.

All athletes need to have a general health insurance policy as their primary policy that covers illness, hospitalization, and emergency care.[1,20]

Secondary Insurance

Most institutions offer **secondary insurance** coverage that pays the athlete's remaining medical bills once the athlete's personal insurance company has made its payment. Secondary insurance always includes a deductible that will not be covered by the plan. Some institutions offer insurance coverage in which all medical expenses are paid for by the athletic department. The institutions pay an extremely high premium for this type of coverage.

Secondary insurance pays the athlete's remaining medical bills after a general health insurance plan has made its payment.

Athletes under the age of 26 years can be covered by a family health insurance policy.[27] However, the school must make certain that personal health insurance is arranged for or purchased by athletes not covered under family policies.[7] A letter, along with an insurance information form, sent to the parents of all athletes should be completed and returned to the institution to make certain that appropriate coverage is provided (Figure 3–2). Some so-called comprehensive plans do not cover every health need. For example, such plans may cover physicians' care but not hospital charges. Many of these plans require large prepayments before the insurance takes

STUDENT-ATHLETE INSURANCE INFORMATION

Student's Full Name:_____ PID _____
Date of Birth: ____/ ____/ ____ Sex: M _____ F _____ Sport: _____

Hospital Medical Record Number (if first year, see attachment instructions) _____

IS YOUR SON/DAUGHTER COVERED BY **HEALTH INSURANCE**? YES_____ *NO_____
Please complete insurance information below. Submit a copy of insurance card, **front & back**. *Make sure copy is **legible**.*
*If you check no, please note all eligible students are required to have health insurance.

Policyholder's Information (Required to obtain authorization)

Insurance Company Name: _____ State issued _____
Policy Number _____ Group # _____ Type-HMO, PPO _____
Policyholder Name: _____ Date of Birth: _____/_____/_____
Relationship to Student Athlete: _____ Email of Policyholder _____
Home Address, City, State, Zip: _____
Home Phone Number: _____ Cell Number _____
Policyholder's Employer: _____ Phone: _____
Address, City, State, Zip: _____
Do you have **prescription drug coverage**? Yes_____ No _____

I give my permission to file a claim for medical services with the above health care insurer.

Parent's Signature: _____ Date: _____

FIGURE 3–2 Sample insurance information form.

(Source: Data from Campus Health Service, University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill.)

effect. Supplemental policies such as accident insurance and catastrophic insurance are designed to take over where general health insurance stops.

Accident Insurance

Besides general health insurance, low-cost accident insurance is available to the student. This insurance covers accidents on school grounds while the student is in attendance. The purpose of this insurance is to protect the student against financial loss from medical and hospital bills, encourage an injured student to receive prompt medical care, encourage prompt reporting of injuries, and relieve a school of financial responsibility.[19]

The school's general insurance may be limited; thus, accident insurance for a specific activity such as sports may be needed to provide additional protection.[19] This type of coverage is limited and does not require knowledge of fault, and the amount it pays is limited. For serious sports injuries requiring surgery and lengthy rehabilitation, accident insurance is usually not adequate. This inadequacy can put families with limited budgets into a real financial bind. Of particular concern is insurance that does not adequately cover catastrophic injuries.

Catastrophic Insurance

Although catastrophic injuries are relatively uncommon, when they do occur, the consequences to the individual, family, and institution, as well as to society, can be staggering.[18] In the past, when available funds have been completely exhausted, the family was forced to seek funding elsewhere, usually through a lawsuit. For example, in athletics, organizations such as the National Collegiate Athletic Association (NCAA) and National Association of Intercollegiate Athletics (NAIA) provide plans for the athlete who requires a lifetime of extensive medical and rehabilitative care because of a permanent disability.[18] A program at the secondary-school level is offered to districts by the National Federation of State High School Associations (NFHS). These plans provide coverage for medical, rehabilitation, and transportation costs not covered by other insurance benefits.[18] Costs for catastrophic insurance are based on the number of sports and the number of hazardous sports offered by the institution.

REIMBURSEMENT

Reimbursement is the primary mechanism of payment for medical services in the United States.[1,14] Health care providers are reimbursed by the policyholder's insurance company for services performed. Health insurance companies may provide group and individual coverage for employees and dependents. To cut payout costs, many insurance companies have begun to pay for preventive care (to reduce the need for hospitalization) and to limit where the individual can go for care.[25]

Reimbursement comes from the policyholder's insurance company for services performed.

Managed Care

Managed care involves a prearranged system for delivering health care that is designed to control costs while continuing to provide quality care. A number of different health care systems have been developed to contain costs.[18] There are several types of network-based managed care programs.

Health Maintenance Organizations Health maintenance organizations (HMOs) provide preventive measures and limit where the individual can receive care. With the exception of an emergency, permission must be obtained before the individual can go to another provider. HMOs generally pay 100 percent of medical costs as long as care is rendered at an HMO facility. Many supplemental policies will not cover medical costs that would normally be paid by the general policy. Therefore an athlete treated outside the HMO may be ineligible for any insurance benefits. Many HMOs determine fees using a capitation system that limits the amount that is reimbursed for a specific service. Coaches, administrators, athletic trainers, and the athletes family must understand the limits of and restrictions on coverage at their individual institutions.

HMO—Preapproved except in emergency and at HMO facility

Preferred Provider Organizations Preferred provider organizations (PPOs) provide discount health care but also limit where a person can go for treatment of an illness or injury. The coach and/or athletic trainer must be apprised in advance where the ill or injured athlete should be sent. Athletes sent to a facility not on the approved list may be required to pay for care, but if they are sent to a preferred facility, all costs are paid. Added services such as physical therapy may be more easily obtained and at no cost or at a much lower cost than with other insurance policies. PPOs pay on a fee-for-service basis.

PPO—From approved provider list

Point of Service Plan The point of service (POS) plan is a combination of HMO and PPO plans. It is

based on an HMO structure, yet it allows members to go outside the HMO to obtain services. This flexibility is allowed only with certain conditions and under special circumstances.

Medicaid Medicaid is a health insurance program for people with low incomes and limited resources. Medicaid is funded by both the federal government and individual states, with the states being responsible for administration of the program.

Medicare Medicare is also a federal health insurance program, but it is for the aged and disabled. Many third-party payers base decisions on what will be covered under their policies and on what Medicare and Medicaid will cover.

INSURANCE BILLING

It is essential that insurance claims be filed immediately and correctly.[7] The individual or administrator overseeing the athletic health care program working in an educational setting can facilitate this process by collecting insurance information on every athlete at the beginning of the year. A letter should also be drafted to the parents of the athlete, explaining the limits of the school insurance policy and what the parents must do to file a claim if injury does occur. Schools that have secondary policies should stress to the parents that they must submit all bills to their insurance company before submitting the remainder to the school. Most schools or colleges will file a claim with their insurance company that will pay for services provided by individual health care professionals.

Indemnity Plans

The indemnity plan is the most traditional form of billing for health care, in which the provider charges the patient or a third-party payer a fee for services provided. Charges are based on a set fee schedule.

Capitation

Capitation is a form of reimbursement used by managed care providers in which members make a standard payment each month regardless of how much service is rendered to the member by the provider. A therapist in a clinical setting usually treats a patient three times per week. In an athletic training setting, an injured athlete may be treated in some instances twice a day, every day of the week. Some secondary schools are going to a capitated health fee for students that goes toward providing athletic health care services.

INSURANCE TO PROTECT THE PROFESSIONAL

Personal Liability Insurance

Most individual schools and school districts have general liability insurance to protect against damages that may arise from injuries occurring on school property. Liability insurance covers claims of negligence on the part of individuals. Its major concern is whether supervision was reasonable and whether unreasonable risk of harm was perceived by the sports participant.[9]

Because of the amount of litigation for alleged negligence, all professionals involved with the sports program must be fully protected by personal liability insurance.

Because of the amount of litigation based on alleged negligence, premiums have become almost prohibitive for some schools. Typically, when a victim sues, the lawsuit is a "shotgun approach," with the coach, athletic trainer, physician, school administrator, and school district all named. If a protective piece of equipment is involved, the product manufacturer is also sued.

All personnel should carry professional liability insurance and must clearly understand the limits of coverage.[9] Liability insurance typically covers negligence in a civil case. If a criminal complaint is also filed, liability insurance will not cover the individual.

Policy, errors, and omissions liability insurance has evolved to offset the shotgun mentality and to cover what is not covered by a general liability policy. This insurance is designed to cover school employees, officers, and the district against suits claiming malpractice, wrongful actions, errors and omissions, and acts of negligence.[9] Even when working in a program that has good liability coverage, each person within that program who works directly with students must have his or her own personal liability insurance.

ATHLETIC INJURY MANAGEMENT CHECKLIST

This checklist contains types of insurance that an administrator should look into to protect both the athlete and the personnel involved in athletic health care.

- ❑ General health insurance
- ❑ Accident insurance
- ❑ Product liability insurance
- ❑ Catastrophic injury insurance
- ❑ Personal liability insurance

SUMMARY

- A great deal of care must be taken in an athletic environment to follow policies and procedures that conform to the legal guidelines governing liability.
- Liability is the state of being legally responsible for the harm one causes another person. The standard of reasonable care assumes that an individual acts according to the reasonable standards of care of any individual with similar educational background or training.
- A person who fails to use ordinary or reasonable care—care that persons would normally exercise to avoid injury to themselves or to others under similar circumstances—is deemed negligent.
- Although athletes participating in a sports program are considered to assume a normal risk, this assumption in no way exempts those in charge from exercising reasonable care.
- Individuals can significantly decrease risk of litigation by making certain that they have done everything possible to provide a reasonable degree of care to the injured athlete.
- The major types of insurance are general health insurance, catastrophic insurance, accident insurance, and liability insurance, as well as insurance for errors and omissions.
- Reimbursement is the primary mechanism of payment for medical services in the United States. A number of different health care systems—including health maintenance organizations, preferred provider organizations, point of service plans, indemnity plans, and capitation plans—have been developed to contain costs.
- It is essential that the individual overseeing the athletic health care program file insurance claims immediately and correctly.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

3-1 When a teacher assumes the duty of caring for an athlete, that teacher is also under the obligation to make sure that appropriate care is given. A coach who fails to provide an acceptable standard of care has committed a breach of duty, and the athlete must prove that this breach caused the injury or made the injury worse.

3-2 The athlete typically has between 1 and 3 years to file suit for negligence. However, a minor may have up to 3 years after the minor reaches the age of 18 to file.

3-3 Besides general health insurance, low-cost accident insurance often covers accidents on school grounds while the athlete is competing. The purpose of this insurance is to protect the athlete against financial loss from medical and hospital bills, encourage an injured athlete to receive prompt medical care, encourage prompt reporting of injuries, and relieve a school of financial responsibility.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. What are the major legal concerns in terms of liability, negligence, assumption of risk, and torts?
2. What measures can be taken to minimize the chances of litigation should an athlete be injured?
3. Invite an attorney who is familiar with sports litigation to class to discuss how you can protect yourself from a lawsuit.
4. Discuss how an individual provides reasonable and prudent care in dealing with an injured athlete.
5. Explain how the Good Samaritan law protects individuals who choose to provide first aid or emergency care to an injured victim.
6. Why is it necessary for an athlete to have both general health insurance and accident insurance?
7. Briefly discuss the various methods of third-party reimbursement.
8. Why should an individual carry individual liability insurance?
9. What are the critical considerations for filing insurance claims?

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Beik, J. 2014. *Health insurance today: A practical approach.* St Louis, MO: Elsevier.
2. Coffin, R. 2013. Affordable Care Act. *Journal of Medical Practice Management* 28(5):317–319.
3. Cotton, D. 2005. Are you safe? Courts in an increasing number of states are enforcing liability waivers signed by parents on behalf of minors. *Athletic Business* 29(3):66–72.
4. Eickhoff-Shemek, J. 2010.The legal aspects: An analysis of eight negligence law suits against personal fitness trainers. *ACSM's Health and Fitness Journal* 14(5):34.
5. Flight, M. 2010. *Law, liability, and ethics for medical office professionals.* Independence, KY: Cengage Learning.
6. Gardiner, S. 2012. *Sports law.* New York, NY: Routledge.
7. Green, M., & Rowell, J. 2016. *Understanding health insurance: A guide to billing and reimbursement.* Albany, NY: Delmar.
8. Henderson, J. 2016. *Products liability: Problems and process.* New York, NY: Aspen Publishers.
9. Jones, R. 2013. Professional and general liability insurance: When and why you need it. *Sports Medicine Bulletin* 9(24):6.
10. Kane, S. 2009. Medical malpractice and the sports medicine clinician. *Clinical Orthopedic Related Research* 467:412–419.
11. McClean, S. 2009. *Legal and ethical aspects of healthcare.* New York, NY: Cambridge University Press.
12. Miller, J. 2015. Gross negligence, inherent risks: Using waivers to protect fitness clubs. *Journal of Physical Education, Recreation and Dance* 86(4):54–56.
13. Mitten, M. 2016. *Sports law: Governance and regulation.* New York, NY: Wolters Kluwer Law & Business.

14. Moisio, M. 2013. *Guide to health insurance billing*. Clifton Park, NY: Thompson Delmar Learning.
15. Osborne, B. 2001. Principles of liability for athletic trainers: Managing sport-related concussion. *Journal of Athletic Training* 36(3):316 –321.
16. Pozgar, G. 2015. *Legal aspects of health care administration*. Burlington, MA: Jones & Bartlett.
17. Quandt, E. 2009. Legal liability in covering athletic events. *Sports Health: A Multidisciplinary Approach* 1(1):84–90.
18. Rankin, J. 2006. *Athletic training management: Concepts and applications*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
19. Ray, R. 2011. *Management strategies in athletic training*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
20. Rosenbaum, S. 2012. *Law and the American health care system*. St. Paul, MN: Foundation Press.
21. Schaefer, G. 2009. Negligence, immunity and assumption of risk. *Journal of Physical Education, Recreation, and Dance* 80(6):7.
22. Schmittdiel, J., & Barrow, J. 2017. Improvements in access and care through the Affordable Care Act. *American Journal of Managed Care* 23(3):95–97.
23. Sharp, L. 2014. *Sports law: A managerial approach*. Scottsdale, AZ: Holcomb Hathaway Publishers.
24. Shea, K., & Scanlan, K. 2008. Interstate variability of the statute of limitations for medical liability: A cause for concern? *Journal of Pediatric Orthopedics* 28(3): 370–374.
25. Sommers, B., & Gawande, A. 2017. Health insurance coverage and health: What the recent evidence tells us. *New England Journal of Medicine* 377:586–593.
26. Vaughn, E. 2013. *Fundamentals of risk and insurance*. New York, NY: Wiley.
27. Wong, G. 2010. *Essentials of sports law*, 4th ed. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press
28. Yagoda, L. 2014. *Affordable Care Act for dummies*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Appenzeller, H. 2012. *Risk management in sport: Issues and strategies*. Chapel Hill, NC: Carolina Academic Press.

Discusses risk management in sport law and industry. Topics include tort liability; medical, event, and facility issues; warnings, waivers, and informed consent; and youth sport and the law.

Champion, W. 2017. *Sports law in a nutshell*. St. Paul, MN: West Academic Publishing.

This book contains the elements of sports law explained in an organized, coherent manner. It simplifies the complex world of sports law and provides a road map to all its intricacies from torts to liabilities.

Green, M., & Rowell, J. 2016. *Understanding health insurance: A guide to billing and reimbursement*. Albany, NY: Delmar.

Provides a comprehensive resource for dealing with issues related to insurance.

Judson, K., & Harrison, C. 2014. Law and ethics for health professions. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill Education.

Law and Ethics for Health Professions explains how to navigate the numerous legal and ethical issues that health care professionals face every day. Topics are based upon real-world scenarios and dilemmas from a variety of health care practitioners.

Pozgar G. 2015. *Legal aspects of health care administration*. Burlington, MA: Jones & Bartlett.

An ideal introduction to the legal and ethical issues in the health care workplace that presents a wide range of health care topics in a comprehensible and engaging manner.

Sharp, L. 2014. *Sports law: A managerial approach*. Scottsdale, AZ: Holcomb Hathaway Publishers.

This text merges law and sports management in a way that is accessible and straightforward. It provides readers just enough legal doctrine to understand the important concepts. This book will help prepare students as they get ready to assume a broad range of responsibilities in sport, education, or recreation.

WEBSITES

America's Health Insurance Plans: www.ahip.org
The nation's most prominent trade association representing the private health care system. It is the nation's premier provider of self-study courses on health insurance and managed care.

Duhaime & Co. Legal Dictionary: www.duhaime.org/dictionary
This is a site that has put together an extensive list of legal terms with clear definitions and explanations.

Legal Information Institute at Cornell: www.law.cornell.edu/wex/Sports_law
Part of a series of legal information, this site specifically addresses law in sport but is rather technical. The relevant area to sports medicine is addressed in the area titled "Torts."

Sports Lawyers Journal: www.law.tulane.edu/tlsjournals/slj/index.aspx
Specialized academic and professional publication on legal aspects of sports.

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

This page intentionally left blank

PART II

Preventing Injuries in an Athletic Health Care System

4 Preventing Injuries Through Fitness Training

5 Sports Nutrition and Supplements

6 Selecting and Using Protective Sports Equipment

7 Understanding the Potential Dangers of Adverse Environmental Conditions

4

©William E. Prentice

Preventing Injuries Through Fitness Training

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Identify the concept of periodization and the types of exercise that are performed in each phase.
- Identify the principles of conditioning.
- Explain the importance of the warm-up and cool-down periods.
- Describe the importance of flexibility, strength, and cardiorespiratory endurance in injury prevention.
- Identify specific techniques and principles for improving flexibility, muscular strength, and cardiorespiratory endurance.

It is obvious that for an athlete to compete successfully at a high level, the athlete must be fit. But it is also true that an athlete who is not fit and fatigues quickly is more likely to sustain an injury.[11] Inadequate conditioning is one of the major causes of sports injuries. Improving flexibility, muscular strength, endurance, power, and cardiorespiratory endurance through a well-designed conditioning program can help to reduce the likelihood of injury in the competitive athlete. It is true that when an individual increases the length and intensity of his or her training program, the risk of injury is increased simply because of a longer exposure. However, exercise-related injuries can be reduced by moderating those parameters. When the athlete is fit, he or she becomes more resistant to fatigue and stress. Fitness does not develop overnight. It takes time and careful preparation to bring an athlete into competition at a level of fitness that will preclude early-season injury. Training and conditioning programs should minimize the possibility of injury and maximize performance.

CONDITIONING SEASONS AND PERIODIZATION

No longer do serious athletes engage only in preseason conditioning and in-season competition. Sports conditioning is a year-round endeavor. The concept of **periodization** is an approach to conditioning that attempts to bring about peak performance while reducing injuries and overtraining in the athlete by developing a training and conditioning program to be followed throughout the various seasons.[28] Periodization takes into account athletes' different training and conditioning needs during different seasons and modifies the program according to individual needs (Table 4–1).

periodization Allows athletes to train year-round with less risk of injury and staleness.

Periodization organizes a training and conditioning program into cycles. The complete training period, which could be a year in the case of seasonal sports or perhaps 4 years for an Olympic athlete, can be divided into a preseason, an in-season, and an off-season. Throughout the course of this cycle, intensity, volume, and specificity of training are altered so that an athlete can achieve peak levels of fitness for competition. As competition approaches, training sessions change gradually and progressively from high-volume, low-intensity, non–sport-specific activity to low-volume, high-intensity, sport-specific training.[28]

Within the year-round training cycle are a series of periods or phases, each of which may last for several weeks or even months, including transition, preparatory, and competition periods.[6]

TABLE 4–1 Periodization Training

Season	Period/Phase	Type of Training Activity
Off-season sports	Transition period (postseason)	Unstructured Recreational
	Preparatory period Hypertrophy/endurance phase	Cross training Low intensity High volume Non–sport-specific
	Strength phase	Moderate intensity Moderate volume More sport-specific
Preseason	Power phase	High intensity Decreased volume Sport specific
In-season	Competition period	High intensity Low volume Skill training Strategy Maintenance of strength and power gained during off-season

Transition Period The transition period (postseason) begins after the last competition and comprises the early part of the off-season. The transition period is generally unstructured, and the athlete is encouraged to participate in sports activities on a recreational basis. The idea is to allow the athlete to escape both physically and psychologically from the rigor of a highly organized training regimen. The value of a period of rest and relaxation after a long competitive season should never be underestimated.[28]

Preparatory Period The preparatory period occurs primarily during the off-season when there are no upcoming competitions. The preparatory period has three phases: the hypertrophy/endurance phase, the strength phase, and the power phase.[6]

During the hypertrophy/endurance phase, which occurs in the early part of the off-season, training is at a low intensity with a high volume of repetitions, using activities that may or may not be directly related to a specific sport. The goal is to develop a base of endurance on which more intense training can occur. This phase may last from several weeks to 2 months.

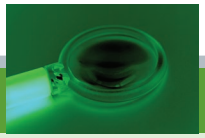
During the strength phase, which also occurs during the off-season, the intensity and volume progress to moderate levels. Weight-training activities should become more specific to the sport or event.

The third phase, or power phase, occurs in the preseason. The athlete trains at a high intensity at or near the level of competition. The volume of training is decreased so that full recovery is allowed between sessions.

Competition Period In certain cases, the competition period may last for only a week or less. However, with seasonal sports the competition period may last for several months. In general, this period involves high-intensity training at a low volume. As training volume decreases, an increased amount of time is spent on skill training or strategy sessions and in maintaining levels of flexibility, strength, and cardiorespiratory endurance established in the off-season. During the competition period, it may be necessary to establish weekly training cycles. During a weekly cycle, training should be intense early in the week, progressing to moderate, and finally light the day before a competition. The goal is to make sure that the athlete is at peak levels of fitness and performance on days of competition.[6]

Cross Training

The concept of cross training is an approach to training and conditioning for a specific sport that involves substitution of alternative activities that have some carryover value to that sport. For example, a swimmer can engage in jogging, running, or aerobic exercise to maintain levels of cardiorespiratory conditioning. Cross training is particularly useful in both the



FOCUS BOX 4–1

Principles of conditioning

1. *Warm-up/cool-down.* Give the athletes time to do an appropriate warm-up before engaging in any activity. Consider including cool-down period following a training bout.
2. *Motivation.* Athletes are generally highly motivated to work hard because they want to be successful in their sport. By varying the training program and incorporating different aspects of conditioning, the program can remain enjoyable rather than becoming routine and boring.
3. *Overload.* To see improvement in any physiological component, the system must work harder than it is accustomed to working. Gradually, that system will adapt to the imposed demands.
4. *Consistency.* The athlete must engage in a training and conditioning program on a consistent, regularly scheduled basis if the program is to be effective.
5. *Progression.* Increase the intensity of the conditioning program gradually and within the individual athlete's ability to adapt to increasing workloads.
6. *Intensity.* Stress the intensity of the work rather than the quantity. It is easy to confuse working hard with working for long periods. Prolonging the workout rather than increasing tempo or workload may be a mistake. The tired athlete is prone to injury.
7. *Specificity.* Specific goals for the training program must be identified. The program must be designed to address specific components of fitness (i.e., strength, flexibility, cardiorespiratory endurance) relative to the sport in which the athlete is competing.
8. *Individuality.* The needs of individual athletes vary considerably. A successful coach is one who recognizes these individual differences and adjusts or alters the training and conditioning program accordingly, to best accommodate the athlete.
9. *Stress.* Expect that athletes will train as close to their physiological limits as possible. Push the athletes, but consider other stressful aspects of their lives; allow them time to be away from the conditioning demands of their sport.
10. *Safety.* Make the training environment as safe as possible. Take time to educate athletes about proper techniques, how they should feel during the workout, and when they should push harder or back off.

postseason and the off-season to help athletes maintain fitness levels and avoid the boredom that typically occurs from following the same training regimen and using the same techniques for conditioning as during the preseason and competitive season.

FOUNDATIONS OF CONDITIONING

The **SAID principle** relates to the process of training and conditioning. SAID is an acronym for specific adaptation to imposed demands. The SAID principle states that when the body is subjected to stresses and overloads of varying intensities, it will gradually adapt to overcome whatever demands are placed on it and, in doing so, minimize the potential for injury. For example, in weight training, as you progressively add weight, the muscle tends to adapt to this increase in resistance by increasing in size and efficiency.

SAID principle
Indicates that the body will gradually adapt to the specific demands imposed on it.

Although overload is a critical factor in training and conditioning, the stress must not be great enough to produce damage or injury before the body has had a chance to adjust specifically to the increased demands. Therefore, to reduce the likelihood of injury, the principles of training and conditioning should be emphasized. (See *Focus Box 4–1.*)

WARM-UP AND COOL-DOWN

Warm-Up

It is generally accepted that a period of warm-up exercises should take place before a training session begins, although a review of the literature reveals little data-based research evidence to support the efficacy of a warm-up. Nevertheless, most athletic trainers would agree empirically that a warm-up period is a precaution against unnecessary musculoskeletal injuries and

4–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A track athlete constantly complains of tightness in her lower extremities during workouts. She states that she has a difficult time during her warm-up and cannot seem to "get loose" until her workout is almost complete. She feels that she is always on the verge of "pulling a muscle."

? What should be recommended as a specific warm-up routine that this athlete should consistently perform before she begins her workout?

possible muscle soreness. A good warm-up may also improve certain aspects of performance.[2]

The function of the warm-up is to prepare the body physiologically for some upcoming physical work.[16] The purpose is to gradually stimulate the cardiorespiratory system to a moderate degree to increase the blood flow to working skeletal muscles and increase muscle temperature.[2]

Moderate activity speeds up the metabolic processes that produce an increase in core body temperature. An increase in the temperature of skeletal muscle alters the mechanical properties of the muscle. The elasticity of the muscle (the length to which the muscle can be stretched) is increased, and the viscosity (the rate at which the muscle can change shape) is decreased, which means that the muscle changes in shape more rapidly.

A good warm-up routine should begin with 2 or 3 minutes of slow walking, light jogging, or cycling to increase metabolism and warm up the muscles.[16] Breaking into a light sweat is a good indication that muscle temperature has increased. Although research has indicated that increasing core temperature is effective in reducing injuries, there is little or no evidence that stretching during the warm-up reduces injury.[33,47] Empirically, many professionals feel that stretching should be a part of the warm-up, and they continue to recommend that flexibility exercises be included. Six to 12 minutes of dynamic stretching is recommended to improve flexibility. Passive stretching, although not harmful, may not improve performance.[41] The individual should not wait longer than 15 minutes to begin the main sports activity after the warm-up, although the effects may last up to about 45 minutes.

A warm-up helps reduce injuries by progressively increasing:

- Flexibility
- Strength
- Power
- Endurance

Dynamic Warm-Up For many years, the accepted technique was to perform a light jog followed by some static stretching. A more contemporary approach to the warm-up is to use an active, or "dynamic," warm-up to prepare for physical activity. A dynamic warm-up involves continuous movement using hopping, skipping, and bounding activities with several different footwork drills and patterns. It enhances coordination and motor ability as it revs up the nervous system. It prepares the muscles and joints in a more activity-specific manner than static stretching. It should include exercises that address all the major muscle groups. The entire dynamic warm-up can be done in as little as 5 minutes or as long as 20 minutes, depending on the goals, age, and fitness level of the group.

Cool-Down

Following a workout or training session, a cool-down period may be beneficial. The cool-down period enables the body to cool and return to a resting state. Such a period should last about 5 to 10 minutes. An example of a cool-down activity would be to have the individual jog and progressively decrease the pace to a walk to allow the metabolism to return to resting levels. This may be followed by stretching activities.

Properly cooling down decreases blood and muscle lactic acid levels more rapidly.

Although the warm-up period is common, the importance of a cool-down period afterward is often ignored. However, it must be added that stretching done either prior to or after exercise does not appear to be effective in reducing delayed onset muscle soreness.[27]

Conditioning should be performed gradually, with work added in small increments.

WHY IS IT IMPORTANT TO HAVE GOOD FLEXIBILITY?

Flexibility may best be defined as the range of motion possible about a given joint or series of joints.[39] Flexibility can be discussed in relation to movement involving only one joint, such as in the knees, or movement involving a whole series of joints, such as the spinal vertebral joints, which must all move together to allow smooth bending, or rotation, of the trunk. Flexibility is specific to a given joint or movement. A person may have good range of motion in the ankles, knees, hips, back, and one shoulder joint. However, if the other shoulder joint lacks normal movement, then this person has a problem that needs to be corrected so that both joints can function symmetrically.

Good flexibility is important in injury prevention.

Stretching does not necessarily improve performance, nor does it help to prevent injury.

For many years, it has been generally accepted that increasing flexibility promotes performance. A lack of flexibility in an athlete will potentially impair performance. For example, a sprinter with tight, inelastic hamstring muscles may have a problem sprinting at maximum speed because tight

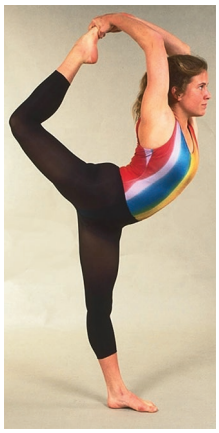


FIGURE 4–1 **Certain athletic activities require extreme flexibility for successful performance.** ©William E. Prentice

hamstrings restrict the ability to flex the hip joint, thus shortening stride length. Most activities in sports require relatively normal amounts of flexibility. However, some athletic activities, such as gymnastics, ballet, diving, karate, and yoga, require increased flexibility for superior performance (Figure 4–1). Increased flexibility may increase an athlete's performance through improved balance and reaction time. Good flexibility has generally been considered to be essential to successful physical performance.[4] However, some evidence suggests that stretching is beneficial to performance only in those sports that are dynamic and not as effective in less dynamic activities like swimming and distance running.[35,41]

For many years, it was suggested that stretching also has a beneficial effect on injury prevention. However, recent clinical evidence has suggested that stretching before exercise does not necessarily prevent injuries.[27,33]

The type of sports activity in which an individual is participating significantly affects this relationship. Dynamic sports activities like soccer and basketball that involve bouncing and jumping with a high intensity of muscle stretch-shortening cycles (SSCs) require that the muscle-tendon unit be compliant enough to store and release the high amount of elastic energy required for successful performance. If this is not the case, the demands in energy absorption and release may exceed the capacity of the muscle-tendon unit, leading to an increased risk for injury. In these types of sports, stretching can significantly influence the viscosity of the tendon, making it more compliant, thus reducing the likelihood of injury.

In contrast, sports like jogging and cycling involve low-intensity, or limited stretch-shortening, cycles. It is not as critical for the muscle-tendon unit to be compliant. Most of its power generation is a consequence of active muscle contraction that needs to be directly transferred, via the tendon, to the articular system to generate motion. Thus, stretching is not as essential in reducing the chance of injury.

The most recent review of literature suggests that there is moderate to strong evidence that routine application of static stretching does not reduce overall injury rates. However, there is preliminary evidence that static stretching may reduce musculotendinous injuries.[44]

What Structures in the Body Can Limit Flexibility?

A number of different anatomical structures may limit the ability of a joint to move through a full, unrestricted range of motion. Normal bone structure, fat, and skin or scar tissue may limit the ability to move through a full range of motion.

Muscles and their tendons are most often responsible for limiting range of motion. Performing stretching exercises for the purpose of improving a particular joint's flexibility is an attempt to take advantage of the highly elastic properties of a muscle. Over time it is possible to increase the elasticity, or the length, that a given muscle can be stretched. Athletes who have a good range of motion at a particular joint tend to have highly elastic and flexible muscles.

Connective tissue surrounding the joint, such as ligaments or the joint capsule, may be subject to shortening. Ligaments and joint capsules do have some elasticity; however, if an injured joint is immobilized for a time, these structures tend to lose some elasticity and actually shorten. This condition is most commonly seen after surgical repair of an unstable joint, but it can also result from long periods of inactivity.

On the other hand, it is also possible for an athlete to have slack ligaments and joint capsules. These individuals are generally referred to as being loose-jointed. An example of this condition is an elbow or knee that extends beyond being straight. Frequently the instability associated with loose-jointedness may present as great a problem in movement as a joint that is too tight.

A **trigger point** is an area of tenderness in a tight band of muscle. Painful or active trigger points most often develop because of some mechanical stress to the muscle. This stress could involve either an acute muscle strain or postural positions that produce constant tension in the muscle. Trigger points occur most typically in

trigger point A tender nodule in a tight band of muscle.

the neck, upper back, and lower back. Pain that comes from a trigger point may also cause some restricted range of motion. Pressure on the trigger point produces a twitch or a jump response from the pain. Pain increases when the involved muscle is stretched.

Active and Passive Range of Motion

An active movement occurs when an individual voluntarily contracts a muscle to move a body part, and a passive motion occurs when another person moves the athlete's body part without muscle contraction. When a muscle actively contracts, it produces a joint movement through a specific range of motion. However, if passive force is applied to an extremity, it is capable of moving farther in the range of motion. *Active range of motion* refers to that portion of the total range of motion through which a joint can be moved by an active muscle contraction. The ability to move through the active range of motion is not necessarily a good indicator of the stiffness or looseness of a joint because it applies to the ability to move a joint efficiently, with little resistance to motion. *Passive range of motion* refers to the portion of the total range of motion through which a joint may be moved passively. No muscle contraction is needed to move a joint through a passive range of motion. Passive range of motion begins at the end of and continues beyond active range of motion.

In sports activities, an extremity should be capable of moving through a nonrestricted range of motion both to reduce the likelihood of injury and to enhance performance.[39] For example, a hurdler who cannot fully extend the knee joint in a normal stride is at a considerable disadvantage because stride length and thus speed are reduced significantly. Passive range of motion is important for injury prevention. Sports contain many situations in which a muscle is forced to stretch beyond its normal active limits. If the muscle does not have enough elasticity to compensate for this additional stretch, the muscle or its tendon will likely be injured.

Agonist Versus Antagonist Muscles

Before discussing different stretching techniques, it is essential to define the terms *agonist muscle* and *antagonist muscle*. Most joints in the body are capable of more than one movement. The knee joint, for example, is capable of flexion and extension. Contraction of the quadriceps group of muscles on the front of the thigh causes knee extension, whereas contraction of the hamstring muscles on the back of the thigh produces knee flexion. In knee extension, the quadriceps muscle that contracts to extend the knee is referred to as the agonist muscle. Conversely, the muscle being stretched in response to contraction of the agonist muscle is called the antagonist muscle. In this example of knee extension, the antagonist muscle is the hamstring group.

Assessment of Flexibility

A general estimation of an athlete's flexibility can be obtained by using the "sit and reach" test which measures trunk and hip flexion (Figure 4–2), the trunk extension test (Figure 4–3), and the shoulder extension test (Figure 4–4). Each of these tests may be easily performed on either individuals or a group of athletes.

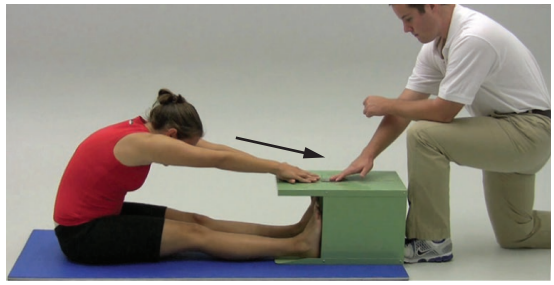


FIGURE 4–2 **Sit and reach test.** ©William E. Prentice

Instructions to the athlete: Sit with legs together, knees flat on the floor, and feet against some vertical surface. Bend forward and reach as far forward as possible with the fingers.

Measurement: Measure the number of inches either in front of or beyond the vertical surface.

Normal range: 3–8 inches past vertical.

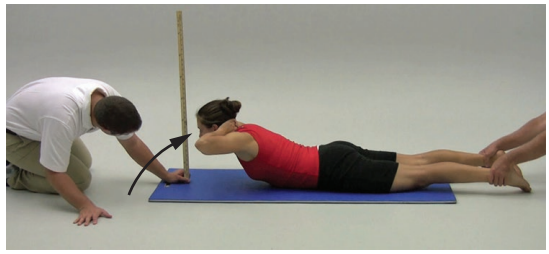
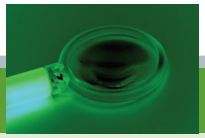


FIGURE 4–3 **Trunk extension test.** ©William E. Prentice

Instructions to the athlete: Lie in the prone position on the floor. Have a partner hold your legs to the ground. Grasp your hands behind your neck, inhale, lift your upper trunk as high off the floor as possible.

Measurement: Measure the distance from the chin to the floor.

Normal range: 19–24 inches.



FOCUS BOX 4–2

Guidelines and precautions for stretching

The following guidelines and precautions should be incorporated into a sound stretching program:

- Warm up using a slow jog or fast walk before stretching vigorously.
- To increase flexibility, the muscle must be overloaded or stretched beyond its normal range but not to the point of pain.
- Stretch only to the point at which tightness or resistance to stretch or perhaps some discomfort is felt. Stretching should not be painful.
- Increases in range of motion will be specific to whatever joint is being stretched.
- Exercise caution when stretching muscles that surround painful joints. Pain is an indication that something is wrong; it should not be ignored.
- Avoid overstretching the ligaments and capsules that surround joints.
- Exercise caution when stretching the low back and neck. Exercises that compress the vertebrae and their disks may cause damage.
- Stretching from a seated position rather than a standing position takes stress off the low back and decreases the chances of back injury.
- Stretch those muscles that are tight and inflexible.
- Strengthen those muscles that are weak.
- Always stretch slowly and with control.
- Be sure to continue normal breathing during a stretch.
- Static and proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) techniques are most often recommended for individuals who want to improve their range of motion.
- Dynamic stretching should be done by those who are already flexible and/or are accustomed to stretching and should be done only after static stretching.
- Stretching should be done both before and after activity, at least three times per week to see minimal improvement, and five or six times per week to see maximum results.

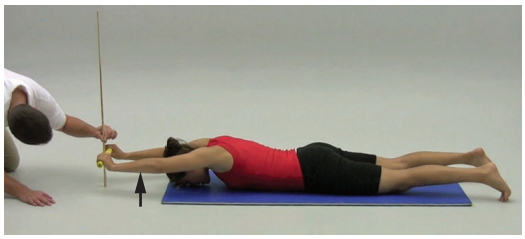


FIGURE 4–4 **Shoulder extension test.** ©William E. Prentice

Instructions to the athlete: Lie prone on the floor with arms extended over head, while holding a stick or pencil in the hands. Raise the stick as high as possible with the face and chest kept flat on the floor.

Measurement: Measure the distance from the stick to the ground.

Normal range: 23–27 inches.

What Are the Different Stretching Techniques?

Maintaining a full, nonrestricted range of motion has long been recognized as an essential component of being fit and preventing injury. Flexibility is important not only for successful physical performance but also to prevent injury. The goal of any effective flexibility program should be to improve the range of motion around a given joint by altering the extensibility of the muscles and tendons that produce movement at that joint. Exercises that stretch these muscles and tendons over time will increase the range of movement possible about a given joint (see *Focus Box 4–2*).

Ballistic Stretching **Ballistic stretching** involves a bouncing movement in which repetitive contractions of the agonist muscle are used to produce quick stretches of the antagonist muscle. The ballistic stretching technique, although apparently effective in improving range of motion, has been criticized in the past because increased range of motion is achieved through a series of jerks or pulls on the resistant muscle tissue. The concern was that if the forces generated by the jerks are greater than the tissues' extensibility, muscle injury may result.

ballistic stretching Stretching technique that uses repetitive bouncing motions.

Dynamic Stretching Certainly successive forceful contractions of the agonist muscle that result in stretching of the antagonist muscle may cause muscle soreness. For example, forcefully kicking a soccer ball 50 times may result in muscular soreness of the hamstrings (antagonist muscle) as a result of eccentric contraction of the hamstrings to control the dynamic movement of the quadriceps (agonist muscle). Stretching that is controlled usually does not cause muscle soreness.[35] This is the difference between ballistic stretching and dynamic stretching. In fact, in the athletic population,

dynamic stretching has become the stretching technique of choice. The argument has been that dynamic stretching exercises are more closely related to the types of activities that athletes engage in and should be considered more functional.[15,35] So dynamic stretching exercises are routinely recommended for athletes prior to beginning an activity (Figure 4–5A).

static stretching Passively stretching an antagonist muscle by placing it in a maximal stretch and holding it there.

Static Stretching The **static stretching** technique is an extremely effective and perhaps the most widely used technique of stretching (Figure 4–5B). This technique involves passively stretching a muscle by placing it in a maximal position of stretch, or its endpoint where there is resistance to stretch, and holding it there for an extended time.[44] Recommendations for the optimal time for holding this stretched position vary, ranging from as short as 3 seconds to as long as 60 seconds. It appears that 20 to 30 seconds may be the best length of time to hold a stretch. The static stretch of each muscle should be repeated three or four times. Much research has been done comparing dynamic and static stretching techniques for the improvement of flexibility. Both static and dynamic stretching are effective in increasing flexibility, and there is no significant difference between the two. However, static stretching offers less danger of exceeding the extensibility limits of the involved joints because the stretch is more controlled. Dynamic stretching may cause muscular soreness (if an individual is not fit), whereas static stretching generally does not and is commonly used in injury rehabilitation of sore or strained muscles.

Static stretching is certainly a much safer stretching technique, especially for unfit individuals. However, many physical activities involve dynamic movement. Thus, stretching as a warm-up for these types of activities should begin with static stretching followed by dynamic stretching, which more closely resembles the dynamic activity.

Proprioceptive Neuromuscular Facilitation (PNF) Techniques PNF techniques were first used by physical therapists for treating patients who had various types of neuromuscular paralysis. More recently, PNF stretching exercises have been used as a stretching technique for increasing flexibility. A number of different PNF techniques are currently being used for stretching, including *slow-reversal-hold-relax, contract-relax,* and *hold-relax* techniques.[38] All involve some combination of alternating contraction and relaxation of both agonist and antagonist muscles (a 10-second pushing phase followed by a 10-second relaxing phase).

proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) Stretching techniques that involve combinations of alternating contractions and stretches.

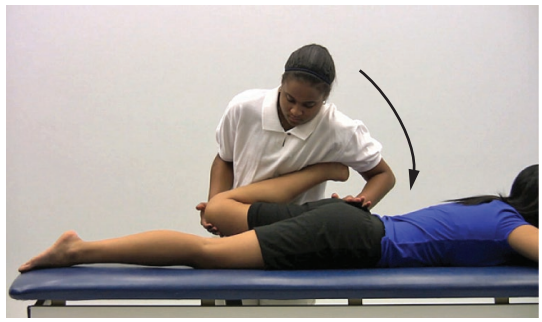
Using a hamstring stretching technique as an example (Figure 4–5C), the slow-reversal-hold-relax technique is done as follows. With the athlete lying supine with knee extended and the ankle flexed to 90 degrees, a partner passively flexes the leg at the hip joint to the point at which the athlete feels slight discomfort in the muscle. At this point, the athlete begins pushing against the partner's resistance by contracting the hamstring muscle. After pushing for 10 seconds, the athlete relaxes the hamstring muscles and contracts the quadriceps muscle while the partner applies passive pressure to further stretch the hamstrings. This pressure should move the leg so that the hip joint flexion is increased. The relaxing phase lasts for 10 seconds, at which time the athlete again pushes against the partner's resistance, beginning at this new joint angle. The push-relax sequence is repeated at least three times.[32]

The contract-relax and hold-relax techniques are variations on the slow-reversal-hold-relax method. In the contract-relax method, the hamstrings are isotonically contracted so that the leg actually moves toward the floor during the push phase. The hold-relax method involves an isometric hamstring contraction against immovable resistance during the push phase. During the relax phase, both techniques involve relaxation of hamstrings and quadriceps while the hamstrings are passively stretched. This same basic PNF technique can be used to stretch any muscle in the body. PNF stretching techniques are perhaps best performed with a partner, although they may also be done using a wall as resistance.[46]

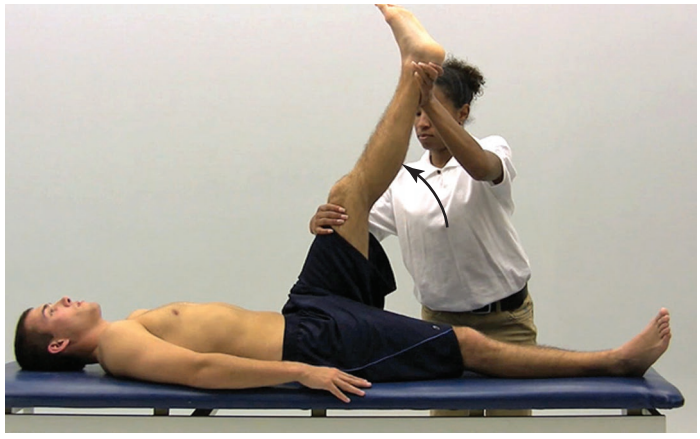
Practical Application

Although all three stretching techniques effectively improve flexibility, there is still considerable debate as to which technique produces the greatest increases in range of movement.[32,38] The dynamic technique is seldom recommended in sedentary individuals because of the potential for causing muscle soreness. However, most sports activities are ballistic in nature (i.e., kicking, running). In highly trained individuals, it is unlikely that dynamic stretching will result in muscle soreness.[15] Static stretching is perhaps the most widely used technique. It is a simple technique and does

A



B



C

FIGURE 4–5 Stretching techniques. **(A)** Dynamic stretch for hip flexors and extensors. **(B)** Static stretch for knee extensors. **(C)** Slow-reversal-hold-relax PNF techniques for hamstrings. ©William E. Prentice

not require a partner. A full nonrestricted range of motion can be attained through static stretching over time.

PNF stretching techniques can produce dramatic increases in range of motion during one stretching session. Studies comparing static and PNF stretching suggest that PNF stretching can produce greater improvement in flexibility over an extended training period.[32,39] The major disadvantage of PNF stretching is that a partner is required, although stretching with a partner may have some motivational advantages.

Stretching Exercises

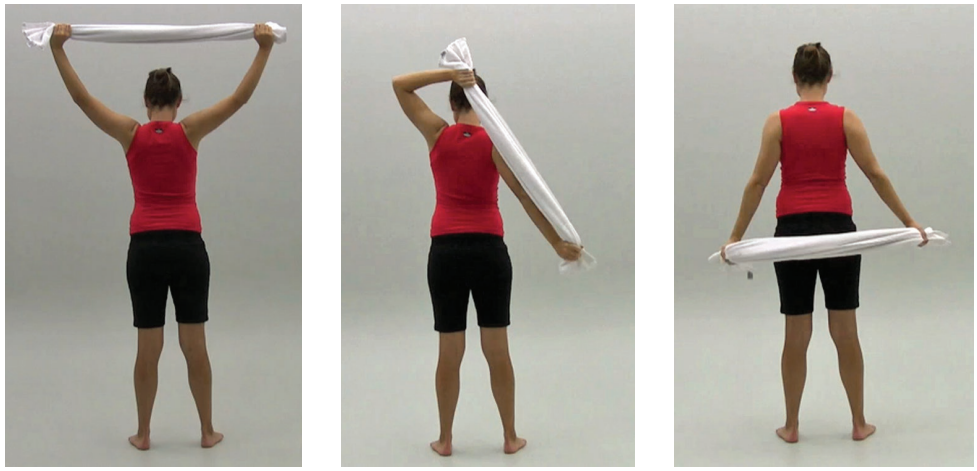
Figures 4–6 to 4–17 illustrate stretching exercises that may be used to improve flexibility at specific joints throughout the body. The exercises described may be done statically, or with slight modification they may also be done with a partner using a PNF technique.

Each of these exercises has many possible variations. The exercises selected are those that seem

FIGURE 4–6 Arm hang exercise. ©William E. Prentice

Muscles stretched: Entire shoulder girdle complex.

Instructions: Using a chinning bar, simply hang with shoulders and arms fully extended for 30 seconds. Repeat five times.



A B C

FIGURE 4–7 **Shoulder towel stretch exercise.** ©William E. Prentice

Muscles stretched: Internal and external rotators.

Instructions: **(A)** Begin by holding towel above head with hands shoulder width apart. **(B)** Try to pull towel down behind back, first with right hand then with left. **(C)** You should end up with elbows extended and hands below waist. Reverse order to get back to position A. Repeat five times on each side.

FIGURE 4–8 **Chest and shoulder stretch exercise.** ©William E. Prentice

Muscles stretched: Pectoralis and deltoid.

Instructions: Stand in a corner, hands and arms on walls, and lean forward. Hold for 30 seconds. Repeat three times.

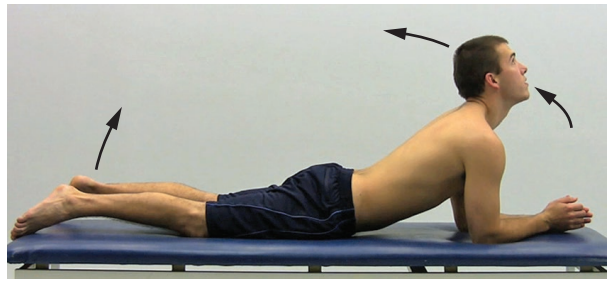
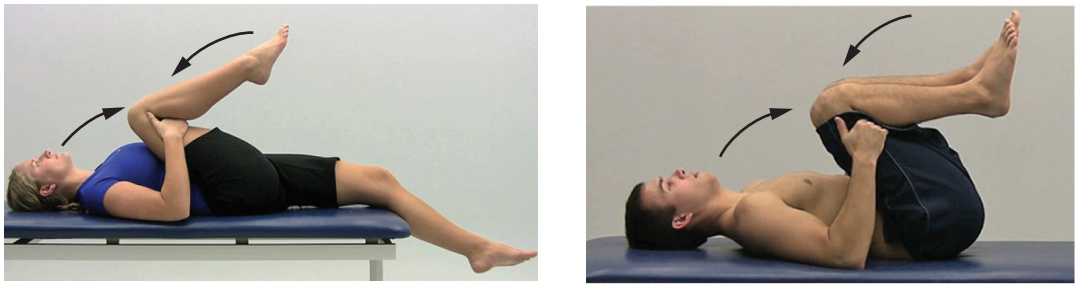


FIGURE 4–9 **Abdominal and anterior chest wall stretch exercise.** ©William E. Prentice

Muscles stretched: Muscles of respiration in thorax and abdominal muscles.

Instructions: Extend upper trunk, support weight on elbows, keeping pelvis on the table. If possible, lift the feet off the table. Hold for 30 seconds. Repeat three times.



A B

FIGURE 4–10 **Williams's flexion exercise.** ©William E. Prentice

Muscles stretched: Low back and hip extensors.

Instructions: **(A)** Touch chin to right knee and hold, then to left knee and hold. **(B)** Touch chin to both knees and hold. Hold each position for 30 seconds.

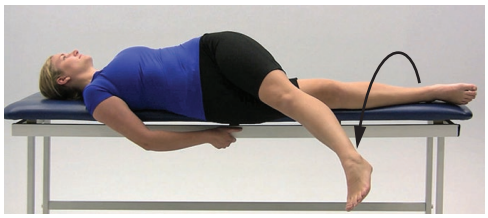


FIGURE 4–11 **Low back twister exercise.** ©William E. Prentice

Muscles stretched: Rotators of lower back and hip abductors .

Instructions: Lie on back on edge of bed or table. Keep shoulders and arms flat on surface. Cross leg farthest from edge over the top and let it hang off the side of table, keeping knee straight; hold for 30 seconds. Repeat with other leg.

Repeat three times with each leg.

Caution: If keeping the leg straight produces pain, this exercise may be done with the leg bent. Be sure to exercise caution in returning the leg to the starting position.

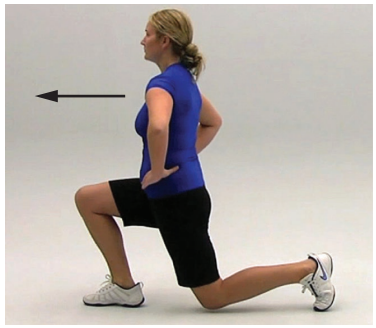


FIGURE 4–12 **Forward lunge exercise.** ©William E. Prentice

Muscles stretched: Hip flexors and quadriceps.

Instructions: In a kneeling position with one knee on the ground, thrust pelvis forward. Hold for 30 seconds. Repeat three times.

FIGURE 4–13 **Lateral trunk stretch exercise.** ©William E. Prentice

Muscles stretched: Lateral abdominals and intercostals.

Instructions: Standing with a tandem stance, extend right arm straight up, and reach for the ceiling, twist to the right. Hold for 30 seconds. Repeat three times on each side.

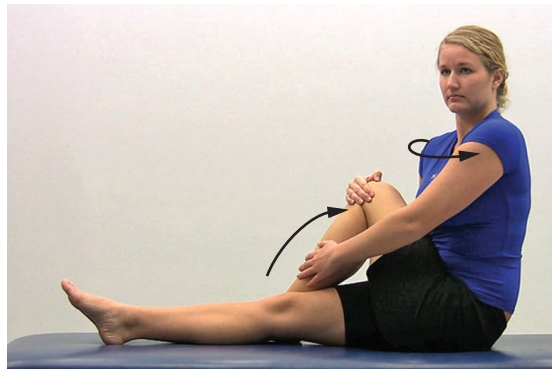


FIGURE 4–14 **Trunk twister exercise.** ©William E. Prentice

Muscles stretched: Trunk and hip rotators.

Instructions: Place one foot over opposite knee. Rotate trunk to bent-knee side.

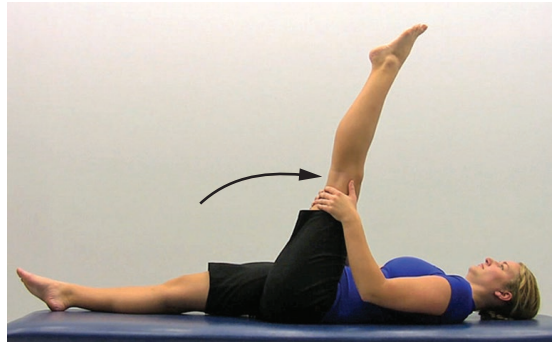


FIGURE 4–15 **Hamstring stretch exercise.** ©William E. Prentice

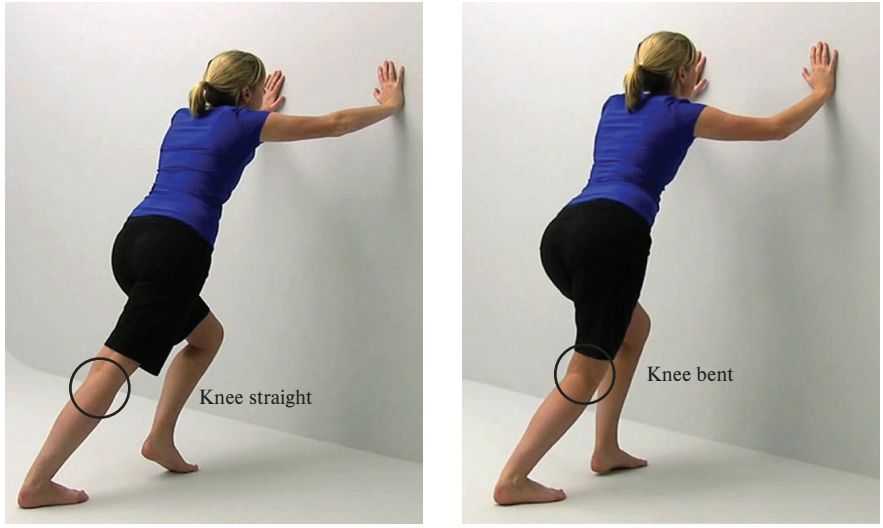
Muscles stretched: Hip extensors and knee flexors.

Instructions: Lie flat on back. Raise one leg straight up with knee extended. Grasp leg around the hamstring and pull toward head; hold for 30 seconds. Repeat with opposite leg. Repeat three times with each leg.

FIGURE 4–16 **Groin stretch exercise.** ©William E. Prentice

Muscles stretched: Hip adductors in groin.

Instructions: Sit with knees flexed and soles of feet together. Try to press knees flat on the floor; if they are flat to begin with, try to touch face to floor. Hold for 30 seconds. Repeat three times.



A B

FIGURE 4–17 **Achilles heel cord stretch exercise.** ©William E. Prentice

Muscles stretched: Foot plantar flexors. **(A)** Gastrocnemius. **(B)** Soleus

Instructions: **(A)** Stand facing wall, with toes pointing straight ahead and with the knee straight. Lean forward toward wall, keeping heels flat on floor. You should feel stretching high in calf. **(B)** Stand facing wall with toes pointing straight ahead and with the knee flexed. Lean forward toward wall, keeping heels flat on floor. You should feel stretching low in calf. Hold each position for 30 seconds. Repeat each position three times for each leg.

to be the most effective for stretching various muscle groups.

Is There a Relationship Between Strength and Flexibility?

It is often said that strength training has negative effects on flexibility. For example, someone who develops a great deal of bulk through strength training is often referred to as muscle-bound. The expression "muscle-bound" has negative connotations in terms of the ability of that person to move. People who have highly developed muscles are thought to have lost much of their ability to move freely through a full range of motion.

Occasionally a person develops so much bulk that the physical size of the muscle prevents a normal range of motion. When strength training is not properly done, movement can be impaired. However, weight training, if done properly through a full range of motion, will not impair flexibility. Proper strength training likely improves dynamic flexibility and, if combined with a rigorous stretching program, can greatly enhance powerful and coordinated movements that are essential for success in many athletic activities. In all cases a weight-training program should be accompanied by a flexibility program (Figure 4–18).

FIGURE 4–18 **If strength training is combined with flexibility exercise, a full range of motion may be maintained.** Source: Pro Dual DPLS-SF Machine/Body-Solid

WHY ARE MUSCULAR STRENGTH, ENDURANCE, AND POWER IMPORTANT FOR ATHLETES?

The development of muscular strength is an essential component of a training program for every athlete.[7] By definition, **muscular strength** is the ability of a muscle to generate force against some resistance.

muscular strength The maximum force that can be applied by a muscle during a single maximum contraction.

muscular endurance The ability to perform repetitive muscular contractions against some resistance.

Muscular endurance is the ability to perform repetitive muscular contractions against some resistance for an extended time. As muscular strength increases, there tends to be a corresponding increase in endurance. For example, an athlete can lift a weight 25 times. If muscular strength is increased by 10 percent through weight training, the maximal number of repetitions is increased because it is easier for the athlete to lift the weight.

Most movements in sports are explosive and must include elements of both strength and speed if they are to be effective. If a large amount of force is generated quickly, the movement can be referred to as a **power** movement. Without the ability to generate power, an athlete is limited in his or her performance capabilities. It is difficult to hit a baseball, drive a golf ball, or kick a soccer ball without generating power. For most athletes, the ability to generate power is more critical for successful performance than simply having great strength or muscular endurance.

power The ability to generate force rapidly.

Types of Skeletal Muscle Contraction

Skeletal muscle is capable of three different types of contraction: (1) an *isometric contraction*, (2) a *concentric*, or positive, contraction, and (3) an *eccentric*, or negative, contraction. An isometric contraction occurs when the muscle contracts to produce tension, but there is no change in length of the muscle. Considerable force can be generated against some immovable resistance, even though no movement occurs. In a concentric contraction, the muscle shortens while tension is developed to overcome or move some resistance. In an eccentric contraction, the resistance is greater than the muscular force being produced, and the muscle lengthens while maintaining tension. For example, when lifting a weight in the hand, the biceps muscle in the upper arm is shortening as it contracts, which is a concentric contraction. As the weight is lowered, the biceps muscle maintains tension but now it is lengthening. This movement is an eccentric contraction. Concentric and eccentric contractions must occur to allow most movements.

What Determines the Amount of Strength?

Size of the Muscle Muscular strength is proportional to the size of a muscle as determined by the cross-sectional diameter of the muscle fibers.[29] The greater the cross-sectional diameter or the bigger a particular muscle, the stronger it is, and thus the more force it is capable of generating. The size of a muscle tends to increase in cross-sectional diameter with weight training. This increase in muscle size is referred to as *hypertrophy*. Conversely, a decrease in the size of a muscle is referred to as *atrophy*.

Number of Muscle Fibers Strength is a function of the number and diameter of muscle fibers comprising a given muscle. The number of fibers is an inherited characteristic; a person with a large number of muscle fibers to begin with has the potential to hypertrophy to a much greater degree than does someone with relatively few fibers. But anyone can increase his or her strength through exercise.

Neuromuscular Efficiency Strength is also directly related to the efficiency of both the nervous and muscular systems (or the neuromuscular system) and the function of the motor unit in producing muscular force. Initial increases in strength during a weight-training program can be attributed primarily to increased neuromuscular efficiency. For a muscle to contract, a nerve impulse must be transmitted from the nervous system to the muscle. Each muscle fiber is innervated by a specific *motor unit*. By overloading a particular muscle, as in weight training, the muscle is forced to work efficiently. Efficiency is achieved by getting more motor units to fire, causing a stronger contraction of the muscle.[13]

Biomechanical Factors Strength in a given muscle is determined not only by the physical properties of the muscle but also by biomechanical factors. Bones along with muscles and their tendons form a system of levers and pulleys that collectively generate force to move an external object. The position of attachment of a particular muscle tendon on the bone will largely determine how much force this muscle is capable of generating.

Fast-Twitch Versus Slow-Twitch Muscle Fibers The fibers that make up a muscle are either slow-twitch fibers or fast-twitch fibers.[29] Within a particular muscle, both types of fibers exist, and the ratio in an individual muscle varies with each person. Those muscles that have a primary function of maintaining posture against the pull of gravity require more endurance and have a higher percentage of slow-twitch fibers. Muscles that produce powerful,

There are two basic types of muscle fibers:

- Slow-twitch
- Fast-twitch

explosive, and strength movements tend to have a much greater percentage of fast-twitch fibers.

Because this ratio is genetically determined, it may play a large role in determining ability for a given sports activity. For example, sprinters and weight lifters have a large percentage of fast-twitch fibers in relation to slow-twitch ones. Elite sprinters may have as many as 80 percent fast-twitch fibers in certain muscles. Conversely, marathon runners generally have a higher percentage of slow-twitch fibers. The question of whether fiber types can change as a result of training has not been completely resolved.[29] However, both types of fibers can improve their metabolic capabilities through specific strength and endurance training.

Level of Physical Activity Loss in muscle strength is definitely related to individual levels of physical activity. Those people who are more active, or perhaps those who continue to strength train, considerably reduce this tendency toward declining muscle strength. In addition, exercise may also have an effect in slowing the decrease in cardiorespiratory endurance and flexibility as well as slowing increases in body fat that tend to occur with aging. Therefore, if total wellness and health is an ultimate goal, strength maintenance is important for all individuals regardless of age or the level of competition.

Overtraining Overtraining can have a negative effect on the development of muscular strength. Overtraining can result in **staleness,** which involves both psychological breakdown and physiological breakdown. With deterioration in the usual standard of performance, staleness may result in musculoskeletal injury, chronic fatigue, sickness, apathy, loss of appetite, indigestion, weight loss, and inability to sleep or rest properly. Engaging in proper and efficient resistance training, eating a proper diet, and getting appropriate rest can all minimize the potential negative effects of overtraining.[23]

staleness Deterioration in usual standard of performance.

Gains in muscular strength resulting from resistance training are reversible. Individuals who interrupt or stop resistance training altogether will see rapid decreases in strength gains. "If you don't use it, you'll lose it."

WHAT PHYSIOLOGICAL CHANGES OCCUR TO CAUSE INCREASED STRENGTH?

Weight training to improve muscular strength results in an increased size, or hypertrophy, of a muscle. What causes a muscle to hypertrophy? Over the years, a number of theories have been proposed to explain this increase in muscle size, the majority of which have been discounted.

The primary explanation for this hypertrophy is best attributed to an increase in the size and number of small contractile protein filaments within the muscle, called *myofilaments*. Increases in both size and number of the myofilaments as a result of strength training cause the individual muscle fibers to increase in cross-sectional diameter.[29] This increase is particularly true in men, although women also see some increase in muscle size.

4–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A swimmer has been engaged in an off-season weight-training program to increase her muscular strength and endurance. Although she has seen some improvement in her strength, she is concerned that she also seems to be losing flexibility in her shoulders, which she feels is critical to her performance as a swimmer. She has also noticed that her muscles are hypertrophying to some degree and is worried that that may be causing her to lose flexibility. She has just about decided to abandon her weight-training program altogether.

? What can be recommended that will allow her to continue to improve her muscular strength and endurance while maintaining or perhaps even improving her flexibility?

CORE STABILIZATION TRAINING

A dynamic core stabilization training program should be an important component of all comprehensive strengthening programs.[9] The **core** is defined as the lumbo-pelvic-hip complex. The core is where the center of gravity is located and where all movement begins. There are 29 muscles in the lumbar spine, the abdomen, and around the hip and pelvis that have their attachment to the lumbo-pelvic-hip complex that collectively help to maintain the pelvis in a neutral position.[14]

core Muscles that make up the lumbo-pelvic-hip complex.

A core stabilization program will improve dynamic postural control; ensure appropriate muscular balance and joint movement around the lumbo-pelvic-hip complex; allow for the expression of dynamic functional strength; and improve neuromuscular efficiency throughout the entire body, allowing for optimal acceleration, deceleration, and dynamic stabilization of the entire kinetic chain during functional movements. It also provides proximal stability for efficient lower extremity movements.[14]

Many individuals work on developing the functional strength, power, neuromuscular control, and

muscular endurance in specific muscles that enable them to perform functional activities. However, relatively few individuals have developed the muscles required for stabilization of the spine.[36] The body's stabilization system has to be functioning optimally to effectively utilize the strength, power, neuromuscular control, and muscular endurance that they have developed in their prime movers. If the extremity muscles are strong and the core is weak, then there will not be enough force created to produce efficient movements. **A weak core is a fundamental problem of inefficient movements, which leads to injury.**[14]

A comprehensive core stabilization training program should be systematic, progressive, and functional. When designing a functional core stabilization training program, you should select the appropriate exercises to elicit a maximal training response. The exercises must be safe and challenging, stress multiple planes, incorporate a variety of resistance equipment (physioball, medicine ball, dumbbells, tubing, etc.), be derived from fundamental movement skills, and be activity specific.[43] Figure 4–19 shows examples of exercises that may be used to improve core stability. You should start with exercises in which you can maintain stability and optimal neuromuscular control.

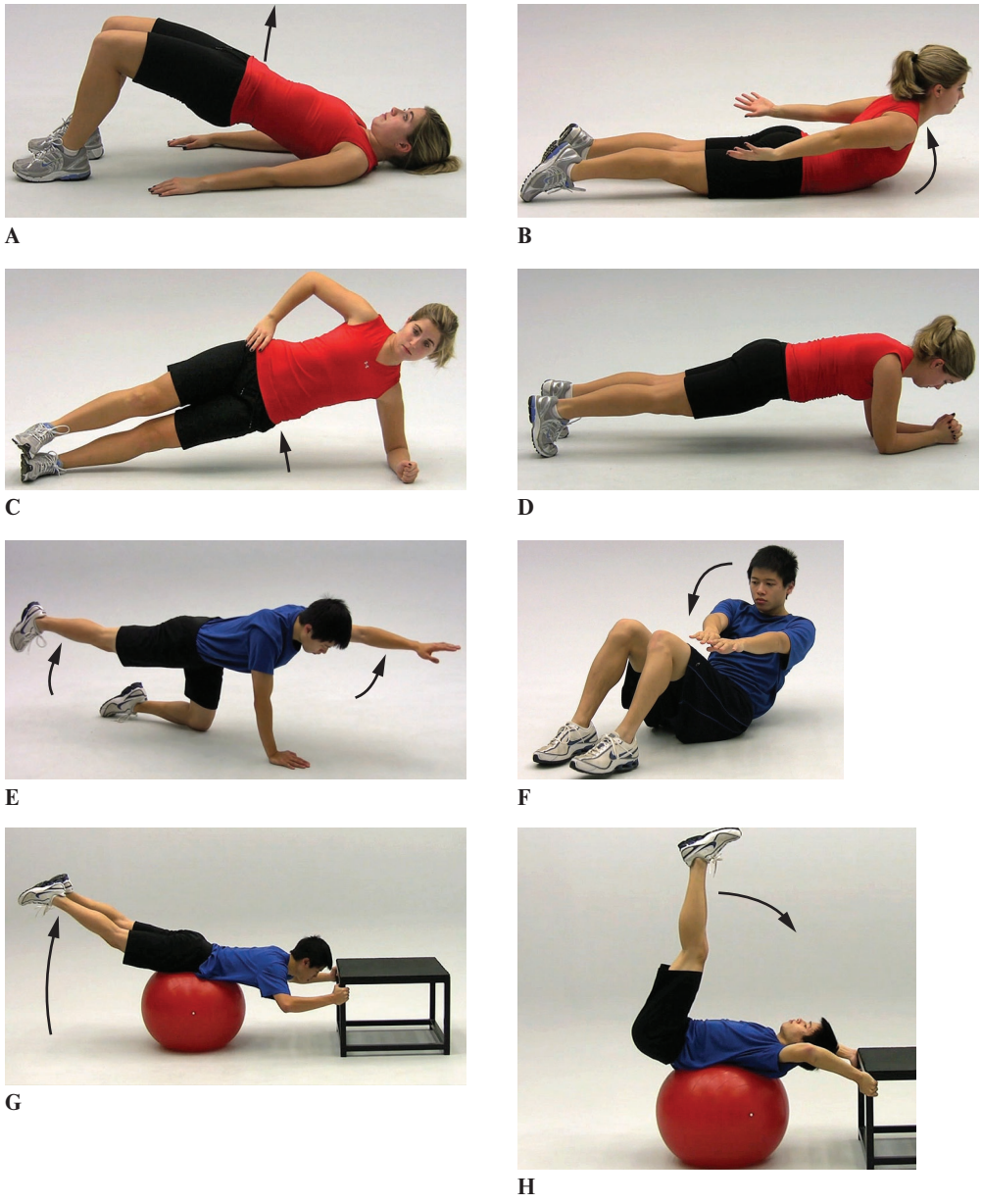
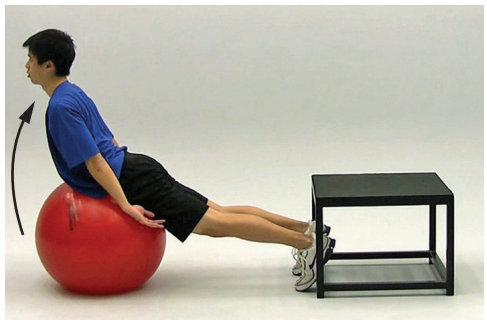
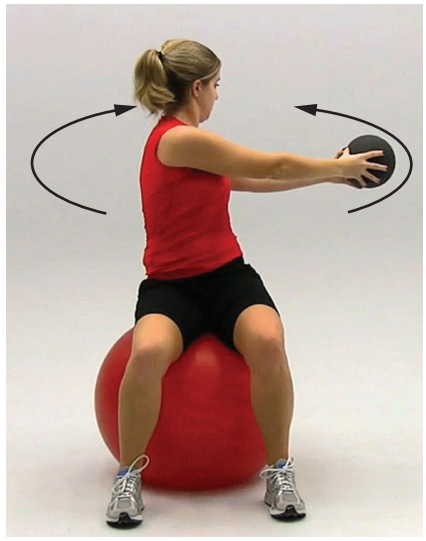


FIGURE 4–19 Core stabilization strengthening exercises. © William E. Prentice

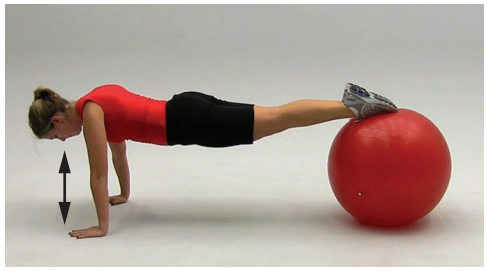
(A) Bridging. **(B)** Prone cobra. **(C)** Side-lying iso-abdominal. **(D)** Human arrow. **(E)** Quadriped opposite arm/leg raise. **(F)** Diagonal crunch. **(G)** Stability ball hip extension. **(H)** Stability ball straight leg raise.



I



J



K

FIGURE 4–19 (*concluded*) ©William E. Prentice

(I) Stability ball trunk extension. **(J)** Stability ball rotation with power ball. **(K)** Stability ball pushup.

WHAT ARE THE TECHNIQUES OF RESISTANCE TRAINING?

A number of different techniques of resistance training can be used for strength improvement, including *isometric exercise, progressive resistance exercise, isokinetic training, circuit training, plyometric exercise, body weight exercise,* and *functional strength training.* Regardless of which technique is used, one basic principle of training is extremely important: *For a muscle to improve in strength, it must be forced to work at a higher level than that to which it is accustomed.* In other words, the muscle must be *overloaded.*[7] Without overload, the muscle will be able to *maintain* strength as long as training is continued against a level of resistance to which the muscle is accustomed. However, *no additional* strength gains will be realized. This maintenance of existing levels of muscular strength may be more important in weight-training programs that emphasize muscular endurance rather than strength gains. Many individuals can benefit more in terms of overall health by concentrating on improving muscular endurance. However, to most effectively build muscular strength, weight training requires a consistent, increasing effort against progressively increasing resistance. Progressive resistance exercise is based primarily on the principles of overload and progression, although the principle of overload also applies to isometric and plyometric exercise. All three training techniques produce improvement of muscular strength over time. Table 4–2 summarizes the seven different techniques for improving muscular strength.

Isometric Exercise

isometric exercise
Contracts the muscle statically without changing its length.

An **isometric exercise** involves a muscle contraction in which the length of the muscle remains constant while tension develops toward a maximum force against an immovable resistance (Figure 4–20).[7] To develop strength, the muscle should generate a maximum force for 10 seconds at a time, and this contraction should be repeated five to ten times per day.

Isometric exercises are capable of increasing muscular strength; unfortunately, strength gains in a particular muscle will occur only at the specific joint angle in which resistance is applied. At other positions in the range of motion, the strength curve drops off dramatically because of a lack of motor activity at those angles, and there is no corresponding increase in strength.

Another major disadvantage of isometric exercises is that they have potential to produce a spike in blood pressure that can result in potentially life-threatening cardiovascular accidents. This increase in blood pressure results from holding the breath and increasing pressure within the chest cavity. Consequently, the heart experiences a significant increase in blood pressure. This spike

TABLE 4–2 Techniques for Improving Muscular Strength

Technique	Action	Equipment/Activity
Isometric exercise	Force develops while muscle length remains constant	Any immovable resistance
Progressive resistance exercise (PRE)	Force develops while the muscle shortens or lengthens	Free weights, Universal, Nautilus, Cybex, Eagle, Body Master Free Motion Fitness
Isokinetic training	Force develops while muscle is contracting at a constant velocity	Kincom, Biodex
Circuit training	Uses a combination of isometric, PRE, or isokinetic exercises organized into a series of stations	May use any of the equipment listed above
Plyometric exercise	Uses a rapid eccentric stretch of the muscle to facilitate an explosive concentric contraction	Hops, bounds, and depth jumping
Bodyweight training	Uses body weight for resistance	No equipment needed (sit-ups, push-ups, etc.)
Functional strength training	Uses functional concentric, eccentric, and isometric muscle contractions in three planes of motion simultaneously	Uses multiplane integrated resistance exercises performed on different stable and unstable surfaces

FIGURE 4–20 **An isometric contraction occurs when the muscle contracts to produce tension, but there is no change in length of the muscle. Considerable force can be generated against some immovable resistance, even though no movement occurs.** ©William E. Prentice

has been referred to as the *Valsalva effect*. To avoid or minimize this effect, breathing should be done during the maximum contraction.

Isometric exercises certainly have a place in a conditioning program. In certain instances, an isometric contraction can greatly enhance a particular movement.[7] A common use for isometric exercises is in injury rehabilitation or reconditioning. Many conditions or ailments resulting from either trauma or overuse must be treated with strengthening exercises. Unfortunately, these problems may get worse with full range-of-motion strengthening exercises. It may be more desirable to make use of isometric exercises until the injury has healed to the point that full-range activities can be performed.

Progressive Resistance Exercise

Progressive resistance exercise is perhaps the most commonly used technique for improving muscular strength. Progressive resistance exercise training uses exercises that strengthen muscles through a contraction that overcomes some fixed resistance produced by equipment such as dumbbells, barbells, various weight machines, or exercise tubing (Theraband). Progressive resistance exercise uses isotonic contractions in which force is generated while the muscle is changing in length.[17]

Isotonic contractions may be either *concentric* or *eccentric*. Suppose an athlete is going to perform a biceps curl (see Figure 4–31). To lift the weight from the starting position, the biceps muscle must contract and shorten (**concentric,** or **positive, contraction**). If the biceps muscle does not remain contracted when the weight is being lowered, gravity causes this weight to simply fall back to the starting position. Thus, to control the weight as it is being lowered, the biceps muscle must continue to maintain tension while gradually lengthening (**eccentric,** or **negative, contraction**).

concentric (positive) contraction The muscle shortens while contracting against resistance.

eccentric (negative) contraction The muscle lengthens while contracting against resistance.

A

B

FIGURE 4–21 **(A)** This exercise machine is isotonic. **(B)** Resistance may be easily altered by changing the key in the stack of weights. ©William E. Prentice

Various types of exercise equipment can be used with progressive resistive exercise, including free weights (barbells and dumbbells) or exercise machines such as, Cybex, Body Solid, Nautilus, BodyCraft, Yukon, Flex Fitness, Bowflex Fitness, Hammer Strength, Hoist Fitness, Matrix, Eagle, Free Motion Fitness, and Body Master, to name a few (Figure 4–21A). Dumbbells and barbells require the use of iron plates of varying weights that can be easily changed by adding or subtracting equal amounts of weight to both sides of the bar.

Weight machines have a stack of weights that is lifted through a series of levers or pulleys. The stack of weights slides up and down on a pair of bars that restrict the movement to only one plane (Figure 4–21B). Weight can be increased or decreased simply by changing the position of a weight key.

Both the free weights and the machines have advantages and disadvantages.[37] The weight machines are safer to use than free weights are. For example, athletes who are doing a bench press with free weights must have someone spot (help them lift the weights back onto the support racks if they don't have enough strength to complete the lift); otherwise, the weights may be dropped on the chest. The weight machines allow an athlete to easily and safely drop the weight without fear of injury. It is also a simple process to increase or decrease the weight on the weight machines by moving a single weight key, although changes can generally be made only in increments of 10 or 15 pounds. With free weights, iron plates must be added or removed from each side of the barbell.[12]

Athletes will find a difference in the amount of weight that can be lifted with free weights versus the weight machines. Unlike the weight machines, free weights have no restricted motion and can thus move in many different directions, depending on the forces applied. Also, with free weights, an element of neuromuscular control on the part of the lifter is required to prevent the weight from moving in any direction other than vertical. This control will usually decrease the amount of weight that can be lifted. Regardless of which type of equipment is used, the same principles of **isotonic** training may be applied.[37]

isotonic exercise
Shortens and lengthens the muscle through a complete range of motion.

Surgical tubing, or Theraband, as a means of providing resistance, has been widely used in training and conditioning. The advantage of exercising with surgical tubing or Theraband is that the direction of movement is less restricted than with free weights or exercise machines. Thus, exercise can be done against resistance in more functional movement planes. The use of surgical tubing exercise in plyometrics and PNF strengthening techniques, as well as with the majority of the strengthening exercises shown in this chapter, is very popular.

Progressive resistance exercise must incorporate both concentric and eccentric contractions.[3,17] It is possible to generate greater amounts of force against resistance with an eccentric contraction than with a concentric contraction. Eccentric contractions are more resistant to fatigue than are concentric contractions. The mechanical efficiency of eccentric exercise may be several times higher than that of concentric exercise. Research has clearly demonstrated that the muscle should be overloaded and fatigued both concentrically and eccentrically for the greatest strength improvement to occur.

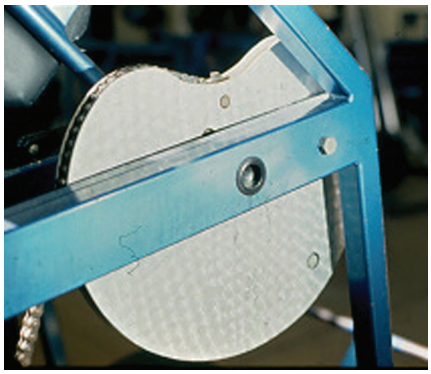


FIGURE 4–22 **The cam on this Nautilus machine is designed to equalize resistance throughout the full range of motion.** ©William E. Prentice

For athletes training specifically for the development of muscular strength, the concentric, or positive, portion of the exercise should require 1 to 2 seconds, whereas the eccentric, or negative, portion of the lift should require 2 to 4 seconds. The ratio of negative to positive should be approximately 2 to 1. Physiologically, the muscle will fatigue much more rapidly concentrically than eccentrically.

One suggested disadvantage of any type of isotonic exercise is that the force required to move the resistance is constantly changing throughout the range of movement. Nautilus exercise machines attempted to address this problem of changing force capabilities by using a cam in its pulley system (Figure 4–22). The cam has been individually designed for each piece of equipment so that the resistance is variable throughout the movement. This change in resistance at different points in the range has been labeled *accommodating resistance*, or **variable resistance.** Whether this design does what it claims to do is debatable. In real-life situations, it does not matter whether the resistance is changing.

variable resistance Resistance is varied throughout the range of motion.

Progressive Resistance Exercise Techniques Perhaps the most confusing aspect of progressive resistance exercise is the terminology used to describe specific programs. Table 4–3 lists specific terms and their operational definitions, which may provide some clarification.

A considerable amount of research has been done in the area of resistance training to determine optimal techniques in terms of (1) the intensity or the amount of weight to be used, (2) the number of repetitions, (3) the number of sets, (4) the recovery period, and (5) the frequency of training.[1]

There is no such thing as an optimal strength-training program.[5] Achieving total agreement on a program of resistance training that includes specific recommendations relative to repetitions, sets, intensity, recovery time, and frequency among researchers and/or other experts in resistance training is impossible. However, the following general recommendations provide an effective resistance training program.

TABLE 4–3 Progressive Resistance Exercise Terminology

Terms	Definitions
Repetitions	Number of times a specific movement is repeated
Repetitions maximum (RM)	Maximum number of repetitions at a given weight
Set	A particular number of repetitions
Intensity	The amount of weight or resistance lifted
Recovery period	The rest interval between sets
Frequency	The number of times an exercise is done in a week's period

For any given exercise, the amount of weight selected should be sufficient to allow at most six to eight repetitions in each of three sets, with a recovery period of 60 to 90 seconds between sets. Initial selection of a starting weight may require some trial and error to achieve this six to eight repetitions maximum (RM) range. If at least three sets of six repetitions cannot be completed, the weight is too heavy and should be reduced. If it is possible to do more than three sets of eight repetitions, the weight is too light and should be increased. Progression to heavier weights is determined by the ability to perform at least eight RM in each of three sets. When progressing weight, an increase of about 10 percent of the current weight being lifted should still allow at least six RM in each of three sets.[5]

Muscular endurance is defined as the ability to perform repeated muscle contractions against resistance for an extended period. Most weight-training experts believe that muscular strength and muscular endurance are closely related. As one factor improves, the tendency is for the other factor to improve also. When weight training for strength, heavier weights with a lower number of repetitions should be used. Conversely, endurance training uses lighter weights with a greater number of repetitions.[5]

Endurance training should consist of three sets of 10 to 15 repetitions using the same criteria for

weight selection, progression, and frequency as recommended for progressive resistance exercise.[5] Thus, training regimens for both muscular strength and endurance are similar in terms of sets and numbers of repetitions. Athletes who possess great strength levels tend to also exhibit greater muscular endurance when asked to perform repeated contractions against resistance.[5]

A particular muscle or muscle group should be exercised consistently every other day. Thus, the frequency of weight training should be at least three times per week but no more than four times per week. Serious weight trainers commonly lift every day; however, they exercise different muscle groups on successive days. For example, Monday, Wednesday, and Friday may be used for upper body muscles, whereas Tuesday, Thursday, and Saturday are used for lower body muscles.

Regardless of what technique is used, to improve strength in a muscle, it must be overloaded in a progressive manner.[17] This criterion is the basis of progressive resistance exercise. The amount of weight used and the number of repetitions performed must be sufficient to make the muscle work at a higher intensity than it is used to. This is the single most critical factor in any strength-training program.

Figures 4–23 to 4–46 describe exercises for strength improvement of shoulder, hip, knee, and ankle joint movements. These exercises are

FIGURE 4–23 **Bench press.** ©William E. Prentice

Joints affected: Shoulder, elbow.

Movement: Pushing away.

Position: Supine, feet flat on floor, back flat on bench.

Primary muscles: Pectoralis major, tricep.

FIGURE 4–24 **Incline press.** ©William E. Prentice

Joints affected: Shoulder, elbow.

Movement: Pushing upward and away.

Position: Supine at an inclined angle, feet flat on floor or support back flat against bench.

Primary muscles: Pectoralis major, triceps.

FIGURE 4–25 **Shoulder rotation.** ©William E. Prentice

Joint affected: Shoulder.

Movement: External rotation.

Position: Side-lying arm at side and elbow flexed at 90-degree angle.

Primary muscles: Infraspinatus, teres minor.

FIGURE 4–26 **Military press.** ©William E. Prentice

Joints affected: Shoulder, elbow.

Movement: Pressing the weight overhead.

Position: Seated, back straight.

Primary muscles: Deltoid, trapezius, tricep.

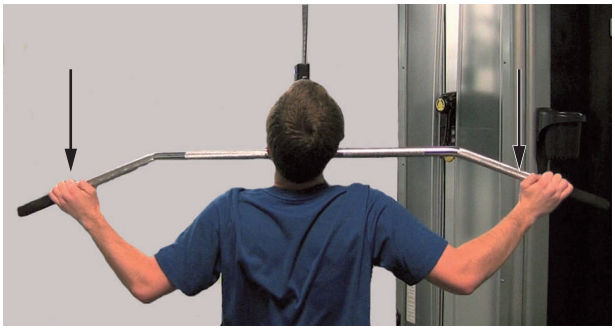


FIGURE 4–27 **Lat pull-downs.** ©William E. Prentice

Joints affected: Shoulder, elbow.

Movement: Pulling the bar down in front of head.

Position: Sitting, back straight, head up.

Primary muscles: Latissimus dorsi, biceps.

FIGURE 4–28 **Flys.** ©William E. Prentice

Joint affected: Shoulder.

Movement: Horizontal flexion, bringing arms together over head.

Position: Lying on back, feet on floor, back flat on bench.

Primary muscles: Deltoid, pectoralis major.

FIGURE 4–29 **Bent-over rows.** ©William E. Prentice

Joint affected: Shoulder.

Movement: Shoulder extension, elbow flexion.

Position: Standing bent over at waist, knee on bench.

Primary muscles: Trapezius, rhomboids, latissimus dorsi.

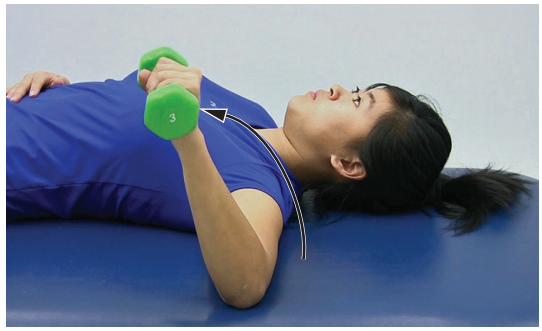


FIGURE 4–30 **Shoulder medial rotation.** ©William E. Prentice

Joint affected: Shoulder.

Movement: Internal rotation, lifting weight off the floor.

Position: Supine, shoulder abducted and elbow flexed.

Primary muscles: Subscapularis.

FIGURE 4–31 **Bicep curls.** ©William E. Prentice

Joint affected: Elbow.

Movement: Elbow flexion, curling the weight up to the shoulder.

Position: Standing feet spread at shoulder width, back straight, arms extended.

Primary muscles: Biceps.

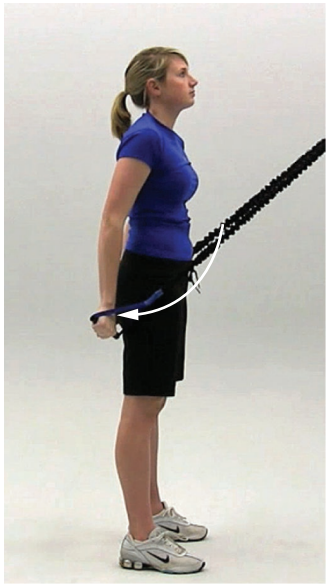


FIGURE 4–32 **Tricep extensions.** ©William E. Prentice

Joint affected: Elbow.

Movement: Elbow extension against cable or tube resistance.

Position: Standing.

Primary muscles: Triceps.

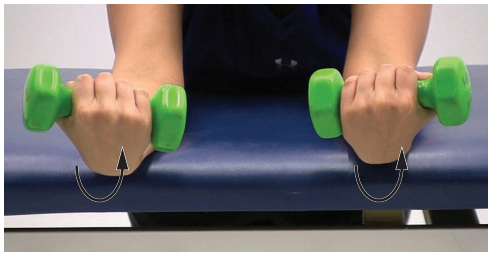


FIGURE 4–33 **Wrist curls.** ©William E. Prentice

Joint affected: Wrist.

Movement: Wrist flexion, curling weight upward.

Position: Seated, forearms on table, palms up.

Primary muscles: Long flexors of forearm.

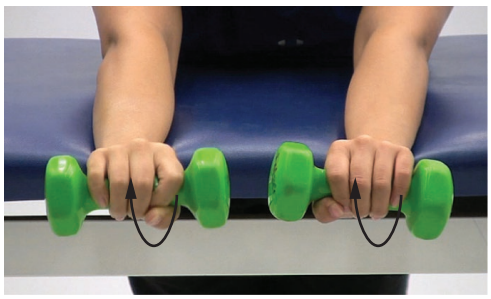


FIGURE 4–34 **Wrist extensions.** ©William E. Prentice

Joint affected: Wrist.

Movement: Extension, curling weight upward.

Position: Seated, forearms on table, palms down.

Primary muscles: Long extensors of forearm.

FIGURE 4–35 **Leg lifts.** ©William E. Prentice

Joint affected: Hip.

Movement: Hip abduction, lifting leg up against resistance.

Position: Standing, resistance on lower leg.

Primary muscles: Hip abductors.

FIGURE 4–36 **Leg pulls.** ©William E. Prentice

Joint affected: Hip.

Movement: Hip adduction, pulling down against resistance.

Position: Standing, resistance on inside of lower leg.

Primary muscles: Hip adductors.

FIGURE 4–37 **Leg lifts.** ©William E. Prentice
Joint affected: Hip.
Movement: Hip flexion, lifting leg up.
Position: Standing, knee extended, resistance on shin.
Primary muscles: Iliopsoas.

FIGURE 4–38 **Reverse leg lifts.** ©William E. Prentice
Joint affected: Hip.
Movement: Hip extension, lifting leg up against resistance.
Position: Standing, knee extended, resistance behind lower leg.
Primary muscles: Gluteus maximus, hamstrings.

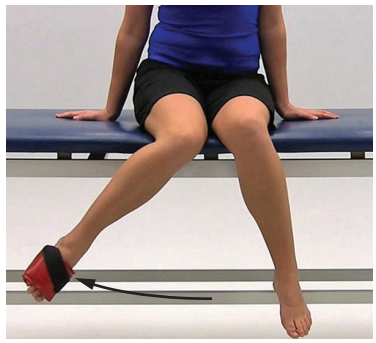


FIGURE 4–39 **Hip medial rotation.** ©William E. Prentice
Joint affected: Hip.
Movement: Internal rotation, rotating lower leg outward.
Position: Sitting, knee flexed, weight on ankle.
Primary muscles: Medial rotators.

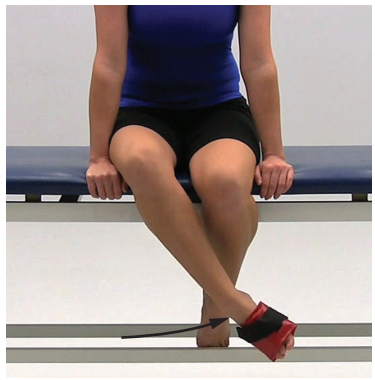


FIGURE 4–40 **Hip lateral rotation.** ©William E. Prentice
Joint affected: Hip.
Movement: Lateral rotation, rotating lower leg inward.
Position: Sitting, knee flexed, weight on ankle.
Primary muscles: Lateral rotators.

FIGURE 4–41 **Quadricep extensions.** ©William E. Prentice
Joint affected: Knee.
Movement: Extension, straightening knee.
Position: Sitting, on knee machine.
Primary muscles: Quadriceps group.

FIGURE 4–42 **Hamstring curls.**
Joint affected: Knee.
Movement: Flexion, bending knee and lifting weight up.
Position: Prone, on knee machine.
Primary muscles: Hamstring group.

FIGURE 4–43 **Toe raises.** ©William E. Prentice
Joint affected: Ankle.
Movement: Plantar flexion, pressing up on toes.
Position: Standing on both legs and lifting body weight.
Primary muscles: Gastrocnemius with knees fully extended. If knees are bent the primary muscle becomes the soleus.

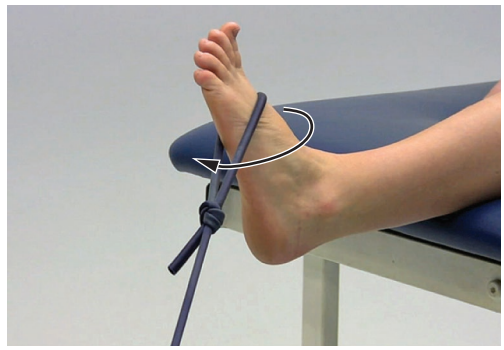


FIGURE 4–44 **Ankle inversion.** ©William E. Prentice
Joint affected: Ankle.
Movement: Inversion, turning the sole of the foot up and in.
Position: Sitting, knee flexed, instep up.
Primary muscles: Anterior tibialis.

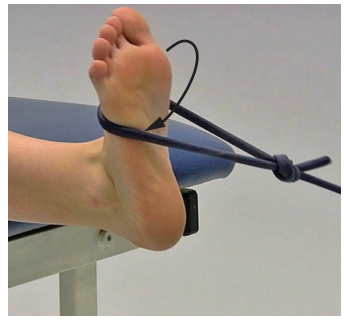


FIGURE 4–45 **Ankle eversion.** ©William E. Prentice
Joint affected: Ankle.
Movement: Eversion, lifting the sole of the foot up and out.
Position: Sitting, knee flexed, instep down.
Primary muscles: Peroneals.

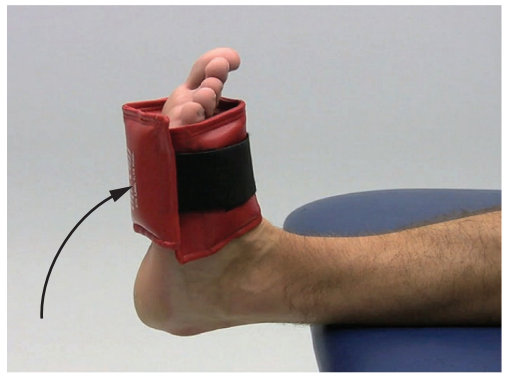


FIGURE 4–46 **Ankle dorsiflexion.** ©William E. Prentice
Joint affected: Ankle.
Movement: Dorsiflexion, lifting the toes upward.
Position: Sitting, knee flexed, heel on edge of table, weight on foot.
Primary muscles: Dorsiflexors in shin.

demonstrated using free weights (barbells, dumbbells, weights, and some machine weights). Any of these exercises may be performed on various commercial weight machines such as Cybex or Body Master. All of these exercises can also be done using exercise tubing or elastic resistance. Positions may differ slightly when different pieces of equipment are used. However, the joint motions that affect the various muscles are still the same.

Open- Versus Closed-Kinetic Chain Exercises

The concept of the kinetic chain is based on the anatomical functional relationships that exist in the upper and lower extremities. An open-kinetic chain exists when the foot or hand is not in contact with the ground or some other surface. In a closed-kinetic chain, the foot or hand is weight-bearing (Figure 4–47). In training and conditioning, the use of closed-chain strengthening techniques is a widely used technique because these exercises tend to be more functional, as most sports activities are weight-bearing. Closed-kinetic chain exercises use varying combinations of isometric, concentric, and eccentric contractions that must occur simultaneously in different muscle groups within the chain.

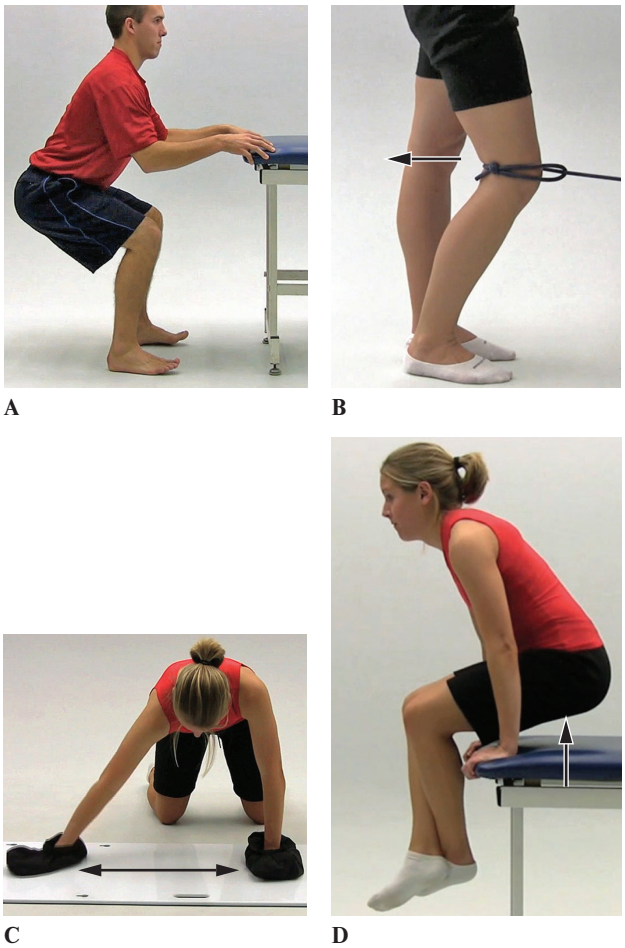


FIGURE 4–47 Closed-kinetic chain exercises. © William E. Prentice

(A) Minisquats. **(B)** Terminal knee extensions. **(C)** Slide board upper extremity slides. **(D)** Seated push-ups.

Isokinetic Exercise

isokinetic exercise Resistance is given at a fixed velocity of movement with accommodating resistance.

An **isokinetic exercise** involves a muscle contraction in which the length of the muscle is changing while the contraction is performed at a constant velocity. In theory, the machine provides maximum resistance throughout the range of motion. The resistance provided by the machine will move only at some preset speed, regardless of the force applied to it by the individual. Thus, the key to isokinetic exercise is not the resistance, but the speed at which resistance can be moved.[18]

Isokinetic exercise has never been widely used as a training and conditioning technique. In recent years, isokinetic exercise has also lost popularity as a rehabilitation tool (Figure 4–48).

Circuit Training

circuit training Exercise stations that consist of various combinations of weight training, flexibility, bodyweight training, and aerobic exercises.

Circuit training uses a series of exercise stations that consist of various combinations of weight training, flexibility, bodyweight training, and brief aerobic exercises. Circuits may be designed to accomplish many different training goals. With circuit training, the athlete moves rapidly from one station to the next and performs whatever exercise is to be done at that station within a specified time. A typical circuit

FIGURE 4–48 Biodex is an example of isokinetic exercise equipment. Courtesy of Biodex Medical Systems, Inc.

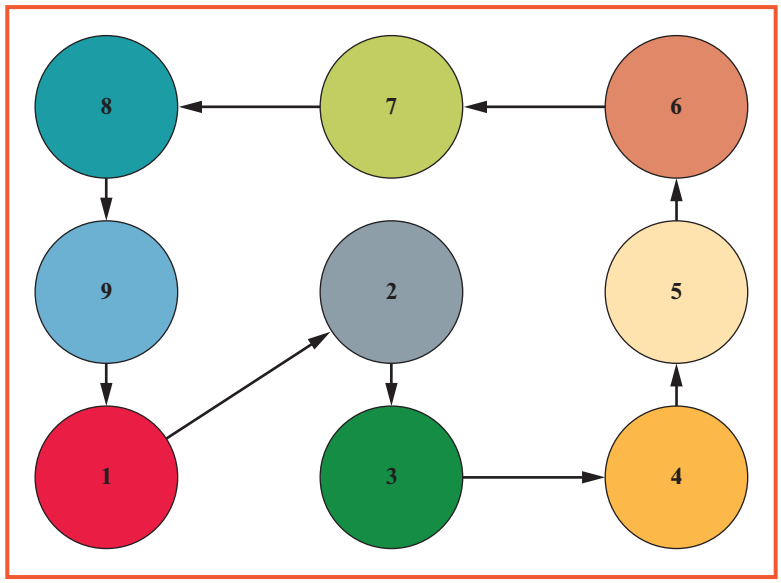


FIGURE 4–49 Sample circuit program.

Station 1, squat thrusts, 75% maximum number of repetitions performed in 1 minute; Station 2, general flexion exercise, performed for 1 minute; Station 3, jump rope for 1 minute; Station 4, abdominal curls with weights, 75% maximum number of repetitions; Station 5, two-arm curls, 75% maximum number of repetitions; Station 6, vertical jump (sargent), 75% maximum number of repetitions performed in 1 minute; Station 7, wrist curls with weight for 1 minute; Station 8, half squat, heels raised, exercise with weight, 75% maximum number of repetitions; Station 9, general flexion exercises.

consists of 8 to 12 stations, and the entire circuit is repeated three times.

Circuit training is definitely an effective technique for improving strength and flexibility. Certainly if the pace or the time interval between stations is rapid and if workload is maintained at a high level of intensity, with heart rates at or above target training levels, the cardiorespiratory system benefits from this circuit. However, little research evidence shows that circuit training is very effective in improving cardiorespiratory endurance. It should be and is most often used as a technique for developing and improving muscular strength and endurance. Figure 4–49 provides an example of a simple circuit training setup.

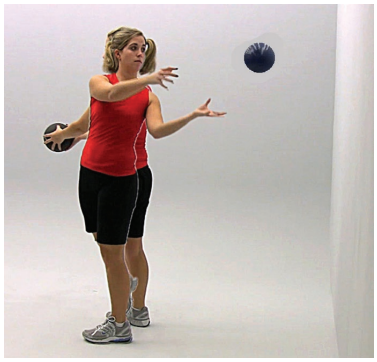
Plyometric Exercise

plyometric exercise
Uses a quick eccentric stretch of the muscle to facilitate a concentric contraction.

Plyometric exercise is a technique of exercise that involves a rapid eccentric (lengthening) stretch of a muscle, followed immediately by a rapid concentric contraction of that muscle for the purpose of producing a forceful explosive movement over a short period.[40] Plyometric exercises involve hops, bounds, and depth jumping for the lower extremity, and the use of medicine balls and other types of weighted equipment for the upper extremity. Depth jumping is an example of a plyometric exercise in which an individual jumps to the ground from a specified height and then quickly jumps again as soon as ground contact is made (Figure 4–50).

The greater the stretch put on the muscle from its resting length immediately before the concentric contraction, the greater the resistance the muscle can overcome. Plyometrics emphasize the speed of the stretch phase. **The rate of stretch is more critical than the magnitude of the stretch.**[40] An advantage to using plyometric exercise is that it can help develop eccentric control in dynamic movements. Plyometrics tend to place a great deal of stress on the musculoskeletal system. The coach who is implementing a plyometric exercise program should be aware that **it is very likely that the athlete will develop muscle soreness in the early stages of a plyometric exercise program.** This occurs primarily due to the eccentric component of plyometric exercise to

Plyometric exercise can cause muscle soreness in the early stages of use.

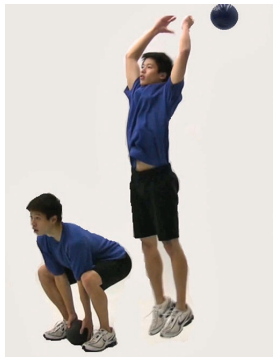


A

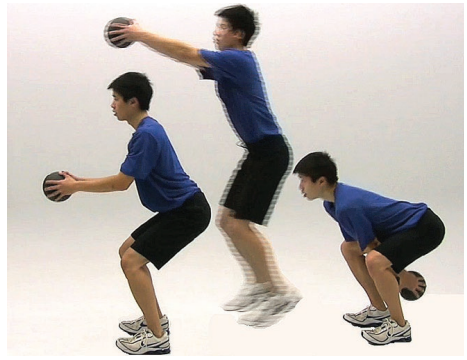
B

C

D



E



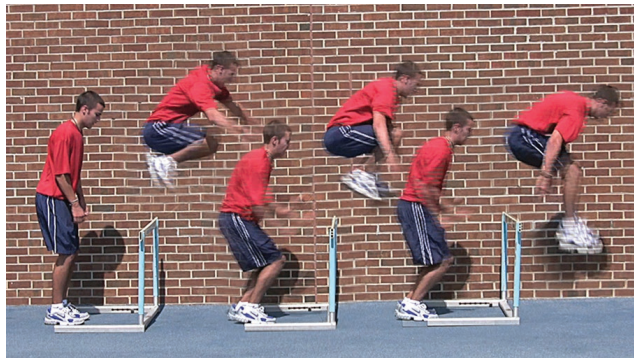
F

G

H

I

J



K

FIGURE 4–50 Plyometric exercises. ©William E. Prentice

(A) Weighted ball double-arm rotation toss. **(B)** Playback two-arm toss with rotation. **(C)** Weighted ball squat to stand extension. **(D)** Squat jumps. **(E)** Overhead weighted ball throw. **(F)** Weighted ball forward jump from squat. **(G)** Weighted ball standing rotations. **(H)** Double-leg lateral hop overs. **(I)** Drop jump to vertical jump. **(J)** Repeat two-leg standing long jump. **(K)** Three-hurdle jumps.

which the athlete is unaccustomed. The learning and perfection of specific jumping skills and other plyometric exercises must be technically correct and specific to the athlete's age, activity, and physical and skill development.[40]

Recommendations for plyometric exercise are variable, but the athlete should once again adhere to the three sets of six to eight repetitions rule.

Bodyweight Strengthening Exercises

Bodyweight exercise is one of the more easily available means of developing strength. Isotonic movement exercises can be graded according to intensity by using gravity as an aid, ruling gravity out, moving against gravity, or using the body or body part as a resistance against gravity. Most bodyweight exercises require the athlete to support the body or move the total body against the force of gravity. Push-ups are a good example of a vigorous antigravity bodyweight exercise. To be considered maximally effective, the isotonic bodyweight exercise, as in all types of exercise, must be performed in an exacting manner and in full range of motion. In most cases, ten or more repetitions are performed for each exercise and are repeated in sets of two or three.

Bodyweight exercise uses the force of gravity as resistance.

Some bodyweight exercises use an isometric or holding phase instead of using a full range of motion. Examples of these exercises are back extensions and sit-ups. When the exercise produces maximum muscle tension, it is held between 6 and 10 seconds and then repeated one to three times. The exercises illustrated in Figures 4–51 to 4–59 are recommended because they work on specific muscle groups and with a specific purpose. The athlete should work quickly and move from one exercise to the next without delay.

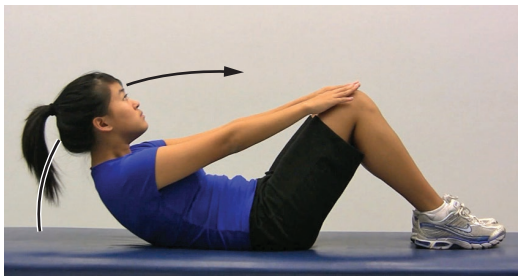


FIGURE 4–51 **Curl-ups. Beginning—arms straight.**
© William E. Prentice

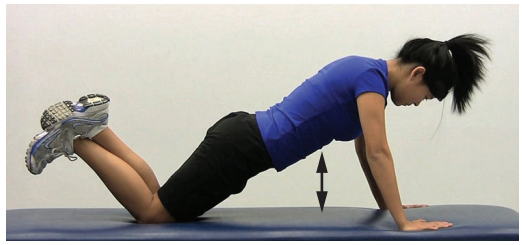
Joints affected: Spinal vertebral joints.

Movement: Trunk flexion.

Instruction: Lying on back, knees flexed to 90-degree angle, feet on floor; curl trunk and head to approximately 45-degree angle.

Primary muscles: Rectus abdominis.

A



B

FIGURE 4–52 **(A) Push-ups. (B) Modified push-ups.**
©William E. Prentice

Purpose: Strengthening.

Muscles: Triceps and pectoralis major.

Repetitions: Beginner, 10; intermediate, 20; advanced, 30.

Instructions: Keep the upper trunk and legs extended in a straight line; touch floor with chest.

Caution: Avoid hyperextending the back, especially in modified push-ups.

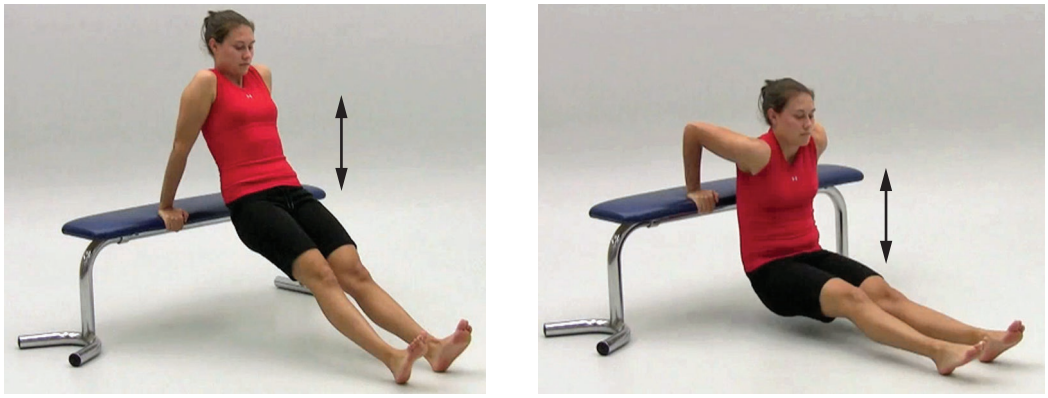
Functional Strength Training

Functional strength training is a technique for improving not only muscular strength but also neuromuscular control.[8] The strength training techniques discussed to this point have traditionally focused on isolated, single-plane exercises used to elicit muscle hypertrophy in a specific muscle. These exercises have a very low neuromuscular demand because they are performed primarily with the rest of the body artificially stabilized on stable pieces of equipment. The central

4–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A high school shot-putter has been working intensely on weight training to improve his muscular power. In particular, he has been concentrating on lifting extremely heavy free weights using a low number of repetitions (three sets of six to eight reps). Although his strength has improved significantly over the last several months, he is not seeing the same degree of improvement in his throws even though his technique is very good.

? The athlete is frustrated with his performance and wants to know if he can add anything to his training program that might enhance his performance.



A B

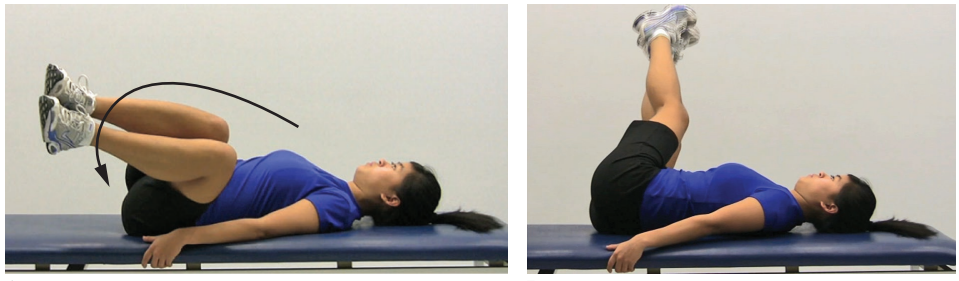
FIGURE 4–53 **Tricep extensions.** ©William E. Prentice

Purpose: Strengthening and range of motion at shoulder joint.

Muscles: Triceps and trapezius.

Repetitions: Beginner, 7; intermediate, 12; advanced, 18.

Instructions: Begin with arms extended and body straight; lower buttocks until they touch the ground, then press back up.



A B

FIGURE 4–54 **Trunk rotation. (A) Beginner—Knees bent. (B) Advanced—Knees straight.** ©William E. Prentice

Muscles: Internal and external obliques.

Repetitions: Beginner, 10 each direction; intermediate, 15 each direction; advanced, 20 each direction.

Instructions: Rotate trunk from side to side until knees touch the floor, keeping knees slightly bent.

Caution: This exercise should be done only by those who already have strong abdominals.

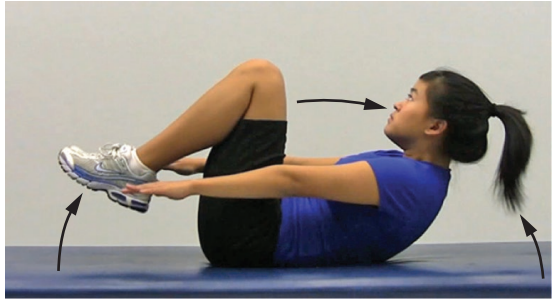


FIGURE 4–55 **Sitting tucks.** ©William E. Prentice

Purpose: Strengthen abdominals and stretch low back.

Muscles: Rectus abdominis and erector muscles in low back.

Repetitions: Beginner, 10; intermediate, 20; advanced, 30.

Instructions: Keep legs and upper back off the ground and pull knees to chest.

Caution: This exercise should be done only by those who have strong abdominals.

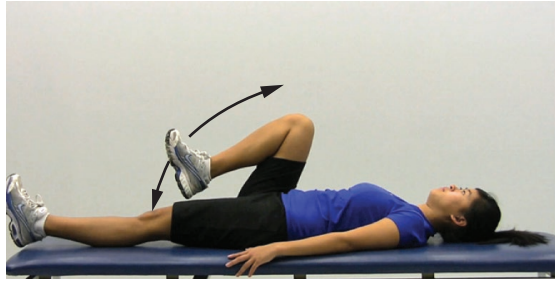


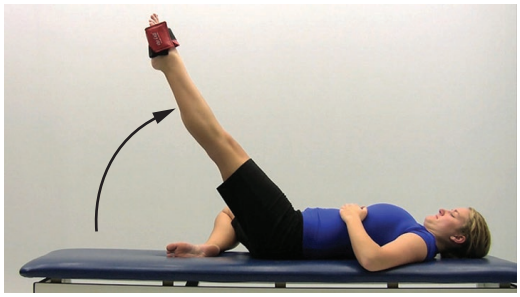
FIGURE 4–56 **Bicycle.** ©William E. Prentice

Purpose: Strengthen hip flexors and stretch lower back.

Muscles: Iliopsoas.

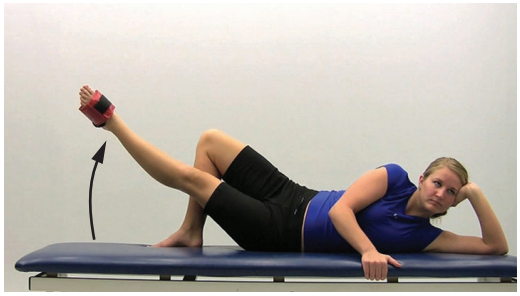
Repetitions: Beginner, 10 each side; intermediate, 20 each side; advanced, 30 each side.

Instructions: Alternately flex and extend legs as if you were pedaling a bicycle.



A

B



C

D

FIGURE 4–57 **Leg lifts. (A) Front. (B) Back. (C) Side (leg up). (D) Side (leg down).** ©William E. Prentice

Purpose: Strengthen **(A)** hip flexors; **(B)** hip extensors; **(C)** hip adductors; **(D)** hip abductors.

Muscles: **(A)** Iliopsoas; **(B)** gluteus maximus; **(C)** adductor group; **(D)** gluteus medius.

Repetitions: Beginner, 10 each leg; intermediate, 15 each leg; advanced, 20 each leg.

Instructions: Raise the exercising leg up as far as possible in each position.

Caution: If position A causes low back pain, bend the opposite leg.

FIGURE 4–58 **Chin-ups.** ©William E. Prentice

Purpose: Strengthening and stretch of shoulder joint.

Muscles: Biceps, brachialis, and latissimus dorsi.

Repetitions: Beginner, 7; intermediate, 10; advanced, 15.

Instructions: Pull up until chin touches top of bar.

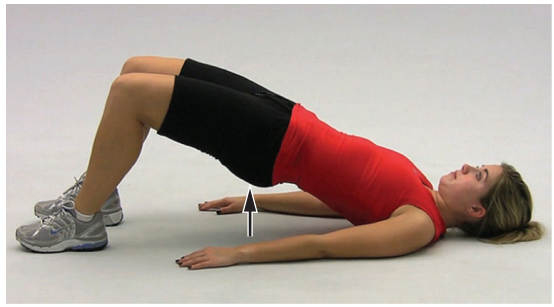


FIGURE 4–59 **Buttock tucks.** ©William E. Prentice

Purpose: Strengthen muscles of buttocks.

Muscles: Gluteus maximus and hamstrings.

Repetitions: Beginner, 10; intermediate, 15; advanced, 20.

Instructions: Lying flat on back with knees bent, arch back and thrust the pelvis upward.

nervous system controls the ability to integrate the proprioceptive function of a number of individual muscles that must act simultaneously to produce a specific movement pattern that occurs in three planes of motion. If the body is designed to move in three planes of motion, then isolated training does little to improve functional ability. When strength training using isolated, single-plane, artificially stabilized exercises, the entire body is not being prepared to deal with the imposed demands of normal daily activities (walking up/down stairs, getting groceries out of the trunk, etc.).[13]

A B C D E F

FIGURE 4–60 Functional strengthening exercises use simultaneous concentric, eccentric, and isometric contractions in three planes on stable or unstable surfaces. ©William E. Prentice

Earlier in this chapter it was stated that muscles are capable of three different types of contraction: concentric, eccentric, and isometric. During functional movements, some muscles are contracting concentrically (shortening) to produce movement, others are contracting eccentrically (lengthening) to allow movement to occur, and still other muscles are contracting isometrically to create a stable base on which the functional movement occurs.

Because all muscles involved in a movement function eccentrically, concentrically, or isometrically in three planes of motion simultaneously, **functional strength training** uses integrated exercises designed to improve functional movement patterns in terms of both increased strength and improved neuromuscular control.[13] When using functional strengthening exercises, individuals develop not only functional strength and neuromuscular control, but also high levels of core stabilization strength and flexibility. Figure 4–60 provides examples of functional strengthening exercises.

functional strength training Trains muscles to function concentrically, eccentrically, and isometrically in three planes simultaneously.

STRENGTH-TRAINING CONSIDERATIONS FOR FEMALE ATHLETES

Strength is just as important to the female athlete as it is to the male athlete for preventing injury and maximizing performance.[31] The average female is incapable of building significant muscle bulk through weight training. Significant muscle hypertrophy depends on the presence of a hormone called *testosterone*. Testosterone is considered a male hormone, although all females possess some testosterone in their systems. Females with higher testosterone levels tend to have more masculine characteristics such as increased facial and body hair, a deeper voice, and the potential to develop a little more muscle bulk.[31]

The average female does not need to worry about developing large bulky muscles with strength training. What does happen is that muscle tone is improved. Muscle tone refers to the firmness, or tension, of the muscle during a resting state. For example, doing sit-ups increases the firmness of the abdominal muscles and makes them more resistant to fatigue.

A female in weight training will probably see some remarkable gains in strength initially, even though her muscle bulk does not increase. How is this possible? These initial strength gains, which can be attributed to improved neuromuscular system efficiency, begin to plateau, and in the female, more limited improvement in muscular strength will be realized during a continuing strength-training program. These initial neuromuscular strength gains will also be seen in men, although their strength will continue to increase with appropriate training. Females who do possess higher testosterone levels have the potential to further increase their strength because of the development of greater muscle bulk.[31]

Perhaps the most critical difference between males and females regarding physical performance is the ratio of strength to body weight. The reduced *strength/body weight ratio* in females is the result of their higher percentage of body fat.[29] The strength/body weight ratio may be significantly improved through weight training by decreasing the body fat percentage while increasing lean weight. Strength-training programs for females should follow the same guidelines as those for males.

Perhaps the most critical performance difference between men and women is the ratio of strength to weight.

WHY IS CARDIORESPIRATORY FITNESS IMPORTANT FOR AN ATHLETE?

A healthy cardiorespiratory system is critical both for performance and for preventing undue fatigue that may predispose an athlete to injury.[26] By definition, cardiorespiratory endurance is the ability to perform whole-body, large-muscle activities for extended periods. The cardiorespiratory system provides a means by which oxygen is supplied to the various tissues of the body.[26]

Cardiorespiratory endurance is essential to minimize fatigue, which can lead to injury.

Aerobic exercise is great for building cardiorespiratory fitness. An aerobic activity is one in which the intensity of the activity is low enough that the cardiovascular system can supply enough oxygen to continue the activity for long periods. An activity in which the intensity is so great that the demand for oxygen is greater than the body's ability to deliver oxygen is called an *anaerobic* activity. Short bursts of muscle contraction, as in running or swimming sprints or lifting weights, use predominantly the anaerobic system. However, endurance-type activities that last for a longer time depend a great deal on the aerobic system. In most activities both aerobic and anaerobic systems function simultaneously. Table 4–4 provides a comparison summary between aerobic and anaerobic activities.

Cardiorespiratory endurance refers to the body's ability to transport and use oxygen efficiently.

The capacity of the cardiorespiratory system to carry oxygen throughout the body depends on the coordinated function of four components: (1) the heart, (2) the blood vessels, (3) the blood, and (4) the lungs. Improvement of cardiorespiratory endurance through exercise occurs because of an increase in the capability of each of these four components in providing necessary oxygen to the working tissues.[26] A basic discussion of the training effects and responses to exercise that occur in the heart should make it easier to understand why the training techniques to be discussed later are effective in improving cardiorespiratory endurance.

TABLE 4–4 Comparison of Aerobic Versus Anaerobic Activities[2]

	Mode	Relative Intensity	Intensity	Frequency	Duration	Miscellaneous
Aerobic activities	Continuous, long-duration, sustained activities	Less intense	60%–90% of maximum heart rate	At least three but not more than six times per week	20–60 min	Less risk to sedentary or older individuals
Anaerobic activities	Explosive, short-duration, burst-type activities	More intense	90%–100% of maximum heart rate	Three to four times per week	10 sec–2 min	Used in sports and team activities

How Does Exercise Affect the Function of the Heart?

The heart is the main pumping mechanism and circulates oxygenated blood throughout the body to the various tissues. The heart receives oxygen-poor blood from the venous system and pumps that blood through the pulmonary vessels to the lungs, where carbon dioxide is exchanged for oxygen. The oxygen-rich blood then returns to the heart, from which it exits through the aorta to the arterial system and is circulated throughout the body, supplying oxygen to the tissues.

During exercise, muscles use oxygen at a much higher rate, and thus the heart must pump more oxygenated blood to meet this increased demand.

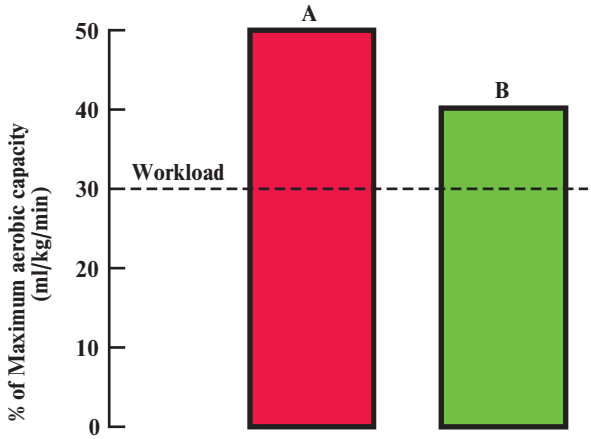


FIGURE 4–61 Athlete A should be able to work longer than Athlete B as a result of using a lower percentage of maximum aerobic capacity.

WHAT DETERMINES HOW EFFICIENTLY THE BODY IS USING OXYGEN?

The greatest rate at which oxygen can be taken in and used during exercise is referred to as *maximum aerobic capacity.*[22] Maximum aerobic capacity determines how much oxygen can be used during 1 minute of maximal exercise. This rate is most often presented in terms of the volume of oxygen used relative to body weight per unit of time (ml/kg/min). Normal maximum oxygen utilization for most men and women aged 15 to 25 years falls in the range of 38 to 46 ml/kg/min. A world-class male marathon runner may have a maximum aerobic capacity in the 70 to 80 ml/kg/min range, whereas a female marathoner may have a 60 to 70 ml/kg/min range.[19]

The performance of any activity requires a certain rate of oxygen use that is about the same for everybody. Generally, the greater the rate or intensity of the activity, the greater the oxygen demand. Each person has his or her own maximum rate of oxygen consumption, and the ability to perform an activity is closely related to the amount of oxygen required by that activity.

The maximum rate at which oxygen can be used is to a large extent a genetically determined characteristic. Each person's maximum aerobic capacity falls within a given range. The more active the athlete, the higher the existing maximum aerobic capacity will be within that range. The less active the athlete, the lower the maximum aerobic capacity will be in that range. Thus, athletes engaging in a serious training program can increase aerobic capacity to its highest limit within their range.

The range of maximum aerobic capacity inherited is to a large extent determined by the ratio of fast-twitch to slow-twitch muscle fibers. Athletes with a high percentage of slow-twitch muscle fibers are more resistant to fatigue and are able to use oxygen more efficiently; thus, maximum aerobic capacity will be higher.

Fatigue is closely related to the percentage of maximum aerobic capacity that a particular activity demands. The greater the percentage of maximum aerobic capacity that is required during an activity, the less time the activity can be performed.[34] Fatigue occurs in part when insufficient oxygen is supplied to muscles. For example, Figure 4–61 presents two athletes, A and B. A has a maximum aerobic capacity of 50 ml/kg/min, whereas B has a maximum aerobic capacity of only 40 ml/kg/min. If A and B are exercising at the same intensity, then A will be working at a much lower percentage of maximum aerobic capacity than B is. Consequently, A should be able to sustain his or her activity over a much longer time. Everyday activities such as walking up stairs or running to catch a bus may be adversely affected if a person's ability to use oxygen efficiently is impaired. Certainly, the ability to perform a sports activity is hindered if an athlete's level of cardiorespiratory endurance is not what it should be. Thus, improvement of cardiorespiratory endurance must be an essential component of any fitness program.

How Is Maximum Aerobic Capacity Determined?

The most accurate technique for measuring aerobic capacity must be done in a laboratory.[3] This technique involves exercising a subject on a treadmill or bicycle ergometer at a specific intensity and then monitoring heart rate and collecting samples of

expired air using somewhat expensive and sophisticated equipment. Obviously, for the typical person this technique is somewhat impractical. Therefore, the technique used most often is to monitor heart rate as a means of estimating a percentage of maximum aerobic capacity.[3]

4–4 Critical Thinking Exercise

A female soccer player has a grade 1 ankle sprain that is likely to keep her out of practice for about a week. She has worked extremely hard on her fitness levels and is very concerned that not being able to run for an entire week will really hurt her cardiorespiratory fitness.

? What activities should be recommended during her rehabilitation period that can help her maintain her existing level of cardiorespiratory endurance?

Monitoring heart rate is an indirect method of estimating maximum aerobic capacity.[22] In general, heart rate and aerobic capacity have a linear relationship, although at very low intensities and at high intensities this linear relationship breaks down (Figure 4–62). The greater the intensity of the exercise, the higher the heart rate. Because of this existing relationship, the rate of oxygen utilization can be estimated by taking the heart rate.[42]

Monitoring Heart Rate Heart rate can be determined by taking a pulse rate at specific sites. The most accurate site for measuring the pulse rate is the radial artery, located on the thumb side of the wrist joint (Figure 4–63). An accurate heart rate can be determined by counting the number of beats that occur in 30 seconds and then multiplying that number by two. Heart rate should be monitored within 15 seconds after stopping exercise.

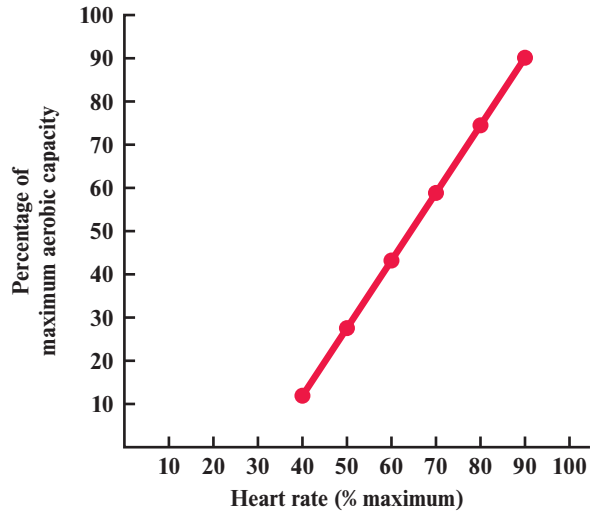


FIGURE 4–62 Maximum heart rate is achieved at about the same time as maximum aerobic capacity.

FIGURE 4–63 The radial artery provides the most accurate estimation of pulse rate. ©William E. Prentice

WHAT TRAINING TECHNIQUES CAN IMPROVE CARDIORESPIRATORY ENDURANCE?

There are a number of different methods through which cardiorespiratory endurance may be improved, including (1) continuous training, (2) high-intensity interval training, and (3) fartlek training.[22] Regardless of the training technique used for the improvement of cardiorespiratory endurance, one principal goal remains the same: to increase the ability of the cardiorespiratory system to supply a sufficient amount of oxygen to working muscles.[26] Without oxygen, the body is incapable of producing energy for an extended time.

Continuous Training

Continuous training is a technique that uses exercises performed at the same level of intensity for long periods. Continuous training has four considerations:

- The type of activity
- The frequency of the activity
- The intensity of the activity
- The duration of the activity

Type of Activity The type of activity used in continuous training must be aerobic. Aerobic activities are any activities that use large amounts of oxygen, elevate the heart rate, and maintain it at that level for an extended time. Aerobic activities generally involve repetitive, whole-body, large-muscle movements performed over an extended time. Examples of aerobic activities include walking, running, swimming, cycling, rowing, cross-country skiing, and so on. The advantage of these aerobic activities as opposed to more intermittent activities, such as racquetball, squash, basketball, or tennis, is that with aerobic activities it is easy to regulate intensity by either speeding up or slowing down the pace.

Because it is already known that the given intensity of the workload elicits a given heart rate, these aerobic activities allow athletes to maintain heart rate at a specified *target level*. Intermittent activities involve variable speeds and intensities that cause the heart rate to fluctuate considerably. Although these intermittent activities will improve cardiorespiratory endurance, they are much more difficult to monitor in terms of intensity.

Frequency of Activity To see at least minimal improvement in cardiorespiratory endurance, it is necessary for the average person to engage in no less than three exercise sessions per week. A competitive athlete should be prepared to train as often as six times per week. Everyone should take off at least one day per week to give damaged tissues a chance to repair themselves.

Intensity of Activity The intensity of the exercise is also a critical factor, although recommendations regarding training intensities vary. This is particularly true in the early stages of training, when the body is forced to make a lot of adjustments to increased workload demands.

Determining Exercise Intensity by Monitoring Heart Rate The objective of aerobic exercise is to elevate heart rate to a specified target rate and maintain it at that level during the entire workout. Because heart rate is directly related to the intensity of the exercise and to the rate of oxygen utilization, it becomes a relatively simple process to identify a specific workload (pace) that will make the heart rate plateau at the desired level.[25] By monitoring heart rate, athletes know whether the pace is too fast or too slow to get the heart rate into a target range.[42]

Heart rate can be increased or decreased by speeding up or slowing down the pace. As mentioned, heart rate increases proportionately with the intensity of the workload and will plateau after 2 to 3 minutes of activity. Thus, the athlete should be actively engaged in the workout for 2 to 3 minutes before measuring his or her pulse.

Several formulas allow you to identify a training *target heart rate*.[25] To calculate a specific target heart rate, you must first determine your maximum heart rate (MHR). Exact determination of MHR involves exercising an individual at a maximal level and monitoring the heart rate (HR) using an electrocardiogram. This is a difficult process outside of a laboratory. Maximum heart rate is related to age, and, as you get older, your MHR decreases. An approximate estimate of MHR for individuals of both genders would be:

$$\mathbf{HR_{max} = 208 - 0.7 \times Age}$$

For a 20-year-old individual, maximum heart rate would be about 194 beats per minute ($208 - 0.7 \times 20$).

Heart rate reserve is used to determine upper and lower limits of the target heart rate range. Heart rate reserve (HRR) is the difference between resting heart rate (HR_{rest})* and maximum heart rate (HR_{max}).

$$\mathbf{HRR = HR_{max} - HR_{rest}}$$

The greater the difference, the larger your heart rate reserve and the greater your range of potential training heart rate intensities. The *Karvonen equation* is used to calculate target heart rate at a given percentage of training intensity.[30]

To use the Karvonen equation, you need to know your HRR.

$$\mathbf{Target\ HR = HR_{rest} + \%\ of\ target\ intensity \times HRR}$$

When using estimated HR_{max} or/and HR_{rest}, the values are always predictions. So, in a 20-year-old with a calculated HR_{max} of 194 and a HR_{rest} of 70 beats per minute, the heart rate reserve is 124 ($194 - 70 = 124$). For moderate-intensity activity, the heart should work in a range between the lower limit and an upper limit. The lower limit is calculated by taking 70 percent of the heart rate reserve and adding the resting heart rate, which would be 157 beats per minute ($124 \times 0.7) + 70 = 157$). The upper limit is calculated by taking 79 percent of the heart rate reserve and adding the resting heart rate ($124 \times 0.79) + 70 = 168$.

The American College of Sports Medicine recommends that young healthy individuals train at either moderate-intensity (70%–79% of maximum heart rate) or vigorous-intensity (greater than 80% of maximum heart rate) levels to improve cardiorespiratory endurance and reduce the risk for chronic disease.[3] Individuals who are less fit, who have led a previously sedentary lifestyle, are overweight, have a history of risk factors for heart disease, as well as the elderly, and anyone with arthritis and those of us with special instructions from a physician should initially engage in low-intensity workouts. For those individuals, the important thing is for them to become active and that if they are persistent they should gradually be able to increase the intensity of the activity.[3]

Determining Exercise Intensity Through Rating of Perceived Exertion *Rating of perceived exertion* (RPE) can be used in addition to heart rate monitoring to indicate exercise intensity.[20] During exercise, individuals are asked to rate subjectively on a numerical scale from 6 to 20 exactly how they feel

* True resting heart rate should be monitored with the subject lying down.

TABLE 4–5 Rating of Perceived Exertion	
Scale	**Verbal Rating**
6	
7	Very, very light
8	
9	Very light
10	
11	Fairly light
12	
13	Somewhat hard
14	
15	Hard
16	
17	Very hard
18	
19	Very, very hard
20	

relative to their level of exertion (Table 4–5). More intense exercise that requires a higher level of oxygen consumption and energy expenditure is directly related to higher subjective ratings of perceived exertion. Over time, individuals can be taught to exercise at a specific RPE that relates directly to more objective measures of exercise intensity.

Duration of Activity For minimal improvement to occur, the American College of Sports Medicine recommends 20 to 60 minutes of workout/activity with the heart rate elevated to training levels.[3] Generally, the greater the duration of the workout, the greater the improvement in cardiorespiratory endurance. The competitive athlete should train for at least 45 minutes per session.

High-Intensity Interval Training

Unlike continuous training, **high-intensity interval training** involves activities that are more intermittent. Interval training consists of alternating periods of relatively intense work and active recovery.[10] It allows for performance of much more work at a more intense workload over a longer period than does working continuously.[45] In continuous training, the athlete strives to work at an intensity of about 60 to 85 percent of maximum heart rate. Obviously, sustaining activity at the higher intensity over a 20-minute period is extremely difficult. The advantage of high-intensity interval training is that it allows work at the 80 percent or higher level for a short period followed by an active period of recovery during which the athlete may be working at only 30 to 45 percent of maximum heart rate. Thus, the intensity of the workout and its duration can be greater than with continuous training.[19]

high-intensity interval training Alternating periods of work with active recovery.

Most sports are anaerobic, involving short bursts of intense activity followed by a sort of active recovery period (e.g. football, basketball, soccer, or tennis). Training with the high-intensity interval training technique allows the athlete to be more sport specific during the workout.[48] With high-intensity interval training, the overload principle is applied by making the training period much more intense. There are several important considerations in high-intensity interval training. The *training period* is the amount of time that continuous activity is actually being performed, and the *recovery period* is the time between training periods. A *set* is a group of combined training and recovery periods, and a *repetition* is the number of training/recovery periods per set. *Training time* or *distance* refers to the rate or distance of the training period. The training/recovery ratio indicates a time ratio for training versus recovery.

An example of high-intensity interval training is a soccer player running sprints. An interval workout would involve running ten 120-yard sprints in under 20 seconds each, with a 1-minute walking recovery period between each sprint. During this training session, the soccer player's heart rate will probably increase to 85 to 90 percent of maximum level during the sprint and will probably fall to the 35 to 45 percent level during the recovery period.

Fartlek Training

Fartlek, a training technique that is a type of cross-country running, originated in Sweden. Fartlek literally means "speed play." It is similar to interval training in that the athlete must run for a specified period; however, specific pace and speed are not identified. The course for a fartlek workout should be a varied terrain with some level running, some uphill and downhill running, and some running through obstacles such as trees or rocks. The object is to put surges into a running workout, varying the length of the surges according to individual purposes. One big advantage of fartlek training is that because the pace and terrain are always changing, the training session is less regimented and allows for an effective alternative in the training routine. Most people who jog or walk around the community are really engaging in a fartlek-type workout.

Again, if fartlek training is going to improve cardiorespiratory endurance, it must elevate the heart rate to at least minimal training levels (60%–85%). Fartlek may best be used as an off-season conditioning activity or as a change-of-pace activity to counteract the boredom of a training program that uses the same activity day after day.

ATHLETIC INJURY MANAGEMENT CHECKLIST

The following is a checklist of factors in a training and conditioning program to make sure the athlete is fit and to prevent injuries.

- ❑ Incorporate the concept of periodization into the year-round training and conditioning plan.
- ❑ Make sure the athlete does a proper warm-up before training and a cool-down afterward.
- ❑ Incorporate flexibility training.
- ❑ Use dynamic, static, or PNF stretching techniques.
- ❑ Select specific and appropriate stretching exercises to improve flexibility.
- ❑ Incorporate training techniques to improve muscular strength, endurance, or power.
- ❑ Use isometric, progressive resistance exercise; isokinetic, plyometric, or bodyweight training techniques; or some combination of these to achieve the goal of strength development.
- ❑ Select specific strengthening exercises to be included in a workout.
- ❑ Incorporate training techniques to improve cardiorespiratory fitness.
- ❑ Use continuous training to improve aerobic capacity.
- ❑ Use high-intensity interval training or fartlek training to improve anaerobic function.

SUMMARY

- Proper physical conditioning for sports participation should prepare the athlete for a high-level performance while helping to prevent injuries inherent to that sport.
- Year-round conditioning is essential in most sports to assist in preventing injuries. Periodization is an approach to conditioning that attempts to bring about peak performance, while reducing injuries and overtraining in the athlete, by developing a training and conditioning program to be followed throughout the various seasons.
- Physical conditioning must follow the SAID principle—an acronym for specific adaptation to imposed demands.
- It is generally accepted that for preventing injuries, a proper warm-up should precede conditioning, and a proper cool-down should follow. It takes at least 15 to 30 minutes of gradual warm-up to bring the body to a state of readiness for vigorous sports training and participation. Warming up consists of general, unrelated activities followed by specific, related activities.
- Optimum flexibility is necessary for preventing injury in most sports. Too much flexibility can allow joint trauma to occur, whereas too little flexibility can result in muscle tears or strains. The safest and most effective means of increasing flexibility are static stretching and the PNF techniques.
- A dynamic core stabilization program should be an important component of all programs designed to improve muscular strength.
- Strength is the capacity to exert a force or the ability to perform work against a resistance. There are numerous means to develop strength, including isometric exercise, progressive resistance exercise, isokinetic exercise, circuit training, plyometric exercise, bodyweight training, and functional strength training.
- Cardiorespiratory endurance is the ability to perform whole-body, large-muscle activities repeatedly for long periods. Maximum aerobic capacity is the best determinant of the level of cardiorespiratory endurance. Improvement of cardiorespiratory endurance may be accomplished through continuous, high-intensity interval training, or fartlek training.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

4-1 The warm-up should begin with a 5- to 7-minute slow jog, during which the athlete should break into a light sweat. At that point, she should engage in stretching (using either static or PNF techniques), concentrating on quadriceps, hamstrings, groin, and hip abductor muscles. She should repeat each specific stretch four times, holding the stretch for 15 to 20 seconds. Once her workout begins, she should gradually and moderately increase the intensity of the activity. The importance of stretching during the cool-down that follows the workout should also be stressed.

4-2 Weight training will not have a negative effect on flexibility as long as the lifting technique is done properly. Lifting the weight through a complete and full range of motion will improve strength and simultaneously maintain range of motion. This female swimmer is not likely to bulk up to the point at which range of motion will be affected by muscle size. She should also continue to incorporate active stretching into her training regimen.

4-3 The shot put, like many other dynamic movements in sports, requires not only great strength but also the ability

to generate that strength very rapidly. To develop muscular power, the athlete must engage in dynamic, explosive training techniques that will help him develop his ability. Powerlifting techniques such as squats and power cleans should be helpful. In addition, plyometric exercises using weights for added resistance will help him learn to improve his speed of muscular contraction against some resistive force.

4-4 Alternative activities such as swimming or riding a stationary exercise bike should be incorporated into this athlete's rehabilitation program immediately. If the pressure on the ankle when riding an exercise bike is initially too painful, she should use a bike that incorporates upper extremity exercise. The soccer player should engage in a minimum of 30 minutes of continuous training and some higher-intensity interval training to maintain both aerobic and anaerobic fitness.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. Why is year-round conditioning so important for injury prevention?
2. In terms of injury prevention, list as many advantages as you can for conditioning.
3. How does the SAID principle relate to sports conditioning and injury prevention?
4. What is the value of proper warm-ups and cool-downs to sports injury prevention?
5. Critically observe how a variety of sports use warm-up and cool-down procedures.
6. Compare ways to increase flexibility and how those ways may decrease or increase the athlete's susceptibility to injury.
7. How may increasing strength decrease susceptibility to injury?
8. Compare different techniques of increasing strength. How may each way be an advantage or a disadvantage to the athlete in terms of injury prevention?
9. Discuss the relationship between maximum aerobic capacity and heart rate.
10. Differentiate between aerobic and anaerobic training methods.
11. How is continuous training different from high-intensity interval training?
12. Design a preseason training and conditioning program.

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Alemany, J. 2014. Comparison of acute responses to isotonic or isokinetic eccentric muscle action: Differential outcomes in skeletal muscle damage and implications for rehabilitation. *International Journal for Sports Medicine* 65(1):1–7.
2. Allerheiligen, W. 2013. Stretching and warm-up. In T. Baechle (ed.), *Essentials of strength training and conditioning*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
3. American College of Sports Medicine. 2013. *ACSM's resource manual: Guidelines for exercise testing and prescription*. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.
4. Anderson, B. 2010. *Stretching*, 30th ed. Bolinas, CA: Shelter Publishers.
5. Berger, R. 1973. *Conditioning for men*. Boston: Allyn & Bacon.
6. Bompa, T. 2015. *Periodization training for sports*, 3rd ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
7. Bompa, T. 2012. *Serious strength training*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
8. Boyle, M. 2011. *Advances in functional training*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
9. Brumitt, J. 2010. *Core assessment and training*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
10. Buchheit, M. 2013. High-intensity interval training, solutions to the programming puzzle. *Sports Medicine* 43(10):927–954.
11. Carter, C., & Micheli, L. 2011. Training the child athlete: Physical fitness, health and injury. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 45:880–885.
12. Caulfield, S., & Berninger, D. 2015. Exercise techniques for free weight and machine training. In G. Haff & T. Triplett (eds.), *Essentials of strength training and conditioning*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
13. Clark, M. 2013. *NASM essentials of corrective exercise training*. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.
14. Colston, M. 2012. Core stability, Part 2: The core-extremity link. *International Journal of Athletic Therapy and Training* 17(2):10–15.
15. Costa, P. 2014. Effects of dynamic stretching on strength, muscle imbalance and muscle activation. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise* 46(3):586–593.
16. Costa, P. 2011. Warm-up, stretching and cool-down strategies for combat sports. *Strength and Conditioning Journal* 33(6):71–79.
17. De Lorme, T., & Watkins, A. 1951. *Progressive resistance exercise*. New York, NY: Appleton-Century-Crofts.
18. Dvir, Z. 2004. Isokinetics: Muscle testing, interpretation and clinical applications. Philadelphia, PA: Churchill-Livingstone.
19. Enoksen, E. 2011. The effect of high- vs. low-intensity training on aerobic capacity in well trained male middle-distance runners. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research* 25(3):812–818.
20. Eston, R. 2012. Use of ratings of perceived exertion in sports. *International Journal of Sports Physiology and Performance* 7(2):175–182.
21. Ferrar, K. 2014. A systematic review and meta-analysis of submaximal exercise-based equations to predict maximal oxygen uptake in young people. *Pediatric Exercise Science* 26(3):342–357.
22. Foster, C., & Farland, C. 2015. The effects of high intensity interval training vs steady state training on aerobic and anaerobic capacity, *Journal of Sport Science and Medicine* 14(4):747–755.
23. Freitas, C. 2014. Psychophysiological response to overloading and tapering phases in elite young soccer players. *Pediatric Exercise Science* 26(2):195–202.
24. Gist, N. 2014. Sprint interval training effects on aerobic capacity: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Sports Medicine* 44(2):269–279.
25. Gormley, S. 2008. Effect of intensity of aerobic training on VO2max. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise* 40(7):1336–1343.
26. Haywood, K., & Getchell, N. 2014. Development of cardiorespiratory endurance. In K. M. Haywood (ed.), *Life span motor development*, 6th ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
27. Herbert R., & de Noronha M. 2011. Stretching to prevent or reduce muscle soreness after exercise. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews* 7:CD004577. doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD004577.pub3.
28. Issurin, V. 2010. New horizons for the methodology and physiology of training periodization. *Sports Medicine* 40(3): 189–206.
29. Jones, T. 2013. Performance and neuromuscular adaptations following differing ratios of concurrent strength and endurance training. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research* 27(12):3342–3351.
30. Karvonen, M., & Kentala, E. 1957. The effects of training on heart rate: A longitudinal study. *Annals of Medical Experimental Biology* 35:305.
31. Kirschen, D., & Smith, W. 2015. *Strength training bible for women: The complete guide to lifting weights for a lean, strong fit body*. Hobart, NY: Hatherleigh Press.
32. Maddigan, M. 2012. A comparison of assisted and unassisted proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation techniques and static stretching. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research* 26(5):1238–1244.
33. McHugh, M., & Cosgrave, C. 2010. To stretch or not to stretch: The role of stretching in injury prevention and performance. *Scandinavian Journal of Medicine and Science in Sports* 20(2):169–181.
34. McLaughlin, J., & Howley, E. 2010. Test of the classic model for predicting endurance running performance. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise* 42(5):991–997.

35. Meroni, R. 2010. Comparison of active stretching techniques and static stretching on hamstring flexibility. *Clinical Journal of Sports Medicine* 20(1):8–14.
36. Okada, T. 2011. Relationship between core stability, functional movement and performance. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research* 25(1):252–261.
37. Ong, M. 2012. The difference between free weights and weight-training machines. *Fire Rescue Magazine* 30(10):60–62.
38. Prentice, W. 2019. Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation techniques. In W. Prentice (ed.), *Rehabilitation techniques in sports medicine and athletic training*. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.
39. Prentice, W. 2019. Restoring range of motion and improving flexibility. In W. Prentice (ed.), *Rehabilitation techniques in sports medicine and athletic training*. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.
40. Radcliffe, J. C., & Farentinos, R. C. 2015. *High-powered plyometrics*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
41. Ryan E. 2014. Acute effects of different volumes of dynamic stretching on vertical jump performance, flexibility and muscle endurance, *Clinical Physiology and Functional Imaging* 34(6):485–492.
42. Sartor, F. 2013. Estimation of maximal oxygen uptake via submaximal exercise testing in sports, clinical, and home settings. *Sports Medicine* 43(9):865–873.
43. Sekendiz, B. 2010. Effects of Swiss-ball core strength training on strength, endurance, flexibility and balance in sedentary women. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research* 24(11):3032–3040.
44. Small, K. 2008. A systematic review into the efficacy of static stretching as part of a warm-up for the prevention of exercise-related injury. *Research in Sports Medicine* 16(3):213–231.
45. Tuimil, J. 2011. Effect of equated continuous and interval running programs on endurance performance and jump capacity. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research* 25(8):2205–2211.
46. Wicke, J., & Gainey, K. 2014. A comparison of self-administered proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation to static stretching on range of motion and flexibility. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research* 28 (1):168–172.
47. Woods, C. 2009. A warm-up exercise regimen reduces risk of girls' soccer injuries. *AAP Grand Rounds* 21(4):46.
48. Zieman, E. 2011. Aerobic and anaerobic changes with high-intensity interval training in active college men. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research* 25(4):1104–1112.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Alter, J. 2004. *The science of flexibility*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

This text explains the principles and techniques of stretching and details the anatomy and physiology of muscle and connective tissue. It includes guidelines for developing a flexibility program and illustrated stretching exercises and warm-up drills.

Anderson, B. 2010. *Stretching*. Bolinas, CA: Shelter.

An extremely comprehensive best-selling text on stretching exercises for the entire body.

Bishop, J. 2013. *Fitness through aerobics*. Philadelphia, PA: Benjamin Cummings.

This text uses the most up-to-date fitness and wellness information on aerobic dance exercise.

Cardinale, M., & Newton, R. 2011. *Strength and conditioning: Biological principles and practical applications*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley.

This book provides good scientific and practical information in the field of strength and conditioning.

Fleck, S., & Kraemer, W. 2014. *Designing resistance training programs*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

A clear, readable, state-of-the-art guide to developing individualized training programs for both athletes and fitness enthusiasts.

Haff, G., & Triplett, T. 2016. *Essentials of strength training and conditioning*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Explains the various concepts of exercise, identifies correct lifting techniques, corrects common weight-training errors, and lists personal goals for weight training.

Kovacs, M. 2009. *Dynamic stretching: The revolutionary new warm-up method to improve power, performance and range of motion*. Berkeley, CA: Ulysses Press.

Teaches how to prepare your body for physical activity while simultaneously improving strength, power, speed, agility, and endurance.

Leibenson, C. 2014. *Functional training handbook*. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.

This practical guide delivers clear, how-to information, an array of sport-specific guidelines, and key principles that foster lifelong health, mobility, and athletic development.

National Strength and Conditioning Association. 2013. *Developing the core*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

The National Strength and Conditioning Association (NSCA) brings you the authoritative resource on strengthening the core to maximize sport performance.

Powers, S., & Howley, E. 2014. *Exercise physiology: Theory and application to fitness and performance*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

Written especially for exercise science and physical education students, this text provides a solid foundation in theory illuminated by application and performance models to increase understanding and to help students apply what they've learned in the classroom.

Radcliffe, J., & Farentinos, R. 2015. *High powered plyometrics*. Champaign IL: Human Kinetics.

Detailing plyometric exercises for a variety of sports, this guide explains how plyometrics work and how to incorporate plyometrics into a comprehensive strength- and power-training program.

WEBSITES

National Academy of Sports Medicine: www.nasm.org
Contains a wealth of information on fitness exercises and activities.

National Strength and Conditioning Association: www.nsca.com
This organization distributes a wealth of information relative to strength training and conditioning.

Stretching and Flexibility: Everything you never wanted to know: www.bradapp.com/docs/rec/stretching/
Prepared by Brad Appleton, detailed information on stretching and stretching techniques is presented, including normal ranges of motion, flexibility, how to stretch, the physiology of stretching, and the types of stretching including PNF.

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

©Digital Vision/Getty Images

5

Sports Nutrition and Supplements

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Identify the six classes of nutrients and describe their major functions.
- Explain the importance of good nutrition in enhancing performance and preventing injuries.
- Describe the advantages or disadvantages of dietary supplementation in the athlete's diet.
- Discuss common eating and drinking practices in the athletic population.
- Explain the distinction between body weight and body composition.
- Explain the principle of caloric balance and how to assess it.
- Describe methods for losing and gaining weight.
- List the signs of disordered eating.

The relation of nutrition, diet, and weight control to overall health and fitness is an important aspect of any training and conditioning program for an athlete.[21] Athletes who practice sound nutritional habits reduce the likelihood of injury by maintaining a higher standard of healthful living.[8] Eating a well-balanced diet can positively contribute to the development of strength, flexibility, and cardiorespiratory endurance.[5] Unfortunately, misconceptions, fads, and, in many cases, superstitions regarding nutrition affect dietary habits, particularly in the athletic population.[8]

Many athletes associate successful performance with the consumption of special foods or supplements.[13] An athlete who is performing well may be reluctant to change dietary habits regardless of whether the diet is physiologically beneficial to overall health. The psychological aspect of allowing the athlete to eat whatever he or she is most comfortable with can greatly affect performance. The problem is that these eating habits tend to become accepted as beneficial and may become traditional when in fact they may be physiologically detrimental to athletic performance. Thus, many nutrition "experts" may disseminate nutritional information based on traditional rather than experimental information.

Although this chapter provides information on basic nutrition, the focus is on how this information relates specifically to the athlete. Despite the fact that there are great differences in what individual athletes like to eat, it is also true that there are many different ways that athletes can obtain the nutrients they need. However, athletes who engage in poor nutritional practices and habits are not doing everything possible to optimize their performance.[8]

THE NUTRIENTS

People usually think of losing weight when they hear the word *diet*. Actually, diet refers to a person's usual food selections. What people choose to eat is their diet. Everyone is on a diet based on the foods they choose. Although people have different food likes and dislikes, everyone must eat to survive. Nutrition is the science of certain food substances, *nutrients*, and what they do in the body.[45] Nutrients perform three major roles:[17]

Six classes of nutrients:

- Carbohydrates
- Fats
- Proteins
- Vitamins
- Minerals
- Water

1. Grow, repair, and maintain all body cells
2. Regulate body processes
3. Supply energy for cells

The various nutrients are categorized into six major classes: *carbohydrates*, *fats* (often called *lipids*), *proteins*, *water*, *vitamins*, and *minerals*. Carbohydrates, proteins, and fats are referred

to as the *macronutrients*: the absorbable components of food, from which energy is derived. Vitamins, minerals, and water are considered to be *micronutrients*, which are necessary for normal[44] body functions. They do not provide energy, but without sufficient quantities of micronutrients, the energy from the macronutrients cannot be utilized. Most foods are actually mixtures of these nutrients.

Macronutrients:

- Carbohydrates
- Proteins
- Fats

Micronutrients:

- Water
- Vitamins
- Minerals

Some nutrients can be made by the body, but an *essential nutrient* must be supplied by the diet. Not all substances in food are considered nutrients. There is no such thing as the perfect food; that is, no single natural food contains all of the nutrients needed for health. A summary of current percentages and recommended percentages of calories from carbohydrates, fats, and proteins is shown in Figure 5–1.

It is recommended that the majority, about 45 to 65 percent, of the calories consumed be in the form of carbohydrates. Fat should account for between 20 and 35 percent of the total caloric intake. Only 10 to 35 percent of the caloric intake should be protein. For an athlete who requires additional energy during the course of a day, the extra calories consumed should be in the form of carbohydrates.

Dietary recommendations:

- Carbohydrates 45–65 percent
- Fats 20–35 percent
- Proteins 10–35 percent

Carbohydrates (CHO)

Carbohydrates are sugars, starches, or fiber.

Athletes have increased energy needs because they need to fuel the body sufficiently to perform at an optimal level. *Carbohydrates* are the body's most efficient source of energy and should be relied on to fill that need.[9] Carbohydrates should account for at least 45 percent of total caloric intake, and some recommendations go as high as 65 percent. Carbohydrates may be considered either simple or complex based upon their chemical structure. Both simple and complex carbohydrates can be digested and converted into blood glucose. It is important to understand that not all carbohydrates are digested and absorbed at the same rate. *Simple carbohydrates* are digested quickly and contain refined sugars and few essential vitamins and minerals (e.g., fruits, fruit juice, milk, yogurt, honey, sugar). *Complex carbohydrates* take longer to digest and are usually packed with fiber, vitamins, and minerals (e.g., vegetables, breads, cereals, and pasta). It is recommended that athletes consume the bulk of their carbohydrate intake in the form of complex carbohydrates, and the majority of the simple carbohydrate intake from fruits and milk or yogurt, which also contain vitamins

5–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A female softball player has been told that she is slightly overweight and needs to lose a few pounds. The athlete has been watching television and reading about how important it is to limit the dietary intake of fat for losing weight. She has decided to go on a diet that is essentially fat free and is convinced that this diet will help her lose weight.

? What should the coach tell her about avoiding excessive intake of fat as a means of losing weight?

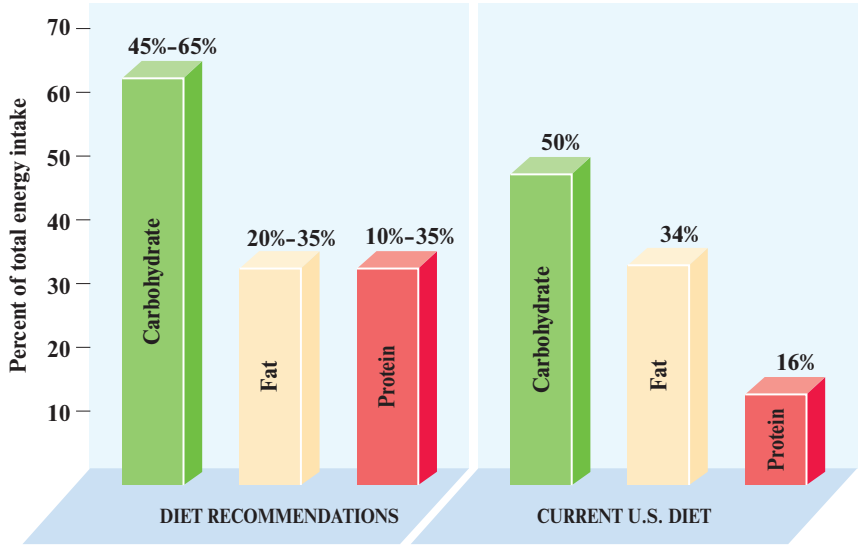


FIGURE 5–1 Comparison of calories from protein, carbohydrate, and fat. (Based on 2015–2020 Dietary Guidelines.)

and minerals. Foods high in refined sugar content should be avoided because they are usually low in the nutrients we need to maintain health and energy levels. An inadequate intake of dietary carbohydrate causes the body to use protein to make glucose. Therefore, a supply of glucose must be kept available to prevent the use of protein for energy.

Fats

Fats are another essential component of the diet. They are the most concentrated source of energy, providing more than twice the calories per gram when compared to carbohydrates or proteins. Fat is used as a primary source of energy. Some dietary fat is needed to make food more flavorful and for sources of the fat-soluble vitamins. Also, a minimal amount of fat is essential for normal growth and development.[45]

In the United States, dietary fat represents a high percentage of the total caloric intake (see Figure 5–1). For many Americans, a substantial amount of the fat is from saturated fat (primarily from animal sources) and from transfatty acids or trans fat (found in cookies, potato chips, most junk foods, dairy products, meats, and fast food). Unsaturated fats are from plants. This intake is believed to be too high and contributes to the prevalence of obesity, certain cancers, and coronary artery disease. The recommended intake should be limited to 20 to 35 percent of total calories, with saturated fat reduced to less than 10 percent of total calories.

Saturated fat and transfatty acids are harmful forms of fat.

Proteins

Proteins make up the major structural components of the body. They are needed for growth, maintenance, and repair of all body tissues. In addition, proteins are needed to make enzymes, many hormones, and antibodies that help fight infection. In general, the body tends not to use much protein for energy; instead, it relies on fats and carbohydrates. Protein intake should be around 10 to 35 percent of total calories.

The basic units that make up proteins are called *amino acids.* Most of the body's proteins are made up of about 20 different amino acids. The majority of the amino acids can be produced as needed in the body. The others cannot be made to any significant degree and therefore must be supplied by the diet. These are referred to as the *essential* amino acids. A diet that contains large amounts of protein will not support growth, repair, and maintenance of tissues if the essential amino acids are not available in the proper proportions.[27] Most of the proteins from animal foods contain all the essential amino acids that humans require and are referred to as complete proteins. Examples are the proteins found in meat, fish, poultry, eggs, milk, and other dairy products. Beans and legumes are a potential source of protein and iron for vegetarians.

Vitamins

Although they are required in very small amounts when compared to carbohydrates, fats, proteins, and water, *vitamins* perform essential roles primarily as regulators of body processes. They also play a critical role in tissue healing and repair. Over the years, researchers have identified 13 vitamins and determined their specific roles in the body.

5–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A volleyball player complains that she constantly feels tired and lethargic even though she thinks that she is eating well and getting a sufficient amount of sleep. A teammate has suggested that she begin taking vitamin supplements, which, the teammate claims, will give her more energy and make her more resistant to fatigue. The athlete comes to the sports nutritionist to ask advice about what kind of vitamins she needs to take.

? What facts should the sports nutritionist explain to the athlete about vitamin supplementation, and what recommendations should be made?

People mistakenly think that vitamins provide energy. In fact, the body cannot break them down to release energy. Table 5–1 provides information about vitamins, including rich food sources, deficiency symptoms, and toxicity potential from high doses.

Vitamins are classified into two groups: The *fat-soluble vitamins* are dissolved in fats and stored in the body; the *water-soluble vitamins* are dissolved in watery solutions and are not stored. The fat-soluble vitamins that dissolve in fat rather than water are vitamins A, D, E, and K. Extra amounts of the fat-soluble vitamins are not easy to eliminate from the body in urine, which is mostly water. Instead, they are stored in the liver or body fat until needed, making them potentially toxic.[44]

The water-soluble vitamins are vitamin C, known as *ascorbic acid,* and the B-complex vitamins, including thiamin, riboflavin, niacin, B_6, folate, B_{12}, biotin, and pantothenic acid. Vitamin C is used for building bones and teeth, maintaining the tissues that hold muscles and other tissues together (connective tissues), and strengthening the immune system. Unlike fat-soluble vitamins, the water-soluble ones cannot be stored to

The fat-soluble vitamins:

- Vitamin A
- Vitamin D
- Vitamin E
- Vitamin K

TABLE 5–1 Vitamins

Vitamin	Major Function	Most Reliable Sources	Deficiency	Excess (toxicity)
Fat-Soluable Vitamins				
A	Maintains skin and other cells that line the inside of the body, bone and tooth development, growth, vision in dim light	Liver, milk, egg yolk, deep green and yellow fruits and vegetables	Night blindness, dry skin, growth failure	Headaches, nausea, loss of hair, dry skin, diarrhea
D	Normal bone growth and development	Exposure to sunlight, fortified dairy products, eggs and fish liver oils	Rickets in children—defective bone formation leading to deformed bones	Appetite loss, weight loss, failure to grow
E	Prevents destruction of polyunsaturated fats caused by exposure to oxidizing agents, protects cell membranes from destruction	Vegetable oils, some in fruits and vegetables, whole grains	Breakage of red blood cells leading to anemia	Nausea and diarrhea, interferes with vitamin K absorption if vitamin D is also deficient, not as toxic as other fat-soluble vitamins
K	Production of blood-clotting substances	Green, leafy vegetables; normal bacteria that live in intestines	Increased bleeding time	
Water-Soluble Vitamins				
Thiamin	Needed for release of energy from carbohydrates, fats, and proteins	Cereal products, pork, peas, dried beans	Lack of energy, nerve problems	
Riboflavin	Energy from carbohydrates, fats, and proteins	Milk, liver, fruits and vegetables, enriched breads and cereals	Dry skin, cracked lips	
Niacin	Energy from carbohydrates, fats, and proteins	Liver, meat, poultry, peanut butter, legumes, enriched breads and cereals	Skin problems, diarrhea, mental depression, eventually death (rarely occurs in U.S.)	Skin flushing, intestinal upset, nervousness, intestinal ulcers
B_6	Metabolism of protein, production of hemoglobin	White meats, whole grains, liver, egg yolk, bananas	Poor growth, anemia	Severe loss of coordination from nerve damage
B_{12}	Production of genetic material, maintains central nervous system	Foods of animal origin	Neurological problems, anemia	
Folate (folic acid)	Production of genetic material	Wheat germ; liver; yeast; mushrooms; green, leafy vegetables; fruits	Anemia	
C (ascorbic acid)	Formation and maintenance of connective tissue, tooth and bone formation, immune function	Fruits and vegetables	Scurvy (rare), swollen joints, bleeding gums, fatigue, bruising	Kidney stones, diarrhea
Pantothenic acid	Energy from carbohydrates, fats, proteins	Widely found in foods	Not observed in humans under normal conditions	
Biotin	Use of fats	Widely found in foods	Rare under normal conditions	

The water-soluble vitamins:

- Vitamin C
- Thiamin
- Riboflavin
- Niacin
- Folate
- Biotin
- Pantothenic acid
- Vitamin B_6
- Vitamin B_{12}

any significant extent in the body and should be supplied in the diet each day. Excess amounts of water-soluble vitamins are excreted daily in urine.

Antioxidant Nutrients Certain nutrients, called antioxidants, may prevent premature aging, certain cancers, heart disease, and other health problems.[15] An antioxidant protects vital cell components from the destructive effects of certain agents, including oxygen. Vitamins C and E and beta carotene are antioxidants. Beta carotene is a plant pigment found in dark green, deep yellow, or orange fruits and vegetables. The body can convert beta carotene into vitamin A.[31] In the early l980s, researchers reported that smokers who ate large quantities of beta carotene–rich fruits and vegetables were less likely to develop lung cancer than were other smokers. Since that time, more evidence is accumulating about the benefits of a diet rich in the antioxidant nutrients.

Some research has indicated that athletes should increase their intake of antioxidants, even if it means taking supplements. Others are more cautious. Excess beta carotene pigments circulate throughout the body and may turn the skin yellow. However, the pigment is not believed to be toxic like its nutrient cousin, vitamin A. On the other hand, increasing intake of vitamins C and E is not without some risk.[15] Excesses of vitamin C are not well absorbed; the excess is irritating to the intestines and creates diarrhea. Although less toxic than vitamins A or D, too much vitamin E causes health problems.

Minerals

More than 20 *mineral* elements need to be supplied by the diet.[13] Some of these minerals are listed in Table 5–2. Other mineral elements are found in the body. The role of minerals is unclear. Minerals are needed for a variety of jobs such as forming strong bones and teeth, generating energy, activating enzymes, and maintaining water balance. Most minerals are stored in the body, especially in the bones and liver. Although each of these minerals is important in its own way, two minerals, calcium and iron, require special attention and will be discussed later in this chapter.

The antioxidants:

- Vitamin C
- Vitamin E
- Beta carotene

Water

Water is the most essential nutrient.[45] A person can live for weeks, months, even years without consuming some of the other individual nutrients, but will perish after a few days without water. About 60 percent of the adult's body weight is water. Many materials used in the body are water soluble, that is, dissolved in water. Although water does not supply any calories, an adequate supply of water is needed for energy production. Water also takes part in digestion and maintaining the proper environment inside and outside of cells. When the body burns fuels for energy, it produces a great deal of heat energy. Sweating is how the body uses water to keep itself from overheating.

An adequate intake for men is roughly about 3 liters of total beverages a day and for women is about 2.2 liters of total beverages a day.[45] Because water is so vital, the healthy body carefully manages its internal water levels. When body water weight drops by 1 to 2 percent, you begin to feel thirsty. Drinking water causes the internal water levels to return to normal. If thirst signals are ignored and body water continues to decrease, *dehydration* results and heat-related illnesses can result (see Chapter 10).[1] People who are dehydrated cannot generate enough energy and feel weak. Other symptoms include nausea, vomiting, and fainting.

Dehydration is more likely to occur when you are outdoors, and sweating heavily while engaging in some strenuous activity. To prevent dehydration, make sure to replace the lost water by drinking plenty of fluids. Don't rely on thirst as a signal that it's time to have a drink. By the time thirst develops, the body is already slightly dehydrated. Many people ignore their thirst, or if they do heed it, they don't drink enough. Most people replace only about 50 percent of the water they lose through sweating.[28] It is recommended that athletes drink frequently throughout the day, perhaps even carrying a water bottle with them all the time to minimize the chances of dehydration.[10] An athlete should consume fluids before, during, and after practice or competition. Fluids should be either water or sports drinks, which will be discussed in Chapter 7.

Replacing fluid after heavy sweating is equally as important as replacing electrolytes.

Electrolyte Requirements Electrolytes, including sodium, chloride, potassium, magnesium, and calcium, are electrically charged ions in solution. They maintain the balance of water outside the cell. Electrolyte replenishment may be needed when a person is not fit, suffers from extreme water loss, participates in a marathon, or has just completed an exercise period

TABLE 5–2 Minerals

Mineral	Major Role	Most Reliable Sources	Deficiency	Excess
Calcium	Bone and tooth formation, blood clotting, muscle contraction, nerve function	Dairy products, calcium-enriched orange juice and bread	May lead to osteoporosis	Calcium deposits in soft tissues
Phosphorus	Skeletal development, tooth formation	Meats, dairy products, other protein-rich foods	Rarely seen	
Sodium	Maintenance of fluid balance	Salt (sodium chloride) added to foods and sodium-containing preservatives		May contribute to the development of hypertension
Iron	Formation of hemoglobin; energy from carbohydrates, fats, and proteins	Liver and red meats, enriched breads and cereals	Iron-deficiency anemia	Can cause death in children from supplement overdose
Copper	Formation of hemoglobin	Liver, nuts, shellfish, cherries, mushrooms, whole-grain breads and cereals	Anemia	Nausea, vomiting
Zinc	Normal growth and development	Seafood, meats	Skin problems, delayed development, growth problems	Interferes with copper use, may decrease high-density lipoprotein levels
Magnesium	Strengthens bones; improves enzyme function and nerve and heart function	Wheat germ, vegetables, nuts, chocolate	Weakness, muscle pain, poor heart function, osteoporosis	Kidney failure
Iodine	Production of the hormone thyroxin	Iodized salt, seafood	Mental and growth retardation, lack of energy	
Fluorine	Strengthens bones and teeth	Fluoridated water	Teeth are less resistant to decay	Damage to tooth enamel

Electrolytes: sodium, chloride, potassium, magnesium, and calcium

and is expected to perform at near-maximum effort within the next few hours. In most cases, electrolytes can be sufficiently replaced with a balanced diet. Free access to water (ad libitum) before, during, and after activity should be the rule. Sweating results not only in a body water loss but in some electrolyte loss as well.[23]

THE PRODUCTION OF ENERGY FROM FOODSTUFFS

Energy is produced when cells break down CHO, fats, or proteins to release energy stored in these compounds. As can be seen in Figure 5–2, carbohydrates provide the major proportion of energy for short-term, high-intensity muscular contractions. As the duration and the intensity of the activity increases, breathing also increases, supplying more oxygen for

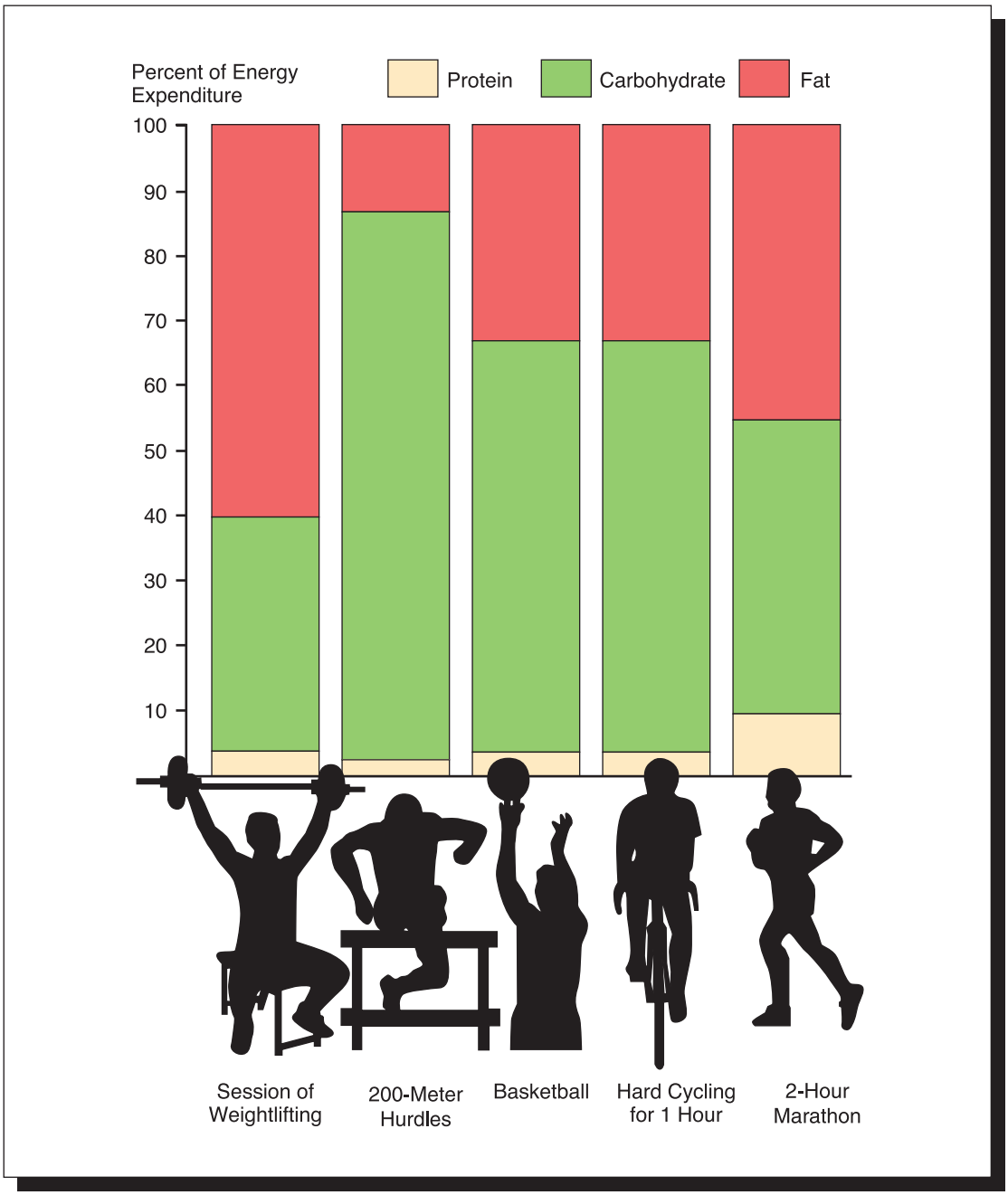


FIGURE 5–2 The relative Percentages of CHO, Fat, and protein fuels used for physical activity. It must be stressed that the exact percentage of the total energy expenditure contribution depends totally on the intensity and duration of that specific activity.

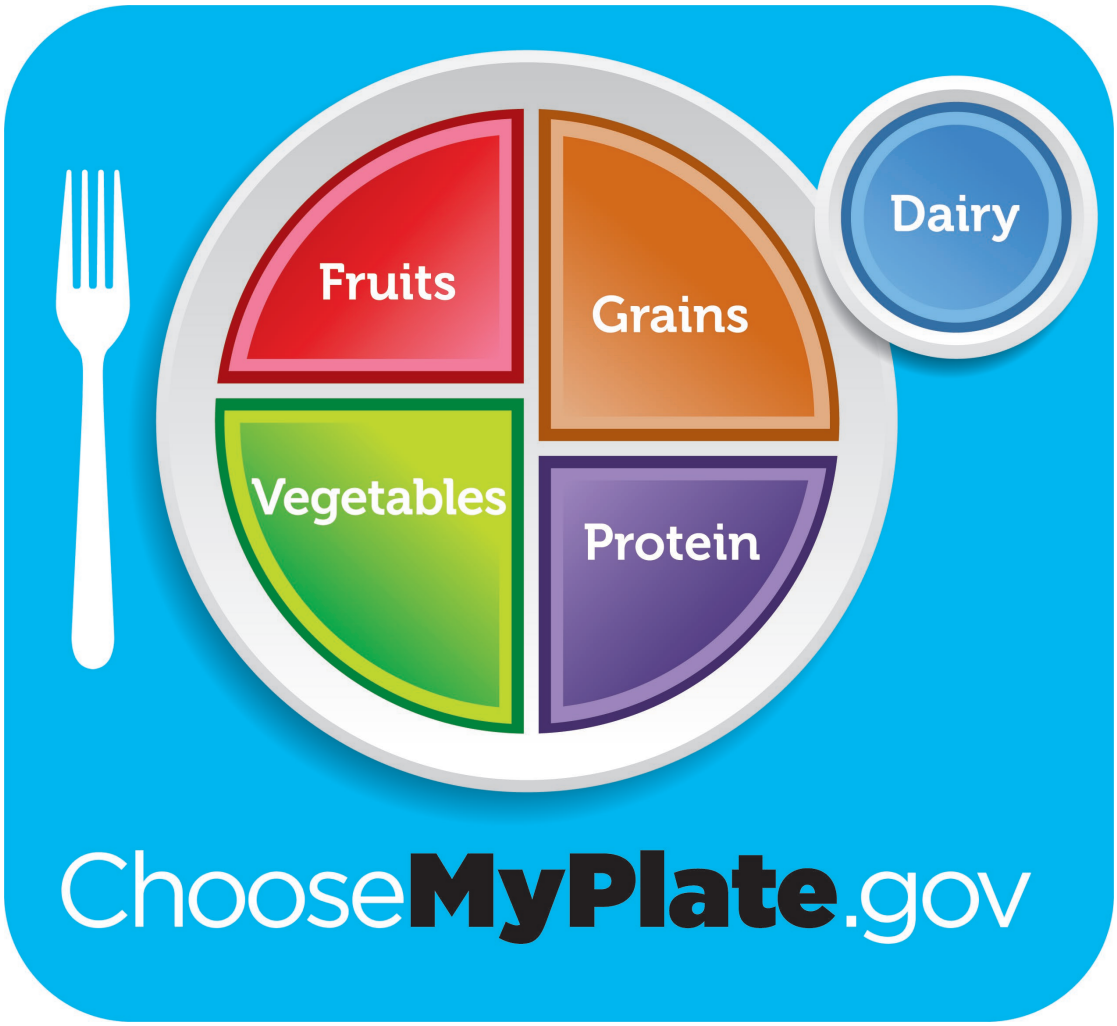


FIGURE 5–3 **MyPlate icon.** Source: U.S. Department of Agriculture

the cells and maximizing energy production. When the activity is prolonged, such as in an endurance sport, the percentage of fat and carbohydrate used for fuel is similar. Under usual conditions, proteins supply less than about 5 percent of energy. However, athletes engaged in endurance activities receive as much as 10 to 15 percent of their energy needs from protein.[27] The body's metabolism generally prefers to burn carbohydrate, then fat, and finally protein as a last resort. Fat supplies more than twice the amount of energy provided by either carbohydrates or proteins.

WHAT IS A NUTRITIOUS DIET?

MyPlate*

The USDA's newest food icon **MyPlate,** introduced in 2011, is the government's primary food group symbol, designed to help consumers adopt healthy eating habits consistent with the 2015–2020 Dietary Guidelines for Americans (Figure 5–3).[43] The intent is to help consumers think about building a healthy diet, which consists of fruit, vegetable, grain, protein, and dairy food groups.

A website, ChooseMyPlate.gov, provides practical information to several groups, including individual Americans, health professionals, nutrition educators, and the food industry, to help these consumers build healthier diets. Resources and tools for dietary assessment, nutrition education, and other user-friendly nutrition information can also be found on this website. Because the American population is experiencing epidemic rates of overweight and obesity, the hope is that the online resources and tools can empower people to make healthier food choices for themselves, their families, and their children. Hopefully, this approach will help to eliminate consumer frustration over what they report as contradictory nutrition information.

*Modified from www.cnpp.usda.gov/Publications/MyPlate/backgrounder.

The newest 2015–2020 Dietary Guidelines for Americans form the basis of the federal government's nutrition education programs, federal nutrition assistance programs, and dietary advice provided by health and nutrition professionals.[43] The guidelines and recommendations help professionals and the media understand and deliver relevant nutrition information to encourage healthy eating and help Americans make healthy choices for themselves and their families.

Nutrient-Dense Foods Versus Junk Foods

Foods that contain considerable amounts of vitamins, minerals, and proteins in relation to their caloric content are referred to as being *nutrient dense*. Candy, chips, doughnuts, cakes, and cookies are often referred to as junk foods. These foods are not nutrient dense because they provide too many calories from fats and sugars in relation to vitamins and minerals. If an athlete's overall diet is nutritious, and he or she can afford the extra calories, it's okay to eat occasional fatty or sugary foods. However, many people who live on diets that are rich in these kinds of foods displace more nutritious food items in their diets. This behavior is not a healthy one to practice in the long run.[37]

Nutrient-dense foods supply adequate amounts of vitamins and minerals in relation to caloric value.

Food Labels

Over the past 20 years, food labels have provided helpful nutritional information for consumers. In 1994, a new nutritional labeling format changed the look and importance of food product packaging. People were becoming concerned about the amount of fat, cholesterol, sodium, and fiber in the typical American diet, thus producing the drive for a more health-conscious label. Health educators believe that the new format has made it easier for consumers to make more informed, healthful food selections. In 2006, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) mandated that trans fat be added to the label.[16] In 2016, the FDA updated the "Nutrition Facts" label for packaged foods to reflect the latest scientific information to emphasize important elements, such as calories, serving sizes, and percentage of daily value, which are important in addressing current public health problems like obesity and heart disease.[16] Figure 5–4 shows the new, redesigned Nutrition Facts label approved by the FDA. As of July, 2018, the new label is required on most packaged foods.

Nutrition Facts

8 servings per container

Serving size 2/3 cup (55g)

Amount per serving

Calories 230

	% Daily Value*
Total Fat 8g	**10%**
Saturated Fat 1g	**5%**
Trans Fat 0g	
Cholesterol 0mg	**0%**
Sodium 160mg	**7%**
Total Carbohydrate 37g	**13%**
Dietary Fiber 4g	**14%**
Total Sugars 12g	
Includes 10g Added Sugars	**20%**
Protein 3g	
Vitamin D 2mcg	10%
Calcium 260mg	20%
Iron 8mg	45%
Potassium 235mg	6%

* The % Daily Value (DV) tells you how much a nutrient in a serving of food contributes to a daily diet. 2,000 calories a day is used for general nutrition advice.

FIGURE 5–4 **Food label indicating nutrition information per serving.**

DIETARY SUPPLEMENTS

Myths and Misconceptions

Many people believe that exercise increases requirements for nutrients such as proteins, vitamins, and minerals and that it is possible and desirable to saturate the body with these nutrients.[28] **There is no scientific basis for ingesting levels of these nutrients above the dietary reference intake (DRI) levels.**[37] Exercise increases the need for energy, not for proteins, vitamins, and minerals.[27] Thus, it is necessary to explore some of the more common myths that

Vitamin requirements do not increase during exercise.

DRI helps consumers compare nutritional values of foods.

surround the subject of using dietary supplements to enhance physical performance.[26]

There are probably more myths associated with the contribution of dietary supplements to successful athletic performance than with any other related topic of concern for your athlete. Many popular books and magazine articles about the topic give advice for using dietary supplements designed to enhance performance.[2] Unfortunately, more unreliable sources of nutrition information are available to the consumer than reliable, fact-filled ones. There is no doubt that if an athlete really believes that some nutritional powder, pill, or drink is the key to success, he or she may be successful. Often the belief that an item will have an effect can actually induce the desired effect, even though the item itself really does not have an effect. This is known as the placebo effect, which can be very powerful. The supplement provides a psychological boost. In many cases no harm is done. However, many people spend considerable amounts of money on such worthless supplements, and the use of some products can actually harm the body.[29] Perhaps the most significant dilemma with dietary supplements is that there is currently no premarket approval or any postmarket surveillance of these products by any regulating agency. **The burden of proof of safety or harm of supplements falls on the Food and Drug Administration (FDA). With the exception of ephedrine, the FDA has not acted to support or ban the use of any supplement.**[7]

Supplements are not regulated by any government agency.

Before discussing supplementation, it should be emphatically stated that with the exception of a licensed nutritionist or a physician, **no fitness professional or coach should provide or distribute nutritional supplements of any kind to an athlete.**[29] To do so may be in violation of the laws and statutes in a particular state and may also be in violation of the rules of national and state sport-governing bodies such as the NCAA.

Vitamin Supplements

Many people believe that taking large amounts of vitamin supplements can lead to superior health and performance.[11] A megadose of a nutrient supplement is essentially an overdose; the amount ingested far exceeds the DRI levels. The rationale used for such excessive intakes is that if a pill that contains the DRI for each vitamin and mineral makes a person healthy, then taking a pill that has 10 times the DRI should make that person 10 times healthier. There is no truth to this kind of logic. For anyone eating a balanced diet, vitamin supplementation is probably not really necessary. However, if a person is not consuming a good diet, supplementation with a multiple vitamin can be beneficial.[7] Supplementing with excessive amounts of fat-soluble vitamins can produce **toxic effects.**

Mineral Supplements

Obtaining adequate levels of certain minerals can be a problem for some individuals. Calcium and iron intakes may be low for athletes whose diets do not include dairy products, red meats, or enriched breads and cereals. However, athletes must first determine whether they need extra minerals to prevent wasting their money and overdosing. The following sections explore some of the minerals that can be low in the diet and some suggestions for improving the quality of the diet so that supplements may not be necessary.

Calcium Supplements Calcium is the most abundant mineral in the body. It is essential for bones and teeth and for muscle contraction and conduction of nerve impulses. If calcium intake is too low to meet needs, the body can remove calcium from the bones. Over time, the bones become weakened and appear porous on X-ray films. These bones are brittle and often break spontaneously. This condition is called **osteoporosis** and is estimated to be eight times more common among women than men. Osteoporosis becomes a serious problem for women after menopause.[14]

osteoporosis A decrease in bone density.

Exercise causes calcium to be retained in bones, so physical activity is beneficial. However, younger females who exercise to extremes so that their normal hormonal balance is upset are prone to develop premature osteoporosis. For females who have a family history of osteoporosis, calcium supplementation, preferably as calcium carbonate or citrate rather than phosphate, may be advisable.[14]

Milk products are the most reliable sources of calcium. Many athletes dislike milk or complain that it upsets their stomach. Those athletes may lack an enzyme called *lactase* that is needed to digest milk sugar, lactose. This condition is referred to as lactose intolerance, or **lactase deficiency.** The undigested lactose enters the large intestine, where the bacteria that normally reside there use it for energy. The bacteria produce large quantities of intestinal gas, which causes discomfort and cramps. Many lactose-intolerant people also suffer from diarrhea. Fortunately, scientists have produced the missing enzyme, lactase. Lactase is available

lactase deficiency Difficulty digesting dairy products.

without prescription in forms that can be added to foods before eating or taken along with meals.

Iron Supplements Iron deficiency is also a common problem, especially for young females. Lack of iron can result in iron-deficiency **anemia.**[33] Iron is needed to properly form hemoglobin. In anemia, the oxygen-carrying ability of the red blood cells is reduced so that muscles cannot obtain enough oxygen to generate energy. An anemic person feels tired and weak. Obviously, athletes cannot compete at their peak level while suffering from an iron deficiency.

anemia Lack of iron.

Protein Supplements

Athletes often believe that more protein is needed to build bigger muscles. It is true that a relatively small amount of protein is needed for developing muscles in a training program. Many athletes, particularly those who are weight training heavily or bodybuilders, routinely take commercially produced protein supplements. To build muscle, athletes should consume 1.2 to 1.7 grams per kilogram of body weight every day.[39] This range goes from slightly above to about double the protein DRI (0.8 gram per kilogram of desirable body weight). Anyone eating a variety of foods, but especially protein-rich foods, can easily meet the higher amounts. Thus, protein supplements are not needed for athletes because their diets typically exceed even the most generous protein recommendations.[12]

Creatine Supplements

Creatine is a naturally occurring organic compound synthesized by the kidneys, liver, and pancreas, 95 percent of which is found in skeletal muscle. The body acquires the creatine it needs mainly from the ingestion of meat and fish. The important role of creatine is in energy metabolism and the contraction of skeletal muscle. With creatine supplementation, depletion is delayed and performance is enhanced through the maintenance of the normal metabolic pathways. There are several problems with supplementing the human body with any of the creatine forms, and specifically creatine monohydrate, including weight gain, occasional muscle cramping, gastrointestinal disturbances, and renal dysfunction. However, there are currently no other known long-term side effects.[46]

The positive physiological effects of creatine include allowing for increased intensity in a workout, prolonging maximal effort and improving exercise recovery time during maximal intensity activities, stimulating protein synthesis, decreasing total cholesterol, and increasing fat-free mass.[40] Oral supplementation with creatine may enhance muscular performance during high-intensity resistance exercise.

In August 2000, the NCAA Committee on Competitive Safeguards and Medical Aspects of Sports banned the distribution to student athletes of all muscle-building substances, including creatine, by NCAA member institutions. The use of creatine itself is not banned by the FDA. It is still being widely used by non-NCAA athletes at all levels and thus warrants discussion.

Herbal Supplements

The use of herbs as natural alternatives to drugs and medicines has clearly become a trend among American consumers.[22] Despite a lack of evidence to support the use of herbs in the professional literature, their use is widespread among the general population and especially in the athletic population. Thus, a discussion of the most commonly used herbs is necessary. Most herbs, as edible plants, are safe to take as foods, and they are claimed to have few side effects as natural medicines, although occasionally a mild allergy-type reaction may occur. In some cases the use of herbal supplements has resulted in death.

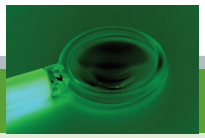
Nutritionally, herbs can offer the body nutrients that are reported to nourish the brain and glands and aid hormone production. Unlike vitamins, which work best when taken with food, it is not necessary to take herbs with other foods.[22]

Herbs in their whole form are not drugs. As medicines, herbs are essentially body balancers that work with the body functions to help the body heal and regulate itself. Herbal formulas can be general for overall strength and nutrient support, or specific to a particular ailment or condition.

Hundreds of herbs are widely available today at all quality levels. They are readily available at health-food stores. However, unlike both food and medicine, there are no federal or governmental controls to regulate the sale and ensure the quality of the products being sold. Thus, the consumer of herbal products must exercise extreme caution.[38]

Focus Box 5–1 lists the most popular and widely used herbal products sold in health-food stores. Some additional potent and complex herbs, such as capsicum, lobelia, sassafras, mandrake, tansy, canada snake root, wormwood, woodruff, poke root, and rue, may be useful in small amounts and as catalysts, but should not be used alone.

Ephedrine Ephedrine is a stimulant that is used as an ingredient in diet pills, illegal recreational drugs, and legitimate over-the-counter medications to treat congestion and asthma.[37] Ephedrine is similar to amphetamine. For several years, the FDA warned consumers about the potential dangers of using ephedrine. The NCAA, the National Football League,



FOCUS BOX 5-1

Most widely used herbs and purposes for use

cascara—used as a laxative, can cause dehydration.
cayenne—used for weight loss.
dong quai—to treat menstrual symptoms.
echinacea—to promote wound healing and strengthen the immune system.
feverfew—to prevent and relieve migraine headaches, arthritis, and PMS.
garlic—as an antibiotic, antibacterial, antifungal agent to prevent and relieve coronary artery disease by reducing total blood cholesterol and triglyceride levels and raising HDL levels.
garcina cambagia—used to promote loss of fat.
ginkgo biloba—to improve blood circulation, especially in the brain.
ginseng—to reduce impotence, weakness, lethargy, and fatigue.
green tea—has traditionally been used to prevent or slow growth in a variety of cancers; not enough evidence to determine improvement in mental alertness, weight loss, lowering cholesterol levels, or protecting skin from sun damage.
guarana*—used as a stimulant, contains large amounts of caffeine, often in weight-loss products.
kava—to reduce anxiety, insomnia. Increased risk of severe liver damage.
ma huang (ephedrine)*—derived from the ephedra plant, it has been used in China for medicinal purposes including increased energy, appetite suppression, increased fat burning, and preservation of muscle tissue from breaking down. It is a central nervous system stimulant drug that was used in many diet pills. In 1995, the FDA revealed adverse reactions to ephedrine such as heart attacks, strokes, paranoid psychosis, vomiting, fever, palpitations, convulsions, and comas. In 2003 it was banned by the FDA.
maté—CNS stimulant.
saw palmetto—to treat inflamed prostate; also used as a diuretic and as a sexual enhancement agent.
senna—used as a laxative, can cause water and electrolyte loss.
St. John's wort—used as an antidepressant; also used to treat nervous disorders, depression, neuralgia, kidney problems, wounds, and burns.
valerian—to treat insomnia, anxiety, stress.
yohimbe—to increase libido and blood flow to sexual organs in the male.

*Banned by some athletic organizations and/or the FDA.

The FDA has banned the use of ephedrine.

the National Basketball Association, and minor league baseball have banned the use of ephedrine by their athletes. In December 2003, the FDA banned the use of ephedrine as a dietary supplement. Some companies continue to sell dietary supplements that contain ephedrine and other stimulants. Despite the fact that these ephedrine diet supplements have caused numerous problems, some may still be on the market. Ephedrine can produce the following adverse reactions: heart attack, stroke, tachycardia, paranoid psychosis, depression, convulsions, coma, fever, vomiting, palpitations, hypertension, and respiratory depression.

Glucose Supplements

Ingesting large quantities of glucose in the form of honey, candy bars, or pure sugar immediately before physical activity has a significant impact on performance. As carbohydrates are digested, large quantities of glucose enter the blood. This increase in blood sugar (glucose) levels stimulates the release of the hormone insulin. Insulin allows the cells to use the circulating glucose so that blood glucose levels soon return to normal. It was hypothesized that this decline in blood sugar levels was detrimental to performance and endurance. However, recent evidence indicates the effect of eating large quantities of carbohydrates is beneficial rather than negative.[9]

Nevertheless, some athletes are sensitive to high carbohydrate feedings and experience problems with increased levels of insulin. Also, some athletes cannot tolerate large amounts of the simple sugar fructose. For these individuals, too much fructose leads to intestinal upset and diarrhea. Athletes should test themselves with various high-carbohydrate foods to see whether they are affected, but they should not try this test before a competitive event.[45]

POPULAR EATING AND DRINKING PRACTICES

Caffeine Consumption

Caffeine is a central nervous system stimulant. Most people who consume caffeine in coffee, tea, or carbonated beverages are aware of its effect of increasing alertness and decreasing fatigue. Chocolate

contains compounds that are related to caffeine and have the same stimulating effects. However, large amounts of caffeine cause nervousness, irritability, increased heart rate, and headaches. Also, headaches are a withdrawal symptom experienced when a person tries to stop consuming caffeinated products.

Although small amounts of caffeine do not appear to harm physical performance, cases of nausea and lightheadedness have been reported. Caffeine may enhance the use of fat during endurance exercise, thus delaying the depletion of glycogen stores, which would help endurance performance. Caffeine also appears to help make calcium more available to the muscle during contraction, which helps the muscle work more efficiently. Caffeine is no longer on the banned list for Olympic athletes but it is still on the NCAA banned substances list. It should not be present in an Olympic competitor's blood in levels greater than that resulting from drinking five or six cups of coffee.

Energy Drinks Over the last decade, consumption of energy drinks has increased dramatically. There are literally hundreds of energy drinks available to the consumer. Red Bull, Rockstar, AMP, Monster, and 5 Hour Energy are just a few of the most common energy drinks. It must be clarified that energy drinks are different from sports drinks. Sports drinks contain no caffeine. Generally, the energy drinks contain caffeine that can range anywhere from 50 mg to in excess of 500 mg, with the average drink containing between 70 and 80 mg per serving.[32] They are marketed for their performance-enhancing and stimulant-drug effects. There is an obvious risk of caffeine intoxication when consuming a high amount of caffeine, which can cause adverse effects including nervousness, insomnia, headache, tachycardia (increased heart rate), and rarely seizure activity or occasionally death. Problems with caffeine dependence and withdrawal have also been reported.[32] Energy drinks also have a high concentration of carbohydrate, and most are carbonated.

There is currently little government regulation of energy drinks, including content labeling and health warnings. Of even greater concern is the combined use of caffeine and alcohol. Studies suggest that such combined use may increase the rate of alcohol-related injury.[19]

Alcohol Consumption

Alcohol provides energy for the body; each gram of pure alcohol (ethanol) supplies 7 calories. However, sources of alcohol provide very little other nutritional value in regard to vitamins, minerals, and proteins. The depressant effects of alcohol on the central nervous system include decreased physical coordination, slowed reaction times, and decreased mental alertness. Also, this drug increases the production of urine, resulting in body water losses (diuretic effect). Alcohol use is prevalent among athletes at all levels. It appears that alcohol consumption is higher among athletes when compared to non-athlete peers. Therefore, use of alcoholic beverages by the athlete cannot be recommended before, during, or after physical activity.

Eating Organic, Natural, and Health Foods

Many people are concerned about the quality of the foods they eat—not just the nutritional value of the food but also its safety. Organic foods are grown without the use of synthetic fertilizers and pesticides. Those who advocate the use of organic farming methods claim that these foods are nutritionally superior and safer than the same products grown using chemicals, such as pesticides and synthetic fertilizers.[41]

All foods (except water) are organic; that is, they contain the element carbon. Organically produced foods are often more expensive than the same foods that have been produced by conventional means. There is no advantage to consuming organic food products. They are not more nutritious than foods produced by conventional methods.[20] Nevertheless, for some people the psychological benefit of believing that they are doing something good for their bodies justifies the extra cost.

Natural foods have been subjected to little processing and contain no additives, such as preservatives or artificial flavors.[41] Processing can protect nutritional value. Preservatives save food that would otherwise spoil and have to be destroyed. Both organic and natural foods can be described as health foods.

Vegetarianism

Many athletes are health conscious and try to do things that are good for their bodies. *Vegetarianism* has emerged as an alternative to the usual American diet. All vegetarians use plant foods to form the foundation of their diet; animal foods are either totally excluded or included in a variety of eating patterns. Athletes who choose to become vegetarians do so for economic, philosophical, religious, cultural, or health reasons. Vegetarianism is no longer considered to be a fad if it is practiced intelligently. However, the vegetarian diet may create deficiencies if nutrient needs are not carefully considered. Vegetarians must carefully select and combine their non-animal protein sources in order to get all of the essential amino acids included into their diet. Athletes who follow this eating pattern need to plan their diet carefully so that their calorie needs are met.

Gluten-Free Diets

Gluten is a protein that is found in grains such as wheat and rye. A gluten-free diet that completely eliminates all gluten is essential for managing signs and symptoms in individuals who have celiac disease and other gluten (wheat)-related sensitivities. Celiac disease is an autoimmune disorder in which the consumption of gluten triggers an immune system response that will, over time, cause damage to the lining of the small intestine, thus preventing the absorption of nutrients. Most of the research on the health-related benefits of consuming a gluten-free diet has been done on patients with celiac disease.[36] But despite a lack of research-based evidence, consumption of a gluten-free diet has become very popular among many people who have no gluten-related medical problems because of media claims regarding the reported benefits of a gluten-free diet, which include increased energy, weight loss, and improved overall health. As a result, "gluten-free" foods are readily available in supermarkets and restaurants. Individuals who do not have celiac disease who choose to consume a gluten-free diet derive no significant health-related benefits. Furthermore, eliminating foods that contain gluten can cause some nutritional deficiencies of vitamin B_6 (folic acid) and dietary fiber.[36]

Eating a gluten-free diet can be challenging. Individuals with celiac disease and/or gluten sensitivity have no choice and must eliminate all foods that contain wheat, barley, and rye including cereals, pasta, pizza, breads, many processed foods, and beer. This requires always paying close attention to food labels, which detail specific ingredients and nutritional content in foods. Acceptable food choices may include fruits, beans, vegetables, eggs, non-processed meats, fish, poultry, and dairy products.

Pre-event Nutrition

The importance and content of the pre-event meal have been heatedly debated among coaches, athletic trainers, and athletes. Sometimes competitors ignore logical thinking about what they should eat before competition because of the tradition of "rewarding" the athlete for hard work with foods that may hamper performance. The important point is that too often people are concerned primarily with the pre-event meal and fail to realize that those nutrients consumed over several days before competition are much more important than what is eaten 3 hours before an event. The purpose of the pre-event meal should be to maximize carbohydrate stored in the muscles as well as blood glucose.[28] It has been suggested that the athlete consume carbohydrates 3 to 4 hours prior to practice or competition. But it has also been suggested that consuming carbohydrates immediately prior to competition causes an increased release of insulin, which increases the rate at which muscles burn carbohydrate, thus lowering blood glucose levels (hypoglycemia).[9] Different carbohydrates are digested and absorbed at different rates. The **glycemic index (GI)** is a scale that indicates how much different types of carbohydrate affect blood glucose levels.[44] Consuming foods that have a low to medium GI prior to an event is recommended because they produce only small fluctuations in blood glucose and insulin levels and release energy more slowly over a longer time period. Ingesting carbohydrates that have a high GI within an hour of exercise may actually lower blood glucose. Figure 5–5 lists the glycemic index range for common foods.

glycemic index (GI)
Indicates the effects of different carbohydrates on blood glucose levels.

Additionally, the foods selected should minimize gastrointestinal distress and should be foods that the individual athlete prefers. It is also critical to make certain that the athlete is appropriately hydrated.

If the duration of the activity is relatively short, less than 30 minutes, the foods that were consumed prior to the activity will generally be sufficient to provide enough energy to sustain that activity. An activity lasting more than 30 minutes will require

LOW GLYCEMIC INDEX (<55)
Most fruits—grapefruit, apples, oranges
Whole-grain cereals, breads, pasta
Nuts
Beans and legumes
Green leafy vegetables
Yogurt, milk

MEDIUM GLYCEMIC INDEX (56–69)
Sweet potato
Spaghetti
Basmati rice
Bagel
Macaroni and cheese
Raisins
Ice cream

HIGH GLYCEMIC INDEX (>70)
White bread
White rice
Corn flakes
Baked potato
Watermelon
Popcorn

FIGURE 5–5 Examples of common carbohydrates and their glycemic index (GI) range.

additional carbohydrate (glucose and fructose) replacement during the activity. An energy bar, gels, or a sports drink can provide the additional carbohydrates needed for energy, and the sports drink will also help to rehydrate.

Postevent Meal Following a game or practice, it is important that athletes replenish glucose stores as soon as possible after the activity ends. It is recommended that foods high in carbohydrate content be eaten within 2 hours. Ideally, the foods ingested should have a high glycemic index.[28] Bananas and dried fruits are good choices, as are sandwiches and sports drinks. The next main meal consumed within several hours might consist of white bread, pasta, potatoes, and rice as well as cakes and sweets for dessert. It may take 24 hours to fully restore carbohydrate stores, so the more carbohydrates consumed in the first 2 hours, the better.

The athlete should be encouraged to be conscious of his or her diet. However, no experimental evidence indicates that performance may be enhanced by altering a diet that is basically sound. A nutritious diet may be achieved in several ways, and the diet that is optimal for one athlete may not be the best for another. In many instances, the individual is the best judge of what he or she should or should not eat in the preevent meal or before exercising. A person's best guide is to eat whatever he or she is most comfortable with.

Liquid Food Supplements Liquid food supplements have been recommended as effective pre-event meals and are being used by high school, college, university, and professional teams with some indications of success. These supplements supply from 225 to 400 calories per average serving. Athletes who have used these supplements have reported elimination of the usual pregame symptoms of dry mouth, abdominal cramps, leg cramps, nervous defecation, and nausea.

Under ordinary conditions, it usually takes approximately 4 hours for a full meal to pass through the stomach and the small intestine. Pregame emotional tension often delays the emptying of the stomach; therefore, the undigested food mass remains in the stomach and upper bowel for a prolonged time, even up to or through the actual period of competition, and frequently causes nausea, vomiting, and cramps. This unabsorbed food mass is of no value to the athlete. According to team physicians who have experimented with the liquid food supplements, one of their major advantages is that they clear both the stomach and the upper bowel before game time, thus making available the caloric energy that would otherwise still be in an unassimilated state. There is merit in the use of such food supplements for pregame meals.

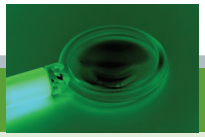
Eating Fast Foods

Eating fast food is a way of life in American society. Athletes, especially young athletes, have for the most part grown up as fast-food junkies. Furthermore, travel budgets and tight schedules dictate that fast food is a frequent choice for coaches on road trips. Aside from occasional problems with food flavor, the biggest concern in consuming fast foods is that 40 to 50 percent of the calories consumed are from fats. To compound this problem, fast food is typically sold in large portions, maximizing fat, salt, and calories in a single sitting.[34]

On the positive side, fast-food restaurants have broadened their menus to include whole-wheat breads and rolls, salad bars, and low-fat milk products. Many of the larger fast-food restaurants provide nutritional information for consumers upon request or from well-stocked racks. *Focus Box 5–2* provides suggestions for eating more healthfully at fast-food restaurants.

Low-Carbohydrate Diets

For many years it was recommended that fat intake be limited as a means of controlling weight. Recently the recommendation has been to severely limit the intake of carbohydrates in the diet. There are many different versions of a low-carbohydrate diet, all of which recommend a strict reduction in the consumption of carbohydrates. Most "low-carb" diets replace carbohydrates with a high-fat and moderate protein diet. The low-calorie and low-fat diets that have been recommended for years have failed to realize that dietary fat is not necessarily converted into body fat. However, carbohydrates are readily converted into fat. When eating a high-carbohydrate meal, the increased blood glucose stimulates insulin production by the pancreas. Insulin allows blood glucose to be used by the cells, but it also causes fat to be deposited, and it stimulates the brain to produce hunger signals. So there is a tendency to eat more carbohydrates, and the cycle repeats. It has been shown that most overweight people became overweight due to a condition called *hyperinsulinemia*—elevated insulin levels in the blood. Restricting carbohydrate intake halts this cycle by decreasing insulin levels. Carbohydrate restriction also increases the levels of *glucagon*, which is a hormone that causes body fat to be burned and aids in removing cholesterol deposits in the arteries. Severely restricting carbohydrate intake puts the body into a state of ketosis, in which blood glucose levels stabilize; insulin level drops; and because the body is burning fat, fairly rapid weight loss occurs.[17]



FOCUS BOX 5-2

Tips for selecting fast foods

- Limit deep-fried foods such as fish and chicken sandwiches and chicken nuggets, which are often higher in fat than plain burgers are. If you are having fried chicken, remove some of the breading before eating.
- Order roast beef, turkey, or grilled chicken, where available, for a lower-fat alternative to most burgers.
- Choose a small order of fries with your meal rather than a large one, and request no salt. Add a small amount of salt yourself if desired. If you are ordering a deep-fat-fried sandwich or one that is made with cheese and sauce, skip the fries altogether and try a plain baked potato (add butter and salt sparingly) or a dinner roll instead of a biscuit; or, try a side salad to accompany your meal instead.
- Choose regular sandwiches instead of "double," "jumbo," "deluxe," or "ultimate." And order plain types rather than those with the works, such as cheese, bacon, mayonnaise, and special sauce. Pickles, mustard, ketchup, and other condiments are high in sodium. Choose lettuce, tomatoes, and onions.
- At the salad bar, load up on fresh greens, fruits, and vegetables. Be careful of salad dressings, added toppings, and creamy salads (potato salad, macaroni salad, coleslaw). These can quickly push calories and fat to the level of other menu items or higher.
- Many fast-food items contain large amounts of sodium from salt and other ingredients. Try to balance the rest of your day's sodium choices after a fast-food meal.
- Alternate water, low-fat milk, or skim milk with a soda or a shake.
- For dessert, or a sweet-on-the-run, choose low-fat frozen yogurt where available.
- Remember to balance your fast-food choices with your food selections for the whole day.

Glycogen Supercompensation (Carbohydrate Loading)

glycogen supercompensation
High-carbohydrate diet.

Since the quantity of glycogen stored in a muscle directly affects the endurance of that muscle, many athletes preparing for endurance events engage in a practice called **glycogen supercompensation,** also known as carbohydrate loading.[28] For endurance events, maximizing the amount of glycogen that can be stored, especially in muscles, may make the difference between finishing first or at the "end of the pack." Glycogen supplies in muscle and the liver can be increased by reducing the training program a few days before competing and by significantly increasing carbohydrate intake during the week before the event. Reducing training for at least 48 hours before the competition allows the body to eliminate any metabolic waste products that may hinder performance. The high-carbohydrate diet restores glycogen levels in muscle and the liver.

Glycogen supercompensation is accomplished over a 6-day period divided into three phases. In phase 1 (days 1 and 2), training should be very hard and dietary intake of carbohydrates fairly normal, accounting for about 60 percent of total caloric intake. During phase 2 (days 3 to 5), training is cut back and the individual eats at least 70 percent or more of the diet in carbohydrates. Studies have indicated that glycogen stores may be increased from 50 to 100 percent, theoretically enhancing endurance during a long-term event. Phase 3 (day 6) is the day of the event, during which a normal diet must be consumed.

Glycogen supercompensation should not be done more than two or three times during the course of a year. *Glycogen loading is only of value in long-duration events that produce glycogen depletion, such as a marathon or triathlon.*[28]

Fat Loading

Some endurance athletes have tried fat loading in place of carbohydrate loading. Their intent was to have a better source of energy at their disposal. *The deleterious effects of this procedure outweigh any benefits that may be derived.* Fat loading can lead to cardiac protein and potassium depletion, causing arrhythmias and increased levels of serum cholesterol as a result of the ingestion of butter, cheese, cream, and marbled beef.

WEIGHT CONTROL AND BODY COMPOSITION

The need for gain or loss of weight in an athlete often poses a problem because the individual's ingrained eating habits are difficult to change. An intelligent and conscientious approach to weight control requires some knowledge of what is involved on the part of the athlete. Such understanding allows

athletes to better discipline themselves as to the quantity and kinds of foods they should eat.

Body Composition

Body composition refers to both the fat and nonfat components of the body. That portion of total body weight that is composed of fat tissue is referred to as the percent body fat. That portion of the total body weight that is composed of nonfat or lean tissue, which includes muscles, tendons, bones, connective tissue, and so on, is referred to as lean body weight. Body composition measurements are the most accurate way to determine precisely how much weight an athlete may gain or lose.[6]

body composition
Percent body fat plus lean body weight.

In the average college-age female, between 20 and 25 percent of total body weight is made up of fat. The average college-age male has between 12 and 15 percent body fat. Male endurance athletes may get their fat percentage as low as 8 to 12 percent, and female endurance athletes may reach 10 to 18 percent. The recommendation is that body fat percentage not go below 5 percent in males and 12 percent in females, because below these percentages the internal organs tend to lose their protective padding of essential fat, potentially subjecting them to injury.[6] Many athletes actually lose muscle mass and gain fat mass in season, partly due to change in diet and in training.

Assessing Body Composition

Measuring the thickness of skin folds is based on the fact that about 50 percent of the fat in the body is contained in the subcutaneous fat layers and is closely related to total fat. The remainder of the fat in the body is found around organs and vessels and serves a shock-absorptive function. The skin-fold technique involves measurement of the thickness of the subcutaneous fat layer with a skin-fold caliper.[6]

A second technique for assessing body composition involves measuring bioelectrial impedance. This technique predicts the percentage of body fat by assessing the amount of resistance to the flow of electrical current through the body between selected points. Despite their relative expense, these measurement devices are becoming more and more widely used.

Assessing Caloric Balance

Changes in body weight are almost entirely the result of changes in caloric balance.

Caloric balance = Number of calories consumed − Number of calories expended

Calories may be expended by three different processes: (1) basal metabolism; (2) work (work may be defined as any activity that requires more energy than sleeping); and (3) excretion. If more calories are consumed than expended, the positive caloric balance results in weight gain. Conversely, weight loss results from a negative caloric balance in which more calories are expended than are consumed.

Positive caloric balance = Weight gain

Negative caloric balance = Weight loss

Caloric balance is determined by the number of calories consumed regardless of whether the calories are contained in fat, carbohydrate, or protein. There are differences in the caloric content of these three foodstuffs:

Carbohydrate = 4 calories per gram
Protein = 4 calories per gram
Fat = 9 calories per gram
Alcohol = 7 calories per gram
(Alcohol should not be considered a macronutrient.)

Estimations of caloric intake for college athletes range between 2,000 and 5,000 calories per day. Estimations of caloric expenditure range between 2,200 and 4,400 calories on the average. Energy demands are considerably higher in endurance athletes, who may require as many as 7,000 calories.

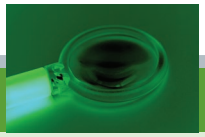
Methods of Weight Loss

There are several ways to lose weight: (1) dieting (here dieting refers to caloric restriction), (2) increasing the amount of physical exercise, or (3) a combination of diet and exercise.

Weight loss through dieting alone is difficult, and in most cases, dieting is an ineffective means of weight control.[18] Long-term weight control through dieting alone is successful only 20 percent of the time.[4] Through dieting, 35 to 45 percent of the weight decrease results from a loss of lean tissue. The minimum caloric intake for a female should not go below 1,000 to 1,200 calories per day, and for a male, not below 1,200 to 1,400 calories per day.[4]

Weight loss through exercise involves an 80 to 90 percent loss of fat tissue with almost no loss of lean tissue. Weight loss through exercise alone is almost as difficult as losing weight through dieting. However, exercise will not only result in weight reduction but may also enhance cardiorespiratory endurance, improve strength, and increase flexibility.[5] For this reason, exercise has some distinct advantages over dieting in any weight-loss program.

The most efficient method of decreasing body fat is through some combination of diet and exercise.[42] A moderate caloric restriction combined with a moderate increase in caloric expenditure will



FOCUS BOX 5–3

Guidelines for weight loss

The American College of Sports Medicine has made the following statements and recommendations regarding weight loss:[27]

- Prolonged fasting and diet programs that severely restrict caloric intake are scientifically undesirable and can be medically dangerous.
- Fasting and diet programs that severely restrict caloric intake result in the loss of large amounts of water, electrolytes, minerals, glycogen stores, and other fat-free tissue (including proteins within fat-free tissues), with minimal amounts of fat loss.
- Mild caloric restriction (500 to 1,000 calories less than the usual daily intake) results in a smaller loss of water, electrolytes, minerals, and other fat-free tissue and is less likely to cause malnutrition.
- Dynamic exercise of large muscles helps to maintain fat-free tissue, including muscle mass and bone density, and results in losses of body weight. Weight loss resulting from an increase in energy expenditure is primarily in the form of fat weight.
- A nutritionally sound diet resulting in mild caloric restriction coupled with an endurance exercise program, along with behavioral modification of existing eating habits, is recommended for weight reduction. The rate of sustained weight loss should not exceed 1 kilogram (2 pounds) per week.
- To maintain proper weight control and optimal body fat levels, a lifetime commitment to proper eating habits and regular physical activity is required.

result in a negative caloric balance. This method is relatively fast and easy compared with either of the other methods because habits are moderately changed.

In any weight-loss program, the goal should be to lose 1½ to 2 pounds per week. Weight loss of more than 4 to 5 pounds during a week's time may be attributed to dehydration as opposed to a loss of body fat. The American College of Sports Medicine has established specific guidelines for losing weight, which are listed in *Focus Box 5–3*.[27]

Methods of Weight Gain

The aim of a weight-gaining program should be to increase lean body mass, that is, increase muscle as opposed to body fat. Muscle mass should be increased only by muscle work combined with an appropriate increase in dietary intake. It cannot be increased by the intake of any special food or vitamin.[45]

The recommended rate of weight gain is approximately 1 to 2 pounds per week. Adding 500 to 1,000 calories daily to the usual diet will provide the energy needs of gaining 1 to 2 pounds per week and fuel the increased energy expenditure of the weight-training program. Weight training must be part of the program. Otherwise, the excess intake of energy will be converted to fat.

5–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

An ice hockey attackman is at an excellent level of fitness and has superb skating ability and stick work. He is convinced that the only thing keeping him from moving to the next level is his body weight. In recent years, he has engaged more in weight-training activities to improve his endurance and, to a lesser extent, to increase strength.

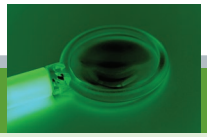
? What recommendations should be made for him to be successful in his weight-gaining efforts?

DISORDERED EATING

There is an epidemic in this society, especially in sports. This problem is the inordinate concern with being overweight. Out of this obsession has emerged the disordered eating conditions that include binge eating, bulimia nervosa, anorexia nervosa, anorexia athletica, and female athlete triad syndrome. Each of these disorders is increasingly seen in athletes.[4] Disordered eating is no longer considered to be an issue that affects only females. There are many males who have unrealistic ideas about their body image that push them to engage in disordered eating. *Focus Box 5–4* provides tips for identifying athletes with disordered eating.

Binge Eating

At some point in time just about everyone overeats, such as at Thanksgiving when you have seconds and even thirds of just about everything on the table. But if this overeating becomes a recurrent problem that a person usually does in secret with strong feelings of guilt or shame about not being able to control these episodes, this behavior may be considered a binge eating disorder. An individual who has binge eating disorder will continue to eat when he or she is not hungry, or will eat so much they are uncomfortable or even nauseated. The person simply cannot stop eating even though the urge to quit is there, and will often eat alone and try to eat very quickly in an attempt to hide their problem. People with a



FOCUS BOX 5–4

Recognizing the individual with disordered eating

Look for these signs:

- Social isolation and withdrawal from friends and family
- A lack of confidence in athletic abilities
- Ritualistic eating behavior (e.g., organizing food on plate)
- An obsession with counting calories
- An obsession with constantly exercising, especially just before a meal
- An obsession with weighing self
- A constant overestimation of body size
- Patterns of leaving the table directly after eating to go into the restroom
- Problems related to eating disorders (e.g., malnutrition, menstrual irregularities, or chronic fatigue)
- Family history of disordered eating

binge eating disorder become depressed and develop anxiety and seem to obsess about losing and/or gaining weight even though their weight may be normal. Binge eating disorders may occur in 1 to 5 percent of the population and are more likely to occur in females (60 percent) than males (40 percent).[25]

To be officially classified as a binge eating disorder, the individual worries about eating a larger amount of food at one time than a normal person would consume within a 2-hour period, often when they are bored or depressed. Binge eating episodes occur at least two times a week for 6 months.[25]

Bulimia Nervosa

The formal definition of bulimia is as follows: recurrent episodes of rapid, uncontrollable ingestion of large amounts of food in a short time, usually followed by purging, by either forced vomiting and/or abuse of laxatives or diuretics. The bulimic individual typically gorges herself with thousands of calories after a period of starvation and then purges herself through induced vomiting and further fasting or through the use of laxatives or diuretics. This secretive binge-eating and purging cycle may go on for years.

The bulimic person is commonly female, ranging in age from adolescence to middle age. One out of every 200 American girls aged 12 to 18 years (1 to 2 percent of the population) will develop patterns of bulimia and/or anorexia nervosa.[24]

Typically, the bulimic athlete is white and belongs to a middle-class or upper-middle-class family. She is perfectionistic, obedient, overcompliant, highly motivated, very successful academically, well liked by her peers, and a good athlete.[24] She most commonly participates in gymnastics, track, and dance. Male wrestlers and gymnasts may also develop bulimia.

Binge-purge patterns of eating can cause stomach rupture, disrupt heart rhythm, and cause liver damage. Stomach acids brought up by vomiting cause tooth decay and chronically inflame the mucous lining of the mouth and throat.[35]

Anorexia Nervosa

Thirty to 50 percent of all individuals diagnosed as having anorexia nervosa also develop some symptoms of bulimia. Anorexia nervosa is characterized by a distorted body image and a major concern about weight gain. As with bulimia, anorexia nervosa affects mostly females. It usually begins in adolescence and can be mild without major consequences or can become life threatening. As many as 15 to 21 percent of those individuals diagnosed as anorexic will ultimately die from this disorder. Despite being extremely thin, the athlete sees herself as too fat. These individuals deny hunger and are hyperactive, engaging in abnormal amounts of exercise such as aerobics or distance running.[3] In general, the anorexic individual is highly secretive. Early intervention is essential. Any athlete with signs of bulimia or anorexia nervosa must be confronted in a kind, sympathetic manner. When detected, individuals with eating disorders must be referred for psychological or psychiatric treatment. Unfortunately, simply referring an anorexic person to a health education clinic for help is not usually effective. The key to treatment of anorexia seems to be getting the patient to realize that a problem exists and that he or she could benefit from outside

5–4 Critical Thinking Exercise

A tennis coach observes that one of her players has lost a significant amount of weight. Also, the athlete's level of play has begun to decrease. The coach becomes seriously concerned when another player tells the coach that she thinks her roommate was purposely throwing up after a team meal on a recent road trip.

? How should this situation be handled?

professional help. The individual must voluntarily accept such help if treatment is to be successful.[3]

Anorexia Athletica

Anorexia athletica is a condition specific to athletes that is characterized by several of the features common to anorexia nervosa, but without the self-starvation practices. Athletes with anorexia athletica may exhibit a variety of signs including disturbance of body image, a weight loss greater than 5 percent of body weight, gastrointestinal complaints, primary amenorrhea (lack of a menstrual period), menstrual dysfunction, absence of medical illness explaining the weight reduction, excessive fear of becoming obese, binging or purging, compulsive eating, and/or restriction of caloric intake.

Female Athlete Triad Syndrome

Female athlete triad syndrome is a potentially fatal problem that involves a combination of disordered eating (either bulimia or anorexia), amenorrhea, and osteoporosis (diminished bone density). New research suggests that an individual may not necessarily have all three conditions, and some differences in the extent of each of these three exists in different individuals.[30] Female athlete triad syndrome occurs primarily in female athletes. The incidence of this syndrome is uncertain; however, some studies have suggested that eating disorders in female athletes may be as high as 62 percent in certain sports, with amenorrhea being common in at least 60 percent. However, the major risk of this syndrome is that the bone lost in osteoporosis may not be regained.[3]

ATHLETIC INJURY MANAGEMENT CHECKLIST

This checklist should be considered to ensure the athlete is consuming a nutritious diet.

- ❑ Generally, does the athlete consume a reasonably well-balanced diet?
- ❑ Is it necessary for the athlete to take a daily vitamin supplement?
- ❑ Does the athlete need to take a mineral supplement because of some dietary deficiency?
- ❑ Is the athlete consuming a sufficient amount of water to stay hydrated?
- ❑ Is the athlete using sports drinks to replace lost fluids and electrolytes?
- ❑ Is the athlete consuming excess caffeine, sugar, or protein in an effort to enhance performance?
- ❑ Does the athlete take herbs or consume other types of health foods?
- ❑ What does the athlete eat for the pre-event meal?
- ❑ Does the athlete appear to be able to balance his or her intake of food with energy expenditure to maintain weight and body composition at an appropriate level?
- ❑ Is there anything the athlete is doing to make you suspect that the athlete may have an eating disorder?

SUMMARY

- The classes of nutrients are carbohydrates, fats, proteins, vitamins, minerals, and water.
- Carbohydrates, fats, and proteins provide the energy required for muscular work and also play a role in the function and maintenance of body tissues.
- Protein supplementation is not necessary.
- Vitamins are substances found in foods, which have no caloric value but are necessary to regulate body processes.
- Antioxidants are nutrients that protect the body against various destructive agents.
- Minerals are also involved in regulation of bodily functions and are used to form important body structures.
- Water is the most essential nutrient and should be used with sports drinks in fluid replacement.
- A nutritious diet consists of eating a variety of foods in the amounts recommended on MyPlate. An athlete whose diet meets those recommendations may not need nutrient supplements.
- Some people need extra iron and calcium.
- The pre-event meal should be (1) higher in carbohydrates, (2) easily digested, (3) eaten 2 to 4 hours before an event, and (4) acceptable to the athlete.
- Glycogen supercompensation involves maximizing the stores of carbohydrate in muscle and liver before a competitive event.
- Body composition analysis indicates the percentage of total body weight composed of fat tissue versus the percentage composed of lean tissue.
- Changes in body weight are caused almost entirely by a change in caloric balance, which is a function of the number of calories taken in and the number of calories expended.
- Weight can be lost by increasing caloric expenditure through exercise, by decreasing caloric intake through reducing food intake, or, most effectively, by using a combination of moderate caloric restriction and a moderate increase in physical exercise during the course of each day.

- Bulimia is an eating disorder that involves periodic binging and subsequent purging.
- Anorexia nervosa is a form of mental illness in which a person reduces food intake and increases energy expenditure to the extent that the loss of body fat threatens health and life.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

5-1 In terms of weight control, the important consideration is the total number of calories that this athlete consumes relative to the total number of calories she expends. It makes no difference whether the calories consumed are CHO, fat, or protein. Because fat contains more than twice the number of calories as either CHO or protein, this athlete can eat significantly more food and still have about the same caloric intake if the diet is high in CHO. The necessity of consuming at least some fat in the diet, which is necessary for the production of certain enzymes and hormones, should also be stressed.

5-2 If this athlete is truly consuming anything close to a well-balanced diet, vitamin supplementation is generally not necessary. However, if taking a one-a-day vitamin supplement makes her feel better, no harm is done. The fact that she feels tired could be related to a number of medical conditions (e.g., mononucleosis). Iron-deficiency anemia may be detected through a laboratory blood test. The athlete should be referred to a physician for blood work.

5-3 This athlete must understand the importance of adding lean tissue muscle mass rather than increasing his percent body fat. It is true that caloric intake must be increased so that he is in a positive caloric balance of about 500 calories per day. Additional caloric intake should consist primarily of CHO. Additional supplementation with protein is not necessary. It is absolutely essential that this athlete incorporate a weight-training program using heavy weights that will overload the muscle, forcing it to hypertrophy over time.

5-4 Treating eating disorders is difficult even for health care professionals specifically trained to counsel these individuals. The athlete should be approached by a support person who shows concern about her weight loss and expresses a desire to help her secure appropriate counseling; this person should not be accusatory. Remember that the athlete must first be willing to admit that she has an eating disorder before treatment and counseling will be effective. Eliciting the support of close friends and family can help with treatment.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. What is the value of good nutrition in terms of an athlete's performance and injury prevention?
2. Ask coaches of different sports about the type of diet they recommend for their athletes and their rationale for doing so.
3. Have a nutritionist talk to the class about food myths and fallacies.
4. Have each member of the class prepare a week's food diary; then compare it with other class members' diaries.
5. What are the daily dietary requirements according to MyPlate? Should the requirements of the typical athlete's diet differ from those on MyPlate? If so, in what ways?
6. Have the class debate the value of vitamin and mineral supplements.
7. Describe the advantages and disadvantages of supplementing iron and calcium.
8. Is there some advantage to pre-event nutrition?
9. Are there advantages and/or disadvantages in the vegetarian diet for the athlete?
10. Discuss the importance of having an athlete monitor body composition.
11. Explain the most effective technique for losing weight.
12. Contrast the signs and symptoms of bulimia and anorexia nervosa. If a coach is aware of an athlete who may have an eating disorder, what should he or she do?

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. American College of Sports Medicine. 2007. Position stand on exercise and fluid replacement. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise* 39(2):377–390.
2. Balch, P. 2010. *Prescription for nutritional healing: A practical A-to-Z reference to drug-free remedies using vitamins, minerals, herbs and food supplements*. New York, NY: Penguin Group.
3. Beals, K. 2004. *Disordered eating among athletes: A comprehensive guide for health professionals*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
4. Bonci, C., et al. 2008. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Preventing, detecting, and managing disordered eating in athletes. *Journal of Athletic Training* 43(1):80–108.
5. Brownell, K. 2014. *Food and addiction: A comprehensive handbook*. New York, NY: Oxford University Press.
6. Brukner, P., & Khan, K. 2016. Maximizing performance: Nutrition. In P. Brukner (ed.), *Bruckner & Kahn's clinical sports medicine*, 5th ed. Sydney: McGraw-Hill.
7. Buell, J., et al. 2013. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Evaluation of dietary supplements for performance nutrition. *Journal of Athletic Training* 48(1):124–136.
8. Burke, L. (ed.). 2015. *Clinical sports nutrition*, 5th ed. Sydney: McGraw-Hill.
9. Campbell, B. 2012. Pre-exercise carbohydrate supplementation does not suppress rate of fatigue during resistance exercise in trained females. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise* 44:596.
10. Casa, D., & Armstrong, L. 2000. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Fluid replacement for athletes. *Journal of Athletic Training* 35(2):212.
11. Clark, N. 2013. *Nancy Clark's sports nutrition guidebook*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
12. Coleman, E. 2012. Protein requirements for athletes. *Clinical Nutrition Insight* 38(9):1–3.
13. Coleman, E. 2001. Nutrition update: Position stand on nutrition and athletic performance. *Sports Medicine Digest* 23(5):54–55.
14. Daniels, D. 2018. *Exercises for osteoporosis: A safe and effective way to build bone density and muscle strength and improve posture and flexibility*. New York, NY: Hatherleigh Press.
15. Dasgupta, A. 2016. *Antioxidants in food, vitamins and supplements: Prevention and treatment of disease*. New York, NY: Elsevier.
16. Food and Drug Administration. 2016. *Changes to the Nutrition Facts label*. U.S Department of Health and Human Services. http://www.fda.gov/Food/GuidanceRegulation/GuidanceDocumentsRegulatoryInformation/LabelingNutrition/ucm385663.htm.
17. Hawley, J. 2011. Nutritional modulation of training-induced skeletal muscle adaptations. *Journal of Applied Physiology* 110(3):834–845.
18. Herriot, A., & Thomas, D. 2008. A qualitative investigation of individuals' experiences and expectations before and after completing a trial of commercial weight loss programs. *Journal of Human Nutrition & Dietetics* 21(1):72.
19. Hoyte, C. 2013. The use of energy drinks, dietary supplements, and prescription medications by United States college students to enhance athletic performance. *Journal of Community Health* 38(3):575–580.
20. Is organic food really more nutritious? 2007. *Tufts University Health & Nutrition* 25(7):8.

21. Jeukendrup, A. 2010. *Sport nutrition: An introduction to energy production and performance*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
22. Kleiner, S., & Greenwood-Robinson, M. 2013. Performance herbs. In S. M. Kleiner (ed.), *Power eating*, 2nd ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
23. Lopez, R. 2012. Exercise and hydration: Individualizing fluid replacement guidelines. *Strength and Conditioning Journal* 34(4):49–54.
24. Martinsen, M. 2014. Preventing eating disorders among young elite athletes: A randomized controlled trial. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise* 46(3):435–447.
25. Mason, T. 2014. Profiles of binge eating: The interaction of depressive symptoms, eating styles, and body mass index. *Eating Disorders* 22(5):450–460.
26. Maughn, R. 2011. Dietary supplements for athletes: Emerging trends and recurring themes, *Journal of Sport Sciences* 29(1):56–57.
27. McArdle, W., & Katch, F. 2014. *Sports and exercise nutrition*. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.
28. Meyer, N. 2012. Fueling for fitness: Food and fluid recommendations for before, during, and after exercise. *ACSM'S Health & Fitness Journal* 16(3):7–12.
29. Mueller, K., & Hingst, J. 2013. *The athlete's guide to sports supplements*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
30. Nattiv, A., & Loucks, A. 2007. American College of Sports Medicine position stand: The female athlete triad. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise* 39(10):1867–1882.
31. Peternelj, T. 2011. Antioxidant supplementation during exercise training: Beneficial or detrimental? *Sports Medicine* 41(12):1043–1069.
32. Salinero, J., & Lara, B. 2014 The use of energy drinks in sport: Perceived ergogenicity and side effects in male and female athletes. *British Journal of nutrition* 112(9):1494–1502.
33. Sandstrom, G. 2012. Iron deficiency in adolescent female athletes—Is iron status affected by regular sporting activity? *Clinical Journal of Sports Medicine* 36(1):37–44.
34. Schlosser, E. 2012. *Fast food nation: The dark side of the all-American meal*. New York, NY: Harper Perennial.
35. Schulherr, S. 2011. *Eating disorders for dummies*. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley.
36. See, J., & Kaukinen, K. 2015. Practical insights into gluten-free diets. *Nature Reviews Gastroenterology & Hepatology* 12:580–591.
37. Sharkey, B. 2013. Nutrition and health. In B. Sharkey (ed.), *Fitness and health*, 6th ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
38. Skidmore-Roth, L. 2009. *Mosby's handbook of herbs and natural supplements*. New York, NY: Mosby.
39. Smith-Ryan, A., & Jose, A. 2013. *Sports nutrition and performance enhancing supplements*. Ronkonkoma, NY: Linus Learning.
40. Smith-Ryan, A., & Ryan, E. 2014. The effect of creatine loading on neuromuscular fatigue in women. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise* 46(5):990–997.
41. Smith-Spangler, C., & Brandeau, M. 2012. Are organic foods safer or healthier than conventional alternatives?: A systematic review. *Annals of Internal Medicine*. 157(5):348–366.
42. Turocy, P., et al. 2011. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Safe weight loss and maintenance practices in sport and exercise. *Journal of Athletic Training* 46(3):322–336.
43. U.S. Department of Agriculture. 2015. *Dietary guidelines for Americans 2015–2020*, 8th ed. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office.
44. Wardlaw, G., & Smith, A. 2015. *Contemporary nutrition*. Boston, MA: McGraw-Hill.
45. Williams, M. 2016. *Nutrition for health, fitness, and sport*. St. Louis, MO: McGraw-Hill.
46. Zuniga, J. 2012. The effects of creatine monohydrate loading on anaerobic performance and one-repetition maximum strength. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research* 26(6):1651–1656.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Bernadot, D. 2011. *Advanced sports nutrition*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

This text presents cutting-edge nutritional concepts tailored for application by athletes in any sport.

Clark N. 2013. *Nancy Clark's sports nutrition guidebook*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Complete guide to eating for the vigorous person. Provides the basics of sports nutrition and includes over 100 fast recipes for meals that enhance physical performance.

Fink, H., Burgoon, L., & Mikesky, A. 2017. *Practical applications in sports nutrition*. Sudbury, MA: Jones and Bartlett.

Provides an introduction to sports nutrition including general nutrition concepts and a thorough explanation of athletic performance and consultation skills.

Smith-Ryan, A., & Jose, A. 2013. *Sports nutrition and performance enhancing supplements*. Ronkonkoma, NY: Linus Learning.

A focused resource that provides the latest sports nutrition science, and refutes many positions held so dearly by the anti-supplement crowd.

Wardlaw, G. 2015. *Contemporary nutrition*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

This text presents cutting-edge nutritional concepts tailored for application by athletes in any sport.

Williams M. 2016. *Nutrition for health fitness and sport*. Boston, MA: McGraw-Hill.

Provides the reader with thorough coverage of the role nutrition plays in enhancing health, fitness, and sport performance. Current research and practical activities are incorporated throughout.

WEBSITES

American Dietetic Association: www.eatright.org
This site educates individuals about how making informed food choices can help them decrease the risk of heart disease, breast cancer, osteoporosis, diabetes, and obesity; it advocates nutrition research.

Gatorade Sports Science Institute: www.gssiweb.com
This website provides information for coaches, athletic trainers, physicians, nutritionists, and others in the field of sports medicine, sports nutrition, and exercise science.

MyFitnessPal-FoodTracker: www.myfitnesspal.com/food/calorie-chart-nutrition-facts
Provides a large nutritional database and easy calorie counter.

MyPlate: www.choosemyplate.gov
Government website designed to help consumers adopt healthy eating habits consistent with the 2010 Dietary Guidelines.

National Eating Disorders Association: www.nationaleatingdisorders.org
Get answers to any questions about eating disorders and their prevention. If you have an eating disorder (or know someone who has), NEDA has information that may help.

SuperTracker: www.supertracker.usda.gov/default.aspx
From the U.S. Department of Agriculture, get your personalized nutrition and physical activity plan, track your foods and physical activities to see how they stack up, and get tips and support to help you make healthier choices and plan ahead.

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

©William E. Prentice

6

Selecting and Using Protective Sports Equipment

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Discuss legal concerns related to the use of protective equipment.
- Identify the different types of protective equipment available for various parts of the body.
- Describe the proper technique for fitting a football helmet and shoulder pads.
- Discuss what consideration should be given to shoe selection.
- Discuss the efficacy of knee and ankle braces in reducing injuries.

Because of the nature of sports activity, injuries often occur. A number of factors, either singly or collectively, can contribute to the incidence of injury. Certainly the selection, fitting, and maintenance of protective equipment are critical in injury prevention.[39] Thus, it is essential to have some knowledge about the types of protective equipment available for a particular sport and how that equipment should best be fitted and maintained to reduce the possibility of athletic injury.[38]

This protection is particularly important in direct contact and collision sports such as football, hockey, and lacrosse, but it can also be important in indirect contact sports such as basketball and soccer. Selecting and purchasing protective sports equipment makes a major commitment to safeguard athletes' health and welfare.[12]

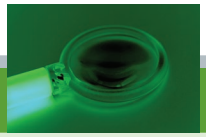
SAFETY STANDARDS FOR SPORTS EQUIPMENT AND FACILITIES

There is serious concern about the standards for protective sports equipment, particularly material durability standards—concerns that include who should set these standards, mass production of equipment, equipment testing methods, and requirements for wearing protective equipment.[9]

Standards are also needed for protective equipment maintenance, both to keep it in good repair and to determine when to throw it away. Too often, particularly at the secondary and middle school levels, old, worn-out, and ill-fitting equipment is passed down from the varsity players to the younger and often less-experienced players, compounding their risk of injury.[33] Those purchasing equipment must learn to be less concerned with the color, look, and style of a piece of equipment and more concerned with its ability to prevent injury.[33] Given the current overwhelming public concern for concussion injuries related to sport, this is particularly important for football helmets. Many national organizations are addressing these issues. Engineering, chemistry, biomechanics, anatomy, physiology, physics, computer science, and other related disciplines are being utilized to solve problems inherent in safety standardization of sports equipment and facilities. *Focus Box 6–1* lists regulatory agencies.

Old, worn-out, improperly fitted equipment should never be passed down to younger, less-experienced players; it compounds their risk of injury.

Equipment Reconditioning and Recertification The National Operating Committee on Standards



FOCUS BOX 6–1

Equipment regulatory agencies

American Society for Testing Materials
100 Barr Harbor Drive
PO Box C700
West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959
(877) 909-2786
www.astm.org

Athletic Equipment Manufacturers Association
c/o Sam Trusner
207 E. Bodman
Bement, IL 61813
(217) 678-1004
www.equipmentmanagers.org

Canadian Standards Association
178 Rexdale Boulevard
Toronto, ON
Canada M9W 1R3
(416) 747-4000
www.csagroup.org

Hockey Equipment Certification Counsel
PO Box 4871134
U.S. Route 9, Suite 4
Schroon Lake, NY 12870
(518) 532-7459
www.hecc.net

National Athletic Trainers Association
1620 Valwood Parkway
Carrollton, TX 75006
(214) 637-6282
www.nata.org

National Collegiate Athletic Association
700 W. Washington Street
Indianapolis, IN 46206-6222
(317) 917-6222
www.ncaa.org

National Association of Intercollegiate Athletics
1200 Grand Boulevard
Kansas City, MO 64106
(816) 595-8000
www.naia.org

National Federation of State High School Athletic Associations
690 W. Washington Street
Indianapolis, IN 46204
(317) 972-6900
www.nfhs.org

National Operating Committee on Standards for Athletic Equipment
11020 King Street, Suite 215
Overland Park, KS 66210
(913) 888-1340
www.nocsae.org

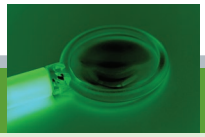
Sporting Goods Manufacturers Association
8505 Fenton Street, Suite 211
Silver Spring, MD 20910
(301) 495-6321
www.sgma.com

U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission
4330 East-West Highway
Bethesda, MD 20814
(301) 504-7923
www.cpsc.gov

for Athletic Equipment (NOCSAE) has established voluntary test standards that have been developed to reduce head injuries by identifying minimum safety requirements for football helmets/face masks, baseball/softball batting helmets, baseballs and softballs, and lacrosse helmets/face masks.[30] These standards have been adopted by various regulatory bodies for sports, including the NCAA and the National Federation of State High School Associations. Factors such as the type of helmet and the amount and intensity of usage will determine the condition of each helmet over a period of time. **The NOCSAE helmet standard is not a warranty,** but simply a statement that a particular helmet model met the requirements of performance tests when it was manufactured or reconditioned. **NOCSAE does recommend that the consumer adhere to a program of periodically having used helmets reconditioned and recertified.** Because of the difference in the amount and intensity of usage on each helmet, the consumer should use discretion regarding the frequency with which certain helmets are to be reconditioned and recertified. Helmets that regularly undergo the reconditioning and recertification process can meet standard performance requirements for many seasons, depending on the model and usage.[9] Keeping equipment (such as helmets and pads) as well as clothing clean can help the equipment last longer. In addition, various skin conditions and infections can occur unnecessarily if equipment and clothing are not kept clean (see Chapter 23). *Focus Box 6–2* provides guidelines for purchasing and reconditioning helmets.

LEGAL CONCERNS IN USING PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT

As with other aspects of sports participation, there is increasing litigation related to the use of protective equipment. Both manufacturers and those who



FOCUS BOX 6–2

Guidelines for purchasing and reconditioning helmets

- Purchase only NOCSAE-approved helmets.
- Purchase helmets for appropriate skill level (example: Do not purchase youth helmets for high school football).
- Assign a code number to each helmet purchased, and record the date of purchase for each helmet.
- Fit helmets according to manufacturer's recommendations.
- Recheck helmets for proper fit during the season.
- Review written warranty information and comply with manufacturer's requirement(s) for cleaning/reconditioning/recertification.
- Replace or repair broken or damaged helmets before returning to service.
- Develop a written accounting of player use, inspections, reconditioning, recertification, and disposal of each helmet.
- Clean helmets and all other equipment according to manufacturer's recommendations on a regular schedule during the season and at the end of the season prior to off-season storage, to avoid infections.
- Recertify/recondition each football helmet according to manufacturer's warranty.
- Recertify/recondition helmets every 2 years, using a certified NOCSAE-approved vendor if no warranty exists or after the warranty expires.

purchase sports equipment must foresee all possible uses and misuses of the equipment and must warn the user of any potential risks inherent in using or misusing that equipment.

If an injury occurs as the result of an athlete using a piece of equipment and if that piece of equipment is determined to be defective or inadequate for its intended purpose, the manufacturer is considered liable. If a piece of protective equipment is modified in any way, either by the athlete or by any other individual (e.g., removing some pads from inside a football helmet), the liability on the part of the manufacturer is voided, and thus the individual who modified the equipment becomes liable.

If a piece of equipment is modified and an athlete wearing that equipment is injured, it is likely that any lawsuit would involve both the individual who modified the piece of equipment individually and the employing institution. This becomes a case of tort (described in Chapter 3), in which the injured athlete must show that an individual was negligent in his or her decision to alter a piece of equipment and that the negligence resulted in injury. That person would then be legally liable for that action.

USING OFF-THE-SHELF VERSUS CUSTOM PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT

Protective equipment can be purchased from a variety of manufacturers and suppliers, including athletic equipment manufacturers and medical equipment suppliers. "Off-the-shelf" equipment is premade and packaged by the manufacturer and when taken out of the package may be used immediately without modification. Examples of off-the-shelf equipment are neoprene sleeves, sorbothane shoe inserts, and protective ankle braces. Customized equipment is constructed according to the individual characteristics of the athlete. Using off-the-shelf items may cause problems with sizing and exact fit. In contrast, a custom-made piece of equipment can be specifically sized and made to fit the protective and support needs of the individual. Custom equipment may take longer to get and is usually more expensive than off-the-shelf equipment.

6–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

Junior varsity high school football players are issued their equipment. These athletes and their parents know very little about the equipment's potential for preventing injury.

? What is the responsibility of the institution in educating the team and their parents about equipment safety limits?

HEAD PROTECTION

Direct-collision sports such as football and hockey require special protective equipment, especially for the head. There is little doubt that the high incidence and the potential short- and long-term effects of concussions in contact sports have become a major issue for anyone responsible for preventing or treating an athlete who sustains a mild traumatic brain injury.[27] Football involves more body contact than does hockey, but hockey players generally move faster and therefore create greater impact forces. Besides direct head contact

stemming from hitting the boards, hockey has the added injury elements of swinging sticks and fast-moving pucks. Other sports using fast-moving projectiles are baseball, with its pitched ball and swinging bat, and track and field, with the javelin, discus, and heavy shot, which can also produce serious head injuries.

Football Helmets

The National Operating Committee on Standards for Athletic Equipment (NOCSAE) has developed standards for football helmet certification.[30] An approved helmet must protect against concussive forces that may injure the brain.

Schools must provide the athlete with quality equipment, especially the football helmet. **All helmets must have an NOCSAE certification.** The fact that a helmet is certified does not mean that it is completely fail-safe. A helmet cannot always prevent concussions from occurring in football, but the evidence shows that it can reduce the incidence of this injury.[27,31] But it must be added that there are many factors other than the type of protective equipment worn that can affect the risk of concussions.[23] Athletes and their parents must be apprised of the dangers that are inherent in any sport, particularly football. To make this point especially clear, NOCSAE has adopted the following recommended warning to be placed on all football helmets:

Football helmets must withstand repeated blows that are of high mass and low velocity.

WARNING: NO HELMET CAN PREVENT ALL HEAD OR ANY NECK INJURIES A PLAYER MIGHT RECEIVE WHILE PARTICIPATING IN FOOTBALL. HELMETS CANNOT PREVENT CONCUSSION/BRAIN INJURY. SEEK MEDICAL ADVICE BEFORE RETURNING TO PLAY IF YOU SUSPECT ANY INJURY. DO NOT USE THIS HELMET TO BUTT, RAM, OR SPEAR AN OPPOSING PLAYER. THIS IS IN VIOLATION OF THE FOOTBALL RULES AND SUCH USE CAN RESULT IN SEVERE HEAD OR NECK INJURIES, PARALYSIS, OR DEATH TO YOU AND POSSIBLE INJURY TO YOUR OPPONENT.

Each player's helmet must have a visible exterior warning label ensuring that players have been made aware of the risks involved in the game of American football. The label must be attached to each helmet by both the manufacturer and the reconditioner.[30]

Each player must read this warning, after which it is read aloud by the coach or equipment manager. The athlete then signs a statement agreeing that he or she understands this warning.

6–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

The potential risks involved in wearing a football helmet must be explained to the football players.

? What are the most critical points to stress?

A variety of football helmets are available, although only a few companies manufacture helmets (Figure 6–1).

Football helmets generally use air-filled pockets to absorb the forces of impact (Figure 6–1A and B). The latest in helmet technology attempts to minimize the impact forces transmitted to the athlete's head by having a shell that flexes at specific points. The Riddell SpeedFlex also incorporates a system of five accelerometers (sensors) that measure forces and the direction of an impact to the helmet and transmits that information to a computer that warns an athletic trainer or coach whenever an athlete sustains a significant impact to the head.

When fitting helmets, closely follow the manufacturer's directions for a proper fit (*see Focus Box 6–3*).[35]

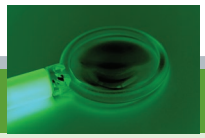
The football helmet must be routinely checked for proper fit, especially in the first few days that it is worn (Figure 6–2). If air bladder helmets are used by a team that travels to a different altitude and air pressure, the helmet fit must be routinely rechecked.

Even high-quality helmets are of no use if not properly fitted or maintained.

Chin straps are also important in maintaining the proper

A B

FIGURE 6–1 Examples of air-filled helmets. **(A)** Riddell Revolution. **(B)** Riddell Speed Flex. Courtesy of Riddell



FOCUS BOX 6–3

Proper football helmet fit

After measuring the circumference of the head 1 inch above the eyebrow and selecting the appropriate helmet size:

- First, the air-bladder should be inflated.
- The helmet should fit snugly around all parts of the player's head (front, sides, and crown).
- There should be no gaps between the cheek pads and the head or face (Figure 6–2A).
- The helmet should cover the base of the skull. The pads placed at the back of the neck should be snug, but not to the extent of discomfort (Figure 6–2B).
- The helmet should not come down over the eyes. It should sit (front edge) ¾ of an inch, or about two finger-widths, above the player's eyebrows (Figure 6–2C).
- The ear holes should be aligned with the external opening in the ear canal (Figure 6–2D).
- The face mask should be attached securely to the helmet, allowing a complete field of vision, and should be positioned three finger-widths from the chin (Figure 6–2E).
- The face mask should not rotate when manual pressure is applied (Figure 6–2F).
- It should not shift front to back when manual pressure is applied (Figure 6–2G).
- It should not bottom out on impact (Figure 6–2H).
- The chin strap should be an equal distance from the center of the helmet (Figure 6–2I).
- Straps must keep the helmet from moving up and down or side to side.

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

FIGURE 6–2 **Properly fitting a football helmet. (A)** Check snugness of cheek pads. **(B)** Helmet should cover base of skull. **(C)** Two finger-widths above eyebrows. **(D)** Ear holes line up. **(E)** Three finger-widths from face mask. **(F), (G), and (H)** Helmet should not shift on head. **(I)** Check chin straps. ©William E. Prentice

head and helmet relationship. Two basic types of chin straps are in use today—a two-snap and a four-snap strap. Many players prefer the four-snap chin strap because it keeps the helmet from tilting forward and backward.

Jaw pads are also essential to keep the helmet from rocking laterally. They should rest snugly against the player's cheekbones. Even if a helmet's ability to withstand the forces of the game is certified, it is of no avail if the helmet is not properly fitted or maintained. The face mask should be attached to the helmet with fasteners that allow for easy removal should there be an injury that requires CPR or spinal injury. Face mask removal will be discussed in detail in Chapter 8.

Ice Hockey Helmets

As with football helmets, there has been a concerted effort to upgrade and standardize ice hockey helmets (Figure 6–3).[12] In contrast to football, blows to the head in ice hockey are usually singular rather than multiple. An ice hockey helmet must withstand both high-velocity impacts (e.g., being hit with a stick or a puck, which produces a force that has low mass and high velocity) and the high mass–low velocity forces produced by running into the boards or falling on the ice. In each instance, the hockey helmet, like the football helmet, must be able to spread the impact over a large surface area through a firm exterior shell and at the same time be able to decelerate forces that act on the head through a proper energy-absorbing liner. All hockey players must wear protective helmets that carry the stamp of approval from the Canadian Standards Association (CSA).

Baseball/Softball Batting Helmets

Like ice hockey helmets, the baseball/softball helmet must withstand high-velocity impacts. Unlike football and ice hockey, baseball and softball have not produced a great deal of data on batting helmets.[12] It has been suggested, however, that baseball/softball helmets do not adequately dissipate the energy of the ball during impact (Figure 6–4). A possible answer is to add external padding or to improve the helmet's suspension. The use of a helmet with an ear flap can afford some additional protection to the batter. Each on-deck batter and runner is required to wear a baseball/softball head protector that carries a NOCSAE stamp similar to that on football helmets. From youth league through high school, catchers must wear a one-piece mask and helmet (Figure 6–4B).

FIGURE 6–3 **Ice hockey helmets.** (left) Source: Reakt 200/Bauer; (right) Source: Profile 940X/Bauer

FIGURE 6–4 **There is some question about how well baseball batting helmets protect against high-velocity impacts. (A) Batter's helmet. (B) Catcher's helmet and mask. (C) Batter's helmet with face mask and face shield.** (a) Source: S7™ Batting Helmet/All-Star; (b) Source: S7™ Catching Helmet/All-Star; (c) Source: Coolflo RCFHFG-B/Rawlings Sporting Goods

Cycling Helmets

Unlike other helmets discussed, cycling helmets are designed to protect the head during one single impact. Football, hockey, and baseball helmets are more durable and can survive repeated impact. Many states require the use of cycling helmets, especially for adolescents (Figure 6–5).

Lacrosse Helmets

Helmets are required equipment for all male lacrosse players. Women's lacrosse requires only a protective eyeguard. Lacrosse helmets are made of a hard plastic with a wire mesh cage, or face mask, to protect the front of the face (Figure 6–6). The face mask must have a center bar running from the top to the bottom. The helmet is designed to absorb

FIGURE 6–5 **Cycling helmet.** Courtesy of Rudy Project North America

FIGURE 6–6 **(A) Men's lacrosse helmet. (B) Inside padding. (C) Goalie's helmet throat protector.** (a) Source: S Helmet/Cascade; (b) Source: R Helmet/Cascade; (c) Source: TPC2/Cascade

repeated impact from a hard, high-velocity projectile. Helmets come in a variety of sizes and are usually measured in inches. Lacrosse helmets use a four-point buckling system both to ensure that they stay on and to allow for a better fit. Goalie helmets add a throat protector.

FACE PROTECTION

Devices that provide face protection fall into four categories: full face guards, mouth guards, ear guards, and eye protection devices.

Face Guards

Face guards are used in a variety of sports to protect the face from carried or flying objects during a collision with another player (Figure 6–7).[10] Since the adoption of face guards and mouth guards for use in football, mouth injuries have been reduced more than 50 percent (Figure 6–8A). The catcher in baseball, hockey players, lacrosse players, and football players should all be adequately protected against facial injuries, particularly lacerations and fractures (Figure 6–8B, C, and D).[8]

In sports, the face may be protected by:

- Face guards
- Mouth guards
- Ear guards
- Eye protection devices

FIGURE 6–7 **Sports such as fencing require complete face protection.** ©William E. Prentice

FIGURE 6–8 **(A) Football face mask. (B) Baseball catcher's face mask. (C) Ice hockey face mask. (D) Lacrosse face mask.** (a) Source: Speedflex/Riddell; (b) Source: Lightweight Hollow Wire LWMX2-R/Rawlings Sporting Goods; (c) Source: Prodigy/Bauer; (d) Source: CPX-R/Cascade

A variety of face masks and bars are available to the player, depending on the position played and the protection needed. In football, no face protection should have fewer than two bars. Proper mounting of the face mask and bars is imperative for maximum safety. All mountings should be made in such a way that the bar attachments are flush with the helmet. A 3-inch (7.62 cm) space should exist between the top of the face guard and the lower edge of the helmet. No helmet should be drilled more than one time on each side, and this drilling must be done by a factory-authorized reconditioner. Attachment of a bar or face mask not specifically designed for the helmet can invalidate the manufacturer's warranty.

Ice hockey face masks have been shown to reduce the incidence of facial injuries.[10] In high school, face masks are required for all players, not just the goalkeeper. Helmets should be equipped with commercial plastic-coated wire-mesh guards that must meet standards set by the Hockey Equipment Certification Council (HECC) and the American Society for Testing Materials (ASTM) (Figure 6–8C). The openings in the guard must be small enough to prevent a hockey stick from penetrating. Plastic guards such as polycarbonate face shields have been approved by the HECC/ASTM and by the CSA Committee on Hockey Protective Equipment. In addition to face protectors, goalkeepers should wear commercial throat protectors.

Laryngotracheal (Throat) Protection

A laryngotracheal injury, though relatively uncommon, can be fatal. Baseball catchers, lacrosse goalies, and ice hockey goalies are most at risk. Throat protection should be mandatory for these position players (Figure 6–9).

FIGURE 6–9 **A throat protector can be attached to the face mask. on a (A) catcher's helmet or (B) lacrosse helmet.** (left) Source: Mizuno; (right) Source: S/CPX-R/TPC2/Cascade

Mouth Guards

Dental traumas can be minimized if the athlete wears a customized intraoral mouth guard (Figure 6–10).[13] Consistent evidence to support the use of mouth guards for reducing or minimizing concussion is not available.[8,19] However, substantial evidence demonstrates that a properly fitted mouth guard helps to reduce dental injuries.[13]

The mouth guard should provide a tight fit, comfort, unrestricted breathing, and unimpeded speech during competition.[13] The athlete's air passages should not be obstructed in any way by the mouthpiece. It is best when the mouthpiece is retained on the upper jaw and projects backward only as far as the last molar, thus permitting speech.

Cutting down mouth guards to cover only the front four teeth should never be condoned. It invalidates the manufacturer's warranty against dental injuries, and a cut-down mouth guard can easily become dislodged and lead to an obstructed airway, which poses a serious life-threatening situation for the athlete. Maximum protection is afforded when the mouth guard is composed of a flexible, resilient material and is form fitted to the teeth and upper jaw.[8]

A properly fitted mouth guard protects the teeth, absorbs blows to the chin, and minimizes fractures to the lower jaw.

Three types of mouth guards generally used in sports include the ready-made stock variety, a commercial mouth guard formed after submersion in boiling water, and the custom-fabricated type, which is formed over a mold made from an impression of the athlete's maxillary arch.

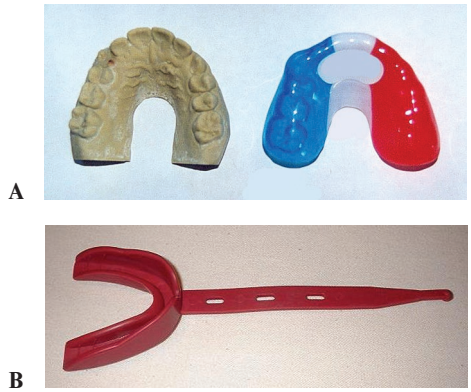


FIGURE 6–10 **(A) Customized and (B) moldable mouth protectors.** ©William E. Prentice

Many high schools and colleges now require that mouth guards be worn at all times (particularly in football) during competition and be visible to the officials.

Mouth guards tend to wear down during the course of a season. Coaches should routinely inspect each athlete's mouth guard to determine whether replacement is necessary.

Ear Guards

With the exception of boxing and wrestling, most contact sports do not make a special practice of protecting the ears. Both boxing and wrestling can cause irritation of the ears to the point that permanent deformity can result (see Figure 22–13). To avoid this problem, special ear guards should be routinely worn. A very effective ear protector has been developed for the water polo player (Figure 6–11).

Eye Protection Devices

Glasses For the athlete who must wear corrective lenses, glasses can be both a blessing and a nuisance. They may slip on sweat, get bent when hit, fog from perspiration, detract from peripheral vision, and be difficult to wear with protective headgear. Even with all these disadvantages, properly fitted and designed glasses can provide adequate protection and withstand the rigors of the sport. Athletes should wear polycarbonate lenses, which are virtually unbreakable. These are the newest type of lenses available, and they are certainly the safest. If the athlete has glass lenses, they must be case-hardened to prevent them from splintering on impact. When a case-hardened lens breaks, it crumbles, eliminating the sharp edges that may penetrate the eye. The cost of this process is relatively low. The only disadvantages are that the glasses are heavier than average and they may be scratched more easily than regular glasses.[12]

FIGURE 6–11 **Wrestling headgear is worn primarily for the purpose of protecting the ears.** Courtesy of Cliff Keen Athletic

Photochromic lenses can also offer a possible sports advantage. These glass lenses become color tinted when exposed to ultraviolet rays from the sun and then return to a clear state when removed from the sun's rays. Plastic lenses for glasses are popular with athletes. They are much lighter in weight than glass lenses and they can be made scratch resistant with a special coating.

Contact Lenses The athlete who is able to wear contact lenses without discomfort can avoid many of the inconveniences of glasses. The greatest advantage to contact lenses is that they "become a part of the eye" and move with it.

Contact lenses come mainly in two types: the corneal type, a hard plastic lens that covers just the iris of the eye, and the scleral type, a soft plastic lens that is a little larger. Peripheral vision, astigmatism, and corneal waviness are improved through the use of contact lenses. Unlike regular glasses, contact lenses do not normally cloud during temperature changes. They also can be tinted to reduce glare. For example, yellow lenses can be used against ice glare and blue ones against glare from snow. Generally, athletes prefer the soft lenses to the hard type. The soft lenses require a shorter adjustment time than the hard lenses do, can be more easily replaced, and are more adaptable to the sports environment. Athletes who wear contact lenses should have an extra pair available, if needed, along with a small mirror and saline solution.

Eye and Glasses Guards It is essential that athletes take special precautions to protect their eyes, especially in sports that use fast-moving projectiles and implements (Figure 6–12).[16] Besides the more obvious sports of ice hockey, lacrosse, and baseball, the racquet sports also cause serious eye injury. Athletes not wearing glasses should wear closed eye guards to protect the orbital cavity. Athletes who normally wear glasses with plastic or case-hardened lenses are to some degree already protected against eye injury from an implement or projectile; however, greater safety is afforded if the athlete wears a polycarbonate frame that surrounds and fits over the athlete's glasses. The protection that the guard offers is excellent, but it does hinder vision in some planes.[16]

Polycarbonate eye shields can be attached to football face masks, hockey helmets, and baseball/softball helmets (Figure 6–12C).

Eye protection must be worn by all athletes who play sports that use fast-moving projectiles.

FIGURE 6–12 **(A and B) Athletes playing sports that involve small, fast projectiles should wear closed eye guards. (C) Polycarbonate shield for a football helmet. (D) Shield for an ice hockey face mask. (E) Lacrosse/field hockey goggle. (F) Lacrosse goggle.** (a) Source: Quantum/Ektelon; (b) Source: More Game Air/Ektelon; (c) Source: Football Shield/Oakley; (d) Source: Hybrid Shield/Bauer; (e) Source: Bangerz Elite/Harrow Sports; (f) Source: 4Sight Focus/STX

TRUNK AND THORAX PROTECTION

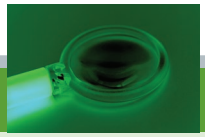
Trunk and thorax protection is essential in many contact and collision sports. Sports such as football, ice hockey, baseball, and lacrosse use extensive body protection. Areas that are most exposed to impact forces must be properly covered with some material that offers protection against soft-tissue compression. Of particular concern are the external genitalia and the exposed bony protuberances of the body that have insufficient soft tissue for protection, such as shoulders, ribs, and spine (Figure 6–13).

As discussed earlier, the problem that arises in wearing protective equipment is that, although it is armor against injury to the athlete wearing it, it can also serve as a weapon against all opponents. Standards must become more stringent in determining what equipment is absolutely necessary for body protection and at the same time is not itself a source of trauma. Proper fit and proper maintenance of equipment are essential.

Football Shoulder Pads

There are two general types of football shoulder pads, flat and cantilevered.[34] The player who uses the shoulder a great deal in blocking and tackling requires the bulkier cantilevered type, whereas the quarterback and ball receiver use the flat (non-cantilevered) type (Figure 6–14). Over the years, the shoulder pad's front and rear panels have been extended along with the cantilever.

FIGURE 6–13 **Chest and thorax protectors. (A) Baseball catcher's chest protector. (B) Lacrosse goalie chest protector. (C) Ice hockey thorax protector and shoulder pads.** (a) Source: Pro Preferred CPPRO-MS/Rawlings Sporting Goods; (b) Source: Burn Goalie Guard/Warrior Sports; (c) Source: Nexus 1N/Bauer



FOCUS BOX 6–4

Rules for fitting football shoulder pads

- The width of the shoulder is measured to determine the proper size of pad.
- The inside shoulder pad should cover the tip of the shoulder in a direct line with the lateral aspect of the shoulder.
- The epaulets and cups should cover the deltoid muscle and allow movements required by the athlete's specific position.
- Pads should cover the xiphoid process at the tip of the sternum.
- The neck opening must allow the athlete to raise the arm over the head without placing undue pressure on the neck, yet must not allow the pad to slide back and forth.
- If a split-clavicle shoulder pad is used, the channel for the top of the shoulder must be in the proper position.
- Straps underneath the arm must hold the pads firmly in place, but not so they constrict soft tissue. A collar and drop-down pads may be added to provide additional protection.
- After fitting, have the athlete put the jersey on and make sure pads don't shift.

FIGURE 6–14 **Shoulder pads protect both the shoulder and the thorax. (A) Flat (non-cantilever). (B) Cantilever.**
(a)Source: 24SW Flat/Douglas; (b) Source: 24SW Cant/Douglas

Focus Box 6–4 lists rules for fitting the football shoulder pad (Figure 6–15).[34]

A combination of football and ice hockey shoulder pads can be used to prevent injuries high on the upper arm and shoulder. A pair of supplemental shoulder pads is placed under the regular football pads. The deltoid cap of the hockey pad is connected to the main body of the hockey pad by an adjustable lace (Figure 6–16A). The distal end of the deltoid cap is held in place by a Velcro strap. The chest pad is adjustable to ensure proper fit for any size athlete. The football shoulder pads are placed over the hockey pads. The pads should be inspected for a proper fit. Larger football pads may be needed. A neck collar can also be added to the shoulder pads to minimize neck movement (Figure 6–16B).

Sports Bras

Manufacturers have made significant efforts to develop athletic support bras for women who participate in all types of physical activity.[6] In the past, the primary concern was for breast protection against external forces that could cause bruising. Most sports bras are now designed to minimize excessive vertical and horizontal movements of the breasts that occur with running and jumping.[21] Several styles of sports bras are now available.

1. For women with smaller breasts it is not as critical to provide compression or support and thus a less elastic, *lightweight* bra is sufficient (Figure 6–17A).
2. A *compressive bra* is perhaps the most common and is recommended for women with medium-size breasts. Compressive bras function like wide elastic bandages, binding the breasts to the chest wall (Figure 6–17B).
3. *Support bras* are a bit more heavy duty and provide good upward support with elastic material. They tend to have wide bands under the breasts with wide shoulder straps in the back. They are designed for women with larger breasts (Figure 6–17C).
4. In contact sports, a bra with additional padding can be used to protect the breast tissue from injury.

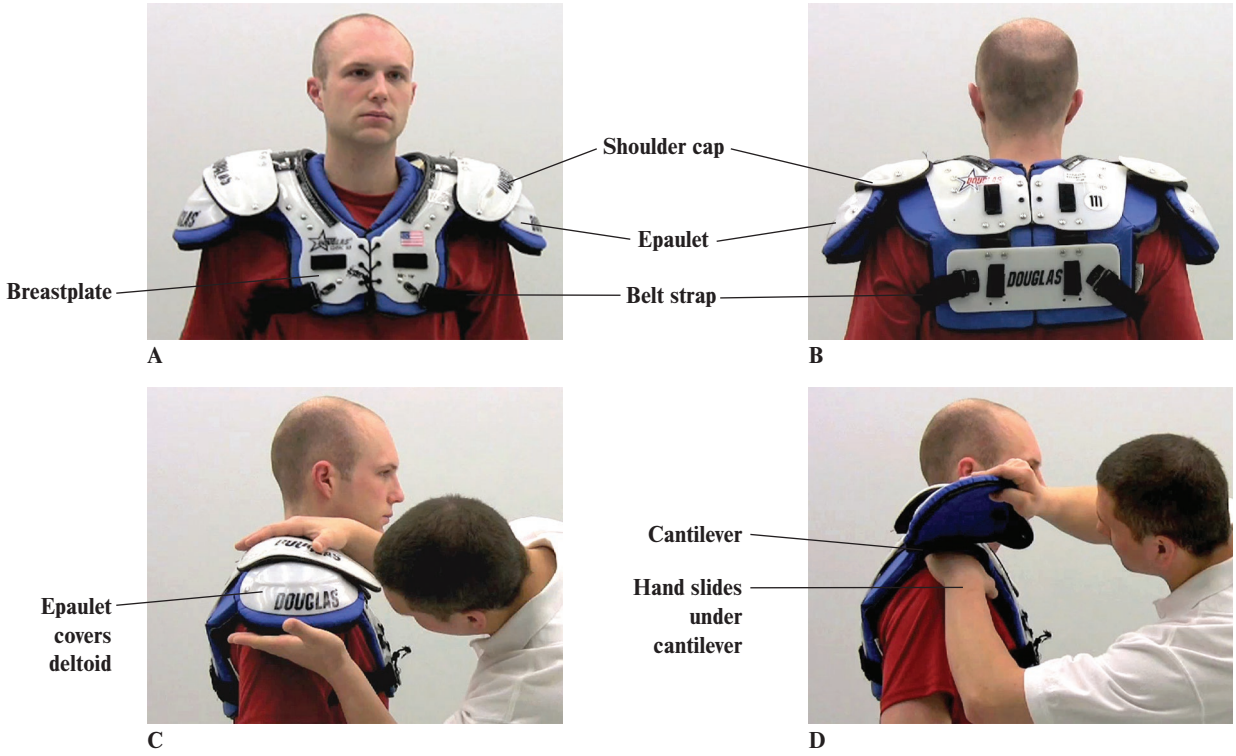


FIGURE 6–15 Football shoulder pads should be made to protect the player against direct force to the entire shoulder complex. **(A)** Anterior fit. **(B)** Posterior fit. **(C)** Lateral fit. **(D)** Space should be one hand-width above shoulder. ©William E. Prentice

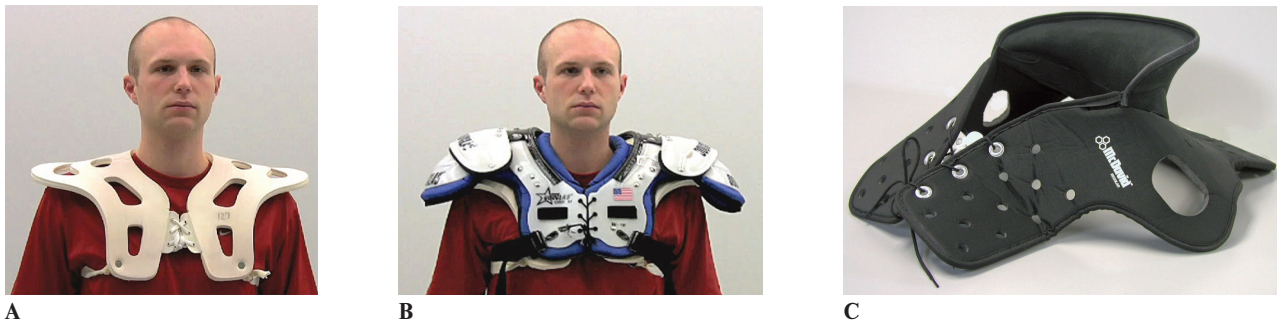


FIGURE 6–16 **(A)** and **(B)** Customized foam is placed on the underside of the shoulder pad to provide additional protection. **(C)** Cowboy collar can be attached to the shoulder pad. ©William E. Prentice

Rib Protection

Several manufacturers provide off-the-shelf pads for rib protection. Many of the rib protectors and rib belts can be modified, replacing stock pads with customized thermomoldable plastic protective devices (Figure 6–18).[35] Recently, many lightweight pads have been developed to protect the athlete against external forces. A jacket for the protection of a rib injury incorporates a pad composed of air-inflated, interconnected cylinders that protect against severe external forces. This same principle has been used in the development of other protective pads. Chest protection should be worn by baseball batters in the preadolescent age group.

Hips and Buttocks

Pads in the region of the hips, buttocks, and coccyx are often needed by athletes in collision and high-velocity sports such as hockey and football. Other athletes needing protection in this region are amateur boxers, snow skiers, equestrians, jockeys, and water skiers. Two popular commercial pads are the girdle (Figure 6–19 A and B) and hexpads (Figure 6–19 C).

FIGURE 6–17 **Sports bras. (A) Lightweight pullover bra. (B) Compressive bra. (C) Support bra with underwire.**
(a) (front and back) Source: Seamless Training Bralette/Nike; (b) (front and back) Source: Pro Classic/Nike; (c) (front and back) Source: Pro Hero/Nike

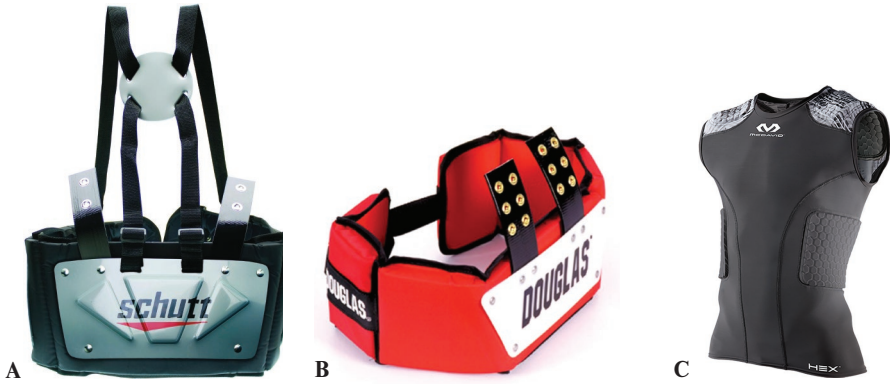


FIGURE 6–18 **Protective rib belts. (A) Suspended belt-type. (B) Strap-on. (C) Hexpad shirt.** (a) Source: Air Maxx/Schutt Sports; (b) Source: Removable Rib Combo/Douglas; (c) Source: HEX® Sleeveless Shirt/5-Pad/McDavid

FIGURE 6–19 **(A and B) Girdle-style hip and coccygeal pads, (C) Hexpads**
(a) Source: Power CG Padded Girdle/Riddell; (b) Source: Biolite Vent Air/Riddell; (c) Courtesy of McDavid

FIGURE 6–20 A cup, held in place by an athletic supporter, used for protecting the genitals against high-velocity projectiles. Source: McDavid

Groin and Genitalia

Sports involving high-velocity projectiles (e.g., hockey, lacrosse, and baseball) require cup protection for male participants. The cup comes as a stock item that fits into place in a jockstrap or athletic supporter (Figure 6–20).

LOWER-EXTREMITY PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT

Footwear

It is essential that the coach and equipment personnel make every effort to select and fit their athletes with proper shoes and socks (Figure 6–21).

All athletic socks should be clean and dry and without holes. Socks of the wrong size can irritate the skin.

Socks Poorly fitted socks can create a variety of problems for the foot. For example, socks that are too short apply excessive pressure to the fourth and fifth toes. Socks that are too long can cause skin irritation and blisters because of wrinkles. All socks should be clean, dry, and without holes, to avoid topical fungal infections and other irritations. Manufacturers provide double-knit tubular socks without heels that decrease friction considerably within the shoe. The heel-less tubular sock is especially good for the basketball player. The sock's material also should be considered. Cotton socks can be too bulky; a combination of materials such as cotton and some lightweight synthetic material is less bulky and dries faster.

Shoe Selection The athletic and fitness shoe manufacturing industry has become extremely sophisticated and offers a number of options when it comes to purchasing shoes for different activities.[5,28] Figure 6–21 shows the major parts of a sports shoe. The following guidelines can help in selecting the most appropriate shoe:[17]

- *Toe box.* There should be plenty of room for the toes in the fitness shoe. Most experts recommend a ½- to ¾-inch distance between the longest toe and

FIGURE 6–21 Parts of a well-designed sports shoe. ©William E. Prentice

the front of the shoe. A few fitness shoes are made in varying widths. If an athlete has a very wide or narrow foot, most shoe salespersons can recommend a specific shoe for that foot. The best way to make sure there is adequate room in the toe box is to have the foot measured and then try on the shoe.

- *Sole.* The sole should possess two qualities. First, it must provide a shock-absorptive function; second, it must be durable. Most shoes have three layers on the sole: a thick spongy layer, which absorbs the force of the foot strike under the heel; a midsole, which cushions the midfoot and toes; and a hard rubber layer, which comes in contact with the ground. The average runner's feet strike the ground between 1,500 and 1,700 times per mile. Thus, it is essential that the force of the heel strike be absorbed by the spongy layer to prevent overuse injuries from occurring in the ankles and knees. "Heel wedges" are sometimes inserted on either the inside or outside surface of the sole underneath the heel counter to accommodate and correct for various structural deformities of the foot that may alter normal biomechanics of the running gait. A flared heel may be appropriate for running shoes but is not recommended in aerobic or court shoes. The sole must provide good traction and must be made of a tough material that is resistant to wear. Most of the better-known brands of shoes have well-designed, long-lasting soles.
- *Last.* This is the form on which the shoe is built. The last may be straight, semicurved, or curved. A straight lasted shoe is filled in on the inside/medial side of the shoe to increase stability for people who have a flat arch or run on the inside of their foot (pronators). A semicurved last is designed for the average or normal foot. There is a small curve on the medial side of the foot to fit a normal arch. The curved last is built with a larger curve on the medial side of the shoe and has a wider outside portion of the shoe to provide more forefoot stability. A curved last is built for people with an abnormally high arch or for runners who run on the outside of their foot (supinators).
- *Shank.* The part of the sole between the heel and the metatarsal heads. It is usually reinforced with material of sufficient density to support the weight of the wearer.
- *Heel counters.* The heel counter is the portion of the shoe that prevents the foot from rolling from side to side at heel strike. The heel counter should be firm but well fitted to minimize movement of the heel up and down or side to side. A good heel counter may prevent ankle sprains and painful blisters.
- *Shoe uppers.* The upper part of the shoe is made of some combination of nylon and leather. The uppers should be lightweight, quick drying, and well ventilated. The uppers should have some type of extra support in the saddle area, and there should be some extra padding in the area of the Achilles tendon just above the heel counter.
- *Arch support.* The arch support should be made of some durable yet soft supportive material and should smoothly join with the insole. The support should not have any rough seams or ridges inside the shoe, which may cause blisters.

Shoe Fitting Fitting sports footgear is always difficult, mainly because the individual's left foot varies in size and shape from the right foot. Therefore, measuring both feet is imperative. To fit the sports shoe properly, the athlete should approximate the conditions under which he or she will perform, such as wearing athletic socks, jumping up and down, and running. It is also desirable to fit the athlete's shoes at the end of the day to accommodate the gradual increase in size that occurs from the time of awakening. The athlete must carefully consider this choice because he or she will be spending countless hours in those shoes (Table 6–1).[14]

TABLE 6–1 Shoe Comparisons

	Tennis	Aerobic	Running
Flexibility	Firm sole, more rigid than running shoe	Sole between running and tennis shoe	Flexible ball of foot
Uppers	Leather or leather with nylon	Leather or leather with nylon	Nylon or nylon mesh
Heel flare	None	Very little	Flared for stability
Cushioning	Less than a running shoe	Between running and tennis shoe	Heel and sole well padded
Soles (Last)	Polyurethane	Rubber or polyurethane	Carbon-based material for greater durability
Tread	Flattened	Flat or pivot dot	Deep grooves for grip

During performance conditions, the new shoe should feel snug but not too tight.[37] The sports shoe should be long enough that all toes can be fully extended without being cramped. Its width should permit full movement of the toes, including flexion, extension, and some spreading. A good point to remember is that the wide part of the shoe should match the wide part of the foot to allow the shoe to crease evenly when the athlete is on the balls of the feet. The shoe should bend (or "break") at its widest part, generally at the metatarsal head (ball) of the foot; when the break of the shoe and the ball joint coincide, the fit is correct. However, if the break of the shoe is in back or in front of the normal bend of the foot (metatarsophalangeal joint), the shoe and the foot will be opposing one another, causing abnormal skin and structural stresses to occur. Two measurements must be considered when fitting shoes: (1) the distance from the heel to the bend in the foot and (2) the distance from the heel to the end of the longest toe. An individual's feet may be equal in length from the heels to the balls of the feet but different between heels and toes. Shoes, therefore, should be selected for the longer of the two measurements. Other factors to consider when buying the sports shoe are the stiffness of the sole and the width of the shank, or narrowest part of the sole. A shoe with a too rigid, nonyielding sole places a great deal of extra strain on the foot tendons. A shoe with too narrow a shank also causes extra strain because it fails to adequately support the athlete's inner, longitudinal arches. Two other shoe features to consider are innersoles to reduce friction and built-in arch supports.[37]

A properly fitted shoe will bend where the foot bends.

Price Unfortunately, in many instances price is the primary consideration in buying athletic shoes. When buying athletic shoes, remember that in many activities shoes are important for performance and prevention of injury. Thus, it is worth a little extra investment to buy a quality pair of shoes.[3]

The Cleated Shoe Cleats can be made of polyurethane, rubber, or metal. They can be molded as part of the sole, or they may be screw-ins that can be changed depending on the playing surface and weather conditions. Certainly, the design of shoes can have an impact both on athletic performance as well as the incidence of injury. The ideal shoe would find a balance between maximizing performance while minimizing the chance of injury. In sports that involve running and cutting, better traction of the shoe on the playing surface can significantly enhance performance. Football and soccer shoes/cleats are designed specifically for this purpose (Figure 6–22).[36]

From an injury prevention perspective, shoes that grip the playing surface when sprinting forward but don't stick when cutting or changing direction seem to be the safest. The incidence of injury is similar on both synthetic turf and natural grass playing surfaces.[15,24]

6–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A high school basketball player is given advice on purchasing a pair of basketball shoes.

? What fitting factors must be taken into consideration when purchasing basketball shoes?

Using Orthotics An orthotic is a device for correcting biomechanical problems that exist in the foot that can potentially cause an injury.[7] The orthotic is a plastic, thermoplastic, rubber, Sorbothane, or leather support that is placed in the shoe as a replacement for the existing insole.[2] Ready-made orthotics can be purchased in sporting goods or shoe stores. Some athletes need orthotics that are custom made by a physician, podiatrist, athletic trainer, or physical therapist. These are more expensive but can be well worth the expense if the athlete's feet cause pain and discomfort, especially when exercising (Figure 6–23).

FIGURE 6–22 **Variations in cleated shoes—the longer the cleat, the higher the incidence of injury.**
(a) Source: Mercurial Vapor 360 Elite FG/Nike; (b) Source: Alpha Air Clipper '17 iD/Nike; (c) Source: Jordan XI Retro Low TD/Nike; (d) Source: Force Savage Elite TD/Nike

FIGURE 6–23 **Commercially manufactured orthotic devices.** ©William E. Prentice

Heel Cups Heel cups should be used for a variety of conditions including plantar fasciitis, a heel spur, Achilles tendonitis, and heel bursitis (Figure 6–24). Heel cups may be either hard plastic or spongy rubber. The heel cup helps to compress the fat pad under the heel, providing more heel cushioning during weight-bearing activities.

A

B

FIGURE 6–24 **Different styles of heel cups.** ©William E. Prentice

A B C D

FIGURE 6–25 **Commercial ankle braces for an injured ankle. (A)** Lace-up brace. **(B)** Lace-up with straps brace. **(C)** Rigid support brace. **(D)** Rigid support with stabilizing straps. (a) Courtesy of McDavid; (b and c) Courtesy of Active Ankle; (d) Courtesy of Bauerfeind

Commercial Ankle Braces

Currently, semirigid ankle braces such as the Active Ankle Brace are being used successfully to restrain ankle motion. Compared with ankle taping, these devices do not loosen significantly during exercise (Figure 6–25).[11,32] Commercial ankle stabilizers, used either alone or in combination with ankle taping, are becoming increasingly popular in sports.[32]

Shin and Lower-Leg Protection

The shin is commonly neglected in contact and collision sports. Commercially marketed hard-shelled, molded shin guards are used in field hockey and soccer (Figure 6–26). Some shin guards can now be customized by placing the guard in hot water and molding it to the shin. Athletes should not try to cut the shin guards down to make them smaller.

Knee Braces

Because of the high incidence of injury to the knee joint, manufacturers have designed a host of different knee braces for a variety of purposes.[1] *Protective knee braces* are used prophylactically to prevent injuries to the medial collateral ligament in contact sports such as football (Figure 6–27A).[4,29] Although these protective braces have been widely used in

FIGURE 6–26 **Soccer shin guards.** (red) Source: Adult Protegga Shield/Nike; (yellow) Source: Hard Shell Slip-In/Nike; (sleeve) Source: Mercurial Lite/Nike; (white) Source: J Football Shin Guard/Nike

FIGURE 6–27 **Knee braces. (A)** Prophylactic knee brace. **(B)** Functional brace. **(C)** Rehabilitative brace. **(D)** Neoprene with medial support-brace. **(E)** Neoprene sleeve. (a and c) ©2014 Breg, Inc.; (b and d) Courtesy of DJO Global; (e) Source: Open Patella Knee Sleeve/Nike

the past, the American Orthopedic Society for Sports Medicine has expressed concern about their efficacy in reducing injuries to the collateral ligaments. Several studies have actually shown an increase in the incidence of injuries to the medial collateral ligament in athletes wearing these braces.

Functional knee braces may be worn both during and following the rehabilitative period to provide support during functional activities (Figure 6–27B).[18,30] Functional braces can be purchased ready-made or can be custom made. Some physicians strongly recommend that their patients consistently wear these braces during physical activity, whereas others do not feel that they are necessary.[5,20]

Rehabilitative braces are widely used following surgical repair or reconstruction of the knee joint to allow for controlled progressive immobilization (Figure 6–27C). These braces have hinges that can be easily adjusted to allow range of motion to be progressively increased over time.

Neoprene braces with medial and lateral supports may be used by individuals who have sustained injury to the collateral ligaments and feel that they need extra support medially and laterally (Figure 6–27D).

A variety of *neoprene sleeves* may also be used to provide some support for patellofemoral conditions (Figure 6–27E).[25]

Thigh and Upper-Leg Protection

Thigh and upper-leg protection is necessary in collision sports such as football, soccer, and hockey. Generally, pads slip into ready-made pockets in

FIGURE 6–28 **Protective thigh pads.** (pad) Source: Vinyl Dipped Reinforced Universal/Schutt Sports; (shorts) Source: HEX® Short w/Contoured Wrap-Around Thigh/McDavid

FIGURE 6–29 **Neoprene thigh sleeve for muscle strains.** Courtesy of Pro-Tech

FIGURE 6–30 **(A) Neoprene elbow sleeve. (B) Hinged rehabilitative elbow brace. (C) Elbow pad.** (a) Courtesy of Mueller Sports Medicine; (b) ©2014 Breg, Inc. (c) Courtesy of DJO Global

the uniform (Figure 6–28). In some instances, customized pads should be constructed and held in place with tape or an elastic wrap. Neoprene sleeves can be used for support following strain to the quadriceps, hamstrings, or groin muscles (Figure 6–29).[29]

ELBOW, WRIST, AND HAND PROTECTION

As with the lower extremity, the upper extremity requires protection from injury and prevention of further injury after trauma. Although the elbow joint is less commonly injured than the ankle, knee, or shoulder, it is still vulnerable to instability, contusion, and muscle strain. A variety of off-the-shelf protective neoprene sleeves and pads and hinged adjustable rehabilitative braces can offer protection to the elbow (Figure 6–30).

In sports medicine, injuries to the wrist, hand, and fingers are often trivialized and considered insignificant. But injuries to the distal aspect of the upper extremity can be functionally disabling, especially in those sports that involve throwing and catching. In both contact and noncontact sports activities, the wrist, hand, and particularly the fingers are susceptible to fracture, dislocation, ligament sprains, and muscle strains. Protective gloves are essential in preventing injuries in sports like lacrosse and ice hockey (Figure 6–31). It is also common to use both off-the-shelf and custom-molded splints both for support and to immobilize an injury (Figure 6–32). Athletic trainers routinely make custom-molded pads for their patients.

A B

FIGURE 6–31 Hand protection is essential in **(A)** lacrosse and ice hockey, and **(B)** for goalkeepers in soccer. (a) Courtesy of Warrior Sports; (b) Source: D-Tack Football Glove/Nike

A B

FIGURE 6–32 Wrist splints. Courtesy of DJO Global

ATHLETIC INJURY MANAGEMENT CHECKLIST

The following checklist contains factors that must be considered when selecting, purchasing, and fitting athletic equipment to help minimize liability.

- ❑ Buy sports equipment from reputable manufacturers.
- ❑ Buy the safest equipment that resources will permit.
- ❑ Make sure that all equipment is assembled correctly.
- ❑ Ensure that the person who assembles equipment is competent to do so and follows the manufacturer's instructions to the letter.
- ❑ Maintain all equipment properly, according to the manufacturer's guidelines.
- ❑ Use equipment only for the purpose for which it was designed.
- ❑ If an athlete is wearing some type of immobilization device (i.e., cast, brace), make certain that this does not violate the rules of that sport.
- ❑ Warn athletes who use the equipment about all possible risks that using the equipment could entail.
- ❑ Use great caution in the construction or customizing of any piece of equipment.
- ❑ Use no defective equipment.
- ❑ Routinely inspect all equipment for defects, and render all defective equipment unusable.

SUMMARY

- The proper selection and fitting of sports equipment are essential in the prevention of many sports injuries.
- Because of the current number of lawsuits, both durability of material and fit and wear requirements must meet sports equipment standards.
- Manufacturers must foresee all the possible uses and misuses of their equipment and warn the user of any potential risks.
- Head protection in many collision and contact sports is of particular concern: The helmet must be used as intended and not as a weapon; proper fit is also a requirement.
- A warning label on the outside of the helmet must indicate that it is not fail-safe, and the helmet must be used as intended.
- Face protection is of major importance in sports that have fast-moving projectiles, that use implements that come in close proximity to other athletes, and that are characterized by body collisions.
- The customized mouth guard, fitted to individual requirements, provides the best protection for the teeth and also helps protect against concussions.
- Eyes must be protected against projectiles and sports implements.
- The safest eye guard for the athlete not wearing glasses is the closed type that completely protects the orbital cavity.
- Many sports require protection of various parts of the athlete's body. American football players, ice hockey players, and baseball/softball catchers are examples of players who require body protection.
- Socks must be clean, without holes, and made of appropriate materials.
- Shoes must be suited to the sport and must be fitted to the larger foot; the wide part of the foot must match the wide part of the shoe; if the shoe has cleats, they must be positioned at the metatarsophalangeal joints.
- The hand, wrist, and elbow are also vulnerable to sports trauma and require special protective devices.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

6-1 The following steps should be taken:

1. A team meeting is called in which the risks entailed in the use and fitting of the equipment are fully explained.
2. A defective piece of equipment must be immediately reported and repaired.
3. A letter is sent to each parent or guardian explaining equipment limitations. This letter is signed and returned to the athletic trainer.
4. A meeting of parents, team members, and coaches is called to further explain equipment limitations.

6-2 It must be explained that the helmet cannot prevent serious neck injuries. Striking an opponent with any part of the helmet or face mask can place abnormal stress on cervical structures. Most severe neck injuries occur from striking an opponent with the top of the helmet; this action is known as axial loading.

6-3 The following points should be emphasized.

- Purchase shoes to fit the large foot.
- Fit shoes wearing athletic socks.
- Purchase shoes at the end of the day.
- Each foot is measured from the heel to the end of the largest toe.
- Shoes feel snug but comfortable when jumping up and down and performing cutting motions.
- Shoe length and width allow full toe function.
- Wide part of foot matches the wide part of the shoe.
- Shoe bends at widest part of shoe.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. What are the legal responsibilities in terms of protective equipment?
2. Invite an attorney to class to discuss product liability.
3. What are the various sports with high-risk factors that require protective equipment?
4. How can safety equipment be selected and used to decrease the possibility of sports injuries and litigation?
5. Why is continual inspection and/or replacement of used equipment important?
6. What are the standards for fitting football helmets? Are there standards for any other helmets?
7. Invite your school equipment manager to class to demonstrate all the protective equipment and how to fit it to the athlete.
8. Why are mouth guards important, and what are the advantages of custom-made mouth guards over the stock type?
9. What are the advantages and disadvantages of glasses and contact lenses in athletic competition?
10. How do you fit shoulder pads for different-sized players and their positions?
11. Why is breast protection necessary? Which types of sports bras are available, and what should the athlete look for when purchasing one?
12. How do you properly fit shoes? What type of shoes should you use for various sports and different floor and field surfaces?
13. What types of knee braces are on the market today? Do they provide adequate support and protection from injury?

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Adams, B. 2013. Knee bracing: Current usage in sports and rehabilitation. *Rehab Management: The Interdisciplinary Journal of Rehabilitation* 26(2):24–26.
2. Almonroeder, T., & Benson, L. 2015. The effect of a prefabricated foot orthotic on frontal plane joint mechanics in healthy runners. *Journal of Applied Biomechanics* 31(3):149–159.
3. Arnold, J. 2015. Running shoe selection: More art, less science? *Sport Health* 33(3):15–18.
4. Baltaci, G., & Aktas, G. 2011. The effect of prophylactic knee bracing on performance: balance, proprioception, coordination, and muscular power. *Knee Surgery, Sports Traumatology, Arthroscopy* 19(10):1722–1728.
5. Brisson, N., & Lamontagne, M. 2014. The efficacy of functional knee braces in stabilizing anterior cruciate ligament deficient knees: A review. *Journal of Orthopedics* 6(1):1–12.
6. Brown, N. 2014. An investigation into breast support and sports bra use in female runners. *Journal of Sport Sciences* 32(9):801–809.
7. Cornwall, M. 2013. Evaluation of foot mobility and orthotic intervention. *Journal of Orthopaedic & Sports Physical Therapy* 43(3):A6–A7.
8. Daneshvar, D. 2011. Helmets and mouth guards: The role of personal equipment in preventing sport-related concussions. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 30(1):145–163.
9. DeLench, B., & Straus, L. 2015. Standard setting by non-governmental agencies in the field of sports safety equipment: Promoting the interests of consumers or manufacturers? *Journal of Business Technology Law* 10(1):47.
10. Farrington, T. 2010. A review of facial protective equipment use in sport and the impact on injury incidence. *British Journal of Oral and Maxillofacial Surgery* 38(4):129–145.
11. Feger, M. 2014. Effect of ankle braces on lower extremity muscle activation during functional exercises in participants with chronic ankle instability. *International Journal of Sports Physical Therapy* 9(4):476.
12. Givens, M. 2016. Protective equipment. In R. Birrer & F. O'Connor (eds.), *Musculoskeletal and sports medicine for the primary care practitioner*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
13. Gould, T., Piland, S., et al. 2016. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Preventing and managing sport-related dental and oral injuries. *Journal of Athletic Training* 51(10):821–839.
14. Griffiths, I. 2012. Choosing running shoes. *SportEx Dynamics* 33(2):28–33.
15. Kent, R., & Forman, J. 2015. The mechanics of American football cleats on natural grass and infill-type artificial playing surfaces with loads relevant to elite athletes. *Sports Biomechanics* 14(2):246–257.
16. Kriz, P. 2012. Effectiveness of protective eyewear in reducing eye injuries among high school field hockey players. *Pediatrics* 130(6):1069–1075.
17. Levine, D. 2017. Athletic shoe evaluation. In M. Werd & E. Knight (eds.), *Athletic footwear and orthoses in sports medicine*. New York, NY: Springer.
18. Lowe, W., & Warth, R. 2017. Functional bracing after anterior cruciate ligament reconstruction: A systematic review. *Journal of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons* 25(3):239–249.
19. Mascarenhas, A. 2012. Mouthguards reduce orofacial injury during sport activities but may not reduce concussion. *Journal of Evidence-Based Dental Practice* 37(2):117–144.
20. Mayr, H. 2014. Brace or no brace after ACL graft? Four-year results of a prospective clinical trial. *Knee Surgery, Sports Traumatology, Arthroscopy* 22(5):1156.
21. McGhee, D. 2010. Optimizing breast support in female patients through correct bra fit. *Journal of Science and Medicine in Sport* 13(6):568–572.
22. McGuine, T. 2013. Prophylactic bracing for the prevention of ankle injuries: Evidence in adolescent athlete populations. *Journal of Orthopaedic & Sports Physical Therapy* 43(3):A3.
23. McGuine, T., & Hetzel, S. 2014. Protective equipment and player characteristics associated with the incidence of sport-related concussion in high school

football players. *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 42(10):2470–2478.
24. Meyers, M. 2017. Incidence, mechanisms, and severity of match-related collegiate men's soccer injuries on field turf and natural grass surfaces. *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 45(3):708–718.
25. Nahdatul, M., & Siew-Li, G. 2017. Biomechanical and functional efficacy of knee sleeves: A literature review. *Physical Therapy in Sport* 201:1–9.
26. National Operating Committee on Standards for Athletic Equipment. 2015. *Standard performance specifications for newly manufactured/recertified helmets*. Overland Park, KS: NOCASE.
27. Navarro, R. 2011. Protective equipment and the prevention of concussion—What is the evidence? *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 10(1):27–31.
28. Nigg, B., & Baltich, J. 2015. Running shoes and running injuries: Myth busting and a proposal for two new paradigms: "Preferred movement path" and "comfort filter." *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 49(20):1290–1294.
29. Pietrosimone, B. 2008. A systemic review of prophylactic braces in the prevention of knee ligament injuries in college football players. *Journal of Athletic Training* 43(4):409–414.
30. Rishiraj, N., Taunton, J., et al. 2010. Effect of functional knee brace on acceleration, agility, leg power, and speed performance in healthy athletes. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 45:1230–1297.
31. Rowson, S., Duma, S., et al. 2014. Can helmet design reduce the risk of concussion in football? *Journal of Neurosurgery* 120(4):919–922.
32. Simon, J. 2013. Effect of ankle taping or bracing on creating an increased sense of confidence, stability, and reassurance when performing a dynamic-balance task. *Journal of Sport Rehabilitation* 22(3):229–233.
33. Steinbach, P. 2002. Armor for all: With player safety paramount, the purchasing of football equipment must ensure adequate supply and proper fit of helmets, shoes and everything in between. *Athletic Business* 26(8):96–102.
34. Street, S., & Runkle, D. 2000. *Athletic protective equipment: Care, selection, and fitting*. Boston, MA: McGraw-Hill.
35. Trojian, T. 2012. Demystifying preventive equipment in the competitive athlete. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 11(6):304–308.
36. Wannop, J. 2013. Footwear traction and lower extremity non-contact injury. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise* 45(11):2137–2143.
37. Werd, M. 2017. *Athletic footwear and or those in sports medicine*. New York, NY: Springer.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Street, S., & Runkle D. 2000. *Athletic protective equipment: Care, selection, and fitting*. Boston, MA: McGraw-Hill.

This reference book provides an overview of available athletic equipment and its usage. The text is a resource for athletic trainers, coaches, and physical education teachers.

WEBSITES

Douglas Protective Equipment: www.douglaspads.com
Manufacturer and distributor of football, hockey, and baseball protective padding. Custom fitting players at all levels for over 12 years.

National Operating Committee on Standards for Athletic Equipment: www.nocsae.org
Provides detailed information and recommendations on the appropriate use and maintenance of different types of athletic equipment.

Protective Eyewear for Young Athletes: pediatrics.aappublications.org/content/113/3/619
A joint statement of the American Academy of Pediatrics and American Academy of Ophthalmology.

Riddell: www.riddell.com
Riddell is an equipment manufacturing company, and this site gives information about the safety of the products it sells and the necessary standards for safety equipment.

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

©Jer Barber/Getty Images

7

Understanding the Potential Dangers of Adverse Environmental Conditions

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Describe the physiology of hyperthermia and the clinical signs of heat stress and how they can be prevented.
- Identify the causes of hypothermia and the major cold disorders and how they may be prevented.
- Explain how an athlete should be protected from exposure to the sun.
- Describe precautions that should be taken in an electrical storm.

One of the primary responsibilities of a coach or any other fitness professional in preventing injuries is to make certain that the practice and playing environment is as safe as it can possibly be. Certainly no one has control over the weather. However, the potential dangers of having athletes engage in practices or competitions when adverse weather or environmental conditions exist cannot be ignored. Ignoring or minimizing the potential threat to the health and well-being of athletes who are forced to practice or compete under adverse environmental conditions can have serious legal consequences should a situation arise that results in injury to an athlete. The adverse environmental conditions that tend to pose the greatest potential for injury in the athletic population are hot, humid, sunny conditions that cause **hyperthermia;** cold and windy conditions that cause **hypothermia;** overexposure to the sun; and lightning and thunderstorms.

hyperthermia Increased body temperature.

hypothermia Decrease of body temperature.

HYPERTHERMIA

An ever-present concern of practicing or competing in a hot, humid environment is the problem of hyperthermia. Hyperthermia refers to an increase in body temperature. Over the years, particularly among football players and wrestlers, a number of deaths have been caused by hyperthermia. It is vitally important to understand when environmental heat and humidity are at a dangerous level and to act accordingly. Remember that an individual does not have to be in the South to experience heat-related illnesses. Heat and humidity occur in every geographic region of the United States, and anyone who supervises athletes that practice and compete in these environmental conditions must be able to recognize the clinical signs of heat stress and manage them properly.[8]

Heat Stress

Regardless of the level of physical conditioning or age, extreme caution must be taken when exercising, particularly in hot, humid weather.[20] Prolonged exposure to extreme heat can result in heat illness.[33,35] Heat stress is certainly preventable, but each year many athletes suffer illness and, occasionally, death from some heat-related cause.[37] Athletes who exercise in hot, humid environments are particularly vulnerable to heat stress. Some athletes have medical conditions such as sickle-cell trait (see Chapter 23) that make them more susceptible to the dangers of exercising in hot humid conditions.[21] The physiological processes in the body can continue to function

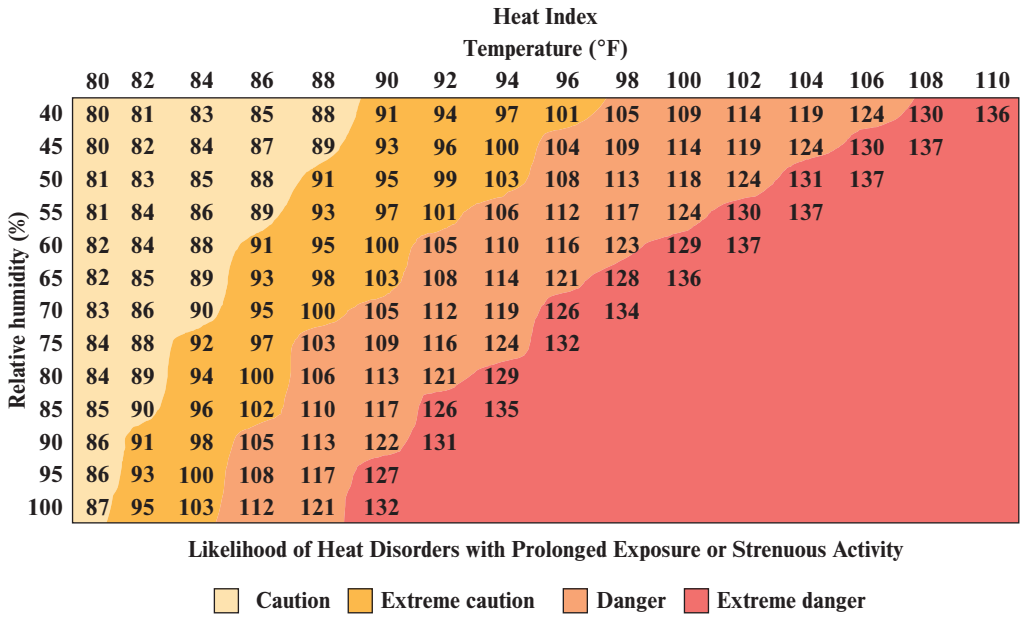


FIGURE 7–1 The heat index takes both air temperature and relative humidity into account.
(Courtesy of the National Weather Service and National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.)

Heat can be gained or lost through:

- Metabolic heat production
- Conductive heat exchange
- Convective heat exchange
- Radiant heat exchange
- Evaporative heat loss

only as long as body temperature is maintained within a normal range.[36] Maintenance of normal temperature in a hot environment depends on the ability of the body to dissipate heat. Heat can be dissipated from the body through four mechanisms: *conduction* (direct contact with a cooler object); *convection* (contact with a cooler air or water mass); *radiation* (heat generated from metabolism); and *evaporation* (sweat evaporating from the skin surface). The body can also gain heat through conduction, convection, and radiation if the surrounding environment is hotter than the body temperature or if the body is exposed to direct sunlight. By far most of the heat that is dissipated from the body is through the process of evaporation.

Sweat glands in the skin allow water to be transported to the surface, where it evaporates, taking large quantities of heat with it. When the temperature and radiant heat of the environment become higher than body temperature, loss of body heat becomes highly dependent on the process of sweat evaporation. The sweat must evaporate for heat to be dissipated. But the air must be relatively free of water for evaporation to occur. Heat loss through evaporation is severely impaired when the relative humidity reaches 65 percent and virtually stops when the humidity reaches 75 percent. The heat index takes both ambient air temperature and relative humidity into account and attempts to determine how hot it actually feels to the human body (Figure 7–1).

It must be emphasized that although heat illness is most likely to occur in a hot, humid environment, it is possible that heat illnesses can also occur in colder environments when the athlete allows himself or herself to become dehydrated and the body cannot dissipate heat through sweating.

Monitoring the Heat Index

Common sense must be exercised when overseeing the health care of athletes training or competing in the heat. Obviously, when the combination of heat, humidity, and bright sunshine is present, extra caution is warranted.[7] The universal *wet bulb globe temperature (WBGT) index* provides an objective means for determining necessary precautions for practice and competition in hot weather.[7]

An instrument used to measure the heat index is a digital **psychrometer**. A digital psychrometer has two different thermometers: a dry bulb and a wet bulb. The dry bulb thermometer measures ambient air temperature, and the wet bulb measures the temperature when water evaporates. The difference between the two thermometer readings is used to calculate the relative humidity. A digital psychrometer is easy to use (Figure 7–2). Simply pushing a button allows the user not only to find the temperature, relative humidity, and dew point, but also to calculate the heat index.

psychrometer An instrument with two thermometers that is used to measure the heat index.

FIGURE 7–2 A digital psychrometer may be used to determine the WBGT heat index. Courtesy of ExTech

The digital psychrometer calculates the heat index automatically. Once the WBGT index has been calculated, Table 7–1 can be used to make recommendations relative to fluid replacement and the length of work and rest periods.

Recognizing and Treating Heat Illnesses

It should be obvious that heat-related problems have the greatest chance of occurring on days when the sun is bright, and the temperature and relative humidity are high. But it is certainly true that various forms of heat illness, including heat syncope and exercise-associated muscle (heat) cramps, heat exhaustion, and heatstroke, can occur whenever the body's ability to dissipate heat is impaired.[3]

Heat Syncope Heat syncope, or heat collapse, is associated with rapid physical fatigue during overexposure to heat. It is usually caused by standing in heat for long periods or by not being accustomed to exercising in the heat. It is caused by peripheral vasodilation of superficial vessels, hypotension, or a pooling of blood in the extremities, which results in dizziness, fainting, and nausea.

Treatment Heat syncope is quickly relieved by laying the athlete down in a cool environment, elevating the lower extremities, and replacing fluids.[39]

Exercise-Associated Muscle (Heat) Cramps Exercise-associated muscle cramps are extremely painful muscle cramps that occur during or after exercise, most commonly in the calf and abdomen, although any muscle may be involved (Table 7–2). Other symptoms may include pain, dehydration, thirst, sweating, or fatigue.[17]

Exercise-associated muscle (heat) cramps occur due to excessive overload of a muscle that causes excessive fatigue.

The occurrence of heat cramps has traditionally been attributed to excessive loss of water and depletion of electrolytes or ions (sodium, chloride, potassium, magnesium, and calcium) by sweating. Profuse sweating involving losses of large amounts of water and small quantities of these ions was thought to interfere with the concentration of these elements within the body, resulting in painful muscle contractions and cramps.[26] However, more recent evidence suggests that cramping may be more likely due to altered neuromuscular control that occurs with muscle overload and fatigue rather than a fluid and/or electrolyte imbalance. Muscle cramps appear to occur most often in those muscle groups under high demand during the activity. Muscle fatigue alters neuromuscular control, thus facilitating a reflex contraction or cramp of the muscle.[17]

Treatment The most current recommendation for immediate treatment of exercise-associated muscle cramps is ingestion of fluids, preferably a sports drink, and mild, prolonged stretching with ice massage of the cramping muscle. While ingestion of fluids and electrolytes may not necessarily prevent muscle cramps, it is

TABLE 7–1 Universal WBGT Index Fluid Replacement Recommendations

		Easy Work		Moderate Work		Hard Work	
Heat Category	WBGT °F	Work/Rest*	Water Per Hour	Work/Rest*	Water Per Hour	Work/Rest*	Water Per Hour
1	78–81.9	No limit	½ qt.	No limit	¾ qt.	40/20 min	¾ qt.
2	82–84.9	No limit	½ qt.	50/10 min	¾ qt.	30/30 min	1 qt.
3	85–87.9	No limit	¾ qt.	40/20 min	¾ qt.	30/30 min	1 qt.
4	88–89.9	No limit	¾ qt.	30/30 min	¾ qt.	20/40 min	1 qt.
5	>90	50/10 min	1 qt.	20/40 min	1 qt.	10/50 min	1 qt.

*Rest means minimal physical activity (sitting or standing) and should be accomplished in the shade if possible.

TABLE 7–2 Summary and Comparison of Heat Disorders, Treatment, and Prevention

Disorder	Cause	Clinical Features and Diagnosis	Treatment	Prevention
Heat syncope (fainting)	Rapid physical fatigue in heat and blood pooling in extremities	Dizziness, nausea, fainting	Lay athlete down in a cool environment, replace fluids	Acclimatize athlete and make sure he or she is appropriately hydrated
Exercise-associated muscle cramps	Hard work in heat; sweating heavily; overload and fatigue of the muscle	Muscle twitching and cramps, usually after midday; cramps in calves, abdomen, hamstrings quadriceps	Ingesting large amounts of water and sodium, mild stretching, and ice massage of affected muscle	Acclimatize athlete properly; provide large quantities of water; avoid muscle overload and fatigue
Exertional heat exhaustion	Prolonged sweating; inadequate replacement of body fluid losses; diarrhea; intestinal infection	Excessive thirst, dry tongue and mouth; weight loss; fatigue; weakness; incoordination; mental dullness; small urine volume; slightly elevated body temperature; high serum protein and sodium; reduced swelling	Bed rest in cool room, immediate oral fluid replacement, increase fluid intake to 6 to 8 liters/day; sponge with cool water; keep record of body weight; keep fluid balance record; provide semiliquid food until salination is normal, IV fluids if drinking is impaired	Supply adequate water and other liquids Provide adequate rest and opportunity for cooling
Exertional heatstroke	Thermoregulatory failure of sudden onset	Abrupt onset, preceded by headache, vertigo, and fatigue, flushed skin; relatively less sweating than seen with heat exhaustion; pulse rate increases rapidly and may reach 160 to 180; respiration increases; blood pressure seldom rises; temperature rises rapidly to 105°F; athlete feels as if he or she is burning up; diarrhea, vomiting; circulatory collapse may produce death; can lead to permanent brain damage	Emergency measures to reduce temperature must be taken immediately (e.g., immerse the athlete in a tub of ice water, or sponge cool water and air fan over body, massage limbs); transport to hospital as soon as possible	Ensure proper acclimatization, proper hydration Educate those supervising activities conducted in the heat Adapt activities to environment Screen participants with past history of heat illness

Source: Modified from Berkow, R., *The Merck manual of diagnosis and therapy*, 14th ed. Rahway, NJ: Merck & Co, 1982.

certainly critical in preventing other exertional heat illnesses. Avoiding fatigue and overexertion during exercise may reduce the likelihood of altered neuromuscular control.[43] An athlete who experiences muscle cramps may have difficulty returning to practice or competition for the remainder of the day, because cramping is likely to reoccur with physical exertion.

Exertional Heat Exhaustion Heat exhaustion results from inadequate replacement of fluids lost through sweating (Table 7–2). Clinically, the victim of heat exhaustion collapses and manifests profuse sweating, pale skin, mildly elevated temperature (less than 105°F) dizziness, hyperventilation, and rapid pulse.[17]

Heat exhaustion results from dehydration.

It is sometimes possible to spot athletes who are having problems with heat exhaustion. They may begin to develop heat cramps. They may become disoriented and light-headed, and their physical performance will not be up to their usual standards when fluid replacement has not been adequate. In general, persons in poor physical condition who attempt to exercise in the heat are most likely to get heat exhaustion.

Treatment Immediate treatment of heat exhaustion requires ingestion and eventually intravenous replacement of large quantities of fluids. It is essential to obtain an accurate core temperature. A rectal temperature is the most accurate indicator of core temperature to differentiate heat exhaustion from heatstroke.[17,18] Oral and tympanic membrane thermometers do not provide an accurate reading of actual core temperature. If possible, the athlete should be placed in a cool environment while fluids are being replaced.[15] Treatment should continue for heat exhaustion until the core temperature has returned to 102°F.

Exertional Heatstroke Unlike heat cramps and heat exhaustion, heatstroke is a serious, life-threatening emergency (Table 7–2). The specific cause of heatstroke is unknown; however, it is clinically characterized by sudden collapse with loss of consciousness; flushed, hot skin; less sweating than is seen with heat exhaustion; shallow breathing; a rapid, strong pulse; and, most important, a core temperature of 105°F or higher.[17] Basically heatstroke is a breakdown of the thermoregulatory mechanism caused by excessively high body temperature; the body loses the ability to dissipate heat through sweating.[17]

Heatstroke is a life-threatening emergency.

Heatstroke can occur suddenly and without warning. *The athlete may or may not show signs of heat cramps or heat exhaustion.* **The possibility of death from heatstroke can be significantly reduced if body temperature is lowered to 102°F within 30 minutes of collapse.**[17] The longer the body temperature is elevated to 105°F or higher, the higher the mortality rate.[2]

Managing heatstroke requires a heroic effort to lower body temperature.

Treatment An emergency action plan should be specifically developed for dealing with heatstroke. The key to managing this condition is aggressive and immediate whole-body cooling.[31] **Immediately immerse the athlete in a cold water bath** (35°F to 58°F) up to their neck, and then remove equipment and clothing.[17,18] If it is not possible to immerse the athlete in cold water, sponge him or her down with cool water and fan with a towel. Also, ice bags may be placed at the neck and over other major arterial vessels.[45] Call the rescue squad. It is imperative that the victim be transported to a hospital as quickly as possible. However, it is recommended that the victim be cooled down first until the temperature is lowered to 102°F and then transported if on-site rapid cooling and adequate medical supervision are available.[15,30] The replacement of fluid is not critical in initial first aid.

Preventing Heat Illness

It is essential to understand that heat illness is preventable.[5] Exercising common sense and caution will keep heat illnesses from occurring.[34] The following suggestions should be considered when planning a practice or competitive program during hot weather.

Fluid Replacement The single most important step that can be taken to minimize the chance of heat illness is to make absolutely certain that athletes are appropriately hydrated.[28] Regardless of whether the athlete is practicing or competing in a hot, humid environment or a cold, damp environment, the athlete needs to continually rehydrate by replacing fluids lost through evaporation of sweat (Figure 7–3).[27] Unfortunately, dehydration occurs frequently during physical activity because athletes do not ingest enough fluid to match sweat loss, even though unlimited fluids are readily available.[11] In fact, seldom is more than

The prevention of hyperthermia involves:

- Unrestricted fluid replacement
- Gradual acclimatization
- Identification of susceptible individuals
- Lightweight uniforms
- Routine weight record keeping

FIGURE 7–3 Athletes must have unlimited access to water or sports drinks, especially in hot weather.
© William E. Prentice

7–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A high school athletic director in southern Louisiana is concerned about the likelihood that several of the football players will suffer heat-related illness during preseason practice the first 2 weeks of August.

? What intervention strategies can be implemented to help the athletes avoid heat-related illnesses?

50 percent of this fluid loss replaced. **Ideally, fluid replacement should match sweat loss.**[10] Fluid is most effectively replaced at regular intervals of about 15 minutes.

The problem in fluid replacement is how rapidly the fluid can be eliminated from the stomach into the intestine, from which it can enter the bloodstream. Water is absorbed rapidly from the intestine. Beverages containing 6 percent carbohydrate (glucose) are absorbed at about the same rate as water as long as there is normal hydration.[33] Cold drinks (45°F to 55°F [7.2°C to 12.8°C]) tend to empty more rapidly from the stomach than do warmer drinks; they are not more likely to induce cramps, nor do they offer any particular threat to a normal heart.[33] Drinks that contain alcohol and caffeine act as diuretics and act to promote dehydration.

Athletes can tell whether they are appropriately hydrated by paying attention to the color and volume of their urine. Within 60 minutes of exercise, a nearly clear urine of normal to above-normal output indicates that the athlete is appropriately hydrated.

Hyponatremia Hyponatremia is a condition involving a fluid/electrolyte disorder that results in an abnormally low concentration of sodium in the blood.[40] It is most often caused by ingesting so much fluid before, during, and after exercise that the concentration of sodium is decreased. It also can occur due to too little sodium in the diet or in ingested fluids over a period of prolonged exercise. An individual with a high rate of sweating and a significant loss of sodium who continues to ingest large quantities of fluid over a several-hour period of exercise (as in a marathon or triathlon) is particularly vulnerable to developing hyponatremia. Hyponatremia can be avoided completely by making certain that fluid intake during exercise does not exceed fluid loss and that sodium intake is adequate.[40]

Hyponatremia results from a low concentration of sodium and too much fluid.

The signs and symptoms of exertional hyponatremia may include a progressively worsening headache; nausea and vomiting; swelling of the hands and feet; lethargy, apathy, or agitation; and low blood sodium. Ultimately, a very low concentration of sodium can compromise the central nervous system, creating a life-threatening situation.[40]

Treatment If hyponatremia is suspected and blood sodium levels cannot be determined on-site, measures to rehydrate the athlete should be delayed and the athlete should be transported immediately to a medical facility.[40] At the medical facility, the delivery of sodium, certain diuretics, or intravenous solutions may be necessary. A physician should clear the athlete before he or she is allowed to return to play.

Using Sports Drinks Research has shown that replacing lost fluids with a sports drink is more effective than using water alone.[28] Because of the flavor of the sports drinks, an athlete is likely to drink more than plain water. In addition, sports drinks replace both fluids and electrolytes that are lost in sweat and also provide energy to the working muscles.

Water is a good thirst quencher, but it is not a good rehydrator because water "turns off" your thirst before you're completely rehydrated. Water also "turns on" the kidneys prematurely so you lose fluid in the form of urine much more quickly than when drinking a sports drink. The small amount of sodium in sports drinks allows the body to hold onto the fluid consumed rather than losing it through urine.[15,16] Sodium can be also be ingested by adding a little extra salt to the foods consumed throughout the day.

Not all sports drinks are the same. How a sports drink is formulated dictates how well it works in providing rapid rehydration and energy. The optimal level of carbohydrate is 14 grams per 8 ounces of water for quickest absorption and energy.[41] Thus, sports drinks should be used without diluting. Research has shown that full-strength sports drinks are absorbed just as fast as water. Most contain no carbonation or artificial preservatives, making them satisfying during exercise and causing no stomach bloating. Also, most sports drinks contain a minimal number of calories. It has been shown that sports drinks are effective in improving performance during both endurance activities and short-term high-intensity activities such as soccer, basketball, and tennis that last from 30 minutes to an hour.[41] *Focus Box 7–1* provides recommendations for fluid replacement.

Gradual Acclimatization Gradual acclimatization is a critical consideration in avoiding heat stress. Acclimatization should involve not only becoming accustomed to heat but also becoming acclimatized to exercising in hot temperatures.[13] A good preseason conditioning program—started well before the advent of the competitive season and carefully graded as to intensity—is recommended. During the first 5 or 6 days, an 80 percent acclimatization can be achieved on the basis of a 2-hour practice period in the morning and a 2-hour practice period in the afternoon. Complete acclimatization may take a minimum of 10 to 14 days.[6] Recently, low-fat chocolate milk has also been recommended as a rehydration drink to be consumed postexercise.[42]

FOCUS BOX 7–1

Recommendations for fluid replacement*

- Athletes should begin all exercise sessions well hydrated.
- To ensure proper hydration, the athlete should consume 17 to 20 ounces of water or a sports drink 2 to 3 hours before exercise and then 7 to 10 ounces 20 minutes before exercise.
- Fluid replacement beverages should be easily accessible using coolers, bottles, drinking stations, and battery-powered water pumpers during activity and should be consumed at a minimal rate of 7 to 10 ounces every 10 to 20 minutes.
- During activity, the athlete should consume the maximal amount of fluid that can be tolerated.
- A cool, flavored beverage at 50°F to 59°F is recommended.
- Addition of proper amounts of carbohydrates and electrolytes to a fluid replacement solution is recommended for exercise events that last longer than 1 hour.
- A 6 percent carbohydrate solution appears to be optimal.
- For exercise lasting less than 1 hour, the addition of carbohydrates and electrolytes does not seem to enhance physical performance.

*Based on recommendations from ACSM and NATA. [15,16]

FOCUS BOX 7–2

Recommendations for preventing heat illness*

- Ensure that appropriate medical care is available.
- Conduct a thorough physician-supervised preparticipation exam to identify susceptible individuals.
- Acclimatize athletes over 10 to 14 days.
- Educate athletes and coaches regarding prevention, recognition, and treatment of heat illnesses.
- Educate athletes to balance fluid intake with sweat and urine losses to maintain adequate hydration.
- Encourage athletes to sleep 6 to 8 hours per night in a cool environment.
- Monitor environmental conditions and develop guidelines for altering practice sessions based on those conditions.
- Provide an adequate supply of water or sports drinks to maintain hydration.
- Weigh high-risk athletes before and after practice to make certain they are not dehydrated.
- Minimize the amount of equipment and clothing worn in hot, humid conditions.
- Minimize warm-up time in hot, humid conditions.
- Allow athletes to practice in shaded areas, and use cooling fans when possible.
- Have appropriate emergency equipment available (e.g., fluids, ice, immersion tank, rectal thermometer, cell phone, or two-way radio).

*From NATA Position Statement on Exertional Heat Illnesses, 2002.[5]

Identifying Susceptible Individuals Athletes with a large muscle mass are particularly prone to heat illness.[8] Body build must be considered when determining individual susceptibility to heat stress. Overweight individuals may have as much as 18 percent greater heat production than underweight individuals because metabolic heat is produced proportionately to surface area. It has been found that heat illness victims tend to be overweight. Death from heatstroke increases at a ratio of approximately four to one as body weight increases.[35]

Women are apparently more physiologically efficient in body temperature regulation than are men. Although women possess as many heat-activated sweat glands as men do, they sweat less and manifest a higher heart rate when working in heat. Although slight differences exist, the same precautionary measures apply to both genders.

Other individuals who are susceptible to heat stress include children and older adults, those with relatively poor fitness levels, those with a history of heat illness, and anyone with a febrile condition.[16]

Keeping Weight Records Careful weight records of all players must be kept. Weights should be measured both before and after practice for at least the first 2 weeks of practice. If a sudden increase in temperature and/or humidity occurs during the season, weight should be recorded again for a time. A loss of 3 to 5 percent of body weight reduces blood volume and could lead to a health threat.[35] A rule should be established that the athlete should be held out of practice until normal body weight has been regained.

Uniforms Uniforms should be selected on the basis of temperature and humidity. Initial practices should be conducted in light-colored, short-sleeved T-shirts, shorts, and socks, moving gradually into short-sleeved net jerseys, lightweight pants, and socks as acclimatization proceeds. All early-season practices and games should be conducted in lightweight uniforms. Because of the specialized equipment worn by the players, football requires particular consideration. In hot, humid environments, the helmet should be removed as often as possible.

Focus Box 7–2 provides recommendations for preventing heat illness.

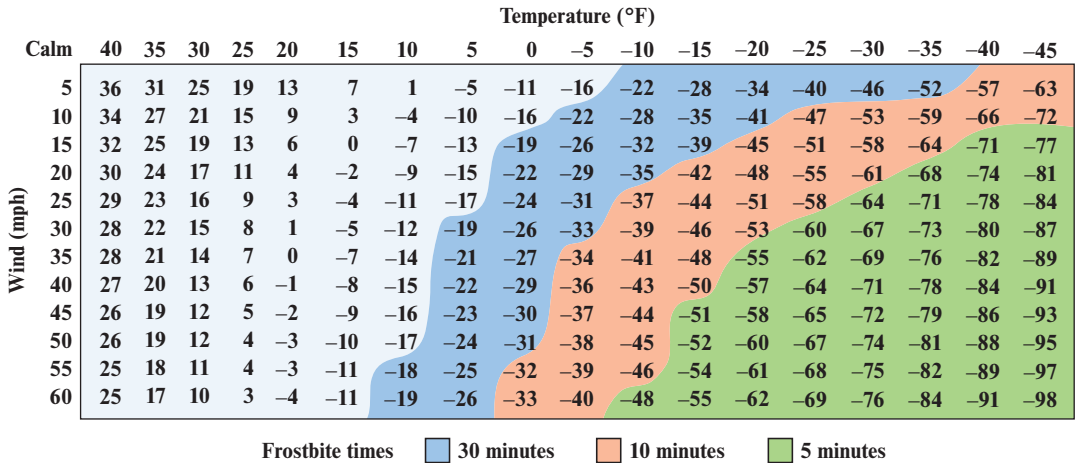


FIGURE 7–4 **Wind chill factor. Low temperatures can pose serious problems for the athlete, but wind chill could be a critical factor.** Courtesy of the National Weather Service and National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

HYPOTHERMIA

Cold weather is a frequent adjunct to many outdoor sports in which the sport itself does not require heavy protective clothing; consequently, the weather becomes a pertinent factor in injury susceptibility.[32] In most instances, the activity itself enables the athlete to increase the metabolic rate sufficiently for normal physiological functioning and to dissipate the resulting heat and perspiration through the usual physiological mechanisms.[1] An athlete may fail to warm up sufficiently or may become chilled because of relative inactivity for varying periods demanded by the particular sport, during either competition or training. Consequently, the athlete is predisposed to hypothermia or a lowered body temperature.[19]

Many sports played in cold weather do not require heavy protective clothing; thus, weather becomes a factor in injury susceptibility.

Low temperatures alone can pose some problems, but when such temperatures are further accentuated by wind, the chill factor becomes critical (Figure 7–4).[25] A third factor, dampness or wetness, further increases the risk of hypothermia. Air at a temperature of 50°F is relatively comfortable, but water at the same temperature is intolerable. Certainly the combination of cold, wind, and dampness creates an environment that easily predisposes the athlete to hypothermia.[12]

Low temperatures accentuated by wind and dampness can pose major problems for athletes.

As muscular fatigue builds up during strenuous physical activity in cold weather, the rate of exercise begins to drop and may reach a level at which the body heat loss to the environment exceeds the metabolic heat protection, resulting in definite impairment of neuromuscular responses and exhaustion. A relatively small drop in body core temperature can induce shivering sufficient to materially affect the athlete's neuromuscular coordination. Shivering ceases below a body temperature of 85°F to 90°F (29.4°C to 32.2°C). Death is imminent if the core temperature rises to 107°F (41.6°C) or drops to between 77°F and 85°F (25°C to 29°C).[9]

Cold Disorders

Athletes need to replace fluids when working out in a cold environment as much as they do in a hot environment.[12] Because dehydration reduces blood volume, less fluid is available for warming the tissues. Athletes performing in a cold environment should be weighed before and after practice, especially in the first 2 weeks of the season.[32] Severe overexposure to a cold climate occurs less often than hyperthermia does in a warm climate; however, it is still a major risk of winter sports, long-distance running in cold weather, and swimming in cold water.[25]

Cold injuries in sports include:

- Frostnip
- Frostbite

Frostnip Frostnip involves ears, nose, cheeks, chin, fingers, and toes. It commonly occurs during a high wind, severe cold, or both. The skin initially appears very firm, with cold, painless areas that may peel or blister in 24 to 72 hours.

Treatment Affected areas can be treated early by firm, sustained pressure of the hand (without rubbing), by blowing hot breath on the spot, or if the injury is to the fingertips, by placing them in the armpits.

Chilblain Chilblain results from prolonged and constant exposure to cold for more than 60 minutes with the temperature at 50 degrees or less.[23] Over time, there is skin redness, swelling, tingling, and pain in the toes and fingers. This adverse response is caused by problems of peripheral circulation and can be avoided by preventing further cold exposure.[23]

Treatment Treatment involves removing wet or constrictive clothing and covering with warm, loose, dry clothing or blankets. Do not disturb blisters, apply friction massage, apply creams or lotions, or use high levels of heat. Continually monitor the affected area for return of circulation and sensation.[22]

Frostbite Superficial frostbite involves only the skin and subcutaneous tissue. The skin initially appears pale, hard, cold, and waxy. Palpating the injured area reveals a sense of hardness but with yielding of the underlying deeper tissue structures. When rewarming, the superficial frostbite at first feels numb, then stings and burns. Later the area may produce blisters and be painful for a number of weeks.[22]

Treatment Deep frostbite is a serious injury indicating that tissues are frozen. This medical emergency requires immediate hospitalization. As with frostnip and superficial frostbite, the tissue is initially cold, hard, pale or white, and numb. Gradual rewarming is required, including hot drinks, heating pads, or hot water bottles that are 100°F to 110°F (38°C to 43°C).[23] During rewarming, the tissue becomes blotchy, red, swollen, and extremely painful. Later the injury may become gangrenous, causing a loss of tissue (Figure 7–5).

Prevention

Apparel for competitors must be geared to the weather. The clothing should not restrict movement, should be as lightweight as possible, and should consist of material that wicks moisture from sweat away from the body, thus permitting the free passage of body heat and sweat that otherwise accumulates on the skin or the clothing and provides a chilling effect when activity ceases.[23] **The athlete should routinely dress in thin layers of clothing that can easily be added or removed to prevent sweating as the temperature decreases or increases.**[12] To prevent chilling, warm-up suits should be worn before exercise, during activity breaks or rest periods, and at the termination of exercise.[32]

FIGURE 7–5 **Frostbite on the fingertips.** ©William E. Prentice

OVEREXPOSURE TO SUN

Athletes, along with coaches, athletic trainers, and other support staff, frequently spend a great deal of time outdoors in direct sunlight. Applying sunscreens to protect these individuals from overexposure to ultraviolet radiation (UVR) is seldom done.

Long-Term Effects on Skin

The most serious effects of long-term UVR exposure are premature aging of the skin and skin cancer.[24] Lightly pigmented individuals are more susceptible. Premature aging of the skin is characterized by dryness, cracking, and a decrease in the elasticity of the skin. Skin cancer is the most common malignant tumor found in humans and has been epidemiologically and clinically associated with exposure to UVR. Fortunately, the rate of cure exceeds 95 percent with early detection and treatment.[24]

Using Sunscreens

Sunscreens applied to the skin can help prevent many of the damaging effects of UVR.[44] A sunscreen's effectiveness in absorbing the sunburn-inducing radiation is expressed as the sun protection factor (SPF). An SPF of 15 indicates that an athlete can be exposed to UVR 15 times longer than without a sunscreen before the skin will begin to turn red. Higher numbers provide greater protection. However, athletes who have a family or personal history of skin cancer may experience significant damage to the skin even when wearing an SPF 15 sunscreen. Therefore, these individuals should wear a higher SPF sunscreen and should routinely reapply the sunscreen periodically.[44]

SPF stands for sun protection factor.

Sunscreen should be worn regularly by athletes, coaches, and athletic trainers who spend time outside.[29] This caution is particularly relevant for individuals with fair complexions, light hair, or blue eyes, or those whose skin burns easily. People with

7–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A triathlete is competing in a triathlon. She is extremely concerned about getting sunburned and has liberally applied sunscreen with an SPF of 30 during the early morning. It is a very hot, sunny day, and she is sweating heavily. She is worried that her sunscreen has worn off and asks her workout partner for more sunscreen. Her partner hands her sunscreen with an SPF of 15, and the triathlete complains that it is not strong enough to protect her.

? Will she be well protected by the sunscreen she has been given?

dark complexions should also wear sunscreens to prevent sun damage.

Sunscreens are needed most between the months of March and November but should be used year-round. Sunscreens are needed most between 10 a.m. and 4 p.m. and should be applied 15 to 30 minutes before sun exposure.[24] Although clothing and hats provide some protection from the sun, they are not a substitute for sunscreens (a typical white cotton T-shirt provides an SPF of only 5). Reflected sunlight from water, sand, and snow may effectively increase sun exposure and risk of burning.

SAFETY IN LIGHTNING AND THUNDERSTORMS

Research indicates that lightning is the number-two cause of death by weather phenomena, accounting for 110 deaths per year.[4] As a result of the inherent danger associated with electrical storms to athletes and staff who practice and compete outdoors, each institution should develop a specific emergency action plan.[46] This plan should be implemented in case of a lightning storm; it should include establishing a chain of command to determine who should monitor both the weather forecast and changing weather of a threatening nature, and to determine who makes the decision both to remove from and ultimately to return a team to the practice field, based on specific preestablished criteria.[46] **If you hear thunder or see lightning, you are in immediate danger and should seek a protective shelter in an indoor facility at once.**[46] An indoor facility is recommended as the safest protective shelter. However, if an indoor facility is not available, an automobile (not a convertible) is a relatively safe alternative. If neither of these is available, the following guidelines are recommended. Avoid standing near large trees, flagpoles, or light poles. Additional unsafe locations include most places termed shelters, such as picnic, park, sun, bus, and nonmetal rain shelters and storage sheds. Open areas such as tents, dugouts, refreshment stands, gazebos, screened porches, press boxes, and open garages are unsafe. Even people inside a building should not use plumbing, showers, sinks, locker rooms, indoor pools, appliances, or electronics during an electrical storm.[46]

If thunder can be heard, lightning is close enough to be a potential danger and everyone should move to a safe location.[38] The misconception that it is possible to see lightning coming and have time to act before it strikes could prove to be fatal. When you see the lightning strike, it has already hit.

Specific criteria and guidelines should be developed for both suspending play and resuming activity in the emergency action plan.[46] The athletic trainer should watch the sky, looking for approaching storms that have not been observed to produce lightning, and be prepared to suspend or postpone activities if a thunderstorm appears imminent.

The rule for resuming activity is very clear. Activities should be suspended until 30 minutes after the last strike of lightning is seen (or at least 5.75 miles away) and after the last sound of thunder is heard.[34] This 30-minute clock restarts for each lightning flash within 5.75 miles and each time thunder is heard.

Lightning Detectors A lightning detector is a handheld instrument with an electronic system to detect the presence and the distance of lightning/thunderstorm activity occurring within a 40-mile (64 km) distance (Figure 7–6).[38] It allows you to know the

7–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A lacrosse team is practicing on a remote field with no indoor facility in close proximity. The weather is rapidly worsening, with the sky becoming dark and the wind blowing harder. Twenty minutes are left in the practice session when suddenly, there is a bolt of lightning and an immediate burst of thunder.

? How should this extremely dangerous situation be handled?

FIGURE 7–6 Portable hand-held lightning detector.
Courtesy of Outdoors Technologies, Colorado Springs, CO

level of activity of the storm and determines whether the storm is moving toward, away from, or parallel to your position. When the lightning detector detects a lightning stroke, it emits an audible warning tone and lights the range indicator, allowing you to see the distance to the last, closest detected lightning strike. Lightning detectors are under $200 and are thus an inexpensive alternative to contracting with a weather service to provide information on potentially dangerous weather conditions over a pager system.

ATHLETIC INJURY MANAGEMENT CHECKLIST

The following checklist includes basic guidelines that should be followed during an electrical storm.

- ❑ In situations in which thunder or lightning may be present and you feel your hair stand on end and skin tingle, immediately assume a crouched position: Drop to your knees, place your hands and arms on your legs, and lower your head. Do not lie flat.
- ❑ If thunder and/or lightning can be heard or seen, stop activity and seek protective shelter immediately. An indoor facility is recommended as the safest protective shelter. However, if an indoor facility is not available, an automobile is a relatively safe alternative. If neither of these options is available, you should avoid standing under large trees and telephone poles.
- ❑ Avoid standing water and metal objects at all times (e.g., metal bleachers, metal cleats, umbrellas, etc.).
- ❑ Allow 30 minutes to pass after the last sound of thunder or lightning strike before resuming play.

SUMMARY

- Environmental stress can adversely affect an athlete's performance and pose a serious health problem.
- Regardless of the athletes' level of physical conditioning, use extreme caution when conducting exercises in hot, humid weather. Prolonged exposure to extreme heat can result in heat cramps, heat exhaustion, or heatstroke.
- Heat illness is preventable. Exercising common sense and caution will keep heat illnesses from occurring. Coaches can prevent heat illness by encouraging adequate fluid replacement, acclimatizing athletes gradually, identifying susceptible individuals, keeping weight records, and selecting appropriate uniforms.
- Hypothermia is most likely to occur in a cool, damp, windy environment. Extreme cold exposure can cause conditions such as frostnip and frostbite.
- Athletes, coaches, and athletic trainers should be protected from overexposure to ultraviolet radiation (UVR) by the routine application of sunscreens.
- Thirty minutes should be allowed to pass after the last sound of thunder is heard or last lightning strike is seen before play is resumed.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

7-1 It is essential to understand that heat-related illnesses are preventable. The athletes should come into preseason practice at least partially acclimatized to working in a hot, humid environment and during the first week of practice should become fully acclimatized. Temperature and humidity readings should be monitored, and practice should be modified according to conditions. Practice uniforms should maximize evaporation and minimize heat absorption to the greatest extent possible. Weight records should be maintained to identify individuals who are becoming dehydrated. Most important, the athletes must keep hydrated by constantly drinking large quantities of water or a sports drink both during and between practice sessions.

7-2 The sun protection factor (SPF) indicates the sunscreen's effectiveness in absorbing the sunburn-inducing radiation. An SPF of 15 indicates that an athlete can be exposed to UVR fifteen times longer than without a sunscreen before the skin begins to turn red. Therefore, the athlete needs to understand that a higher SPF doesn't indicate a greater degree of protection. She must simply apply the SPF 15 sunscreen twice as often as is necessary with an SPF 30 sunscreen.

7-3 As soon as lightning is observed, practice should end immediately and the athletes should seek shelter. If an indoor facility is not available, an automobile is a relatively safe alternative. The athletes should avoid standing under large trees or telephone poles. As a last alternative, athletes should assume a crouched position in a ditch or ravine. Athletes should avoid any standing water or metal objects around the fields.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. How do temperature and humidity cause heat illnesses?
2. Describe the symptoms and signs of the most common heat disorders.
3. What steps should be taken to avoid heat illnesses?
4. How is heat lost from the body to produce hypothermia?
5. Identify the physiological basis for the body's susceptibility to a cold disorder.
6. What should athletes do to prevent heat loss?
7. How should athletes protect themselves from the effects of ultraviolet radiation?
8. What precautions can be taken to minimize injury during an electrical storm?

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. ACSM. 2006. Position stand: Prevention of cold injuries during exercise. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise* 38(11):2012–2029.
2. Adams, W. 2015. The timing of exertional heat stroke survival starts prior to collapse. *Medicine & Science in Sports & Exercise* 14(4):273–274.
3. Becker, J. 2011. Heat-related illness. *American Family Physician* 83(11): 1325–1330.
4. Bennett, B. 2011. Lightning safety guidelines. In D. Klossner (ed.), *National Collegiate Athletic Association sports medicine handbook*. Overland Park, KS: National Collegiate Athletic Association.
5. Bergeron, M. F. 2012. Reducing sports heat illness risk. *Pediatrics in Review* 34(6):270–279.
6. Binkley, H., Beckett, J., et al. 2002. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Exertional heat illnesses. *Journal of Athletic Training* 37(3):329–342.
7. Brocheire, F., & Millet, G. 2015. Is the wet-bulb globe temperature (WBGT) index relevant for exercise in the heat. *Sports Medicine* 45(11):1619–1621.
8. Broman, D. 2014. The implementation of a protocol for the prevention and management of exertional heat illness in sport. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 48(7):573.
9. Brukner, P. 2016. Exercise in the cold. In P. Brukner (ed.), *Bruckner & Kahn's clinical sports medicine*, 5th rev. ed. Sydney: McGraw-Hill.
10. Bunn, J. 2013. Hydration and performance. In W. Campbell (ed.), *Sports nutrition: Enhancing athletic performance*. New York, NY: CRC Press.
11. Burdon, C. 2012. Influence of beverage temperature on palatability and fluid ingestion during endurance exercise: A systematic review. *International Journal of Sport Nutrition and Exercise Metabolism* 22(3):199–211.
12. Cappaert, T. 2008. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Environmental cold injuries. *Journal of Athletic Training* 43(6):640–658.
13. Casa, D. 2009. Preseason heat-acclimatization guidelines for secondary school athletes. *Journal of Athletic Training* 44(3):332–333.
14. Casa, D., & Armstrong, L. 2012. Exertional heat stroke: New concepts regarding cause and care. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 11(3):115–123.
15. Casa, D., Armstrong, L., et al. 2000. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Fluid replacement for athletes. *Journal of Athletic Training* 35(2):212–224.
16. Casa, D., et al. 2013. Inter-Association Task Force on Preventing Sudden Death in Secondary School Athletics Programs: Best-practices recommendations. *Journal of Athletic Training* 48(4):546–553.
17. Casa, D., et al. 2015. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Exertional heat illness. *Journal of Athletic Training* 50(9):986–1000.
18. Casa, D., & McDermott, B. 2007. Cold water immersion: The gold standard for exertional heatstroke treatment. *Exercise & Sport Sciences Reviews* 35(3):141.
19. Castillani, J. 2012. Health and performance challenges during sports training and competition in cold weather. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 46(11):788–791.
20. Dotan, F. 2011. Temperature regulation and elite young athletes. *Medicine and Sport Science* 56(1):126–149.
21. Eichner, R. 2015. Death in athletes: News on hyponatremia, nuances in sickle cell trait. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 14(5):349–350.
22. Fudge, J. 2016. Exercise in the cold. *Sports Health: A Multidisciplinary Approach* 8(2):133–140.
23. Hoffman, J. 2014. Exercise in the cold. In J. Hoffman (ed.), *Physiological aspects of sport training and performance*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
24. Jinna, S., & Adams, B. 2013. Ultraviolet radiation and the athlete: Risk, sun safety, and barriers to implementation of protective strategies, *Sports Medicine* 43(7):531–537.
25. Jones, C. 2011. Emergency management of cold-induced injuries. *Emergency Medicine* 43(1):6–10.
26. Jung, A. 2005. Influence of hydration and electrolyte supplementation on incidence and time to onset of exercise-associated muscle cramps. *Journal of Athletic Training* 40(2):71.
27. Kerksick, C. 2012. Fluid needs of athletes. In L. Taylor (ed.), *Nutritional guidelines for athletic performance*. New York, NY: CRC Press.
28. Lopez, R. 2012. Exercise and hydration: Individualizing fluid replacement guidelines. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research* 34(4):49–54.
29. Lynn, J., & Urda, J. 2016. Sun exposure and exercise. *ACSM's Health and Fitness Journal* 20(3):11–16.
30. Mazerolle, S. 2011. Evidence-based medicine and the recognition and treatment of exertional heat stroke, Part II: A perspective from the clinical athletic trainer. *Journal of Athletic Training* 46(5): 533–42.
31. McDermott, B. 2009. Acute whole-body cooling for exercise-induced hyperthermia: A systematic review. *Journal of Athletic Training* 44(1):84–93.
32. McMahon, J. 2012. Cold weather issues in sideline and event management. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 11(3):135–141.
33. Montain, S. 2008. Hydration recommendations for sport 2008. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 7(4):187–192.
34. National Collegiate Athletic Association. 2017. *NCAA sports medicine handbook 2017–2018*. Indianapolis, IN: NCAA.
35. Nichols, A. 2014. Heat-related illness in sports and exercise. *Current Reviews in Musculoskeletal Medicine* 7(4):355–365.
36. Noakes, T. 2008. A modern classification of the exercise-related heat illnesses. *Journal of Science and Medicine in Sport* 11(1):33–39.
37. Noonan, B. 2012. Heat- and cold-induced injuries in athletes: Evaluation and management. *Journal of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons* 20(12):74.
38. Oglesbee, S. 2014. Lightning strikes. *Journal of Emergency Medical Services* 39(5):44–49.
39. Parker, J. 2011. Contemporary issues of heat illness. *Sport Journal* 14(1):1.
40. Rosner, M. 2013. Exercise-associated hyponatremia. In E. Simon (ed.), *Hyponatremia*. New York, NY: Springer.
41. Sherriffs, S. 2009. Hydration in sport and exercise: Water, sports drinks and other drinks. *Nutrition Bulletin* 34(4):374–379.
42. Spaccarotella, K. 2011. The effects of low fat chocolate milk on post-exercise recovery in college athletes. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research* 25(12):3456–3460.
43. Schwellnus M. 2009. Cause of exercise associated muscle cramps (EAMC)—Altered neuromuscular control, dehydration or electrolyte depletion? *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 43(6):401–408.
44. Taylor, K. 2010. Ultraviolet radiation: Recognizing hidden potential for injury. *Athletic Therapy Today* 15(3):42–45.
45. Tyler, C. 2011. Cooling the neck region during exercise in the heat. *Journal of Athletic Training* 46(1):61–68.
46. Walsh, K. 2013. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Lightning safety for athletics and recreation. *Journal of Athletic Training* 48(2):258–270.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Grarer, D., & Armstrong, L. 2003. *Exertional heat illness.* Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

This book takes a look at the science behind the various types of heat illnesses and the basis for treatment.

Parsons, J. (ed.). 2017. *NCAA sports medicine handbook 2017–2018.* Indianapolis, IN: National Collegiate Athletic Association.

Contains guidelines and recommendations for preventing heat illness, hypohydration, and cold stress, and for lightning safety.

WEBSITES

FEMA: Extreme Heat Fact Sheet: www.fema.gov/media-library/assets/documents/12364

Fact Sheet: Extreme Heat. Doing too much on a hot day, spending too much time in the sun, or staying too long in an overheated place can cause heat-related illnesses.

The Gatorade Sports Science Institute: www.gssiweb.com

This website provides the most up-to-date recommendations for fluid replacement and preventing heat illness.

A Hypothermia Treatment Technology website: www.hypothermia-ca.com

National Athletic Trainers, Association: www.nata .org

Site contains detailed position papers on heat illness, fluid replacement, and lightning safety.

National Lightning Safety Institute (NLSI): www.lightningsafety.com

National Lightning Safety Institute provides consulting, education, training, and expert witness relating to lightning hazard mitigation.

WebMDHealth: Heat Illness (Heat Exhaustion, Heatstroke, Heat Cramps): www.webmd.com/fitness-exercise/heat-exhaustion

Prolonged or intense exposure to hot temperatures can cause heat-related illnesses, such as heat exhaustion, heat cramps, and heatstroke (also known as sunstroke).

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

This page intentionally left blank

PART III

Techniques for Treating and Managing Sport-Related Injuries

8 Handling Emergency Situations and Injury Assessment

9 Bloodborne Pathogens, Universal Precautions, and Wound Care

10 Wrapping and Taping Techniques

11 Understanding the Basics of Injury Rehabilitation

12 Helping the Injured Athlete Psychologically

8

©William E. Prentice

Handling Emergency Situations and Injury Assessment

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Establish a plan for handling emergency situations at your institution.
- Determine the components of an emergency action plan (EAP).
- Explain the importance of knowing cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR).
- Describe techniques for control of hemorrhage.
- Assess the types of shock and their management.
- Describe the various phases of injury assessment.
- Explain the importance of controlling swelling during initial injury management.
- Describe techniques for moving and transporting the injured athlete.

An emergency is defined as "an unforeseen combination of circumstances and the resulting state that calls for immediate action." Certainly, most sports injuries do not result in life-or-death emergency situations, but when such situations do arise, prompt care is essential.[11] Time becomes the critical factor, and assistance to the injured athlete must be based on knowledge of what to do and how to do it—how to perform effective first aid immediately.[9] There is no room for uncertainty, indecision, or error. A mistake in the initial management of injury can prolong the time required for rehabilitation and can potentially create a life-threatening situation for the athlete.[10] Therefore it is critical to be well prepared to handle whatever emergency situation may arise.[5]

Time becomes critical in an emergency situation.

It must be reemphasized that **all fitness professionals, coaches, and others in areas related to exercise and sports science should be trained and certified in cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR), the use of an automated external defibrillator (AED), and first aid.**[19] However, these individuals are limited beyond providing initial CPR/AED and first aid. The extent of what they can and cannot do legally is determined by the laws and statutes of different states.[11] Much of the information contained in this chapter is intended for informational purposes only and is in no way meant to encourage individuals to act outside of the scope of their responsibilities.

THE EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN

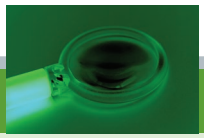
The prime concern of emergency aid is to maintain cardiovascular function and, indirectly, central nervous system function, because failure of any of these systems may lead to death.[9,10] The key to emergency aid in the sports setting is the initial evaluation of the injured athlete. Time is of the essence, so this evaluation must be done rapidly and accurately so that proper aid can be rendered without delay. In some instances, these first steps not only will be lifesaving but also may determine the degree and extent of permanent disability.

As discussed in Chapter 1, the sports medicine team—the coach, the athletic trainer, and the team physician—must at all times act reasonably and prudently. This behavior is especially important during emergencies.

All sports programs must have a prearranged emergency action plan (EAP) developed in conjunction with emergency medical services (EMS) that can be implemented immediately when necessary.[5,11,18] See *Focus Box 8–1*. The following issues must be addressed when developing the emergency action plan:

All sports programs must have an emergency action plan.

1. Develop separate emergency action plans for each sport's field, courts, or gymnasiums.[5]
   a. Determine the personnel who will be on the field during practices and competitions (e.g., athletic trainers, athletic training students, physicians, emergency medical technicians, rescue squad). Each person should understand exactly what his or her role and responsibility is if an emergency occurs. It is also recommended that the sports medicine team practice the use and operation of emergency equipment, such as stretchers and automated external defibrillators (AED).[29] **Everyone involved should know the location of the nearest AED for each venue.**[22]
   b. Decide what emergency equipment should be available for each sport. The emergency equipment needs for football will likely be different from those of the cross-country team.
2. Establish specific procedures and policies regarding the removal of protective equipment, particularly the helmet and shoulder pads.[24] These procedures will be discussed later in this chapter.
3. Make sure phones are readily accessible. Wireless phones or satellite phones are easily available and accessible. However, a land line should also be easily accessible, just in case cell phone service is not available. If wireless phones are not available, all staff personnel and athletes should know the location of the telephone; phones should be clearly marked. Use 911 if available, but realize that in some areas all service is not accessible by wireless phones, and thus land lines should be used to access the emergency medical system. Occasionally, calls made on cell phones may be redirected out of the local area. Thus, it is critical to ask what area the local 911 call has been directed to.
4. All staff should be familiar with the community-based emergency health care delivery plan, including existing communication and transportation policies.[11] It is also critical to be familiar with emergency care facility admission and treatment policies, particularly when rendering emergency care to a minor.[18] Someone should specifically be designated to make an emergency phone call. Most emergency medical systems can be accessed by dialing 911, which connects the caller to a dispatcher who has access to rescue squad, police, and fire personnel. The person making the emergency phone call must provide the following information:
   a. Type of emergency situation
   b. Type of suspected injury
   c. Present condition of the athlete
   d. Current assistance being given (e.g., cardiopulmonary resuscitation)
   e. Location of telephone being used
   f. Exact location of emergency (give names of streets and cross streets) and how to enter facility
5. Make sure keys to gates or padlocks are easily accessible. Staff members should have the appropriate keys.
6. Inform all staff and maintenance personnel of the emergency plan at a meeting held annually before the beginning of the school year. Each individual must know his or her responsibilities should an emergency occur.
7. Assign someone to accompany the injured athlete to the hospital.
8. Carry contact information for all athletes, coaches, and other personnel at all times, particularly when traveling. For minors, consent forms for medical treatment should also be available when traveling.
9. In certain situations at both secondary schools and colleges, staff members may be called upon to provide emergency services not only to athletes but also to coaches, referees, and in some cases parents and other spectators who may develop an emergent condition during the course of an athletic event. The emergency action plan should include plans for managing these situations with the help of emergency medical services and other local health care providers.[20] *Focus Box 8–1* provides an example of an emergency action plan.
10. It has been recommended that a "time out" be routinely included prior to the start of each athletic event.[39] This time out should be used to have all of the individuals who will be involved with any aspect of athletic health care for that specific event meet to go over a checklist for that venue's emergency action plan and to make certain that all parties involved are prepared to handle an emergency to ensure a decisive and coordinated response and outcome.



FOCUS BOX 8–1

Sample emergency action plan

Emergency action plan for women's ice hockey

Emergency Personnel

Certified athletic trainer and athletic training students on-site for practice and competition; additional sports medicine staff accessible from main athletic health care facility (across street from arena)

Emergency Communication

Fixed telephone line in ice hockey satellite athletic health care facility (_____-_____)

Emergency Equipment

Supplies (AED, trauma kit, splint kit, spine board) maintained in ice hockey satellite athletic health care facility; additional emergency equipment accessible from athletic health care facility across street from arena (_____-_____)

Roles of First Responders

Immediate care of the injured or ill student athlete
Emergency equipment retrieval

Activation of emergency medical system (EMS)

911 call (provide name, address, telephone number; number of individuals injured; condition of injured; first-aid treatment; specific directions; other information as requested)
Direct EMS to scene

Open appropriate doors
Designate individual to "flag down" EMS and direct to scene

Scene control: Limit scene to first-aid providers and move bystanders away from area

Venue Directions

Ice hockey arena is located on corner of _____ _____ Street and _____ Street adjacent to_____. Two gates provide access to the arena: _____ Street; drive leads to arena as well as rear door of complex (locker room, athletic training room)

Sports Medicine Staff and Phone Numbers

Athletic Trainer in Charge	929-0000
Head Athletic Trainer	929-0001
Team Physician	929-0002

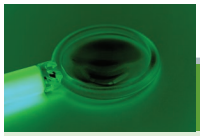
Cooperation Between Emergency Care Providers

Individuals providing emergency care to the injured athlete must cooperate and act professionally.[20] Too often, the rescue squad personnel, a physician, an athletic trainer, or a coach disagree over exactly how the injured athlete should be handled and transported. The coach or athletic trainer is usually the first individual to deal with the emergency situation. The athletic trainer has generally had more training and experience in moving and transporting an injured athlete than the physician has. **If an athletic trainer or physician is not available, the rescue squad should be called to handle an emergency situation.**[11] If the rescue squad is called and responds, the emergency medical technicians (EMTs) should have the final say on how the athlete is to be transported.

To alleviate potential conflicts, it is a good idea to establish procedures and guidelines and to arrange practice sessions at least once a year, with all parties concerned, for handling the injured athlete. The rescue squad may not be experienced in dealing with someone who is wearing a helmet or other protective equipment. Before an incident occurs, the EMTs should understand how athletes wearing various types of athletic equipment should be managed. When dealing with the injured athlete, all egos should be put aside. Certainly, the most important consideration is what is the best for the athlete.

Parent Notification

According to HIPAA regulations discussed in Chapter 2, if the injured athlete is a minor, it is essential that actual consent to treat the athlete be obtained from the parent. **Actual consent should be obtained in writing from the parent or guardian prior to the beginning of the season.**[18] Actual consent is notification that the parent has been informed about what medical personnel thinks is wrong and what they intend to do, and parental permission is granted to give treatment for a specific incident. If the athlete's parents cannot be contacted, then the predetermined wishes of the parent, given at the beginning of a season or school year, can be acted upon. If there is no informed consent, then implied consent on the part of the athlete to save his or her life takes precedence. *Focus Box 8–2* provides an example of a parental consent form for medical treatment of a minor.



FOCUS BOX 8–2

Consent form for medical treatment of a minor

By this signature, I hereby consent to allow the physician(s) and other health care provider(s) selected by myself or the school to perform a preparticipation examination on my child and to provide treatment for any injury or condition resulting from participating in athletics and activities for his or her school during the school year covered by this form. I further consent to allow said physician(s) or health care provider(s) to share appropriate information concerning my child that is relevant to participation in athletics and activities with coaches and other school personnel as deemed necessary.

_____ _____

Parent or Guardian Date

PRINCIPLES OF ON-THE-FIELD INJURY ASSESSMENT

Appropriate medical care cannot be delivered to the injured athlete until some systematic assessment of the situation has been made. This assessment (Figure 8–1) helps to determine the nature of the injury and provides direction in the decision-making process concerning the emergency care that must be rendered.[23] The ***primary survey*** refers to assessment of potentially life-threatening problems including airway, breathing, circulation, severe bleeding, or shock. It takes precedence over all other aspects of victim assessment and should be used to correct life-threatening situations.[23] Once the condition of the victim is stabilized, the ***secondary survey*** is used to take a closer look at the injury sustained by the athlete. The secondary survey gathers specific information about the injury from the athlete, systematically assesses vital signs and symptoms, and allows for a more detailed evaluation of the injury. The secondary survey is done to uncover additional problems in other parts of the body not necessarily associated with the injury, which do not pose an immediate threat to life but which may do so if they remain uncorrected.[23] For example, an athlete with a concussion should also be evaluated for injury to the cervical spine.

An injured athlete who is conscious and stable does not require a primary survey. However, the unconscious athlete must be monitored for life-threatening problems throughout the assessment process.

PRIMARY SURVEY

Treatment of Life-Threatening Injuries

Life-threatening injuries take precedence over all other injuries sustained by the athlete. Situations that are considered life threatening include those that require CPR (i.e., obstruction of the airway, no breathing, no circulation), profuse bleeding, and shock. **Whenever there is a life-threatening situation, the rescue squad should always be called by dialing 911.**

The Unconscious Athlete

The state of unconsciousness provides one of the greatest dilemmas in sports. **With an unconscious athlete, the rescue squad should always be accessed by dialing 911, regardless of whether the situation is life threatening.** Unconsciousness may be defined as a state of insensibility in which there is a lack of conscious awareness. This condition can be brought about by a blow to either the head or the solar plexus, or it may result from general shock. It is often difficult to determine the exact cause of unconsciousness.

The unconscious athlete must always be considered to have a life-threatening injury, which requires an immediate primary survey. Here are guidelines that should be followed when dealing with the unconscious athlete:

1. The body position should be noted immediately, and the level of consciousness and responsiveness determined.
2. Circulation, airway, and breathing (CAB) should routinely be established immediately.[3]
3. Injury to the neck and spine is always a possibility in the unconscious athlete.
4. Rescuers should immediately expose the airway by removing any protective equipment such as the face mask, helmet, and shoulder pads that could interfere with CPR.[25,27,28]
5. If the athlete is supine and breathing, do nothing until consciousness returns.
6. If the athlete is prone and not breathing, logroll him or her carefully to a supine position, and begin CPR immediately.
7. If the patient is prone and breathing, monitor closely until he or she regains consciousness; then the patient should be carefully logrolled onto a spine board because CPR could be necessary at any time.
8. Life support for the unconscious patient should be maintained and monitored until emergency medical personnel arrive.
9. Once the patient is stabilized (no longer exhibits a life-threatening condition), the secondary survey should begin.

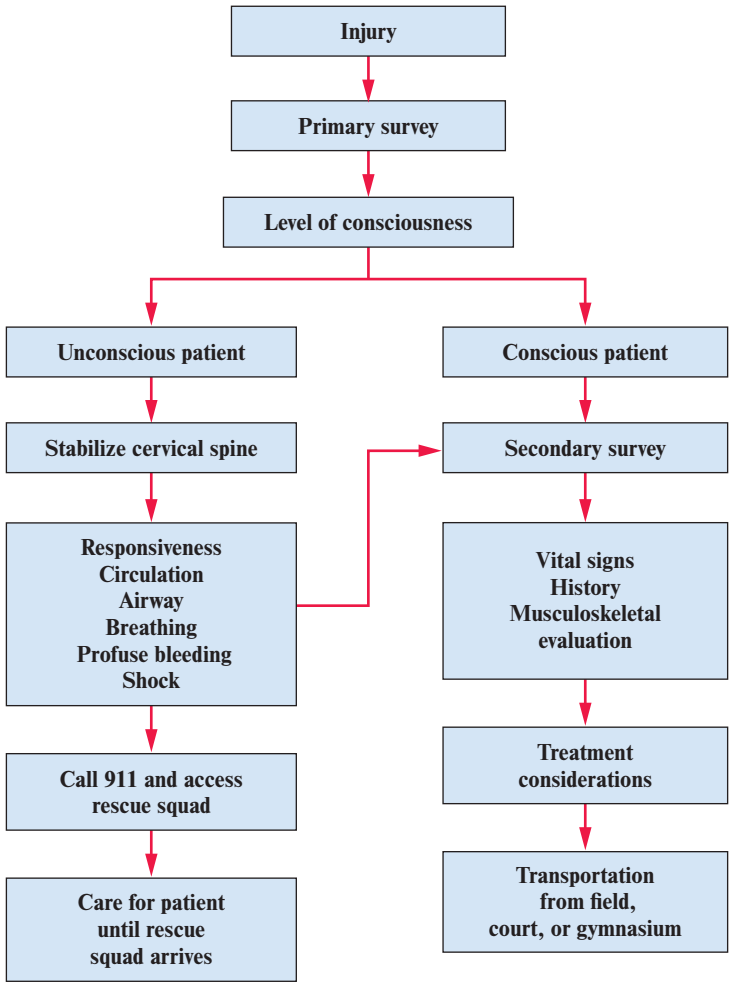


FIGURE 8–1 Flowchart showing the appropriate emergency procedures for the injured patient.

Overview of Emergency Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation (CPR)

It is essential that a careful evaluation of the injured athlete be made to determine whether CPR is necessary (Figure 8–2). **All individuals that are in any way associated with a competitive or recreational sports program should be certified and maintain certification in CPR, AED, and first aid by the American Red Cross, the American Heart Association, or the National Safety Council.**[1,4,15]

Anyone providing care in an emergency situation that will require CPR should be aware that the Good Samaritan Laws were enacted to give legal protection to individuals who voluntarily provide emergency care to an injured victim. However, coaches, other fitness professionals, and even athletic administrators have a "duty to act" given the nature of their job. They are to some extent "responsible" to the athlete and thus must be willing to provide CPR should it be necessary. It is recommended that a first-aid care

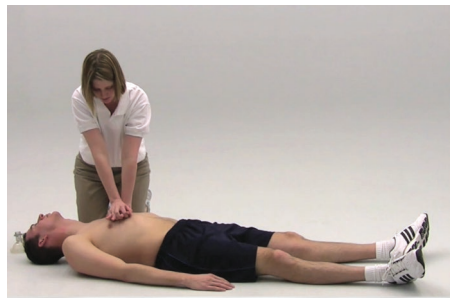
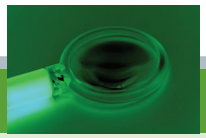


FIGURE 8–2 Everyone should be certified and prepared to perform CPR should it be necessary. © William E. Prentice

8–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A football defensive back is making a tackle and on contact drops his head to tackle the ball carrier. He hits the ground and does not move. The athlete is lying prone, is unconscious, but is breathing.

? How should this situation be managed?



FOCUS BOX 8–3

CPR summary*

For individuals certified in CPR:

For an Adult

- Establish unresponsiveness.
- Look for no breathing and check pulse (<10 seconds)
- If an AED is available, deliver one shock if instructed by the device, and begin CPR.
- Restore blood circulation using chest compressions at a rate of 100–120 per minute.
  - Perform 30 compressions.
  - Use two hands for compression.
  - Compress the chest at least 2 inches and not greater than 2.4 inches.
- Perform mouth-to-mouth breathing after opening the airway.
  - Give two breaths (one second per ventilation).
  - Breathe until the chest rises.
  - Resume chest compressions.
- After five cycles or 2 minutes with no response, use an automated external defibrillator (AED) (Figure 8–3).
  - Administer one shock if instructed by the device, and then continue CPR.
- Continue CPR (30 compressions, 2 breaths) until the person begins to breathe or EMS takes over.

For a Child (Ages 1–8)

- Establish unresponsiveness, and then call 911.
- Look for no breathing and check pulse (<10 seconds)
- Restore blood circulation using chest compressions at a rate of 100 per minute.
  - Perform 30 compressions.
  - Use two hands for compressions.
  - Compress the chest about 2 inches.
- Perform mouth-to-mouth breathing after opening the airway.
  - Give two breaths (1 second per ventilation).
  - Breathe more gently than for an adult until the chest rises.
  - Resume chest compressions.
- After five cycles or 2 minutes with no response, use an automated external defibrillator (AED).
  - Use pediatric pads if available.
  - Administer one shock if instructed by the device, and then continue CPR.
- Continue CPR until the child begins to breathe or EMS takes over.

For an Infant (<1 year)

- Establish unresponsiveness, and then call 911.
- Restore blood circulation with chest compressions at a rate of 100 per minute.
  - Perform 30 compressions.
  - Use two fingers on sternum just below nipple line for compressions.
- Perform mouth-to-mouth/nose breathing after opening the airway.
  - Give two breaths.
  - Breathe more gently than for an adult.
  - Resume chest compressions.
- After five cycles or 2 minutes with no response, reassess.
- Continue CPR until the child begins to breathe or EMS takes over.

For Individuals Who Are Not Certified in CPR

- Perform chest compressions only, at a rate of 100 per minute continuously until EMS arrives.

*Based on 2015 American Heart Association *Guidelines update for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care.*[3]

provider obtain consent from the victim before rendering first aid. However, in the case of an unconscious individual who requires CPR, consent would be implied, meaning that the person would give consent if he or she could.[1]

In 2008, the American Heart Association proposed changes that simplified CPR techniques for those people who have *not* been certified in CPR.[2] This technique, referred to as "hands-only CPR," only requires a rescuer to call 911, then to perform uninterrupted chest compressions (100 to 120 a minute) until paramedics take over or an automated external defibrillator is available to restore a normal heart rhythm.[2] If an **Automated External Defibrillator (AED)** is available, it should be used immediately after it has been determined that the victim is unresponsive. If not, it should be used as soon as it becomes available (Figure 8–3). This action should be taken only for adults who unexpectedly collapse, stop breathing, and are unresponsive.[1]

In 2010, the American Heart Association changed its acronym of **ABC** to **CAB**—circulation, airway, breathing—to help individuals who are certified in CPR remember the order of the procedures.[3] This change emphasized the importance of chest compressions in creating circulation. *Focus Box 8–3* (CPR Summary) summarizes the most recent (2015) guidelines for performing CPR for the adult, child, and infant.

FIGURE 8–3 If available, an automated external defibrillator (AED) should be used. ©William E. Prentice

Controlling Bleeding

An abnormal external or internal discharge of blood is called a *hemorrhage*.[15] The hemorrhage may be venous, capillary, or arterial and may be external or internal. Venous blood is characteristically dark red with a continuous flow, capillary bleeding exudes from tissue and is a reddish color, and arterial bleeding flows in spurts and is bright red. NOTE: The coach or fitness professional must always be concerned with exposure to bloodborne pathogens and other diseases when coming in contact with someone's blood or other body fluids. It is essential to take *universal precautions* to minimize this risk. Disposable nonlatex gloves should be used routinely whenever anyone comes in contact with blood or other bodily fluids. This topic is discussed in detail in Chapter 9.

Controlling External Bleeding External bleeding stems from open skin wounds such as abrasions, incisions, lacerations, punctures, or avulsions. The control of external bleeding is most effectively accomplished by use of direct pressure. Elevation and pressure points may also help to control bleeding.

Direct Pressure Pressure applied directly over a wound with the hand over a sterile gauze pad is now recommended as the primary technique for controlling bleeding.[15] The pressure is applied firmly against the resistance of a bone unless there is an underlying fracture (Figure 8–4). As a gauze pad becomes soaked, additional pads should be placed on top of those already in place to facilitate the clotting process. Pressure may also be applied with a compression bandage holding sterile gauze in place over the wound.

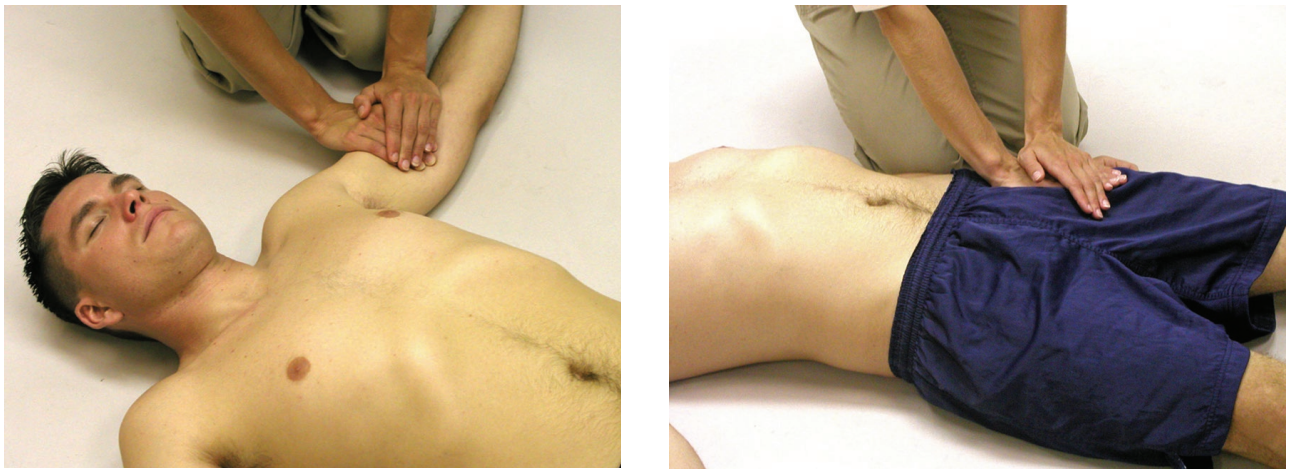
FIGURE 8–4 Direct pressure for the control of bleeding is applied with the hand over a sterile gauze pad. ©William E. Prentice

Elevation Elevation provides an additional means for the reduction of external hemorrhage. Elevating a hemorrhaging part against gravity reduces blood pressure and facilitates venous and lymphatic drainage; consequently, elevating slows bleeding.[21]

External bleeding can usually be managed by using direct pressure, elevation, or pressure points.

Pressure Points When direct pressure combined with elevation fails to slow hemorrhage, the use of pressure points may be the method of choice.[15] Eleven points on each side of the body have been identified for controlling external bleeding; the two most commonly used are the brachial artery in the upper limb and the femoral artery in the lower limb. The brachial artery is compressed against the medial aspect of the humerus, and the femoral artery is compressed as it is detected within the femoral triangle (Figure 8–5).

Internal Hemorrhage Internal hemorrhage is invisible to the eye unless manifested through some body opening or identified through X-ray studies or other diagnostic techniques. Its danger lies in the difficulty of diagnosis. When internal hemorrhaging occurs, subcutaneously such as in a bruise or contusion, or intramuscularly, or in joints, the athlete may be moved without danger in most instances. However, the detection of bleeding within a body cavity such as the skull, thorax, or abdomen is of the utmost importance because it could mean the difference between life and death. Because the symptoms are obscure, internal hemorrhage is difficult to diagnose properly. As a result of this difficulty, **athletes with internal injuries require hospitalization under complete and constant observation by a medical staff to determine the nature and extent of the injuries.** All severe hemorrhaging eventually results in shock and should therefore be treated on



A B

FIGURE 8–5 The two most common sites for pressure points are the **(A)** brachial artery and **(B)** the femoral artery.
©William E. Prentice

this premise. Even if there is no outward indication of shock, the athlete should be kept quiet and body heat should be maintained at a constant and suitable temperature (see the section on shock for the preferred body position).[15]

Managing Shock

With any injury shock is a possibility. But when severe bleeding, fractures, or internal injuries are present, the potential for shock increases. Shock occurs when a diminished amount of blood is available to the circulatory system.[15] As a result, not enough oxygen-carrying blood cells are available to the tissues, particularly those of the nervous system. When shock occurs, a quantity of plasma is lost from the blood vessels to the tissue spaces of the body, leaving the blood cells within the vessels, thus slowing the blood flow. This general collapse of the vascular system causes widespread tissue death, which eventually causes the death of the individual unless treatment is given.[15]

Certain conditions such as extreme fatigue, exposure to extreme heat or cold, extreme dehydration and mineral loss, or illness predispose an athlete to shock. In a situation with potential for a shock condition, the athletic trainer or coach should use other signs to assess the possibility of the athlete's lapsing into a state of shock as an aftermath of the injury. The most important clue to potential shock is the recognition of a severe injury. It may happen that none of the usual signs of shock is present.

Symptoms and Signs The major signs of shock are moist, pale, cool, clammy skin; weak and rapid pulse; increased and shallow respiratory rate; decreased blood pressure; and in severe situations urinary retention and fecal incontinence. If conscious, the athlete may display a disinterest in his or her surroundings or may display irritability, restlessness, or excitement. There may also be extreme thirst.[15]

Signs of shock:

- Blood pressure is low.
- Systolic pressure is usually below 90 mm Hg.
- Pulse is rapid and very weak.
- Athlete may be drowsy and appear sluggish.
- Respiration is shallow and extremely rapid.
- Athlete's skin is pale, cool, clammy.

Management Depending on the causative factor for the shock, the following emergency care should be given:

1. Dial 911 to access emergency care.
2. Maintain body temperature as close to normal as possible.
3. Elevate the feet and legs 8 to 12 inches for most situations. However, shock positioning varies according to the type of injury.[15] For example, for a neck injury, the athlete should be immobilized as found; for a head injury, his or her head and shoulders should be elevated; and for a leg fracture, his or her leg should be kept level and should be raised after splinting.

Shock can also be compounded or initially produced by the psychological reaction of the athlete to an injury situation. Fear or the sudden realization that a serious situation has occurred can result in shock. In the case of a psychological reaction to an injury, the athlete should be instructed to lie down and avoid viewing the injury. This athlete

should be handled with patience and gentleness, but firmness as well. Spectators should be kept away from the injured athlete. Reassurance is of vital concern to the injured individual. The person should be made comfortable by loosening his or her clothing. Nothing should be given by mouth until a physician has determined that no surgical procedures are indicated.

CONDUCTING A SECONDARY ASSESSMENT

If the athlete has no life-threatening injuries, a secondary assessment should be conducted to survey the entire body for injury.

Recognizing Vital Signs

Anyone providing emergency care has to be able to evaluate the existing physiological signs and symptoms of injury. Among these *vital signs* are heart rate, breathing rate, blood pressure, temperature, skin color, pupils of the eye, movement, the presence of pain, and level of consciousness. **It is important to be able to recognize when one or more of the vital signs does not appear to be normal.** Table 8–1 provides a list of what is considered to be normal with each of these vital signs. An individual with any abnormal vital sign should be referred to a physician.

On-Field Injury Inspection

Two phases of injury assessment take place during the secondary evaluation. The first involves the initial on-field injury inspection during which early decisions are made relative to (1) the seriousness of the injury and (2) how the injured athlete should be transported from the playing field. Quite often this on-field inspection must be done by the coach when an athletic trainer

Vital signs to observe:

- Pulse
- Respiration
- Blood pressure
- Temperature
- Skin color
- Pupils
- State of consciousness
- Weakness of movement
- Sensory changes

TABLE 8–1 Vital Signs

Sign	Description
Pulse	Normal pulse rate per minute for adults ranges between 60 and 80 beats and in children from 80 to 100 beats. Trained athletes usually have slower pulse rates. Pulse rate is measured at the carotid artery in the neck or the radial artery in the wrist (Figure 8–6).
Respiration	Normal breathing rate per minute is approximately 12 breaths in adults and 20 to 25 breaths in children. Breathing may be shallow (indicating shock), irregular, or gasping (indicating cardiac involvement).
Blood pressure	Normal systolic pressure for 15- to 20-year-old males ranges from 100 to 140 mm Hg. The diastolic pressure, on the other hand, usually ranges from 60 to 90 mm Hg. The normal blood pressure of females is usually 8 to 10 mm Hg lower than in males for both systolic and diastolic pressures. Blood pressure can only be measured using a blood pressure cuff and a stethoscope (Figure 8–7).
Temperature	Normal body temperature is 98.6°F (37°C). Core temperature is most accurately measured in the rectum or at the tympanic membrane in the ear (Figure 8–8).
Skin color	Red skin may indicate heatstroke, high blood pressure, or elevated temperature. Pale, ashen, or white skin can mean insufficient circulation, shock, fright, hemorrhage, heat exhaustion, or insulin shock. Blue skin (cyanotic), primarily noted in lips and fingernails, usually means an airway obstruction or respiratory insufficiency.
Pupils	Pupils should be of equal size. Pupil should respond to light, resulting in constriction or dilation. Response is more critical than pupil size (Figure 8–9).
State of consciousness	Normally the athlete is alert, is aware of the environment, and responds quickly to vocal stimulation.
Weakness of movement	Weakness of one side of the body compared to the other is not normal and may indicate nerve damage.
Sensory changes	Numbness, tingling, or complete loss of sensation is not normal.

FIGURE 8–6 Pulse rate can be taken at the radial artery. ©William E. Prentice

FIGURE 8–7 Blood pressure is measured using a sphygmomanometer and a stethoscope. ©William E. Prentice

FIGURE 8–8 Thermometer for measuring tympanic membrane temperature. ©William E. Prentice

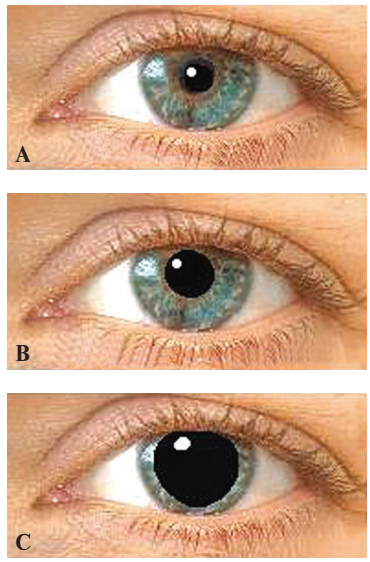


FIGURE 8–9 The pupils of the eyes are extremely sensitive to situations affecting the nervous system **(A)** Constricted, **(B)** Normal, **(C)** Dilated. ©William E. Prentice

is not available. The more thorough off-field assessment is usually done by an athletic trainer or a physician, if necessary.

A logical process must be used to evaluate accurately the extent of a musculoskeletal injury.[16] It is critical to be aware of the major signs that reveal the site, nature, and above all, severity of the injury. Detection of these signs can be facilitated, as is true with all trauma, by understanding the mechanism or traumatic sequence and by methodically inspecting the injury. Knowledge of the mechanism of an injury is extremely important in determining which area of the body is most affected.

In an attempt to understand the mechanism of injury, a brief *history* of the complaint must be taken. The athlete is asked, if possible, about the events leading up to the injury and how it occurred. The athlete is further asked what was heard or felt when the injury took place. Such sounds as a snap, crack, or pop at the moment of injury often indicate bone fracture or injury to ligaments or tendons. A visual *observation* of the injured site is made, comparing it to the uninjured body part. The initial visual *assessment* can disclose obvious deformity, swelling, and skin discoloration.

Some athletes normally have irregular and unequal pupils.

Finally, the region of the injury is gently *palpated*. Feeling, or palpating, a part can, in

8–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A recreational tennis player complains of pain in his shoulder that he has had for about a week. He indicates that he first hurt the shoulder when lifting weights but did not think it was a bad injury. During the past week he has not been able to lift because of pain. He has, however, continued to play but his shoulder seems to be getting worse instead of better.

? What is the process for evaluating this injury?

conjunction with visual and audible signs, indicate the nature of the injury. Palpation is started away from the injury and gradually moved toward it. The extent of point tenderness, the extent of irritation (whether it is confined to soft tissue alone or extends to the bony tissue), and deformities that may not be detected by visual examination alone can be determined through palpation.

Decisions that can be made from the secondary survey:

- Seriousness of injury
- Type of first aid required
- Whether injury warrants referral to a physician
- Type of transportation needed

After the brief on-field injury inspection, the following decisions should be made:

1. The seriousness of the injury.
2. The type of first aid and immobilization necessary.
3. Whether the injury warrants immediate referral to a physician for further assessment.
4. The manner of athlete transportation from the injury site to the sidelines, training room, or hospital.

It is important to document in written form the findings of the on-the-field exam. This should be done as soon after evaluating the injury as practical to ensure accuracy in reporting what was found during the evaluation and the course of action taken.

OFF-FIELD ASSESSMENT

A more thorough off-field evaluation is performed by an athletic trainer, a physical therapist, or a physician once the athlete has been removed from the site of initial injury to a place of comfort and safety.[5] This detailed assessment may be performed on the sidelines, in an emergency room, in the athletic health care facility, or in a sports medicine clinic. The evaluation scheme is divided into four broad categories: history, observation, physical examination (palpation), and special tests (HOPS).[16] Numerous special tests can provide additional information about the extent of injuries.[25] The following discussion provides a brief overview of some of the steps and techniques that can be used in an off-field assessment.

Off-Field assessment consists of:

- History
- Observation
- Physical examination
- Special tests

History

Obtaining as much information as possible about the injury is of major importance. Understanding the mechanism of injury, how the injury occurred, if there is a previous history of this injury, and listening to the complaints of the athlete and how key questions are answered can provide important clues to the exact nature of the injury. The examiner becomes a detective in pursuit of as much accurate information as possible, which will lead to a determination of the true nature of the injury. From the history the examiner develops strategies for further examination and possible immediate and follow-up management.

Observation

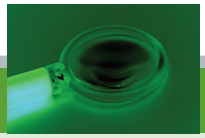
Along with gaining knowledge and understanding of the athlete's major complaint from a history, general observation is also performed, often at the same time the history is taken. Observation should include looking for swelling and edema, deformity, discoloration, and tissue temperature changes.

Palpation

Palpation should include both bones and soft tissues. As with all examination procedures, palpation must be performed systematically, starting with very light pressure followed by gradually deeper pressure and usually beginning away from the site of complaint, then gradually moving toward it.

Special Tests

Special tests have been designed for almost every body region as means for detecting specific pathologies. They are often used to substantiate what has been learned from other testing. For example, special tests are commonly used to determine ligament stability, impingement signs, tightness of specific structures, muscle imbalance, and body alignment discrepancies. Special tests for various joints are discussed in Chapters 14 through 22.



FOCUS BOX 8–4

Initial management of acute injuries

The appropriate technique for initial management of the acute musculoskeletal injury, regardless of where it occurs, is the following:

1. Apply a compression wrap directly over the injury. Wrapping should start distally and continue proximally. Tension should be firm and consistent. It may be helpful to wet the elastic wrap to facilitate the passage of cold from ice packs. After the compression wrap is applied, check the area distal to the wrap for circulation. A dry compression wrap should be left in place for at least 72 hours or until there is little chance of continued swelling.
2. Surround the injured area entirely with ice packs or bags and secure them in place. The ice should be left on for 20 minutes initially and then 1 hour off and 30 minutes on as much as possible over the next 24 hours. During the following 48-hour period, ice should again be applied as often as possible.
3. The injured part should be elevated for most of the initial 72-hour period after injury. It is particularly important to keep the injury elevated while sleeping. This elevation also allows the damaged part to rest after the injury. The initial management of an injury is extremely important to reduce the length of time required for rehabilitation. The end of the mattress can be elevated by placing pillows or a rolled-up blanket underneath.

IMMEDIATE TREATMENT FOLLOWING ACUTE MUSCULOSKELETAL INJURY

For many years the recommendation for managing acute musculoskeletal injuries has included the immediate application of ice, compression, and elevation in combination with some type of protection (i.e., elastic wrap, tape, crutches, walking boot, etc.) and/or rest or restricted activity. The acronyms *RICE* and *PRICE* have both been commonly used to refer to this combination of simultaneously applied treatment techniques, which have been well accepted as a best practice recommendation by most health care providers. However, there is currently insufficient evidence available from randomized controlled trials to determine the relative effectiveness of these techniques.[31]

Most recently, it has been recommended that a more appropriate acronym would be **POLICE,** which stands for protection, optimal loading, ice, compression, and elevation.[7] The collective effects of these initial first-aid/management techniques should focus primarily on limiting the amount of swelling resulting from the injury and minimizing pain. If swelling can be minimized initially, the amount of time required for rehabilitation can be significantly reduced. *Focus Box 8–4* summarizes the specific technique for initial management of acute injuries (Figure 8–10).

Protection

Protection from further injury should occur immediately following injury. If there is a fracture or some joint instability, the injured structure should be immobilized with some type of splint

A

B

C

FIGURE 8–10 POLICE technique: **(A)** A wet compression wrap should be applied over the horseshoe pad; **(B)** ice bags should be secured in place by a dry compression wrap; and **(C)** the leg should be elevated against the wall during the initial treatment period. ©William E. Prentice

POLICE (protection, optimal loading, ice, compression, elevation) are essential in the emergency care of musculoskeletal injuries.

or brace. Choosing an appropriate method of transporting the injured athlete from the field can also help to protect an injury from further damage.

Optimal Loading

Optimal loading refers to determining and subsequently incorporating the appropriate progression from protecting the tissue to prevent exacerbation of the injury, to mechanically loading the tissue to facilitate healing. Early functional activity encourages early recovery. Longer periods of rest during which injured tissues are unloaded may produce adverse changes to joints and tissues. Progressive mechanical loading of injured tissues following acute injury facilitates healing.[7]

Ice (Cold Application)

The application of ice immediately following musculoskeletal injury has been accepted and routinely practiced despite the fact that there is limited strong clinical evidence supporting its efficacy.[14] Ice is most commonly used immediately after injury to decrease cell metabolism and pain in the injured area. Ice may also be beneficial in chronic inflammatory conditions. Cold is also used to reduce the muscle guarding that accompanies pain.[21]

Cold applied to an acute injury will lower metabolism and tissue demands for oxygen and will reduce hypoxia. Evidence indicates that cold application is effective in decreasing pain.[7] The pain-reducing (analgesic) effect is likely one of the greatest benefits. With ice treatments, the patient usually reports an uncomfortable sensation of cold, followed by burning, then an aching sensation, and finally complete numbness.

Cold applied to the skin is capable of lowering the temperature of deeper tissues. Treatments of at least 20 to 30 minutes have traditionally been recommended; however, application of cold for prolonged periods can potentially cause tissue damage.

For best results, ice packs (crushed ice) or ice massage should be used because they produce the most rapid and significant temperature decreases.[6]

Compression

In most cases, immediate compression of an acute injury is considered to be at least as essential as cold and elevation, and in some cases may be superior to them.[21] Placing external pressure on an injury assists in decreasing hemorrhage and edema formation by mechanically reducing the space available for swelling to accumulate.

Many types of compression are available, including elastic wraps, tape, and commercial pneumatic compression devices.[21] A compression wrap should be left in place for at least 72 hours after an acute injury. It has been demonstrated that using an elastic or plastic wrap to hold an ice bag in place significantly decreases subcutaneous tissue temperatures.[21] An elastic wrap that has been soaked in water and frozen in a freezer can provide both compression and cold when applied to a recent injury. Pads can be cut from felt or foam rubber to fit difficult-to-compress body areas. For example, a horseshoe-shaped pad placed bilaterally around the malleoli in combination with an elastic wrap and tape provides focal compression to reduce ankle edema. Although cold is applied intermittently, compression should be maintained throughout the day and if possible throughout the night. Because of the pressure buildup in the tissues, the patient may find it painful to leave a compression wrap in place for a long time. In many chronic overuse problems, the compression wrap should be worn until the swelling is gone.

As is the case with ice, there is limited evidence that supports the use of compression.[30]

8–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A field hockey player trips over an opponent's stick, turning her ankle inward, and falls to the turf, sustaining a grade 2 ankle sprain. She has immediate swelling and significant pain, and on examination, there appears to be some laxity in the ankle joint.

? What specifically should be done to most effectively control the initial swelling associated with this injury?

Elevation

Along with cold and compression, elevation reduces internal bleeding. The injured part, particularly an extremity, should be elevated to eliminate the effects of gravity on blood pooling in the extremities. Elevation assists the veins, which drain blood and other fluids from the injured area and return them to the central circulatory system. The greater the degree of elevation, the more effective the reduction in swelling. For example, in an ankle sprain the leg should be placed so that the ankle is virtually straight up in the air against the wall. The injured part should be elevated as much as possible during the first 72 hours (Figure 8–10C).

EMERGENCY SPLINTING

If an athlete appears to have a fracture, dial 911 to access the rescue squad immediately. Any suspected fracture should be splinted

before the athlete is moved. If EMS is on the way, it is best to make use of the ground to splint the fracture. There is no point in moving the athlete immediately when the paramedics are likely to move him or her again to apply their splints. Transporting a person with a fracture without proper immobilization can result in increased tissue damage, hemorrhage, and shock. The application of splints should be a simple process through the use of commercial emergency splints.[15]

A suspected fracture must be splinted before the athlete is moved.

Regardless of the type of splint used, the principles of good splinting remain the same. Two major concepts of splinting are (1) to splint from one joint above the fracture to one joint below the fracture and (2) to splint the injury in the position it is found. If at all possible, do not move the athlete until he or she has been splinted.

Rapid Form Vacuum Immobilizers

The rapid form vacuum immobilizer is a type of splint that is widely used by both EMTs and athletic trainers. It consists of styrofoam chips contained inside an airtight cloth sleeve that is pliable. It can be molded to the shape of any joint or angulated fracture using Velcro straps. A handheld pump sucks the air out of the sleeve, giving it a cardboardlike rigidity. This splint is most useful for injuries that are angulated and must be splinted in the position in which they are found (Figure 8–11A).

Air Splints

An air splint is a clear plastic splint that is inflated with air around the affected part; it can be used for extremity splinting, but its use requires some special training. This splint provides support and moderate pressure to the body part and affords a clear view of the site for X-ray examination. The inflatable splint should not be used if it will alter a fracture deformity (Figure 8–11B).

Splinting of Lower-Limb Fractures

Fractures of the ankle or leg require immobilization of the foot and knee. Any fracture involving the knee, thigh, or hip needs splinting of all the lower-limb joints and one side of the trunk.

Splinting of Upper-Limb Fractures

Fractures around the shoulder complex are immobilized by a shoulder sling, with the upper limb bound to the body securely. Upper-arm and elbow fractures must be splinted in the position they are found. Lower-arm and wrist fractures should be splinted in a position of forearm flexion and should be supported by a sling. Hand and finger dislocations and fractures should be splinted with tongue depressors, gauze rolls, or aluminum splints.

A

B

FIGURE 8–11 **(A)** Rapid form vacuum immobilizer. **(B)** Air splint. ©William E. Prentice

Splinting of the Spine and Pelvis

Injuries involving a possible spine or pelvic fracture are best splinted and moved using a spine board (see Figure 8–18).

MOVING AND TRANSPORTING THE INJURED ATHLETE

Moving, lifting, and transporting the injured athlete must be executed using techniques that prevent further injury. Moving or transporting the athlete improperly may cause more additional injuries than any other emergency procedure.[31] There is no excuse for poor handling of the

Great caution must be taken when transporting the injured athlete.

injured athlete. Planning should take into consideration all the possible transportation methods and the necessary equipment to execute them. Capable and well-trained personnel, spine boards, stretchers, and a rescue vehicle may be needed to transport the injured athlete.

Suspected Cervical Spine Injury

When injury to the cervical spine is suspected, immediately dial 911 to access the EMS, then work closely with EMS personnel in moving and transporting the injured patient. After the rescue squad has been called, the athletic trainer should assume the responsibility for providing primary emergency care. Primary emergency care involves helping the patient maintain normal breathing, treating the patient for profuse bleeding or shock, and keeping the patient quiet and calm.

A suspected cervical spine injury requires extremely careful handling and is best left to properly trained paramedics, EMTs, or athletic trainers who are well prepared and have access to the proper equipment for transport.[17] Ideally, the patient with a suspected cervical spine injury should not be moved until a physician has examined the athlete and has given permission to move him or her. The most important principle in moving and transporting the injured patient is *spinal motion restriction (SMR)* to prevent further harm to the spinal cord by maintaining the head and neck in neutral alignment with the long axis of the body throughout the entire transport process.[17] There are two techniques that are recommended for stabilizing the cervical spine: the head-squeeze technique (Figure 8–12A), where the rescuer holds the sides of the head with both hands, and the trap-squeeze method (Figure 8–12B), where the rescuer grips the patient's trapezius muscles on either side of the neck and firmly squeezes the head between the forearms.[8]

Equipment Considerations Protective equipment worn by an athlete may complicate lifesaving CPR procedures. The presence of a football, ice hockey, or lacrosse helmet with a face mask and various types of shoulder pads associated with each sport obviously makes CPR more difficult if not impossible.[28] In the past, the recommendation has been that protective equipment (e.g., helmets and shoulder pads in football, hockey, and lacrosse) should be left in place for transport and removed after arrival in the hospital emergency department.[13] Due primarily to recent changes in EMS protocols, the most current recommendation is that **both the helmet and shoulder pads may be removed prior to transport** while continually maintaining cervical spine stabilization (Figure 8–13).[25,26] Removing one or the other independently may compromise the cervical spine.[17]

A

B

FIGURE 8–12 Cervical spine stabilization techniques. **(A)** Head-squeeze technique, **(B)** Trap-squeeze technique. ©William E. Prentice

A rigid cervical collar should be applied at the earliest and most appropriate time possible prior to transporting the injured athlete to an emergency care facility to maximize spinal motion restriction (Figure 8–14).[27]

Placing the Athlete on a Spine Board Until recently the standard of care for patients with a

FIGURE 8–13 Both the helmet and the shoulder pads should be removed prior to transporting the injured athlete to an emergency care facility. ©William E. Prentice

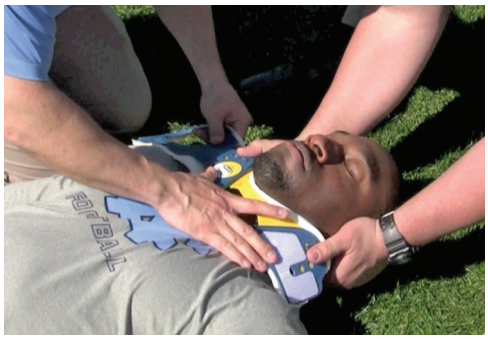


FIGURE 8–14 The cervical spine should be stabilized by applying a rigid cervical collar. ©William E. Prentice

FIGURE 8–16 If the injured patient is lying prone, they should be logrolled to a supine position on a spine board. ©William E. Prentice

cervical spine injury has been to place the patient on a rigid, long spine board for transport. However, there are concerns over the length of time the patient is in discomfort from lying on the rigid, unyielding board. The most current recommendation is to initially place the patient on a long spine board, scoop stretcher, or vacuum mattress for extraction from the field or court and then transfer them, as soon as possible, to a less rigid stretcher for transport.[17]

If the patient is supine, a 6+-person lift should be used to move the patient onto the long spine board using a lift and slide technique (Figure 8–15).[17] The 6+-person lift has been shown to be more effective in restricting motion in the head compared with the logroll technique.[12]

If the patient is prone, he or she must be logrolled onto his or her back to be placed on either a long spine board, a scoop stretcher, or a vacuum mattress (Figure 8–16).[26] To logroll the patient requires a long spine board to be positioned at an angle of 45 degrees close to the patient's side. The patient is then logrolled and pushed onto the spine board while carefully maintaining the axial alignment of the trunk, the hips and thighs, and the lower legs.[23] Once the patient is supine on the long spine board the helmet and should pads can be removed as described earlier, and a rigid cervical collar should be applied immediately.

Once on the spine board, the patient should be secured using spider straps applied across the chest, hips, thighs, and lower legs (Figure 8–17A). Finally, the head should be secured with lateral restraint pads and then secured to the spine board with straps or tape over the chin and forehead (8–17B).

Stretcher Carrying

All 6+ rescuers place themselves in a position to stand, and then, on the command of the person stabilizing the cervical spine, they collectively lift and carry the patient on the spine board to a cart for removal from the field or to an emergency

FIGURE 8–15 A 6+-person lift should be used to move the injured patient onto the spineboard. ©William E. Prentice

A

B

FIGURE 8–17 The injured patient should be secured to the spine board using (A) straps applied across the chest, hips, thighs, and lower legs and (B) lateral restraint pads and straps to secure the head. ©William E. Prentice

FIGURE 8–18 Whenever a serious injury is suspected, a stretcher is the safest method for transporting the athlete. ©William E. Prentice

vehicle for transport to a hospital capable of delivering immediate, definitive care to a patient with a potential spinal cord injury (Figure 8–18).[17] Once the patient arrives at the hospital emergency department, the patient should be transferred off of the spine board to the appropriate hospital bed to prevent potentially detrimental effects related to a prolonged length of time on the spine board or scoop stretcher.[17] Any person with an injury serious enough to require the use of a stretcher must be carefully examined before being moved.

When transporting a person with a limb injury, be certain the injury is splinted properly before transport. Athletes with shoulder injuries are more comfortably moved in a semi-sitting position, unless other injuries preclude such positioning. If injury to the upper extremity is such that flexion of the elbow is not possible, the individual should be transported on a stretcher with the limb properly splinted and carried at the side and with adequate padding placed between the arm and the body.

Ambulatory Aid

Ambulatory aid (Figure 8–19) is support or assistance given to an injured athlete who is able to walk. Before the athlete is allowed to walk, he or she should be carefully scrutinized to make sure that the injuries are minor. Whenever serious injuries are suspected, walking should be prohibited. Complete support should be given on both sides of the athlete by two individuals who are approximately the same height. The athlete's arms are draped over the assistants' shoulders, and their arms encircle his or her back.

Manual Conveyance

Manual conveyance (Figure 8–20) may be used to move a mildly injured individual a greater distance

FIGURE 8–19 The ambulatory aid method of transporting a mildly injured athlete. ©William E. Prentice

than can be walked with ease. As with the use of ambulatory aid, any decision to carry the athlete must be made only after a complete examination to determine the existence of potentially serious conditions. The most convenient carry is performed by two assistants.

FIGURE 8–20 Manual conveyance method for transporting a mildly injured athlete. ©William E. Prentice

Fitting and Using the Crutch or Cane

When an athlete has a lower-limb injury, weight bearing may be contraindicated. Situations of this type call for the use of crutches or a cane. Very often, the athlete is assigned one of these aids without proper fitting or instruction in its use. Improper fit and usage can place abnormal stresses on various body parts. Constant pressure of the body weight on the crutch's axillary pads can cause crutch palsy. This pressure on the axillary or radial nerves and blood vessels can lead to temporary or even permanent numbness in the hands. Faulty mechanics in the use of crutches or canes can produce chronic low back and/or hip strain.

Properly fitting a crutch or cane is essential to avoid placing abnormal stresses on the body.

Fitting the Athlete The adjustable crutch is well suited to the athlete (Figure 8–21). For a correct fit, the athlete should wear low-heeled shoes and stand with good posture and the feet close together. The crutch length is determined first by placing the tip 6 inches (15 cm) from the outer margin of the shoe and 2 inches (5 cm) in front of the shoe. The underarm crutch brace is positioned 1 inch (2.5 cm) below the anterior fold of the axilla. Next, the hand brace is adjusted so that it is even with the athlete's hand, and the elbow is flexed at approximately a 30-degree angle. Fitting a cane to the athlete is relatively easy. Measurement is taken from the superior aspect of the greater trochanter of the femur to the floor while the athlete is wearing street shoes.

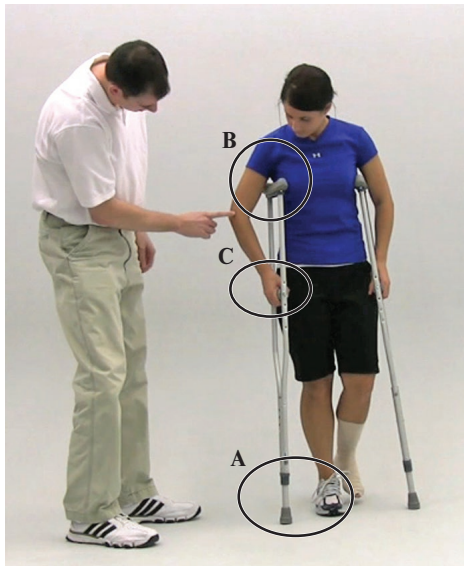


FIGURE 8–21 The crutch must be properly fitted to the athlete. **(A)** The crutch tips are placed 6 inches (15 cm) from the outer margin of the shoe and 2 inches (5 cm) in front of the shoe. **(B)** The underarm crutch brace is positioned 1 inch (2.5 cm) below the anterior fold of the axilla. **(C)** The hand brace is placed even with the athlete's hand, with the elbow flexed approximately 30 degrees. ©William E. Prentice

Walking with Crutches or Cane Many elements of crutch walking correspond with walking. The technique commonly used in sports injuries is the tripod method (Figure 8–22A). In this method, the athlete swings through the crutches without making any surface contact with the injured limb or by partially bearing weight with the injured limb. The following sequence is performed:

1. The athlete stands on one foot, with the affected foot completely elevated or partially bearing weight.
2. Placing the crutch tips 12 to 15 inches (30 to 37.5 cm) ahead of the feet, the athlete leans forward, straightens the elbows, pulls the upper crosspiece firmly against the side of the chest, and swings or steps between the stationary crutches. The athlete should avoid placing the major support in the axilla.
3. After moving through, the athlete recovers the crutches and again places the tips forward.

An alternate method is the four-point crutch gait (Figure 8–22B). In this method, the athlete stands on both feet. One crutch is moved forward, and the

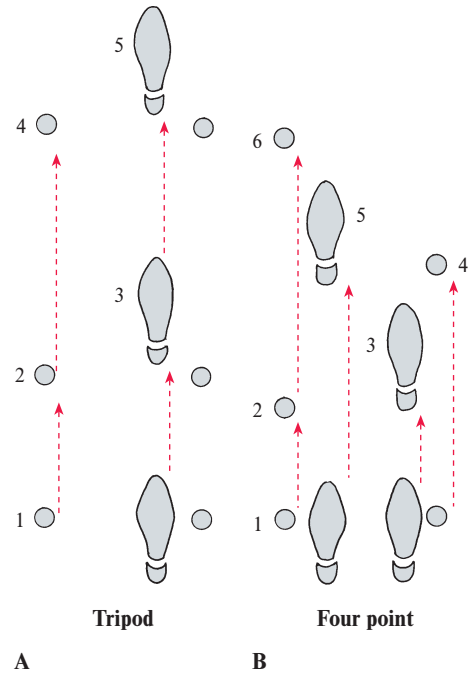


FIGURE 8–22 Crutch gait. **(A)** Tripod method. **(B)** Four-point gait.

opposite foot is stepped forward. The crutch on the same side as the foot that moved forward moves just ahead of the foot. The opposite foot steps forward, followed by the crutch on the same side, and so on.

Once the athlete is able to move effectively on a level surface, negotiating stairs should be taught. As with level crutch walking, a tripod is maintained on stairs. In going upstairs, the uninjured support leg moves up one step while the body weight is supported by the hands. The full weight of the body is transferred to the support leg, followed by moving the crutch tips and injured leg to the step. In going downstairs, the crutch tips and the injured leg move down one step, followed by the support leg. If a handrail is available, both crutches are held by the outside hand, and a similar pattern is followed as with the crutch on each side. The phrase "up with the good—down with the bad" may help the athlete remember the correct sequence.

When the injured athlete needs to be partially weight bearing, a cane or perhaps a single crutch can be used to help with balance. In this case, the athlete should hold the cane or crutch in the hand on the uninjured side and move the cane forward simultaneously with the injured leg. The athlete should avoid leaning too heavily on the cane or crutch. If this is a problem, then the athlete should use two crutches.

ATHLETIC INJURY MANAGEMENT CHECKLIST

The following checklist includes steps that should be taken in initial management and assessment of injury.

- ❑ Have an established emergency action plan in place.
- ❑ Conduct annual training for all staff to practice executing the emergency action plan.
- ❑ Determine whether the athlete is conscious or unconscious.
- ❑ If the athlete is unconscious, dial 911 to access the emergency medical system.
- ❑ Conduct primary survey, looking for life-threatening injuries (loss of breathing, bleeding, shock).
- ❑ Take appropriate measures to manage loss of breathing, bleeding, or shock until the rescue squad arrives. The rescue squad takes over injury management.
- ❑ If there is no loss of consciousness and no life-threatening injury, conduct a secondary survey.
- ❑ Immobilize the injury if necessary.
- ❑ Determine how the athlete should be transported from the field.
- ❑ Notify the parents that an injury has occurred if the athlete is a minor.
- ❑ Manage the injury using appropriate first-aid measures (POLICE).
- ❑ Fit the athlete with a crutch or cane if necessary.
- ❑ Refer the athlete to the team or family physician.

SUMMARY

- An emergency is defined as "an unforeseen combination of circumstances and the resulting state that calls for immediate action." The prime concern of emergency aid is to maintain cardiovascular function and, indirectly, central nervous system function. All sports programs should have an emergency action plan that is activated any time an athlete is seriously injured.
- A systematic assessment of the injured athlete should be made to determine appropriate emergency care. A primary survey assesses and deals with life-threatening situations. Once the athlete is stabilized, the secondary survey makes a more detailed assessment of the injury.
- All staff personnel should be certified in CPR/AED. To relieve an obstructed airway, abdominal thrusts or chest compressions and/or a finger sweep of the throat should be performed. An AED can be critical in restoring normal heart rhythm.
- Hemorrhage can occur externally and internally. External bleeding can be controlled by direct pressure, by applying pressure at pressure points, and by elevation. Internal hemorrhage can occur subcutaneously, intramuscularly, or within a body cavity.
- Secondary assessment consists of four major areas: history, general observation, physical

examination, and special tests. Special tests depend on the body site.
- Protection, optimal loading, ice, compression, and elevation (POLICE) should be used for the immediate care of a musculoskeletal injury. Ice should be applied for at least 20 minutes every 1 to 1½ hours, and compression and elevation should be continuous for at least 72 hours following injury.
- Any suspected fracture should be splinted before the athlete is moved. Commercial rapid form vacuum immobilizers and air splints are most often used in an athletic training setting.
- Great care must be taken in moving the seriously injured athlete. The unconscious athlete must be handled as though he or she has a cervical fracture. Moving an athlete with a suspected serious neck injury must be performed only by persons specifically trained to do so. A spine board should be used, avoiding any movement of the cervical region.
- The proper fitting and instruction in the use of crutches or a cane by an athlete with an injury to the lower extremity is essential.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

8-1 Because of the mechanism of injury, it should be suspected that the athlete has a cervical neck injury. The head should be stabilized throughout. If the athlete is prone and breathing, do nothing until consciousness returns. An on-field exam should establish the athlete's unresponsiveness. Then the athlete should be carefully logrolled onto a spine board because CPR could be necessary at any time. The face mask should be removed in case CPR is required. The helmet and shoulder pads should be left in place. The athlete should then be transported to the emergency facility. Remember, in this situation the worst mistake that can be made is not exercising enough caution.

8-2 First a subjective history should be taken from the injured athlete, followed by an objective examination that includes observation, palpation, special tests, tests for joint stability, and a functional performance evaluation.

8-3 The ankle should be wrapped with a wet elastic compression wrap. Ice should be applied to both sides of the joint over the compression wrap and secured. The ankle should be elevated such that the leg is above 45 degrees at a minimum. The compression wrap, ice, and elevation should be maintained initially for at least 30 minutes, but not longer than an hour. Some determination should be made as to whether a fracture is suspected. Make the appropriate referral to a physician.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. What considerations are important in a well-planned system for handling emergency situations?
2. Discuss the rules for managing and moving an unconscious athlete.
3. What are the life-threatening conditions that should be evaluated in the primary survey?
4. What are the ABCs of life support?
5. Identify the major steps in giving CPR and managing an obstructed airway. When may these procedures be used in a sports setting?
6. List the basic steps in assessing a musculoskeletal injury.
7. What techniques should be used to stop external hemorrhage?
8. What are the signs and symptoms of shock and how do you treat it?
9. What first-aid procedures are used to decrease hemorrhage, inflammation, and pain from a musculoskeletal injury?
10. Discuss the process for assessing an injury.
11. Describe the basic concepts of emergency splinting.
12. How should an athlete with a suspected spinal injury be transported?
13. What techniques can be used when transporting an athlete with a suspected musculoskeletal injury?
14. Explain how to properly fit crutches.

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. American Heart Association. 2015. *Highlights of the 2015 American Heart Association guidelines update for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care*. Dallas, TX: American Heart Association.
2. AHA clarifies CPR guidelines, recommends "hands-only" CPR for bystanders. 2008. *PT: Magazine of Physical Therapy* 16(6):16.
3. American Heart Association. 2010. *Highlights of the 2010 American Heart Association guidelines for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care*. Dallas, TX: American Heart Association.
4. American Red Cross. 2011. *CPR/AED for the professional rescuer and health care providers*. Greensboro, NC: Krames StayWell.
5. Andersen, J., Courson, R., et al. 2002. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Emergency planning in athletics. *Journal of Athletic Training* 37(1):99–104.
6. Bizzini, M. 2012. Ice and modern sports physiotherapy: Still cool? *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 46(4):219.
7. Bleakley, C. 2012. Price needs updating, should we call the POLICE? *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 46:220–221.
8. Boissy, P., & Shrier, I. 2011. Effectiveness of cervical spine stabilization techniques. *Clinical Journal of Sport Medicine* 21(2):80–88.
9. Casa, D., et al. 2012. NATA position statement: Preventing sudden death in sports. *Journal of Athletic Training* 47(1):96–118.
10. Casa, D., et al. 2013. The Inter-Association Task Force for Preventing Sudden Death in Secondary School Athletics Programs: Best-practices recommendations. *Journal of Athletic Training* 48(4):546–553.
11. Courson, R., et al. 2014. Inter-association consensus statement on best practices for sports medicine management for

secondary schools and colleges. *Journal of Athletic Training* 49(1):128–137.
12. Del Rossi, G., & Horodyski, M. 2008. The 6-plus–person lift transfer technique compared with other methods of spine boarding. *Journal of Athletic Training* 43(1):6.
13. Helmet removal guidelines. 2011. *Sports medicine handbook*. Indianapolis, IN: National Federation of State High School Associations.
14. Kaminski, T., et al. 2013. National Athletic Trainer's Association position statement: Conservative management and prevention of ankle sprains in athletes, *Journal of Athletic Training* 48(4):528–545.
15. Karren, K., & Hafen, B. 2017. *First aid for colleges and universities*. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson.
16. Magee, D. L. 2013. *Orthopedic physical assessment*. Philadelphia, PA: W. B. Saunders.
17. National Athletic Trainers Association. 2015. *Inter-association consensus statement: Appropriate prehospital management of the spine injured patient*. Dallas, TX: NATA.
18. Olympia, R. 2007. Emergency planning in school-based athletics: A national survey of athletic trainers. *Pediatric Emergency Care* 23(10):703–708.
19. Plos, J. 2014. Coach, are you ready to save a life? Injury and care knowledge check for sudden cardiac arrest. *Strategies: A Journal for Physical and Sport Educators* 27(2):3–9.
20. Potter, B. 2009. Testing the emergency action plan in athletics. *Athletic Therapy Today* 14(6):73.
21. Prentice, W. 2018. *Therapeutic modalities in rehabilitation*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
22. Rothmier, J. 2009. The role of the automated external defibrillators in sports. *Sports Health: A Multidisciplinary Approach* 1(1):16.
23. Shirer, I., et al. 2012. Can a rescuer or simulated patient accurately assess motion during cervical spine stabilization practice sessions? *Journal of Athletic Training* 47(1):42–51.
24. Swartz, E. 2012. A study of emergency American football helmet removal techniques. *American Journal of Emergency Medicine* 30(7):1163–1168.
25. Swartz, E. 2015. Emergent access to the airway and chest in American football players, *Journal of Athletic Training* 50(7):681–687.
26. Swartz, E. 2011. Pre-hospital emergency removal of football helmets using two techniques. *Pre-Hospital Emergency Care* 15(2):166–174.
27. Swartz, E. 2015. Protective equipment removal in the prehospital setting: We got this. *Athletic Training and Sports Health Care* 7(6):219–221.
28. Swartz E., et al. 2009. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Acute management of the cervical spine injured athlete, *Journal of Athletic Training* 44(3):306.
29. Toresdahl, K. 2013. High school AED programs as markers of emergency preparedness for sudden cardiac arrest. *Journal of Athletic Training* 48(2):242–247.
30. Van den Bekerom, M., 2012. What is the evidence for rest, ice, compression, and elevation therapy in the treatment of ankle sprains in adults? *Journal of Athletic Training* 47(4):435–443.
31. Waninger, K. 2011. Cervical spine injury management in the helmeted athlete. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 10(1):45–49.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

American Academy of Orthopedic Surgeons. 2017. *Sports first aid and injury prevention*. Boston, MA: Jones & Bartlett.

This text teaches coaches how to administer basic first aid to sick and injured athletes.

American Medical Association. 2009. *American Medical Association handbook of first aid and emergency care*. Philadelphia, PA: Random House.

Covering urgent emergency situations and the common injuries and ailments that occur in every family, this AMA guide takes the reader step-by-step through basic first-aid techniques, the medical symptoms to recognize before an emergency occurs, and what to do when one does.

Casa, D. 2016. *Preventing sudden death in sport and physical activity*. Boston, MA: Jones & Bartlett.

Examines the etiology, prevention, recognition, treatment, and return-to-play protocol of the common causes of sudden death in sport offering a blend of clinical, scientific, and research expertise regarding each medical condition that is discussed.

Karren, K., & Hafen, B. 2017. *First aid for colleges and universities*. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson.

A well-illustrated, simple approach to the treatment of emergency illness and injury.

Magee, D. J. 2013. *Orthopedic physical assessment*. Philadelphia, PA: W. B. Saunders.

An extremely well-illustrated book with excellent depth of coverage. Its strength lies in its coverage of injuries commonly found during athletic training.

Miller, M., & Berry, D. 2015. *Emergency response management for athletic trainers*. Baltimore, MD: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Written specifically for athletic trainers and students, this comprehensive text will teach readers how to quickly and effectively assess and manage the broad range of medical emergencies that athletes may experience, including traumatic injuries, respiratory and circulatory arrest, and sudden illness.

WEBSITES

American Heart Association: www.heart.org

The American Heart Association is a leading authority and advocate for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and provides training courses in its use.

American Red Cross: www.redcross.org

The American Red Cross offers many emergency services and training. This site describes those services and introduces information about various training opportunities.

National Safety Council: www.nsc.org

The National Safety Council is a membership organization with resources on safety, health, and environmental topics, training, products, publications, news, and more.

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

©Phil Stapleton

9

Bloodborne Pathogens, Universal Precautions, and Wound Care

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Explain what bloodborne pathogens are and how they can infect fitness professionals and athletes.
- Describe the transmission, symptoms and signs, and treatment of hepatitis B (HBV).
- Describe the transmission, signs and symptoms, management, and treatment of hepatitis C (HCV).
- Describe the transmission, symptoms, and signs of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection.
- Describe how HIV is most often transmitted.
- List the pros and cons of sports participation of athletes with an HBV or HIV infection.
- Identify universal precautions as mandated by the Occupational Safety and Health Administration and how they apply to the coach.
- Discuss the various types of skin wounds and how they should be managed.

It has always been important for any health care provider to be concerned with maintaining an environment that is as clean and sterile as possible.[2,10] In today's society, it has become critical for everyone in the population to take measures to prevent the spread of infectious diseases.[13,28] Failure to do so may expose any individual to potentially life-threatening situations.[3]

Because of the close physical contact that occurs through athletic participation, the potential for spread of infectious disease among fitness professionals, coaches, athletes, and sports medicine personnel is of major concern. Everyone must be aware of the potential dangers of exposure to blood or other infectious materials and take whatever measures are necessary to prevent contamination (Figure 9–1).[13] There should be an emergency action plan developed and policies in place for dealing with bloodborne pathogens and infectious diseases.

Bloodborne pathogens:

- Hepatitis B (HBV)
- Hepatitis C (HCV)
- Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)

WHAT ARE BLOODBORNE PATHOGENS?

Bloodborne pathogens are pathogenic microorganisms that can potentially cause disease. They may be present in human blood and other bodily fluids including semen, vaginal secretions, cerebrospinal fluid, synovial fluid, and any other fluid contaminated with blood.[1,21,24] The three most significant bloodborne pathogens include the hepatitis B virus (HBV), hepatitis C virus (HCV), and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV).[1] A number of other bloodborne diseases exist, including hepatitis A, hepatitis D, hepatitis E, and syphilis. Although HIV has been more widely addressed in the media,

Mode of transmission:

- Human blood
- Semen
- Vaginal secretions
- Cerebrospinal fluid
- Synovial fluid

FIGURE 9–1 **Precautions must be taken to prevent exposure and transmission of bloodborne pathogens.** ©William E. Prentice

HBV and HCV have a higher possibility for spread.[24] HBV is stronger and more durable than HIV.[12] HBV can be spread more easily via sharp objects, open wounds, or bodily fluids when compared to HIV.

Hepatitis B Virus

HBV is a major cause of viral infection that results in swelling, soreness, and loss of normal function in the liver. The number of cases of HBV has risen dramatically during the last 10 years.[21] In the United States, it is estimated that 1.4 million people have chronic hepatitis B and about 5,000 die per year of sickness caused by HBV.[4]

Signs of HBV The signs in a person infected with HBV include flulike symptoms such as fatigue, weakness, nausea, abdominal pain, headache, fever, and possibly jaundice. It is possible that an individual infected with HBV will exhibit no signs or symptoms and may go undetected. In these individuals, the HBV antigen will always be present, and thus the disease may be unknowingly transmitted to others through exposure to blood or other bodily fluids or by intimate contact.

An infected person's blood may test positive for the HBV antigen within 2 to 6 weeks after the symptoms develop. Approximately 85 percent of those infected recover within 6 to 8 weeks.

Prevention Good personal hygiene and avoiding high-risk activities are the best ways to avoid HBV.[10] HBV can survive for at least a week in dried blood or on contaminated surfaces and may be transmitted through contact with these surfaces. Caution must be taken to avoid contact with any blood or other fluid that potentially contains a bloodborne pathogen.

Management A vaccine is now available that can prevent contraction of HBV.[10] The vaccine requires a series of three inoculations spread over a 6-month period. In 1991 the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) mandated that vaccination against HBV must be made available by an employer at no cost to any individual who may be exposed to blood or other bodily fluids and may thus be at risk of contracting hepatitis B.[23] **Any individual working in an allied health care profession who may potentially come in contact with blood should receive HBV immunization.**[10]

OSHA: Occupational Safety and Health Administration

Hepatitis C

Originally referred to as non-A, non-B hepatitis, hepatitis C is both an acute and chronic form of liver disease caused by the hepatitis C virus (HCV). HCV is the most common chronic bloodborne infection in the United States. At least 85 percent of those infected acutely with HCV become chronically infected, and 67 percent develop chronic liver disease. It is the leading indication for liver transplant. Three percent of those with chronic liver disease die from cirrhosis or liver cancer. It is estimated that 170 million people worldwide and 4.5 million Americans have been infected with HCV, of whom 2.7 million are chronically infected.[22]

Symptoms and Signs Eighty percent of those infected with HCV have no signs or symptoms. Those who are symptomatic may be jaundiced and/or have mild abdominal pain, particularly in the upper right quadrant; loss of appetite; nausea; fatigue; muscle or joint pain; and/or dark urine.

Prevention HCV is not spread by sneezing, hugging, coughing, food or water, sharing eating utensils or drinking glasses, or casual contact. It is rarely spread through sexual contact. It is spread by contact with the blood of an infected person.[7] It is most commonly transmitted by sharing needles or syringes. Therefore, it is a significant risk of getting a tattoo or body piercing. However, it can also be transmitted by sharing personal care items that might have blood on them (razors, toothbrushes). Athletic trainers should always follow routine barrier precautions and safely handle needles and other sharp objects.

Management Unlike HBV, presently there is no vaccine for preventing HCV transmission. Several blood tests can be done to determine whether a person has been infected with HCV. A physician may order just one or a combination of these tests. It is possible to find HCV within 1 to 2 weeks after being infected with the virus. A single positive test indicates infection with HCV. However, a single negative test does not prove that a person is not infected. When hepatitis C is suspected, even though an initial test is negative, the test should be repeated.[22]

HCV-positive persons should be evaluated by their doctor for liver disease. Peginterferon and ribavirin are two drugs used in combination that appear to be the most effective for the treatment of persons with chronic hepatitis C. Drinking alcohol can make liver disease worse.

Human Immunodeficiency Virus

HIV infection is caused by a family of complex viruses that invade normal healthy cells, thus decreasing the effectiveness of the host cell in preventing disease.[20] HIV is a viral infection that has the potential to eventually destroy the immune system. The rapid increase in the number of known individuals who are HIV positive is alarming. The World Health Organization estimated that as of 2013, 35 million people worldwide were living with HIV/AIDS. In 2013 alone, HIV/AIDS-associated illnesses caused approximately 1.5 million deaths worldwide.[30]

Symptoms and Signs of HIV As with HBV, HIV is transmitted by exposure to infected blood or other bodily fluids or by intimate sexual contact.[27] Symptoms of HIV include fatigue, weight loss, muscle or joint pain, painful or swollen glands, night sweats, and fever. HIV antibodies can be detected in a blood test within a year following exposure. Like people with HBV, people with HIV may be unaware that they have contracted the virus and may go as long as 8 to 10 years before developing any signs or symptoms. Unfortunately, most individuals who test positive for HIV have a high probability of eventually developing acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). Table 9–1 summarizes information on HBV, HCV, and HIV.

AIDS: Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome

Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome AIDS is an acronym for acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. A syndrome is a collection of signs and symptoms that are recognized as the effects of an infection. A person who has AIDS has no protection against even the most minor infections and thus is extremely vulnerable to developing a variety of illnesses, opportunistic infections, and/or cancers that cannot be stopped.[3] A positive HIV test cannot predict when the individual might show the symptoms of AIDS. Those individuals who develop AIDS generally die within 3 years after the symptoms appear.

Management Unlike HBV, there is no vaccine for HIV. Much research is being done to find a preventive vaccine and an effective treatment. Presently, it appears that certain combinations of various antiviral drugs, which have been labeled "cocktails," can slow replication of the virus and improve prospects for survival.

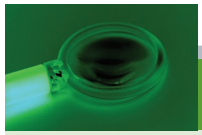
Prevention The best means for prevention is through education.[27] Athletes should be educated about HIV. Athletes must be made to understand that their greatest risk for contracting HIV is through intimate sexual contact with an infected partner and not through contact that occurs during athletic participation.[27] Practicing safe sex is of major importance. (See *Focus Box 9–1*.) The athlete must choose nonpromiscuous sex partners and use condoms for vaginal or anal intercourse.[27] Latex condoms provide a barrier against both HBV and HIV. Male condoms should have reservoir tips to reduce the chance of ejaculate being released from the sides of the condom. Condoms that are prelubricated are less likely to tear. Water-based, greaseless spermicides or lubricants should be avoided. If the condom tears, a vaginal spermicide should be used immediately. The condom should carefully be removed and discarded.[8]

HIV is most often transmitted through intimate sexual contact.

The use of latex condoms can reduce the chances of contracting HIV.

TABLE 9–1 Transmission of Hepatitis B and C Viruses and Human Immunodeficiency Virus

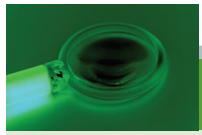
Disease	Symptoms and Signs	Mode of Transmission	Infectious Materials
Hepatitis B virus	Flulike symptoms, jaundice	Direct and indirect contact	Blood, saliva, semen, feces, food, water, and other products
Hepatitis C virus	Jaundice, upper right quadrant pain, loss of appetite, nausea, fatigue, dark urine	Direct and indirect contact with blood	Blood
Human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome	Fever, night sweats, weight loss, diarrhea, severe fatigue, swollen lymph nodes, lesions	Direct and indirect contact	Blood, semen, vaginal fluid



FOCUS BOX 9–1

HIV risk reduction

- Avoid contact with others' bodily fluids, feces, and semen.
- Avoid sharing needles (e.g., injecting anabolic steroids or human growth hormones).
- Choose nonpromiscuous sex partners.
- Limit sex partners.
- Consistently use condoms but understand that these will not prevent all sexually transmitted infections (STIs).
- Avoid drugs that alter good judgment.
- Avoid sex with known HIV carriers.
- Get regular tests for STIs.
- Practice good hygiene before and after sex.



FOCUS BOX 9–2

Bloodborne pathogen risk categories for sports[27]

- Greatest risk: Boxing, tae kwon do, wrestling, rugby
- Moderate risk: Basketball, field hockey, football, ice hockey, judo, soccer, team handball
- Lowest risk: Archery, badminton, baseball, bowling, canoeing/kayaking, cycling, diving, equestrian sports, fencing, figure skating, gymnastics, modern pentathalon, racquetball, rhythmic gymnastics, roller skating, rowing, shooting, softball, speed skating, skiing, swimming, synchronized swimming, table tennis, volleyball, water polo, weightlifting, yachting

DEALING WITH BLOODBORNE PATHOGENS IN ATHLETICS

In general, the chances of transmitting HIV among athletes is low. There is minimal risk of on-field transmission of HIV from one player to another in sports.[8] In fact, at this writing there have been no validated reports of HIV transmission in sports.[8]

Sports that have a potentially higher risk for transmission are those that involve close physical contact and possible direct contact with the blood of another person.[12] Sports such as the martial arts, wrestling, and boxing have more theoretical potential for transmission.[8] (See *Focus Box 9–2*.)

Policy Regulation

Athletes participating in organized sports are subject to procedures and policies relative to transmission of bloodborne pathogens.[18] The United States Olympic Committee (USOC), the National Collegiate Athletic Association (NCAA), the National Federation of State High School Associations (NFHS), the National Basketball Association (NBA), the National Hockey League (NHL), the National Football League (NFL), and Major League Baseball (MLB) have established policies to help prevent the transmission of bloodborne pathogens. They have also initiated programs to help educate athletes under their control.

All institutions should take the responsibility for educating their student-athletes about how bloodborne pathogens are transmitted.[18] Efforts should also be made to educate the parents of high-school athletes.[18] Professional, collegiate, and high-school athletes should be made to understand that the real risk of contracting HBV or HIV is through their off-the-field activities, which may include unsafe sexual practices and sharing needles, particularly in the use of steroids.[27] Athletes, perhaps more than other individuals in the population, tend to think that they are immune and that infection will always happen to someone else.

9–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A wrestler is concerned about the possibility of contracting HIV from wrestling with a sweaty partner.

? What can this athlete be told to help him ease his fear?

Each institution should implement policies and procedures concerning bloodborne pathogens.[18] A survey of NCAA institutions found that a large number of health care providers at many colleges and universities demonstrated significant deficits in following the universal guidelines mandated by OSHA. In a sports medicine or other health care setting, following these universal precautions protects the athlete, the coach, and the health care providers.[20]

HIV and Athletic Participation

There has been controversy regarding whether asymptomatic HIV carriers should participate in sports.[13] Contact with others' bodily fluids should obviously be avoided, and the participant should also avoid engaging in exhaustive exercise that may lead to an increased susceptibility to infection.[18]

The Americans with Disabilities Act of 1991 states that athletes infected with HIV cannot be discriminated against and may be excluded from participation only on a medically sound basis. Exclusion must

be based on objective medical evidence that takes into consideration the risk of infection to others and of potential harm to the athlete and what means can be taken to reduce these risks.[3]

For additional information on HIV and AIDS care, contact the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) National AIDS Hotline: 1-800-232-4636.

Testing Athletes for HIV

HIV testing should not be used as a screening tool to determine if an athlete can participate in sports. Mandatory testing for HIV may not be allowed for legal reasons related to the Americans with Disabilities Act. In terms of importance, mandatory testing should be secondary to education to prevent transmission of HIV. Neither the NCAA nor the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends mandatory HIV testing for athletes.[18]

Athletes who engage in high-risk activities should be encouraged to seek voluntary anonymous testing for HIV. A blood test may detect the presence of the HIV virus within 3 months to 1 year following exposure. Testing therefore should occur at 6 weeks, at 3 months, and at 1 year after exposure.[8]

Many states have enacted laws that protect the confidentiality of the HIV-infected person. For example, you cannot ask anyone if they are HIV positive on a medical history form. Coaches should be familiar with the laws of their state and make every effort to guard the confidentiality and anonymity of HIV testing for their athletes.[3]

Throughout the remainder of this text, wherever there is a discussion of an injury or a technique of care that requires universal precautions, the following icon will appear in the margin.

UNIVERSAL PRECAUTIONS IN AN ATHLETIC ENVIRONMENT

The guidelines instituted by OSHA were developed to protect the health care provider and the patient against bloodborne pathogens.[23] It is essential that every sports program develop and carry out a bloodborne pathogen exposure control plan.[12] This plan should include counseling, education, volunteer testing, and the management of bodily fluids.[24]

OSHA's guidelines should be followed by anyone coming in contact with blood or other bodily fluids.[29] Following are considerations specific to the sports arena.

Preparing the Athlete

Before an athlete participates in practice or competition, all open skin wounds or lesions must be covered with a dressing that is fixed in place and does not allow for transmission to or from an athlete.[12] An occlusive dressing lessens the chances of cross-contamination and also reduces chances of the wound reopening, by keeping it moist and pliable.

When Bleeding Occurs

As mandated by the NCAA and the USOC, open wounds or other skin lesions considered a risk for disease transmission should be treated aggressively.[18,28] This means that athletes with active bleeding must be removed from participation as soon as possible and returned only when it is deemed safe by the medical staff.[11] Uniforms containing blood must be evaluated for infectivity. When blood is present on a uniform (unless the uniform is saturated), it can sometimes be removed with hydrogen peroxide, without having to remove the entire uniform. A uniform that is saturated with blood must be removed and changed before the athlete can return to competition.[11] All personnel managing potential infective wound exposures must follow universal precautions.[21]

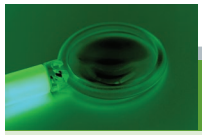
Personal Precautions

Health care personnel working directly with bodily fluids on the field must make use of the appropriate protective equipment in all cases in which there is potential contact with bloodborne pathogens. Protective equipment includes disposable nonlatex gloves, gowns, or aprons; masks and shields; eye protection; nonabsorbent gowns; and disposable mouthpieces for resuscitation devices.[23] **One-time-use nonlatex gloves should be used in treating the athlete.** The choice of glove type should be appropriate to the situation. Although the ideal prophylactic glove is made of latex, unfortunately, many people have allergies to latex.[9] Thus, one should consider wearing nonlatex

9–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A soccer player jumps to win a head ball, and an opponent's head smashes the right eyebrow, creating a significant laceration. The athlete is conscious but is bleeding profusely from the wound.

? What techniques are most effective to control the bleeding, and what should be done to close the wound?



FOCUS BOX 9–3

Glove removal and use (Figure 9–2)

1. Avoid touching personal items when wearing contaminated gloves.
2. Remove first glove by using the other gloved hand, and turn it inside out, beginning at the wrist and peeling it off without touching skin.
3. Remove second glove while trapping the other glove inside, making sure not to touch ungloved hand to soiled surfaces.
4. Discard gloves that have been used, discolored, torn, or punctured in white biohazard bags.
5. Wash hands immediately after glove removal.

gloves such as those made of vinyl or nitrile rubber. These gloves may be used when the superior barrier protection of latex is not needed such as when there is minimal prospect for long-term exposure to blood or other bodily fluids.[9] Double gloving is suggested when there is heavy bleeding or when sharp instruments are used. Gloves are always carefully removed following their use (see *Focus Box 9–3*). In cases of emergency, heavy toweling may be used until gloves can be obtained.[2]

Hands and all skin surfaces that come in contact with blood or other bodily fluids should be washed immediately with soap and water or other germicidal agents.

First-aid kits must have protection for hands, face, and eyes as well as resuscitation mouthpieces. Kits should also make towelettes available for cleaning skin surfaces.[7]

Nonlatex gloves should be worn when dealing with blood or other bodily fluids.

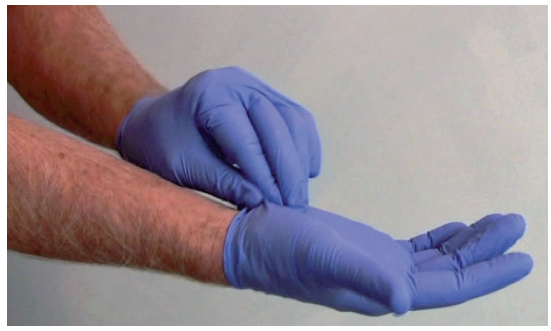
Availability of Supplies and Equipment

In keeping with universal precautions, the sports program must have available chlorine bleach, antiseptics, proper receptacles for soiled equipment and uniforms, wound care bandages, and a designated container for disposal of sharps such as needles, syringes, or scalpels.[11]

Biohazard warning labels should be fixed to regulated wastes, refrigerators containing blood, and other containers used to store or ship potentially infectious materials (Figure 9–3). The labels are fluorescent orange or red and should be affixed to containers. White bags should be used for disposal of potentially infected materials such as contaminated gloves and bandages. Sealed white bags can be placed in regular trash containers for disposal. If you are not sure whether any substance qualifies as biohazardous waste, the best practice is to use a biohazard bag to dispose of it.[14]

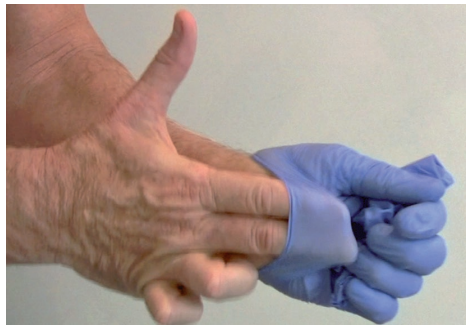
Universal precautions minimize the risk of exposure and transmission.

Disinfectants All contaminated surfaces, such as the field or



A

B



C

FIGURE 9–2 **Technique for removing nonlatex gloves. (A)** Grasp one gloved hand at the wrist with the opposite hand and peel that glove off. **(B)** Ball up the removed glove and hold it in the opposite gloved hand. **(C)** Then peel off the second glove trapping the first glove inside. ©William E. Prentice

9–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

All institutions sponsoring athletic programs must initiate and carry out a bloodborne pathogen exposure control plan.

? What is the policy on universal precautions in an athletic environment, as proposed by OSHA?

FIGURE 9–3 Soiled linens should be placed in a leakproof bag marked as a biohazard. ©William E. Prentice

Contaminated surfaces should be cleaned with a 10 percent bleach solution.

court, should be cleaned immediately with a solution consisting of one part bleach to ten parts water (1:10) or with a disinfectant approved by the Environmental Protection Agency.[11] Disinfectants should inactivate the virus. Towels or other linens that have been contaminated should be bagged and separated from other laundry. Soiled linen is to be transported in red or orange containers or bags that prevent soaking or leaking and are labeled with the biohazard warning labels (refer to Figure 9–3). Contaminated laundry should be washed in hot water (160°F for 25 minutes) using a detergent that deactivates the virus.[11] Laundry done outside the institution should be taken to a facility that follows OSHA standards. Gloves must be worn during bagging and cleaning of contaminated laundry.[23]

Sharps *Sharps* refers to sharp objects such as needles, razor blades, and scalpels. Extreme care should be taken when handling and disposing of sharps, to minimize risk of puncturing or cutting the skin. OSHA mandates that sharps be disposed of in a leakproof and puncture-resistant container.[14,23] The container should be red or orange and labeled as a biohazard (Figure 9–4).

Protecting the Caregiver

It must be pointed out that OSHA guidelines for bloodborne pathogens are intended to protect health care employees and not the athlete.[23] Staff other than sports medicine personnel and occasionally coaches do not normally come in contact with blood or other bodily fluids from an injured athlete, so their risk is considerably reduced. It is the responsibility of the high school, college, professional team, or clinic to ensure the safety of all

FIGURE 9–4 Sharps should be disposed of in a red, puncture-resistant, plastic container marked as a biohazard. ©William E. Prentice

staff members as potential health care providers by instituting and annually updating policies for education on the prevention of transmission of bloodborne pathogens through contact with athletes.[18] The institution must provide the necessary supplies and equipment to carry out these recommendations. All staff members have the personal responsibility of adhering to these policies and guidelines and enforcing them.

Protecting the Athlete from Exposure

Several additional recommendations may further help protect the athlete. For example, the USOC supports the required use of mouthpieces in those high-risk sports listed in Focus Box 9–2. All athletes should shower immediately after practice or competition. Athletes who may be exposed to HIV or HBV should be evaluated for immunization against HBV.

Postexposure Procedures

Following a report of an exposure incident, the exposed individual should have a confidential medical evaluation that includes documentation of the exposure route, identification of the source individual, a blood test, counseling, and an evaluation of reported illness. Again, the laws that pertain to reporting and notification of the test results relative to confidentiality vary from state to state.[23]

CARING FOR SKIN WOUNDS

Skin wounds are extremely common in sports. A wound is defined as trauma to tissues that causes a break in the continuity of that tissue.[19] The skin consists of two layers, the epidermis and the dermis. Because of the soft, pliable nature of skin, it can be easily traumatized. Numerous mechanical forces can injure soft tissue. These forces produce friction or rubbing, scraping, compression or pressure, tearing, cutting, and penetration, each of which can adversely affect the skin's integrity.[16] Wounds are classified according to the mechanical force that caused them.

Types of Wounds

Various types of wounds may be classified as follows (Figure 9–5):

Abrasions (Figure 9–5A) are common conditions in which the skin is scraped against a rough surface such as grass, artificial playing surface, floor, or mat. The top layer of skin wears away, exposing numerous blood capillaries. This exposure, with dirt and foreign materials scraping and penetrating the skin, increases the probability of infection unless the wound is properly debrided and cleansed.[16] When large areas are abraded, the wound tends to be quite painful.

Lacerations (Figure 9–5B), also common in sports, occur when a blunt force has been delivered over a sharp bone or a bone that is poorly padded, giving a wound the appearance of a jagged-edge cavity. As with abrasions, lacerations present an environment conducive to infections.[25] The same mechanism that causes a laceration also can lead to a skin avulsion, in which a piece of skin is ripped off.[6]

Incisions (Figure 9–5C) are wounds with smooth edges that often appear where a sharp or pointed object such as a knife or piece of glass tears the skin. Because the torn edges are smooth and can be easily cleaned and pulled together by either sterile strips or sutures, they are not as serious as the other types of exposed wounds.

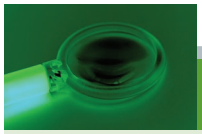
Puncture wounds (Figure 9–5D) can easily occur during physical activities and can be fatal. Direct penetration of tissues by a pointed object such as a track shoe spike can introduce the tetanus bacillus into the bloodstream, possibly making the athlete a victim of lockjaw. All puncture wounds and severe lacerations should be referred immediately to a physician.

Avulsion wounds (Figure 9–5E) occur when skin is torn from the body, and they are frequently associated with major bleeding. If the torn tissue may possibly be reattached, the avulsed tissue should be placed on moist gauze, preferably saturated with saline solution. It is then put into a plastic bag, immersed in cold water, and taken along with the athlete to the hospital for reattachment.[6]

Immediate Care

It is of the utmost importance to the well-being of the athlete that open wounds be cared for immediately.[15] All wounds, even those that are relatively superficial, must be considered to be contaminated by microorganisms and therefore must be cleaned, medicated (when called for), and dressed as soon as possible.[16] Although most traumatic skin lesions heal without consequence, appropriate management can lessen the risk of adverse reactions and infection and create an environment conducive to healing (i.e., moist, clean, warm). To minimize the chances of infection, it is critical that the wound be cleaned as thoroughly as possible.[26] It is recommended that the wound initially be cleaned using copious amounts of soap and water or sterile saline.[6] Neither antibacterial solutions nor hydrogen peroxide should be used to clean the wound initially. Dressing wounds requires a sterile environment to prevent infections.[5] *Focus Box 9–4* describes how to help reduce wound infections.

FIGURE 9–5 Skin wounds. **(A)** Abrasion on forearm. **(B)** Laceration of the eyebrow with sutures. **(C)** Incision on finger. **(D)** Puncture on sole of foot. **(E)** Avulsion on ankle. (a) Courtesy of Dean Morrell, MD, Department of Dermatology, University of North Carolina; (b–e) ©William E. Prentice



FOCUS BOX 9–4

Suggested practices in wound care

The following are suggested procedures to reduce the possibility of wound infections.

1. Follow all OSHA standards when managing traumatic skin lesions.
2. Cleanse the wound bed and periwound tissues as soon as possible with normal saline or tap water irrigation.
3. Use antiseptics (i.e., povidone-iodine, hydrogen peroxide) with caution.
4. If necessary, debride the wound using irrigation, wet-to-moist, and conservative sharp debridement.
5. Cover the wound with a nonocclusive or occlusive dressing based on the type and depth of the wound and amount of exudate.
6. Nonocclusive dressings can delay normal healing, increase the risk of infection, and should be used with caution.
7. Occlusive dressings and a moist wound environment increase rates of healing and decrease rates of infection.
8. Visually inspect the patient, wound bed, and periwound tissues daily for signs and symptoms of the development of adverse reactions and infection.

Dressings

Sterile dressings should be applied to keep a fresh wound clean. Sterile dressings come in various sizes, from simple gauze pads to adhesive bandages. Occlusive dressings provide a complete barrier around and over a wound and are air-tight and water-tight. They prevent any kind of bacteria or other contaminants from getting into the wound. Occlusive dressings appear to be extremely effective in minimizing scarring.[5] If a wound is discharging fluid (serum), the dressing should be changed often to minimize bacterial growth. After drainage has stopped, there is no need for a dressing. Antibacterial ointments may be applied to limit surface bacterial growth and prevent the dressing from sticking to the wound. Topical antibiotics are recommended. Saline solution is recommended for cleaning wounds repeatedly, followed by the application of an antibiotic ointment to keep the wound moist. Good wound care will minimize the inflammatory response, speed healing, and minimize scarring.

Are Sutures Necessary?

Deeper lacerations, incisions, or occasionally puncture wounds may require some sort of manual closure using sutures.[25] **If an athlete has a wound that appears to be severe, he or she should be sent to a physician, who will make a decision as to whether it is necessary to use sutures to close the wound.**[25] Sutures should be put in as soon as possible but certainly within a maximum of 12 hours following injury. In relatively simple wounds, the edges may be brought in close approximation by the use of sutures to minimize scar formation. Before closing a wound with a suture, the physician will usually anesthetize the local area with a short-acting medication. Fine suture material and minimal tightening limit any additional tissue damage, inflammation, and scarring. Wounds in areas that heal more slowly (areas that are less vascularized) or are in high-stress areas require larger suture material and that the stitches be left in longer. Sometimes sutures may be removed after only a few days, to minimize scarring.

The physician may decide that the wound does not require sutures and that the torn tissues may be approximated using steri-strips, butterfly bandages, or skin glue, which is an adhesive that bonds the edges of a wound together.

Signs of Wound Infection

The classic signs of infection are the same as those for inflammation, including pain, heat, redness, swelling, and disordered function. In addition, pus may form due to an accumulation of white blood cells, and a fever may occur as the immune system fights the bacterial infection.[31] Most wound infections can be treated with antibiotic drugs. However, in recent years some strains of a bacterium found on the skin called *Staphylococcus aureus* have become resistant to some antibiotics. The bacteria are referred to as methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA). MRSA strains are much more difficult to treat because many antibiotics do not work.[17] Therefore, infections tend to become more severe than they may otherwise have been if the cause of the infection is not diagnosed early, and antibiotics that are given at first may not work. Infections that start in the skin may spread to cause more serious infections.[17] MRSA is discussed in detail in Chapter 23.

Tetanus Tetanus is a bacterial infection that causes fever and convulsions. A tetanus infection occurs most often with a puncture wound. Tonic spasm of skeletal muscles is always a possibility for any nonimmunized athlete. The tetanus bacillus enters a wound as a spore and, depending on individual susceptibility, acts on the motor end plate of the central nervous system. After initial childhood immunization with a tetanus vaccine, boosters should be given every 10 years.[16] An athlete not immunized should receive an injection of tetanus immune globulin (Hyper-Tet) immediately after sustaining a skin wound. Focus Box 9–4 describes how to help reduce wound infections and Table 9–2 details the care of wounds.

TABLE 9–2	Care of Skin Wounds		
Type of Wound	**Action of Athletic Trainer**	**Initial Care**	**Follow-Up Care**
Abrasion	Cleanse, debride, and dress wound.	Cleanse and debride wound bed with normal saline or tap water irrigation. Cleanse periwound tissues with saline or tap water irrigation or scrubbing with sterile gauze soaked with saline, tap water, or antiseptic. Dry the periwound tissues. Dress the wound with a nonocclusive or occlusive dressing based on wound depth and amount of exudate. Apply secondary dressing if needed.	Change dressing based on type; visually inspect daily for adverse reactions and infection.
Laceration/ incision	Cleanse around the wound. Avoid wiping more contaminating agents into the area; refer to a physician.	Cleanse and debride wound with saline or tap water irrigation. Avoid using tap water if bone or tendon is exposed. Cleanse periwound tissues with irrigation or scrubbing. Dry the periwound tissues. Tissue approximation and closure will depend on wound length, width, depth, and location.	Change dressing based on type; visually inspect daily for adverse reactions and infection.
Puncture	Visually inspect wound and possible embedded object; cleanse, debride, and dress wound; refer to physician if necessary.	Remove small and visible objects with sterile instruments. Avoid pushing the object deeper into the cavity. Allow bleeding to occur to self-cleanse the wound. Control venous or arterial bleeding. Cleanse the wound and periwound tissues with saline or tap water irrigation. Use gentle irrigation to prevent pushing debris and bacteria into the cavity. Dress wound with a nonocclusive or occlusive dressing based on wound depth and amount of exudate.	Closely monitor patient and wound area daily for adverse reactions and infection; change dressing based on type; check tetanus immunization.
Avulsion	Cleanse, debride, and dress wound; refer to physician if necessary.	Cleanse and debride wound with saline or tap water irrigation. Avoid using tap water if exposed bone or tendon is present. Apply saline-soaked gauze over the wound and cover with additional gauze. Gently irrigate completely avulsed tissue with saline. Wrap the avulsed tissue in saline-soaked gauze and place in a watertight bag. Place the bag in ice water or on top of an ice bag. Avoid direct contact of the tissue with the ice. Refer to a physician for further cleansing and evaluation.	Closely monitor patient and wound area daily for adverse reactions and infection; change dressing based on type; check tetanus immunization.

ATHLETIC INJURY MANAGEMENT CHECKLIST

The following is a checklist for practicing universal precautions in dealing with bloodborne pathogens.

- ❑ Wash hands thoroughly after taking universal precautions and frequently throughout the day.
- ❑ Make sure all open wounds or skin lesions are covered before practice or competition.
- ❑ Routinely use nonlatex gloves when dealing with bleeding or wound care.
- ❑ Remove athletes with active bleeding from competition.
- ❑ When blood is present on a uniform, it can sometimes be removed with hydrogen peroxide instead of removing the whole uniform.
- ❑ Ensure that a uniform saturated with blood is removed and changed.
- ❑ Clean up blood spills with a disinfecting solution.
- ❑ Use the appropriate technique when removing gloves.
- ❑ Dispose of all soiled materials in a biohazard bag.
- ❑ Dispose of sharps in a biohazard container.
- ❑ Report all exposure incidents.

SUMMARY

- Bloodborne pathogens are microorganisms that can potentially cause disease and are present in human blood and other bodily fluids, including semen, vaginal secretions, synovial fluid, and any other fluid contaminated with blood. Hepatitis B virus (HBV), hepatitis C virus (HCV), and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) are bloodborne pathogens.
- A vaccine is available to prevent HBV. Currently no effective vaccine exists for treating HIV.
- An individual infected with HIV may develop acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), which is fatal.
- The risks of contracting HBV, HCV, or HIV may be minimized by avoiding exposure to blood and other bodily fluids and by practicing safe sex.
- The risk of an athlete being exposed to bloodborne pathogens on the field is minimal. Off-the-field activities involving risky sexual behaviors pose the greatest threat for transmission.
- Various national medical and sports organizations have established policies and procedures for dealing with bloodborne pathogens in the athletic population.
- The Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) has established rules and regulations that protect the health care employee.
- Universal precautions must be taken to avoid bloodborne pathogen exposure. All sports programs must carry out a plan for counseling, education, volunteer testing, and the management of exposure.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

9-1 Athletes must be made to understand that their greatest risk for contracting HIV is through intimate sexual contact with an infected partner and not through contact that occurs during athletic participation. It is highly unlikely that sweat carries HIV. However, this athlete should become concerned if his opponent begins bleeding; he should wait until the bleeding has been controlled and the wound securely covered before resuming physical contact.

9-2 The first step is to take precautions to protect against the transmission of bloodborne pathogens. The wound should be cleaned with soap and water. Direct pressure should be applied to the wound over several layers of sterile gauze, which hopefully will absorb the bleeding. Ice may also be applied to help minimize the bleeding. The athlete, if not dizzy, should remain in a sitting position and should be referred to a physician for suturing. Sterile strips or a butterfly bandage may also be applied, although sutures generally leave a smaller scar. All blood-contaminated supplies should be disposed of in a clearly marked biohazard bag.

9-3 Universal precautions should be practiced by anyone coming in contact with blood or other body fluids. This plan must include counseling, education, voluntary testing, and management of bodily fluids.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. Define and identify the bloodborne pathogens.
2. Discuss HBV transmission, symptoms and signs, prevention, and treatment.
3. Discuss the pros and cons of allowing the participation of an athlete who is an HBV carrier.
4. Discuss HIV transmission, symptoms and signs, prevention, and treatment.
5. How is HIV transmitted, and why is it eventually fatal at this time?
6. Should an athlete who tests positive for HBV or HIV be allowed to participate in sports?
7. How can an athlete avoid the risk of HIV infection?
8. Define OSHA and discuss its universal precautions for preventing exposure to bloodborne pathogens.

9. What precautions should a coach take when caring for a bleeding athlete on the field?
10. What are the different kinds of wounds that can occur, and how should they be managed?

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. American Academy of Orthopedic Surgeons, American College of Emergency Physicians. 2016. *Bloodborne and airborne pathogens*. Burlington, MA: Jones and Bartlett Learning.
2. American Academy of Pediatrics. 2009. Human immunodeficiency virus and other blood-borne viral pathogens in the athletic setting. *Pediatrics* 104(6):1400–1403.
3. American Medical Society for Sports Medicine and American Academy for Sports Medicine. 1995. Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and bloodborne pathogens in sport: Joint position statement. *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 23:510.
4. Barreto, M. 2006. Infectious diseases epidemiology. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health* 60(3):192.
5. Beam, J., et al. 2016. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Management of acute skin trauma, *Journal of Athletic Training* 51(12)1053–1070.
6. Berry, D. 2012. Teaching wound care management: A model for the budget conscious educator. *Athletic Training Education Journal* 7(3):140.
7. Carmont, M., & McDonagh, D. 2015. Hemorrhage and wound care at the event side. In M. N. Doral & J. Karlsson (eds.), *Sports injuries*. Berlin: Springer-Verlag.
8. Clem, K., & Borchers, J. 2007. HIV and the athlete. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 26(3):413.
9. Epling, C. 2011. Latex symptoms among health care workers: Results from a university health and safety surveillance system. *International Journal of Occupational and Environmental Health* 17(1):17–23.
10. Gartner, B. 2014. Vaccination in elite athletes. *Sports Medicine* 44(10):1361.
11. Grindle, M. 2014. Appropriate disinfection techniques for playing surfaces to prevent the transmission of bloodborne pathogens. *International Journal of Athletic Therapy and Training* 19(5):12–15.
12. Gutierrez, R. 2010. Bloodborne infections and the athlete. *Disease-a-Month* 56(7):436–442.
13. Harris, M. 2011. Infectious disease in athletes. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 10(2):84–89.
14. Hart, P. 2011. Complying with the bloodborne pathogen standard: Protecting health care workers and patients. *AORN Journal* 94(4):393–399.
15. Hoogenboom, B. 2012. Management of bleeding and open wounds in athletes. *International Journal of Sports Physical Therapy* 7(3):350–356.
16. Irion, G. 2009. *Comprehensive wound management*, 2nd ed. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.
17. Kahanov, L. 2011. Certified athletic trainers' knowledge of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and common disinfectants. *Journal of Athletic Training* 46(4):415–423.
18. Parsons, J. (ed.). 2017. *NCAA 2017–2018 sports medicine handbook*. Indianapolis, IN: NCAA.
19. McCulloch, J., & Kloth, L. 2010. *Wound healing: Evidence-based management*, 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.
20. Minooee, A. 2016. Sports: The infectious hazards. In D. Schlossberg (ed.), *Infections of leisure*. Washington, DC: ASM Press.
21. National Safety Council. 2012. *Bloodborne and airborne pathogens*. Itasca, IL: National Safety Council.
22. Negro, F. 2016. *Handbook of hepatitis C management*. New Zealand: Adis.
23. Occupational Safety and Health Administration. 2011. *OSHA's bloodborne pathogens standard*. Washington, DC: OSHA.
24. Pirozzolo, J., & LeMay, D. 2007. Bloodborne infections. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 26(3):425.
25. Quinn, J. 2014. Traumatic lacerations: What are the risks for infection and has the "golden period" of laceration care disappeared? *Emergency Medicine Journal* 31(2):96–100.
26. Rani, S. 2014. The in vitro antimicrobial activity of wound and skin cleansers at nontoxic concentrations. *Advances in Skin and Wound Care* 27(2):65–69.
27. Reel, J. 2012. Reducing high-risk sexual behaviors among college athletes. *Journal of Sport Psychology in Action* 3(1):21–29.
28. Shetty, N. 2009. *Infectious diseases: Pathogenesis, prevention and case studies*. New York, NY: Wiley.
29. U.S. Department of Labor and Occupational Safety and Health Administration. 2014. *Model plans and programs for the OSHA bloodborne pathogens and hazards communication standards*. CreateSpace Independent Publishing Platform.
30. World Health Organization. 2013. Global Health Observatory data, www.who.int/gho/hiv/en/.
31. Zinder, S., et al. 2010. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Skin diseases. *Journal of Athletic Training* 45(4):411–428.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

American Academy of Orthopedic Surgeons, American College of Emergency Physicians. 2016. *Bloodborne and airborne pathogens*. Burlington, MA: Jones and Bartlett Learning.

Designed to meet the current Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) training requirements and to teach students how to prepare for potential exposure to blood or other potentially infectious materials.

Friend, M., & Kohn, J. 2014. *Fundamentals of occupational safety and health*. Lanham, MD: Government Institutes.

Provides a thorough and up-to-date overview of the occupational safety and health field and the issues safety professionals face today, and does so in an accessible and engaging manner.

Hamann, B. 2006. *Disease: Identification, prevention, and control*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

Designed for health educators; detailed coverage of AIDS and hepatitis.

Parsons, J. 2017. *NCAA 2017–2018 sports medicine handbook*. Indianapolis, IN: NCAA.

A complete discussion of bloodborne pathogens and intercollegiate athletic policies and administration.

WEBSITES

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: www.cdc.gov
Department of Health and Human Services: www.hhs.gov
HIV/AIDS Prevention: www.cdc.gov/hiv
National Institutes of Health: www.nih.gov
Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA): www.osha.gov

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

©William E. Prentice

10

Wrapping and Taping Techniques

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Explain the need for and demonstrate the application of elastic wraps.
- Demonstrate site preparation for taping.
- Know the various types of tape that can be used.
- Understand what you are trying to accomplish by the application of a specific taping technique.
- Demonstrate basic skills in the use of taping for a variety of body parts.

Wrapping and taping techniques are used routinely to accomplish a variety of specific objectives including:

- Providing compression to minimize swelling in the initial management of injury.
- Reducing the chances of injury by applying tape prophylactically (for prevention) before an injury occurs.
- Providing additional stability to an injured structure.[19]

There are advantages and disadvantages to using wrapping and taping techniques. Certainly wrapping and taping skills are not difficult. They can be mastered by anyone willing to spend time practicing and learning what works best in a given situation.[16] Of course, certain taping and wrapping techniques are more advanced and should be used only by those with some advanced experience.[18] As a "taper" gains more experience, it becomes evident that there are many nuances to taping, and there are certainly variations to taping techniques presented in this text. Individual athletes may like slight modifications in taping techniques. Techniques that work well on one athlete may not work as well on others. Each athlete is a bit different anatomically, and adjustments may be necessary to accommodate these anatomic variations. However, there are some very basic techniques that can be easily applied with only a little training. **Tape should not be applied by coaches or other fitness professionals who do not have at least some understanding of the type of injury that exists and the reasons that an athlete needs to be taped in the first place.**

Anyone can master taping and wrapping with practice.

On the negative side, tape is expensive, and some schools simply don't have the budget to purchase large quantities of elastic and nonelastic tape. Applying tape is also time-consuming.[1]

A review of the evidence-based support for using taping indicates that good research has shown the limited effectiveness of taping.[8,10,13] Moreover, the effectiveness of taping in preventing or at least minimizing the chances of injury is controversial.[15] The amount of support and motion limitation that tape provides has also been questioned.[3,5,8,17] Several research studies have indicated that the use of commercially manufactured braces may be equally effective if not more effective than taping for limiting movement and preventing injury.[2,7,18,20]

Taping and wrapping techniques should never be used as a substitute for a sound rehabilitation program designed to correct problems of weakness and instability that in many cases create the need for taping and wrapping.[16]

ELASTIC WRAPS

Elastic wraps can be applied for a variety of purposes. They are most often used for compression of an acute injury to limit the amount of swelling that occurs (Figure 10–1). They may also be used to secure a dressing for a wound or to hold a pad or an ice bag or pack in place. An elastic wrap is also useful in providing support to injured soft tissue structures. Elastic wraps are active bandages; they let the athlete move without restriction.[6]

Elastic wraps are generally made of two-ply cotton yarns, reinforced with heat-resistant elastic rubber threads that are often made of latex. (Athletes that may have allergies to latex should be warned.) The wraps come in a variety of widths and lengths and should be selected according to the body part to be wrapped. The sizes most frequently used are the 2-, 3-, 4-, and 6-inch widths by either 5- or 6-yard length. The 4- and 6-inch wraps are usually also available in double lengths of 10 yards.

Application

The elastic wrap must be applied in a specific manner to maximize its effectiveness.[7] When an elastic wrap is to be placed on a body part, the roll should be held in the preferred hand, with the loose end extending from the bottom of the roll. The back surface of the loose end is placed on the part and held in position by the other hand. The wrap will stay in place and not loosen and migrate as much if a corner edge of the first anchor is dog-eared, that is, angled such that it sticks out 2 to 3 inches and then is folded down over the bandage as it wraps over the initial anchor. The wrap is then unrolled and passed around the injured area. As the hand pulls the material from the roll, it also standardizes the pressure and guides the wrap in the proper direction. To anchor and stabilize the wrap, a number of turns, one on top of the other, are made. Circling a body part requires the operator to alternate the wrap roll from one hand to the other and back again.

Elastic wraps:

- Apply firm, even pressure
- Wrap distal to proximal

Check circulation after applying an elastic wrap.

FIGURE 10–1 **Technique for using an elastic wrap.** ©William E. Prentice

If correctly applied, a *cohesive elastic wrap* exerts constant, even pressure. Excessive or unequal pressure can hinder the normal blood flow within the body part. The following points should be considered when using the elastic wrap:

- Wrapping should always begin distally and move proximally (i.e., start at the toes and wrap up the leg).
- A body part should be wrapped in the position of maximum muscle contraction to ensure unhampered movement and circulation.
- It is better to use a large number of turns with moderate tension than a limited number of turns applied too tightly.
- Each turn of the wrap should be overlapped by at least one-half of the overlying wrap to prevent the separation of the material while engaged in activity. Separation of the wrap turns tends to pinch and irritate the skin.

When limbs are wrapped, fingers and toes should be checked often for signs of circulation impairment. Abnormally cold or cyanotic (bluish) fingers or toes are signs of excessive wrap pressure.

Elastic Wrapping Techniques

Ankle and Foot Spica The ankle and foot **spica** wrap (Figure 10–2) is used in sports for the compression of new injuries, for holding wound dressings in place, and to stabilize or secure a smaller body part on a larger one.

spica (spy-ka) A figure-eight wrap, with one of the two loops being larger.

Materials Needed Depending on the size of the ankle and foot, a 2- or 3-inch (5 or 7.5 cm) wrap is used.

Position of the Athlete The athlete sits with ankle and foot dorsiflexed and extending off the table.

Procedure

1. An anchor is placed around the foot near the metatarsal arch.
2. The elastic wrap is brought across the instep and around the heel and returned to the starting point. Make sure to completely cover the heel, leaving no spaces.
3. The procedure is repeated several times, with each succeeding revolution progressing upward on the foot and the ankle.
4. Each spica overlaps approximately one-half of the preceding layer.

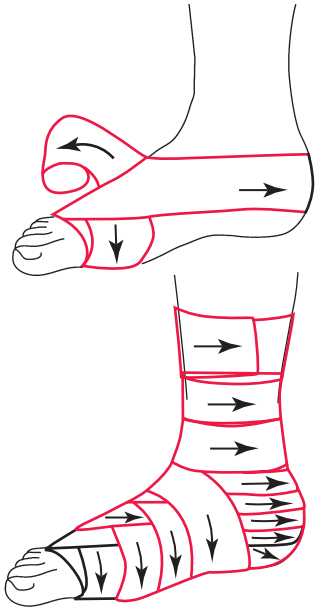


FIGURE 10–2 **Ankle and foot spica.** ©William E. Prentice

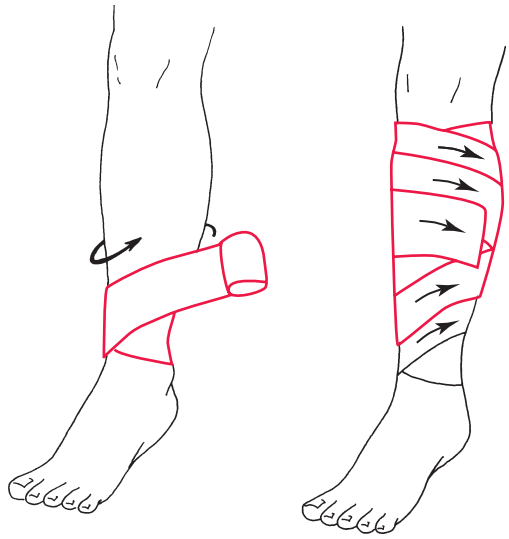


FIGURE 10–3 **Spiral wrap.** ©William E. Prentice

Lower Leg Spiral Wrap The spiral wrap (Figure 10–3) is widely used in sports for covering a large area of a cylindrical part.

Materials Needed Depending on the size of the area, a 3- or 4-inch (7.5 or 10 cm) wrap is required.

Position of the Athlete If the wrap is for the lower limb, the athlete bears weight on the opposite leg.

Procedure

1. The elastic wrap is anchored at the smallest circumference of the limb and is wrapped upward in a spiral against gravity.
2. To prevent the wrap from slipping down on a moving extremity, two pieces of tape should be folded lengthwise and placed on the wrap at either side of the limb, or tape adherent can be sprayed on the part.
3. After the wrap is anchored, it is carried upward in consecutive spiral turns, each overlapping the other by at least ½ inch.
4. The wrap is terminated by locking it with circular turns, which are then firmly secured by tape.

Groin Wrap The following procedure is used to support a groin strain and hip adductor strains (Figure 10–4).

Materials Needed One roll of extra-long 6-inch (15 cm) elastic wrap, a roll of 1½-inch (3.8 cm) adhesive tape, and a gauze or foam pad.

Position of the Athlete The athlete stands on a table with weight placed on the uninjured leg. The affected limb is relaxed and internally rotated.

10–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A baseball player strains his right groin while running the bases.

? Describe the elastic wrap technique that should be applied when the athlete returns to his sport and why.

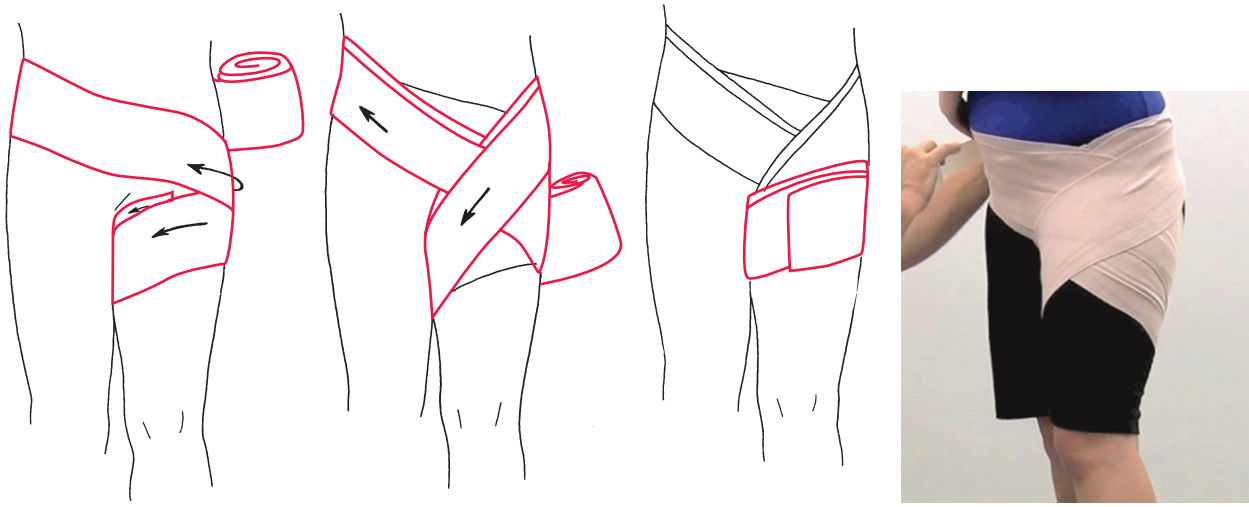


FIGURE 10–4 Elastic groin wrap. Leg should be internally rotated. ©William E. Prentice

Procedure

1. A gauze or foam pad may be placed over the injured site to provide additional compression and support.
2. The end of the elastic wrap is started at the upper part of the inner aspect of the thigh and is carried posteriorly around the thigh. Then it is brought across the lower abdomen and over the crest of the ilium on the opposite side of the body.
3. The wrap is continued around the back, repeating the same pattern and securing the wrap end with 1½-inch (3.8 cm) adhesive tape.

10–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A wrestler sustains a blow to the left shoulder, resulting in injury.

? A sponge rubber doughnut is applied to protect the shoulder from further injury. How is the doughnut held in place?

Note Variations of this method can be seen in Figure 10–5, used to support injured hip flexors. To provide support for the flexor muscles, the thigh should be slightly flexed.

Shoulder Spica The shoulder spica (Figure 10–6) is used mainly for the retention of wound dressings and for moderate muscular support.

Materials Needed One roll of extra-long 4- to 6-inch (10 to 15 cm) elastic wrap, 1½-inch adhesive tape, and padding for axilla (armpit).

Position of the Athlete Athlete stands with side toward the operator.

Procedure

1. The armpit must be well padded to prevent skin irritation and constriction of blood vessels.
2. The wrap is anchored by one turn around the affected upper arm.
3. After anchoring the wrap around the arm on the injured side, the wrap is carried around the back, under the unaffected arm, and across the chest to the injured shoulder.
4. The affected arm is again encircled by the wrap, which continues around the back. Every figure-eight pattern moves progressively upward, with an overlap of at least half of the previous underlying wrap.

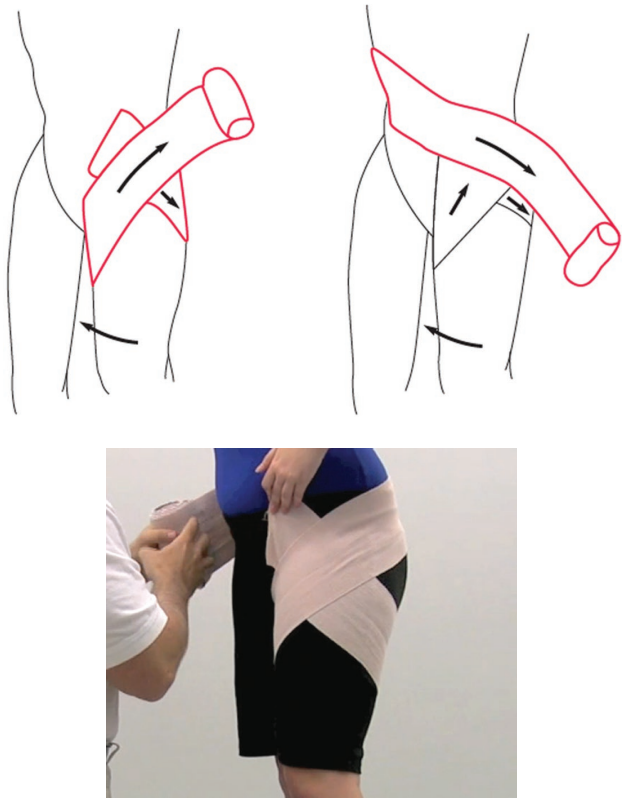


FIGURE 10–5 Hip spica for hip flexors. ©William E. Prentice

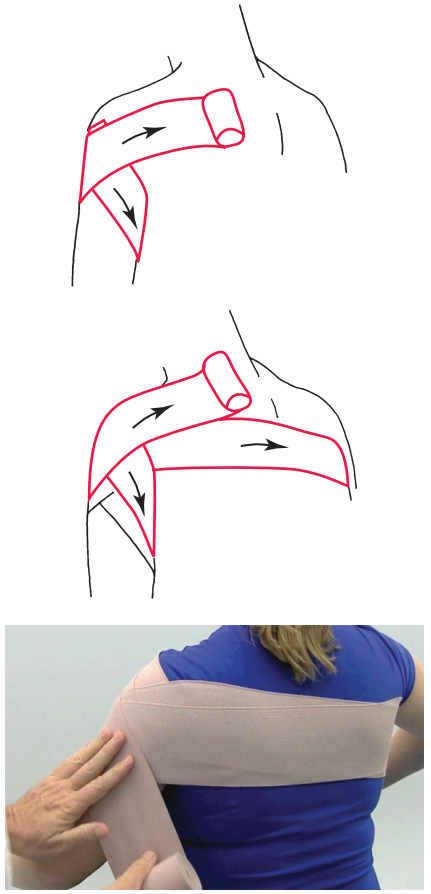


FIGURE 10–6 Elastic shoulder spica.
©William E. Prentice

5. For sprains of the acromioclavicular joint, the wrap should cross directly over the top of the joint.

Elbow Figure Eight The elbow figure-eight wrap (Figure 10–7) can be used to secure a dressing in the front of the elbow or to restrain full extension in hyperextension injuries. When it is reversed, it can be used on the posterior aspect of the elbow.

Materials Needed One 3-inch elastic roll and 1½-inch adhesive tape.

Position of the Athlete Athlete flexes elbow between 45 degrees and 90 degrees, depending on the restriction of movement required.

Procedure

1. Anchor the wrap by encircling the lower arm.
2. Bring the roll obliquely upward over the posterior aspect of the elbow.
3. Carry the roll obliquely upward, crossing the front of the elbow; then pass once again completely around the upper arm and return to the beginning position by again crossing the front of the elbow.
4. Continue the procedure as described, but for every new sequence move upward toward the elbow one-half the width of the underlying wrap.

Hand and Wrist Figure-Eight Wrap A figure-eight wrap (Figure 10–8) can be used for mild wrist and hand support and for holding dressings in place.

Materials Needed One 2-inch elastic wrap.

Position of the Athlete Athlete positions elbow at a 45-degree angle.

Procedure

1. The anchor is executed with one or two turns around the palm of the hand.

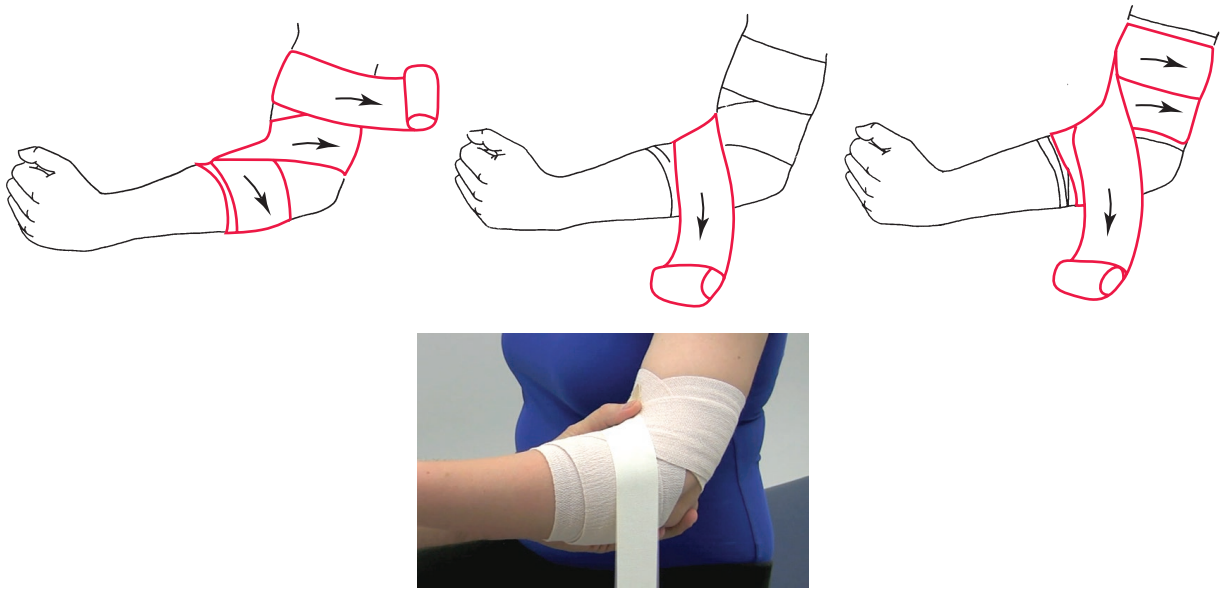


FIGURE 10–7 Elastic elbow figure-eight wrap. ©William E. Prentice

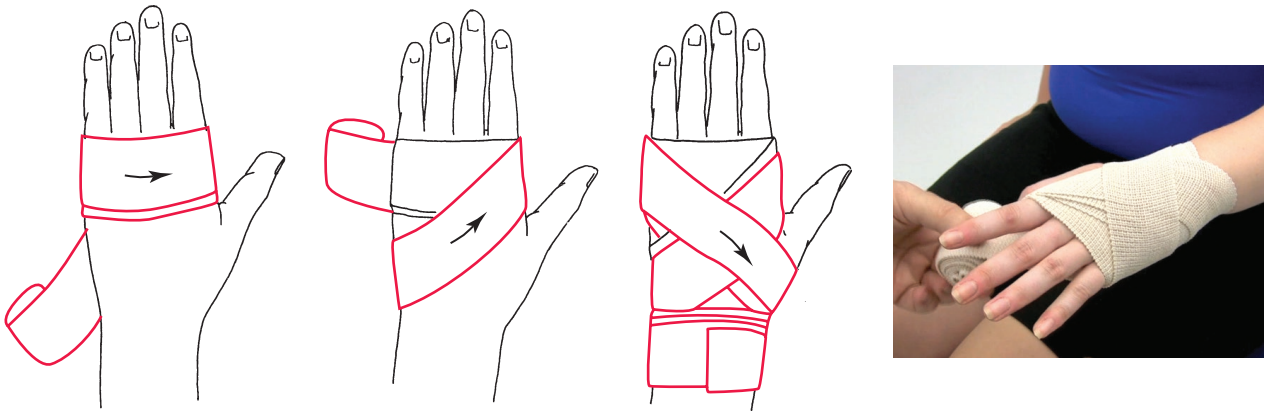


FIGURE 10–8 **Hand and wrist figure-eight wrap.** ©William E. Prentice

2. The elastic wrap is carried obliquely across the anterior or posterior portion of the hand, depending on the position of the wound, to the wrist, which it circles once, and then it is returned to the primary anchor.
3. As many figures as needed are applied.

NONELASTIC AND ELASTIC ADHESIVE TAPING

Nonelastic White Adhesive Tape

Nonelastic white adhesive tape has great adaptability for use in sports because of its uniform adhering qualities, lightness, and the relative strength of the backing materials.[14] All of these qualities are of value both in securing wound dressings in place and in providing support and protection to injured areas.[9] This tape comes in a variety of sizes; 1-, 1½, and 2-inch widths are commonly used in sports medicine. When nonelastic white adhesive tape is purchased, factors such as cost, grade of backing, quality of adhesive, and properties of unwinding should be considered.

When purchasing white adhesive tape, consider:

- Grade of backing
- Quality of adhesive
- Winding tension

Tape Grade Nonelastic white adhesive tape is most often graded according to the number of longitudinal and vertical fibers per inch of backing material. The heavier and more costly tape contains 85 or more longitudinal fibers and 65 vertical fibers per square inch. The lighter, less expensive grade has 65 or fewer longitudinal fibers and 45 vertical fibers.[1]

Adhesive Properties The tape should adhere readily when applied and should maintain this adherence in the presence of profuse perspiration and activity. Besides sticking well, the adhesive must contain as few skin irritants as possible and must be easily removed without leaving a residue or pulling away the superficial skin.[9]

Winding Tension The winding tension of a tape roll is important to the operator. If tape is to be applied for protection and support, there must be even and constant unwinding tension. In most cases, a proper wind needs little additional tension to provide sufficient tightness.

Elastic Adhesive Tape

Elastic adhesive tape is often used in sports medicine. Because of its conforming qualities, stretch tape is used for small, angular body parts, such as the feet, wrist, hands, and fingers. Elastic adhesive tape also allows for expansion of body parts such as a muscle that is contracting or the foot, which expands during weight bearing. As with nonelastic white adhesive tape, elastic adhesive tape comes in a variety of widths; 1-, 2-, 3-, and 4-inch widths are typical.

Waterproof Tape

Occasionally a swimmer, diver, or waterpolo player might require an application of adhesive tape. It is recommended that special waterproof tape be used in these instances. If waterproof tape is not available, duct tape can be an effective substitute.

Storing Adhesive Tape

When storing tape, take the following steps:

- Store in a cool place.
- Stack so that the tape rests on its flat top or bottom, to avoid distortion.

Store tape in a cool place, and stack it flat.

Preparation for Taping

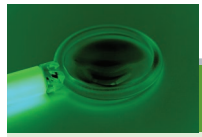
Skin Preparation Special attention must be given when applying tape directly to the skin.[13]

Focus Box 10–1 gives a list of supplies needed for proper taping. Perspiration, oil, and dirt prevent tape from adhering to the skin. Whenever tape is used, the skin surface should be cleaned with soap and water to remove all dirt and oil. Also, hair should be shaved to prevent additional irritation when the tape is removed (Figure 10–9A). Tape should not be applied if the skin is hot or cold.

Skin surface should be cleansed and hair should be shaved before applying tape.

Tape Adherent Spray A quick-drying tape adherent spray can be used to help the tape adhere to the skin, although it is not absolutely necessary (Figure 10–9B). Occasionally, an athlete will experience an allergic skin reaction to the tape adherent or perhaps even the adhesive on the tape. With these individuals, spraying tape adherent should be avoided, and it may be necessary to use a brace instead of tape.

Applying Heel and Lace Pads and Prewrap At certain spots such as over bony prominences, the tape can produce friction blisters. Extra foam or gauze pads (heel and lace pads) with a small amount of lubricant can help to minimize the occurrence of blisters (Figure 10–9C).



FOCUS BOX 10–1

Taping supplies

Effective taping requires the availability of numerous supplies:

1. Razor for hair removal
2. Soap for cleaning skin
3. Alcohol for removal of oil from skin
4. Adhesive spray for tape adherent
5. Prewrap material for skin protection
6. Heel and lace pads
7. White adhesive tape (linen-backed tape) (½-inch, 1-inch, 1½-inch, and 2-inch)
8. Adhesive and stretch tape (1-inch, 2-inch, 3-inch, and 4-inch)
9. Felt and foam padding material
10. Tape scissors
11. Tape cutters
12. Elastic bandages (2-inch, 3-inch, 4-inch, and 6-inch)

Taping directly on skin provides maximum support. However, applying tape day after day can lead to skin irritation. A roll of foam that is thin, porous, extremely lightweight, and resilient called "underwrap" or "prewrap" easily conforms to the contours

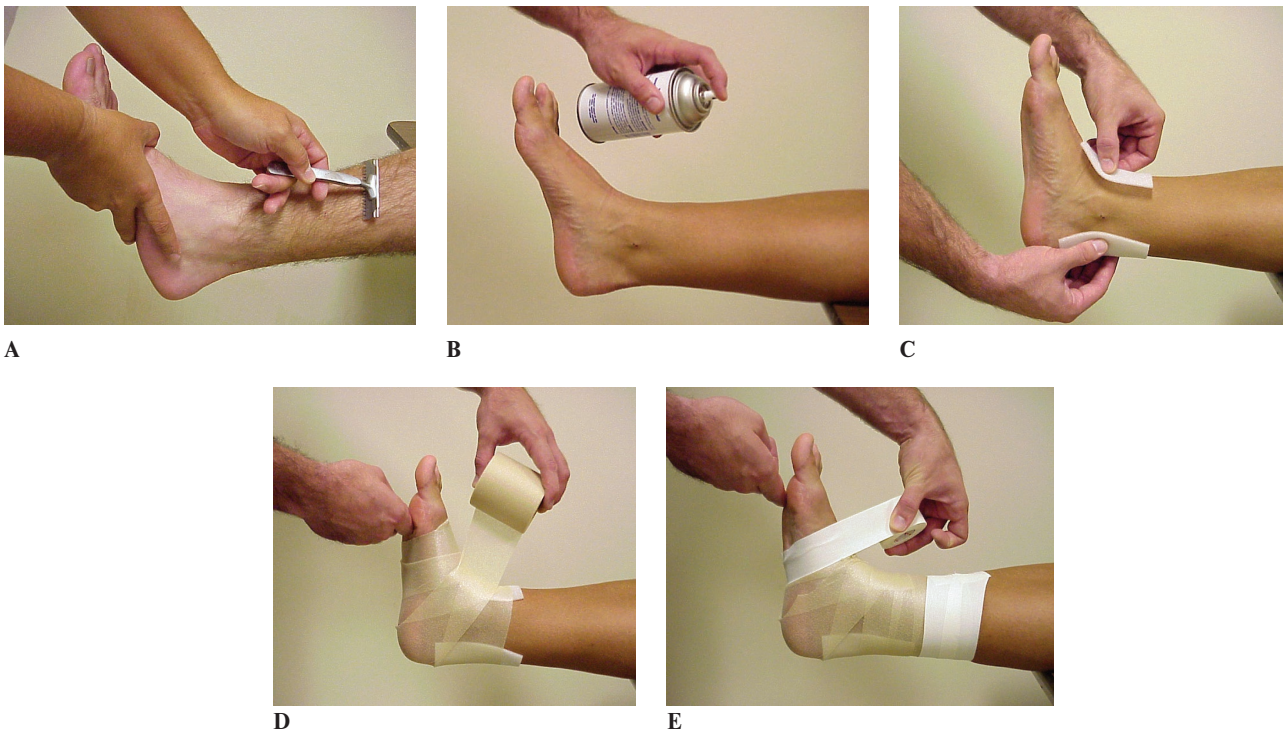


FIGURE 10–9 **Taping preparation: (A)** Shaving. **(B)** Applying tape adherent spray. **(C)** Placing heel and lace pads. **(D)** Applying one layer of underwrap. **(E)** Applying anchor strips. ©William E. Prentice

10–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A freshman football player has a chronically weak ankle that he has sprained several times. He wants to have the ankle taped before games and practices but has never had it taped before.

? What can be done to minimize the occurrence of blisters and ensure that the tape provides support?

of the part to be taped and protects the skin to some degree. Even though prewrap is easy to apply, many individuals without much taping experience have a problem putting prewrap on without getting wrinkles that can lead to irritation and blisters. The smooth application of prewrap is essential to avoid wrinkles. Underwrap material should be overlapped by ½ the thickness, molding it no thicker than 2 layers (Figure 10–9D).[13] Finally, anchor strips should be applied to hold the prewrap in place (Figure 10–9E).

Proper Taping Technique

The correct tape width depends on the area to be covered. The more acute the angles, the narrower the tape must be to fit the many contours. For example, the fingers and toes usually require ½- or 1-inch (1.25 or 2.5 cm) tape; the ankles require 1½-inch (3.75 cm) tape; and the larger skin areas such as thighs and back can accommodate 2- to 3-inch (5 to 7.5 cm) tape with ease.

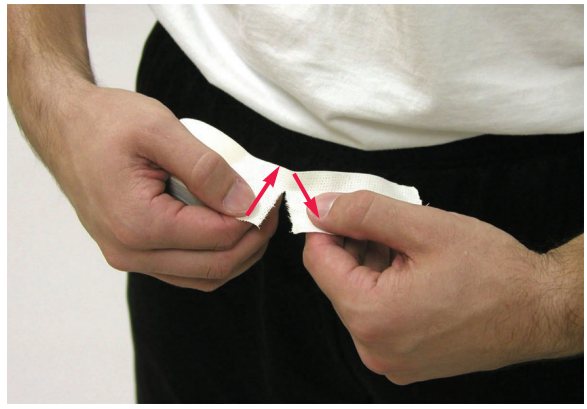
Tearing Tape

With some practice, nonelastic white adhesive tape can be easily torn by hand. Tearing elastic tape is more difficult, and it is usually necessary to cut it with scissors. Various techniques can be used in tearing tape (Figure 10–10).[13] The following is a suggested procedure:

1. Hold the tape roll in the preferred hand, with the index finger hooked through the center of the tape roll and the thumb pressing its outer edge.
2. With the other hand, grasp the loose end between the thumb and index finger.
3. With both hands in place, pull both ends of the tape so that it is tight. Next, make a quick, scissor-like move to tear the tape. In tearing tape, the movement of one hand is away from the body and the other hand, toward the body. Remember, do not try to bend or twist the tape to tear it.

When tearing is properly executed, the torn edges of the nonelastic white adhesive tape are relatively straight, without curves, twists, or loose threads sticking out. Once the first thread is torn, the rest of the tape tears easily. Learning to tear tape effectively from many different positions is essential for speed and efficiency.[13]

A



B

FIGURE 10–10 Technique for tearing adhesive tape. ©William E. Prentice

Removing Adhesive Tape

Tape usually can be removed from the skin by hand, tape scissors or tape cutters, or chemical solvents.[3]

Manual Removal When pulling tape from the body, be careful not to tear or irritate the skin. Tape must not be wrenched in an outward direction from the skin, but should be pulled in a direct line with the body (Figure 10–11). Remember to remove the skin

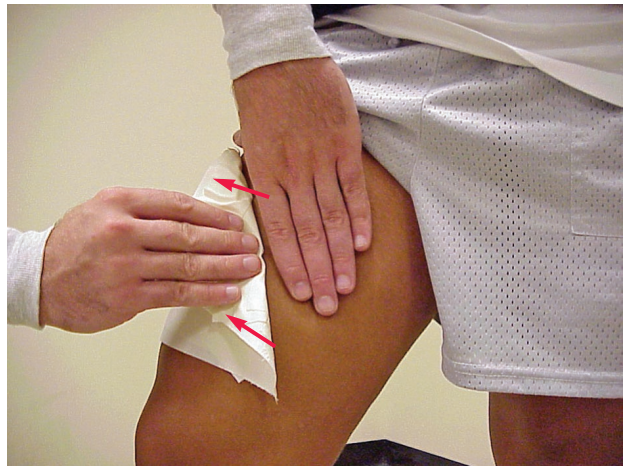


FIGURE 10–11 Removing adhesive tape. ©William E. Prentice

A B C

FIGURE 10–12 **(A)** Tape scissors. **(B)** Zip-cut tape cutter. **(C)** Shark tape cutter. ©William E. Prentice

carefully from the tape and not to peel the tape from the skin. One hand gently pulls the tape in one direction, and the opposite hand gently presses the skin away from the tape.

Use of Tape Scissors or Cutters The characteristic tape scissors or cutters have a blunt nose that slips underneath the tape smoothly without gouging the skin. Take care to avoid cutting the tape too near the site of the injury, lest the scissors aggravate the condition. If possible, cut on the uninjured side (Figure 10–12).

Using Tape Remover Tape remover is an alcohol-based liquid that is useful for removing adherent residue from the skin. It works best when the area is scrubbed with a towel or cloth. Some individuals have a skin sensitivity to this chemical that produces a reaction. Everyone who comes in contact with it should wash the tape remover off, using soap and water.

COMMON TAPING TECHNIQUES

Arch Taping the arch supports the entire plantar aspect of the foot (Figure 10–13). Arch taping may be used in cases of plantar fasciitis, arch sprain (see Chapter 14), or shin splints (see Chapter 15).

Materials Needed One roll of 1-inch (2.5 cm) and one roll of 1½-inch (3.8 cm) white adhesive tape and tape adherent.

Position of the Athlete The athlete sits on a taping table, with the foot to be taped extending approximately 6 inches (15 cm) over the edge of the table. The foot should be relaxed.

Procedure

1. Place an anchor strip around the ball of the foot (1). If the injury is acute, the anchor strip should be placed around the metatarsal heads to minimize swelling of the toes.
2. Starting at the third metatarsal head, take the tape around the heel from the lateral side, and meet the strip where it began (2 and 3).
3. The next strip starts near the second metatarsal head and finishes on the fourth metatarsal head (4).
4. The last strip begins on the fourth metatarsal head and finishes on the fifth (5). The technique,

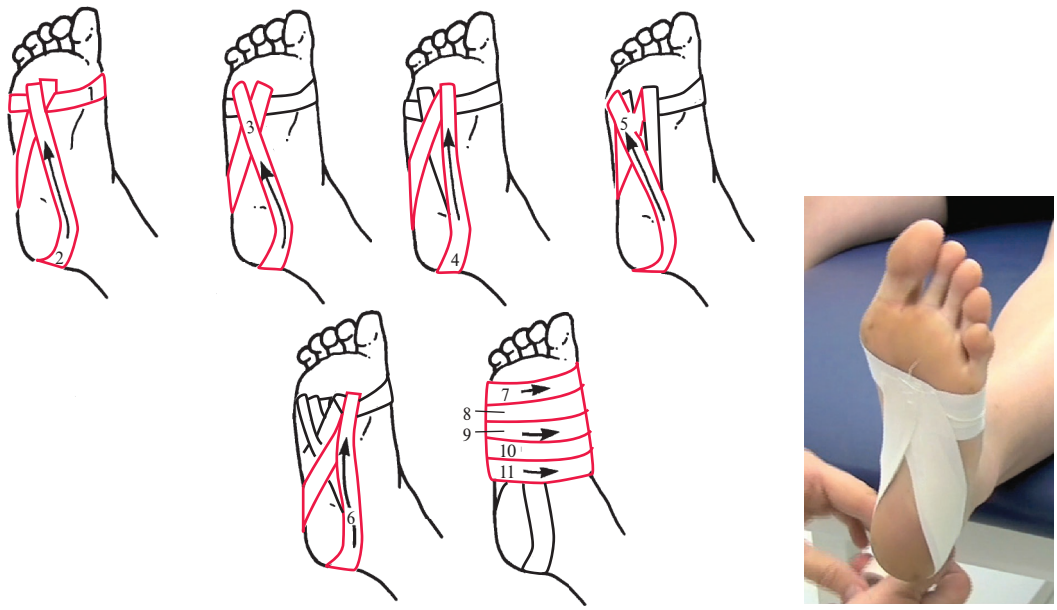


FIGURE 10–13 **Arch taping technique.** ©William E. Prentice

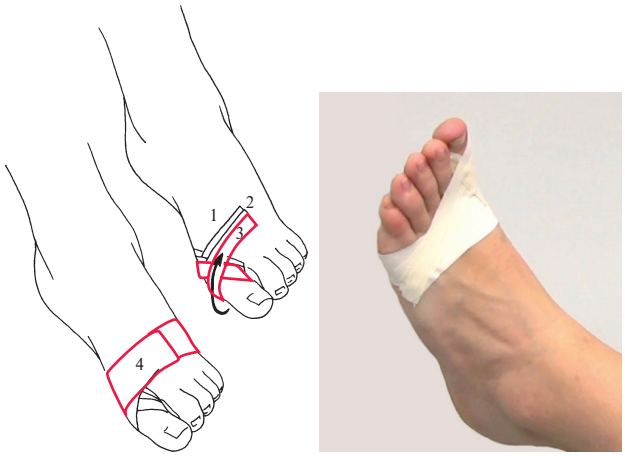


FIGURE 10–14 Taping for a sprained great toe. ©William E. Prentice

when completed, forms a fan-shaped pattern covering the metatarsal region (6).
5. Lock strips (7 through 11) using 1½-inch (3.8 cm) tape and encircling the complete arch.

Great Toe This procedure is used for taping a sprained great toe (Figure 10–14).

Materials Needed One roll of 1-inch (2.5 cm) white adhesive tape and tape adherent.

Position of the Athlete The athlete assumes a sitting position.

Procedure

1. The greatest support is given to the joint by a half-figure-eight taping (1 through 3). Start the series at an acute angle on the top of the foot, and swing down between the great and first toes, first encircling the great toe and then coming up, over, and across the starting point. Repeat this process, starting each series separately. Precut strips can be applied to the appropriate surface of the great toe to prevent it from moving into a position that causes pain, prior to application of the half-figure-eight strips.
2. After the required number of half-figure-eight strips are in position, place one lock piece around the ball of the foot (4).

Toes

Materials Needed One roll of ½- to 1-inch (1.25 to 2.5 cm) tape, ⅛-inch (0.3 cm) sponge rubber, and tape adherent.

Position of the Athlete The athlete assumes a sitting position.

Procedure

1. Cut a ⅛-inch (0.3 cm) sponge rubber wedge, and place it between the affected toe and a healthy one.

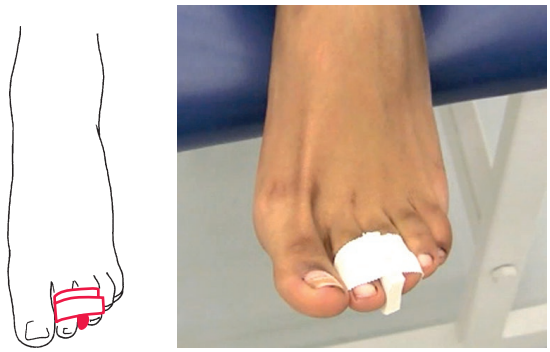


FIGURE 10–15 Taping for a fractured toe. ©William E. Prentice

2. Wrap two or three strips of tape around the toes (Figure 10–15). This technique splints a fractured toe with a nonfractured one.

Ankle Ankle taping applied directly to the athlete's skin affords the greatest support; however, when tape is applied and removed daily, skin irritation occurs.[15] To avoid this problem, apply an underwrap material. Before taping, follow these procedures:[2]

1. Shave all the hair off the foot and ankle.
2. Apply a coating of tape adherent to protect the skin and offer an adhering base. NOTE: Avoid the use of a tape adherent if the athlete has a history of developing tape blisters. In cases of skin sensitivity, the ankle surface should be thoroughly cleansed of dirt and oil and an underwrap material applied; or tape directly to the skin.
3. Apply a gauze pad coated with friction-proofing material, such as grease, over the instep and to the back of the heel.
4. If underwrap is used, apply a single layer. The tape anchors extend beyond the underwrap and adhere directly to the skin.
5. Do not apply tape if skin is cold or hot from a therapeutic treatment.

If the athlete has sensitive skin, thoroughly clean the area to be wrapped.

The closed basket weave technique (Figure 10–16) offers strong tape support and is primarily used in athletic training for newly sprained or chronically weak ankles.[5]

Materials Needed One roll of 1½-inch (3.8 cm) white adhesive tape and tape adherent.

Position of the Athlete The athlete sits on a table with the leg extended and the foot held at a 90-degree angle.

Procedure

1. Place an anchor around the ankle approximately 5 or 6 inches (12.5 to 15 cm) above the malleolus, just

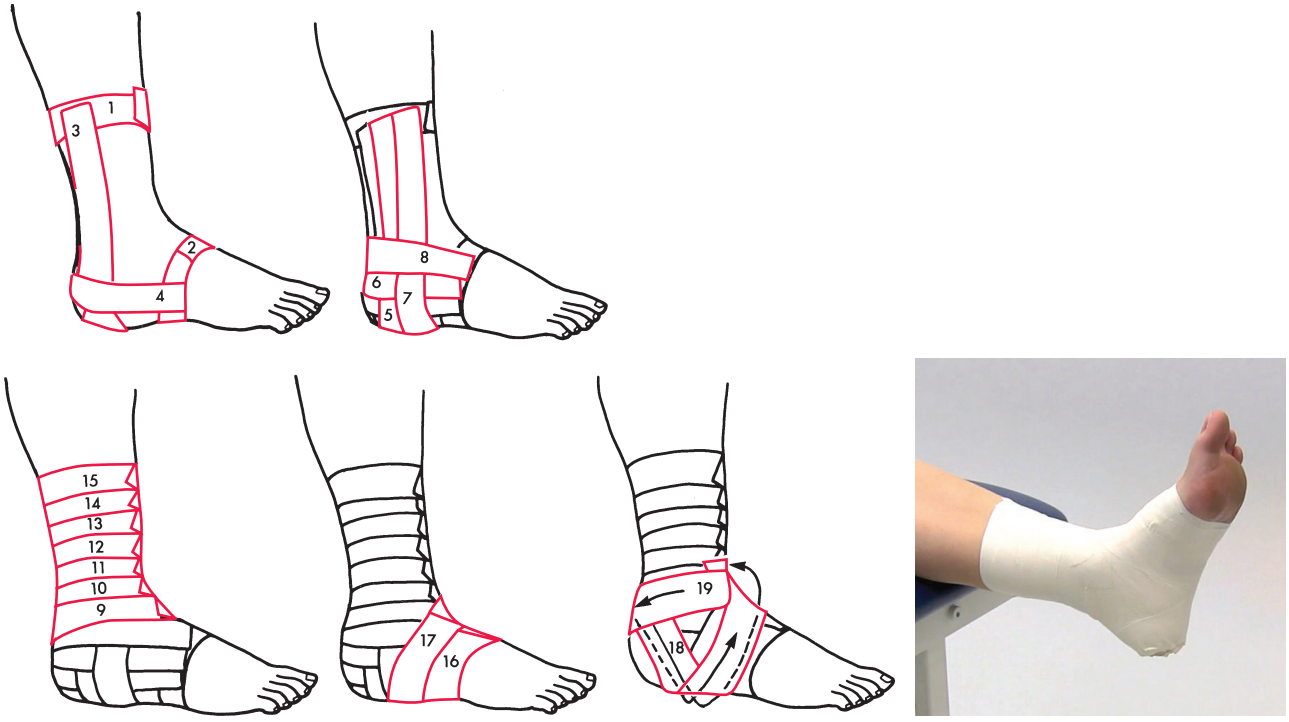


FIGURE 10–16 **Closed basket weave ankle taping.** ©William E. Prentice

below the belly of the gastrocnemius muscle, and a second anchor around the instep just proximal to the styloid process of the fifth metatarsal (1 and 2).

2. Apply the first strip posteriorly to the malleolus and attach it to the anchor strips (3). NOTE: When applying strips, pull the foot into eversion for an inversion strain and into a neutral position for an eversion strain.
3. Start the first horizontal strip of the basket weave directly under the malleolus and attach it to the foot anchor (4).
4. In an alternating series, place three vertical strips and three horizontal strips on the ankle, with each piece of tape overlapping at least half of the preceding strip (5 through 8). These strips and the anchors should not put pressure on the 5th metatarsal.
5. After applying the basket weave series, continue the horizontal strips up the ankle, thus giving circular support (9 through 15).
6. For arch support, apply two or three circular strips lateral to medial (16 and 17).
7. After completing the conventional basket weave, apply two or three heel locks to ensure maximum stability (18 and 19). Start the heel lock on the dorsum (top) of the foot at the ankle joint. Angle the tape around the back and above the calcaneous, then under the heel, then back up over the top of the ankle. Repeat this same pattern on the other side of the ankle joint, moving in the opposite direction. For individuals with lateral (inversion) ankle sprains, the ankle should be pulled outward by applying more tension on the tape in a lateral direction. For medial (eversion) sprains, the ankle should be pulled inward by applying more tension on the tape in a medial direction. For extra support, two figure eights could be added.

Achilles Tendon Achilles tendon taping (Figure 10–17) is designed to prevent the Achilles tendon from overstretching.

Materials Needed One roll of 3-inch (7.5 cm) elastic tape, one roll of 1½-inch (3.8 cm) white adhesive tape, heel and lace pad (placed on the Achilles tendon just above the calcaneus), and tape adherent.

Position of the Athlete The athlete kneels or lies face down, with the affected foot hanging relaxed over the edge of the table.

Procedure

1. Apply two anchors with 1½-inch (3.8 cm) tape, one circling the leg loosely approximately 7 to 9 inches (17.5 to 22.5 cm) above the malleoli and the other encircling the ball of the foot (1 and 2).
2. Cut two strips of 3-inch (7.5 cm) elastic tape approximately 8 to 10 inches (20 to 25 cm) long. Moderately stretch the first strip from the ball of the athlete's foot, along its plantar aspect, up to the leg anchor (3). The second elastic strip (4) follows the course of the first, but cut it and split it down the middle lengthwise. Wrap the cut ends around the lower leg to form a lock. CAUTION: Keep the wrapped ends above the level of the strain.

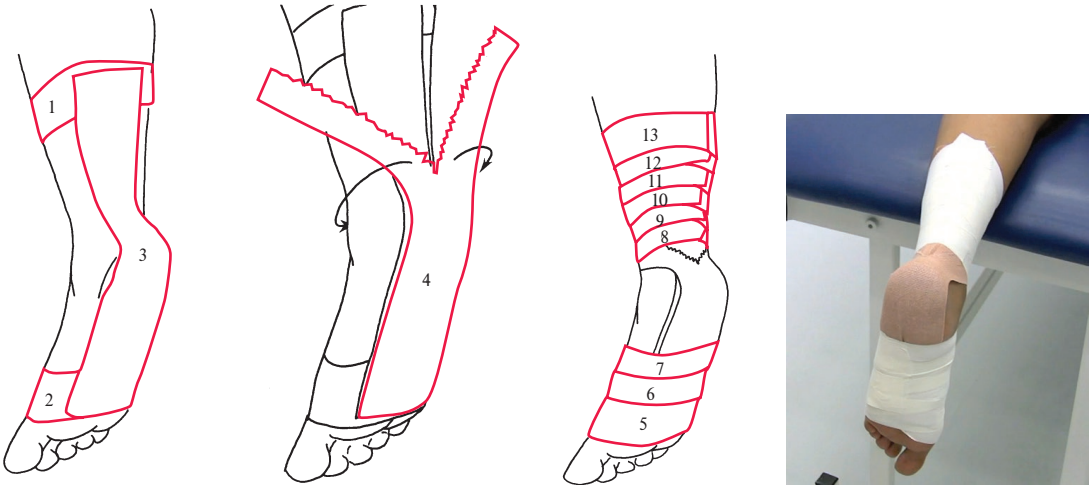


FIGURE 10–17 Achilles tendon taping. ©William E. Prentice

3. Complete the series by placing two or three lock strips of elastic tape (5 through 7) loosely around the arch and five or six strips (8 through 13) around the athlete's lower leg.

Notes

1. Locking too tightly around the lower leg and foot tends to restrict the normal action of the Achilles tendon and create more tissue irritation.
2. A variation to this method is to use three 2-inch-wide (5 cm) elastic strips in place of strips 3 and 4. Apply the first strip at the plantar surface of the first metatarsal head and end it on the lateral side of the leg anchor. Apply the second strip at the plantar surface of the fifth metatarsal head and end it on the medial side of the leg anchor. Center the third strip between the other two strips and end it at the posterior aspect of the calf. Wrap strips of 3-inch (7.5 cm) elastic tape around the forefoot and lower calf to close them off.

Knee Athletes with unstable knees, like those with ankle instabilities, should never use tape and bracing as a replacement for proper exercise rehabilitation. If properly applied, taping can help protect the knee and aid in the rehabilitation process (Figure 10–18). However, this is a fairly difficult taping technique to perform correctly. Therefore, for the fitness professional or coach who does not have a lot of taping experience, it is recommended that a functional knee brace such as that shown in Figure 6–27B be used if available.

Materials Needed One roll of 2-inch (5 cm) white adhesive tape, one roll of 3-inch (7.5 cm) elastic tape, a 1-inch (2.5 cm) heel lift, heel and lace pads (placed in the crease behind the knee), and skin adherent.

Position of the Athlete The athlete stands on a 3-foot high (90 cm) table, with the injured knee held

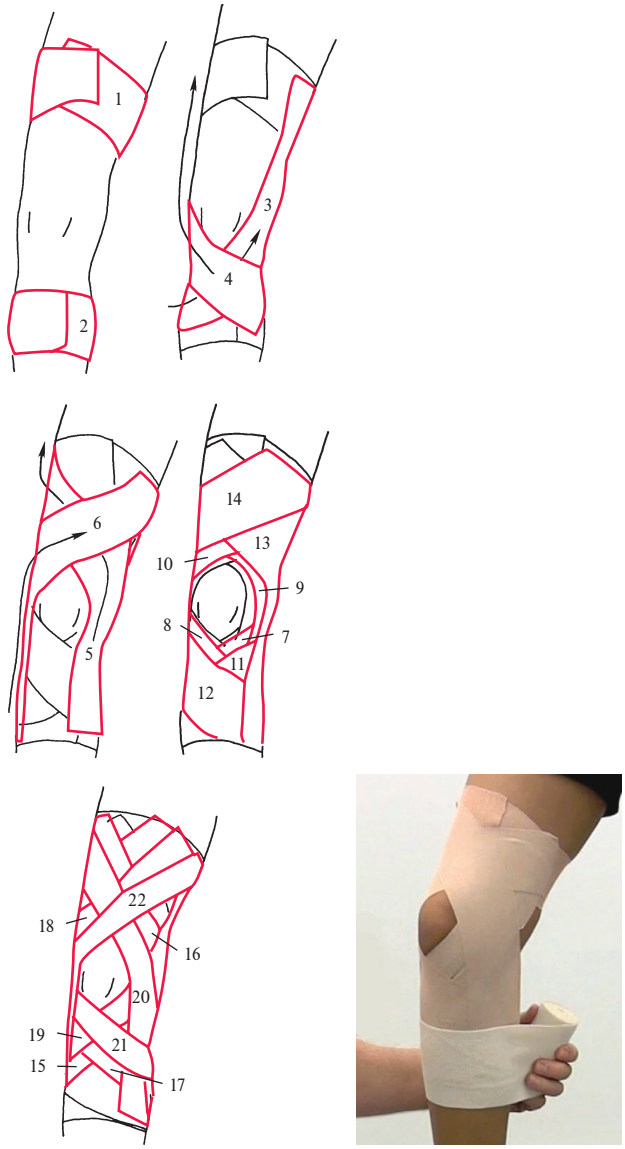


FIGURE 10–18 Taping for injuries to the ligaments of the knee. ©William E. Prentice

in a moderately relaxed position by a 1-inch (2.5 cm) heel lift. The hair is completely removed from an area 6 inches (15 cm) above to 6 inches (15 cm) below the patella.

Procedure

1. Lightly encircle the thigh and leg at the hairline with a 3-inch (7.5 cm) elastic anchor strip (1 and 2).
2. Precut 12 elastic tape strips, each approximately 9 inches (22.5 cm) long. Stretching them to their utmost, apply them to the knee as indicated in Figure 10–18 (3 through 14).
3. Apply a series of three strips of 2-inch (5 cm) white adhesive tape (15 through 22). Some individuals find it advantageous to complete a knee taping by wrapping it loosely with an elastic wrap, thus providing an added precaution against the tape's coming loose from perspiration.

Caution Tape must not constrict patella.

Elbow Tape the elbow as follows to restrict elbow hyperextension (Figure 10–19).

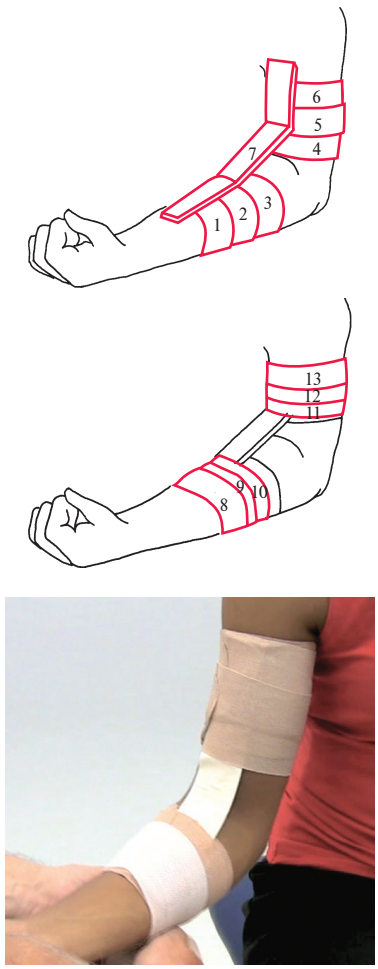


FIGURE 10–19 **Taping to restrict elbow hyperextension.** ©William E. Prentice

Materials Needed One roll of 1½-inch (3.8 cm) white adhesive tape, heel and lace pad (placed in the crease of the elbow), tape adherent, and 2-inch (5 cm) elastic bandage.

Position of the Athlete The athlete stands with the affected elbow flexed at 90 degrees.

Procedure

1. Apply 3 anchor strips loosely around the forearm (1 through 3). Apply three anchor strips loosely around the upper arm, approximately 2 inches (25 cm) to above the curve of the elbow (antecubital fossa) (4 through 6).
2. Construct a checkrein (strips of tape to limit or restrict motion) by cutting a 10-inch (25 cm) and a 4-inch (10 cm) strip of tape and laying the 4-inch (10 cm) strip against the center of the 10-inch (25 cm) strip, blanking out that portion. Next place the checkrein so that it spans the two anchor strips with the blanked-out side facing downward. Leave checkrein extended 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5 cm) past anchor strips on both ends. This allows anchoring of the checkreins with circular strips to secure against slippage (7).
3. Place five additional 10-inch (25 cm) strips of tape over the basic checkrein.
4. Finish the procedure by securing the checkrein with three lock strips on each end (8 through 13). A figure-eight elastic wrap applied over the taping will prevent the tape from slipping because of perspiration.

Wrist Wrist taping (Figure 10–20) stabilizes and protects badly injured wrists.

Materials Needed One roll of 1-inch (2.5 cm) white adhesive tape and tape adherent.

Position of the Athlete The athlete stands with the affected hand flexed toward the injured direction and the fingers moderately spread to increase the breadth of the wrist for the protection of nerves and blood vessels.

Procedure

1. Apply one anchor strip around the wrist approximately 3 inches (7.5 cm) from the hand (1); wrap another anchor strip around the spread hand (2).
2. With the wrist bent toward the side of the injury, run a strip of tape from the anchor strip near the little finger, obliquely across the wrist joint, to the wrist anchor strip. Run another strip from the anchor strip on the index finger side, across the wrist joint, to the wrist anchor. This forms a crisscross over the wrist joint (3 and 4). Apply a series of four or five crisscrosses, depending on the extent of splinting needed (5 through 8).

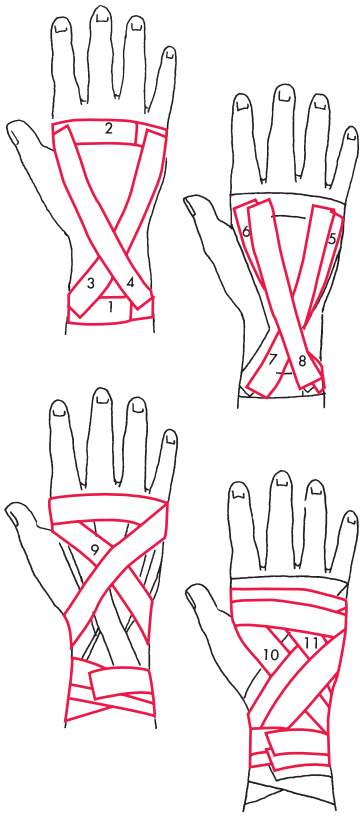


FIGURE 10–20 **Wrist taping technique.** ©William E. Prentice

3. Apply two or three series of figure-eight tapings over the crisscross taping (9 through 11). Start by encircling the wrist once, carry a strip over the back of the hand obliquely, encircling the hand twice, and then carry another strip obliquely upward across the back of the hand to where the figure eight started. Repeat this procedure to ensure a strong, stabilizing taping.

Thumb Sprained thumb taping (Figure 10–21) is designed to give both protection for the muscle and joint and support to the thumb.

Materials Needed One roll of 1-inch (2.5 cm) white adhesive tape and tape adherent.

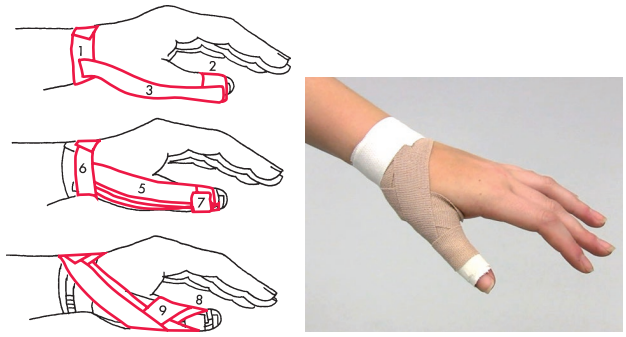


FIGURE 10–21 **Taping for a sprained thumb.** ©William E. Prentice

Position of the Athlete The athlete should hold the injured thumb in a relaxed neutral position.

Procedure

1. Place an anchor strip loosely around the wrist and another around the distal end of the thumb (1 and 2).
2. From the anchor at the tip of the thumb to the anchor around the wrist, apply four splint strips in a series on the side of greater injury (dorsal or palmar side) (3 through 5), and hold them in place with one lock strip around the wrist and one encircling the tip of the thumb (6 and 7).
3. Add three thumb spicas. Start the first spica on the radial side at the base of the thumb and carry it under the thumb, completely encircling it, and then cross the starting point. The strip should continue around the wrist and finish at the starting point. Each of the subsequent spica strips should overlap the preceding strip by at least ⅔ inch (1.7 cm) and move downward on the thumb (8 and 9). The thumb spica with tape provides an excellent means of protection during recovery from an injury.

Fingers

Finger and Thumb Checkreins The sprained finger or thumb may require the additional protection afforded by a restraining checkrein (Figure 10–22).[11]

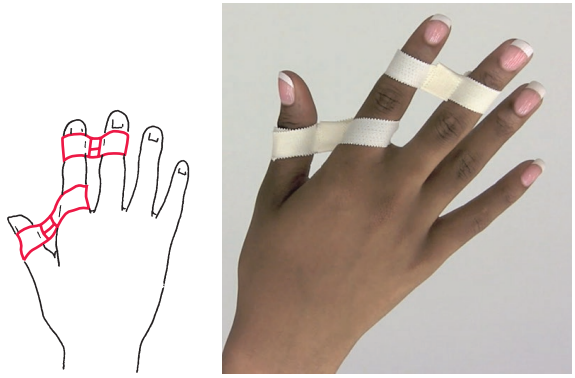


FIGURE 10–22 **Finger and thumb checkreins.** ©William E. Prentice

Materials Needed One roll of 1-inch (2.5 cm) adhesive tape.

Position of the Patient The patient spreads the injured fingers widely but within a range that is free of pain.

Procedure

1. Bring a strip of ½-inch (1.25 cm) adhesive tape around the middle phalanx of the injured finger over to the adjacent finger and around it also. The tape left between the two fingers, which are spread apart, is called the checkrein.
2. Add strength with a lock strip around the center of the checkrein.

Customized Hard-Shell Pads

A hard-shell pad is often required for an athlete who has an injury such as a painful contusion (bruise) that must be completely protected from further injury (Figure 10–23). The hard-shell pad may be either a commercially manufactured pad or a customized pad made from moldable plastic and foam or felt padding.

FIGURE 10–23 Hard-shell pad wrapped on the thigh. ©William E. Prentice

KINESIO TAPING

Since 2008, the use of kinesio tape, a type of elastic tape, has become popular for treating sports injuries (Figure 10–24). It has been suggested that kinesio tape is more effective than other types of elastic tape and that it helps to relieve pain by lifting the skin and allowing improved blood and lymph flow.[11] A number of studies have looked at the effectiveness of kinesio taping, and the preponderance of evidence suggests that it is no more effective than other techniques of elastic taping or interventions in the management or prevention of sports injuries.[4,11,15]

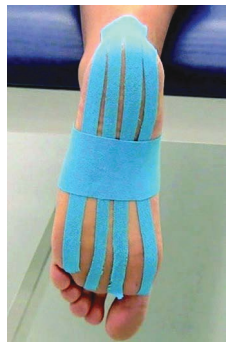


FIGURE 10–24 Kinesio taping techniques for plantar fasciitis. ©William E. Prentice

ATHLETIC INJURY MANAGEMENT CHECKLIST

The following is a checklist for applying adhesive tape to an injured body part.

- ❑ If the part to be taped is a joint, place it in the position in which it is to be stabilized. If the part is muscle, make the necessary allowance for contraction and expansion.
- ❑ Overlap the tape at least half the width of the tape below. Unless tape is overlapped sufficiently, the active athlete will separate it, exposing the underlying skin to irritation.
- ❑ Avoid continuous taping. Tape continuously wrapped around a part may cause constriction. It is suggested that one turn be made at a time and that each encirclement be torn to overlap the starting end by approximately 1 inch. This rule is particularly true of white adhesive tape.
- ❑ Keep the tape roll in the hand whenever possible. By learning to keep the tape roll in the hand, seldom putting it down, and by learning to tear the tape, an operator can develop taping speed and accuracy.
- ❑ Smooth and mold the tape as it is laid on the skin. To save additional time, tape strips should be smoothed and molded to the body part as they are put in place; this is done by stroking the top with the fingers, palms, and heels of both hands.

- ❏ Allow tape to fit the natural contour of the skin. Each strip of tape must be placed with a particular purpose in mind. Linen-backed tape is not sufficiently elastic to bend around acute angles, but must be allowed to fall as it may, fitting naturally to the body contours. Failing to allow this fit creates wrinkles and gaps that can result in skin irritations.
- ❏ Start taping with an anchor piece and finish by applying a lock strip. Commence taping, if possible, by sticking the tape to an anchor piece that encircles the part. This placement affords a good medium for the stabilization of succeeding tape strips so that they will not be affected by the movement of the part.
- ❏ Where maximum support is desired, tape directly over skin. In cases of sensitive skin, prewrap may be used as a tape base. With prewrap, some movement can be expected between the skin and the base.
- ❏ Do not apply tape if skin is hot or cold from a therapeutic treatment.

SUMMARY

- Elastic wraps, when properly applied, can contribute to recovery from sports injuries.
- Elastic wraps must be applied uniformly and firmly, but not so tightly as to impede circulation.
- Tape is used in a variety of ways—as a means of holding a wound dressing in place, as support, and as protection against musculoskeletal injuries.
- For supporting and protecting musculoskeletal injuries, two types of tape are currently used—nonelastic white adhesive and elastic adhesive.
- Tape must be stored in a cool place and must be stacked on the flat side of each roll.
- The skin of the athlete must be carefully prepared before tape is applied.
- The skin should first be carefully cleaned; then all hair should be removed.
- An adherent may be applied, followed by an underwrap material, if needed, to help avoid skin irritation.
- Tape must be applied in a manner that provides the least amount of irritation and the maximum support.
- All tape applications require great care that the proper materials are used, that the proper position of the athlete is ensured, and that procedures are carefully followed.
- Despite its popularity, kinesio taping is no more effective than other techniques of elastic taping in the management or prevention of sports injuries.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

10-1 A 6-inch (15 cm) elastic wrap as a hip adductor restraint should be applied. This technique is designed to prevent the groin from being overstretched and the hip adductors reinjured.

10-2 A 4-inch (10 cm) elastic shoulder spica is used to hold the doughnut in place.

10-3 First, the ankle should be shaved. Then a tape adherent spray should be applied. Heel and lace pads with a small amount of lubricant should be applied over bony prominences. One layer of underwrap can be applied. Tape should be applied with even pressure, leaving no gaps.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. What are elastic wraps used for? How do you apply them?
2. Observe the athletic trainer wrapping and taping in the athletic training clinic.
3. What types of tape are available? What is the purpose of each type? What qualities should you look for in selecting tape?
4. How should you prepare an area to be taped?
5. How should you tear tape?
6. How should you remove tape from an area? Demonstrate the various methods and cutters that can be used to remove tape.
7. What are some general rules for tape application, and why should you follow them?
8. What are some common taping procedures?
9. Bring the different types of tape to class. Discuss their uses and the qualities to look for in purchasing tape. Have the class practice tearing tape and preparing an area for taping.
10. Take each joint or body part, and demonstrate the common taping procedures used to give support to that area. Have the students pair up and practice these taping jobs on each other. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of using tape as a supportive device.

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Abell, B. 2009. *Taping and wrapping made simple.* Baltimore, MD: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.
2. Beam, J. 2017. *Orthopedic taping, wrapping, bracing and padding.* Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.
3. Best, R., & Mauch, F. 2014. Residual mechanical effectiveness of external ankle tape before and after competitive soccer performance, *Clinical Journal of Sports Medicine* 24(1):51–57.
4. Csapo, R., & Alegre, L. 2014. Effects of kinesio taping on skeletal muscle strength: A meta-analysis of current evidence. *Journal of Science and Medicine in Sport* 18(4):450–456.
5. Clay, K. 2015. The impact of ankle taping upon range of movement and lower-limb balance before and after dynamic exercise. In G. Atkinson & T. Reilly (eds.), *Contemporary sport, leisure and ergonomics.* New York, NY: Routledge.
6. Fousekis, K., & Billis, E. 2017. Elastic bandaging for orthopedic- and sports-injury prevention and rehabilitation: A systematic review. *Journal of Sport Rehabilitation, 26*(3):269–278.
7. Grubbs, A. 2017. *Taping, wrapping, and bracing for athletic trainers: Functional methods for application and fabrication.* Thorofare, NJ: Healio/Slack Books.
8. Halim-Kertanegara, S., & Raymond, J. 2017. The effect of ankle taping on functional performance in participants with functional ankle instability. *Physical Therapy in Sport* 23:162–167.
9. Hewetson, T. 2009. *An illustrated guide to taping techniques: Principles and practice.* St. Louis, MO: Mosby.
10. Hughes, T., & Rochester, P. 2008. The effects of proprioceptive exercise and taping on proprioception in subjects with functional ankle instability: A review of the literature. *Physical Therapy in Sport* 9(3):136.
11. Kalron, A., & Bar-Sela, S. 2013. A systematic review of the effectiveness of kinesio taping—Fact of fiction? *European Journal of Physical and Rehabilitation Medicine* 49(5):699–709.
12. Long, Z., & Wang, R. 2017. Optimizing ankle performance when taped: Effects of kinesiology and athletic taping on proprioception in full weight-bearing stance. *Journal of Science and Medicine in Sport* 20(3):236–240.
13. MacDonald, R. 2009. *Taping techniques: Principles and practice.* Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier.
14. Matheus, J., & Zille, R. 2017. Comparison of the mechanical properties of therapeutic elastic tapes used in sports and clinical practice, *Physical Therapy in Sport* 24:74–78. doi: 10.1016/j.ptsp.2016.08.014.
15. Parreira, P. 2014. Current evidence does not support the use of kinesio taping in clinical practice: A systematic review. *Journal of Physiotherapy* 60(1):31–39.
16. Perrin, D. H. 2012. *Athletic taping and bracing.* Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
17. Quackenbush, K. 2008. The effects of two adhesive ankle taping methods on strength, power, and range of motion in female athletes. *North American Journal of Sports Physical Therapy* 3(1):25–32.
18. Simon, J., & Donahue, M. 2017. Current practices and attitudes in the use of ankle taping and bracing in the college and high school setting. *International Journal of Athletic Therapy and Training* 22(4):34–42.
19. Stoffel, K. 2010. Effect of ankle taping on knee and ankle joint biomechanics in sporting tasks. *Medicine and Science in Sport and Exercise* 42(11):2089–2097.
20. Wilkerson, G. B. 2002. Biomechanical and neuromuscular effects of ankle taping and bracing. *Journal of Athletic Training* 37(4):436–445.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Beam, J. 2017. *Orthopedic taping, wrapping, bracing, and padding.* Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.

This highly illustrated manual is an all-inclusive examination of taping, wrapping, bracing, and padding techniques for the prevention, treatment, and rehabilitation of common athletic injuries and conditions.

Grubbs, A. 2017. *Taping, wrapping, and bracing for athletic trainers: Functional methods for application and fabrication.* Thorofare, NJ: Healio/Slack Books.

This text provides a collection of some of the most commonly used and most functional taping, wrapping, and bracing techniques for orthopedic injuries.

MacDonald, R. 2009. *Taping techniques: Principles and practice.* Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier.

Provides an illustrated guide to taping techniques for those involved in the treatment and rehabilitation of sports injuries and other conditions such as muscle imbalances, unstable joints, and neural control. Chapters organized by body part give indications and instructions for taping for specific conditions.

Perrin, D. H. 2012. *Athletic taping and bracing.* Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Discusses specific injuries; gives step-by-step instructions for applying tape, braces, wraps, and orthotics; and presents stretching and strengthening exercises that reduce the chances of reinjury.

Prentice, W. 2017. *Principles of athletic training: An evidence-based guide to clinical practice.* New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

Contains a comprehensive chapter on a variety of taping and bandaging skills with complete descriptions of techniques.

Wright, K. 2014. *Comprehensive manual of taping, wrapping, and protective devices.* Urbana, IL: Sagmore Publishing.

Written by recognized experts in sports medicine, this text displays and describes a step-by-step process in the application of taping and wrapping products along with a listing of protective devices to be utilized in preventing injuries.

WEBSITES

Cramer Sports Medicine: www.cramersportsmed.com

Johnson & Johnson: www.jnj.com

Mueller Sports Medicine—Retail Tape and Wrap: www.muellersportsmed.com/sports-medicine-product/athletic-tapes-wraps.html

Properties of Athletic Tape: www.bloodandbones.com/tape.html

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

11

©William E. Prentice

Understanding the Basics of Injury Rehabilitation

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Explain the philosophy of the rehabilitative process in a sports medicine environment.
- Identify the individual short-term and long-term goals of a rehabilitation program.
- Describe the criteria and the decision-making process for determining when the injured athlete may return to full activity.
- Discuss how a coach or fitness professional might use therapeutic modalities in a rehabilitation program.

THERAPEUTIC EXERCISE VERSUS CONDITIONING EXERCISE

The basic principles of training and conditioning exercises that were discussed in some detail in Chapter 4 also apply to techniques of therapeutic, rehabilitative, or reconditioning exercises that are specifically concerned with restoring normal body function following injury. The term *therapeutic exercise* is perhaps most widely used to indicate exercises that are used in a rehabilitation program, whereas the term *conditioning exercise* refers to those activities that maximize performance while minimizing the possibility of injury.

The purpose of this chapter is to provide some knowledge and understanding of a basic plan for a typical rehabilitation program that an athletic trainer or a physical therapist would use to deal with the injured athlete. **It is NOT intended to prepare a student, coach, or other fitness professionals to design or oversee a rehabilitation program for an injured athlete. It must be made absolutely clear that state laws and statutes limit anyone other than licensed health care providers (i.e., athletic trainers, physical therapists, physicians, etc.) in the extent to which he or she can legally be involved in supervising or designing the rehabilitation program**. However, it should also be emphasized that controlling initial swelling and managing the pain associated with acute injury are considered first-aid techniques that everyone may legally perform.

PHILOSOPHY OF ATHLETIC INJURY REHABILITATION

The athletic trainer is responsible for design, implementation, and supervision of the rehabilitation program.

Although every effort is made to create a safe playing environment and prevent injuries, the nature of athletic participation dictates that injuries will eventually occur. Fortunately, few of the injuries that occur in an athletic setting are life threatening. The majority of the injuries are not serious and lend themselves to rapid rehabilitation. Long-term rehabilitation programs require the supervision of a highly trained professional to be safe and effective. In an athletic setting, the athletic trainer or perhaps a physical therapist assumes the primary responsibility for design, implementation, and supervision of the rehabilitation program for the injured athlete.[9]

The competitive nature of athletics necessitates an aggressive approach to rehabilitation. Because of the short competitive season in most sports, the injured athlete does not have the luxury of simply

11–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A soccer player has injured her knee during practice.

? What should a coach do to provide immediate care and subsequently to make sure she receives appropriate medical care?

sitting around and doing nothing until the injury heals. *The goal for the injured athlete is to return to activity as quickly and safely as possible.*[9] Consequently, the tendency is to try to push the athlete to return. Unfortunately, there is a thin line between not pushing the athlete hard enough or fast enough and being overly aggressive. In either case, a mistake in judgment on the part of the person overseeing the rehabilitation program may hinder the athlete's return to activity. Health care professionals overseeing the rehabilitation program must make decisions about how to progress that program based on the limitations of the healing process.[7]

The long-term goal is to return the injured athlete to practice or competition as quickly and safely as possible.

BASIC COMPONENTS AND GOALS OF A REHABILITATION PROGRAM

Components of a rehabilitation program:

- Controlling swelling
- Reducing pain
- Restoring full range of motion
- Reestablishing core stability
- Restoring muscular strength, endurance, power
- Reestablishing neuromuscular control
- Regaining balance
- Maintaining cardiorespiratory fitness
- Incorporating functional progressions
- Functional testing

Designing an effective rehabilitation program is simple if several basic components are addressed.[7] These basic components may also be considered as the short-term goals of a rehabilitation program and should include (1) providing correct immediate first aid and management following injury to limit or control swelling; (2) reducing or minimizing pain; (3) restoring full range of motion; (4) reestablishing core stability; (5) restoring or increasing muscular strength, endurance, and power; (6) reestablishing neuromuscular control; (7) improving balance; (8) maintaining cardiorespiratory fitness; and (9) incorporating appropriate functional progressions.[9] **The long-term goal is almost invariably to return the injured athlete to practice or competition as quickly and safely as possible.**

Providing Correct First Aid and Controlling Swelling

As discussed in detail in Chapter 8, the process of rehabilitation begins immediately after injury. Anyone, students, fitness professionals, coaches, etc., who has first-aid training may legally provide initial first-aid management following injury. These immediate first-aid and management techniques are perhaps the most critical part of any rehabilitation program. **How the injury is managed initially has a significant impact on the course of the rehabilitative process.**[3] Everything that is done in first-aid management of any injury should be directed toward controlling the swelling.[8] To control and significantly limit the amount of swelling, the **POLICE** principle—protection, optimal loading, ice, compression, and elevation—should be applied (Figure 11–1).[8] Each factor plays a critical role in limiting swelling, and all these elements should be used simultaneously (see Chapter 8).

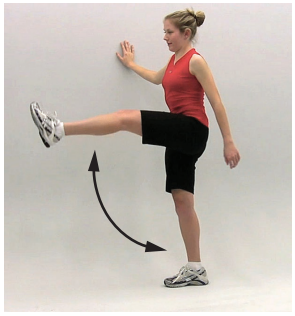
Controlling swelling:

- Protection
- Rest
- Ice
- Compression
- Elevation

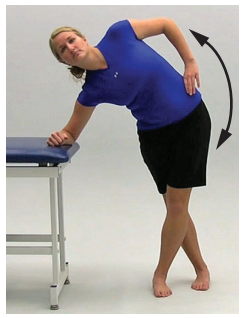
Reducing Pain

When an injury occurs, the athlete experiences some degree of pain. The extent of the pain is determined in part by the severity of the injury, by the athlete's individual response to and perception of pain, and by the circumstances under which the injury occurred. Acute pain can be effectively controlled by using the **POLICE** technique immediately after injury.[8] In addition, using appropriate therapeutic modalities such as ice, heat, or electrical

FIGURE 11–1 The POLICE technique should be used immediately following injury to limit swelling. ©William E. Prentice



A



B

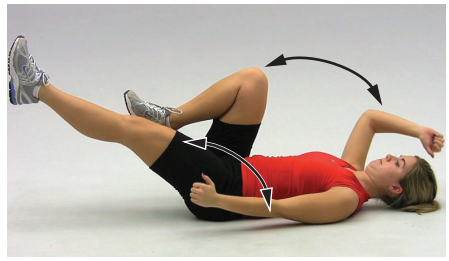
C

D

E

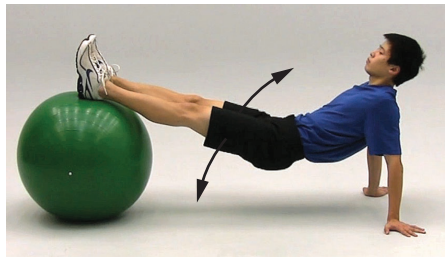
FIGURE 11–2 Stretching techniques are used with tight musculotendinous structures to improve range of motion. **(A)** Dynamic (ballistic) stretching. **(B)** Static stretching. **(C)** PNF stretching. **(D)** Stretching with exercise ball. **(E)** Stretching with foam roller. ©William E. Prentice

A



B

C



D

FIGURE 11–3 Core stability strengthening exercises. **(A)** Single leg bridge. **(B)** Dying bug. **(C)** Bridge on stability ball. **(D)** Stability ball pike-ups. ©William E. Prentice

stimulating currents can help modulate pain throughout the rehabilitation process.[10]

Restoring Full Range of Motion

Injury to a joint is always followed by some associated loss of motion. That loss of movement may be caused by resistance of the muscle and its tendon to stretch, by contracture of the ligaments and capsule around a joint, or by some combination of the two. The athlete should engage in dynamic (ballistic), static, or PNF (see Chapter 4) stretching activities designed to improve flexibility (Figure 11–2).

Reestablishing Core Stability

Core stability is absolutely essential to developing functional strength (Figure 11–3). The core is

considered to be the lumbo-pelvic-hip complex, which functions to dynamically stabilize the entire kinetic chain during functional movements. Without proximal or core stability, the distal movers cannot function optimally to efficiently utilize their strength and power. Thus, core stability should be addressed prior to engaging in any form of strengthening.

Restoring Muscular Strength, Endurance, and Power

Muscular strength, endurance, and power are among the most essential factors in restoring the function of a body part to preinjury status. Isometric, progressive resistance (isotonic), isokinetic, and plyometric exercises performed in either an open or closed kinetic chain can benefit rehabilitation (see Chapter 4).[4] A major goal in performing strengthening exercises is to work through a full, pain-free range of motion.

Isometric Exercise Isometric exercises are commonly performed in the early phase of rehabilitation when a joint is immobilized for a period of time. They are useful in cases in which using resistance training through a full range of motion may make the injury worse. Isometrics increase static strength and assist in decreasing the amount of atrophy. Isometrics also can lessen swelling by causing a muscle pumping action to remove fluid and edema.

Progressive Resistance Exercise Progressive resistance exercise (PRE) is the most commonly used strengthening technique in a rehabilitation program. PRE may be done with free weights, exercise machines, or rubber tubing (Figure 11–4). Progressive resistance exercise uses isotonic contractions in which force is generated against resistance while the muscle is changing in length. In a rehabilitation program, both eccentric (shortening) and concentric (lengthening) strengthening exercises should be used.

Limited range of movement = Stretching

Isokinetic Exercise Isokinetic exercise is occasionally used in the rehabilitative process.[9] It is most often incorporated during the later phases of a rehabilitation program, primarily for diagnostic purposes. Isokinetics use a fixed speed with accommodating resistance to provide maximal resistance throughout the range of motion (Figure 11–5). The speed of movement can

FIGURE 11–4 Progressive resistance exercise techniques. **(A)** Free weights. **(B)** Exercise machines. **(C)** Manual resistance. **(D)** Elastic bands or tubing. ©William E. Prentice

FIGURE 11–5 **Isokinetic exercise is most often used in the later stages of rehabilitation.** Courtesy of Biodex Medical Systems, Inc.

Strengthening exercises:

- Isometrics
- Progressive resistance exercise
- Isokinetics
- Plyometrics

be altered in isokinetic exercise. Isokinetic measures are commonly used as criteria in making decisions for return of the athlete to functional activity following injury.

Plyometric Exercise Plyometric exercises are most often incorporated into the later stages of a rehabilitation program. Plyometrics use a quick stretch of a muscle to facilitate a subsequent concentric contraction. Plyometric exercises are useful in restoring or developing the athlete's ability to produce dynamic movements associated with muscular power (Figure 11–6). The ability to generate force very rapidly is a key to successful performance in many sports activities. It is critical to address the element of muscular power in rehabilitation programs for the injured athlete. Plyometric exercises can cause muscle soreness in those who are not used to performing them.

Reestablishing Neuromuscular Control

Neuromuscular control is the mind's attempt to teach the body conscious control of a specific movement.[6] Neuromuscular control relies on the central nervous system to interpret and integrate sensory and movement information coming from muscles and joints and then to control those individual muscles and joints to produce coordinated movement.[11] Following injury and subsequent rest

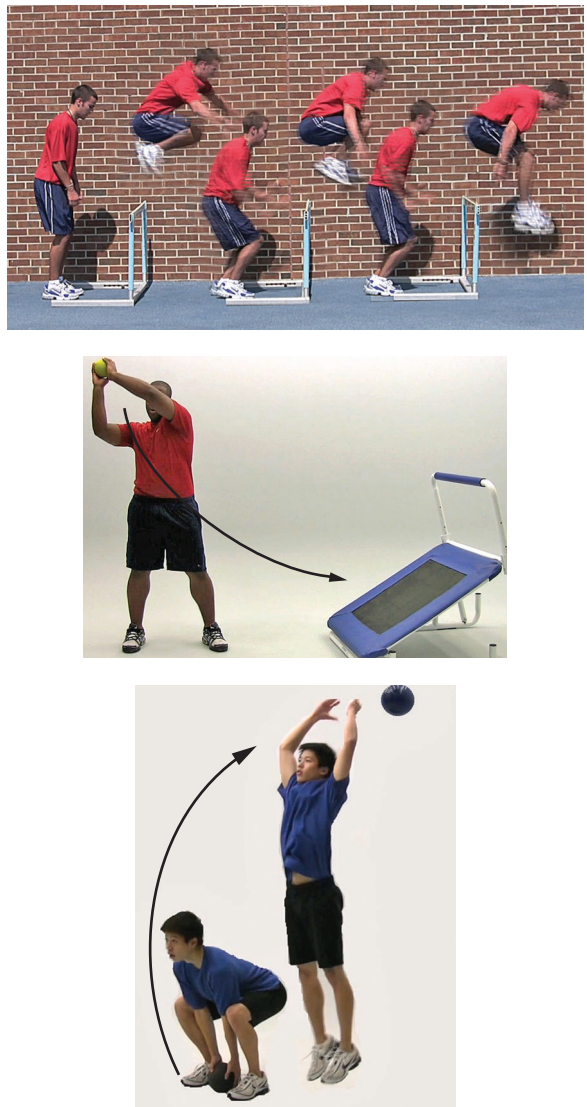


FIGURE 11–6 **Plyometric exercise focuses on improving dynamic power movements.** ©William E. Prentice

and immobilization, the central nervous system "forgets" how to put this information together. Regaining neuromuscular control means regaining the ability to follow some previously established sensory pattern.[5]

Neuromuscular control produces coordinated movements.

Strengthening exercises, particularly those that tend to be more functional, are essential for reestablishing neuromuscular control.[12]

Regaining Balance

The ability to balance and maintain postural stability is essential to reacquiring athletic skills.[1] A rehabilitation program must include functional

Balance = Postural stability

A

B

C

FIGURE 11–7 **Reestablishing neuromuscular control and balance are critical components in regaining functional performance capabilities. (A)** BAPS Board. **(B)** Bosu Balance Trainer. **(C)** Dynadisc. ©William E. Prentice

exercises that incorporate balance training to prepare the athlete for return to activity (Figure 11–7). Failure to address balance problems may predispose the athlete to reinjury.[9]

Maintaining Cardiorespiratory Fitness

Maintaining cardiorespiratory fitness is perhaps the single most neglected component of a rehabilitation program. An athlete spends a considerable amount of time preparing the cardiorespiratory system to handle the increased demands made upon it during a competitive season. When injury occurs and the athlete is forced to miss training time, levels of cardiorespiratory fitness may decrease rapidly. Thus, substitute alternative activities should be used that allow the athlete to maintain existing levels of cardiorespiratory fitness as early as possible in the rehabilitation period (Figure 11–8).[12]

Depending on the nature of the injury, several possible activities can help the athlete maintain fitness levels. A lower-extremity injury necessitates non-weight-bearing activities. Pool activities provide an excellent means for injury rehabilitation. Cycling also can positively stress the cardiorespiratory system.

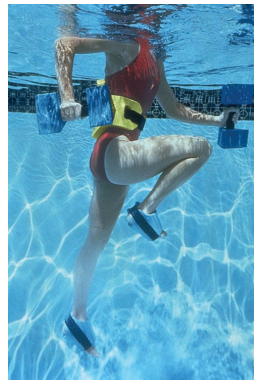
Functional progressions incorporate sport-specific skills into the rehabilitation program.

FOCUS BOX 11–1

Return to running following lower-extremity injury functional progression:

- Walking
- Jogging on track with walking of curves
- Jogging full track
- Running on track with jogging of curves
- Running full track
- Running for fitness—2 to 3 miles three times per week
- Lunges—90 degree, pivot, 180 degree
- Sprints—"W," triangle, 6 second, 20 yd, 40 yd, 120 yd
- Acceleration/deceleration to shuffle run
- Carioca
- Cutting and changing direction at half speed and then full speed
- Full return to running

A



B

FIGURE 11–8 **Every rehabilitation program must include some exercise designed to maintain cardiorespiratory fitness. (A)** Upper and lower extremity ergometer. **(B)** Aquatic exercise. (A) Courtesy of Stamina Products, Inc.; (B) ©William E. Prentice

Functional Progressions

The purpose of any rehabilitation program is to restore normal function following injury. Functional progressions involve a series of gradually progressive activities designed to prepare the individual for return to a specific sport (*Focus Box 11–1*).[2] Those skills necessary for successful participation in a given sport are broken down into component parts, and the athlete gradually reacquires those skills within the limitations of his or her own progress.[12]

11–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

Following an ankle sprain, a basketball player is sent to an athletic trainer for rehabilitation.

? What should the coach expect the short-term goals of a well-designed rehabilitation program to be?

Every new activity introduced must be carefully monitored to determine the athlete's ability to perform and his or her physical tolerance. If an activity does not produce additional pain or swelling, the level should be advanced; new activities should be introduced as quickly as possible. Ultimately, the rehabilitating athlete should be challenged with position-specific drills and activities.

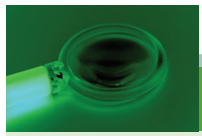
Functional progressions will gradually assist the injured athlete in achieving normal pain-free range of motion, restoring adequate strength levels, and regaining neuromuscular control throughout the rehabilitation program.[2]

Functional Testing

Functional testing uses functional progression drills for the purpose of assessing the athlete's ability to perform a specific activity (Figure 11–9).[11] Functional testing involves the performance of a single maximal effort to give some idea of how close the athlete is to a full return to activity. For years a variety of functional tests have been used to assess the athlete's progress, including agility runs (e.g., figure eights, shuttle runs, cariocas), side stepping, vertical jumps, hopping for time or distance, and co-contraction tests.[11] **If preseason testing was done, the performance of the injured athlete on a functional test can be compared with the preseason baseline test to determine whether the athlete is functionally ready to return to full activity.**

All exercise rehabilitation must be conducted as part of a carefully designed plan.

FIGURE 11–9 Performance on functional tests can determine the capability of the injured athlete to return to full activity. ©William E. Prentice



FOCUS BOX 11–2

What are therapeutic modalities used for?

- Cold = Decrease blood flow, decrease pain
- Heat = Increase blood flow, decrease pain
- Ultrasound = Increase heating, increase blood flow
- Electrotherapy = Cause muscle contraction, decrease pain
- Massage = Increase blood flow, provide relaxation
- Traction = Decrease back and neck pain
- Intermittent compression = Decrease swelling

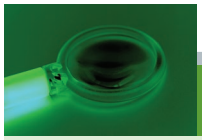
USING THERAPEUTIC MODALITIES

Most athletic trainers and physical therapists routinely incorporate the use of therapeutic modalities including cold (cryotherapy), heat (thermotherapy), ultrasound, electrotherapy, light therapy, massage, traction, and intermittent compression into their rehabilitation programs. *Focus Box 11–2* briefly describes what different therapeutic modalities are primarily used for. Athletic trainers and physical therapists have had formal classroom instruction and supervised clinical experience in using various therapeutic modalities and in most states are licensed to do so.[10]

In the absence of an athletic trainer or physical therapist, simple, inexpensive therapeutic modalities such as cold or heat might be used to treat an injured athlete; using other modalities is usually beyond the scope of a student's, coach's, or fitness professional's expertise. It is essential to be aware of and follow the laws of different states that specifically dictate how certain therapeutic modalities can be used.[10]

Ice Packs (Bags)

Ice packs are most often used for minimizing swelling and for analgesia immediately following injury. Flaked or crushed ice can be encased in a wet towel and placed on the part to be treated. An ice pack made by placing crushed or chipped ice in a self-sealing plastic bag may also be used. Both types of ice packs can easily mold to the contour of the injured part. Besides toweling, an elastic wrap should be available and should be used to hold the pack firmly in place. Usually, an elastic bandage compression wrap and elevation are used with an ice pack. These packs are safely used for 20 minutes.



FOCUS BOX 11–3

Using ice versus heat?

- Use ice immediately after injury to minimize swelling and reduce pain.
- Ice should be used for a minimum of 72 hours following acute injury.
- Heat is used to increase blood flow to the area of injury.
- Using heat too soon increases the chances of additional swelling.
- If you are trying to decide whether to use ice or heat, you will always be safest using ice.
- It is safe to switch from ice to heat when:
  - There is little or no chance of additional swelling.
  - The injury is not tender to touch.
  - Any discoloration from the injury is starting to dissipate.

Ice massage may also be useful to help with analgesia and then repeated after 1 hour.[10]

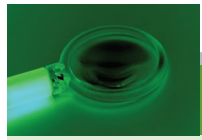
Hot Packs

Hot packs are most often used postacutely (after swelling has stopped) to increase blood and lymphatic flow and facilitate reabsorption of the by-products of the injury process into the lymphatic system.[10] Heat may also be used for its analgesic and relaxation effects. Caution should be exercised in using heat too early following injury. Cold should be used for at least 72 hours postinjury before using any type of heat.

Commercial moist heat packs, sometimes called *hydrocollator packs*, contain silicate gel in a cotton pad, which is immersed in thermostatically controlled hot water at a temperature of 160°F. Each pad retains water and a relatively constant heat level for a 20- to 30-minute treatment period. A minimum of six layers of toweling or commercial terry cloth are used between the packs and the skin. The athlete should not lie on top of the hot pack. *Focus Box 11–3* provides basic indications and contraindications for using heat or ice.

CRITERIA FOR RETURN TO PLAY

All exercise rehabilitation plans must determine what is meant by complete recovery from an injury. Often it means that the athlete is fully reconditioned and has achieved full range of movement, strength, neuromuscular control, cardiovascular fitness, and sport-specific functional skills. Besides physical well-being, the athlete must also have regained full confidence to return to his or her sport.



FOCUS BOX 11–4

Full return to play

In considering the athlete's return to activity, the following concerns should be addressed:

- *Physiological healing constraints.* Has rehabilitation progressed to the later stages of the healing process?
- *Pain status.* Has pain disappeared, or is the athlete able to play within his or her own levels of pain tolerance?
- *Swelling.* Is there still a chance that swelling may be exacerbated by a return to activity?
- *Range of motion.* Is range of motion adequate to allow the athlete to perform both effectively and with minimized risk of reinjury?
- *Strength.* Are strength, endurance, and power great enough to protect the injured structure from reinjury?
- *Neuromuscular control/proprioception/kinesthesia.* Has the athlete relearned how to use the injured body part?
- *Cardiorespiratory fitness.* Has the athlete been able to maintain cardiorespiratory fitness at or near the level necessary for competition?
- *Sport-specific demands.* Are the demands of the sport or a specific position such that the athlete will not be at risk of reinjury?
- *Functional testing.* Does performance on appropriate functional tests indicate that the extent of recovery is sufficient to allow successful performance?
- *Prophylactic taping, bracing, padding.* Are any additional supports necessary for the injured athlete to return to activity?
- *Responsibility of the athlete.* Is the athlete capable of listening to his or her body and of knowing enough not to put himself or herself in a potential reinjury situation?
- *Predisposition to injury.* Is this athlete prone to reinjury or a new injury when not 100 percent?
- *Psychological factors.* Is the athlete capable of returning to activity and competing at a high level without fear of reinjury?
- *Athlete education and preventive maintenance program.* Does the athlete understand the importance of continuing to engage in conditioning exercises that can greatly reduce the chances of reinjury?

Specific criteria for a return to play after rehabilitation are determined to a large extent by the nature and severity of the specific injury, but also depend on the philosophy and judgment of both the physician and the coach or fitness professional (*Focus Box 11–4*).[7]

The decision to release an athlete recovering from injury to a full return to athletic activity is the final stage of the rehabilitation/recovery process. The decision should be carefully considered by each member of the sports medicine team involved in the rehabilitation process. The team physician must be ultimately responsible for deciding that the athlete is ready to return to practice and/or competition. That decision should be based on collective input from the coach, the athletic trainer, and the athlete.

ATHLETIC INJURY MANAGEMENT CHECKLIST

The following is a checklist for those components that should be addressed in designing an injury rehabilitation program by a health care professional.

- ❑ Provide correct immediate first aid and management following injury, to limit or control swelling.
- ❑ Reduce or minimize pain.
- ❑ Restore full range of motion.
- ❑ Reestablish neuromuscular control.
- ❑ Restore or increase muscular strength, endurance, and power.
- ❑ Regain balance.
- ❑ Maintain cardiorespiratory fitness.
- ❑ Incorporate appropriate functional progressions.

SUMMARY

- The rehabilitation philosophy in sports medicine is an aggressive one, with the ultimate goal being to return the injured athlete to full activity as quickly and safely as possible.
- Short-term goals of a rehabilitation program are (1) providing correct immediate first aid and management following injury, to limit or control swelling; (2) reducing or minimizing pain; (3) restoring full range of motion; (4) restoring or increasing muscular strength, endurance, and power; (5) reestablishing neuromuscular control; (6) regaining balance; (7) maintaining cardiorespiratory fitness; and (8) incorporating appropriate functional progressions.
- The athlete should be permitted to fully return to play when he or she is fully reconditioned and has achieved full range of movement, strength, neuromuscular control, cardiovascular fitness, and sport-specific functional skills. Besides physical well-being, the athlete must also have regained full confidence to return to his or her sport.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

11-1 After providing the correct first-aid measures, if no athletic trainer or physical therapist is available, the coach or fitness professional should immediately send the athlete to either the team physician or her family physician for evaluation and diagnosis. The physician should refer the patient to a licensed athletic trainer or physical therapist to design and supervise her rehabilitation program.

11-2 In sports medicine, the short-term goals in any rehabilitation program should include controlling pain, regaining range of motion, regaining strength, reestablishing neuromuscular control, and maintaining levels of cardiorespiratory fitness. The approach to rehabilitation should be aggressive. Decisions as to when and how to alter and progress specific components within a rehabilitation program should be based on, and are limited by, the healing process. The long-term goal is to return the athlete to full activity as soon as safely possible.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. Explain the role of the fitness professionals and coaches in a rehabilitation program.
2. Describe the techniques for controlling swelling following injury.
3. Why is it important to modulate pain during a rehabilitation program?
4. How is range of motion restored after an injury?
5. Compare the use of isometric, progressive resistance, isokinetic, and plyometric exercises in rehabilitation.
6. How is neuromuscular control related to movement?
7. Why must an athlete condition the body generally while an injury heals?
8. How and when should functional progressions be incorporated into the rehabilitation program?
9. Describe how to determine whether an athlete is ready to return to activity following injury.
10. What modalities can be used in treating the athlete, and for what should they be used?

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Dvir, Z. 2004. *Isokinetics: Muscle testing, interpretation, and clinical applications*. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Health Sciences.
2. Ellenbecker, T. 2009. *Effective functional progressions in sport rehabilitation*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
3. Giangarra, C., & Manske, R. 2017. *Clinical orthopedic rehabilitation: A team approach*. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Health Sciences.
4. Kisner, C., & Colby, A. 2017. *Therapeutic exercise: Foundations and techniques*. Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.
5. Lephart, S. M. 2000. *Proprioception and neuromuscular control in joint stability*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
6. McGee, D. 2010. *Athletic and sport issues in musculoskeletal rehabilitation*. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders.
7. O'Sullivan, S. 2013. *Physical rehabilitation*. Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.
8. Prentice, W. 2017. *Principles of athletic training: A guide to evidence-based clinical practice*, 16th ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
9. Prentice, W. 2019. *Rehabilitation techniques for sports medicine and athletic training*. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.
10. Prentice, W. 2018. *Therapeutic modalities in rehabilitation*, 5th ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
11. Reiman, M. 2009. *Functional testing in human performance*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
12. Hoogenboom, B., Voight, M., & Prentice, W. 2014. *Musculoskeletal interventions: Techniques for therapeutic exercise*, 3rd. ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Ellenbecker, T. 2009. *Effective functional progressions in sport rehabilitation*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Presents scientific principles and practical applications for using functional exercise to rehabilitate athletic injuries.

Giangarra, C., & Manske, R. 2017. *Clinical orthopedic rehabilitation: A team approach*. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Health Sciences.

Brings the reader up to date with evidence-based literature on examination techniques, treatment options, and criteria-based rehabilitation protocols.

Prentice, W. 2019. *Rehabilitation techniques for sports medicine and athletic training*, 6th ed. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.

A comprehensive text dealing with all aspects of rehabilitation used in a sports medicine setting.

WEBSITES

Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation: www.archives-pmr.org

Journal of Sport Rehabilitation: http://journals.humankinetics.com/JSR

National Athletic Trainers' Association: www.nata.org
Accesses rehabilitation in the athletic training journals.

The Physician and Sportsmedicine: www.tandfonline.com/toc/ipsm20/current
Search back issues and access the ones specifically geared toward weight training and rehabilitation.

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

12

©William E. Prentice

Helping the Injured Athlete Psychologically

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Discuss how athletes might respond psychologically to an injury.
- Describe the progressive reactions to injury, dependent on length of rehabilitation.
- Discuss predictors of injury and interventions.
- Identify stressors in the athlete's life.
- Discuss the concept of buffers for stress management.
- Discuss the importance of goal setting as a means of making the injured athlete compliant with the rehabilitation program.
- Identify the various considerations in managing the psychological impact of injury.
- Describe the decision-making process for returning the injured athlete to competition.

When the body is injured, it is likely that the mind is also affected. Research indicates that athletes who experience a negative psychological response to injury have a longer and more difficult period of rehabilitation.[7] Therefore, information regarding the effect that injury has on the athlete and the possible psychological care that can be given in the sports setting may facilitate the athlete's return to competition.[23]

Certainly the sports medicine team can have a significant impact on the course of rehabilitation for the injured athlete (Figure 12–1).[3] The manner in which these individuals interact with the injured athlete and how the athlete responds psychologically to injury collectively dictate the course of a rehabilitative program.[15] The goal is to get the mind, as well as the body, ready to return to competition.[4] If a sport psychologist is available to the athlete, such a person can be of tremendous value in helping the athlete learn to cope with both the psychological and physical stresses associated with an injury.[6]

Coaches and other fitness professionals who work with competitive or recreational athletes must have an understanding of the athlete's psychological reaction to injury and how different individuals deal with injury.[14] The way a coach or fitness professional chooses to support the injured athlete during the period of rehabilitation can have a significant impact on the course of that process. This chapter addresses the athlete's psychological reaction to injury and suggests what the coach and fitness professional should do to have a positive impact.

THE ATHLETE'S PSYCHOLOGICAL RESPONSE TO INJURY

Not all athletes deal with injury in the same manner.[5,20] One athlete may view an injury as disastrous; another may view it as an opportunity to show courage; and still another athlete may relish the injury to prevent embarrassment over poor performance, provide an escape from a losing team, or discourage a domineering parent.[5]

Injury Severity Classification

Certain factors are commonly seen among athletes going through adjustment to injury and rehabilitation. Severity of injury usually determines length

FIGURE 12–1 A coach, fitness professional, or sports medicine personnel can have a significant impact on how an athlete deals with an injury psychologically. © William E. Prentice

of rehabilitation.[18] Generally, injuries may be classified as short term (less than 4 weeks), long term (greater than 4 weeks), chronic (recurring), or terminating (career ending) (Table 12–1). Athletes are likely to experience a "rollercoaster ride" of emotional responses or reactions when they are injured initially, during the course of rehabilitation, and as they are finally able to return to full activity.[18]

Phases of the Injury Process

Regardless of severity of injury and the corresponding length of time required for rehabilitation, the injured athlete has to deal with a variety of emotions that may occur during three reactive phases of the injury and rehabilitation process.[9] These reactive phases that the injured athlete typically goes through are reaction to injury, reaction to rehabilitation, and reaction to return to competition or career termination.[29] It should be pointed out that all athletes do not necessarily have all reactions, nor do all reactions fall precisely into the suggested sequence. Other factors that can influence reactions to injury and rehabilitation are the athlete's coping skills, past history of injury, social support, and personality traits.[29]

Reactive phases:

- Reaction to injury
- Reaction to rehabilitation
- Reaction to return to competition or career termination

With any type of injury, but particularly with those that require lengthy rehabilitation, athletes whose whole lives tend to revolve around a sport may have to make major adjustments in how they perceive themselves and come to terms with how they are perceived within their society.[14] Injuries are a common source of diminished self-esteem. Athletes who have been successful competitively prior to injury frequently continue to have problems after their physical recovery from an injury. Although some athletes may have high self-esteem, which encourages them to take added risks, others with low self-esteem may use an injury as a release from the pressure.[13]

12–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A volleyball player sprains the medial collateral ligament in her knee during a match.

? What emotional reactions would you expect to see throughout the initial injury, rehabilitation, and return phases of this short-term injury?

PREDICTORS OF INJURY

The Injury-Prone Athlete

Some athletes seem to have a pattern of injury, whereas others in exactly the same position with the same physical makeup are injury-free. It has been suggested that some psychological traits at one extreme or the other may predispose the athlete to repeated injury. No one particular personality type has been recognized as injury prone. However, the individual

TABLE 12–1 Progressive Reactions of Injured Athletes Based on Severity of Injury and Length of Rehabilitation

Length of Rehabilitation	Reaction to Injury	Reaction to Rehabilitation	Reaction to Return
Short term (<4 weeks)	Shock Relief	Impatience Optimism	Eagerness Anticipation
Long term (>4 weeks)	Fear Anger	Loss of vigor Irrational thoughts Alienation	Acknowledgment
Chronic (recurring)	Anger Frustration	Dependence or independence, apprehension	Confident or skeptical
Termination (career ending)	Isolation Grief process	Loss of athletic identity	Closure and renewal

who likes to take risks seems to represent the injury-prone athlete.[1] Other personality types that seem predisposed to injury are reserved, detached, or tender-minded players and/or apprehensive, overprotective, or easily distracted players.[28] These individuals usually also lack the ability to cope with the stress associated with the risks and its consequences. Other factors may also contribute to the likelihood of injury, such as attempting to reduce anxiety by being more aggressive or continuing to be injured because of fear of failure or guilt over unattainable or unrealistic goals.[28]

Injury-prone athletes are often either risk-takers or have reserved personalities.

Injury prevention is both psychological and physiological, which means that not only must athletes be well trained and conditioned physically, but they must also be capable of handling the psychological stresses of the sport.[30] The athlete who enters a contest while angry, frustrated, or discouraged, or while undergoing some other disturbing emotional state, is more prone to injury than is the one who is better adjusted emotionally. The angry player, for example, wants to vent that anger in some way and therefore often loses perspective on desirable and approved conduct. In the grip of emotion, skill and coordination are sacrificed, resulting in an injury that otherwise would have been avoided.

Stress and Risk of Injury

Much has been written about life stress events and the likelihood of illness. Stressors may be positive, such as making all-conference, or negative, such as not making the starting lineup or failing a drug test. Stressors that seem to predispose an athlete to injury are the negative stressors.[12]

Negative stressors lead to lack of attentional focus and muscle tension, which in turn leads to the stress–injury connection. Loss of attentional focus may cause the athlete to miss cues during a play, which can set the stage for a possible injury.[26] Muscle tension (bracing or guarding) leads to reduced flexibility, reduced motor coordination, and reduced muscle efficiency, setting the athlete up for a variety of injuries.

Stress may be positive or negative.

Sports are stressors to the athlete.[26] An athlete often walks a fine line between reaching and maintaining peak performance and overtraining. Besides performance concerns, many peripheral stressors can be imposed on the athlete, such as unreasonable expectations by the athlete, the coaches, or the parents. Worries that stem from school, work, and family can also be major causes of emotional stress.

Recognizing and Dealing with Stress It is important to recognize when an athlete is stressed emotionally. The athlete whose performance is declining and whose personality is changing may need a training program that is less demanding. Conferring with the athlete might reveal emotional and physical problems that have to be dealt with by a counselor, psychologist, or physician.[31]

Overtraining

Overtraining occurs because of an imbalance between a physical load placed on an athlete and his or her coping capacity.[14] Both physiological and psychological factors underlie overtraining. Overtraining can lead to staleness and eventual burnout.[19]

Overtraining must be recognized early and dealt with immediately. A short interruption of training should be carried out over a 3- to 5-day period. The athlete should perform a lesser amount of work but with the same intensity. When the athlete shows signs of a full recovery, a gradual return to the same workload can be initiated. Competition must be stopped.

Staleness Some athletes become "stale" for countless reasons. The athlete could be training too hard and long without proper rest. Staleness is often attributed to emotional problems stemming from daily worries, fears, and anxieties. **Anxiety** is one of the most common mental and emotional stress producers.[12] It is reflected by a vague fear, a sense of apprehension, and restlessness. Typically, the anxious athlete is unable to describe the problem. The athlete feels inadequate in a certain situation but is unable to say why. Heart palpitations, shortness of breath, sweaty palms, constriction in the throat, and headaches may accompany anxiety. Children who are pushed too hard by parents may acquire a number of psychological problems. They may even fail purposely in their sport just to rid themselves of the painful stress of achieving. A parent who acts like a drill sergeant—one who continually gives negative reinforcements—will likely cause athletes to develop symptoms of overstress.

anxiety A feeling of uncertainty or apprehension.

Staleness is evidenced by a wide variety of symptoms: a deterioration in the usual standard of performance, chronic fatigue, apathy, loss of appetite, indigestion, weight loss, and inability to sleep or rest properly. Stale athletes become irritable and restless, have to force themselves to practice, and exhibit signs of boredom and lassitude about everything connected with the activity.[13]

Athletes who show signs of staleness also increase their potential for both acute and overuse injuries and infections.[12] Stress fractures and tendinitis are typical injuries that can occur during a time of staleness.

Burnout Burnout is a syndrome related to physical and emotional exhaustion that leads to a negative self-concept, negative sports attitudes, and loss of concern for the feelings of others.[19] Athletes are often

pulled in many directions, trying to satisfy the demands of school, friends, family, and maybe a job in addition to their sport. Burnout stems from overwork and can affect both the athlete and the coach or fitness professional.[19]

Burnout can be detrimental to an athlete's general health; it is reflected in frequent headaches, gastrointestinal disturbances, sleeplessness, and chronic fatigue.[19] Athletes suffering from burnout may experience feelings of depersonalization, increased emotional exhaustion, a reduced sense of accomplishment, cynicism, and a depressed mood.

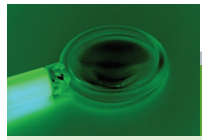
GOAL SETTING AS A MOTIVATOR TO COMPLIANCE

Goal setting has been shown to be an effective motivator for compliance to rehabilitation of an athletic injury, as well as for reaching goals in a general sports setting.[4,27] Athletes have set goals since their first competition, usually starting at an early age. They set goals to run faster, jump higher, shoot straighter, throw longer, hit harder, and so on. These goals have all had one thing in common: They were not achieved with one burst of effort, but came as the result of many short-term goals having been met before the achievement of the long-term goal.[4] *Focus Box 12–1* suggests nine factors that should be incorporated into goal setting for the athlete.[13]

Establishing progressive attainable goals is essential in rehabilitation.

In athletic rehabilitation, athletes need to know exactly what the goal is and have a sense that it can be met.[4] Telling an athlete that by a certain day the athlete should be partially weight bearing with crutches is neither specific nor measurable. It is more effective to say that by achieving a certain range of motion and strength level the foot can be placed on the ground with weight bearing and that the measurement of success is that the partial weight bearing is without pain. The goal must be a challenge but one that the athlete can reach with reasonable rehabilitation effort.[13] Goals that are easily reached have no reward in success. Goals must be personal and internally satisfying, not a goal imposed on the athlete. The setting of goals should be a joint venture between the athlete and the coach or fitness professional to be successful.[4] The athlete has to take responsibility for the progress of the injury and be responsible for doing the necessary rehabilitation.

Goal setting incorporates a multitude of other motivating factors that intuitively appear to increase the odds of compliance by reducing the stress associated with injury rehabilitation.[27] These buffers incorporated within the goal-setting paradigm are positive reinforcement when goals are met, time management for incorporating goals into a lifestyle, a feeling of social support when goals are set with the coach or fitness professional, feelings of increased self-efficacy when goals are achieved, and the like. Goals are easily understood by athletes, are concrete concepts and active events, and have been a natural part of their sport that requires no additional time commitment.[4] Goals can be set daily for a sense of accomplishment, weekly for a sense of progress, and monthly or yearly for long-term achievement.



FOCUS BOX 12–1

Nine factors to incorporate into goal setting for the athlete

- Set specific and measurable goals.
- Use positive versus negative language.
- Goals should be challenging but realistic.
- Set a reasonable timetable.
- Integrate short-, medium-, and long-term goals.
- Link outcome to process.
- Internalize goals.
- Monitor and evaluate goals.
- Link sports goals to life goals.

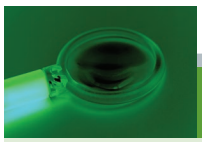
12–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A sport psychologist is discussing goals for rehabilitation with an injured soccer player.

? How should goals be set and what can be done to help the athlete feel successful in her rehabilitation program?

PROVIDING SOCIAL SUPPORT TO THE INJURED ATHLETE

The coach or fitness professional is often the first person an athlete interacts with after injury. When athletes are injured, they should be shown that the coach or fitness professional cares for the athlete as a person and not just as a part of the team.[25] Their perception of the coach or fitness professional makes a difference in recovery time and effort.[25] First, they have to respect the coach or fitness professional as a person before they can trust him or her during the rehabilitative process. Successful communication between the coach or fitness professional and the athlete is essential for effective rehabilitation.[3] Taking an interest in athletes before injuries have occurred enables the coach or fitness professional to know the athletes' personalities and work with them in helping to build their confidence.[17] *Focus Box 12–2* summarizes



FOCUS BOX 12–2

Things a coach or fitness professional can do to provide social support for an injured athlete

- Be a good listener.
- Be aware of body language.
- Project a caring image.
- Find out exactly what the problem is.
- Explain the injury to the athlete.
- Manage the stress of injury.
- Keep the athlete involved with the team.
- Help the athlete return to play.

things that a coach, fitness professional or athletic trainer can do to provide social support to an injured athlete throughout a rehabilitation program.

Be a Good Listener Active listening is an important skill. Listen to the athlete beyond the complaining. Listen for fear, anger, depression, or anxiety in the athlete's voice. With *fear,* the athlete may be wondering what the pain means in terms of function and whether he or she will be accepted by peers. *Anger* is often a feeling of being victimized by the injury and the unfairness of it. In *depression,* the athlete may have an overwhelming feeling of hopelessness or loneliness. With *anxiety*, the athlete wonders how he or she can survive the injury and what will happen if he or she cannot return to full competition (Figure 12–2).[13]

Be Aware of Body Language Body language is important as well. Continuing to work on paperwork while talking to the athlete is sending a noncaring message. Be concerned, and look athletes in the eye with a genuine interest in their problems. This will go a long way toward gaining confidence and respect.

Project a Caring Image It is important to consider the athlete as an individual instead of as "the sprained ankle." If the injury is the only consideration, the athlete becomes just an injury and not a person.

FIGURE 12–2 Individual athletes will each have a different psychological and emotional response to injury.
©William E. Prentice

The relationship between a care provider and the athlete should be one of person to person. When the athlete is treated as an equal, the relationship is improved, and it helps the athlete accept responsibility for his or her own rehabilitation. With injury, athletes lose control over their physical efforts. They go from 3 to 4 hours a day of practice or competition to no activity. They are in a temporary lifestyle change. Their feelings affect the success or failure of the rehabilitation process. A care provider must establish rapport and a sense of genuine concern and caring for the athlete, who is not fooled by superficial concern.[10]

Neglecting injured athletes or giving them the perception that they are "outcasts" also can contribute to injury and reinjury. Coaches or fitness professionals who foster this attitude are saying to the players that they have no self-worth if they are injured.[19] Some coaches go so far as to prevent team contact until injured players are ready to return or to belittle them in front of their peers, believing that this will make the athlete want to get back to competition quicker. This tactic may work with some players with minor injuries but only causes major adjustment difficulties for athletes who suffer severe injury.

Some coaches or fitness professionals refuse to talk to the athlete, or they tell others that the athlete really doesn't want to play or isn't tough enough.[19] The coach or fitness professional and athlete experience frustration with the injury. During this period, either the athletic staff shows their concern for the athlete and in return wins the athlete's loyalty and dedication, or they undermine the athlete's trust, setting up for a letdown when the athlete gets in the position of controlling the outcome of a contest and may underperform out of spite.

Find Out What the Problem Is During an injury evaluation, the athlete should provide as much input about his or her injury as possible. Paraphrasing or restating the information to the athlete is invaluable to the care provider who is unsure of the mechanism of injury or its results (Figure 12–3). Statements such as "I see" or "Go ahead" or simple silence, to allow athletes to fully express themselves, are of value. Important information can be gained by asking at the end of gathering subjective information, "What have I not asked you or do I need to know about this injury?" Then give the athlete input into the decision about a plan for dealing with the problem.

Explain the Injury to the Athlete Either an athletic trainer or a physician should effectively explain the injury to the athlete. Care should be taken to explain the situation to the athlete in understandable terms.

FIGURE 12–3 Any care giver must project a caring image and should explain the injury to the athlete in terms he or she can comprehend. ©William E. Prentice

In most cases, the simplest explanation acceptable to the athlete is the best. Athletes must have injuries explained to them to their satisfaction.[16] Disseminating injury information appropriate to athletes' emotional and intellectual level can be a real challenge. Athletes differ in how quickly they understand and accept injury information. Severity of injury is certainly important, but the athlete's perception of that severity is what matters in the rehabilitation process.[13] Thus, the physiological must be interrelated with the psychological.

Manage the Stress of Injury The amount of stress associated with playing a sport and the meaning the sport has to the athlete can affect the athlete's compliance to rehabilitation.[12] The athlete has a more successful rehabilitation when engaged fully in the activity of rehabilitation, much as the athlete has a more successful sports career when more interest and involvement are put into the sport. Stress can be a deterrent to engaging in rehabilitation. Several techniques can be used (relaxation, imagery, cognitive restructuring, thought stopping) that may lessen the stressful reaction to injury. Often a change in an athlete's perception concerning injury and rehabilitation can affect outcome.

Keep the Athlete Involved with the Team An injured athlete should remain involved with the rest of the team.[13] Following injury, particularly one that requires long-term rehabilitation, athletes may have problems adjusting socially and may feel alienated from the rest of the team. Athletes with an injury that requires weeks or months of rehabilitation before they can return to competition often feel that the coaches have ceased to care, that teammates have no time to spend with them, that friends are no longer around, and that their social life consists of time put into rehabilitation. Occasionally, athletes feel that they have received little support from coaches and teammates.

Injured athletes may understand that the coach or fitness professional cares but has no expertise in injury management and must be concerned with getting the team ready without them.[11] Injured athletes may feel unable to maintain or regain normal relationships with teammates. The injured athlete is a reminder that injury can happen, and teammates may pull away from that constant reminder. Friendships based on athletic identification are now compromised because the athletic identification is gone; some friends and team members relate to injured athletes only in terms of what they did yesterday or as injured teammates, not as individuals. Injured athletes no longer feel the team camaraderie that provides a sense of belonging or importance. Athletes who can remain involved with the team, however, feel less isolated and less guilty about not being able to help the team (Figure 12–4).

Injury might mean major changes in the way an athlete behaves socially.

After injury, athletes need the social support to prevent feelings of negative self-worth and loss of identity.[11] As early in the rehabilitation process as possible, the athlete should begin sport-specific drills during practice time with his or her athletic team. The athlete then begins to reenter the team culture and is not isolated from the team environment. Thus, the athlete puts more effort into functional, sport-specific situations that are generally less boring. In so doing, the athlete gains a more realistic appreciation of the skills needed to attain preinjury performance levels. The rehabilitation routine is more easily tolerated by athletes if they can see some carryover to their sport.

Help the Athlete Return to Play Often the perception of the athlete who is returning to competition is either that he or she is ready to return and not being allowed to

FIGURE 12–4 It is important to make sure that the injured athlete stays involved with the team. ©William E. Prentice

or that he or she is being forced to return before ready. It is important to assist the athlete in making a decision based on the facts and not clouded by emotions.[23]

Occasionally athletes are unable or unwilling to continue to participate in their sport. Frequently, the athlete's identity is intertwined with the sport played. The transition into a completely different culture can be a traumatic experience. It is stressful to enter a culture and not know one's place or identity in that culture. To not know what the game is and what the rules are is frustrating to the injured athlete.

RETURN TO COMPETITION DECISIONS

Perhaps the most difficult aspect of the rehabilitative process is making a decision as to when it is safe to return to competition. Although physically ready to return to competition, athletes coming back from a traumatic injury may be psychologically compromised by a fear that their return to play may again lead to injury.[23] It is difficult for many athletes to admit to themselves, or a coach or fitness professional, that they are afraid of being hurt again or that deep down they even expect it, thus increasing the likelihood of the occurrence.[2] This fear of reinjury must be overcome if the athlete is to restore his or her self-esteem in a positive manner.[8] Certainly, the athletic trainer or team physician is well prepared to make such a decision. Unfortunately, untrained personnel, such as fellow teammates, parents, and coaches or fitness professionals, sometimes assume this responsibility when no athletic trainer is present. **This situation has the potential to result in poor medical care and leaves the coach or fitness professional vulnerable to legal action as a result of negligence.** Courts expect competent medical care to be provided to athletes.

The phrase "you have to play with pain" has been interpreted literally to mean that the athlete has to play through an injury. The difference is that some injuries may be mild and only somewhat painful, resulting in no reinjury in competition, whereas a more severe injury is made worse by continuing to compete. The competitive athlete may be more "body aware" than the general public and therefore more apt to respond to injury with the use of protection, optimal loading, ice, compression, and elevation (POLICE) to promote healing. The general public, on the other hand, is more likely to respond to the pain of injury than to consider the healing process.[16] Therefore, the athlete may want to return to competition in spite of pain, whereas the nonathlete may want the pain to be treated before any activity is undertaken.

The athlete who continues to play with an unhealed or poorly rehabilitated injury constantly reduces the chances of a healthy life of activity. The athlete has to live past the few years of competition. Most athletes, however, have difficulty seeing past the present season or at best have the goal of participating in their sport until they can no longer compete, regardless of the consequences. The rewards of competition and the admiration of others take sports out of perspective and retard a healthy attitude toward sports. The attitude of some athletes is "Give it up for the sport" because "I'm invincible." Lack of this attitude is viewed by some as weakness or not being a team player. These athletes have difficulty adjusting to an injury, especially a career-ending one.[2]

One research study found that coaches were likely to return players on the basis of status and game situation, whereas the athletic trainer's decisions were more likely to be dictated by the status of the athlete's injury.[13] Athletes who feel that a missed practice or game will relegate them to the bench for the year—and those who have been encouraged to play no matter what—are candidates for injury and reinjury; thus, they only reinforce the decision of the coach to play someone else. Usually what happens, however, is that athletes with unhealed injuries perform poorly because they are not at full strength.

One method of making an objective decision about the athlete's readiness to return to activity is to collect baseline performance data in the preseason (e.g., 40-yard sprint, vertical jump, shuttle run) and use those scores to compare with scores on those same tests when the athlete seems to be physically and psychologically ready to resume activity. The athlete with a 4.5-second speed in a 40-yard sprint who can run only a 5.0 demonstrates to the coach or fitness professional that he or she is not ready for competition. This also demonstrates to the athlete that more time and effort are necessary to get ready to return.

The treatment of athletic injury and the rehabilitation program are more than just physical, emotional, and psychological aspects of the individual. The impact of the environment, the support of the athletic community, and the culture in which the athlete resides at the time of injury combine to influence the course the athlete takes from injury, through rehabilitation, to return to competition.

REFERRING THE ATHLETE FOR PSYCHOLOGICAL HELP

Psychological disorders are common in our society.[24] It has been estimated that one in every four to five youths in the United States will experience impairment during his or her lifetime as a result of some mental health disorder.[24] If one considers the number of student-athletes, the likelihood is high that there will be a significant number who experience one or more psychological concerns.[20]

Although coaches and fitness professionals and even athletic trainers are typically not educated

as professional counselors or psychologists, they must nevertheless be concerned with the feelings of the athletes they work with.[31] The coach or fitness professional must have appropriate counseling skills to confront an athlete's fears, frustrations, and daily crises, and to refer individuals with serious emotional problems to the proper professionals.[25] Thus, it is critical that the coaches and fitness professional, along with the athletic trainer, work with school and athletic administrators and other health care providers to develop a plan to identify student-athletes with psychological concerns and most importantly facilitate an effective referral system to institutional or community-based mental health care professionals, who may include physicians, psychiatrists, clinical psychologists, school counselors, nurses, or social workers, for evaluation and treatment.[20,22,24]

ATHLETIC INJURY MANAGEMENT CHECKLIST

The following is a checklist of things that can be done to address the psychological aspects of dealing with an injured athlete.

- ❑ Establish a rapport and a sense of genuine concern and caring for the athlete.
- ❑ Earn the athlete's trust.
- ❑ Establish good open communication with the athlete.
- ❑ Take a personal interest in athletes before an injury occurs.
- ❑ Be a good active listener.
- ❑ Look the athlete in the eye with genuine interest, and use good body language.
- ❑ Don't neglect or ignore the injured athlete.
- ❑ Facilitate continuing social support by teammates.
- ❑ Provide as much information about his or her injury as possible.
- ❑ Make sure the athlete is included in the decision-making process.

SUMMARY

- Following injury to the athlete, it is essential to pay attention to getting the mind, as well as the body, ready to return to competition.
- Athletes don't all respond to an injury in the same manner.
- Regardless of the severity of injury and the corresponding length of time required for rehabilitation, the injured athlete has to deal with a variety of emotions that may occur during three reactive phases of the injury and rehabilitation process: reaction to injury, reaction to rehabilitation, and reaction to return to competition or career termination.
- No one personality type has been recognized as injury prone.
- Negative stressors seem to predispose an athlete to injury.
- Setting appropriate goals is an effective motivator for compliance to rehabilitation of an athletic injury.
- The social support provided to the injured athlete, both in terms of what is said and what the athlete thinks, has a major impact on the course of injury rehabilitation.
- Decisions for returning the injured athlete to play should be based on the status of the athlete's injury.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

12-1 Initially, the athlete experiences shock and relief, followed by impatience and optimism during the rehabilitation phase, and finally eagerness and anticipation during the return phase.

12-2 The athlete needs to know exactly what the goal is and have a sense that it can be met. Setting a progressive series of attainable goals is critical so that the athlete does not become frustrated.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. How might an athlete respond psychologically to an injury?
2. Identify the sequence of possible emotions associated with the three reactive phases of the injury process for short-term, long-term, chronic, and career-ending injuries.
3. What are some of the personality characteristics of an individual who is likely to be injury prone?
4. What is the difference between negative and positive stress, and which is more likely to cause injury?
5. What are the primary considerations in setting appropriate goals for the injured athlete to achieve during the rehabilitation program?
6. Generate a list of the things that the coach or fitness professional should and should not do in managing the psychological impact of injury on the athlete.
7. What factors should come into consideration in the decision-making process for returning the injured athlete to competition?

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Appaneal, R., & Habif, S. 2013. Psychological antecedents to sport injury. In M. Arvinen-Barrow & N. Walker (eds.), *The psychology of sport rehabilitation*. New York, NY: Routledge.
2. Ardern, C., & Taylor, N. 2013. A systematic review of the psychological factors associated with returning to sport following injury. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 47(17):1120–1126.
3. Arvinen-Barrow, M., & Massey, W. 2014. Role of sport medicine professionals in addressing psychosocial aspects of sport-injury rehabilitation: Professional athletes' views. *Journal of Athletic Training*: 49(6):764–772.
4. Arvinen-Barrow, M., & Hemmings, B. 2013. Goal Setting in sport injury rehabilitation. In M. Arvinen-Barrow & N. Walker (eds.), *The psychology of sports injury and rehabilitation*. New York, NY: Routledge.
5. Brewer, B. 2003. Developmental differences in psychological aspects of sport-injury rehabilitation. *Journal of Athletic Training* 38(2):152–153.
6. Brewer, B., & Redmond, C. 2016. *Psychology of sport injury*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
7. Covassin, T., & Beidler, E. 2015. Psychosocial aspects of rehabilitation in sports. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 34(2):199–212.
8. Covassin, T., & McAllister-Deitrick, J. 2015. Examining time-loss and fear of re-injury in athletes. *Journal of Sport Behavior* 38(4):394–403.
9. Clement, D., & Arvinen-Barrow, M. 2015. Psychosocial responses during different phases of sport-injury rehabilitation: A qualitative study. *Journal of Athletic Training* 50(1):95–104.
10. Clement, D., & Granquist, M. 2013. Psychosocial aspects of athletic injuries as perceived by athletic trainers. *Journal of Athletic Training* 48(4):512–521.
11. Clement, D., & Shannon, V. 2011. Injured athletes' perceptions about social support. *Journal of Sport Rehabilitation* 20(4):457–470.
12. Devonport, T. 2015. Understanding stress and coping among competitive athletes in sport: Applying psychological theory and research. In A. Lane (ed.), *Sport and exercise psychology*. New York, NY: Routledge.
13. Gardner, F. 2007. *The psychology of enhancing human performance: The mindfulness-acceptance approach*. New York, NY: Springer Publishing.
14. Green, S., & Weinberg, R. 2001. Relationships among athletic identity, coping skills, social support, and the psychological impact of injury in recreational participants. *Journal of Applied Sport Psychology* 13(1):40–59.
15. Hamson-Utley, J., & Jordan, M. 2008. Athletic trainers' and physical therapists' perceptions of the effectiveness of psychological skills within sport injury rehabilitation programs. *Journal of Athletic Training* 43(3):258.
16. Heaney, C., & Walker, N. 2015. Sport psychology education for sport injury rehabilitation: A systematic review. *Physical Therapy in Sport* 16(1):72–79.
17. Harris, L. 2003. Development of the injured collegiate athlete. *Journal of Athletic Training* 38(1):75–82.
18. Hedgpeth, E., & Gieck, J. 2015. Psychological considerations for rehabilitation of the injured athlete. In W. Prentice (ed.), *Rehabilitation techniques in sports medicine, and athletic training*. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.
19. Iosard-Gauther, S., & Trouilloud, D. 2016. Associations between the perceived quality of the coach-athlete relationship and athlete burnout: An examination of the mediating role of achievement goal. *Psychology of Sport and Exercise* 22:210–217.
20. Mensch, J, Miller, G. 2007. *The athletic trainer's guide to psychosocial intervention and referral*. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.
21. Mitchell, I., & Neil, R. 2007. Gender differences in athletes' social support during injury rehabilitation. *Journal of Sport & Exercise Psychology* 29:S189.
22. Neal, T., et al. 2015. Inter-association recommendations for developing a plan to recognize and refer student-athletes with psychological concerns at the secondary school level: A consensus statement. *Journal of Athletic Training* 50(3):231–249.
23. Podlog, L., & Banham, S. 2015. Psychological readiness to return to competitive sport following injury: A qualitative study. *Sport Psychologist* 29(1):1–14.
24. Putukian, M. 2016. The psychological response to injury in student athletes: A narrative review with a focus on mental health. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 50(3):145–148.
25. Ramaeker, J., & Petrie, T. 2015. Athletic trainers' perspectives on sport psychology: Professional roles, training, and referrals. *Sport Psychologist* 29(3):278–287.
26. Sarkar, M., & Fletcher, D. 2014. Psychological resilience in sport performers: A review of stressors and protective factors. *Journal of Sport Sciences* 32(15):1419–1434.
27. Scobbie, L., & Dixon, D. 2010. Goal setting and action planning in the rehabilitation setting: Development of a theoretically informed practice framework. *Clinical Rehabilitation* 25(5):465–482.
28. Van Raalte, J. L. (ed.). 2013. *Exploring sport and exercise psychology*, 2nd ed. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
29. Weinberg, R., & Gould, D. 2014. *Foundations of sport and exercise psychology*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
30. Williams, J., & Krane, V. 2014. *Applied sport psychology: Personal growth to peak performance*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill Higher Education.
31. Yang, J., & Peek-Asa, C. 2010. Support patterns of collegiate athletes before and after injury. *Journal of Athletic Training* 45(4):372–379.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Afremow, J. 2014. *The champion's mind: How great athletes think, train, and thrive*. Emmaus, PA: Rodale Books.

Provides tips and techniques based on high-performance psychology research, such as how to get in a "zone," thrive on a team, and stay humble.

Arvinen-Barrow, M. 2013. *The psychology of sport injury and rehabilitation*. New York, NY: Routledge.

Demonstrates the ways in which athletes and practitioners can transfer psychological skills to an injury and rehabilitation setting, to enhance recovery and the well-being of the athlete.

Brewer, B., & Redmond, C. 2016. *Psychology of sport injury*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Written by a sport psychology consultant and an athletic trainer, this text provides a thorough explanation of the elements and effects of sport injuries along with up-to-date research and insights for practical application.

Van Raalte, J. L. (ed.). 2013. *Exploring sport and exercise psychology*, 2nd ed. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Provides an overview of the field of sport and exercise psychology, connecting theory and practice, and discussing practical issues.

Weinberg, R. S., & Gould, D. 2014. *Foundations of sport and exercise psychology*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Discusses the techniques that a coach should incorporate for contributing to the success of an athlete.

WEBSITES

Association for the Advancement of Applied Sport Psychology: www.appliedsportpsych.org
Emphasis on the role of psychological factors in sport and exercise.

NASPSPA: North American Society for Psychology of Sport and Physical Activity: www.naspspa.com

Mind Games: Applied Sport Psychology for Every Athlete: www.drrelax.com
A new, web-based system of individualized psychological training.

Sport Psychology for Athletes: www.sportpsych.org/nine-mental-skills-overview
The use of psychological training and preparation.

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

PART IV

Recognition and Management of Specific Injuries and Conditions

13 Recognizing Different Sports Injuries

14 The Foot and Toes

15 The Ankle and Lower Leg

16 The Knee and Related Structures

17 The Thigh, Hip, Groin, and Pelvis

18 The Shoulder Complex

19 The Elbow, Forearm, Wrist, and Hand

20 The Spine

21 The Thorax and Abdomen

22 The Head, Face, Eyes, Ears, Nose, and Throat

23 General Medical Conditions and Additional Health Concerns

24 Substance Abuse

25 Preventing and Managing Injuries in Young Athletes

13

Courtesy of Chris Bartlett, Central Davidson High School, Lexington, NC

Recognizing Different Sports Injuries

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Differentiate between acute and chronic injury.
- Briefly describe acute traumatic injuries, including fractures, dislocations and subluxations, contusions, ligament sprains, muscle strains, muscle soreness, and nerve injuries.
- Talk about chronic overuse injuries, and differentiate tendinitis, tendinosis, tenosynovitis, bursitis, osteoarthritis, and myofascial trigger points.
- Have at least some understanding of the three phases of the healing process.

No matter how much attention is directed toward the general principles of injury prevention, the nature of physical activity dictates that sooner or later injury will occur.[25] Traditionally, the terms *acute* and *chronic* have been used to describe injuries.[31] Health care professionals have debated the usefulness of these terms in defining injury. The concern has been that at some point all injuries can be considered acute—in other words, every injury has a beginning point. At what point does an acute injury become a chronic injury?[30] Generally, injuries occur either from trauma or from overuse. Acute injuries are caused by trauma; chronic injuries can result from overuse, such as the injuries that occur with the repetitive dynamics of running, throwing, or jumping.[31] In this chapter we discuss the more common traumatic and overuse injuries that the coach or fitness professional is likely to see.

Acute injuries = Trauma
Chronic injuries = Overuse

The information in this chapter is not meant to encourage fitness professionals, coaches, or others interested in areas related to exercise and sports science to attempt to diagnose injuries that may occur. This should be left to health care professionals, who have considerably more training and expertise. However, being familiar with the various injuries described in this chapter can help in understanding the course of both immediate care and long-term injury management.

ACUTE (TRAUMATIC) INJURIES

Fractures

Fractures (broken bones) occur as a result of extreme stresses and strains placed on bones. Before discussing fractures, a brief discussion of bone anatomy is necessary.[20] The gross structure of the long bones includes the diaphysis, epiphysis, articular cartilage, and periosteum (Figure 13–1). The *diaphysis* is the main shaft of the bone. It is hollow, cylindrical, and covered by compact bone. The *epiphysis* is located at the ends of long bones. It is the growth area of the bone in adolescents. An injury to the epiphysis may affect growth of the long bones in younger athletes (see Chapter 25).[22]

Fractures Breaks or cracks in a bone.

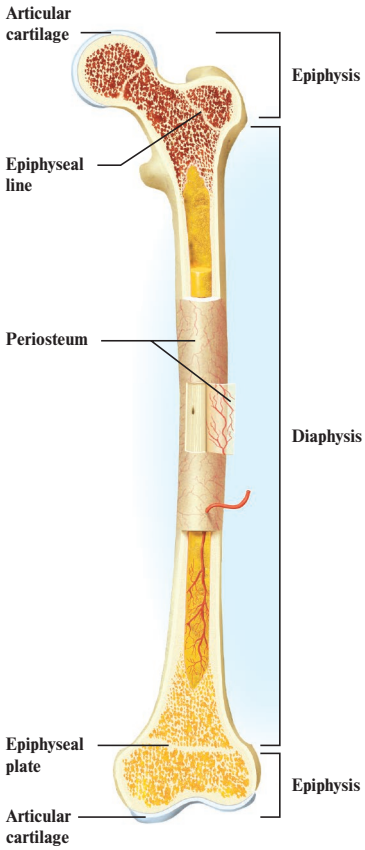


FIGURE 13–1 **The gross structure of the long bones includes the diaphysis, epiphysis, articular cartilage, and periosteum.** (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 8th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2017.)

The ends of long bones are covered with a layer of *articular cartilage* that covers the joint surfaces of the epiphysis. This cartilage provides protection during movement and cushions jars and blows to the joint. A dense, white, fibrous membrane, the *periosteum*, covers long bones except at joint surfaces. Interlacing with the periosteum are fibers from the muscle tendons. Throughout the periosteum on its inner layer exist countless blood vessels and **osteoblasts** (bone-forming cells). The blood vessels provide nutrition to the bone, and the osteoblasts provide bone growth and repair.

osteoblasts (os-tee-oh-blasts) Bone-forming cells.

open fracture Overlying skin is lacerated by protruding bone fragments.

closed fracture Fracture does not penetrate superficial tissue.

Fractures generally can be classified as either open or closed.[20] In an **open fracture** there is enough displacement of the fractured ends that the bone actually breaks through surrounding tissues, including the skin, or a wound penetrates the tissues down to the broken bone (Figure 13–2). An open fracture increases the possibility of infection. A **closed fracture** is one in which there is little or no movement or displacement of the broken bones and no disruption of the skin. Both types of fractures can be serious if not managed properly. Signs and symptoms of a fracture include obvious deformity, point tenderness, swelling, and pain on active and passive movement. There may also be crepitus (popping or a grating sound on movement). The only definitive technique for determining whether a fracture exists is to have it X-rayed.

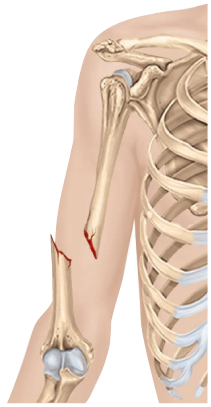


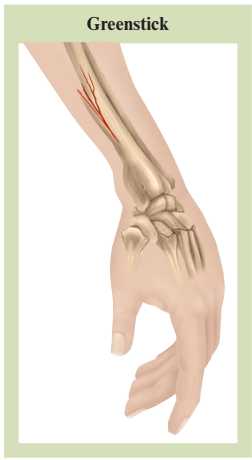
FIGURE 13–2 **In an open fracture, the end of the fractured bone penetrates the skin causing an open wound.** (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 8th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2017.)

Several different kinds of closed fractures can occur (Figure 13–3). Long bones can be stressed or forced to fail by tension, compression, bending, twisting (torsion), and shear.[21] These forces, either singly or in combination, can cause a variety of fractures. For example, *spiral fractures* are caused by twisting, whereas *oblique fractures* are caused by the combined forces of axial compression, bending, and torsion. *Transverse fractures* occur because of bending (Figure 13–3). Along with the type of stress, the amount of force must be considered. The more complex the fracture, the more energy is required. External energy can be used to deform and then actually fracture bone. Some energy can be dispersed to soft tissue adjacent to the bone.[20]

Long bones can be stressed by tension, compression, bending, torsion, and shear.

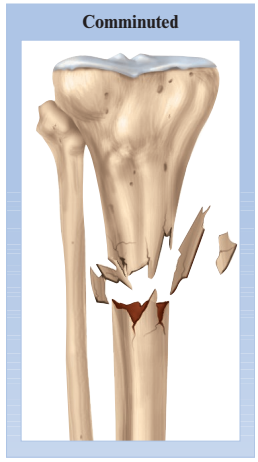
Healing of a Fracture In most instances, the fracture of a bone requires immobilization for some period in a cast. In general, fractures of the long bones of the arm and leg require approximately 6 weeks of casting, and the smaller bones in the hands and feet may require as little

Casting time:
Long bones = 6 weeks
Small bones = 3–4 weeks



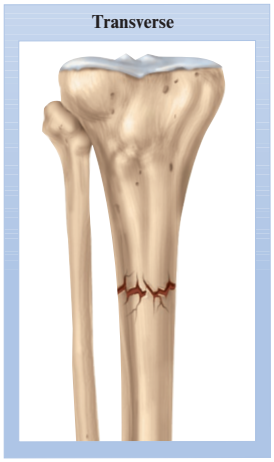
A

Greenstick fractures are incomplete breaks in bones that have not completely ossified, as would be the case with a young child. They occur most frequently in the convex bone surface, keeping the concave surface intact. The name is derived from the similarity of such fractures to the break in a green twig taken from a tree.



D

Comminuted fractures consist of three or more fragments at the fracture site. They can be caused by a hard blow or a fall in an awkward position. From the physician's point of view, these fractures impose a difficult healing situation because of the displacement of the bone fragments. Soft tissues are often interposed between the fragments, causing incomplete healing. Such cases may need surgical intervention.

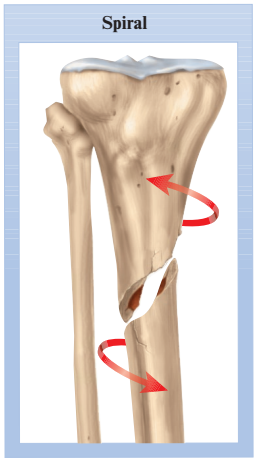


B

Transverse fractures occur in a straight line, more or less at right angles to the bone shaft. A direct outside blow usually causes this injury.

E

Linear fractures are those in which the bone splits along its length. They are often the result of jumping from a height and landing in such a way as to apply force or stress to the long axis.



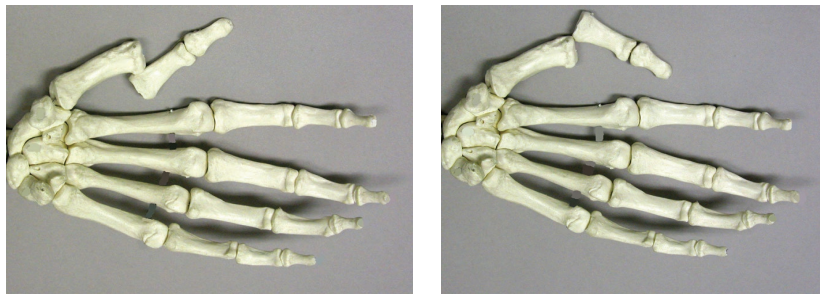
C

Spiral fractures have an S-shaped separation. They are fairly common in football and skiing, in which the foot is firmly planted and the body is suddenly rotated.

F

Oblique fractures are similar to spiral fractures. They occur when one end receives sudden torsion or twisting and the other end is fixed or stabilized.

FIGURE 13–3 **Closed fractures: (A) Greenstick, (B) Transverse, (C) Spiral, (D) Comminuted, (E) Linear, and (F) Oblique.** (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 8th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2017.)



A B

FIGURE 13–4 A joint that is forced beyond its anatomical limits can be **(A)** dislocated or **(B)** subluxated. ©William E. Prentice

as 3 weeks of either casting or splinting. In some instances, immobilization may not be required for healing.[21] For example, breaks of the four small toes are difficult to splint or cast. Of course, complications such as infections may lengthen the time required for both casting and rehabilitation.

For a fracture to heal, osteoblasts must lay down extra bone formation, called a **callus,** over the fracture site during the immobilization period. Once the cast is removed, the bone must be subjected to normal stresses and strains so that tensile strength may be regained before the healing process is complete. Cells called **osteoclasts** function to reshape the bone in response to normally applied stresses and strains.[21]

callus New bone formation over a fracture.

osteoclasts (os-tee-oh-klasts) Cells that absorb and remove osseous tissue.

stress fracture A fracture at an area of periosteal irritation on the bone.

Stress Fractures Perhaps the most common fracture that results from physical activity is a **stress fracture.**[14] Unlike the other types of fractures that have been discussed, the stress fracture results from overuse rather than acute trauma.[9] Common sites for stress fractures include the weight-bearing bones of the leg or foot. In either case, repetitive forces transmitted through the bones produce irritations of the periosteum and fatigue fractures of the underlying bone. The pain usually begins as a dull ache, which becomes progressively painful day after day. Initially, pain is most severe during activity. However, when a stress fracture develops, pain becomes worse after the activity is stopped.[10] Specific causes of stress fractures will be discussed in Chapters 14 and 15.

The biggest problem with a stress fracture is that often it does not show up on an X-ray until the osteoblasts begin laying down bone. At that point, a small white line appears on the X-ray. If a stress fracture is suspected, it is best for the athlete to stop the activity for a period of at least 14 days and then slowly and gradually get back into the activity that initially produced the stress fracture.[24] Stress fractures do not usually require casting; however, if they are not handled correctly, they may become true fractures that must be immobilized.

Dislocations and Subluxations

A **dislocation** occurs when at least one bone in a joint (articulation) is forced completely out of its normal and proper alignment and must be manually or surgically put back into place or *reduced*. Dislocations most commonly occur in the shoulder joint, elbow, and fingers, but they can occur wherever two bones articulate (Figure 13–4A). A **subluxation** is like a dislocation except that in this situation a bone comes partially out of its normal articulation but then goes right back into place.[3] Subluxations most commonly occur in the shoulder joint and in the knee cap (patella) (Figure 13–4B).

dislocation A bone is forced out of alignment and stays out until surgically or manually replaced or reduced.

subluxation (sub-lucks-ashun) A bone is forced out of alignment but goes back into place.

In dislocations, deformity is almost always apparent; however, it may be obscured by heavy musculature, making it important for the examiner to routinely palpate, or feel, the injured site to determine the loss of normal contour. Comparison of the injured side with the uninjured side often reveals asymmetry.

Dislocations or subluxations will likely result in a rupture of the stabilizing ligaments and tendons surrounding the joint.[18] Occasionally an avulsion

13–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

An athlete training for a marathon complains of pain in the lower leg. She consults with her physician, who determines that she has a stress fracture. When she returns to training, she is confused about what a stress fracture is.

? How can the difference between a stress fracture and a trauma-induced fracture be explained, and what is the course of management?

fracture occurs in which an attached tendon or ligament pulls a small piece of the bone to which it attaches away from the rest of the bone. In other cases, the force may separate growth plates (epiphysis) or cause a complete fracture of a long bone. These possibilities indicate the importance of administering complete and thorough medical attention, particularly to first-time dislocations. It has often been said, "Once a dislocation, always a dislocation." In most cases this statement is true, because once a joint has been either subluxated or completely dislocated, the connective tissues that bind and hold it in its correct alignment are stretched to such an extent that the joint is extremely vulnerable to subsequent dislocations.

A first-time dislocation should always be considered and treated as a possible fracture.[2] Once it has been ascertained that the injury is a dislocation, a physician should be consulted for further evaluation. However, before the athlete is taken to the physician, the injury should be properly splinted and supported to prevent any further damage.

Dislocations should not be reduced immediately, regardless of where they occur. Ideally the athlete should get an X-ray to rule out fractures or other problems before reduction, although a physician will often reduce a dislocation without getting an X-ray. Inappropriate techniques of reduction may only exacerbate the problem. Return to activity after dislocation or subluxation is largely dependent on the degree of soft-tissue damage.[2]

Ligament Sprains

A **sprain** involves damage to a ligament or joint capsule that provides support to a joint.[6] A ligament is a tough, relatively inelastic band of tissue that connects one bone to another. Before discussing injuries to ligaments, a review of joint structure is necessary (Figure 13–5).

sprain Injury to a ligament or joint capsule that connects bone to bone.

All *synovial* joints are composed of two or more bones that articulate with one another to allow motion in one or more planes. The articulating surfaces of the bone are lined with a very thin, smooth, cartilaginous covering called an articular, or *hyaline, cartilage.* All joints are entirely surrounded by a thick, ligamentous *joint capsule.* The inner surface of this joint capsule is lined by a very thin *synovial membrane* that is highly vascularized and innervated. The synovial membrane produces *synovial fluid,* the functions of which include lubrication, shock absorption, and nutrition of the joint.[26]

The articular capsule, ligaments, outer aspects of the synovial membrane, and fat pads of the synovial joint are well supplied with nerves. The inner aspect of the synovial membrane, cartilage, and articular disks, if present, have nerves as well. These nerves, called **mechanoreceptors,** provide information about the relative position of the joint and are found in the fibrous capsule and ligaments.[26]

mechanoreceptors Located in muscles, tendons, ligaments, and joints; provide information on joint position.

Some joints contain a thick fibrocartilage called a *meniscus.* The knee joint, for example, contains two wedge-shaped menisci that deepen the articulation and provide shock absorption in that joint. Finally, the main structural support and joint stability is provided by the ligaments, which may be either thickened portions of the joint capsule or totally separate bands. The anatomical position of the ligaments partly determines the movements that the joint can make.[26]

If a joint is forced to move beyond normal limits or planes of movement, injury to the ligaments is likely to occur (Figure 13–6). The severity of the damage is subject to many different classifications; however, the most commonly used system involves three grades of sprain.

- *Grade 1 sprain.* There is some stretching and separation of the ligamentous fibers, with minimal instability of the joint. Mild to moderate pain, localized swelling, and joint stiffness should be expected.

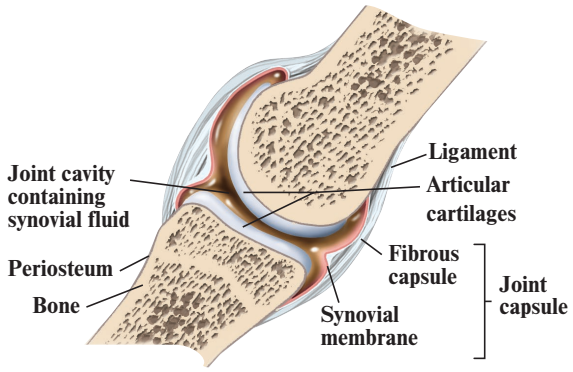


FIGURE 13–5 Structure of a synovial joint. (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology,* 8th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2017.)

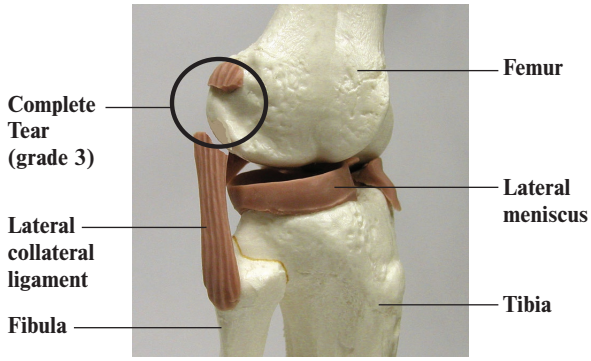


FIGURE 13–6 A ligament sprain in the knee joint. This would be considered a grade 3 sprain. © William E. Prentice

- *Grade 2 sprain.* There is some tearing and separation of the ligament fibers, with moderate instability of the joint. Moderate to severe pain, swelling, and joint stiffness should be expected.
- *Grade 3 sprain.* There is total tearing of the ligament, which leads to instability of the joint. A grade 3 sprain can result in a subluxation or even dislocations. Initially, severe pain may be present, followed by little or no pain as a result of total disruption of nerve fibers. Swelling may be great, and the joint tends to become very stiff some hours after the injury. In some cases, a grade 3 sprain with marked instability requires surgical repair. Frequently, the force producing the ligament injury is so great that other ligaments or structures surrounding the joint may also be injured. Rehabilitation of grade 3 sprains involving surgery is a long-term process.

13–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A volleyball player has sprained her ankle just 2 days before the beginning of the conference tournament. The athlete, her parents, and her coach are extremely concerned that she is going to miss the tournament and want to know if anything can be done to make her get well more quickly.

? What can this athlete be told about the process of healing?

The greatest problem in the rehabilitation of grade 1 and grade 2 sprains is restoring stability to the joint.[26] Once a ligament has been stretched or partially torn, inelastic scar tissue forms, preventing the ligament from regaining its original tension. To restore stability to the joint, the other structures surrounding that joint, primarily muscles and their tendons, must be strengthened. The increased muscle tension provided by strength training can improve stability of the injured joint.[29]

Contusions

A **contusion** is another word for a bruise. The mechanism that produces a bruise involves an impact from some external object that causes soft tissues (i.e., skin, fat, and muscle) to be compressed against hard bone underneath (Figure 13–7).[13] If the impact is hard enough, capillaries are torn, which allows bleeding into the tissues. Minor bleeding often causes a bluish-purple discoloration of the skin that persists for several days. The contusion may be very sore to the touch, and if damage has occurred to muscle, pain may be experienced on active movement. In most cases, the pain ceases within a few days, and discoloration disappears usually in a few weeks.[13]

Contusion = Bruise

FIGURE 13–7 **A contusion occurs when soft tissues are compressed between bone and some external force.** Courtesy of Chris Bartlett, Central Davidson High School, Lexington, NC

Myositis Ossificans The major problem with contusions occurs in an area that is subjected to repeated impacts. If the same area or, more specifically, a muscle is bruised over and over again, small calcium deposits may begin to accumulate in the injured area. These pieces of calcium may be found between several fibers in the muscle belly, or calcium may build up to form a spur, which projects from the underlying bone. These calcium formations may significantly impair movement and are referred to as **myositis ossificans** (see Figure 17–9).[13]

myositis ossificans (my-oh-si-tis ah-sif-ah-cans) Calcium deposits that result from repeated trauma.

The key to preventing the occurrence of myositis ossificans from repeated contusions is to protect the injured area with padding. If the area is properly protected after the first contusion, myositis may never develop. Protection and rest may allow the calcium to be reabsorbed, eliminating any need for surgery.

The two areas that seem to be the most vulnerable to repeated contusions during physical activity are the quadriceps muscle group on the front of the thigh and the biceps muscle on the front of the upper arm. The formation of myositis ossificans in these or any other areas may be detected by X-rays.

Muscle Strains

The muscle is composed of separate fibers that are capable of simultaneous contraction when stimulated by the central nervous system. Each muscle is attached to bone at both ends by strong, relatively inelastic tendons that cross over joints.

If a muscle is overstretched or forced to contract against high loads or heavy resistance, separation or tearing of the muscle fibers occurs. This damage

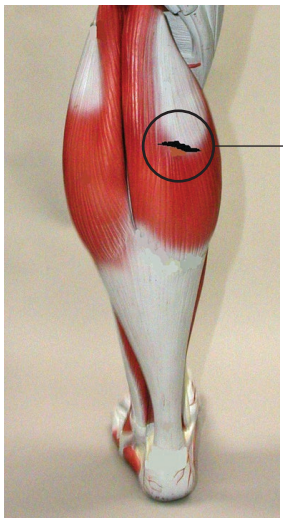


FIGURE 13–8 A muscle strain results in separation or tearing of fibers. ©William E. Prentice

strain A stretch, tear, or rip in the muscle or its tendon.

is referred to as a **strain** (Figure 13–8).[23] A muscle strain may be differentiated from a ligament sprain by having the athlete actively contract the injured muscle. If there is pain with active contraction but not with passive movement, this is indicative of a muscle strain.[23] Muscle strains, like ligament sprains, are subject to various classification systems. The following is a simple system of strain classification:

- *Grade 1 strain.* A few muscle fibers have been stretched or actually torn. There is some tenderness and pain on active motion. Movement is painful, but full range of motion is usually possible.
- *Grade 2 strain.* A number of muscle fibers have been torn, and active contraction of the muscle is extremely painful. Occasionally, a depression or divot can be felt somewhere in the muscle belly at the place at which the muscle fibers have been torn. Some swelling may occur because of capillary bleeding; therefore, some discoloration is possible.
- *Grade 3 strain.* A complete rupture of a muscle has occurred in the area of the muscle belly at the point at which muscle becomes tendon or at the tendinous attachment to the bone. There is significant impairment to or perhaps total loss of movement. Initially, pain is intense but quickly diminishes because of complete nerve fiber separation.[8]

Muscle strains can occur in any muscle and usually result from some uncoordinated activity between muscle groups.[8] Grade 3 strains are most common in the biceps tendon of the upper arm or in the Achilles heel cord in the back of the calf. When either of these tendons tears, the muscle tends to bunch toward its attachment at the bone site. Grade 3 strains involving large tendons that produce great amounts of force must be surgically repaired. Smaller musculotendinous ruptures such as those that occur in the fingers may heal by immobilization with a splint.

13–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A football player sustains repeated contusions to the left quadriceps muscle.

? What should he be most concerned about?

Regardless of the severity of the strain, the time required for rehabilitation is lengthy.[26] In many instances, muscle strains are incapacitating, making rehabilitation time for a muscle strain even longer than for a ligament sprain. Incapacitating muscle strains occur most frequently in the large, force-producing hamstring and quadriceps muscles of the lower extremity. The treatment of hamstring strains requires a healing period of 6 to 8 weeks and a considerable amount of patience.[26] Trying to return to activity too soon often causes reinjury to the muscle that has been strained, and the healing process must begin again.

Muscle Guarding

Following injury, the muscles that surround the injured area contract to, in effect, splint that area, thus minimizing pain by limiting movement. Quite often this "splinting" is incorrectly referred to as a muscle spasm. The terms *spasm* and *spasticity* are more correctly associated with increased tone or contractions of muscle that occur because of some upper motor neuron lesion in the brain. Thus, **muscle guarding** is a more appropriate term for the voluntary muscle contractions that occur in response to pain following musculoskeletal injury.[26]

muscle guarding Muscle contraction in response to pain.

Muscle Cramps

Muscle cramps are extremely painful involuntary muscle contractions that occur most commonly in the calf, abdomen, or hamstrings, although any muscle can be involved.[25] Muscle cramps are thought to occur most often in those muscle groups that are overloaded and fatigued during high demand activities due to altered neuromuscular control rather than due to fluid and/or electrolyte imbalance as previously hypothesized.[28] Muscle fatigue alters neuromuscular control by increasing muscle spindle activity while decreasing Golgi tendon organ activity, thus facilitating a reflex contraction or cramp of the muscle (see Chapter 7).[28]

muscle cramps Involuntary muscle contractions.

Muscle Soreness

Overexertion in strenuous muscular exercise often results in muscular pain. All active people at one time or another have experienced **muscle soreness,** usually resulting from some physical activity to which they are unaccustomed. The older a person gets, the more easily muscle soreness seems to develop.

muscle soreness Pain caused by overexertion in exercise.

There are two types of muscle soreness. The first type of muscle pain is *acute-onset muscle soreness,* which accompanies fatigue. It is transient and occurs during and immediately after exercise. The second type of soreness involves delayed muscle pain that appears approximately 12 hours after injury. This *delayed-onset muscle soreness (DOMS)* becomes most intense after 24 to 48 hours and then gradually subsides so that the muscle becomes symptom-free after 3 or 4 days. DOMS is described as a syndrome of delayed muscle pain leading to increased muscle tension, swelling, and stiffness and to resistance to stretching.[25]

DOMS is thought to result from several possible causes. It may occur from very small tears in the muscle tissue, which seems to be more likely with eccentric or isometric contractions. It may also occur because of disruption of the connective tissue that holds muscle tendon fibers together.

Muscle soreness may be prevented by beginning exercise at a moderate level and gradually progressing the intensity of the exercise over time. Treatment of muscle soreness usually also involves static or PNF stretching activity. Another important treatment for muscle soreness, as for other conditions discussed in this chapter, is ice applied within the first 48 to 72 hours.[26]

Nerve Injuries

In athletics, nerve injuries usually involve either compression or tension. Nerve injuries, as with injuries to other tissues in the body, can be acute or chronic. Trauma directly affecting nerves can produce a variety of sensory responses, including *hypoesthesia* (diminished sense of feeling), *hyperesthesia* (increased sense of feelings such as pain or touch), or *paresthesia* (numbness, prickling, or tingling, which may occur from a direct blow or stretch to an area).[15] For example, a sudden nerve stretch or pinch can produce both a sharp burning pain that radiates down a limb and muscle weakness, as happens in the shoulder from injury to the brachial plexus. This is correctly referred to as a *neuropraxia* but is often called a "burner" or "stinger." **Neuritis,** a chronic nerve problem, can be caused by a variety of forces that usually have been repeated or continued for a long time. Symptoms of neuritis can range from minor nerve problems to paralysis. More serious injuries involve the crushing of a nerve or complete division (severing). This type of injury may produce a lifelong physical disability, such as paraplegia or quadriplegia, and should therefore not be overlooked in any circumstance.

neuritis Chronic nerve irritation.

Specialized tissue, such as nerve cells, cannot regenerate once the nerve cell dies. In an injured peripheral nerve, however, the nerve fiber can regenerate significantly if the injury does not affect the cell body.[15] For regeneration to occur, an optimal environment for healing must exist.

Regeneration is slow, at a rate of only 3 to 4 mm per day. Damaged nerves within the central nervous system regenerate very poorly compared to nerves in the peripheral nervous system.[15]

CHRONIC OVERUSE INJURIES

The Importance of Inflammation in Healing

For most people, the word *inflammation* has negative connotations. However, inflammation is an essential part of the healing process.[26] Once a structure is damaged or irritated, inflammation must occur to initiate the healing process. *Signs and symptoms of inflammation include pain, warmth, swelling, loss of function, and perhaps redness.*[10] Inflammation is supposed to be an acute process that ends when its role in the healing process has been accomplished. However, if the source of irritation (e.g., the repetitive movements that cause stress to the tendon) is not removed, then the inflammatory process becomes chronic rather than acute.[25] When this situation occurs, an acute condition may become a chronic disabling problem.[16]

Signs of inflammation:

- Pain
- Warmth
- Swelling
- Loss of function
- Redness

Tendinopathy/Tendinitis/Tendinosis

Of all the overuse problems associated with activity, chronic overuse injuries involving a tendon are the most common.[16] The term **tendinopathy** is the term that is most often used to refer to both *tendinitis*, which is an inflammation of the tendon, and *tendinosis*, which refers to microtears and degeneration of a **tendon.**[7] The suffix *-opathy* does not imply any specific type of

Tendinosis = Failed healing of a tendon
Tendinitis = Inflammation of a tendon

tendon Tough band of connective tissue that attaches muscle to bone.

pathology. Any term ending in the suffix *-itis* means inflammation is present.

Tendinitis means inflammation of a tendon. During muscle activity, a tendon must move or slide on other structures around it whenever the muscle contracts. If a particular movement is performed repeatedly, the tendon may become irritated and inflamed.[27] This inflammation is manifested by pain on movement, swelling, possibly some warmth, and usually crepitus. **Crepitus** is a crackling feeling or sound. It is usually caused by the tendon's tendency to stick to the surrounding structure while it slides back and forth. This sticking is caused primarily by the chemical products of inflammation that accumulate on the irritated tendon.[7] The key to the treatment of tendinitis is rest. If the repetitive motion causing irritation to the tendon is eliminated, the inflammatory process will allow the tendon to heal. Unfortunately, athletes find it difficult to totally stop activity and rest for 2 or more weeks while the tendinitis subsides. The patient should substitute some form of activity, such as bicycling or swimming, to maintain present fitness levels while avoiding continued irritation of the inflamed tendon. In runners, tendinitis most commonly occurs in the Achilles tendon in the back of the lower leg. In swimmers, it often occurs in the muscle tendons of the shoulder joint. However, tendinitis can flare up in any activity in which overuse and repetitive movements occur.

crepitus A crackling feel or sound.

If repetitive overuse continues and the inflamed or irritated tendon fails to heal, the tendon begins to degenerate. The primary concern shifts from tendon inflammation to tendon degeneration, a condition referred to as tendinosis (Figure 13–9).[7] The suffix *-osis* means there is chronic degeneration without inflammation. *Most of the chronic problems that we have with tendons are correctly referred to as tendinosis.*[27] The symptoms are somewhat similar to tendinitis but there is no inflammation. The affected tendons are usually painful when moved or touched. The tendon sheaths may be visibly swollen with stiffness and restricted motion. Sometimes a tender lump appears. Tendinosis is more common in middle or old age as the tendons become more susceptible to injury.[7] However, younger people who exercise vigorously as well as people who perform repetitive tasks are also susceptible. The key to treating tendinosis is engaging in exercises to strengthen the tendon and consistently stretching the tendon.

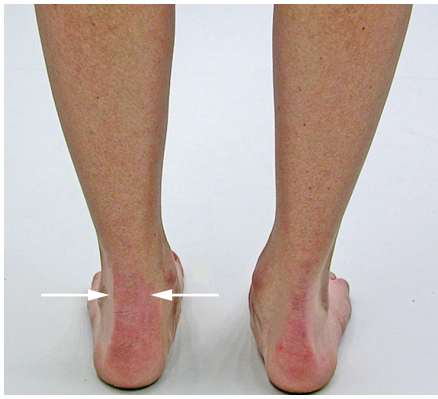


FIGURE 13–9 **Tendinosis of the Achilles tendon. The left Achilles is chronically enlarged due to failure of the tendon to heal properly.** ©William E. Prentice

Tenosynovitis

Tenosynovitis is very similar to tendinitis in that the muscle tendons are involved in inflammation. However, many tendons are subject to an increased amount of friction because of the tightness of the space through which they must move. In these areas of high friction, tendons are usually surrounded by synovial sheaths that reduce friction on movement. If the tendon sliding through a synovial sheath is subjected to overuse, inflammation is likely to occur.[12] As with tendinitis, the inflammatory process produces by-products that are "sticky" and tend to cause the sliding tendon to adhere to the synovial sheath surrounding it.

tenosynovitis (ten-oh-sin-oh-vie-tis) Inflammation of a tendon and its synovial sheath.

Tenosynovitis occurs most commonly in the long flexor tendons of the fingers as they cross over the wrist joint and in the biceps tendon around the shoulder joint. Treatment for tenosynovitis is the same as for tendinitis. Because both conditions involve inflammation, anti-inflammatory drugs may be helpful in chronic cases.

Bursitis

Bursitis occurs around joints, where there is friction between tendon and bone, skin and bone, or muscle and other muscles. Without some mechanism of protection in these high-friction areas, chronic irritation would exist.[1]

Bursae are pieces of synovial membrane that act as lubricating cushions and that contain a small amount of fluid (synovial fluid). Just as oil lubricates a hinge, these small pieces of synovium permit motion of these structures while minimizing friction.

bursae Pieces of synovial membrane that contain a small amount of fluid.

If excessive movement or perhaps some acute trauma occurs around the bursae, they become irritated and inflamed and begin producing large

amounts of synovial fluid.[1] The longer the irritation continues or the more severe the acute trauma, the more fluid is produced. As fluid continues to accumulate in the limited space available, pressure increases, causing pain in the area. Bursitis can be an extremely painful condition that may severely restrict movement, especially if it occurs around a joint. Synovial fluid continues to be produced until the movement or trauma producing the irritation is eliminated.

Occasionally, a bursa or synovial sheath completely surrounds a tendon, allowing more freedom of movement in a tight area. Irritation of this synovial sheath may restrict tendon motion. All joints have many bursae surrounding them. The three bursae that are most commonly irritated as a result of various types of physical activity are the subacromial bursa in the shoulder joint under the distal clavicle and acromion process; the olecranon bursa on the tip of the elbow; and the prepatellar bursa on the front surface of the patella. All three of these bursae produce large amounts of synovial fluid, affecting motion at their respective joints.

Osteoarthritis

Any mechanical system wears out with time. The joints in the body are mechanical systems, and wear and tear, even from normal activity, is inevitable.[31] The most common result of this wear and tear, a degeneration of the articular or hyaline cartilage, is referred to as **osteoarthritis.**[17] The cartilage may be worn away to the point of exposing, eroding, and polishing the underlying bone (Figure 13–10).

osteoarthritis A wearing down of hyaline cartilage.

Any process that changes the mechanics of the joint eventually leads to degeneration of that joint. Degeneration is a result of repeated trauma to the joint and to tendons, ligaments, and fasciae surrounding the joint. Such injuries may be caused by a direct blow or fall, by the pressure of carrying or lifting heavy loads, or by repeated trauma to the joint as in running or cycling.

Osteoarthritis most often affects the weight-bearing joints: the knees, hips, and lumbar spine. Also affected are the shoulders and cervical spine. Although many other joints may show pathological degenerative change, clinically the disease only occasionally produces symptoms in them. Any joint that is subjected to acute or chronic trauma may develop osteoarthritis.[17]

The symptoms of osteoarthritis are relatively local. Osteoarthritis may be localized to one side of the joint or may be generalized about the joint. One of the most distinctive symptoms is pain, which is brought about by friction that occurs with use and which is relieved by rest. Stiffness is a common complaint that occurs with rest and is quickly loosened with activity. This symptom is prominent upon rising in the morning. Joints may also show localized tenderness, or grating that may be heard and felt.[17]

Myofascial Trigger Points

A **trigger point** is an area of tenderness in a tight band of muscle. In the athlete, painful or active trigger points most often develop because of some mechanical stress to the muscle.[11] This stress could involve either an acute muscle strain or static postural positions that produce constant tension in the muscle. Trigger points occur most typically in the neck, upper back, and lower back. Palpation of the trigger point produces pain in a predictable distribution of referred pain. The pain may also cause some restricted range of motion. Pressure on the trigger point produces a twitch or a jump response from the pain. Pain is increased by

trigger point Area of tenderness in a tight band of muscle.

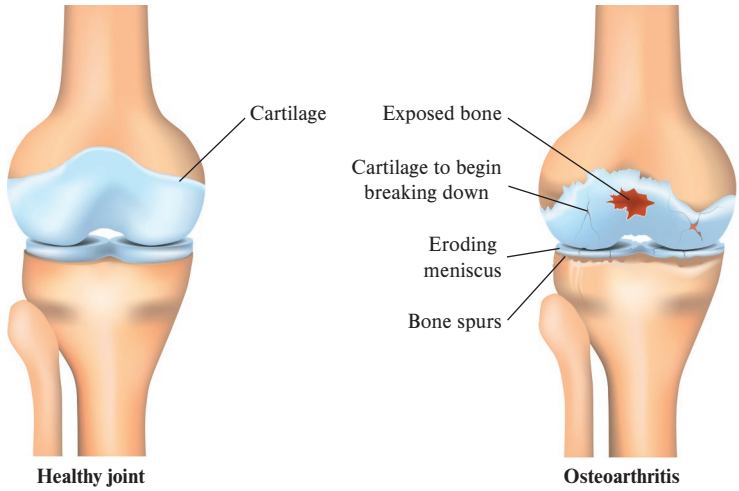


FIGURE 13–10 Osteoarthritis is a degeneration and erosion of the hyaline cartilage.

passive or active stretching of the involved muscle. However, stretching may be used in the treatment of myofascial trigger points.

THE IMPORTANCE OF THE HEALING PROCESS FOLLOWING INJURY

It is essential to have some understanding of both the sequence and time frames for the various phases of healing, realizing that certain physiological events occur during each of the phases.[5] Any interference with the healing process during a rehabilitation program will likely slow return to full activity. The healing process must have an opportunity to accomplish what it is supposed to. At best, you can only try to create an environment that is conducive to the healing process. Little can be done to speed up the process physiologically, but many things may be done during rehabilitation to impede healing.

Phases of the healing process:

- Inflammatory response phase
- Fibroblastic repair phase
- Maturation-remodeling phase

The healing process consists of three phases: the inflammatory response phase, the fibroblastic repair phase, and the maturation-remodeling phase.[4] Although the phases of healing are often discussed as three separate entities, the healing process is a continuum. Phases of the healing process overlap one another and have no definitive beginning or end (Figure 13–11).[4]

Inflammatory Response Phase

The inflammatory response phase begins immediately following injury (Figure 13–12A). The inflammatory response phase is perhaps the most critical phase of the healing process.[30] Without the physiological changes that take place during the inflammatory process, the later stages of healing cannot occur.[30] The destruction of tissue produces direct injury to the cells of the various soft tissues. During this phase, *phagocytic cells* clean up the mess created by the injury. Injured cells release chemicals that facilitate the healing process. As indicated previously, this phase is characterized symptomatically by redness, swelling, tenderness, increased temperature, and loss of function. This initial inflammatory response lasts for approximately 2 to 4 days following initial injury.

Fibroblastic Repair Phase

During the fibroblastic phase of healing, proliferative and regenerative activity leading to scar formation and repair of the injured tissue occurs (Figure 13–12B). The period of scar formation, referred to as *fibroplasia,* begins within the first few hours following injury and may last for as long as 4 to 6 weeks. During this period, many of the signs and symptoms associated with the inflammatory response subside. The athlete may still indicate some tenderness to touch and usually complains of pain when particular movements stress the injured structure. As scar formation progresses, complaints of tenderness or pain gradually disappear.[4]

Maturation-Remodeling Phase

The maturation-remodeling phase of healing is a long-term process (Figure 13–12C). This phase features a realignment or remodeling of the scar tissue according to the tensile forces to which that scar is subjected.[5] With increased stress and strain, the collagen fibers that make up the scar realign in a position of maximum efficiency parallel to the lines of tension. The tissue gradually assumes normal appearance and function, although a scar is rarely as strong as the normal uninjured tissue. Usually after about 3 weeks, a firm, strong, contracted, nonvascular scar exists. The maturation phase of healing may require several years to be totally complete.

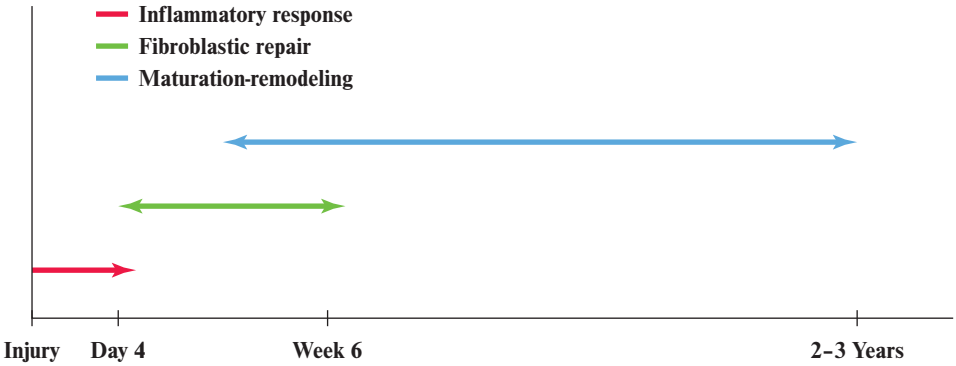


FIGURE 13–11 The healing process is a continuum in which the three phases of healing overlap one another.

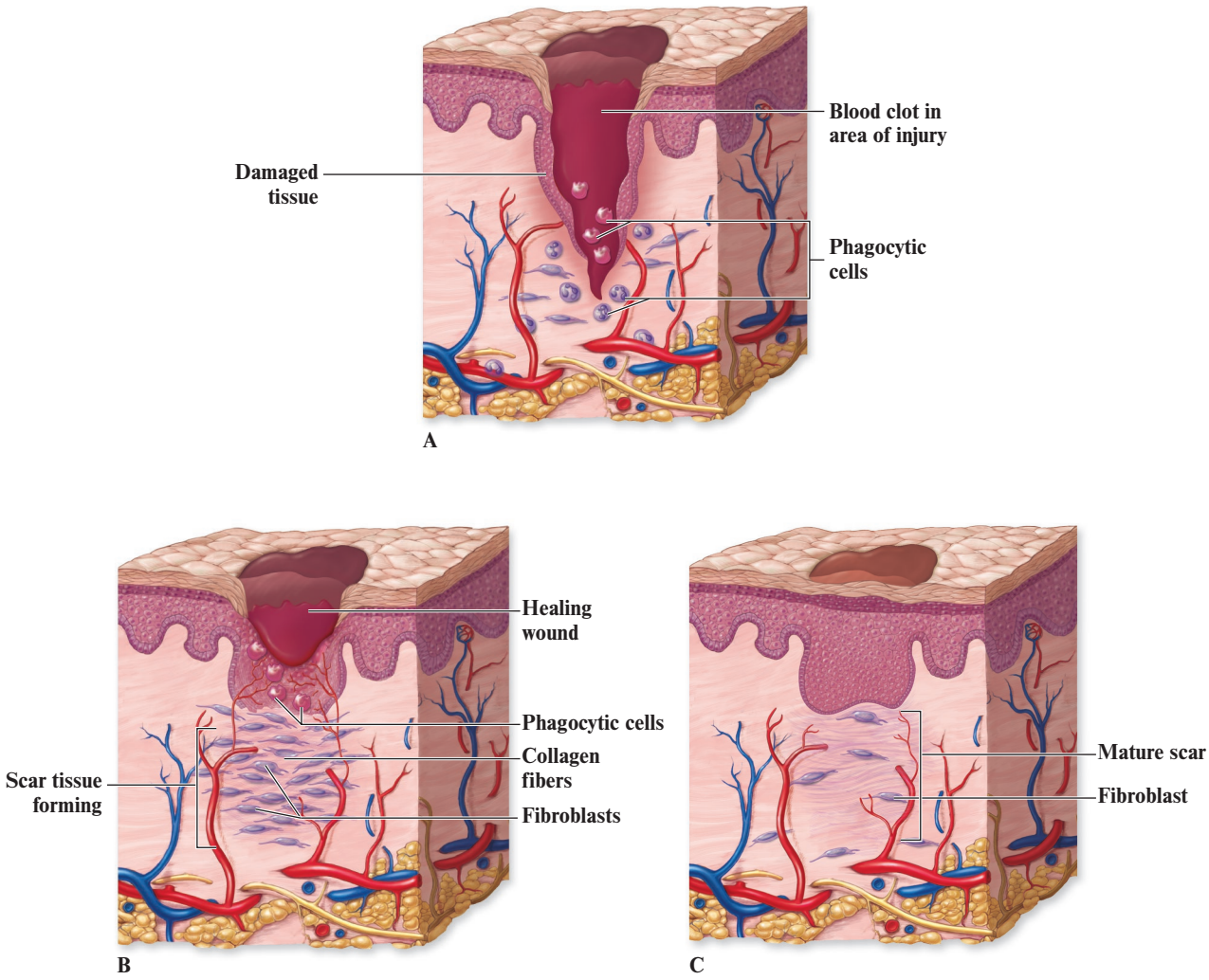


FIGURE 13–12 Tissue healing: **(A)** Inflammatory response phase—blood clot forms in the area of injury, and phagocytic cells clean up damaged tissue cells. **(B)** Fibroblastic repair phase—fibroblasts lay down collagen fibers, forming scar. **(C)** Maturation-remodeling phase—scar tissue remodels and realigns along lines of stress and strain.

SUMMARY

- Fractures may be classified as greenstick, transverse, oblique, spiral, comminuted, linear, or stress.
- Dislocations and subluxations are disruptions of the joint capsule and ligamentous structures surrounding the joint.
- Ligament sprains involve stretching or tearing the fibers that provide stability at the joint.
- Repeated contusions may lead to the development of myositis ossificans.
- Muscle strains involve a stretching or tearing of muscle fibers and their tendons and cause impairment to active movement.
- Muscle soreness may be caused by spasm, connective tissue damage, muscle tissue damage, or some combination of these factors.
- Tendinitis, an inflammation of a muscle tendon that causes pain on movement, usually occurs because of overuse.
- Tenosynovitis is an inflammation of the synovial sheath through which a tendon must slide during motion.
- Bursitis is an inflammation of the synovial membranes located in areas in which friction occurs between various anatomical structures.
- Osteoarthritis involves degeneration of the articular or hyaline cartilage.
- A trigger point is an area of tenderness in a tight band of muscle that develops from some mechanical stress to the muscle.
- The three phases of the healing process, the inflammatory response phase, the fibroblastic repair phase, and the maturation-remodeling phase, occur in sequence but overlap one another in a continuum.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

13-1 A stress fracture is not an actual break of the bone; it is simply an irritation of the bone. Treatment of a stress fracture requires about 14 days of rest. However, the coach should point out that a stress fracture can become a true fracture if it is not rested; if that happens, 4 to 6 weeks of immobilization in a cast is necessary. Thus, it is critical that this athlete rest for the required amount of time.

13-2 Little can be done to speed up the healing process physiologically. This athlete must realize that certain physiological events must occur during each phase of the healing process. Any interference with this healing process during a rehabilitation program will likely slow return to full activity. The healing process must have an opportunity to accomplish what it is supposed to.

13-3 Repeated contusion of any muscle may lead to the development of myositis ossificans. The key to treating myositis ossificans is prevention. An initial contusion to any muscle should be immediately protected with padding to prevent reinjury.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. What is the difference between an acute injury and a chronic injury? Give examples of each.
2. Describe various types of fractures and the mechanisms that cause fractures to occur.
3. How does a stress fracture differ from other types of fractures?
4. Differentiate between a subluxation and a dislocation.
5. What structures are found at a joint? What are their functions?
6. How do the three grades of ligament sprains differ?
7. What is myositis ossificans, and how can it be prevented?
8. Differentiate among muscle strains, muscle cramps, muscle guarding, and muscle soreness.
9. How does a damaged nerve heal?
10. How are tendinitis, tenosynovitis, and bursitis related to one another?
11. Explain how osteoarthritis develops.
12. What are myofascial trigger points, where are they most likely to occur, and what are the signs and symptoms?
13. Discuss the physiological events that occur during each of the different phases of the healing process.
14. Invite an orthopedist to class to discuss common injuries to the musculoskeletal system.

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Armstrong, A. 2015. *Essentials of musculoskeletal care*, 6th ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons.
2. Bahr, R. 2012. *The IOC manual of sports injuries: An illustrated guide to the management of injuries in physical activity*. Lansing, MI: Wiley-Blackwell.
3. Brukner, P., & Kahn, K. 2016. Sports injuries. In P. Brukner & B. Carlsen (eds.), *Clinical sports medicine*, 5th ed. Sydney: McGraw-Hill.
4. Buckwalter, J. 2005. Musculoskeletal tissue healing. In S. Weinstein (ed.), *Turek's orthopedics: Principles and their application*. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.
5. Cael, C. 2011. Understanding the healing process. *Massage and Bodywork* 26(5):48–53.
6. Cailliet, R. 2004. *Medical orthopedics: Conservative management of musculoskeletal impairments*. Chicago, IL: AMA Press.
7. Cook, J. 2014. The challenge of managing tendinopathy in competing athletes. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 48(7):506–509.
8. Donmez, G., et al. 2013. Muscle injuries: Strains, contusions, and ruptures. *Sports Injuries*. doi: 10.1007/978-3-642-36801-1_170-1.
9. Ferrry A. 2010. Stress fractures in athletes. *Physician and Sports Medicine*, 38(2):109–118.
10. Gallaspy J., & May, D. 2001. *Signs and symptoms of athletic injuries*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby.
11. Gerwin, R. 2016. Myofascial trigger point syndrome. *Seminars in Neurology* 36(5):469–473.
12. Gotlin, R. 2007. *Sports injuries guidebook*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
13. Hoth, P., & Amendola, A. 2014. Contusions, myositis ossificans, and compartment syndrome of the thigh. In C. Kaeding & J. Borchers (eds.), *Hamstring and quadriceps injuries in athletes*. Boston, MA: Springer.
14. Hutson, M. 2011. *Sports injuries*, 4th ed. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press.
15. Isaacs, J. 2010. Treatment of acute peripheral nerve injuries: Current concepts. *Journal of Hand Surgery* 35(3):491–497.
16. Johnson, J. 2008. Overuse injuries in young athletes: Cause and prevention. *Strength & Conditioning Journal* 30(2):27–31.
17. Johnson-Bach, V., & Hunter, D. 2014. The epidemiology of osteoarthritis. *Best Practice and Research Clinical Rheumatology* 28(1):5–15.
18. Kay, S. 2010. Diagnosis and treatment of sports injuries. *SportEx Medicine* 43:17–21.
19. Kjaer, M. 2008. *Textbook of sports medicine: Basic science and clinical aspects of sports injury and physical activity*. Oxford, UK: Blackwell Science.
20. Lynch, K., & Kemper, H. 2017. Impact sports and bone fractures among adolescents. *Journal of Sports Sciences* 35(24):2421–2426.
21. Marsell, R. 2011. The biology of fracture healing. *Injury* 42(6):551–555.
22. McLeod, T., et al. 2011. NATA position statement: Prevention of pediatric overuse injuries. *Journal of Athletic Training* 46(2):206–220.
23. Nelson, F., & Blauvelt, C. 2014. *A manual of orthopaedic terminology*, 8th ed. St. Louis, MO: Saunders.
24. Pegrum, J., & Dixit, V. 2014. The pathophysiology, diagnosis, and management of foot stress fractures. *Physician and Sportsmedicine* 42(4):87–99.
25. Prentice, W. E. 2017. *Principles of athletic training: A guide to evidence-based clinical practice*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
26. Prentice, W. 2019. *Rehabilitation techniques in sports medicine and athletic training*. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.
27. Rio, E., & Moseley, L. 2014. The pain of tendinopathy: Physiological or pathophysiological? *Sports Med*icine 44(1):9–23.
28. Schwellnus, M. 2009. Cause of exercise associated muscle cramps (EAMC)—Altered neuromuscular control, dehydration or electrolyte depletion? *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 43(6):401–408.
29. Volgas, D. 2012. *A manual of soft tissue management in orthopedic trauma*. New York, NY: Thieme.
30. Ward, P. 2010. Acute inflammation and chronic inflammation. In C. Serhan (ed.), *Fundamentals of inflammation*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
31. Yang, J. 2012. Epidemiology of overuse and acute injuries among competitive collegiate athletes. *Journal of Athletic Training* 47(2):198–204.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Armstrong, A. 2015. *Essentials of musculoskeletal care*, 6th ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons.

This text is a practical, go-to guide to confidently evaluating and treating more than 300 complaints and musculoskeletal conditions.

Bahr, R. 2012. *The IOC manual of sports injuries: An illustrated guide to the management of injuries in physical activity.* Lansing, MI: Wiley-Blackwell.

This manual distills the latest advances in sports medicine into clinically relevant, practical guidance on treating sports injuries.

Berry, D., & Miller, M. 2017. *Athletic and orthopedic injury assessment: A case study approach.* New York, NY: Routledge.

An excellent guide to the recognition, assessment, classification, and evaluation of athletic injuries.

Brukner, P., & Kahn, K. 2016. Sports injuries. In P. Brukner & B. Carlsen (eds.), *Clinical sports medicine*, 5th ed. Sydney: McGraw-Hill.

Provides an authoritative foundation for clinicians and students. This complete practical guide to physiotherapy and musculoskeletal medicine covers all aspects of diagnosis and contemporary management of sports-related injuries.

Kjaer, M. 2008. *Textbook of sports medicine: Basic science and clinical aspects of sports injury and physical activity.* Oxford, UK: Blackwell Science.

This primer for clinicians provides capsule summaries of the history, diagnosis, and treatment of orthopedic problems that respond to nonsurgical intervention. Brief yet detailed entries explain the causes and treatment of impairments of the musculoskeletal system.

Prentice, W. 2017. *Principles of athletic training: A guide to evidence-based clinical practice.* New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

This "big brother" to this text is designed to be used by athletic trainers in courses concerned with the scientific, evidence-based, and clinical foundations of athletic training and sports medicine. The text leads the student from general foundations to specific concepts relative to injury prevention, evaluation, management, and rehabilitation.

Szendroi, M. 2010. *Color atlas of clinical orthopedics.* New York, NY: Springer.

This book is composed of a vast number of pictures presenting the clinical symptoms of the various orthopedic conditions. It provides an in-depth overview of the characteristic clinical features of orthopedic conditions.

WEBSITES

American Red Cross: www.redcross.org
National Institutes of Health: www.nih.gov
Wheeless' Textbook of Orthopedics: www.wheeles-sonline.com

14

©William E. Prentice

The Foot and Toes

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Briefly describe the anatomy of the foot.
- Explain the process of injury assessment for the foot.
- Formulate steps that can be taken to minimize foot injuries.
- Identify the causes of various foot injuries commonly seen in athletes.
- Describe the appropriate care for injuries to the foot.

FOOT ANATOMY

Bones

The human foot must function both to absorb forces and to provide a stable base of support during walking, running, and jumping. It contains 26 bones (7 tarsal, 5 metatarsal, and 14 phalangeal) that are held together by an intricate network of ligaments and fascia and moved by a complex group of muscles (Figure 14–1). The tarsal bones that form the ankle include the talus and calcaneus. The navicular, cuboid, and three cuneiform bones form the instep of the foot.

Ligaments

Arches of the Foot The foot is structured, by means of ligamentous and bony arrangements, to form several arches. The arches assist the foot in supporting the body weight and in absorbing the shock of weight bearing. There are four arches: the medial longitudinal, the lateral longitudinal, the metatarsal, and the transverse (Figure 14–2).

The *metatarsal arch* is shaped by the distal heads of the metatarsals. The arch stretches from the first to the fifth metatarsal. The *transverse arch* extends across the transverse tarsal bones and forms a half dome. The *medial longitudinal arch* originates along the medial border of the calcaneus and extends forward to the distal head of the first metatarsal. The main supporting ligament of the medial longitudinal arch is the plantar calcaneonavicular ligament, which acts as a spring by returning the arch to its normal position after it has been stretched. The *lateral longitudinal arch* is on the lateral aspect of the foot and follows the same pattern as the medial longitudinal arch. It is formed by the calcaneus, cuboid, and fifth metatarsal.

Plantar Fascia (Plantar Aponeurosis) The plantar fascia is a thick white band of fibrous tissue originating from the medial aspect of the calcaneus and ending at the distal heads of the metatarsals. Along with ligaments, the plantar fascia supports the foot against downward forces (Figure 14–3).

Muscles

The medial movements include adduction (medial movement of the forefoot—metatarsals) and supination (a combination of inversion and adduction). Muscles that produce these movements pass both behind and in front of the medial malleolus. Muscles passing behind are the tibialis posterior, flexor digitorum longus, and flexor hallucis longus. Muscles passing in front of the medial malleolus are the tibialis anterior and the extensor hallucis longus (Figure 14–4A).

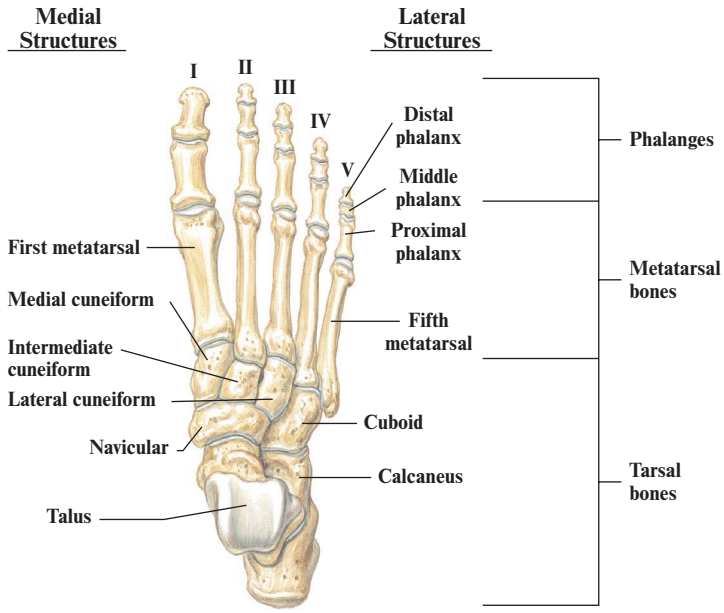
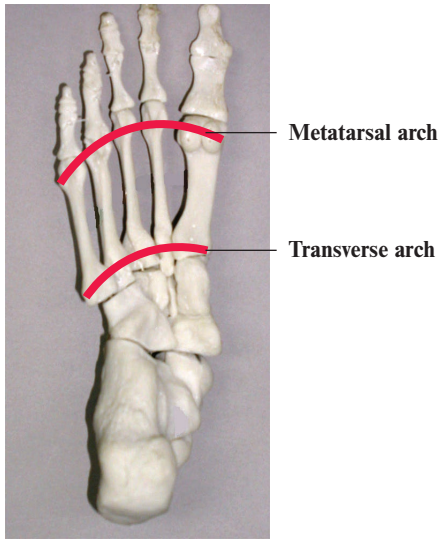
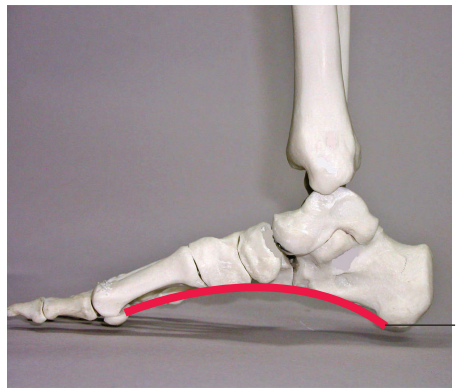


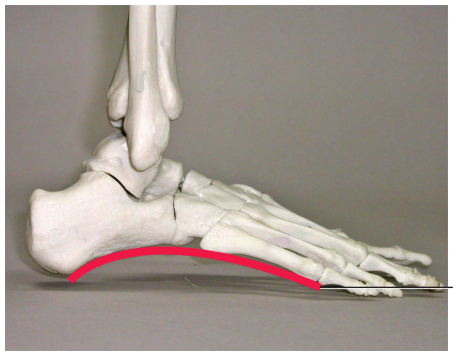
FIGURE 14–1 Bony structure of the foot. (Modified from Van De Graaff, K., *Human anatomy*, 6th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2001.)



A Plantar view



B Medial view



C Lateral view

FIGURE 14–2 Arches of the foot: (A) Metatarsal and transverse arches. (B) Medial longitudinal arch. (C) Lateral longitudinal arch. ©William E. Prentice

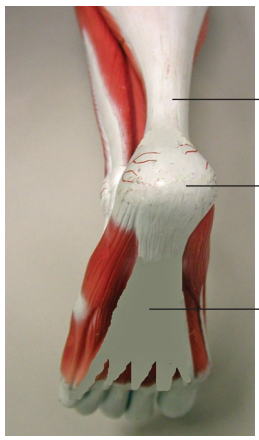


FIGURE 14–3 The Achilles tendon is continuous with the plantar fascia on the plantar surface of the foot. ©William E. Prentice

The lateral movements of the foot include abduction (lateral movement of the forefoot—metatarsals) and pronation (a combination of eversion and abduction). Muscles passing behind the lateral malleolus are the fibularis longus and the fibularis brevis. Muscles passing in front of the lateral malleolus are the fibularis tertius and extensor digitorum longus (Figure 14–4 A and B).

In general, the small intrinsic muscles on the plantar surface of the foot cause toe flexion, whereas those muscles on the dorsum of the foot cause toe extension and abduction (Figure 14–5) (Table 14–1). Visual examples of the movements of the foot appear in Appendix C (Figures C–46 through C–49).

TABLE 14–1 Muscles of the Foot

Adduction and supination	Tibialis posterior Flexor digitorum longus Flexor hallucis longus Tibialis anterior Extensor hallucis longus
Abduction and pronation	Fibularis longus Fibularis brevis Fibularis tertius Extensor digitorum longus
Toe flexion	Flexor digitorum brevis Flexor digitorum longus Flexor hallucis brevis Flexor hallucis longus Flexor digiti minimi brevis Quadratus plantae Lumbricals
Toe extension	Extensor digitorum brevis Extensor digitorum longus Extensor hallucis longus
Toe abduction	Abductor hallucis Dorsal interrosi Abductor digiti minimi
Toe adduction	Adduction hallucis Plantar interossi

PREVENTION OF FOOT INJURIES

Understanding the foot's structure and mechanics, types of footwear (see Chapter 6), and surface concerns is important in preventing foot injuries.[23] Particular attention should be given to athletes who may be predisposed to injuries caused by muscular or tendinous tightness or, conversely, weakness or hypermobility. Such situations, when recognized early, can usually be remedied by exercise, by the use of appropriate shoe inserts or **orthotics,** or by selecting appropriate shoes.[25,29]

orthotic A custom-designed insert that can be placed in the shoe and worn to correct a variety of biomechanical abnormalities that can potentially lead to injury.

Many injuries to the foot can be prevented by using an orthotic device to correct

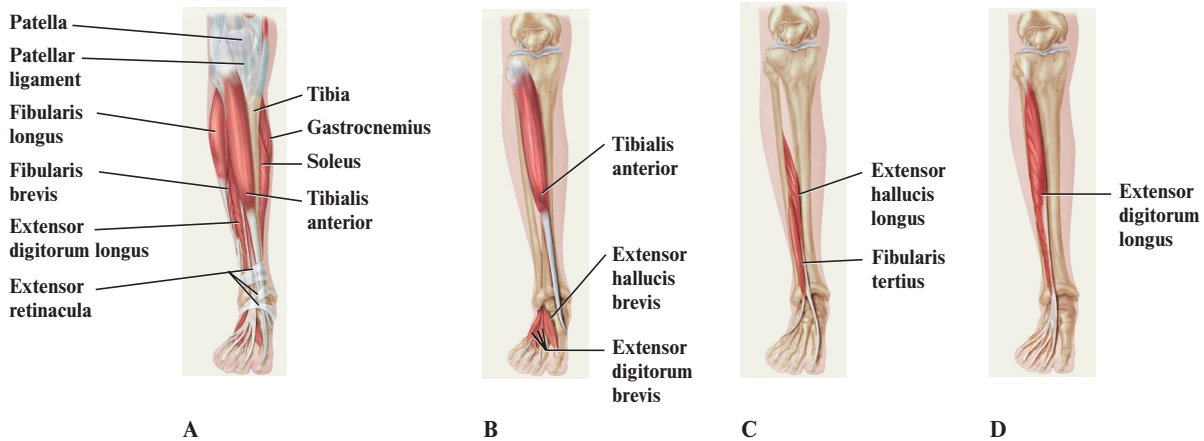


FIGURE 14–4 Muscles originating in the lower leg that produce movements of the foot. (From Van De Graaff, K., *Human anatomy*, 6th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2002.)

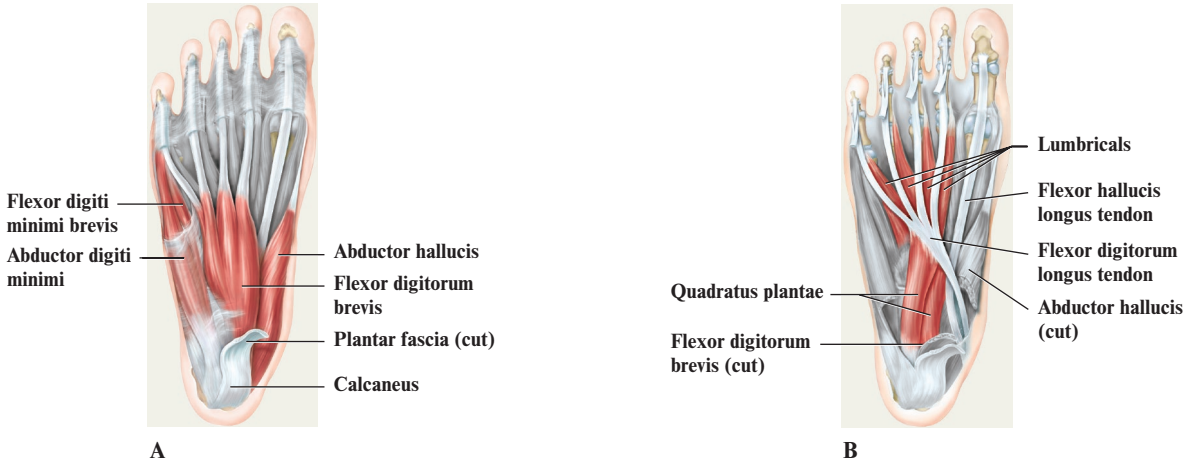


FIGURE 14–5 Intrinsic muscles of the foot. (A) First layer. (B) Second layer.

biomechanical problems that may exist in the foot and that can potentially cause an injury.[8] The orthotic is a plastic, rubber, or leather support that is placed in the shoe as a replacement for the existing insert.[32] Ready-made orthotics can be purchased in sporting goods or shoe stores. Some patients will need to have orthotics that are custom fitted or made by the athletic trainer, physical therapist, or podiatrist. Athletes who have abnormal foot stresses caused by faulty mechanics may find the use of custom orthotics to be helpful.[29]

Strengthening, stretching, and mobility exercises should be performed routinely by athletes in sports that place a great deal of stress and strain on the feet.[18]

The foot must continually adapt to the contact surface. Training on surfaces that are irregular and variable in resilience can ultimately serve to strengthen the foot over time. However, a nonyielding surface may in some cases overstress joints and soft tissue, eventually leading to an acute or chronic pathological condition in the foot or somewhere in the kinetic chain. In contrast, a surface that is too resilient and absorbs too much of the impact energy may lead to early fatigue in sports such as basketball and indoor tennis.[12]

The majority of foot skin conditions are preventable.[17] The athlete should be instructed on proper foot hygiene, which includes proper washing and drying of the feet following activity and changing to clean socks daily. Wearing properly fitting shoes and socks (see Chapter 6) should be emphasized. Not everyone has the same kind of foot and can wear the same type of shoe. Each individual should select a shoe that is most appropriate for him or her.

Nearly all blisters, calluses, corns, and ingrown toenails are preventable.

FOOT ASSESSMENT

Generally, fitness professionals, coaches, and others working in areas related to exercise and sports science are not adequately trained to evaluate injuries. It is strongly recommended that injured athletes be referred to qualified medical personnel (i.e., physicians, athletic trainers, physical therapists) for injury evaluation. Information on the following special tests has been included simply to give some idea about the different basic tests that nonmedical personnel may do to determine the nature and severity of the athlete's injury. The primary responsibility of those who are not health care personnel is to be able to recognize any potential "red flags" associated with the injury, provide appropriate first aid for the injury, and make correct decisions about how the injury should be managed initially, including immediate return to play or activity decisions. (Refer to Chapter 8.)

History

When deciding how to manage a foot injury, nonmedical personnel must make an assessment to determine the type of injury and its history.[4] The following questions should be asked:

- How did the injury occur?
- Did it occur suddenly or come on slowly?
- Was the mechanism a sudden strain, twist, or blow to the foot?
- What type of pain is there? Is there muscle weakness? Are there noises such as crepitus during movement? Is there any alteration in sensation?
- Can the athlete point to the exact site of pain? When is the pain or other symptoms more or less severe?
- On what type of surface has the athlete been training? What type of footwear was being used during

training? Is it appropriate for the type of training? Is discomfort increased when footwear is worn?
- Is this the first time this condition has occurred, or has it happened before? If so, when, how often, and under what circumstances?

Observation

The athlete should be observed to determine the following:

- Whether he or she is favoring the foot, walking with a limp, or unable to bear weight.
- Whether the injured part is deformed, swollen, or discolored.
- Whether the foot changes color when bearing weight and not bearing weight (changing rapidly from a darker to a lighter pink when not bearing weight).
- Whether the foot is well aligned and whether it maintains its shape when bearing weight.
- What the wear patterns look like on the sole of the shoe. Is there symmetry between the two shoes?
- Whether the athlete has a high arch (pes cavus) or a flat foot (pes planus).

Palpation

Palpation of the bony structures should be done first to check for deformities or areas of point tenderness. Palpation of the muscles and their tendons in the foot is essential to detect **point tenderness,** abnormal swelling or lumps, or muscle guarding.[3] The dorsal pedal pulse, located on the anterior surface of the ankle and foot, should be palpated to check for normal circulation.

point tenderness Pain that is produced when the site of injury is palpated.

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF FOOT INJURIES

Retrocalcaneal Bursitis (Pump Bump)

Cause of Injury The retrocalcaneal bursa lies between the calcaneus and the Achilles tendon on the back of the heel (Figure 14–6A). This bursa can become chronically irritated and inflamed by constant rubbing or pressure from the heel counter of a shoe.[20] If inflammation continues for many months, a bone callus, or **exostosis,** is likely to form on the back of the heel (Figure 14–6B). This exostosis has been referred to as a ***pump bump.*** (A pump is a type of woman's shoe with a heel counter that tends to cross right over the retrocalcaneal bursa.) This condition should be differentiated from **Sever's disease,** which involves a chronic inflammation at the attachment of the Achilles tendon on the posterior calcaneus in young athletes.

exostosis (eks-os-to-sis) A bony outgrowth.

Sever's disease Chronic inflammation of Achilles tendon attachment.

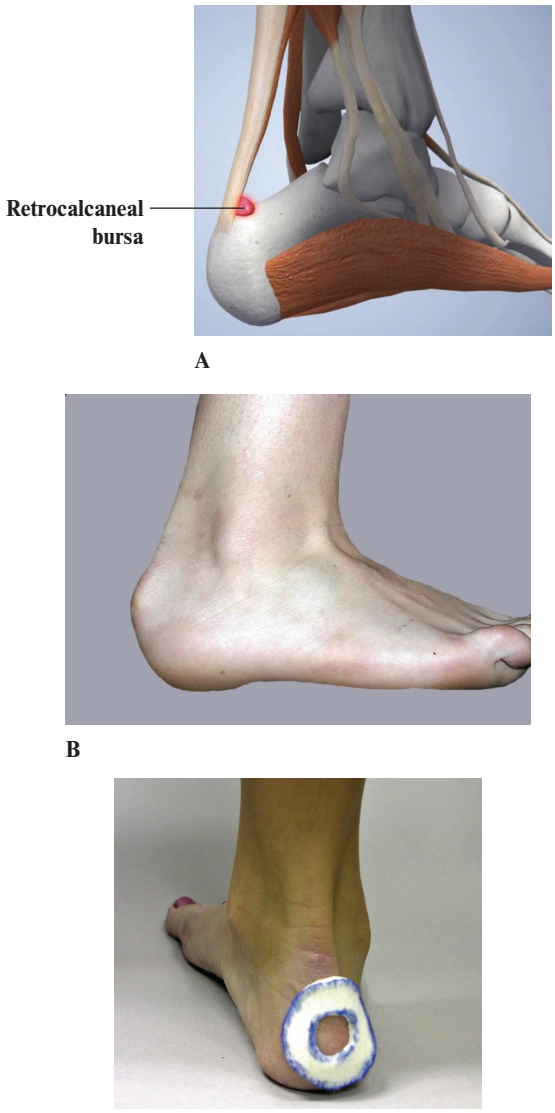


FIGURE 14–6 (A) The retrocalcaneal bursa between the attachment of the Achilles tendon and the calcaneus, becomes inflamed and eventually (B) develops a pump bump, which can be (C) protected using a doughnut pad. (B and C) ©William E. Prentice

Signs of Injury All the signs of bursitis—tenderness, swelling, warmth, and redness—will be present and may progress eventually to a palpable and tender bony bump on the back of the calcaneus.

Care A doughnut-type pad should be constructed and placed around the area of tenderness to disperse pressure created by the heel counter (Figure 14–6C).

Also, a heel lift can help to change the site of pressure. The athlete may also want to choose a shoe with a heel counter that is either a little higher or lower than the one presently being worn.

Heel Bruise

Cause of Injury Of the many contusions and bruises that an athlete may receive, none is more disabling than the heel bruise on the bottom of the calcaneus.[30] Sport activities that demand a sudden stop-and-go response or a sudden change from a horizontal to a vertical movement, such as basketball jumping, high jumping, and vaulting in gymnastics, are particularly likely to cause heel bruises.[30] The heel has a thick, cornified skin layer and a heavy fat pad covering, but even this thick padding cannot protect against a sudden abnormal force directed to this area.

The athlete who is prone to heel bruises should routinely wear a padded heel cup.

Signs of Injury When injury occurs, the athlete complains of severe pain in the heel and is unable to tolerate the stress of weight bearing. An acute bruise of the heel may progress to chronic inflammation of the bone covering (periosteum).

14–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

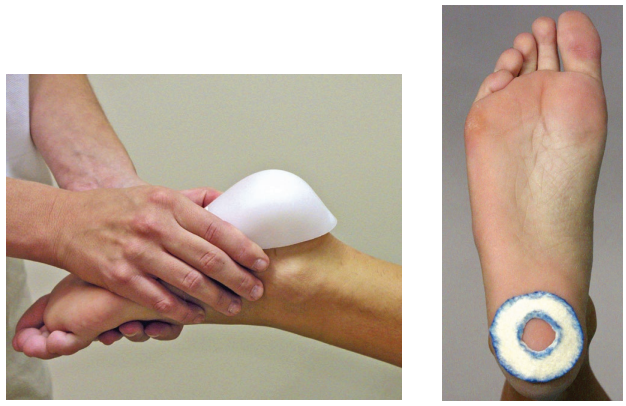
A distance runner is complaining of pain that started on the bottom of her heel and now seems to also be bothering the long arch. She states that pain seems to be the worst in the morning when she first gets out of bed.

? What condition usually results in these complaints, and how should this problem be managed?

Care Initially, cold is applied to the heel bruise, and if possible, the athlete should not step on the heel for at least 24 hours. If pain when walking has subsided by the third day, the athlete may resume moderate activity—with the protection of a heel cup or protective doughnut (Figure 14–7). An athlete who is prone to or who needs protection from a heel bruise should routinely wear a heel cup with a foam rubber pad as a preventive aid. Surrounding the heel with a firm heel cup diffuses traumatic forces and compresses the fat pad under the calcaneus, providing additional cushioning. This can also be accomplished by applying athletic tape as if it were a heel cup.

Plantar Fasciitis

Cause of Condition Heel pain is a very common problem in both the athletic and nonathletic populations. The plantar fascia runs the length of the sole of the foot (refer to Figure 14–3). It assists in maintaining the stability of the foot and in supporting the medial longitudinal arch.[26] A



A B

FIGURE 14–7 Protection of a heel bruise using (A) a heel cup and (B) a felt doughnut pad. ©William E. Prentice

number of conditions have been studied as possible causes of plantar fasciitis. They include leg length discrepancy, inflexibility of the medial longitudinal arch, tightness of the gastrocnemius-soleus unit, wearing shoes without sufficient arch support, a lengthened stride during running, and running on soft surfaces.[14]

Signs of Condition The athlete complains of pain in the anterior medial heel, usually at the attachment of the plantar fascia to the calcaneus that eventually moves more centrally into the middle of the plantar fascia.[8] This pain is particularly troublesome when the athlete rises in the morning or bears weight on the foot after sitting for a long period. However, the pain lessens after a few steps. Pain also is intensified when the toes and forefoot are forcibly dorsiflexed.

Care Management of plantar fasciitis generally requires an extended period of treatment.[16] It is not uncommon for symptoms to persist for as long as 8 to 12 weeks. Vigorous stretching of the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles and the Achilles tendon should be done, along with exercises to stretch the plantar fascia in the arch.[10] Wearing a night splint that gently dorsiflexes the foot and stretches the plantar fascia during sleep is recommended and widely used (Figure 14–8).[14] Use of a heel cup

FIGURE 14–8 A night splint for plantar fasciitis is worn while sleeping. ©William E. Prentice

compresses the fat pad under the calcaneus and provides a cushion under the area of irritation (refer to Figure 14–7). A simple arch taping often allows pain-free ambulation. Orthotic therapy is very useful in the treatment of this problem.[2] In some cases, particularly during a competitive season, the athlete may continue to train and compete if symptoms and associated pain are not prohibitive.

Fractures of the Metatarsals

Cause of Injury Fractures of the metatarsals can be caused by direct force, such as having the foot stepped on by another player, being kicked or kicking another object, or twisting or torsional stresses.[5] The most common acute fracture is of the neck of the fifth metatarsal (Jones fracture).[15]

Signs of Injury It is very difficult to differentiate a fracture from a sprain of the metatarsal ligaments. Fractures of the metatarsals are characterized by swelling and pain. A fracture may be more point tender, and occasionally it may be possible to palpate a deformity. The most definitive way to distinguish a fracture from a sprain is to get an X-ray.[7]

Throughout the remainder of this text, when the Dr. Icon appears, it signifies that for this condition the athlete should be referred to a physician for injury management.

Care Treatment is usually symptomatic, with POLICE used to control swelling. Once swelling has subsided, a short leg walking cast is applied for 3 to 6 weeks. Ambulation is usually possible by the second week. A shoe with a large toe box should be worn.[6] If there is a fracture of the metatarsal with displacement of the fractured bone, surgery might be necessary to reposition the fractured segment.

Fifth Metatarsal Fracture (Jones Fracture)

Cause of Injury A Jones fracture involves a fracture of the neck of the fifth metatarsal that can occur from overuse, acute inversion, or high-velocity rotational forces (Figure 14–9). A Jones fracture occurs most often as a consequence of a stress fracture.[15]

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of a sharp pain on the lateral border of the foot and usually reports hearing a "pop." Because of a history of poor blood supply and delayed healing, a Jones fracture may result in nonunion, requiring an extended period of rehabilitation.[31]

Care A Jones fracture of the fifth metatarsal usually requires a non-weight-bearing short leg cast for 6 to 8 weeks for nondisplaced fractures.[11] With cases of delayed union, nonunion, or especially displaced fractures, the Jones fracture requires internal fixation, with or without bone grafting. In the highly competitive athlete, immediate surgical internal fixation should be recommended.[31]

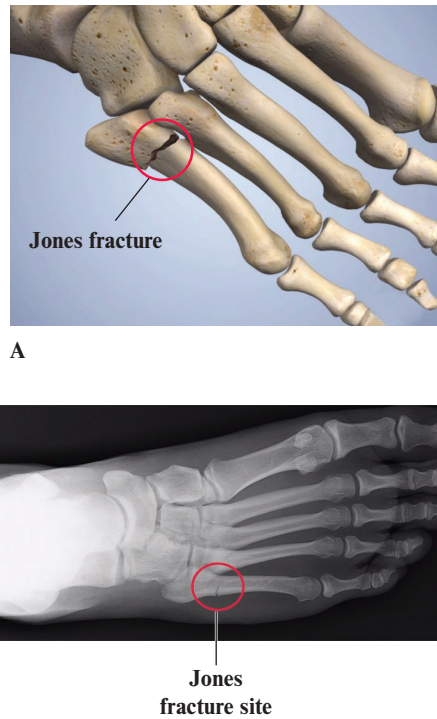


FIGURE 14–9 (A) A Jones fracture occurs of the neck of the fifth metatarsal. (B) X-ray. (B) Courtesy of Jordan B. Renner, MD, Departments of Radiology and Allied Health Sciences, University of North Carolina

Second Metatarsal Stress Fractures

Cause of Injury Second metatarsal stress fractures, also referred to as *march fractures*, occur most often in running and jumping sports. As with other overuse injuries in the foot, the most common causes include structural deformities in the foot, training errors, changes in training surfaces, and wearing inappropriate shoes.[6]

Morton's toe is a condition in which the first metatarsal is abnormally short, making the second toe appear longer than the great toe (Figure 14–10). In a normal walking gait, the first metatarsal bears most of the weight. However, because the first metatarsal in a Morton's toe is short, the second metatarsal must bear a greater percentage of the forces during walking and even greater forces in a running gait. Thus, a Morton's toe increases the chance of a stress fracture of the second metatarsal.[5]

Signs of Injury The athlete usually complains of pain and point tenderness along the second metatarsal.

FIGURE 14–10 In a Morton's toe, the first metatarsal is abnormally short. (right) ©William E. Prentice

Commonly, the athlete indicates the presence of pain during running and perhaps also during walking. The athlete may also feel ongoing pain and aching during non-weight-bearing movements.[6]

Care Treatment for stress fractures should focus on determining the precipitating cause or causes and alleviating those that created the problem. Athletes with second metatarsal stress fractures tend to do well with modified rest and non-weight-bearing exercises such as pool running or using an upper-body ergometer or stationary bike to maintain cardiorespiratory fitness for 2 to 4 weeks. These exercises are followed by the athlete's progressive return to running and jumping sports over a 2- to 3-week period, using appropriate shoes.

Metatarsal Arch Strain

Cause of Injury Athletes with hypermobility of the metatarsals caused by laxity in the ligaments are prone to sprain of the metatarsal arch.[4] Hypermobility allows the metatarsals in the foot to spread apart (splayed foot), giving the appearance of a fallen metatarsal arch.[19]

Fatigue, poor posture, overuse, excessive weight, or improperly fitting shoes may damage the supporting tissue of the arch.

Signs of Injury The athlete has pain or cramping in the metatarsal region. There is point tenderness, with signs of inflammation and weakness in the area. Pain in this region is called **metatarsalgia.**[5] Although metatarsalgia is a general term to describe pain or cramping in the ball of the foot, it is more commonly associated with pain under the second and sometimes the third metatarsal head. A heavy callus often forms in the area of pain.

metatarsalgia (metah-tar-sal-gee-ah) Pain in the bottom of the foot.

Care Treatment of acute metatarsalgia usually consists of applying a pad to elevate the depressed metatarsal heads. The pad is placed in the center and just behind the ball of the foot (metatarsal heads) (Figure 14–11). A daily regimen of exercise should concentrate on strengthening foot muscles and stretching the heel cord.

Longitudinal Arch Strain

Cause of Injury Longitudinal arch strain is usually caused by subjecting the musculature on the plantar surface of the foot to unaccustomed stresses and forces when coming in contact with hard playing surfaces. In this condition, there is a flattening or depression of the longitudinal arch **(pes planus)** while the foot is in the midsupport

pes planus (pees plan-is) Flat feet.

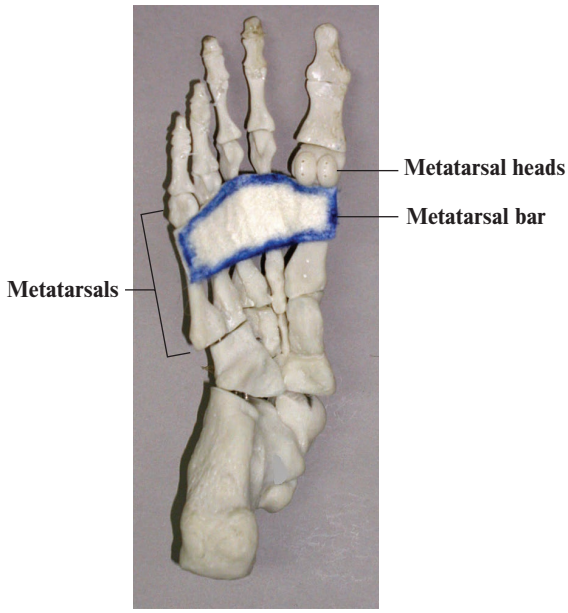


FIGURE 14–11 A metatarsal bar (felt pad) placed just proximal to (behind) the metatarsal heads is used to reduce metatarsalgia (plantar view). ©William E. Prentice

FIGURE 14–12 Fallen medial longitudinal arch. ©William E. Prentice

phase, resulting in a strain to the arch.[3] Such a strain may appear suddenly, or it may develop slowly over a considerable length of time. It should be added that some people have a congenital pes planus or pes cavus (high arch) that does not cause pain.

Signs of Injury As a rule, pain is experienced only when running is attempted and usually appears just below the medial malleolus and the posterior tibial tendon, accompanied by swelling and tenderness along the medial aspects of the foot. Prolonged strain will also involve the calcaneonavicular ligament and first cuneiform with the navicular. The flexor muscle of the great toe (flexor hallucis longus) often develops tenderness as a result of overuse in compensating for the stress on the ligaments.

As long as an existing condition in the foot is *not* causing pain, don't try to fix it.

Many people have what appears to be a flat foot or a fallen longitudinal arch with no associated symptoms or pain whatsoever. In these cases, the rule that should always be followed is "If it's not broken, don't try to fix it" (Figure 14–12).

Care The management of a longitudinal arch strain involves immediate care consisting of POLICE (see Chapter 8) followed by appropriate therapy and reduction of weight bearing. Weight bearing must be performed pain-free. Arch taping might be used to allow earlier pain-free weight bearing.

Fractures and Dislocations of the Toes (Phalanges)

Cause of Injury Fractures of the phalanges may be incurred by kicking an object, stubbing a toe, or dropping a heavy object on the toes.

Signs of Injury Generally, fractures and dislocations of the phalanges are accompanied by swelling and discoloration. If the fracture is to the proximal phalanx of the great toe or to the distal phalanx and also involves the interphalangeal joint, the injury should be referred to a physician.

Fractures and dislocations of the toes can be caused by kicking an object or stubbing a toe.

Care If the break is in the bone shaft, adhesive tape is applied. However, if more than one toe is involved, a cast may be applied for a few days. As a rule, 3 or 4 weeks of inactivity permit healing, although tenderness may persist for some time. A shoe with a wide toe box should be worn; in cases of great–toe fracture, a stiff sole should be worn.

14–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A field hockey player complains of swelling, tenderness, and aching in the head of the first metatarsophalangeal joint of her left foot. On inspection, the great toe is deviated laterally.

? What is this condition commonly called, and why does it occur?

Dislocations of the phalanges are less common than fractures. If one occurs, it is usually a dislocation of the proximal joint of the middle phalanx. The mechanism of injury is the same as for fractures. Reduction is usually performed easily, without anesthesia, by a physician.

Bunions (Hallux Valgus Deformity)

14–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A soccer player complains of intermittent pain in the region between the third and fourth toes of the left foot. Pain, along with tingling and numbness, seems to radiate from the base to the tip of the toes during weight bearing.

? What condition usually causes these symptoms, and how can it be managed?

Cause of Injury A bunion, also referred to as an exostosis, is a painful deformity of the head of the first metatarsal.[27] A bunion involves bony enlargement of the head of the first metatarsal that progresses to the point at which the great toe becomes malaligned and moves laterally toward the second toe, sometimes to such an extent that it eventually overlaps the second toe, creating what is called a hallux valgus deformity (Figure 14–13).[19] This type of bunion may also be associated with a depressed or flattened transverse arch. Often, the bunion occurs from wearing shoes that are pointed, too narrow, too short, or have high heels. A tailor's bunion or bunionette occurs on the fifth metatarsal head and causes the little toe to angulate toward the fourth toe.

Signs of Injury A bunion is one of the most frequent painful deformities of the great toe. As the bunion is developing, there is tenderness, swelling, and enlargement, with calcification of the head of the

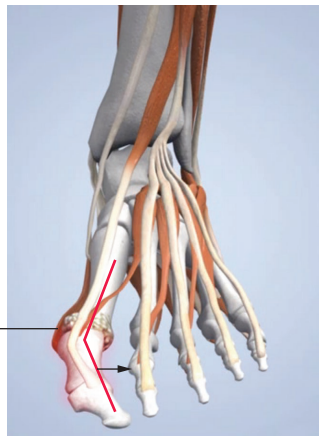


FIGURE 14–13 A hallux valgus deformity with a bunion. (top) ©William E. Prentice

first metatarsal. Poorly fitting shoes increase the irritation and pain.

Care Shoe selection plays an important role in the treatment of bunions. Shoes of the proper width cause less irritation to the bunion. Night splints have been recommended to correct the position of the great toe in skeletally immature patients but are not effective in the skeletally mature patient. Protective devices such as some type of doughnut pad over the bunion help disperse pressure, and tape can also be used. If the condition progresses, a special orthotic device may help normalize foot mechanics and significantly reduce the symptoms and progression of a bunion. Surgery to correct the hallux valgus deformity is very common during the later stages of this condition.[19]

Morton's Neuroma

Cause of Condition A **neuroma** is a mass occurring in the common plantar nerve. It occurs most commonly between the third and fourth metatarsal heads, where the nerve is the thickest because it is receiving both branches from the medial and lateral plantar nerves (Figure 14–14).[1]

neuroma Enlargement of a nerve.

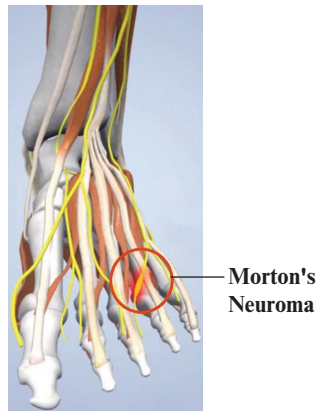


FIGURE 14–14 A Morton's neuroma usually occurs between the third and fourth metatarsal heads.

Signs of Condition The athlete complains of severe intermittent pain radiating from the distal metatarsal heads to the tips of the toes; the pain is often relieved when the foot is not bearing weight.[24] The athlete complains of a burning numbness in the forefoot that is often localized to the third web space and radiating to the toes.[1] Hyperextension of the toes on weight bearing, as in squatting, stair climbing, or running, can increase the symptoms. Wearing shoes with a narrow toe box or high heel can increase the symptoms.

Care Either a metatarsal bar (see Figure 14–11) is placed just proximal to the metatarsal heads, or a teardrop-shaped pad is placed between the heads of the third and fourth metatarsals in an attempt to have these toes splay apart with weight bearing (Figure 14–15).[19] Shoe selection also plays an important role in treatment of neuromas. A shoe that is wide in the toe box area should be selected.

Turf Toe

Cause of Injury Turf toe is a hyperextension injury resulting in a sprain of the great toe, either from

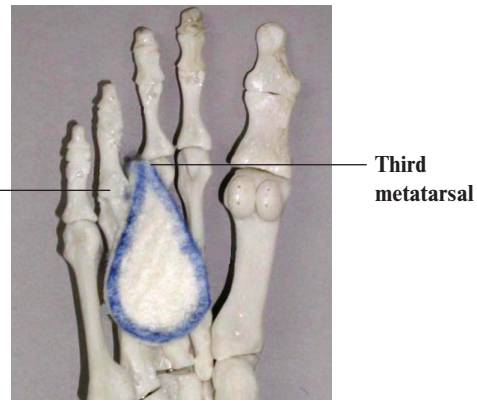


FIGURE 14–15 A teardrop-shaped pad placed between the third and fourth metatarsal heads will spread them apart during weight bearing, taking pressure off the neuroma. ©William E. Prentice

repetitive overuse or trauma.[22] Typically, these injuries occur on unyielding synthetic turf, although they can occur on grass also.[21] Many of these injuries occur because artificial turf shoes often are more flexible and allow more dorsiflexion of the great toe. Some shoe companies have addressed this problem by adding steel or other materials to the forefoot of their turf shoes to stiffen them. A sprain of the great toe can also occur from kicking some nonyielding object.[13]

Care Flat insoles that have thin sheets of steel under the forefoot are available. When commercially made products are not available, a thin, flat piece of thermoplastic material may be placed under the shoe insole or may be molded to the foot. Taping the toe to prevent dorsiflexion may be done separately or in addition to one of the shoe-stiffening suggestions (refer to Figure 10–14). In less severe cases, the athlete can continue to play with the addition of a rigid insole. With more severe sprains, 3 to 4 weeks may be required for pain to subside to the point at which the athlete can push off on the great toe.[21]

Calluses

Cause of Condition Foot calluses may be caused by shoes that are too narrow or too short. Calluses that develop from friction can be painful because the fatty layer loses its elasticity and cushioning effect. The excess callus moves as a gross mass, becoming highly vulnerable to tears, cracks, and, ultimately, infections.[17] It is not uncommon for blisters to develop underneath a callus.

Care Athletes who are prone to excess calluses should be encouraged to use an emery callus file after each shower. Massaging small amounts of an emollient such as skin lube or Aquaphor or vaseline into devitalized calluses once or twice a week after practice may help maintain some tissue elasticity. The coach may have the athlete decrease the calluses' thickness and increase their smoothness by sanding or pumicing. NOTE: *Great care should be taken not to remove the callus totally and the protection it affords at a given pressure point.*

Athletes whose shoes are properly fitted but who still develop heavy calluses commonly have faulty foot mechanics that may require special orthotics. Special cushioning devices such as wedges, doughnuts, and arch supports may help to distribute the weight on the feet more evenly and thus reduce skin stress. Excessive callus accumulation can be prevented by (1) wearing at least one layer of socks, (2) wearing shoes that are the correct size and in good condition, and (3) routinely applying materials such as petroleum jelly to reduce friction.

Blisters

Cause of Injury As a result of shearing forces acting on the skin, blisters develop in which fluid accumulates below the outer skin layer. This fluid may be clear or bloody. Soft feet, coupled with this shearing skin stress, can produce severe blisters. The application of a skin lubricant can protect the skin against abnormal friction. Wearing socks with no folds or wrinkles can protect the athlete with sensitive skin or the one who perspires excessively.[17] Wearing the correct-size shoe is essential. Shoes should be broken in before being worn for long periods.

14–4 Critical Thinking Exercise

A football player who both practices and plays on artificial turf complains of pain in his right great toe.

? What type of injury frequently occurs to the great toe when competing on artificial turf?

Care If a blister or hot spot arises, the athlete has several options: (1) Cover the irritated skin with a friction-proofing material, such as skin lubricant; (2) cover the blister with an adhesive bandage; or (3) apply a doughnut pad that surrounds the blister.

When caring for a blister, there is always a possibility of infection from contamination. Any blister that appears to be infected requires medical attention. In sports, two approaches are generally used to care for blisters. The conservative approach is that a blister should not be contaminated by cutting or puncturing but should be protected from further insult by a small doughnut until the initial irritation has subsided (Figure 14–16). However, the pressure of the fluid inside the blister can often be extremely painful and in some cases debilitating. Puncturing may be necessary to allow the athlete to continue to play or practice but should be done only by athletic trainers or physicians. *Focus Box 14–1* details the technique for opening a blister. Conservative care of blisters is preferred when there is little danger of tearing or aggravation through activity. A product called Second Skin by Spenco is widely used on blisters to provide a protective coating.

Corns

Cause of Condition The hard corn is the most serious type of corn. It is caused by the pressure of improperly fitting shoes, the same mechanism that causes calluses. Hammertoes and hard corns are

FIGURE 14–16 **A blister should be padded using a felt doughnut pad to take pressure off and provide relief.** ©William E. Prentice

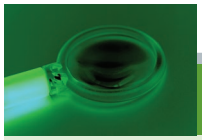
usually associated; the hard corns form on the tops of the deformed toes. The soft corn is the result of a combination of wearing narrow shoes and excessive foot perspiration (Figure 14–17).[17]

Signs of Condition The soft corn usually forms between the fourth and fifth toes. A circular area of thickened, white, macerated skin appears between and at the base of the toes. There also appears to be a black dot in the center of the corn. Both pain and inflammation are likely to be present. Symptoms

A

B

FIGURE 14–17 **(A) Hard corns appear on the top of a toe and are usually associated with hammertoes. (B) Soft corns usually appear between the fourth and fifth toes.** (A) ©William E. Prentice; (B) Courtesy of Dr. Howard Kashefsky, Podiatry, University of North Carolina



FOCUS BOX 14–1

Caring for a torn blister

1. Cleanse the blister and surrounding tissue with soap and water; rinse with an antiseptic.
2. If the blister is open, drain the fluid using a sterile gauze pad.
3. Apply antibiotic ointment under and around the loose skin; cover the area with a sterile dressing.
4. Apply a doughnut pad around the blister.
5. Change the dressing daily and check for signs of infection.
6. Within 2 or 3 days, or when the underlying tissue has hardened sufficiently, remove the dead skin by trimming as close as possible to the perimeter of the blister.

are local pain and disability, with inflammation and thickening of soft tissue.

Care When caring for a soft corn, the best procedure is to have the athlete wear properly fitting shoes, keep the skin between the toes clean and dry, and decrease pressure by keeping the toes separated with gel or foam toe caps, cushions, or tubules. To treat a hard corn, the athlete should soak feet daily in warm, soapy water to soften the corn. To alleviate further irritation, the corn should be protected by a small felt or sponge rubber doughnut.

Ingrown Toenails

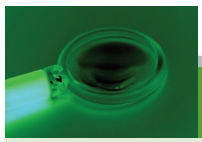
Cause of Condition An ingrown toenail is a condition in which the leading side edge of the toenail has grown into the soft tissue nearby, usually resulting in severe inflammation and infection (Figure 14–18).[28]

FIGURE 14–18 **Ingrown toenail.** Courtesy of Dr. Howard Kashefsky, Podiatry, University of North Carolina

FIGURE 14–19 **A subungual hematoma is blood accumulating under the nail.** ©William E. Prentice

Signs of Condition The classic signs of infection are swelling, heat, aching, redness, and accumulation of pus.

Care It is important that the athlete's shoes be of the proper length and width because continued pressure on a toenail can lead to serious irritation or cause it to become ingrown. In most cases, ingrown toenails can be prevented by trimming the nails correctly.[28] The nail must be trimmed straight across and not curved so that its margins do not penetrate the tissue on the sides. Also, the nail should be left sufficiently long that it is clear of the underlying tissue but should be cut short enough that it is not irritated by either shoes or socks. *Focus Box 14–2* details the care for an ingrown toenail.



FOCUS BOX 14–2

Managing the ingrown toenail

1. Soak the toe in hot water (110°F to 120°F) (43.3°C to 48.8°C) for approximately 20 minutes, two or three times daily.
2. When the nail is soft and pliable, use forceps to insert a wisp of cotton under the edge of the nail and lift it from the soft tissue.
3. Continue this procedure until the nail has grown out sufficiently to be trimmed straight across.

An ingrown toenail can easily become infected. If this occurs, the athlete should be immediately referred to a physician for treatment.

Blood Under the Toenail (Subungual Hematoma)

Cause of Injury Blood can accumulate under a toenail as a result of the toe being stepped on, of dropping an object on the toe, or of kicking another object. Repetitive shearing forces on toenails, as may occur in the shoe of a long-distance runner, may also cause bleeding into the nail bed. In any case, blood that accumulates in a confined space underneath the nail is likely to produce extreme pain and can ultimately cause loss of the nail (Figure 14–19).[9]

Signs of Injury Bleeding into the nail bed may be either immediate or slow, producing considerable pain. The area under the toenail assumes a bluish-purple color, and gentle pressure on the nail greatly exacerbates pain.[9]

Care An ice pack should be applied immediately, and the foot should be elevated to decrease bleeding. Within the next 12 to 24 hours, the pressure of the blood under the nail should be released by drilling a small hole though the nail into the nail bed.[9] If available, a high-temperature cauterizing pen can be used to burn this hole. This drilling must be done under sterile conditions and is best done by either a physician or an athletic trainer. It is not uncommon to have to drill the nail a second time, because more blood is likely to accumulate.

SUMMARY

- The human foot must function both to absorb forces and to provide a stable base of support during walking, running, and jumping.
- The 26 bones in the foot are held together by an intricate network of ligaments and fascia and are moved by a complex group of muscles.
- Foot injuries may be prevented by selecting appropriate footwear and using various orthotic devices inserted into the shoe to protect the foot from abnormal forces, stresses, and strains.
- A pump bump develops from chronic retrocalcaneal bursitis on the back of the heel.
- Plantar fasciitis is pain in the anterior medial heel, usually at the attachment of the plantar fascia to the calcaneus. Orthotics, in combination with stretching exercises, can significantly reduce pain.
- A Jones fracture is a fracture of the neck of the fifth metatarsal that often results in delayed healing.
- The most common stress fracture in the foot involves the second metatarsal (march fracture).
- Metatarsal and longitudinal arch sprains are best treated by inserting appropriate support pads into the shoes.
- A bunion is a deformity of the head of the first metatarsal, in which the large toe assumes a hallux valgus position.
- To treat a Morton's neuroma, a metatarsal bar is placed just proximal to the metatarsal heads, or a teardrop-shaped pad is placed between the heads of the third and fourth metatarsals in an attempt to have these toes splay apart with weight bearing.
- Turf toe is a hyperextension injury resulting in a sprain of the great toe.
- The foot within the shoe can sustain forces that produce calluses, blisters, corns, or ingrown toenails.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

14-1 These complaints are most typically associated with plantar fasciitis, which can be treated with a combination of vigorous stretching of the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles and the Achilles tendon, stretching the plantar fascia in the arch, using a heel cup, arch taping, and using an orthotic with increased arch support.

14-2 This condition is a bunion or hallux valgus deformity. It is associated with wearing shoes that are too pointed, narrow, or short. It may begin with an inflamed bursa over the metatarsophalangeal joint. It can be associated with a depressed transverse arch or a pronated foot.

14-3 Most likely the athlete has a Morton's neuroma. A metatarsal bar or a teardrop-shaped pad applied in the correct position on the sole of the foot can help to spread the metatarsal heads apart and take pressure off the neuroma, reducing the symptoms.

14-4 A sprain of the great toe is often referred to as turf toe. It results from a hyperextension of the great toe and usually occurs in athletes playing on artificial turf.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. Briefly describe the anatomy of the foot.
2. In evaluating an acute condition in the foot region, what general observations can be made?
3. What measures can be taken to prevent foot injuries?
4. What is the relationship between a pump bump and retrocalcaneal bursitis?
5. What is a Jones fracture, and why does it take so long to heal?
6. How is it possible for a heel bruise to lead to plantar fasciitis?
7. How are stress fractures of the second metatarsal managed?
8. Discuss how various arch sprains can be treated.
9. What injuries might result from wearing shoes that are too tight?
10. How does a Morton's toe differ from a Morton's neuroma?
11. How would you care for a chronic case of turf toe?
12. What is the recommended procedure in caring for a blister on the foot?

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Adams, I. 2010. Morton's neuroma. *Clinics in Podiatric Medicine and Surgery* 27(4):535–545.
2. Anderson, J., & Stanek, J. 2013. Effect of foot orthoses as treatment for plantar fasciitis or heel pain. *Journal of Sport Rehabilitation* 22(2):130–136.
3. Anderson, M. 2013. Foot and ankle sports medicine. *Journal of Orthopedic and Sports Physical Therapy* 43(10):762–763.
4. Anderson, R. 2010. Management of common sports-related injuries about the foot and ankle. *Journal of the American Academy of Orthopedic Surgeons* 18(10):546–556.
5. Blitch, T. 2009. Clinical practice guidelines: Diagnosis and treatment of forefoot disorders (Sections 1–4). *Journal of Foot and Ankle Surgery* 48(2):230–272.
6. Boutefnouchet, T. 2014. Metatarsal fractures: A review and current concepts. *Trauma* 16(3):147–163.
7. Brukner, P. 2016. Foot pain: Sports injuries. In P. Brukner & B. Carlsen (eds.), *Clinical sports medicine*, 5th ed. Sydney: McGraw-Hill.
8. Cornwall, M. 2013. Evaluation of foot mobility and orthotic intervention. *Journal of Orthopedic and Sports Physical Therapy* 43(3):A6–7.
9. Dean, B., Becker, G., & Little, C. 2012. The management of the acute traumatic subungual haematoma: A systematic review. *Hand Surgery* 17(1):151–154.
10. Feinblatt J. 2014. Plantar fasciitis/fasciosis. In T. Philbin (ed.), *Sports injuries of the*

foot: Evolving diagnosis and treatment. New York, NY: Springer.
11. Ferguson, K., & McGlynn, J. 2015. Fifth metatarsal fractures: Is routine follow-up necessary? *Injury* 46(8):1664–1668.
12. Fields, K. 2010. Prevention of running injuries. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 9(3):176–182.
13. Garras, D. 2014. Turf toe. In T. Philbin (ed.), *Sports injuries of the foot: Evolving diagnosis and treatment*. New York, NY: Springer.
14. Goff, J. 2011. Diagnosis and treatment of plantar fasciitis. *American Family Physician* 84(6):676–682.
15. Granata, J., 2014. Fractures of the fifth metatarsal. In T. Philbin (ed.), *Sports injuries of the foot: Evolving diagnosis and treatment*. New York, NY: Springer.
16. Hertel, J., & Fraser, J. 2017. Utilization of physical therapy intervention among patients with plantar fasciitis in the United States. *Journal of Orthopaedic & Sports Physical Therapy* 47(2):49–55.
17. Hsu, A. 2012. Topical review: Skin infections in the foot and ankle patient. *Foot and Ankle International* 33(7):612–619.
18. Hunt, K. 2013. Foot and ankle injuries in sport. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 32(3):525–557.
19. Hunter, S., Prentice, W., & Zinder, S. 2015. Rehabilitation of ankle and foot injuries. In W. Prentice (ed.), *Rehabilitation techniques in sports medicine and athletic training*, 6th ed. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.
20. Lohrer, H., & Nauck, T. 2014. Retrocalcaneal bursitis but not Achilles tendinopathy is characterized by increased pressure in the retrocalcaneal bursa. *Clinical Biomechanics* 29(3):283–288.
21. Mann, R. A. 2007. Great toe disorders. In D. Porter (ed.), *Baxter's The foot and ankle in sports*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby.
22. McGraw, E. 2008. Turf toe. *Coach & Athletic Director* 77(7):34.
23. McKinney, F. 2012. The sporting foot and ankle: An introduction to sport-specific foot and ankle injuries. *SportEx Dynamics* 34:10–14.
24. Metzl, J. 2008. Morton's neuroma: A common cause of foot pain. *Triathlete* 293:30.
25. Mills, K. 2010. Foot orthoses and gait: A systematic review and meta-analysis of literature pertaining to potential mechanisms. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 44(14):1035–1046.
26. Norris, C. 2017. Plantar fasciitis: A pain in the heel. *Co-Kinetic Journal* 7(1):14-20.
27. Ng, M. 2016. A revolutionary way to approach correction of deformity—Hallux valgus (bunion). *Physiotherapy* 102:e192.
28. Park, D., & Singh, D. 2012.The management of ingrowing toenails. *British Medical Journal* 344:e2089.
29. Richter, R. 2011. Foot orthoses in lower limb overuse conditions: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Athletic Training* 46(1):103–106.
30. Rosenbaum, A. 2014. Plantar heel pain. *Medical Clinics of North America* 98(2):349–352.
31. Thevendran, G. 2013. Fifth metatarsal fractures in the athlete: Evidence for management. *Foot and Ankle Clinics* 18(2):237–254.
32. Werd, M., & Knight, L. 2017. *Athletic footwear and orthoses in sports medicine*. New York, NY: Springer.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Altchek, D. 2012. *Foot and ankle sports medicine*. Baltimore, MD: Wolters Kluwer, Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.

More than 40 specialists in orthopedic surgery, podiatry, physiatry, physical therapy, and athletic training contributed to this book's contents, making it a comprehensive and practical resource for the treatment of foot and ankle sports injuries.

Philbin, T. 2014. *Sports injuries of the foot: Evolving diagnosis and treatment*: NY: New York, Springer.

This book focuses on sports injuries of the foot and succeeds in both covering the most common injuries and reviewing the gamut of how to treat these common injuries from office to operating room to rehabilitation.

Porter, D., & Schon, L. 2007. *Baxter's The foot and ankle in sports*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby.

A complete medical text on all aspects of the foot and ankle. It covers common sports syndromes, anatomical disorders in sports, unique problems, shoes, orthoses, and rehabilitation.

Vonhof, J. 2016. *Fixing your feet: Prevention and treatment for athletes*. Birmingham, AL: Wilderness Press.

This comprehensive resource covers footwear basics, prevention, and treatments along with clear diagrams, photos, and charts that demonstrate techniques and solutions.

Werd, M., & Knight, L. 2017. *Athletic footwear and orthoses in sports medicine*. New York, NY: Springer.

This practical resource provides a concise and logical approach to prescribing footwear that will maximize performance and minimize injury in athletes. This second edition includes an expanded section on running footwear and additional sports-specific recommendations.

WEBSITES

American Podiatric Medical Association: www.apma.org

Provides a variety of information on foot and ankle injuries, from the APMA.

Foot Injuries | Foot Disorders | MedlinePlus: www.medlineplus.gov

Foot pain Causes - Mayo Clinic: www.mayoclinic.org/symptoms/foot-pain/basics/causes/sym-20050792

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

©William E. Prentice

15

The Ankle and Lower Leg

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Describe the bony, ligamentous, and muscular anatomy of the ankle and lower leg.
- List considerations for preventing injuries to the ankle and lower leg.
- Explain how to assess common ankle and lower-leg injuries.
- Identify the possible causes and signs of various injuries that can occur in the ankle and lower leg.
- Examine the procedures that can be used in caring for ankle and lower leg injuries.

ANKLE AND LOWER-LEG ANATOMY

Bones

The portion of the anatomy below the knee and above the ankle is the lower leg. It is composed of the thicker tibia, which is more medial, and the thinner fibula, which is more lateral. The ankle joint or *talocrural joint* is formed by the thickened distal portion of the fibula, called the lateral malleolus; the thickened distal portion of the tibia, called the medial malleolus; and the more-or-less cube-shaped tarsal bone, called the talus, that fits between the two malleoli. The ankle joint allows two motions: plantarflexion and dorsiflexion. The joint between the talus and the calcaneus is called the *subtalar joint*. Inversion and eversion take place at the *subtalar joint* (Figure 15–1).

The ankle joint is composed of the

- Tibia
- Fibula
- Talus

Ligaments

The tibia and fibula are held together by the interosseous membrane, which extends the entire length of the two bones (Figure 15–1). The anterior and posterior tibiofibular ligaments bridge the tibia and fibula and form the distal portion of the interosseous membrane (Figure 15–2A). The medial aspect of the ankle is relatively stable because of the thick deltoid ligament. The presence of this strong deltoid ligament, combined with the fact that the lateral malleolus of the fibula extends further distally than the medial malleolus, limits the ability of the ankle to evert (Figure 15–2B). Thus, eversion ankle sprains are considerably less common than inversion sprains. The three lateral ligaments include the anterior talofibular, the posterior talofibular, and the calcaneofibular. The lateral ligaments collectively limit inversion and are much more susceptible to injury.

The talocrural joint allows two motions:

- Plantarflexion
- Dorsiflexion

The subtalar joint allows two motions:

- Inversion
- Eversion

Muscles

Contraction of the muscles in the lower leg produces movement at the ankle joint. The muscles of the lower leg are divided into

Medial ligament includes the deltoid.

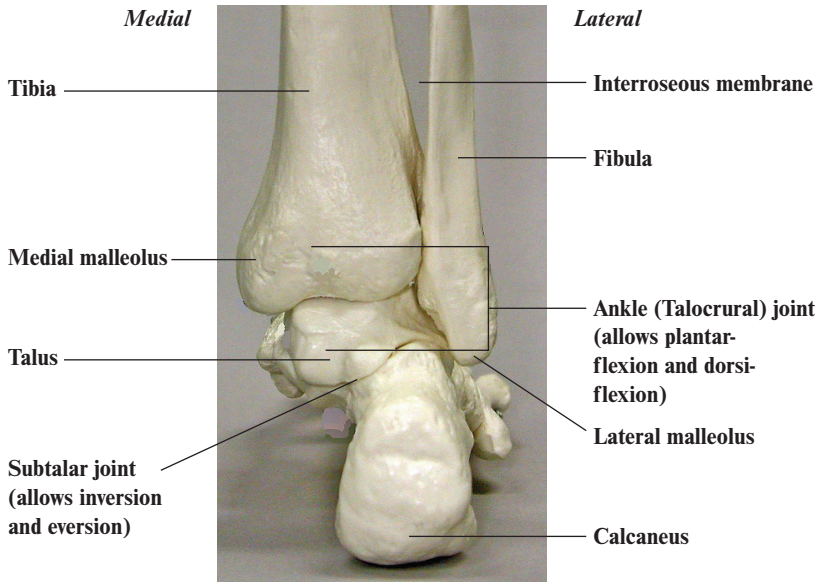


FIGURE 15–1 The ankle joint is formed by the tibia, fibula, and talus. The subtalar joint is formed by the talus and calcaneus. ©William E. Prentice

four distinct groups (Figure 15–3). Each of the four muscle groups is contained separately within a compartment by thick sheets of fascia (connective tissue) that surround them. Essentially, the muscles that dorsiflex the ankle are contained within the anterior compartment; the muscles that plantarflex the ankle are in the superficial posterior compartment; the muscles that evert the ankles are in the lateral compartment; and the muscles that invert the ankle are found in the deep posterior compartment

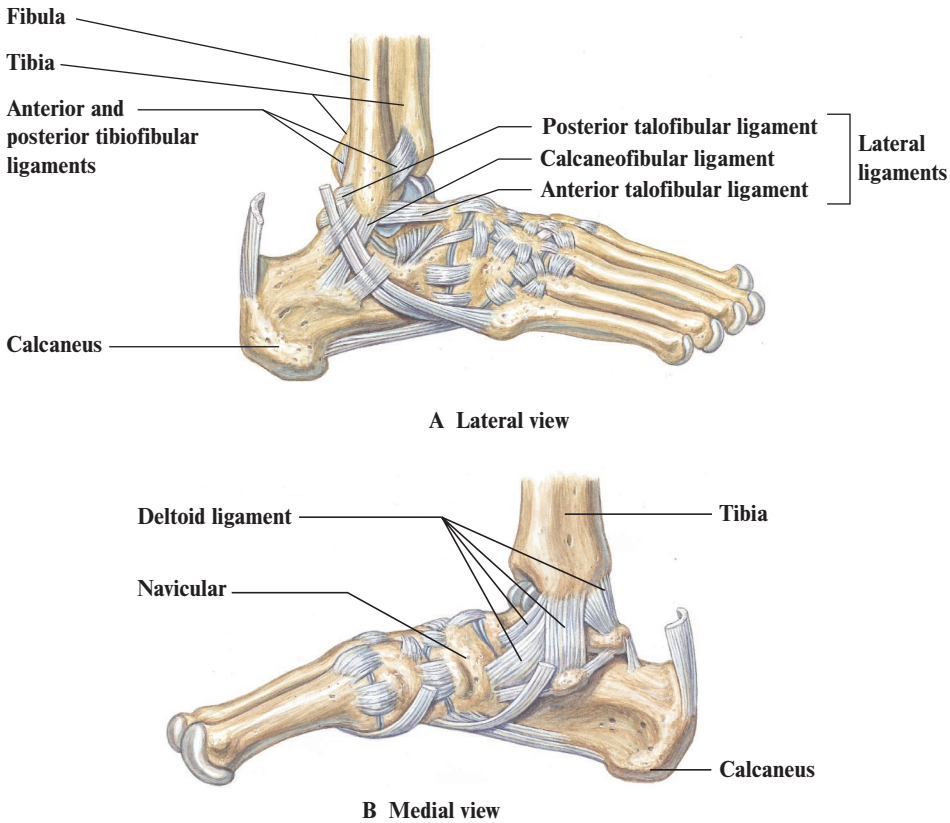


FIGURE 15–2 Ligaments of the ankle joint: **(A)** Lateral view. **(B)** Medial view. (From Van De Graaff, K., *Human anatomy*, 6th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2009.)

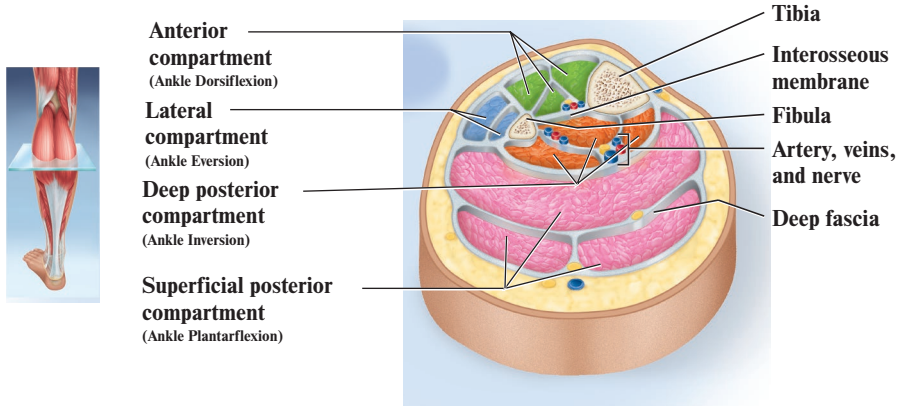


FIGURE 15–3 The muscles of the lower leg are divided into four distinct groups contained separately within individual compartments.

TABLE 15–1 Muscles of the Ankle Joint

Ankle dorsiflexion (Anterior compartment)	Extensor digitorum longus Extensor hallucis longus Tibialis anterior (primary dorsiflexor)
Ankle plantarflexion (Superficial posterior compartment)	Soleus Gastrocnemius
Ankle inversion (Deep posterior compartment)	Tibialis posterior Flexor digitorum longus Flexor hallucis longus
Ankle eversion (Lateral compartment)	Fibularis longus Fibularis brevis Tibialis anterior

Lateral ligaments include the

- Anterior talofibular
- Posterior talofibular
- Calcaneofibular

(Table 15–1). Visual examples of the movements of the lower leg and ankle appear in Appendix C.

PREVENTION OF LOWER-LEG AND ANKLE INJURIES

Many lower-leg and ankle injuries, especially sprains, can be reduced by Achilles tendon stretching, strengthening of key muscles, improving neuromuscular control, choosing appropriate footwear, and, when necessary, proper bracing and taping.[9,10,11]

Preventing lower-leg and ankle injuries:

- Stretching of the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles and the Achilles tendon
- Strength training
- Neuromuscular control
- Appropriate footwear
- Ankle taping and bracing

Achilles Tendon Complex Stretching

The athlete with a tight Achilles tendon complex should routinely stretch before and after practice.[2] To properly stretch the Achilles tendon complex, the ankle should be dorsiflexed and the knee fully extended to stretch the gastrocnemius muscle, and then the knee should be flexed to about 30 degrees to stretch the soleus muscle (Figure 15–4). There needs to be at least 10 degrees of dorsiflexion for normal ankle motion to occur.[2]

Strength Training

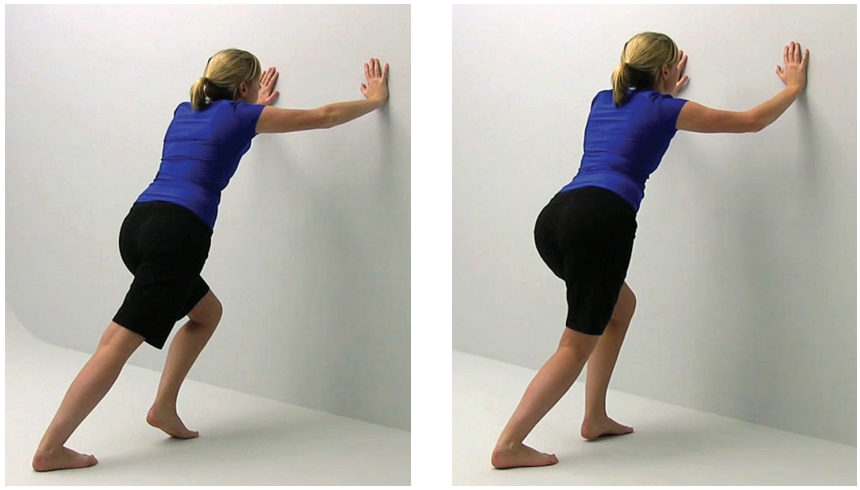
Achieving both static and dynamic joint stability through strength training is critical in preventing ankle injury (Figure 15–5). A balance in strength throughout the full range of motion must be developed and maintained in each of the four muscle groups that surround the ankle joint.[20] Strengthening exercises should be done in eversion and inversion, which can be done by rocking the ankle back and forth on a wobble board, and also by using surgical tubing.

Neuromuscular Control

As is the case with strength training, maintaining neuromuscular control is critical to prevention of injury to the ankle joint. Neuromuscular control relies on the central nervous system to interpret and integrate proprioceptive and kinesthetic information and then to control individual muscles and joints to produce coordinated movements that collectively protect the joint from injury.[18] Thus, the foot and ankle must respond quickly to any uneven surface condition. Ankle joint position sense can be enhanced by training on uneven surfaces or by spending time each day on a balance board (Figure 15–6).

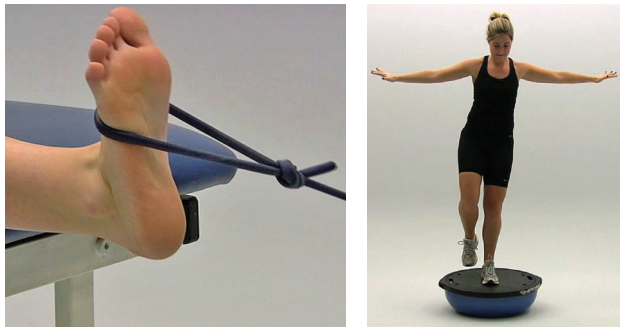
Footwear

As discussed in Chapters 6 and 14, proper footwear can be an important factor in reducing injuries



A B

FIGURE 15–4 Stretching techniques for the right Achilles tendon complex: **(A)** Stretching position for the gastrocnemius muscle. **(B)** Stretching position for the soleus muscle. ©William E. Prentice



A B

FIGURE 15–5 Strengthening exercises are important in prevention of ankle sprains and may be done using **(A)** surgical tubing resistance or **(B)** a Bosu Balance Trainer. ©William E. Prentice

FIGURE 15–6 Ankle exercises on a BAPS Board. ©William E. Prentice

to both the foot and the ankle. Shoes should not be used in activities for which they were not intended—for example, running shoes, which are designed for straight-ahead activity, should not be worn to play basketball, a sport demanding a great deal of lateral movement.

Preventive Ankle Taping and Bracing

There is some doubt about whether it is beneficial to routinely tape ankles that have no history of sprain. Tape, properly applied, can provide some prophylactic protection. Poorly applied tape does more harm than good. Tape that constricts soft tissue and blood circulation or disrupts normal biomechanical function can, in time, create unnecessary problems.[18]

Ankle bracing can also offer protection to the ankle joint (Figure 15–7).[24] Braces may prevent lateral and inversion movement of the foot without

FIGURE 15–7 Ankle braces may be used to support weak ankles. Courtesy of Active Ankle

inhibiting plantarflexion (see Chapter 6).[11] Lace-up supports and semirigid ankle braces are increasingly being used instead of tape to prevent recurrent ankle sprains.

ASSESSING THE ANKLE JOINT

Generally fitness professionals, coaches, and others working in areas related to exercise and sports science are not adequately trained to evaluate injuries. It is strongly recommended that injured athletes be referred to qualified medical personnel (i.e., physicians, athletic trainers, physical therapists) for injury evaluation. Information has been included simply to give some idea about the different basic tests that nonmedical personnel may do to determine the nature and severity of the athlete's injury. The primary responsibility of those who are not health care personnel is to be able to recognize any potential "red flags" associated with the injury, provide appropriate first aid for the injury, and make correct decisions about how the injury should be managed initially, including immediate return to play or activity decisions (refer to Chapter 8).

History

The athlete's history may vary, depending on whether the problem is the result of sudden trauma or is chronic. The athlete with an acute sudden trauma to the ankle should be asked the following questions:

- What trauma or mechanism occurred?
- What was heard when the injury occurred—a crack, snap, or pop?
- What were the duration and intensity of pain?
- How disabling was the occurrence? Could the athlete walk right away, or was he or she unable to bear weight for a time?
- Has a similar injury occurred before?
- Was there immediate swelling, or did the swelling occur later (or at all)? Where did the swelling occur?
- What past ankle injuries have occurred?

Observation

Immediately following injury, the athlete should be observed to determine the following:

- Is there an obvious deformity?
- Are the bony contours of the ankle normal and symmetrical, or is there a deviation such as a bony deformity?
- Is there any discoloration?
- Is there crepitus or abnormal sound in the ankle joint?
- Is heat, swelling, or redness present?
- Is the athlete in obvious pain?
- Does the athlete have a normal ankle range of motion?
- If the athlete is able to walk, is there a normal walking pattern, or does the athlete walk with a limp?

Palpation

Palpation in the ankle region should start with key bony landmarks and ligaments and progress to the musculature, especially the major ligaments that surround the ankle. The purpose of palpation in this region is to detect obvious structural deformities, swelling, and localized tenderness.

15–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A basketball player sustains a grade 1 inversion sprain of her left ankle during a game. There is immediate pain and swelling, and she is unable to bear weight.

? What is the most important first-aid goal immediately following injury, and how may that first-aid goal best be accomplished?

Special Tests for Ankle Injuries

Bump Test When fracture is suspected, a gentle percussive blow can be applied upward on the bottom of the heel. Such blows set up a vibratory force that resonates at the fracture, causing pain (Figure 15–8A).

Anterior Drawer Test The anterior drawer test is used to determine the extent of injury to the anterior talofibular ligament primarily and to the other lateral ligaments secondarily (Figure 15–8B). The examiner grasps the lower tibia in one hand and the calcaneus in the palm of the other hand. The tibia is then pushed backward as the calcaneus is pulled forward. A positive anterior drawer sign occurs when the foot slides forward.

Talar Tilt Test Talar tilt tests are used to determine the extent of inversion or eversion injuries. With the foot positioned at 90 degrees to the lower leg and stabilized, the calcaneus is inverted. Excessive motion of the talus at 90 degrees indicates injury to the calcaneofibular and possibly the anterior and posterior talofibular ligaments as well (Figure 15–8C). Excessive motion in inversion with the ankle plantarflexed indicates a sprain of the anterior talofibular ligament.

Functional Examination

Muscle function is important in evaluating the ankle injury. If the athlete cannot execute or has difficulty performing the following functional activities, the athlete is not ready to return to activity:

- Walk on toes.
- Walk on heels.

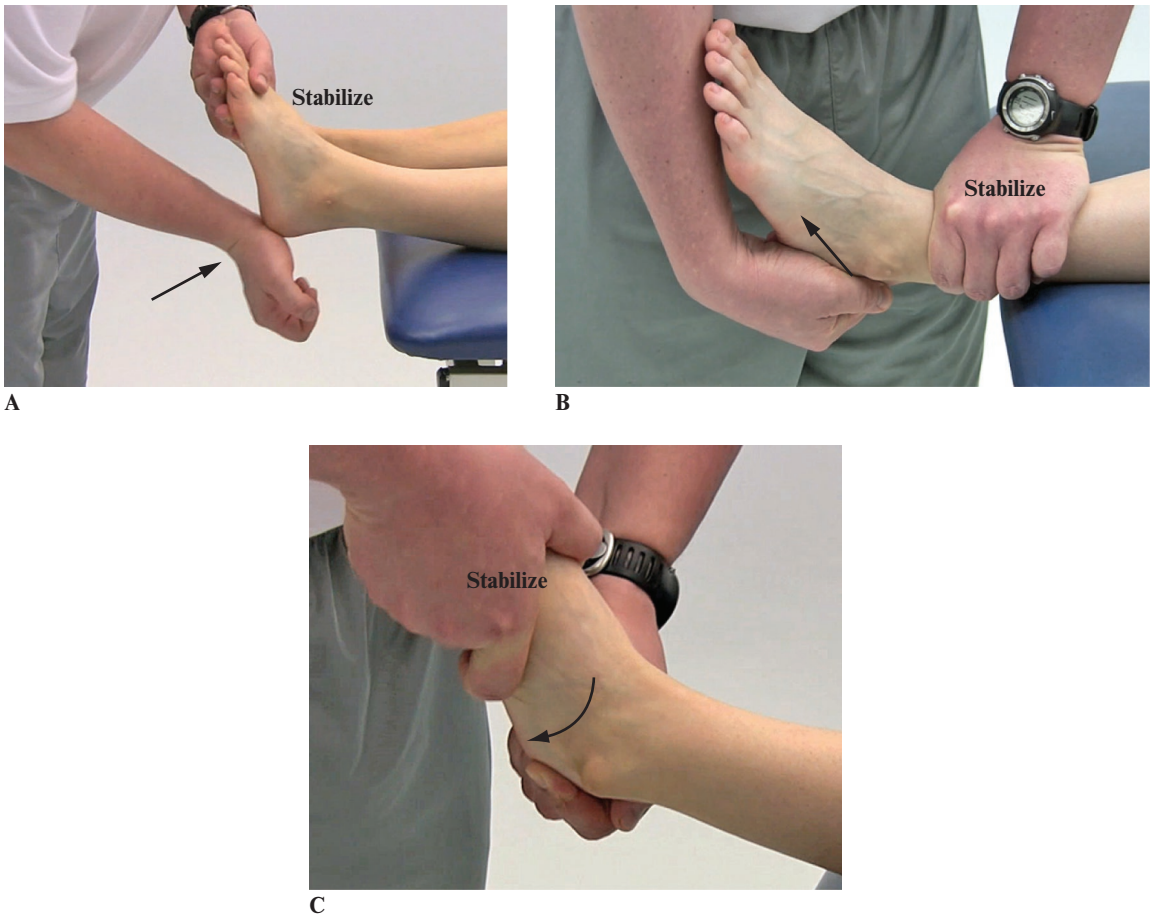


FIGURE 15–8 Special tests for ankle injuries: **(A)** Bump test. **(B)** Anterior drawer test. **(C)** Talar tilt test.
©William E. Prentice

- Hop on affected foot without heel touching surface.
- Start or stop the running motion.
- Change direction rapidly.
- Run figure eights.

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF INJURIES TO THE ANKLE

Ankle Sprains

Cause of Injury Ankle sprains are among the more common injuries seen in athletics (Figure 15–9).[16] Injuries to the ligaments of the ankle may be classified by the mechanism of injury.[30]

Ankle sprain classifications:

- Inversion sprain
- Eversion sprain
- High ankle sprain

FIGURE 15–9 The ankle and usually the foot may be swollen and discolored following an ankle sprain.
©William E. Prentice

Inversion sprains An inversion ankle sprain is most common and often results in injury to the lateral ligaments. The anterior talofibular ligament is the weakest of the three lateral ligaments. It is injured in an inverted and plantarflexed position (Figure 15–10). The calcaneofibular and posterior talofibular ligaments are also likely to be injured in inversion sprains as the force of inversion is increased. Increased inversion force is needed to tear the calcaneofibular ligament (Figure 15–11).[30]

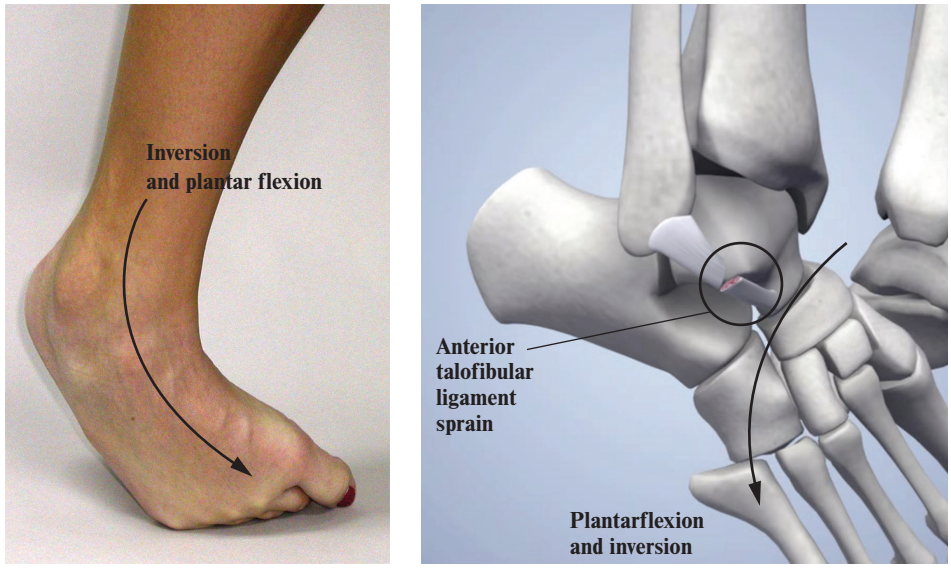


FIGURE 15–10 A mechanism of injury that involves **(A)** plantarflexion and inversion can **(B)** cause a sprain of the anterior talofibular ligament. (A) ©William E. Prentice

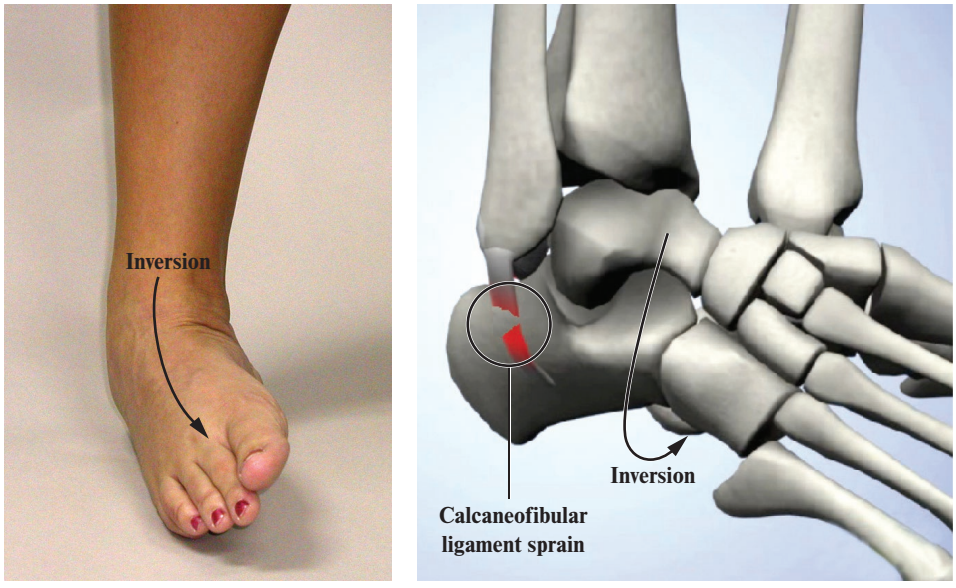
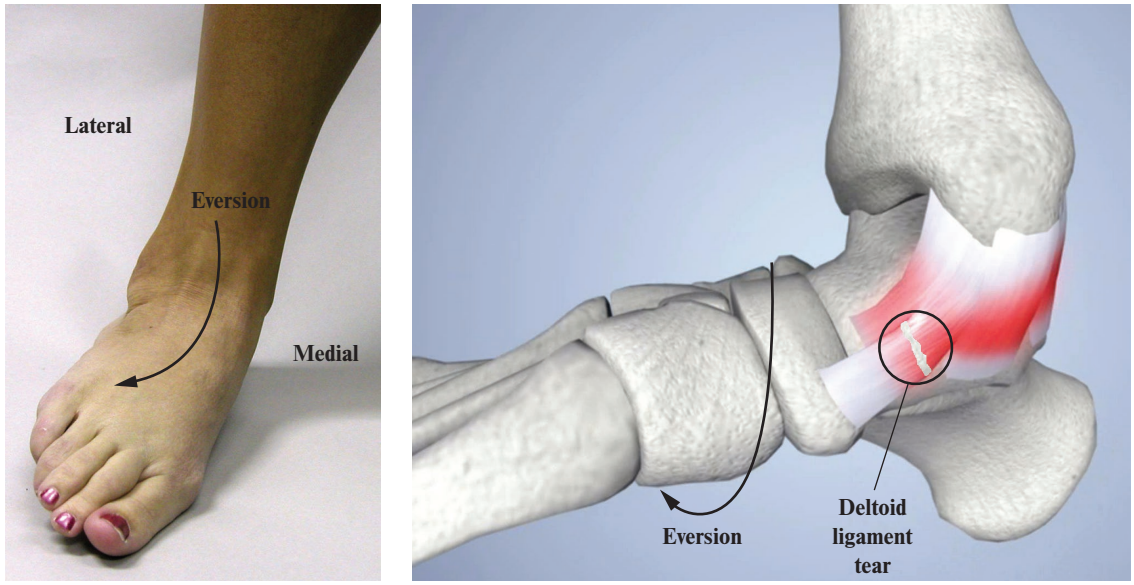


FIGURE 15–11 A mechanism of injury that involves **(A)** inversion can **(B)** cause a sprain of the calcaneofibular ligament. (A) ©William E. Prentice

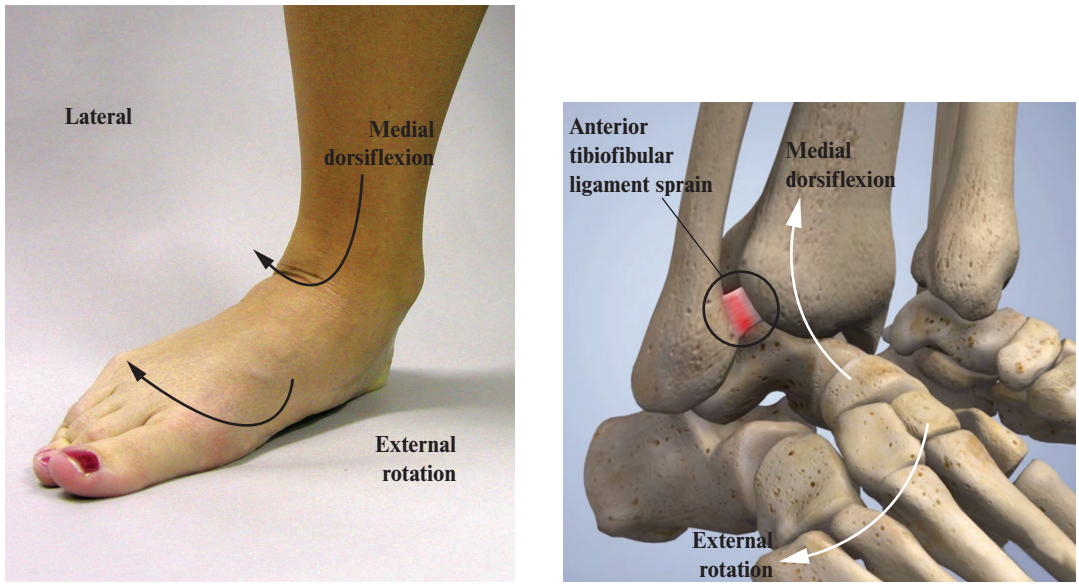
Eversion sprains Eversion ankle sprains are less common than inversion ankle sprains, largely because of the bony and ligamentous anatomy. Eversion injuries may involve an avulsion fracture of the tibia before the deltoid ligament tears. The deltoid ligament may also be contused in inversion sprains because of impingement between the medial malleolus and the calcaneus. Although eversion sprains are less common, these sprains may take longer to heal than do inversion sprains (Figure 15–12).[20]

High ankle sprains The anterior and posterior tibiofibular ligaments and the distal portion of the interosseous membrane holding the tibia and fibula together are torn with forced hyperdorsiflexion and external rotation of the foot as when twisting on a planted foot.[23] These structures are often injured in conjunction with a severe sprain of the medial and lateral ligament complexes. Sprains of these ligaments are extremely hard to treat and often take months to heal. Return to sports may be delayed for



A Anterior view B Anterior view

FIGURE 15–12 A mechanism of injury that involves **(A)** eversion can **(B)** cause a sprain of the deltoid ligament. (A) ©William E. Prentice



A Anteromedial view B Anterolateral view

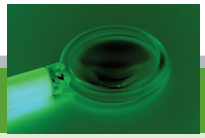
FIGURE 5–13 A mechanism of injury that involves **(A)** hyperdorsiflexion and external rotation of the foot can **(B)** cause a sprain of the anterior tibiofibular ligament. (A) ©William E. Prentice

a longer time than for inversion or eversion sprains (Figure 15–13).[28]

Signs of Injury In a grade 1 sprain, there is some stretching or perhaps tearing of the ligamentous fibers, with little or no joint instability. Mild pain, little swelling, and joint stiffness may be apparent.

With a grade 2 sprain, there is some tearing and separation of the ligamentous fibers and moderate instability of the joint. Moderate-to-severe pain, swelling, and joint stiffness should be expected.

Grade 3 sprains involve total rupture of the ligament, manifested primarily by gross instability of the joint. Severe pain may be present initially, followed by little or no pain because of total disruption of nerve fibers. Swelling may be profuse, and thus the joint tends to become very stiff some hours after the injury. A grade 3 sprain with marked instability usually requires some form of immobilization lasting several weeks.[21] Surgical repair or reconstruction may be necessary to correct a chronic instability.[8]



FOCUS BOX 15–1

Technique for controlling swelling immediately following injury

- As soon as possible following the injury, cut out a horseshoe-shaped pad made of felt or foam and fit it around the malleolus on the side of injury. The horseshoe will provide focal compression in the injured area (Figure 15–14A).[19]
- Apply a wet compression wrap over this pad. Wetting the elastic wrap helps facilitate the passage of cold from ice packs. Wrapping should begin distally and progress proximally, completely compressing the ankle joint and ending just below the level of the gastrocnemius muscle (Figure 15–14A).[18]
- Surround the ankle joint entirely with ice bags, and secure them in place with a second, dry, elastic wrap. Ice bags should be left on for 20 minutes initially and then 1 hour off and 20 minutes on as much as possible over the next 24 hours. During the following 72-hour period, ice should be applied as often as possible (Figure 15–14B).
- The foot and ankle should be elevated to a minimum of 45 degrees while icing. The ankle should be elevated as much as possible during the 72-hour period after injury. Keeping the injured part elevated while sleeping is particularly important (Figure 15–14C).
- The athlete should be placed on crutches to avoid weight bearing for a minimum of 24 hours following injury, to allow the healing process to accomplish what it needs to (see Chapter 8). After 24 hours, the athlete should be encouraged to begin weight bearing as soon as tolerated.

Care For ankle sprains, as for all acute musculoskeletal injuries, initial treatment efforts should be directed toward limiting the amount of swelling. This treatment is more essential for ankle sprains than for many other injuries. Controlling initial swelling is the single most important treatment measure that can be taken during the entire rehabilitation process.[18] Limiting the amount of acute swelling can significantly reduce the time required for rehabilitation. Initial management includes POLICE: protection, optimal loading, ice, compression, and elevation.

The most important factor in rehabilitation of an ankle sprain is controlling initial swelling with PRICE.

The technique described in *Focus Box 15–1* should be followed exactly to be maximally effective in limiting swelling following ankle sprain.

In the past, athletes were simply returned to sports once the pain was low enough to tolerate the activity. Returning to full activity should include a gradual progression of functional activities (i.e., walking, jogging, running, cutting, etc.) that slowly increase the stress on the ligament.[7] The specific demands of each individual sport dictate the individual drills of this progression.[8,15,21]

Ideally, the athlete should return to sport without the aid of ankle support. However, it is common practice to wear some type of ankle support initially.[24] Ankle bracing or taping has a stabilizing effect on unstable ankles without interfering with motor performance.[11] High-topped footwear may further stabilize the ankle. If cleated shoes are worn, cleats should preferably be placed on the lateral and medial borders of the shoe's sole to provide stability. A protective ankle brace can also be worn for support as a substitute for taping.[11,24]

Ankle Fractures

Cause of Injury When assessing an ankle injury, always be cautious about suspecting an ankle sprain when a fracture actually exists. Ankle fractures can occur from several mechanisms that are similar to those that cause

A B C

FIGURE 15–14 POLICE technique: **(A)** Apply a wet compression wrap over the horseshoe pad; **(B)** secure ice bags in place by a dry compression wrap; and **(C)** elevate the leg during the initial treatment period. ©William E. Prentice

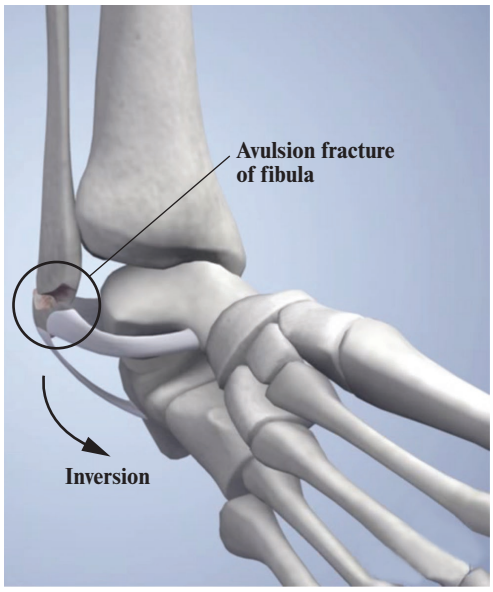


FIGURE 15–15 The mechanism that produces an inversion ankle sprain can also cause an avulsion fracture of the fibula.

ankle sprains.[6] In an inversion injury, medial malleolus fractures often occur along with a sprain of the lateral ligaments of the ankle. A fracture of the lateral malleolus is often more likely to occur than a sprain if an eversion force is applied to the ankle. With a fracture of the lateral malleolus, however, there may also be a sprain of the deltoid ligament. With avulsion injuries, it is often the injured ligaments rather than the fracture that prolong the rehabilitation period (Figure 15–15).

Signs of Injury A fracture of the malleoli generally results in immediate swelling. There is point tenderness over the bone and the athlete is apprehensive when asked to bear weight.

Care If the possibility of a fracture exists, splint the ankle and refer the athlete to the physician for X-ray examination and immobilization. Usually a physician treats fractures by casting the leg in a short walking cast for 6 weeks with early weight bearing. The course of rehabilitation following this period of immobilization is generally the same as for ankle sprains. Once near-normal levels of strength, flexibility, and neuromuscular control have been regained and the injured athlete can perform functional activities, full activity may be resumed.[6]

Tendinitis/Tendinosis

Cause of Injury Tendinitis (inflammation), which can potentially lead to tendinosis (degeneration) of the tendons surrounding the ankle joint, is a common problem in athletes.[2,3] The tendons most often involved are the posterior tibialis tendon behind the medial malleolus, the anterior tibialis on the dorsal surface of the ankle, and the fibularis tendons behind the lateral malleolus (Figure 15–16). Tendinitis in these tendons may result from one specific cause or from a collection of mechanisms including faulty foot mechanics, inappropriate or poor footwear that can create faulty

Common sites for tendinitis:

- Anterior tibialis
- Posterior tibialis
- Fibularis

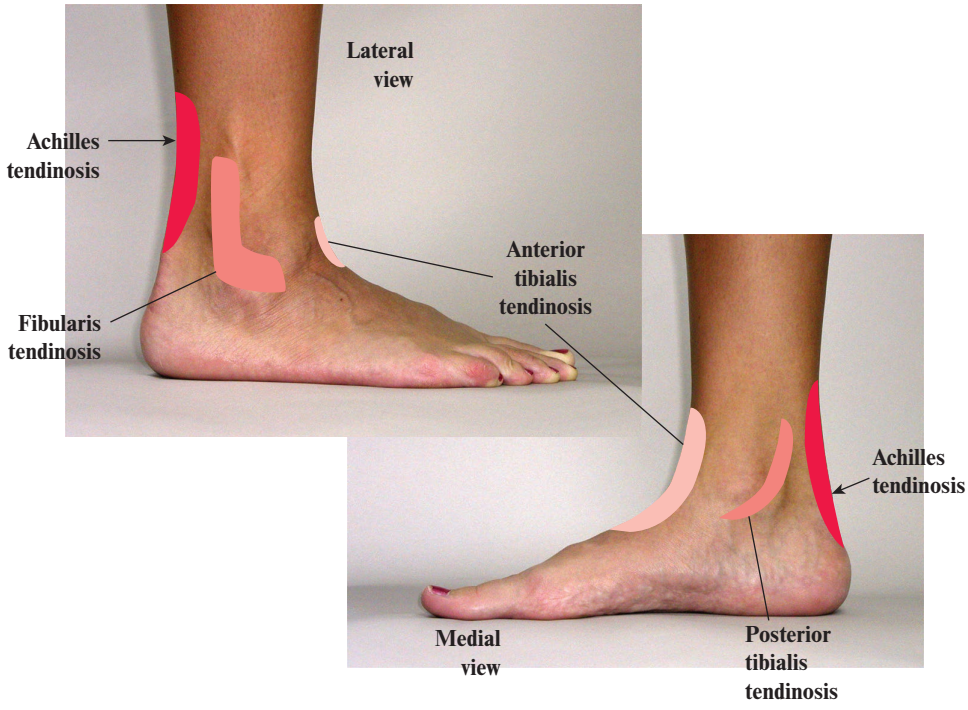


FIGURE 15–16 Common sites of tendinosis around the ankle. ©William E. Prentice

15–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A jogger, after running downhill for an extended period, experiences pain in the anterior medial aspect of the left foot. The condition is diagnosed as anterior tibialis tendinosis.

? How should this condition be managed?

foot mechanics, acute trauma to the tendon, tightness in the heel cord complex, or training errors.[13]

Signs of Injury Athletes who develop tendinitis are likely to complain of pain with both active movement and passive stretching; swelling around the area of the tendon possibly caused by inflammation of the tendon; crepitus on movement; and stiffness and pain following periods of inactivity but particularly in the morning.[18]

Care Techniques that help tendon healing, including rest, therapeutic modalities (ice), and possibly anti-inflammatory medications, should be used.[18] The use of an orthotic device to correct the biomechanics or taping the foot may also be helpful in reducing stress on the tendons.

In many instances, if the mechanism that is causing the irritation of the tendon is removed and the healing process is allowed to run its normal course, the tendinitis will often resolve within 10 days to 2 weeks. It is best to allow the athlete to rest for a sufficient time for tendon healing to take place.[18] Long-term inflammation of the tendon may eventually cause degeneration (tendinosis) of the tendon.

ASSESSING THE LOWER LEG

Generally fitness professionals, coaches, and others working in areas related to exercise and sports science are not adequately trained to evaluate injuries. It is strongly recommended that injured athletes be referred to qualified medical personnel (i.e., physicians, athletic trainers, physical therapists) for injury evaluation.

History

An athlete who complains of discomfort in the lower-leg region should be asked the following questions:

- How long has it been hurting?
- Where is the pain or discomfort?
- Has the feeling changed or is there numbness?
- Is there a feeling of warmth?
- Is there any sense of muscle weakness or difficulty in walking?
- How did the problem occur?

FIGURE 15–17 **The Thompson test is looking for a complete rupture of the Achilles tendon.** ©William E. Prentice

Observation

The athlete is generally observed for the following:

- Any postural deviations, such as toeing in, should be noted.
- Any walking difficulty should be noted, along with leg deformities or swelling.

Palpation

Palpation should be done over the musculature in each of the four compartments. When fracture is suspected, a percussive blow can be applied upward on the bottom of the heel. Such blows set up a vibratory force that resonates at the fracture, causing pain (see Figure 15–8A). The tibia and the fibula can be gently squeezed to determine a specific point of tenderness.

Special Tests

Thompson Test The Thompson test is used to determine if there is a rupture of the Achilles tendon. The Thompson test (Figure 15–17) is performed by squeezing the calf muscle while the leg is extended and the foot is hanging over the edge of the table. A positive Thompson sign is one in which squeezing the calf muscle does not cause the heel to move or pull upward or causes the heel to move less when compared with the uninjured leg.

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF INJURIES TO THE LOWER LEG

Tibial and Fibular Fractures

Cause of Injury The tibia and fibula constitute the bony components of the lower leg and are primarily responsible for weight bearing and muscle attachment. The tibia is the most commonly fractured long bone in the body; this injury is usually the result either

The tibia is more commonly fractured than the fibula.

FIGURE 15–18 **Fractures of the ankle and lower leg can be serious injuries.** Courtesy of Jordan B. Renner, MD, Departments of Radiology and Allied Health Sciences, University of North Carolina

of direct trauma to the area or of indirect trauma, such as a combination rotatory/compressive force. Fractures of the fibula are usually seen in combination with a tibial fracture or as a result of direct trauma to the area (Figure 15–18).[6]

Signs of Injury Tibial fractures present with immediate pain, swelling, and possible deformity and may be open or closed. Fibular fractures alone are usually closed and present with pain and point tenderness on palpation and with ambulation.

Care Immediate treatment should include applying a splint to immobilize the fracture along with ice, followed by immediate medical referral. Most likely a period of immobilization and restricted weight bearing is necessary for weeks to possibly months, depending on the severity and involvement of the injury.[17]

Tibial and Fibular Stress Fractures

Cause of Injury Stress fractures of the tibia and fibula are common in sports. Studies indicate that tibial stress fractures occur at a higher rate than those of the fibula. Stress fractures in the lower leg are usually the result of repetitive loading during training and conditioning (Figure 15–19). Potential causes of stress fractures may be attributed to shoes, or faulty foot and ankle biomechanics, both of which can be easily dealt with.[27] Tibial stress fractures are prevalent in athletes involved with jumping. (The progression of a stress fracture was discussed in Chapter 13.)

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of pain with activity that sometimes becomes worse when activity is stopped. Focal point tenderness on the bone helps differentiate a stress fracture from medial tibial stress syndrome, which is located in the same area but is more diffuse. Tibial stress fractures usually occur in the middle of the shaft, whereas fibular stress fractures are more likely to occur in the distal part of the bone.[27]

FIGURE 15–19 **X-ray film of a stress fracture in the tibia.** Courtesy of Jordan B. Renner, MD, Departments of Radiology and Allied Health Sciences, University of North Carolina

Care An athlete with a suspected stress fracture should be referred to a physician for diagnosis. The physician will most likely do a bone scan, looking for signs of inflammation. Immediate elimination of the offending activity is most important. Generally recuperation requires about a 2-week period during which the athlete can continue to be weight bearing but must not engage in the activity that caused the problem in the first place. The athlete must be educated on the importance of adhering to this advice to prevent further damage to the bone. Progressively increasing stresses and strains can be placed on the bone so the athlete can gradually return to normal training.[19]

Shin Splints (Medial Tibial Stress Syndrome)

Cause of Injury The term **shin splints** is a catch-all that has traditionally referred to any type of pain in the anterior aspect of the lower leg.[1] *Medial tibial stress syndrome,* as it is more correctly called, is a condition that involves increasing pain specifically at the distal two-thirds of the posterior medial aspect of the tibia (Figure 15–20).[26,31] A strain of the posterior tibialis muscle and its fascial sheath at its attachment to the periosteum of the distal tibia during running activities is the most likely mechanism for this injury.[12] Pain in the anterior shin could also be caused by other injuries or conditions, including stress fractures, compartment syndromes, or tendinitis.[1] Pain

shin splints Medial tibial stress syndrome; anterior lower-leg pain.

FIGURE 15–20 In medial tibial stress syndrome, the pain is usually located on the medial aspect of the lower leg just posterior to the tibia (shaded area). Pain is most often associated with the posterior tibialis muscle. ©William E. Prentice

can arise secondary to a combination of faulty foot mechanics, tightness of the Achilles complex, muscle weakness, improper footwear, and training errors usually involving a change in running surfaces.[26]

Signs of Injury Pain is usually diffuse about the distal medial tibia and the surrounding soft tissues. Initially, the area may hurt only after an intense workout. As the condition worsens, daily ambulation may be painful, and morning pain and stiffness may be present. Medial tibial stress syndrome can progress to a stress fracture if not treated appropriately.[26]

Care Management of this condition should include physician referral to rule out the possibility of stress fracture via the use of bone scan and plain films. Activity modification along with measures to maintain cardiovascular fitness are set in place immediately. Correction of abnormal foot mechanics during walking and running must also be addressed with shoes and, if needed, custom foot orthotics.[31] Ice massage to the area may be helpful in the reduction of localized pain and inflammation. A stretching program for the Achilles complex should be initiated (refer to Figure 15–4). Occasionally, supportive taping to the longitudinal arch might be helpful (refer to Figure 10–13).[17]

Shin Contusions

Cause of Injury The shin (tibia), lying just under the skin, is exceedingly vulnerable and sensitive to blows or bumps. Because of the absence of muscular or adipose padding, force is not dissipated and the periosteum receives the impact delivered to the shin. Shin contusions occur frequently in soccer, and the incidence can be minimized by wearing appropriate shin guards (refer to Figure 6–26).[1]

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of intense pain, swelling, and increased warmth. A bulging hematoma with a jellylike consistency develops rapidly. In some instances, the hematoma may increase to the size of a golf ball (Figure 15–21).

Severe blows to an unprotected shin can lead to a chronic inflammation.

Care A compressive wrap along with ice and elevation should be applied immediately to minimize swelling.

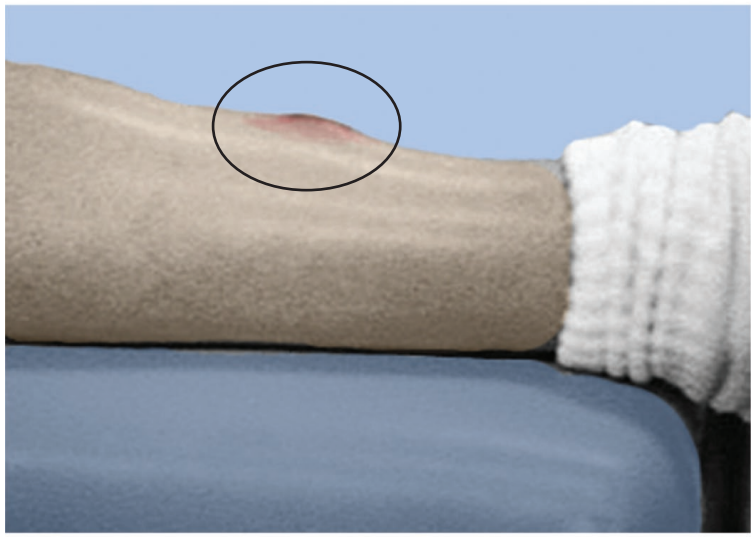


FIGURE 15–21 A serious shin contusion can cause a compartment syndrome. ©William E. Prentice

Occasionally, a physician may decide to aspirate the hematoma. A protective doughnut pad constructed to disperse pressure away from the contusion should be worn to protect the area from additional injury.

Compartment Syndromes

Cause of Injury Compartment syndromes are conditions in which increased pressure within one of the four compartments of the lower leg causes compression of muscular and neurovascular structures within that compartment (refer to Figure 15–3).[29] The anterior and deep posterior compartments are usually involved.[14]

Compartment syndrome classifications:

- Acute compartment syndrome
- Acute exertional compartment syndrome
- Chronic compartment syndrome

Compartment syndromes are divided into three categories: acute compartment syndrome, acute exertional compartment syndrome, and chronic compartment syndrome.[5] *Acute compartment syndrome* occurs secondary to direct trauma to the area, such as being kicked in the anterior aspect of the lower leg.[22] Acute compartment syndrome is considered to be a medical emergency because of the possibility of compression of arterial and nerve supply, which could result in additional injury to structures distal to the compartment. *Acute exertional compartment syndrome* occurs without any precipitating trauma and can evolve with minimal to moderate activity.[22] *Chronic compartment syndrome* is activity related in that the symptoms arise rather consistently at a certain point in the activity. Chronic compartment syndrome usually occurs during running and jumping activities, and symptoms cease when activity stops.[14,29]

15–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A soccer player who is not wearing shin guards is kicked on the outside shin of his right leg. After several minutes the pain begins to increase and he feels some tingling and numbness in his foot.

? What is the primary concern with this injury, and what steps should be taken to manage this situation?

Signs of Injury Because of increased intracompartmental pressure associated with compartment syndromes, the athlete complains of a deep aching pain, tightness and swelling of the involved compartment, and pain with passive stretching of the involved muscles.[14] Reduced circulation and sensory changes can be detected in the foot. Intracompartmental pressure measurements further define the severity of the condition. A compartment syndrome that is not recognized, diagnosed, and treated properly can lead to a poor functional outcome for the athlete.[22]

Care Immediate first aid for acute compartment syndrome should include the application of ice and elevation. However, in this situation a compression wrap should not be used to control swelling because there is already a problem with increased pressure in the compartment. Using a compression wrap only acts to increase the pressure.

In the case of both acute compartment syndrome and acute exertional compartment syndrome, measurement of intracompartmental pressures by a physician confirms the diagnosis, with emergency surgical procedure to release the pressure within that compartment being the definitive treatment.[22] Athletes undergoing anterior or deep posterior compartment surgical procedure may not return to full activity for 2 to 4 months postsurgery.[17]

Management of chronic compartment syndrome is initially conservative, with activity modification, icing, and stretching of the anterior compartment musculature and Achilles complex. If conservative measures fail, fasciotomy of the affected compartments has shown favorable results in an athlete's return to higher levels of activity.

Achilles Tendinitis/Tendinosis

Cause of Injury The Achilles tendon is the largest tendon in the human body. It serves as a common tendon for the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles and inserts on the calcaneus. This Achilles tendon complex produces plantarflexion of the ankle. Achilles tendinitis is an inflammatory condition that occurs because of repetitive stresses and strains placed on the tendon such as with running or jumping activities.[2] Repetitive weight-bearing activities such as running or early season conditioning in which the duration and intensity are increased too quickly with insufficient recovery time worsen the condition. Uphill running or hill workouts usually aggravate the condition. The athlete may experience reduced gastrocnemius and soleus muscle flexibility in general that may worsen as the condition progresses and adaptive shortening occurs. When there is ongoing chronic pain, inflammation may subside but the tendon may begin to degenerate with thickening and scar formation, which is more correctly referred to as Achilles tendinosis. Chronic Achilles tendinosis may eventually lead to rupture of the Achilles tendon.[3]

Signs of Injury The athlete often complains of generalized pain and stiffness about the Achilles tendon just proximal to the calcaneal insertion. Achilles

tendinitis often begins with a gradual onset over time. Symptoms may progress to morning stiffness and discomfort with walking after periods of prolonged sitting. The tendon may be warm and painful to palpation, and if the inflammation persists, the tendon may thicken (see Figure 13–9).[3]

Care Achilles tendinitis generally takes a long time to resolve. It is important to create a proper healing environment by limiting or restricting the activity that caused the initial inflammation. Aggressive stretching of the Achilles tendon complex (refer to Figure 15–4), inserting a heel lift under the calcaneus, using taping techniques to provide support to the Achilles tendon (refer to Figure 10–17), and using anti-inflammatory medication have all been recommended as treatments.[2]

Achilles tendinitis generally takes a long time to resolve.

Achilles Tendon Rupture

Cause of Injury Injury may range from a grade 1 strain of the muscle to complete rupture of the tendon. A tight Achilles tendon is prone to strain, particularly of the gastrocnemius muscle. Achilles tendon rupture is usually caused by a sudden, forceful plantarflexion of the ankle.[25] A rupture of the Achilles tendon is more common in athletes above the age of 30 years and occurs in activities requiring dynamic movement, such as tennis and basketball (Figure 15–22).[4]

15–4 Critical Thinking Exercise

A 35-year-old racquetball player feels a pop and severe immediate pain in the back of his left lower leg. He actually felt like someone kicked him, but when he turned around, no one was there. Then he realized he could not push off on his foot.

? What injury does he most likely have, and how should it be managed?

A ruptured Achilles tendon can occur following chronic inflammation.

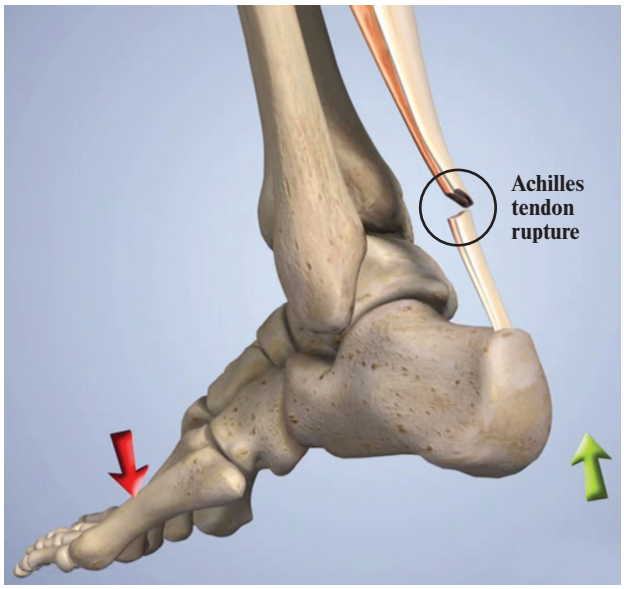


FIGURE 15–22 Achilles tendon rupture involves tearing and separation of fibers.

Signs of Injury Athletes may feel or hear a pop and often report that they have been kicked in the back of the leg. Plantarflexing the ankle will be painful and limited but still possible with the assistance of the tibialis posterior and the peroneals. A palpable defect will be noted along the length of the tendon. The athlete will require the use of crutches to continue ambulation without an obvious limp.[17]

Care After an Achilles tendon rupture, the question of surgical repair versus cast immobilization arises.[17] Surgical repair of the tendon is recommended to allow the athlete to return to previous levels of activity. Surgical repair of the Achilles tendon may require a period of immobilization for 6 to 8 weeks to allow for proper tendon healing. It is important that the athlete not only regain full range of motion without harming the repair, but also regain normal muscle function through controlled progressive strengthening exercises.[17]

SUMMARY

- The movements that take place at the talocrural joint are ankle plantarflexion and dorsiflexion. Inversion and eversion occur at the subtalar joint.
- Many lower-leg and ankle injuries, especially sprains, can be reduced by Achilles tendon stretching, strengthening of key muscles, improving neuromuscular control, choosing appropriate footwear, and, when necessary, proper taping or bracing.
- Ankle sprains are very common. Inversion sprains usually involve the lateral ligaments of the ankle, and eversion sprains frequently involve the medial ligaments of the ankle. Dorsiflexion injuries often involve the tibiofibular ligaments and may be more severe.
- The early phase of treatment following an ankle sprain uses protection, optimal loading, ice, compression, and elevation, all of which are critical components in preventing swelling.
- Tendinitis or tendinosis in the posterior tibialis, anterior tibialis, and the fibularis tendons may

result from one specific cause or from a collection of mechanisms. Techniques that act to reduce or eliminate inflammation, including rest, ice, and anti-inflammatory medications, should be incorporated into rehabilitation.

- Although some injuries that occur in the region of the lower leg are acute, the majority of injuries seen in an athletic population result from overuse, most often from running.
- Tibial fractures can create long-term problems for the athlete if inappropriately managed, whereas fibular fractures generally require much shorter periods for immobilization. Treatment of these fractures is immediate medical referral and most likely a period of immobilization and restricted weight bearing.
- Stress fractures in the lower leg are usually the result of the bone's inability to adapt to the repetitive loading response during training and conditioning of the athlete and are more likely to occur in the tibia.
- Care for medial tibial stress syndrome must be comprehensive and must address several factors, including musculoskeletal training and conditioning as well as proper footwear and orthotics intervention.
- Compartment syndromes can occur from acute trauma or from repetitive trauma or overuse. They can occur in any of the four compartments but are most likely to occur in the anterior compartment or deep posterior compartment.
- Achilles tendinitis often presents with a gradual onset over time and may be resistant to a quick resolution.
- Perhaps the greatest question after an Achilles tendon rupture is whether surgical repair or cast immobilization is the best method of treatment. Regardless, the time required for rehabilitation is significant.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

15-1 The most important care that can be given immediately following ankle sprain is to control or minimize the swelling. This goal is accomplished by using a combination of ice, compression, elevation, and rest, beginning immediately and continuing for at least the next 72 hours.

15-2 The athlete is instructed to rest or reduce the stress of running. Application of ice packs followed by stretching is carried out before and after activity. A strengthening program is implemented along with treatment by oral anti-inflammatory medications as needed.

15-3 This athlete may be developing an acute compartment syndrome in the anterior compartment. If so, this condition should be handled as an emergency. The coach should immediately elevate the leg and apply ice, but no compression wrap, and the athlete should be given medical attention as soon as possible.

15-4 This scenario is a classic description of a ruptured Achilles tendon. In cases of a complete rupture, surgery is necessary to repair the tendon, followed by a reasonably long period of rehabilitation.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. Describe the anatomy of the ankle and lower leg.
2. How can ankle and lower-leg injuries be prevented?
3. What questions should be asked when assessing injuries to the lower leg or ankle?
4. Describe the common mechanisms of injury for acute ankle sprains. What structures are damaged?
5. How can fractures in the lower leg and ankle be ruled out?
6. What is the appropriate care for stress fractures of the tibia and fibula?
7. Which of the tendons surrounding the ankle joint can potentially develop tendinitis?
8. What are some indications of an Achilles tendon rupture? How is an Achilles tendon rupture cared for?
9. How does Achilles tendinitis develop? How should it be cared for?
10. Contrast acute compartment syndrome with chronic compartment syndrome.
11. What exactly are shin splints, and what measures can be taken to eliminate this problem?
12. What is the most important thing that can be done in caring for a shin contusion?

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Blackman, P. 2010. Shin pain in athletes—Assessment and management. *Australian Family Physician* 39(12):24–29.
2. Carcia, C. 2010. Clinical guidelines. Achilles pain, stiffness and muscle power deficits: Achilles tendinitis. *Journal of Orthopedic and Sports Physical Therapy* 40(9):1–26.
3. Carey, D. 2010. The management of Achilles tendinosis—A review of the literature. *Podiatry Now* 13(11):13–17.
4. Claessen, F. 2014. Predictors of Achilles tendon rupture. *Sports Medicine* 44(9):1241–1259.
5. Davis, D. 2013. Characteristics of patients with chronic exertional compartment syndrome. *Foot & Ankle International* 34(10):1349–1354.
6. Dodson, N. 2013. Factors affecting healing of ankle fractures. *Journal of Foot and Ankle Surgery* 52(1):2–5.
7. Doherty C., & Bleakley C. 2017.Treatment and prevention of acute and recurrent ankle sprain: An overview of systematic reviews with meta-analysis *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 51(2):113–125.
8. Donovan, L. 2012. A new paradigm for rehabilitation of patients with chronic ankle instability. *Physician and Sports Medicine* 40(4):41–51.
9. Enke, R. 2012. Diagnosis, treatment and prevention of common running injuries. *Journal of Clinical Outcomes Management* 19(2):86–94.
10. Evans, L. 2012. Prevention of ankle sprain: A systematic review. *International Musculoskeletal Medicine* 34(4):146–158.
11. Farwell, K. 2013. The effectiveness of prophylactic ankle braces in reducing the incidence of acute ankle injuries in adolescent athletes: A critically appraised topic. *Journal of Sport Rehabilitation* 22(2):137–142.
12. Franklyn, M., & Oakes, B. 2015. Aetiology and mechanisms of injury in medial tibial stress

syndrome: Current and future developments. *World Journal of Orthopedics*, 6(8):577–589.
13. Galloway, H. 2013. Overuse injuries of the lower extremity. *Radiologic Clinics of North America* 51(3):511–528.
14. George, C. 2012. Chronic exertional compartment syndrome. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 31(2):307–319.
15. Gottschalk, A. 2010. Current concepts in the prevention of ankle sprains. *Evidence-Based Practice* 13(1):1–2.
16. Hiller, C. 2011. Chronic ankle instability: Evolution of a model. *Journal of Athletic Training* 46(2):133–141.
17. Hirth, C. 2015. Rehabilitation of lower leg injuries. In W. Prentice (ed.), *Rehabilitation techniques in sports medicine and athletic training,* 6th ed. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.
18. Hunter, S., Prentice, W., & Zinder, S. 2015. Rehabilitation of foot and ankle injuries. In W. Prentice (ed.), *Rehabilitation techniques in sports medicine and athletic training, 6th ed. Thorofare,* NJ: Slack.
19. Kahanov, L., & Eberman, L. 2015. Diagnosis, treatment, and rehabilitation of stress fractures in the lower extremity in runners. *Open Access Journal of Sports Medicine* 6:87–95.
20. Kaminski, T., et al. 2013. NATA position statement: Conservative management and prevention of ankle sprains in athletes. *Journal of Athletic Training* 48(4):528–545.
21. Kemler, E. 2011. A systematic review of the treatment of acute ankle sprain. *Sports Medicine* 41(3):185–197.
22. Mauser, N., & Gissel, H. 2013. Acute lower-leg compartment syndrome. *Orthopedics* 36(8):619–624.
23. Miller, T., & Skalak, T. 2014. Evaluation and treatment recommendations for acute injuries to the ankle syndesmosis without associated fracture. *Sports Medicine* 44(2):179–188.
24. Parsley, A. 2013. Effect of 3 different ankle braces on functional performance and ankle range of motion. *Athletic Training and Sports Health Care* 5(2):69–75.
25. Pedowitz, D., & Kirwan, G. 2013. Achilles tendon ruptures. *Current Reviews in Musculoskeletal Medicine* 6(4):285–293.
26. Reshef, N. 2012. Medial tibial stress syndrome. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 31(2):273–290.
27. Shindle, M., & Endo, Y. 2012. Stress fractures about the tibia, foot, and ankle. *Journal of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons* 20(3):167–176.
28. Valkering, K. 2012. Isolated syndemosis ankle injury. *Orthopedics* 35(12):1705–1710.
29. West R., & Ferguson J. 2016. Chronic exertional compartment syndrome. In T. Miller (ed.), *Endurance sports medicine.* New York, NY: Springer.
30. Wikstrom, E. 2013. Understanding and treating lateral ankle sprains and their consequences. *Sports Medicine* 43(6):385–393.
31. Winters, K. 2014. Treatment of medial tibial stress syndrome: A critical review. *International Journal of Athletic Therapy and Training* 19(4):27–31.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Altchek, D. 2012. *Foot and ankle in sports medicine.* Baltimore, MD: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.

A comprehensive and practical resource for the treatment of foot and ankle sports injuries. Over 40 specialists in orthopedic surgery, podiatry, physiatry, physical therapy, and athletic training contributed to this book's contents.

Marder, R., & Lian, G. 2012. *Sports injuries of the ankle and foot.* New York, NY: Springer.

This book reaches beyond the orthopedic surgery market to provide a one-source reference for the treatment of both simple and complex sports-related injuries of the foot and ankle.

McKeon, P., Wikstrom, E. 2015. *Quick questions in ankle sprains: Expert advice in sports medicine.* Thorofare, NJ: Slack.

Presents 39 common clinical questions regarding the prevention, assessment, treatment, management, and rehabilitation of ankle sprains.

Porter, D., & Schon, L. 2008. *Baxter's The foot and ankle in sport.* St. Louis, MO: Mosby.

Discusses all aspects of dealing with foot and ankle injuries as they occur in an athletic population

Rome, K., & McNair, P. 2014. *Management of chronic conditions in the foot and lower leg.* Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone.

This resource uses an interdisciplinary approach to help manage chronic conditions in the lower limb and foot.

WEBSITES

AAOS Online Service: Foot and Ankle https://.orthoinfo.aaos.org/menus/foot.cfm
Provides answers to a wide range of questions on foot and ankle injuries, from the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons.

American Orthopaedic Foot and Ankle Society: www.aofas.org

American Podiatric Medical Association: www.apma.org
Provides a variety of information on foot and ankle injuries, from the APMA.

Gray's Anatomy of the Human Body: www.bartleby.com/107

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

16

©Wayne Clausen Jr.

The Knee and Related Structures

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Describe the anatomical relationships of the bones, ligaments, and muscles that surround the knee joint.
- Explain how to prevent knee injuries.
- Briefly describe how to assess an injury of the knee joint.
- Recognize injuries to the stabilizing structures of the knee.
- Differentiate between acute and overuse injuries that occur at the knee joint.
- Identify injuries that can occur to the patella.
- Describe injuries that can occur to the extensor mechanism.

The knee is considered one of the most complex joints in the human body. Because so many sports place extreme stress on the knee, it is also one of the most frequently injured joints. The knee is commonly considered a hinge joint because its two principal movements are flexion and extension. However, because rotation of the tibia is an essential component of knee movement, the knee is not a true hinge joint. The stability of the knee joint depends primarily on the ligaments, the joint capsule, and the muscles that surround the joint. The knee functions to provide stability in weight bearing and mobility in locomotion.

KNEE ANATOMY

Bones

The knee joint consists of four bones: the femur, the tibia, the fibula, and the patella (Figure 16–1). These four bones form several articulations between the femur and the tibia, the femur and the patella, the femur and the fibula, and the tibia and fibula. The articular surfaces of the knee joint are completely enveloped by the largest joint capsule in the body. Synovial membrane lines the inner surface of the joint capsule.

Muscles and ligaments provide the main source of stability in the knee.

The distal end of the femur expands into the lateral and medial femoral condyles, which are designed to articulate with the tibia and the patella. The patella, or kneecap, is located in the tendon of the quadriceps muscle group on the front of the knee and moves up and down in a groove between the two femoral condyles as the quadriceps muscle group contracts and relaxes. The proximal end of the tibia, or the tibial plateau, is very flat and must articulate with the round condyles of the femur.

The medial meniscus and lateral meniscus are fibrocartilage disks that are shaped like bowls, thicker on the outside border and thinner on the inside (Figure 16–2). They lie on top of the flat tibial plateau and function to make the rounded femoral condyles fit better on the flat tibial plateau, thus increasing the stability of the joint. They also help cushion any stresses placed on the knee joint by keeping the bony surface of the femur separated from the tibial plateau. The menisci generally have a limited blood supply;

Generally the meniscus has a poor blood supply, which can impair healing in a torn meniscus.

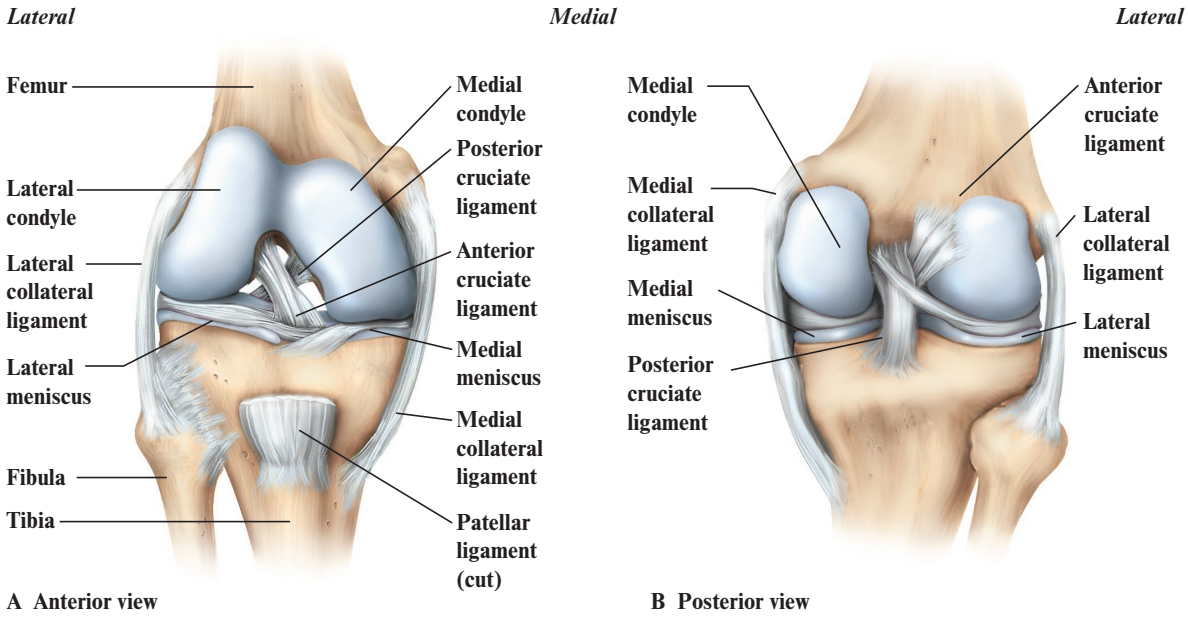


FIGURE 16–1 Bone, ligaments, and menisci in the knee. **(A)** Anterior view. **(B)** Posterior view. (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

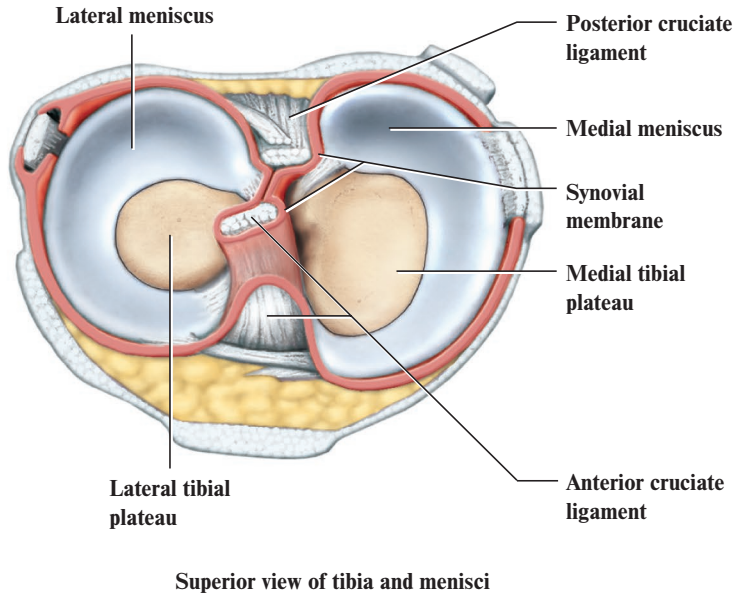


FIGURE 16–2 Medial and lateral menisci of the knee. (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

however, the blood supply is greater in the peripheral lateral portions than in the medial portions.

Ligaments

The major stabilizing ligaments of the knee include the cruciate ligaments and the collateral ligaments (refer to Figure 16–1).

The anterior and posterior cruciate ligaments account for a considerable amount of stability in the knee. In general, the anterior cruciate ligament (ACL) prevents the tibia from moving forward relative to the femur during non-weight bearing and the femur from sliding backward when the knee is extended, as during weight bearing. It also stabilizes the tibia against excessive internal rotation and serves as a secondary stabilizer when there is injury to the collateral ligaments. The posterior cruciate ligament (PCL) prevents the tibia from sliding backward relative to the femur when the knee is weight bearing, and the femur from sliding

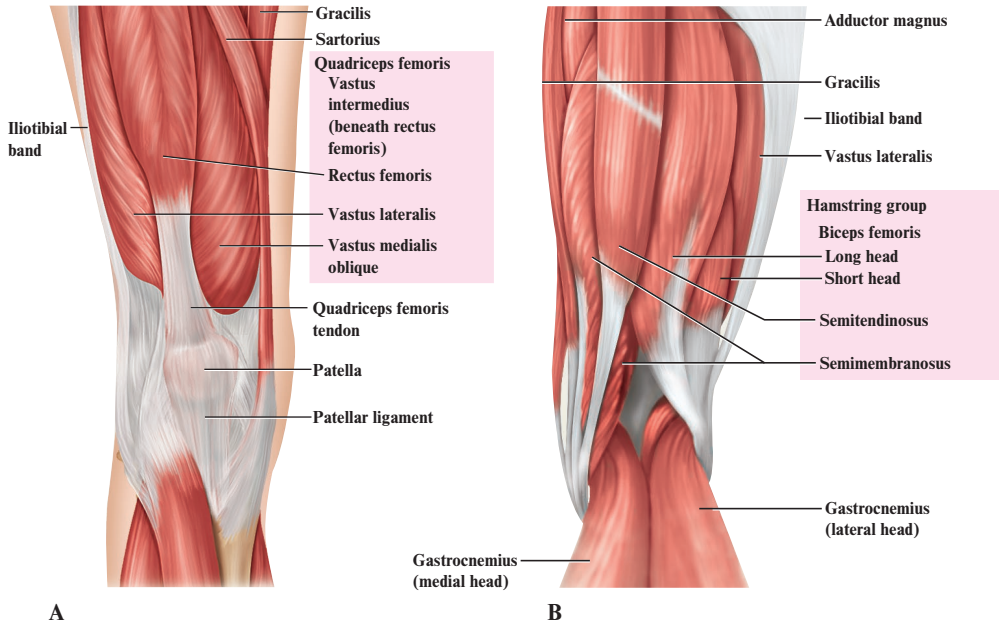


FIGURE 16–3 Muscles of the knee. **(A)** Anterior view, **(B)** Posterior view.

forward when the knee is extended, as in weight bearing.

The medial and lateral collateral ligaments function to stabilize the knee against the side-to-side (valgus/varus) forces at the knee joint. The medial collateral ligament (MCL) attaches above the joint line on the medial condyle of the femur and inserts well below the joint line on the tibia. Its major purpose is to protect the knee from valgus forces that are applied to the lateral surface of the joint and to resist external tibial rotation. There are two parts of the MCL: the superficial portion and the deep portion, which is actually a thickened part of the medial joint capsule. The medial meniscus is attached to the deep portion of the medial collateral ligament.

Major movements of the knee:

- Flexion
- Extension
- Rotation

The lateral collateral ligament (LCL) is attached to the lateral condyle of the femur and to the head of the fibula. The lateral collateral ligament resists varus forces that are applied to the medial surface of the knee. Both the medial and lateral collateral ligaments are tightest during knee extension but relaxed during flexion.

Muscles

For the knee to function properly, a number of muscles must work together in a highly complex fashion (Figure 16–3). In general, contraction of the quadriceps muscle group (the rectus femoris, and the vastus medialis, intermedialis, and lateralis) on the front of the thigh causes knee extension. Contraction of the hamstring muscle group (the biceps femoris, semitendinosus, and semimembranosus) on the back of the thigh, along with the gracilis, sartorius, popliteus, gastrocnemius, and plantaris, causes knee flexion. The hamstrings, popliteus, sartorius, and gracilis contribute to tibial rotation. Table 16–1 summarizes

TABLE 16–1 Muscles of the Knee Joint

Knee flexion	Hamstring group Biceps femoris Semitendinosus Semimembranosus Gracilis Sartorius Gastrocnemius Popliteus Plantaris
Knee extension	Quadriceps muscle group Vastus medialis Vastus lateralis Vastus intermedius Rectus femoris
External tibial rotation	Biceps femoris
Internal tibial rotation	Popliteus Semitendinosus Semimembranosus Sartorius Gracilis

all of the muscles that produce various movements at the knee joint. Visual examples of the movements of the knee appear in Appendix C.

PREVENTION OF KNEE INJURIES

Preventing knee injuries in sports is a complex problem. Of primary significance are effective physical conditioning, rehabilitation, and skill development, as well as shoe type.

Physical Conditioning and Rehabilitation

To avoid knee injuries, the athlete must be as highly conditioned as possible, meaning total body conditioning that includes strength, flexibility, cardiovascular and muscle endurance, agility, speed, and balance.[31] Specifically, the muscles surrounding the knee joint, as well as those around the hip joint, must be as strong as possible.[31] Depending on the requirements of a sport, some balance in strength should exist between the quadriceps and hamstring muscle groups. For example, in football players the hamstring muscles should have about 60 to 70 percent of the strength of the quadriceps muscles.[26] The gastrocnemius muscle should also be strengthened to help stabilize the knee. Although maximizing muscle strength may prevent some injuries, it fails to prevent rotational injuries.

Knees that have been injured must be properly rehabilitated.[31] Once the ligaments that stabilize the knee have been injured, the knee relies to a great extent on the strength of all the muscles that surround the joint to provide the inherent stability that was lost with the injury. Thus, strengthening exercises are essential in preventing reinjury. Repeated minor injuries to a knee make it susceptible to a major injury.

Shoe Type

Certainly the design of shoes can have an impact both on athletic performance and on the incidence of injury. The ideal shoe finds a balance between maximizing performance while minimizing the chance of injury. In sports that involve running and cutting, better traction of the shoe on the playing surface can significantly enhance performance. Football and soccer shoes/cleats are designed specifically for this purpose.[41]

There are two types of traction: translational traction, which allows for straight-line movement; and rotational traction, which allows for side-to-side movement or directional changes. Shoes with the best translational traction have cleats on the forefoot that grip the playing surface, providing good traction in a forward direction but also have the lowest incidence of injuries to the lower extremities. Shoes with high rotational traction have multiple long cleats and/or nodules on the outside of the sole that provide good traction when changing direction but tend to have a higher incidence of lower extremity injury. From an injury prevention perspective, shoes that grip the playing surface when sprinting forward but don't stick when cutting or changing direction seem to be the safest. The incidence of injury is similar on both synthetic turf and natural grass playing surfaces.[41]

Shoe and Cleat Design

Research suggests that greater rotational stiffness may increase injury risk. In the past, studies have indicated that a relationship existed between cleat design, the amount of rotational traction, and the risk of injury to the knee on natural grass surfaces. More recent studies have looked at using various types of cleated shoes not only on natural grass but also on synthetic infill surfaces relative to the degree of rotational traction. It appears that there are no differences between the 12-stud, edge, hybrid, and 7-stud cleat pattern designs and rotational stiffness. However, rotational stiffness was greater with synthetic infill surfaces than with natural grass.[33]

Functional and Prophylactic Knee Braces

Functional and prophylactic knee braces were discussed in Chapter 6. These braces have been designed to prevent or reduce the severity of knee injuries.[36] Prophylactic knee braces are worn on the lateral surface of the knee to protect the medial collateral ligament (Figure 16–4A).[31] Their usefulness, however, is questionable, and some studies have even shown that they increase the chance of injury.

Functional knee braces are worn to provide some degree of support to the unstable knee once an athlete returns to activity following injury.[28] All functional braces are custom fitted to some degree and use hinges and posts for support.[36] Some braces use custom-molded thigh and calf enclosures to hold the brace in place, whereas others rely on straps for suspension (Figure 16–4B). These braces are designed to control excessive rotational stress or tibial translation. The effectiveness of protective knee braces is at best controversial.[36] However, if combined with an appropriate rehabilitation program, these braces have been shown to restrict anterior/posterior translation of the tibia at low loads.[36]

A

B

FIGURE 16–4 Knee braces. **(A)** Prophylactic brace. **(B)** Functional brace. Courtesy of DJO Global

ASSESSING THE KNEE JOINT

Generally, fitness professionals, coaches, and others working in areas related to exercise and sports science are not adequately trained to evaluate injuries. It is strongly recommended that injured athletes be referred to qualified medical personnel (i.e., physicians, athletic trainers, physical therapists) for injury evaluation. Information on the following special tests has been included simply to give some idea about the different basic tests that nonmedical personnel may do to determine the nature and severity of the athlete's injury. The primary responsibility of those who are not health care personnel is to be able to recognize any potential "red flags" associated with the injury, provide appropriate first aid for the injury, and make correct decisions about how the injury should be managed initially, including immediate return to play or activity decisions. (Refer to Chapter 8.) Unquestionably, the most important aspect of understanding what pathological process has taken place is to become familiar with the traumatic sequence and mechanisms of injury, either through having seen the injury occur or through learning its history.

History

To determine the history and major complaints involved in a knee injury, the following questions should be asked.

Current Injury

- What were you doing when the knee was hurt?
- What position was your body in?
- Did the knee collapse?
- Did you hear a noise or feel any sensation at the time of injury, such as a pop or crunch? (A pop could indicate an anterior cruciate tear, a crunch could be a sign of a torn meniscus, and a tearing sensation might indicate a capsule tear.)
- Could you move the knee immediately after the injury? If not, was it locked in a bent or extended position? (Locking could mean a meniscal tear.) After being locked, how did it become unlocked?
- Did swelling occur? If yes, was it immediate, or did it occur later? (Immediate swelling could indicate a cruciate or tibial fracture, whereas later swelling could indicate a capsular, synovial, or meniscal tear.)
- Where was the pain? Was it local, all over, or did it move from one side of the knee to the other?
- Have you hurt the knee before?

When first assessing the injury, observe whether the athlete is able to support body weight flat-footed on the injured leg or whether the athlete finds it necessary to stand and walk on the toes. Toe walking is an indication that the athlete is holding the knee in a splinted position to avoid pain or that the knee is being held in a flexed position by a wedge of dislocated meniscus.

In first-time acute knee sprains, fluid and blood effusion is not usually apparent until after a 24-hour period. However, in an anterior cruciate ligament sprain, blood may accumulate in the joint (hemarthrosis) during the first hour after injury. Swelling and discoloration (ecchymosis) will occur unless the swelling is controlled through the use of compression, elevation, and ice.

Recurrent or Chronic Injury

- What is your major complaint?
- When did you first notice the condition?
- Is there recurrent swelling?
- Does the knee ever lock or catch? (If yes, it may be a torn meniscus or a loose body in the knee joint.)
- Is there severe pain? If yes, is it constant, or does it come and go?
- Do you feel any grinding or grating sensations? (If yes, it could indicate chondromalacia or traumatic arthritis.)
- Does your knee ever feel like it is going to give way or has it actually done so? (If yes and often, it may be a capsular, cruciate, or meniscal tear, a loose body, or a subluxating patella.)

- What does it feel like to go up and down stairs? (Pain may indicate a patellar irritation or meniscal tear.)
- What past treatment, if any, have you received for this condition?
- Have you had any recent changes to your training regimen?
- Have you changed your running shoes?

Observation

A visual examination should be performed after the major complaints have been determined. The athlete should be observed in a number of situations: walking, half-squatting, and going up and down stairs. The leg also should be observed for asymmetry. Establish whether both of the athlete's knees look the same:

If possible, the athlete with an injured knee should be observed in these actions:

- Walking
- Half-squatting
- Going up and down stairs

- Do the knees appear symmetrical?
- Is one knee obviously swollen?
- Is muscle atrophy apparent?

Walking

- Does the athlete walk with a limp, or is the walk free and easy? Is the athlete able to fully extend the knee during heel strike?
- Can the athlete fully bear weight on the affected leg?
- Is the athlete able to perform a half-squat to extension?
- Can the athlete go up and down stairs with ease? (If stairs are unavailable, stepping up on a box or stool will suffice.)

Palpation

For palpation to yield any valuable information about the nature of the injury, at least a basic knowledge of the anatomy of the bones, ligaments, and the muscles must exist. The athlete should either be lying on the back (supine) or sitting on the edge of the training table or a bench, with the knee flexed to 90 degrees.

The bony structures of the knee are palpated for areas of tenderness or pain or for deformities, which might indicate a fracture or dislocation.

After palpation of the bony structures, the lateral collateral ligament and medial collateral ligament should be palpated for areas of tenderness. Because the anterior and posterior cruciate ligaments are inside the joint capsule, they cannot be palpated. However, the joint line, which is the articulation between the femoral condyles and the flat tibial plateau, should be palpated all around the knee joint. Tenderness at the joint line may indicate injury to either the medial or lateral menisci or the joint capsule.

Special Tests

Both acute and chronic injury to the knee can produce ligamentous instability. It is critical that the injured knee's stability be evaluated as soon after injury as possible. Correctly conducting a series of stability tests and then determining the exact nature of the injury take a considerable amount of training.[5]

Perhaps the simplest test is to compare the injured knee with the uninjured knee to determine any differences in stability. Determination of the degree of instability is made by the endpoint feel during stability testing. As stress is applied to a joint, some motion is limited by an intact ligament. In a normal joint, the endpoint is abrupt with little or no give and no reported pain. With a grade 1 sprain, the endpoint is still firm with little or no instability, and some pain is present. With a grade 2 sprain, the endpoint is soft with some instability present and a moderate amount of pain. In a grade 3 complete rupture, the endpoint is very soft with marked instability, and pain is severe initially, then mild.

There are many different tests that should be performed by a trained individual to accurately assess ligament stability. However, the valgus/varus stress test, Lachman's test, and Apley's compression test may be easily done to determine the degree of instability in the knee caused by ligament or meniscal injury. These tests are not definitive, but rather are possible indicators of injury.[5] These special tests are presented primarily as examples of how a diagnosis of a knee ligament injury is made. **Once again, fitness professionals, coaches, and others working in areas related to exercise and sports science are not adequately trained to evaluate injuries. It is strongly recommended that injured athletes be referred to qualified medical personnel (i.e., physicians, athletic trainers, physical therapists) for injury evaluation.**

Valgus/Varus Stress Tests Valgus and varus stress tests are intended to reveal laxity of the medial and lateral collateral ligaments. The terms *valgus* and *varus* represent the direction of forces. A valgus force moves from lateral to medial. A varus force moves

Valgus = Medially directed force
Varus = Laterally directed force

from medial to lateral. The athlete lies supine with the leg extended. To test the medial collateral ligament, valgus stress is applied with the knee fully extended and at 30 degrees of flexion (Figure 16–5).

To test the lateral collateral ligament, the examiner holds the ankle firmly with one hand while placing the other over the medial joint line. The examiner then places a varus force laterally in an attempt to open the lateral side of the knee (Figure 16–6).

Lachman's Test The Lachman's test is the most commonly used test for checking the integrity of the anterior cruciate ligament (Figure 16–7). The test is administered by positioning the knee in approximately 30 degrees of flexion with the athlete lying on his or her back. One hand of the examiner stabilizes the leg by grasping the distal end of the thigh, and the other hand grasps the proximal aspect of the tibia, attempting to move it anteriorly. If there is unchecked anterior movement of the tibia, this is a positive Lachman's test that indicates damage to the anterior cruciate.

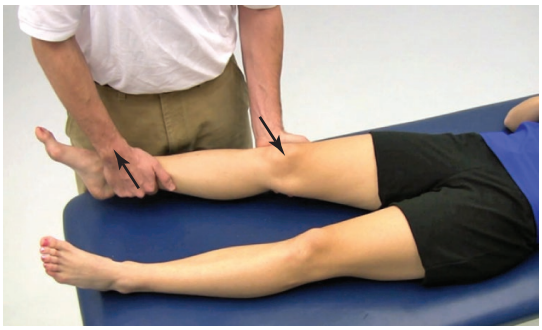


FIGURE 16–5 Valgus knee stress test for injury to the MCL. ©William E. Prentice

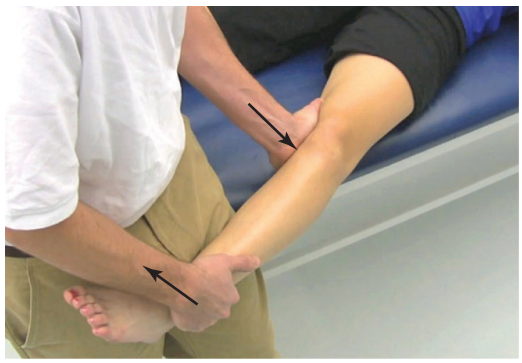


FIGURE 16–6 Varus knee stress test for injury to the LCL. ©William E. Prentice

FIGURE 16–7 Lachman's test for anterior cruciate ligament injury. ©William E. Prentice

Anterior/Posterior Drawer Test The anterior and posterior drawer tests are used to assess the integrity of anterior cruciate and posterior cruciate ligaments. The knee is positioned at 90 degrees of flexion with the athlete lying on his or her back (Figure 16–8). The examiner stabilizes the foot and grasps the lower leg just below the joint line. The tibia is pulled forward looking for excessive translation anteriorly, which would indicate a torn ACL. The tibia is pushed posteriorly looking for excessive posterior translation, which would indicate a torn PCL.

Apley's Compression Test The Apley's compression test (Figure 16–9) is used to detect a meniscus tear. It is performed with the athlete lying face down and the affected leg flexed to 90 degrees. While stabilizing the thigh, a hard downward pressure is applied to the leg. The leg is then rotated back and forth. If

FIGURE 16–8 Anterior/posterior drawer tests check for injury to the anterior and posterior cruciate ligaments. ©William E. Prentice

FIGURE 16–9 Apley's compression test for meniscus injury. ©William E. Prentice

pain results, a meniscus injury may have occurred. A medial meniscus tear is noted by external rotation, and a lateral meniscus tear is noted by internal rotation of the lower leg.

Functional Tests It is important that the athlete's knee also be tested for function. The athlete should begin with walking (forward, backward, straight line, curve) and progress to jogging (straight, curve, uphill, downhill), running (forward, backward), and then sprinting (straight, curve, large figure eight, small figure eight, zig-zag, carioca).[6]

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF INJURIES TO THE KNEE

Ligament Injuries

The ligaments of the knee can be torn in isolation or in combination. Depending on the application of forces, injury can occur from a direct straight-line or single-plane force, a rotary force, or a combination of the two.[31]

Medial Collateral Ligament Sprain

16–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A football running back is hit on the lateral surface of his knee by an opponent making a tackle. He has significant pain and some immediate swelling on the medial surface of his knee. It is suspected that the athlete has sustained a sprain of the MCL.

? What are the most appropriate tests to do to determine the exact nature and extent of the injury?

Cause of Injury Injury to the MCL most often occurs either as a result of a medially directed valgus force from the lateral side or from lateral rotation of the tibia (Figure 16–10).[26] MCL tears resulting from rotation, combined with valgus stress with the foot fixed, frequently result in ACL and occasionally PCL tears.[40]

More significant injuries usually occur with medial sprains than from lateral sprains because of the increased potential of injury to the joint capsule and the medial meniscus. Many mild to moderate sprains leave the knee unstable and thus vulnerable to additional internal derangements.

Signs of Injury The force and angle of the trauma usually determine the extent of injury. Even after witnessing the occurrence of a knee injury, it is difficult to predict the extent of tissue damage. The most revealing time for testing joint stability is immediately after injury, before effusion masks the extent of derangement.[5]

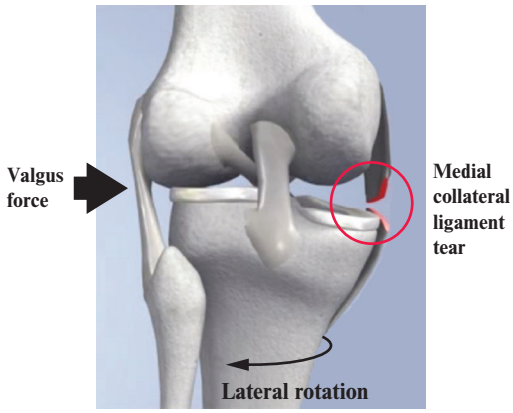


FIGURE 16–10 A valgus force with the tibia in lateral rotation injures the medial collateral and capsular ligaments, the medial meniscus, and sometimes the anterior cruciate ligaments.

In a grade 1 MCL sprain, a few ligament fibers are torn or stretched; the joint is stable during valgus stress tests; there is little or no joint effusion; there may be some joint stiffness and point tenderness just below the medial joint line; even with minor stiffness, there is almost full passive and active range of motion (Figure 16–11A).

A grade 2 MCL sprain involves moderate tearing or partial separation of ligament fibers; no gross instability, but minimum or slight laxity during full extension; slight or absent swelling unless the meniscus or ACL has been torn; moderate to severe joint tightness with an inability to actively extend the knee completely (the athlete is unable to place the heel flat on the ground); definite loss of passive range of motion; and pain in the medial aspect with general weakness and instability (Figure 16–11B).

A grade 3 MCL sprain means a complete tear of the ligament; complete loss of medial stability; minimum to moderate swelling; immediate severe pain followed by a dull ache; loss of motion because of effusion and hamstring guarding; a valgus stress test that reveals some joint opening in full extension and significant opening at 30 degrees of flexion (Figure 16–11C). A medial meniscus tear may also exist because the meniscus is attached to the medial joint capsule portion of the deep medial collateral ligament.

Care Immediate care consists of POLICE for at least 24 hours. Crutches may be used if the athlete is unable to walk without a limp. Depending on the severity and possible complications, a postoperative knee immobilizer may be applied by the physician (Figure 16–12) for 2 to 5 days, after which range-of-motion exercises are begun. Isometric exercise emphasizing quadriceps strengthening (quad sets, straight leg lifts)

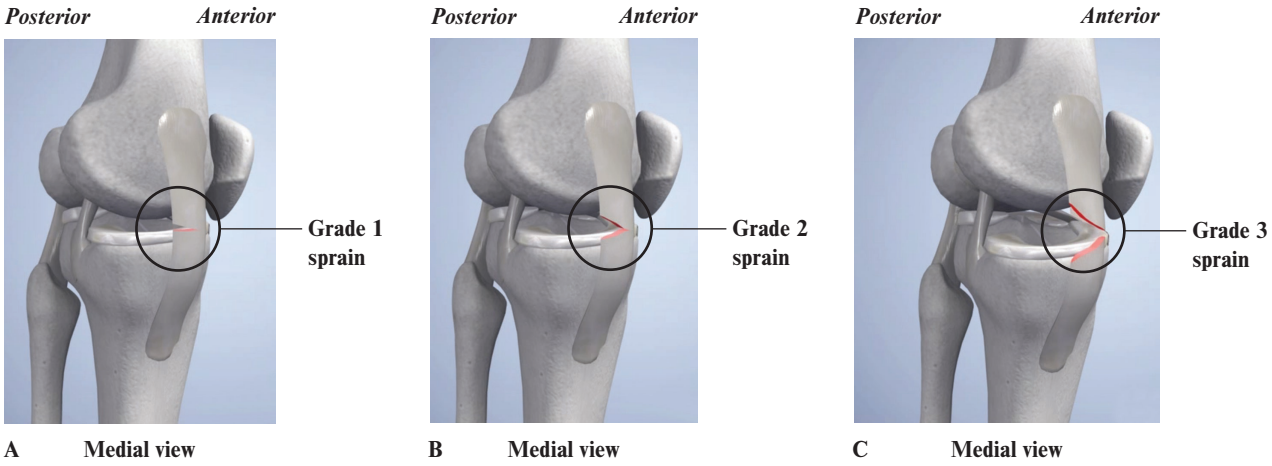


FIGURE 16–11 Medial collateral ligament sprain: **(A)** Grade 1. **(B)** Grade 2. **(C)** Grade 3.

should progress to active, resisted, full-range exercise as soon as possible. The athlete then graduates to stationary biking, stair climbing, and resisted flexion/extension exercises as soon as possible. Use of tape or perhaps a hinged brace when attempting to return to running activities is encouraged.

Conservative nonoperative treatment is recommended for isolated grade 2 and even grade 3 MCL sprains. Conservative treatment usually involves limited immobilization with range-of-motion and progressive weight bearing for 2 weeks, followed by protection with a functional hinged brace for another 2 to 3 weeks.

The athlete is allowed to return to full participation when the knee has regained normal strength, power, flexibility, endurance, and coordination. Usually 1 to 3 weeks is necessary for recovery. When returning to activity, the athlete may require tape or bracing support for a short period.

Lateral Collateral Ligament Sprain

Cause of Injury Injury to the LCL most often occurs either as a result of a laterally directed varus force from the medial side or from medial rotation of the tibia (Figure 16–13). If the force is great enough, bony fragments can be avulsed from the femur or tibia. Sprain of the LCL is much less prevalent than sprain of the MCL.[16]

Signs of Injury An LCL sprain causes pain and tenderness over the ligament; swelling and effusion; some joint laxity with a varus stress test at

FIGURE 16–12 An adjustable knee immobilizer may be used, depending on whether full extension or some other angle is desired. Courtesy of DJO Global

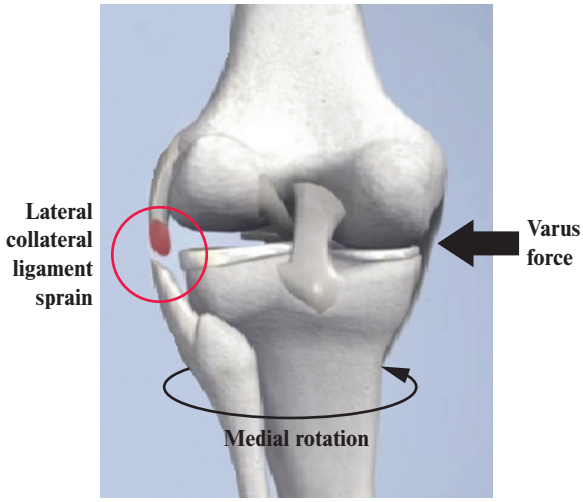


FIGURE 16–13 A varus force with the tibia medially rotated injures the lateral collateral ligament; in some cases both the cruciate ligaments and the attachments of the iliotibial band and biceps muscle of the thigh may be torn.

A lateral knee sprain can be caused by a varus force when the tibia is internally rotated.

30 degrees (if laxity exists in full extension, ACL and possibly PCL injury should be evaluated); and pain is greatest with grade 1 and grade 2 sprains. In grade 3 sprains, pain is intense initially, then subsides to a dull ache. Because of the proximity of the peroneal nerve to the LCL, there is always the possibility of an associated injury that could potentially result in a foot drop.[16]

Care Management of the LCL injury should follow the same procedures as for MCL injuries.

Anterior Cruciate Ligament Sprain

16–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A lacrosse player carrying the ball attempts to avoid a defender by planting his right foot firmly on the ground and cutting hard to his left. His knee immediately gives way, and he hears a loud pop. He has intense pain immediately, but after a few minutes he feels as if he can get up and walk.

? What ligament has most likely been injured? What stability tests should be done to determine the extent of the injury to this ligament?

Cause of Injury Unfortunately, ACL injuries are fairly common in sports. In recent years, it has become clear that ACL tears are more likely to occur in females than in males.[28] A great deal of research has focused on trying to explain why this is the case. Contributing factors that have been investigated include hormonal influences, a variety of anatomical factors, and level of conditioning—to name only a few.[39] To date, none of these explanations has proven to be definitive.[31]

It appears that certain biomechanical differences between males and females offer the most plausible explanation. ACL injuries are most likely to occur with deceleration, rotation, and valgus stress to the knee.[1] This mechanism is very common when the athlete lands from a jump with the knee extended as opposed to flexed.[4] The most common noncontact mechanism for tearing the ACL is when the athlete decelerates, with the foot planted on the ground, creating an axial load with the knee slightly flexed, medial tibial rotation, knee valgus, an anterior shear force of the tibia, and hip adduction relative to the pelvis (Figure 16–14).[11,31] Generally, females tend to land with their knees more extended, and this factor combined with the fact that females tend to have greater differences in hamstring/quadriceps strength ratios seems to offer the most likely explanation for this trend.[30] There is still a great deal of research being conducted in this area.[31]

In a contact injury, the athlete is decelerating and usually changing directions.[40] The foot is planted on the ground with the knee abducted. There is contact from another athlete, most often from a lateral and posterior direction, that forces the knee into a valgus and medially rotated position with anterior shear. Once again in this position the ACL is at risk of being injured.[1] A tear of the ACL and MCL, and possibly a detachment of the medial meniscus, has been referred to as the "unhappy triad."

Signs of Injury The athlete with a torn ACL experiences an audible pop followed by immediate

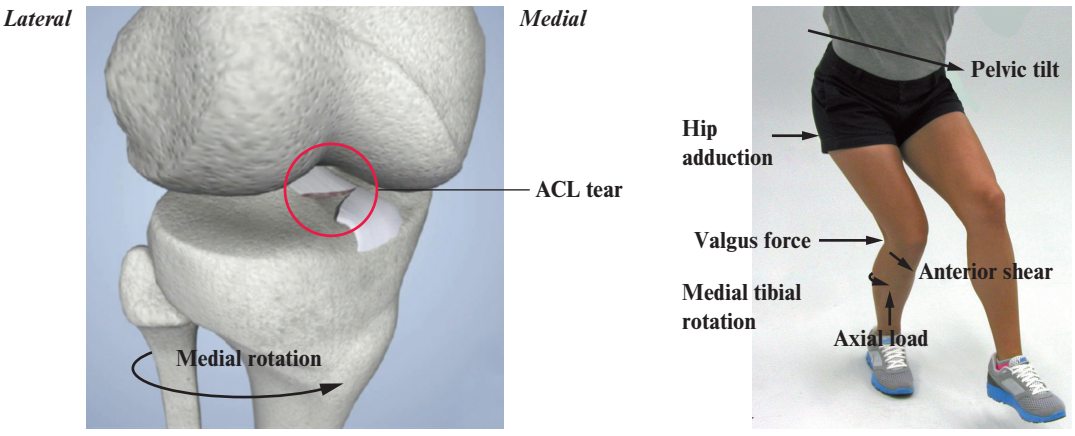


FIGURE 16–14 **(A)** ACL tear. **(B)** The primary mechanism of a noncontact tear of the ACL involves a combination of forces including axial loading, anterior shear, medial tibial rotation, knee valgus, and hip adduction. (B) ©William E. Prentice

disability and will complain that the knee feels like it is coming apart. ACL tears produce rapid swelling at the joint line. Usually the athlete experiences intense pain initially. However, within minutes the athlete begins to feel that the knee is not badly hurt and will profess an ability to get up and walk. The athlete with an ACL tear will exhibit a positive Lachman's test.

Care Even with application of proper first aid and immediate POLICE, swelling begins within 1 to 2 hours and peaks within 4 to 6 hours.[31] The athlete typically cannot walk without help.

Anterior cruciate ligamentous injury can lead to serious knee instability; an intact ACL is necessary for a knee to function in high-performance activities.[15] Controversy exists among physicians about how best to treat an acute ACL rupture and when surgery is warranted. Surgery may involve joint reconstruction to replace the lost anterior cruciate support. This type of surgery involves 3 to 5 weeks in some type of brace and 4 to 6 months of rehabilitation.[31] Little scientific evidence exists to support the use of functional knee braces following ACL injury, yet many physicians feel that the braces can provide some protection during activity.[36]

Posterior Cruciate Ligament Sprain

Cause of Injury The PCL is most likely to be injured when falling with full weight on the anterior aspect of the bent knee, with the knee hyperflexed and the ankle and foot in plantar flexion (Figure 16–15).[37] In addition, it can be injured by a rotational force, which also affects the medial or lateral side of the knee.[24] It is less likely that the PCL can be injured from either hyperextension or valgus/varus forces.

Signs of Injury The athlete will report feeling a pop in the back of the knee; tenderness and relatively little swelling will be evident in the popliteal fossa; laxity will be demonstrated in a posterior drawer test.[10]

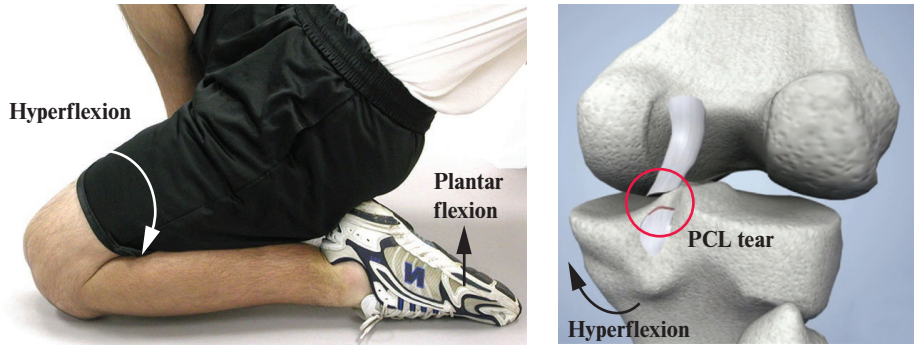
Care POLICE should be initiated immediately. Nonoperative rehabilitation of grade 1 and 2 injuries should focus on quadriceps strengthening. Controversy exists as to whether a grade 3 PCL tear should be treated nonoperatively or with surgical intervention.[32] Unlike the situation faced by athletes with ACL tears, many high-level athletes can do very well without the PCL. Rehabilitation following surgery generally involves 6 weeks of immobilization in extension with full weight bearing on crutches. Range-of-motion exercises begin at 6 weeks, progressing to the use of progressive resistance exercise at 4 months.[10]

Meniscus Injuries

Cause of Injury A tear of the meniscus most often results from weight bearing combined with a rotational force while extending or flexing the knee (Figure 16–16).[27] The medial meniscus has a much higher incidence of injury than does the lateral meniscus. Because of its attachment to the deep portion of the MCL, the medial meniscus is prone to disruption from valgus and rotational forces. The lateral meniscus does not attach to the capsule and is more mobile during knee movement.

A large number of medial meniscus lesions are the outcome of a sudden, strong, internal rotation of the femur, with a partially flexed knee, while the foot is firmly planted.[14] As a result of the force of this action, the meniscus is pulled out of its normal bed and pinched between the femoral condyles. Tears within the cartilage fail to heal because of inadequate blood supply. However, some peripheral meniscus tears do heal when an adequate supply of blood is available.

Signs of Injury An absolute diagnosis of meniscal injury is difficult. A meniscal tear may result in the following symptoms: effusion developing gradually over 48 to 72 hours; joint-line pain and loss of



A B

FIGURE 16–15 The primary mechanism of a PCL tear is falling on the knee and forcing it into hyperflexion with the ankle plantar flexed. (A) ©William E. Prentice

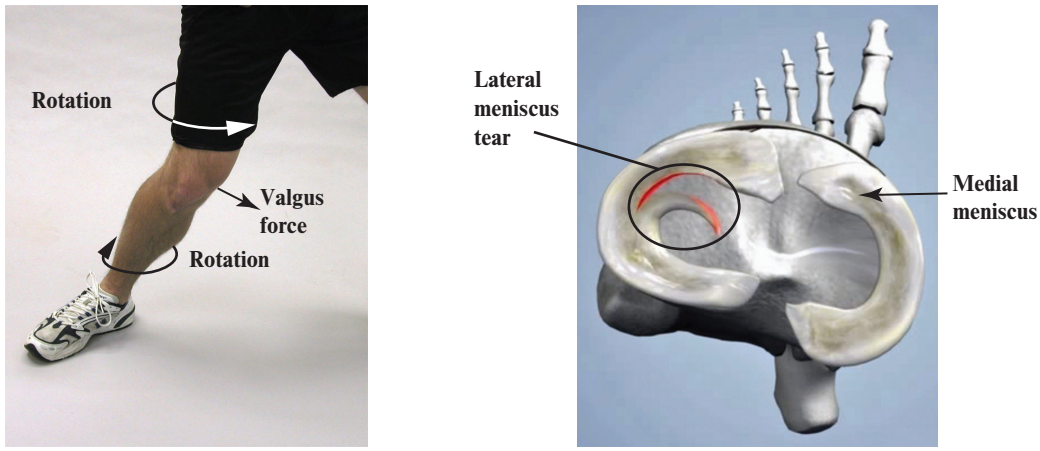


FIGURE 16–16 **(A)** The primary mechanism for a meniscus tear is rotation from a cutting maneuver creating a valgus force. **(B)** This often results in a tear of the meniscus. (A) ©William E. Prentice

motion; intermittent locking and giving way; and pain when squatting. Chronic meniscal lesions may also display recurrent swelling and obvious muscle atrophy around the knee. Often the athlete complains of an inability to perform a full squat or to change direction quickly when running without experiencing pain, a sense of the knee collapsing, or a popping sensation.

Care Immediate care involves POLICE. Even if the knee is not locked, but shows indications of a tear, the athlete should be sent to a physician for diagnosis. The knee that is locked by a displaced meniscus may require unlocking with the athlete under anesthesia so that a detailed examination can be conducted. Management of the nonlocking acute meniscus tear should follow a course similar to that for MCL injuries and does not necessarily require surgery.[27]

If discomfort, disability, and locking of the knee continue, arthroscopic surgery may be required to remove a portion of the meniscus. In certain cases, a torn meniscus can be repaired using sutures. Surgical management of meniscal tears should make every effort to minimize loss of any portion of the meniscus.[14]

Joint Contusions (Bruises)

Cause of Injury A blow struck against the muscles crossing the knee joint can result in a handicapping condition. One of the muscles frequently involved is the vastus medialis of the quadriceps group, which is primarily involved in locking the knee in a position of full extension.[21]

Signs of Injury Bruises of the vastus medialis produce all the appearances of a knee sprain, including severe pain, loss of movement, and signs of acute inflammation. Such bruising is often manifested by swelling and discoloration caused by the tearing of muscle tissue and blood vessels. If adequate first aid is given immediately, the knee usually returns to functional use 24 to 48 hours after the trauma.

Care Care of a bruised knee depends on many factors. However, management principally depends on the location and severity of the contusion. The following procedures are suggested: Apply compression bandages and cold until resolution has occurred. Recommend inactivity and rest for 24 hours. If swelling occurs, continue cold application for 72 hours. If swelling and pain are intense, refer the athlete to the physician. Once the acute stage has ended and the swelling has diminished to little or none, cold application with active range-of-motion exercises should be conducted within a pain-free range. Allow the athlete to return to normal activity, with protective padding, when pain and the initial irritation have subsided. If swelling is not resolved within a week, a chronic condition of either synovitis or bursitis may exist, indicating the need for rest and medical attention.[21]

Knee Plica

Cause of Injury A plica is a thickened fold of synovial membrane lining the inside of the joint capsule. There are three of them around the knee joint: the infrapatellar plica, the suprapatellar plica, and the medial patellar plica, which is the least common but most subject to injury. It is located medial to the patella just above the joint line (Figure 16–17). Although most plicae are asymptomatic, the medial patellar plica may be thick, nonyielding, and fibrotic, causing a number of symptoms.[22]

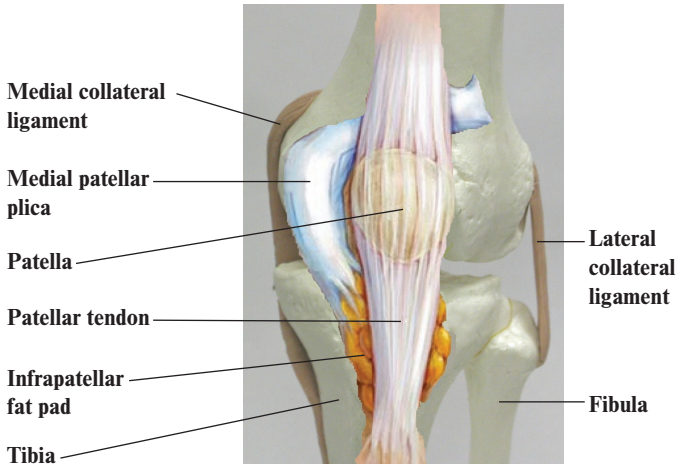


FIGURE 16–17 Knee plica. ©William E. Prentice

Signs of Injury The patient may or may not have a history of knee injury. If symptoms are preceded by trauma, it is usually from blunt force, such as a fall on the knee or from a twist with the foot planted. A major complaint is recurrent episodes of painful feeling that the knee is locked when the patient has been sitting for a period of time. As the knee flexes, a snap may be felt or heard. The patient complains of pain while ascending or descending stairs or when squatting.[22]

Care A knee plica that becomes inflamed as a result of trauma is usually treated conservatively with rest, anti-inflammatory agents, and local heat. If the condition recurs, causing a chondromalacia of the femoral condyle or patella, the plica will require surgical excision.

Bursitis

Cause of Injury Bursitis in the knee can be acute, chronic, or recurrent. Although any one of the numerous knee bursae can become inflamed, the prepatellar and the deep infrapatellar bursae on the front of the knee have the highest incidence of irritation in sports (Figure 16–18). The prepatellar bursa often becomes inflamed from continued kneeling or falling directly on the knee, whereas the deep infrapatellar bursa becomes irritated from overuse of the patellar tendon.[20]

Signs of Injury Prepatellar bursitis results in localized swelling above the knee that is similar to a balloon. Swelling occurs outside the joint, and there may be

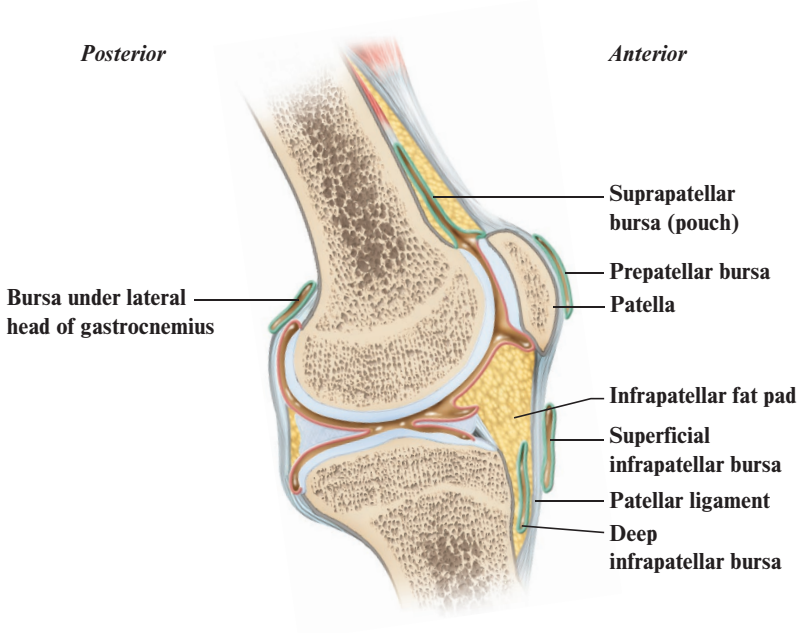


FIGURE 16–18 Common bursae of the knee in cross section. (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

The knee has many bursae; the prepatellar and deep infrapatellar bursae are most often irritated.

some redness and increased temperature. Some inflamed bursae may be painful and disabling because of the swelling and should be treated accordingly. Swelling in the back of the knee does not necessarily indicate bursitis, but could instead be a sign of Baker's cyst (Figure 16–19). A Baker's cyst develops swelling because of a problem in the joint and not because of bursitis. A Baker's cyst is commonly painless, causing no discomfort or disability.

Care Management usually follows a pattern of eliminating the cause, prescribing rest, and reducing inflammation. Perhaps the two most important techniques for controlling bursitis are the use of elastic compression wraps and anti-inflammatory medication. When the bursitis is chronic or recurrent and the synovial lining of the joint capsule has thickened, a physician may cautiously use aspiration and a corticosteroid injection.

Loose Bodies Within the Knee

Cause of Condition Because of repeated trauma to the knee during sports activities, loose bodies, sometimes called *joint mice,* can develop within the joint cavity. Loose bodies can result from osteochondritis dissecans (fragments of bone and cartilage), fragments from the menisci, pieces of torn synovial tissue, or a torn cruciate ligament.[19]

Signs of Condition The loose bodies may move in the joint space and become lodged, causing locking and popping. The athlete complains of pain, instability, and a feeling that the knee is giving way.

A knee that locks and unlocks during activity may indicate a torn meniscus.

Care When the loose body becomes wedged between articulating surfaces, irritation can occur. If not surgically removed, the loose body can create conditions that lead to joint degeneration.[19]

Iliotibial Band Friction Syndrome (Runner's Knee)

Cause of Injury **Iliotibial band friction syndrome** is an overuse condition commonly occurring in runners or cyclists that can be attributed to malalignment and structural asymmetries of the foot and lower leg. Irritation develops over the lateral femoral condyle or at the band's insertion on the lateral side of the knee, where friction is created as the knee repeatedly flexes and extends.[25]

iliotibial (eel-e-oh-tib-ee-ul) band friction syndrome Runner's knee.

Signs of Injury There may be tenderness, some mild swelling, increased warmth, and possibly some redness over the lateral femoral condyle. Pain increases during running or cycling activities.[25]

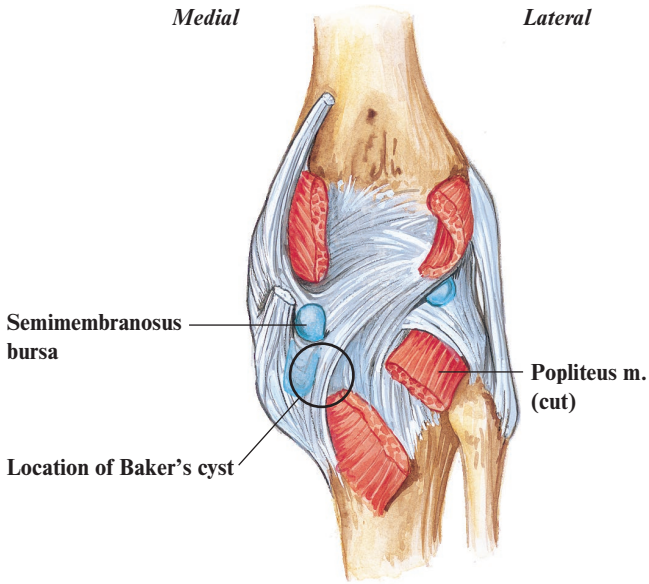


FIGURE 16–19 Location of a Baker's cyst causes very little or no pain in the popliteal fossa on the back of the knee.
(From Van De Graaff, K., *Human anatomy,* 6th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2002.)

16–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A track athlete complains of pain in the anterior aspect of the knee while walking, running, ascending and descending stairs, or squatting. There is a grating sensation when flexing and extending the knee.

? What condition should be suspected, and what should be the recommended treatment?

Care Treatment includes stretching the iliotibial band and performing techniques for reducing inflammation (Figure 16–20).[25] Management of runner's or cyclist's knee involves correction of foot and leg alignment problems. Therapy includes cold packs or ice massage before and after activity, proper warm-up and stretching, and avoiding activities that aggravate the problem, such as running on inclines.[25] Other procedures may include administering anti-inflammatory medications. A transverse friction massage done over the site of irritation may also help eliminate chronic inflammation.

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF INJURIES AND CONDITIONS CLASSIFIED AS PATELLOFEMORAL PAIN SYNDROME

The extensor mechanism of the knee consists of the quadriceps muscle group, the patellar tendon, the patella located within that tendon, and the tibial tubercle, which is the site of attachment for the patellar tendon.[2] Several injuries and/or conditions involving these structures on the anterior aspect of the knee may cause anterior knee pain that is commonly referred to as *patellofemoral pain syndrome*.[3]

Fracture of the Patella

Cause of Injury Fractures of the patella can be caused by either direct or indirect trauma. Most patellar fractures are the result of indirect trauma in which a severe pull of the patellar tendon occurs against the femur when the knee is semiflexed. This position subjects the patella to maximum stress from the quadriceps tendon and the patellar ligament. Forcible muscle contraction may then fracture the patella at its lower half. Direct injury most often produces fragmentation with little displacement. Falls, jumping, or running may result in a fracture of the patella.

FIGURE 16–20 **Position for stretching the iliotibial band.** ©William E. Prentice

Signs of Injury The fracture causes hemorrhage, resulting in generalized swelling. An indirect fracture causes tearing of the joint capsule, separation of bone fragments, and possible tearing of the quadriceps tendon. Direct fracture involves little bone separation.

Care Diagnosis usually requires X-ray confirmation. As soon as the examiner suspects a patellar fracture, a cold wrap should be applied, followed by an elastic compression wrap and splinting. The athlete should then be referred to a physician. The athlete is normally immobilized for 2 to 3 months.

Acute Patellar Subluxation or Dislocation

Cause of Injury When an athlete plants the foot, decelerates, and simultaneously cuts in an opposite direction from the weight-bearing foot, the thigh rotates internally while the lower leg rotates externally, causing a medially directed valgus force at the knee.[7] The quadriceps muscle attempts to pull in a straight line and as a result pulls the patella laterally—a force that may either subluxate or completely dislocate the patella. As a rule, displacement takes place laterally, with the patella resting on the lateral condyle. This injury is more likely to occur in a female athlete than in a male because of a wider pelvis in a female.[42]

Knees that give way or catch have a number of possible pathological conditions:

- Subluxating patella
- Meniscal tear
- Anterior cruciate ligamentous tear

Signs of Injury The athlete experiences a complete loss of knee function along with pain and swelling; the patella rests in an abnormal position.[23] A first-time patellar dislocation should always be suspected of being associated with a fracture.

Care The knee should be immobilized in the position it is in (do not try to straighten the knee). Ice should be applied around the joint. The athlete should be taken to the physician,

who will reduce the kneecap (put it back into place). After reduction, the knee is immobilized in extension for 4 weeks or longer, and the athlete is instructed to use crutches when walking. Muscle rehabilitation should involve strengthening all the muscles of the knee, thigh, and hip.[35]

The athlete may find it helpful to wear a neoprene brace that has a horseshoe-shaped felt pad designed to push the patella medially; the brace is worn while running or performing in sports (Figure 16–21).[35]

Chondromalacia Patella

Cause of Condition Chondromalacia patella is a softening and deterioration of the articular cartilage on the posterior surface of the patella. The exact cause of chondromalacia is unknown, but it is often related to either abnormal movement of the patella within the femoral groove or to overuse. Normally, the patella moves up and down in the femoral groove between the femoral condyles as the knee flexes and extends. In some athletes, the patella has a tendency to move or track in a lateral direction as the quadriceps group contracts (Figure 16–22).[9] This tracking most often occurs in athletes with weakness in the quadriceps muscle group or in female athletes who have a wider pelvis, and it is generally referred to as patellofemoral syndrome.[29]

Signs of Condition The athlete may experience pain in the anterior aspect of the knee while walking, running, ascending and descending stairs, or squatting. There may be recurrent swelling around the patella and a grating sensation when flexing and extending the knee. The athlete may experience pain on the back of the patella or when the patella is compressed within the femoral groove while the knee is passively flexed and extended.

FIGURE 16–21 A special pad for the dislocated patella. Courtesy DJO Global.

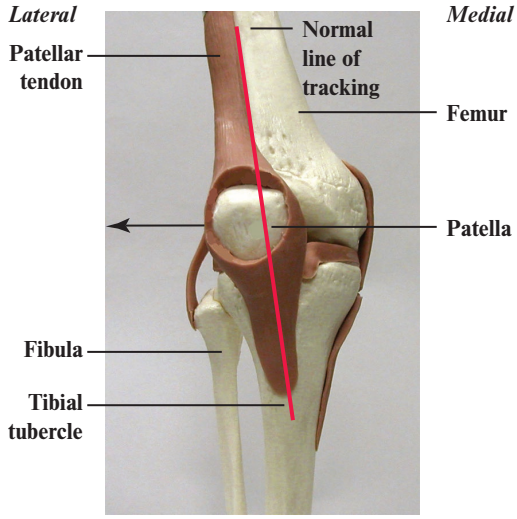


FIGURE 16–22 Lateral patellar tracking. There is a tendency for the patella to move laterally when the knee goes into full extension. ©William E. Prentice

Care Conservative treatment includes avoiding irritating activities such as stair climbing and squatting; doing pain-free isometric exercises that concentrate primarily on strengthening the quadriceps muscles, in particular the vastus medialis muscle; and wearing a neoprene knee sleeve (Figure 16–23).[2] If conservative measures fail to help, surgery may be the only alternative.[8]

16–4 Critical Thinking Exercise

A high jumper has been diagnosed as having patellar tendinosis, or "jumper's knee." In 3 weeks he has two important track meets and wants to know what he can do to get rid of the problem as soon as possible.

? What options are there in treating the athlete with patellar tendinosis?

Jumper's Knee (Patellar Tendinosis)

Cause of Injury Jumping, kicking, or running may place extreme tension on the knee extensor muscle complex. As a result of either a single acute injury or, more commonly, repetitive injuries, **patellar tendinosis** occurs in the patellar or quadriceps tendon.[17] On rare occasions, a patellar tendon may completely fail and rupture. Sudden or repetitive forceful extension of the knee may begin an inflammatory process that eventually leads to tendon degeneration.[34]

patellar (pa-teller) tendinosis Jumper's knee.

FIGURE 16–23 **Neoprene sleeve.** Courtesy of DJO Global

Signs of Injury The athlete indicates vague pain and tenderness, generally around the bottom of the patella on the posterior aspect, that worsens when engaging in jumping or running activities. Quite often, athletes say that if they could take their finger and reach under the kneecap at the bottom, the pain would be there.[34]

Care Any pain in the patellar tendon must preclude sudden explosive movement such as that characterized by heavy plyometric-type exercising.[38] Several approaches to treating athletes with inflammation associated with jumper's knee have been reported, including rest, the use of ice, and anti-inflammatory medications.[38] A patellar tendon tenodesis brace or strap may also be used (Figure 16–24). An alternative to a commercial patellar strap is to use rolled-up prewrap or elastic tape around the knee just below the patella over the patellar tendon. Transverse friction massage has also been demonstrated to be an effective technique for care of jumper's knee.[18]

Osgood-Schlatter Disease

Cause of Condition Osgood-Schlatter disease is a condition common to the rapidly growing immature adolescent's knee.[13] The most commonly accepted cause is the repeated pull of the patellar tendon at the tibial tubercle on the front of the tibia. The tibial tubercle is an important bony landmark because it is the site of attachment for the tendon of the entire quadriceps muscle group. Osgood-Schlatter disease is characterized by ongoing pain at the attachment of the patellar tendon at the tibial tubercle. (Another similar condition is Larson-Johansson disease, which occurs at the inferior pole of the patella.) Over time, a bony callus forms and the tubercle enlarges (Figure 16–25). This condition usually resolves when the athlete reaches the age of 18 or 19. The only remnant is an enlarged tibial tubercle.[31]

Signs of Condition Repeated irritation causes swelling, hemorrhage, and gradual degeneration at the tibial tubercle. The athlete complains of severe pain when kneeling, jumping, and running. There is point tenderness over the anterior proximal tibial tubercle.

Care Treatment is usually conservative and includes the following: Stressful activities are decreased for approximately 6 months to 1 year; severe cases may require padding to protect the tibial tubercle from additional trauma; ice is applied to the knee before and after activities; and isometric strengthening of quadriceps and hamstring muscles is performed.[13]

FIGURE 16–24 **The tenodesis strap or brace for patellar tendinosis.** Courtesy of Cramer

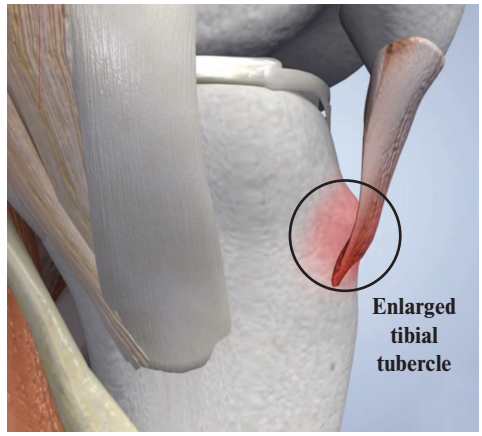


FIGURE 16–25 **Osgood-Schlatter disease results in an enlarged tibial tubercle.**

SUMMARY

- The knee is one of the most complex joints in the human body. Stability of the knee depends primarily on the bony articulations, ligaments, joint capsule, and muscles that surround the joint.
- Prevention of knee injuries involves maximizing muscle strength and wearing appropriate shoes. Use of protective knee bracing is questionable.
- Assessing an injury to the knee joint requires taking a history, observing both the appearance of the injured part and how the athlete moves, palpating the injured structures around the joint, and using special tests, including valgus/varus stress tests, Lachman's test, and Apley's compression test to determine the existing stability of the joint.
- The stabilizing structures most often injured are the medial and lateral collateral ligaments, the anterior and posterior cruciate ligaments, and the menisci.
- Other knee joint injuries that can occur either from acute trauma or from overuse are contusions, bursitis, joint mice, and iliotibial band friction syndrome.
- The patella and its surrounding area can develop a variety of injuries from sports activities, including fractures, subluxation and dislocation, and chondromalacia patella.
- The extensor mechanism of the knee consists of the quadriceps muscle group, the patellar tendon, the patella located within that tendon, and the tibial tubercle. Jumper's knee and Osgood-Schlatter disease are conditions associated with the extensor mechanism.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

16-1 A valgus stress test should be used to test the MCL. The examination in full extension tests the MCL and the cruciates. At 30 degrees of flexion, the MCL is isolated. If there is some instability present with the knee in full extension, closely evaluate the integrity of the cruciate ligaments.

16-2 This mechanism is typical for a sprain of the anterior cruciate ligament, although other ligamentous, capsular, and meniscal structures may be injured as well. An appropriate stability test for determining an injury to the ACL is the Lachman's test.

16-3 It is likely that this athlete has chondromalacia patella. The athlete should avoid irritating activities such as stair climbing and squatting; do isometric exercises that are pain-free to strengthen the quadriceps and hamstring muscles; and wear a neoprene knee sleeve. If conservative measures fail to help, surgery may be the only alternative.

16-4 A conservative approach is to use normal techniques—reducing inflammation, rest, ice, ultrasound, anti-inflammatory medications, and so on. An alternative and more aggressive approach is to use a deep friction massage technique to increase the inflammatory response, which will ultimately facilitate healing. If successful, the more aggressive treatment may allow a quicker return to full activity.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. What are the various structures that give the knee stability? What movements do these various structures prevent?
2. What motions can occur at the knee? Which muscles produce these movements?
3. Explain how a knee injury can best be prevented. What injuries are most difficult to prevent?
4. Demonstrate the steps that should be taken when assessing the knee.
5. Describe the mechanisms of injury for the collateral ligaments, the cruciate ligaments, and the menisci.
6. Contrast the signs and characteristics of grades 1, 2, and 3 medial collateral ligament sprains.
7. How might a contusion of the knee joint be related to bursitis of the knee?
8. How does a patellar subluxation or dislocation usually occur?
9. What factors can contribute to the development of chondromalacia?
10. What types of conditions can develop in the extensor mechanism? How are they cared for?
11. Invite an orthopedic physician to discuss the latest treatment and rehabilitation techniques for treating an injured knee.

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Boden, B. 2010. Non-contact ACL ligament injury: Mechanism and risk factors. *Journal of the American Academy of Orthopedic Surgeons* 18(9):520–527.
2. Bolgla, L., & Boling, M. 2011. An update for the conservative management of patellofemoral pain syndrome: A systematic review of the literature from 2000 to 2010. *International Journal of Sports Physical Therapy* 6(2):112–125.
3. Collado, H. 2010. Patellofemoral pain syndrome. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 29(3):379–398.
4. Cruz, A. 2013. The effects of three jump landing tasks on kinematic measures: Implications for ACL injury research. *Research in Sports Medicine* 21(4):330–342.
5. Curtis, N. 2006. Evidence-based knee evaluation and rehabilitation. *Athletic Therapy Today* 11(2):36.
6. DeCarlo, M. 2010. Rehabilitation of the knee following sports injury. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 29(1):81–106.
7. Duthon, V. 2015. Acute traumatic patellar dislocation. *Orthopedics and Traumatology: Surgery and Research* 101(1): S59–S67.
8. Dutton, R., & Khadavi, M. 2014. Update on rehabilitation of patellofemoral pain. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 13(3):172–178.
9. Draper, C. 2010. Differences in patellofemoral kinematics between weight-bearing and non-weight-bearing conditions in patients with patellofemoral pain, *Journal of Orthopedic Research* 29(3):312–317.
10. Edison, C. 2010. Postoperative rehabilitation of the posterior cruciate ligament. *Sports Medicine and Arthroscopy Review* 18(4):275–279.

11. Frank, B., Bell, D., Norcross, M., Blackburn, T., & Padua, D. 2013. Trunk and hip biomechanics influence anterior cruciate loading mechanisms in physically active patients. *American Journal of Sports Medicine*. doi: 10.1177/0363546513496625.
12. Geisler, P., & Lazenby, T. 2017. Iliotibial band impingement syndrome: An evidence-informed clinical paradigm. *International Journal of Athletic Therapy and Training* 22(3):1–11.
13. Georgieva, D., & Poposka, A. 2015. Osgood-Schlatter disease: A common problem in young athletes. *Research in Physical Education, Sport & Health* 4(2):47–49.
14. Giuliani, M. 2011. Treatment of meniscal injuries in young athletes. *Journal of Knee Surgery* 24(2):93–100.
15. Grant, J. 2013. Updating recommendations of rehabilitation after ACL reconstruction: A review. *Clinical Journal of Sports Medicine* 23(6):501–502.
16. Haddad, M., & Budich, J. 2016. Conservative management of an isolated grade III lateral collateral ligament injury in an adolescent multi-sport athlete. *International Journal of Sports Physical Therapy* 11(4):596.
17. Hagglund, M. 2011. Epidemiology of patellar tendinopathy in elite male soccer players. *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 39(9):1906–1911.
18. Joseph, M. 2012. Deep friction massage to treat tendinopathy: A systematic review of a classic treatment in the face of a new paradigm of understanding. *Journal of Sport Rehabilitation* 21(4):343–353.
19. Juneau, C., & Paine, R. 2016. Current concepts in treatment of osteochondritis dissecans. *International Journal of Sports Physical Therapy* 11(6):903–925.
20. Kahn, K. 2009. Another major win for physiotherapy—Curing patellofemoral pain. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 43(6):157–158.
21. Kary, J. 2010. Diagnosis and management of quadriceps strains and contusions. *Current Reviews in Musculoskeletal Medicine* 3(1):26–31.
22. Kent, M., & Khanduja, V. 2010. Synovial plicae around the knee. *The Knee* 17(2):97–102.
23. Koh, J., & Stewart, C. 2014. Patellar instability. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 33(3):461–476.
24. LaPrade, C., & Civitarese, C. 2015. Emerging updates on the posterior cruciate ligament: A review of the current literature. *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 43(12):3077–3092.
25. Louw, M. 2014. The biomechanical variables involved in the aetiology of iliotibial band syndrome in distance runners: A systematic review of the literature. *Physical Therapy in Sport* 15(1):64–75.
26. Marchant, M. 2010. Management of medial-sided knee injuries, Part 1: Medial collateral ligament. *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 39(5):1102–1113.
27. Mezhov, V., & Teichtahl, A. 2014. Meniscal pathology: The evidence for treatment. *Arthritis Research & Therapy* 16:206.
28. Michaelidis, M. 2014. Effects of knee injury primary prevention programs on anterior cruciate ligament injury rates in female athletes in different sports: A systematic review. *Physical Therapy in Sport* 15(3):200–210.
29. Myer, G. 2010. The incidence and potential pathomechanics of patellofemoral pain in female athletes. *Clinical Biomechanics* 25(7):700–707.
30. Myer, G. 2012. Real-time assessment and neuromuscular training feedback techniques to prevent ACL injury in female athletes. *Strength and Conditioning Journal* 33(3):21–35.
31. Padua, D., Boling, M., & Prentice, W. 2015. Rehabilitation of the knee. In W. Prentice (ed.), *Rehabilitation techniques in sports medicine and athletic training*. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.
32. Pierce, C., & O'Brien, L. 2013. Posterior cruciate ligament tears: Functional and postoperative rehabilitation. *Knee Surgery, Sports Traumatology, Arthroscopy* 21(5):1071–1084.
33. Queen, R. 2008. A comparison of cleat types during two football-specific tasks on FieldTurf. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 42(4): 278–284.
34. Rees, J. 2013. The location of pathology in patellar tendinopathy. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 47(9):2.
35. Rhee, S. 2012. Modern management of patellar instability. *International Orthopedics* 36(12):2447–2456.
36. Rishiraj, N. 2009. The potential role of prophylactic/functional knee bracing in preventing knee ligament injury. *Sports Medicine* 399(11):937–960.
37. Rosenthal, M. 2012. Evaluation and management of posterior cruciate ligament injuries. *Physical Therapy in Sport* 13(4):196–208.
38. Rutland, M. 2010. Evidence-supported rehabilitation of patellar tendinopathy. *North American Journal of Sports Physical Therapy* 5(3):166–178.
39. Schultz, S., et al. 2012. ACL research retreat VI: An update on ACL injury risk and prevention. *Journal of Athletic Training* 43(4):396–408.
40. Shimokochi, Y., & Shultz, S. 2008. Mechanisms of non-contact anterior cruciate ligament injury. *Journal of Athletic Training* 43(4):396.
41. Wannop, J. 2013. Footwear traction and lower extremity non-contact injury. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise* 45(11):2137–2143.
42. Waterman, B., & Belmont, P. 2012. Patellar dislocation in the United States: Role of sex, age race, and athletic participation. *Journal of Knee Surgery* 25(1):51–58.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

DeCarlo, M. 2004. *Knee rehabilitation*. Philadelphia, PA: Taylor & Francis.

A complete guide to the most commonly encountered problems in sports medicine.

Mascarenhas, R. 2012. *The knee: Current concepts in kinematics, injury types, and treatment options*. Hauppauge, NY: Nova Science Publishers.

This book provides an overview of current research examining knee injury mechanisms, prevention, and treatment options.

Rodriguez-Merchan, C. 2013. *Traumatic injuries of the knee*. New York, NY: Springer Milan.

This book reviews the most important traumatic injuries that occur around the knee joint, providing detailed information on mechanisms of injury, diagnosis, and treatment.

West, R. V., & Colvin, A. C. 2016. *The patellofemoral joint in the athlete*. New York, NY: Springer.

Provides a review of the physical examination, radiographic evaluation, differential diagnoses, and treatment options of common patellofemoral disorders.

WEBSITES

Medline Plus- Kee Injuries and Disorders
https://medlineplus.gov/kneeinjuriesanddisorders.html
OrthoInfo- Common Knee Injuries
https://orthoinfo.aaos.org/en/diseases--conditions/common-knee-injuries

WebMD Knee Injuries and Osteoarthritis
https://www.webmd.com/osteoarthritis/osteoarthritis-knee-injuries#1

©William E. Prentice

17

The Thigh, Hip, Groin, and Pelvis

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Describe the major anatomical features of the thigh, hip, groin, and pelvis as they relate to sports injuries.
- Identify the major sports injuries to the thigh, hip, groin, and pelvis.
- Demonstrate appropriate emergency procedures for injuries to the thigh, groin, and pelvis.

Although the thigh, hip, groin, and pelvis have lower incidences of injury than do the knee and lower limb, they receive considerable trauma from a variety of sports activities.[32] Of major concern are thigh strains and contusions and chronic and overuse stresses affecting the thigh and hip.

ANATOMY OF THE THIGH, HIP, GROIN, AND PELVIC REGION

Bones

Thigh The thigh is generally considered that part of the leg between the hip and the knee. The *femur* is the longest and strongest bone in the body (Figure 17–1). It is designed for maximum support and mobility during weight-bearing activity. The proximal head of the femur articulates with the acetabulum of the pelvis to form the hip joint and the distal femoral condyles articulate with the tibia at the knee joint.

Innominate bones:

- Ilium
- Ischium
- Pubis

Pelvis The pelvis is a bony ring formed by two innominate bones, the sacrum, and the coccyx (Figure 17–2). The two innominate bones are each made up of an ilium, ischium, and pubis (Figure 17–3). The functions of the pelvis are to support the spine and trunk and to transfer their weight to the lower limbs. In addition to providing skeletal support, the pelvis serves as a place of attachment for the trunk and thigh muscles and protection for the pelvic organs.

The hip and pelvis form the core for full body movement. The body's center of gravity is just in front of the upper part of the sacrum. Injuries to the hip or pelvis cause the athlete disability in the lower limb or trunk or both.[4]

Ligaments

The hip joint is formed by articulation of the femur with the innominate. The head of the femur fits into a deep socket, the acetabulum, and is stabilized by strong iliofemoral ligaments and a joint capsule (Figure 17–4). The sacrum is joined to other parts of the pelvis by strong sacrotuberous and sacrospinal ligaments, forming the sacroiliac joint. A small backward–forward movement is present at the sacroiliac junction. The sacroiliac joint is discussed in detail in Chapter 20.

Muscles

Thigh Muscles The muscles located on the anterior thigh are the four quadriceps that function to extend the knee (Figure 17–5A). One of the quadriceps, the rectus femoris muscle, also acts to flex the hip. The sartorius muscle is also on the anterior thigh and

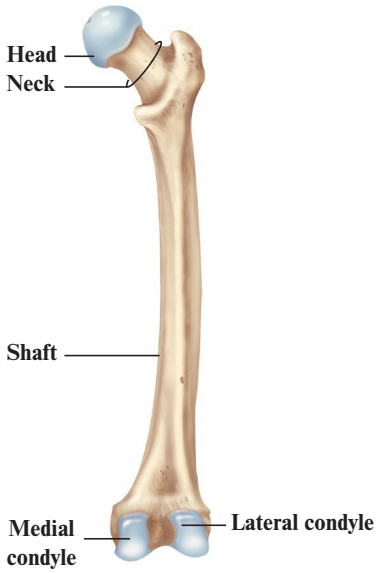


FIGURE 17–1 Femur (anterior view). (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

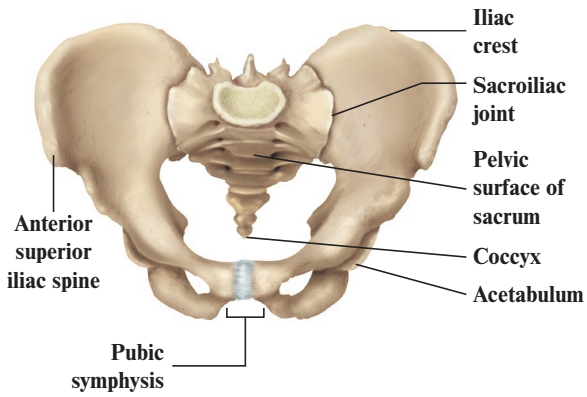


FIGURE 17–2 Pelvis (anterior view). (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

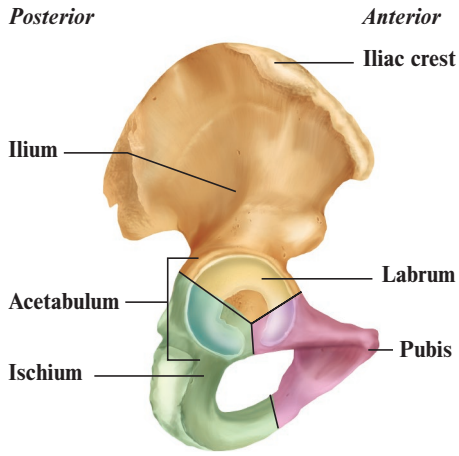


FIGURE 17–3 Innominate bone (lateral view). (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed., Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

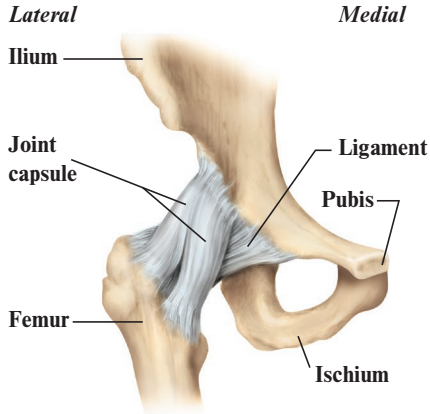


FIGURE 17–4 Hip joint ligaments and joint capsule (anterior view). (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

acts to flex the hip and outwardly rotate the thigh (Figure 17–5A). The three hamstring muscles on the back of the thigh are flexors of the knee and act to extend the hip (Figure 17–5B). Five medial muscles known as the adductor group collectively act as adductors of the hip. They include the gracilis, pectineus, and the adductor magnus, longus, and brevis (Figure 17–5A).

Hip Muscles The muscles of the hip can be divided into anterior and posterior groups (Figure 17–5A). The anterior group includes the iliacus and psoas muscles, which flex the thigh on the trunk. The posterior group includes the tensor fasciae latae and gluteus medius, which abduct the thigh; the gluteus maximus, which extends the thigh; the gluteus minimus, which internally rotates the thigh; and the six deep outward rotators—the piriformis, superior gemellus, inferior gemellus, obturator internus, obturator externus, and quadratus femoris (Table 17–1). Visual examples of the movements of the hip appear in Appendix C.

ASSESSING THIGH, HIP, GROIN, AND PELVIS INJURIES

Generally, fitness professionals, coaches, and others working in areas related to exercise and sports science are not adequately trained to evaluate injuries. It is strongly recommended that injured athletes be referred to qualified medical personnel (i.e., physicians, athletic trainers, physical therapists) for injury

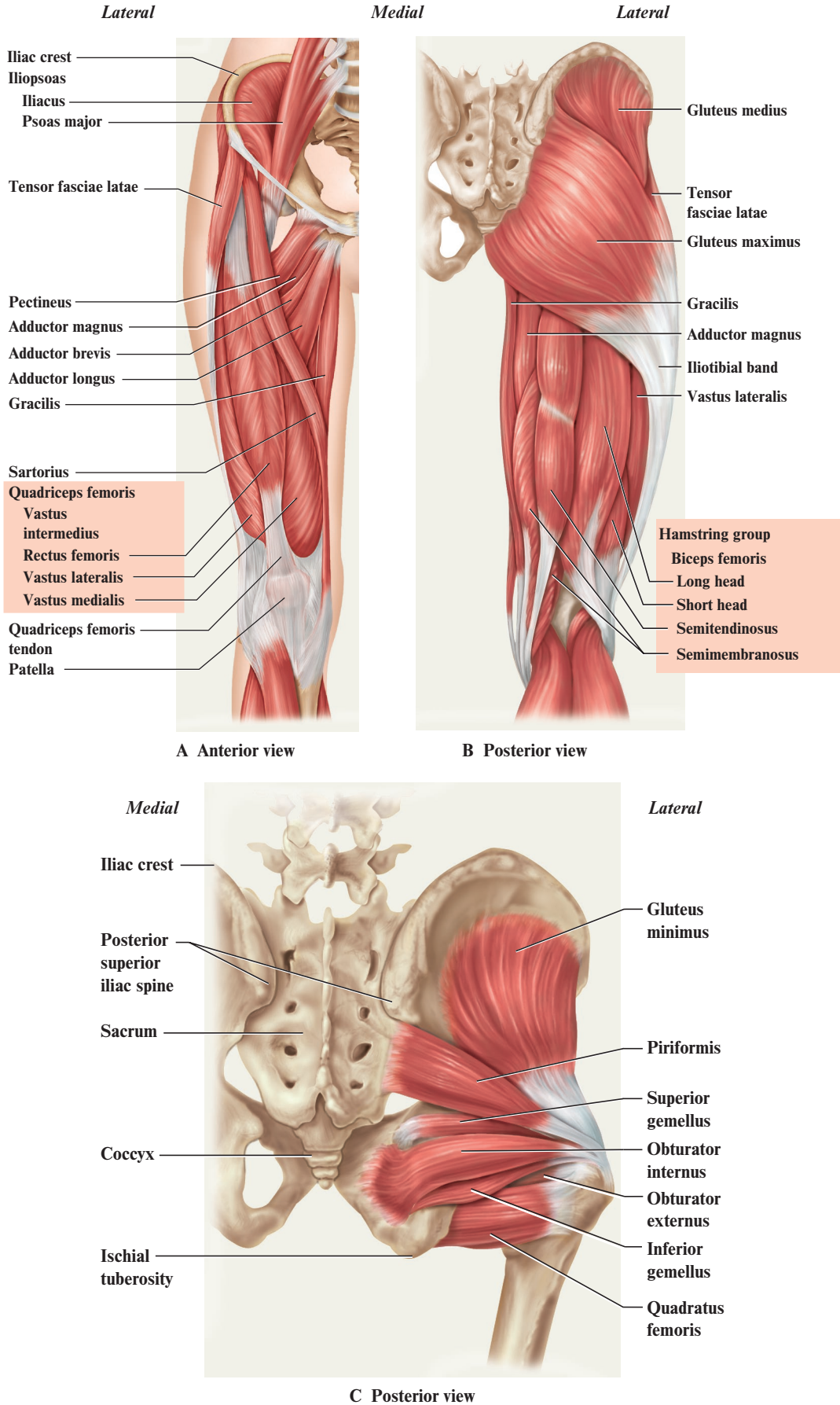


FIGURE 17–5 Muscles of the thigh, hip, and groin: **(A)** Anterior view. **(B)** Posterior view. **(C)** Deep muscles, posterior view. (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

TABLE 17–1	Muscles of the Thigh, Hip, and Groin
Hip flexion	Rectus femoris Sartorius Iliacus Psoas
Hip extension	Hamstrings Biceps femoris Semimembranosus Semitendinosis Gluteus maximus
Hip abduction	Gluteus medius Tensor fasciae latae
Hip adduction	Gracilis Pectineus Adductor magnus Adductor longus Adductor brevis
Hip medial rotation	Gluteus minimus
Hip lateral rotation	Piriformis Superior gemellus Inferior gemellus Obturator internus Obturator externus Quadratus femoris

evaluation. Information on the following special tests has been included simply to give some idea about the different basic tests that nonmedical personnel may do to determine the nature and severity of the athlete's injury. The primary responsibility of those who are not health care personnel is to be able to recognize any potential "red flags" associated with the injury, provide appropriate first aid for the injury, and make correct decisions about how the injury should be managed initially, including immediate return to play or activity decisions. (Refer to Chapter 8.)

History

- What mechanism do you think caused this injury to occur?
- When did you first notice this pain?
- Did the pain begin immediately, or did it occur gradually over a period of time?
- Have you ever had a problem in the area before?
- Has training intensity changed or increased recently?
- Where is the pain located?
- Describe the type of pain you have (e.g., sharp, dull, burning, aching).
- Does the pain radiate down the back or front of the legs or buttocks?
- When is the pain the worst (e.g., during activity, at rest, at night)?[24]

Observation

- The athlete should be observed for postural asymmetry while standing on one leg and during ambulation.
- From the front view, do the hips look even?
- From the side view, is the pelvis abnormally tilted anteriorly or posteriorly?
- The patella should also be noted for relative position and alignment.
- Does standing on one leg produce pain in the hip?
- The athlete should be observed during walking, bending, and sitting. Pain in the hip and pelvic region is normally reflected in movement distortions.[24]

Palpation

Bony palpation should include the iliac crest, hip joint, femur, sacrum, and coccyx, looking for point tenderness and discomfort. The soft tissues, including those on the anterior thigh, the posterior thigh, the groin, the buttocks, the lateral hip, and the anterior hip, should be palpated to identify areas of tenderness or pain on active movement.[24]

Special Tests

Thomas Test The Thomas test indicates whether hip contractures are present (Figure 17–6). The patient lies supine on a table, arms across the chest, legs together and fully extended. The examiner places one hand under the athlete's lumbar curve; one thigh is brought to the chest, flattening the spine. In this position, the extended thigh should be flat on the table. If not, there is tightness of the hip flexors. When the patient fully extends the leg again, the curve in the low back returns.[29]

Straight Leg Raises A straight leg raise can be used to test tightness in the hip extensors. The athlete lies supine and one leg is lifted, flexing the

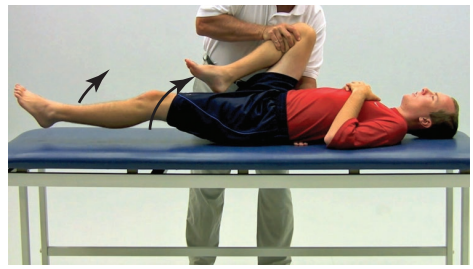


FIGURE 17–6 Thomas test demonstrating tight hip flexors. ©William E. Prentice

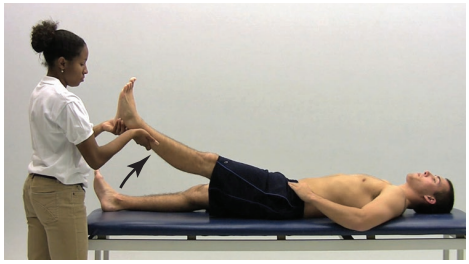


FIGURE 17–7 **Straight leg raising test demonstrating tightness of the hip extensors.** ©William E. Prentice

hip (Figure 17–7). If the leg cannot be flexed to 90 degrees, there is tightness in the hip extensors. A positive straight leg raising test can also indicate a problem in the low back or sacroiliac joint. If there is an issue with a nerve, pain will radiate into the buttocks or maybe down the back of the leg.[7]

PREVENTION OF INJURIES TO THE THIGH, HIP, GROIN, AND PELVIC REGION

Despite the fact that the hip joint is one of the strongest and most stable joints in the body, primarily because of its strong ligaments and joint capsule and also its strong musculature, many potential injuries can occur in this region. Although there are many muscles that produce a variety of movements throughout this region, they are extremely vulnerable to injury resulting from the dynamic power-producing contractions that occur. Success in dynamic running and jumping activities is largely dependent on the function of the muscles in this region. But at the same time, we rely on those same muscles working in conjunction with the pelvis, and the hip with its ligaments and capsule, to provide a base of stability on which the extremities function. Thus, in meeting the demands of both dynamic force production and stabilization of the core of the body, the muscles, joints, and ligaments in this region are vulnerable to injury.

To prevent or at least minimize the chance of injury, it is essential to maintain strength and flexibility of those muscles of the hip, thigh, and pelvis. Athletes should concentrate on a dynamic stretching program that focuses on quadriceps, hamstrings, and groin muscles. Muscle strains in any of these muscle groups can have long-term consequences for healing and can be disabling for the athlete. Likewise, muscles that are strong will be more resistant to injury, and thus a well-designed strengthening program can also help to minimize injuries. Strengthening exercises should routinely include squats, lunges, and leg presses as well as a variety of core strengthening exercises (see Chapter 4).[7]

Flexibility and strengthening of the muscles in this region are the keys to preventing injury.

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF INJURIES TO THE THIGH

Injuries to the thigh muscles are among the most common in sports. Contusions and strains occur often to the thigh, with the former having the highest incidence.

Quadriceps Contusions

Cause of Injury The quadriceps group is continually exposed to traumatic blows in a variety of sports. Contusions of the quadriceps display all the classic symptoms of most muscle bruises.

In order of incidence of sports injury to the thigh, quadriceps contusions rank first and hamstring strains rank second.

Signs of Injury Quadriceps contusions usually develop as the result of a severe impact on the relaxed thigh, compressing the muscle against the hard surface of the femur.[5] At the instant of trauma, pain, a temporary loss of function, and the immediate bleeding of the affected muscles usually occur. The extent of the force and the degree of thigh relaxation determine the depth of the injury and the amount of structural and functional disruption that take place.[20]

Early detection and avoidance of profuse internal bleeding are vital, both in effecting a fast recovery by the athlete and in preventing widespread scarring of the muscle tissue. The athlete usually describes having been hit by a sharp blow to the thigh, which produced intense pain and weakness. The athlete is often limping and holding the thigh. Palpation may reveal a swollen area that is painful to the touch. The seriousness or extent of injury is determined by the amount of weakness and decreased range of motion.

Grade 1 (mild) contusions A grade 1 quadriceps contusion can be either a very superficial intramuscular bruise or a slightly deeper one. The very superficial contusion creates a mild hemorrhage, minimal pain, no swelling, and mild point tenderness with no restriction of the range of motion. In contrast, a deeper first-degree contusion produces pain, mild swelling, point tenderness, and knee flexion of no more than 90 degrees.

Grade 2 (moderate) contusions A grade 2 quadriceps contusion is of moderate intensity, causing pain, swelling, and a range of knee flexion that is less than 90 degrees with an obvious limp while walking.

Grade 3 (severe) contusions A severe, or grade 3, quadriceps contusion represents a significant disability. The blow may have been so intense as to split the fasciae, allowing the muscle to protrude (muscle herniation). Characteristically, a deep intramuscular hematoma with an intermuscular spread is present. Pain is severe, and swelling may lead to the formation of a hematoma. Knee flexion is severely restricted, and motion is limited to 45 to 90 degrees. The athlete has a decided limp.

Care Immediate action includes compression by elastic bandage with the knee flexed to 120 degrees to minimize the loss in range of motion for the first 12 hours.[34] This places the quadriceps in a stretched position and also helps to compress the injured area. The application of a cold medium can help control superficial hemorrhage (Figure 17–8). The thigh contusion should be handled conservatively, with POLICE followed by a very gentle static stretch and crutch walking when a limp is present.

If an athlete has sustained a grade 2 or 3 thigh contusion, great care must be taken to avoid the occurrence of another one. While engaged in sports activity, the athlete should routinely wear a protective pad held in place by an elastic wrap.

Isometric quadriceps contractions (quad sets) should begin as soon as they can be tolerated. Use of heat or massage should be avoided in the early stages of recovery.[7]

Myositis Ossificans

Cause of Injury A severe blow or repeated blows to the thigh, usually the quadriceps muscle, can cause ectopic bone formation within the muscle, known as myositis ossificans traumatica.[16]

Myositis ossificans can occur following

- A single severe contusion
- Repeated contusion to a muscle
- Improper care of a contusion

Signs of Injury Myositis ossificans commonly develops following bleeding into the quadriceps muscle. The contusion causes a disruption of muscle fibers, blood vessels, connective tissue, and the periosteum of the femur. Acute inflammation follows resolution of hemorrhage. The irritated tissue may produce tissue formations resembling cartilage or bone. In 2 to 4 weeks, formation of bone may be noted under X-ray examination. If the injury is to a muscle belly (the thick portion of the muscle), complete absorption or a decrease in size of the formation may occur. This absorption is less likely if calcification is at a muscle origin or insertion. Some formations are completely free of the femur, whereas another may be stalklike and yet another broadly attached (Figure 17–9).[16]

17-1 Critical Thinking Exercise

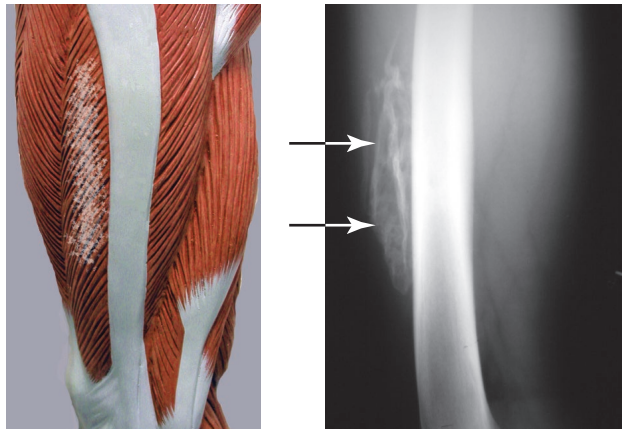
A basketball player performing a layup shot receives a sharp blow to his right quadriceps muscle.

? How may the grade of this contusion be determined?

The following can cause the condition or, once present, aggravate it, causing it to become more pronounced:

- Attempting to run off a quadriceps contusion.
- Too vigorous treatment of a contusion—for example, massage directly over the contusion or superficial heat to the thigh.

FIGURE 17–8 Immediate care of the thigh contusion: Applying a cold pack and pressure bandage along with a stretched position may provide some relief. ©William E. Prentice



A B

FIGURE 17–9 **(A)** Myositis ossificans is likely to develop in the anterior thigh following repeated contusion. **(B)** X-ray view. (A) ©William E. Prentice, (B) Courtesy of Jordan B. Renner, MD, Departments of Radiology and Allied Health Sciences, University of North Carolina

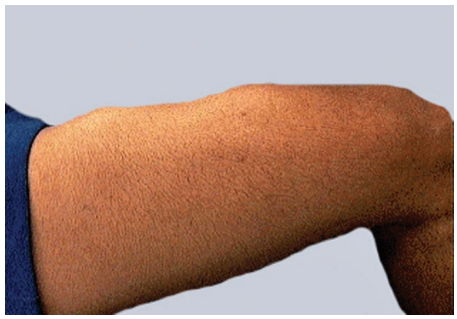


FIGURE 17–10 Rupture of the rectus femoris.
©William E. Prentice

Care Improper care of a thigh contusion can lead to ossification in muscle. Once myositis ossificans traumatica is apparent, treatment should be extremely conservative. If the condition is painful and restricts motion, the formation may be surgically removed after 1 year with much less likelihood of its return. Too early removal of the formation may cause it to return. Recurrent myositis ossificans may indicate a problem with blood clotting.[7]

Quadriceps Muscle Strain

Cause of Injury The rectus femoris muscle of the quadriceps muscle group occasionally becomes strained by a sudden stretch (e.g., falling on a bent knee) or a sudden contraction (e.g., jumping in volleyball or kicking in soccer). Usually, this muscle strain is associated with a muscle that is weakened or overly constricted.[20]

A tear in the region of the rectus femoris may cause partial or complete rupture of muscle fibers (Figure 17–10). The incomplete tear may be located centrally within the muscle or more peripherally to the muscle.

Signs of Injury A peripheral quadriceps rectus femoris tear causes fewer symptoms than the deeper tear. In general, there is less point tenderness and little bleeding. A more centered partial muscle tear causes more pain and discomfort than does the peripheral tear. The deep tear causes a great deal of pain, point tenderness, spasm, and loss of function, but little discoloration from internal bleeding. In contrast, complete muscle tear of the rectus femoris may leave the athlete with little disability and discomfort but with some deformity of the anterior thigh.[20]

Care On-site care of the quadriceps strain includes rest, cold application, and pressure to control internal bleeding. The extent of the tear should be ascertained as soon as possible before swelling masks the extent of injury (refer to Figure 17–10).

FIGURE 17–11 A neoprene sleeve may be worn for soft tissue support. Courtesy of Mueller Sports Medicine

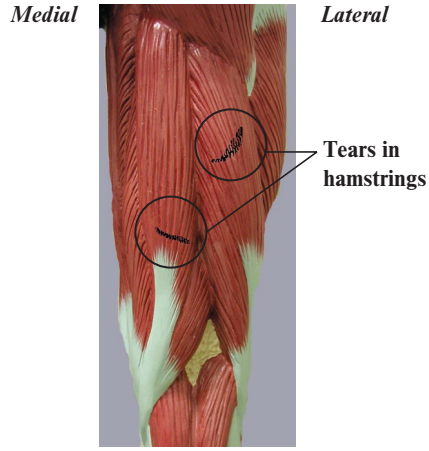


FIGURE 17–12 In many sports, stretching with excessive hip flexion of the hip region can cause a hamstring strain. ©William E. Prentice

To stabilize the muscle, consider having the athlete wear a neoprene sleeve as healing occurs (Figure 17–11).[7]

Hamstring Muscle Strains

Cause of Injury Of all the thigh muscles subject to strain, the hamstring group has the highest incidence of strain. A quick change of the hamstring muscle function from knee stabilization to extension of the hip when running may be a primary cause of this strain (Figure 17–12).[8] What leads to this muscle failure and deficiency in the complementary action of opposing muscles is not clearly understood.[33] Some

possible reasons are muscle fatigue, sciatic nerve irritation, faulty posture, leg-length discrepancy, tight hamstrings, using improper form, and imbalance of strength between hamstring muscle groups.[33]

In most athletes, the hamstring muscle group should have at least 60 to 70 percent of the strength of the opposing quadriceps group. Stretching after exercise is imperative to avoid muscle tightness.[14]

Hamstring strain can involve the muscle belly or bony attachment. The extent of injury can vary from the pulling apart of a few muscle fibers to a complete rupture or an avulsion fracture.[8]

17–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A sprinter competing in a 100-yard dash experiences a sudden snap, severe pain, and weakness in the left hamstring muscle.

? What kind of injury might the coach expect?

Signs of Injury Internal bleeding, pain, and immediate loss of function vary according to the degree of trauma. Discoloration may occur 1 or 2 days after injury.

Grade 1 hamstring strain A grade 1 hamstring strain is usually evidenced by muscle soreness on movement and is accompanied by point tenderness. These strains are often difficult to detect when they occur. Irritation and stiffness do not become apparent until the athlete has cooled down after activity. The soreness of the mild hamstring strain in most instances can be attributed to muscle guarding rather than to the tearing of tissue.[27]

Grade 2 hamstring strain A grade 2 muscle strain represents partial tearing of muscle fibers and can be identified by a sudden snap or tear of the muscle accompanied by severe pain and a loss of function of knee flexion. It is possible to palpate a defect in the muscle with a grade 2 strain.

Grade 3 hamstring strain A grade 3 hamstring strain is the rupturing of tendinous or muscular tissue, involving major hemorrhage and disability and a palpable and sometimes visual defect.

Care Initially, an ice pack and compression by an elastic wrap should be employed. Activity should be restricted until soreness has been minimized. Rehabilitation should incorporate eccentric strength training exercises, which are critical in facilitating return to play.[14]

Strains are always a problem to the athlete. They tend to recur because they sometimes heal with inelastic fibrous scar tissue.[27] The higher the incidence of strains at a particular muscle site, the greater the amount of scar tissue and the greater the likelihood of further injury.[30]

Acute Femoral Fracture

Cause of Injury Fractures of the femur most often occur in automobile accidents or in a fall from a great height. Fractures are less common in sports because rarely are the forces great enough to actually cause a fracture.[7] In sports, fractures of the femur occur most often in the shaft rather than at the bone ends. A fracture of the shaft most often takes place in the middle third of the bone because of the anatomical curve at this point and because the majority of direct blows are sustained in this area.[23]

Signs of Injury Shock generally accompanies a fracture of the femur as a result of the extreme amount of pathology and pain associated with this injury. Bone displacement is usually present as a result of the great strength of the quadriceps muscle, which causes overriding of the bone fragments. Direct impact produces extensive soft-tissue injury with muscle lacerations, internal bleeding, and muscle spasms.

An acute fractured femur is recognized by these classic signs:

- Deformity, with the thigh rotated outward.
- A shortened thigh, caused by bone displacement.
- Loss of thigh function.
- Pain and point tenderness.
- Swelling of the soft tissues.

Care Immediate emergency assistance and medical referral are necessary to prevent shock and a life-threatening situation.[23]

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF HIP AND GROIN INJURIES

The hip joint, the strongest and best-protected joint in the human body, is seldom seriously injured during sports activities.[31] The hip joint is substantially supported by the ligamentous tissues and muscles that surround it, so any unusual movement that exceeds the normal range of motion may result in tearing of tissue.[10]

Hip Sprain

Cause of Injury Hip sprains may occur as the result of a violent twist, either produced through an impact force delivered by another participant or by forceful contact with another object, or sustained in a situation in which the foot is firmly planted and the trunk is forced in an opposing direction.[6] This mechanism may also cause injury to the knee joint.

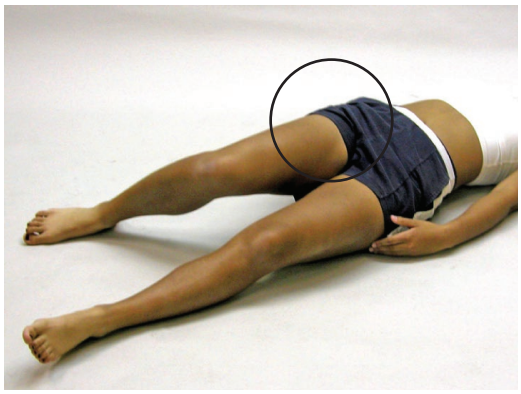


FIGURE 17–13 Typical position for a hip dislocation: slightly flexed, adducted, and internally rotated.
©William E. Prentice

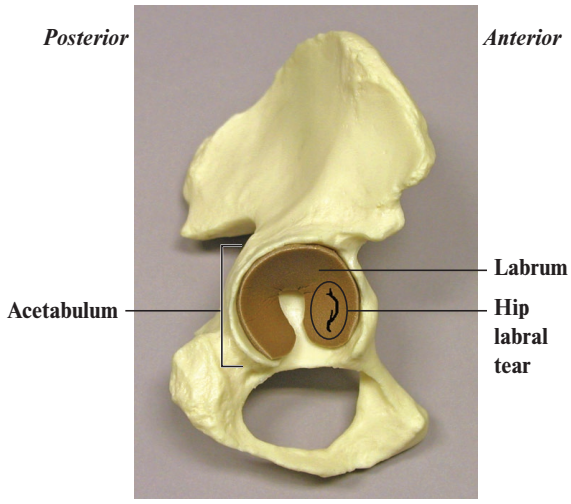


FIGURE 17–14 Tear within the labrum of the hip (lateral view). ©William E. Prentice

Signs of Injury A hip sprain displays all the signs of a major acute injury but is best revealed through the athlete's inability to circumduct the thigh. Symptoms are similar to a stress fracture. There is significant pain in the hip region. Hip rotation increases pain.

Care X-rays should be taken to rule out fracture; POLICE and analgesics are used as needed. Depending on the grade of sprain, weight bearing is restricted. Crutch walking is used for grade 2 and 3 sprains. Range-of-motion and progressive resistance exercises are delayed until the hip is pain free.

Dislocated Hip Joint

Cause of Injury Dislocation of the hip joint rarely occurs in sports. The dislocated hip is caused by traumatic force along the long axis of the femur or by the athlete falling on his or her side. Such dislocations are produced when the knee is bent.[26]

Signs of Injury The incomplete dislocation or luxation presents a picture of a flexed, adducted, and internally rotated thigh (Figure 17–13).[9] Palpation reveals that the head of the femur has moved to a position posterior to the acetabulum. A hip dislocation causes serious pathology by tearing capsular and ligamentous tissue.[26] A fracture is often associated with this injury, accompanied by possible damage to the sciatic nerve and the nutrient artery, causing **avascular necrosis.**

avascular necrosis (necro-sis) Tissue death caused by lack of circulation.

Care Medical attention must be secured immediately after displacement, or muscle contractures may complicate the initial treatment. Immobilization usually consists of 2 weeks of bed rest and the use of a crutch for walking for a month or longer.[9]

Complications Complication of a posterior hip dislocation is likely. Such complications include muscle paralysis as a result of nerve injury in the area and later development of degeneration of the femoral head.

Hip Labral Tear

Cause of Injury The socket of the hip joint (acetabulum) is lined by articular cartilage called the labrum (Figure 17–14). This cartilage provides stability and cushioning for the hip joint, permitting the head of the femur to move smoothly and painlessly in the acetabulum. A hip labral tear most often results from repetitive movements such as running or pivoting of the hip that cause degeneration and breakdown of the labrum. It may also be caused by an acute injury such as a dislocation.[17]

Signs of Injury Most commonly a hip labral tear is asymptomatic. Occasionally, however, a hip labral tear may cause a catching, locking, or clicking sensation in the hip joint; pain in the hip or groin; and a feeling of stiffness or limited motion.[17]

Care Treatment for a hip labral tear may consist of exercises to maximize hip range of motion, hip strengthening and stability exercises, and avoiding movements that place stress on the hip joint. Pain medications may also help, and a physician may choose to inject a corticosteroid. If pain persists more than 4 weeks, surgery may be indicated either to remove a piece of the torn labrum or to repair the tear using sutures.[17]

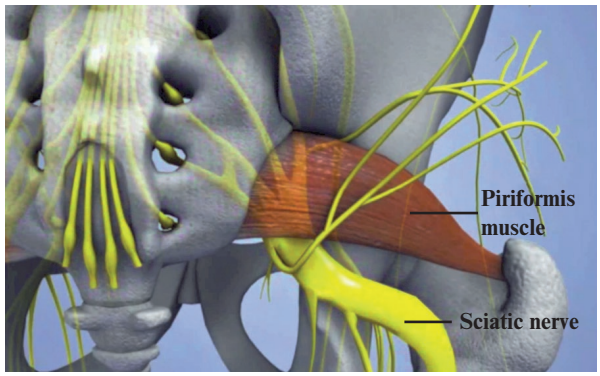


FIGURE 17–15 In piriformis syndrome, the sciatic nerve is compressed by tightness of the piriformis muscle.

Piriformis Syndrome

Cause of Condition The sciatic nerve, which is located either under the piriformis muscle or actually piercing the piriformis muscle itself, is compressed or irritated by tightness or spasm of this muscle (Figure 17–15). This particular syndrome can often mimic another condition known as *sciatica,* and is often misdiagnosed as sciatica.[19] The main difference between sciatica and piriformis syndrome is that sciatica is due to a herniated lumbar disc pressing on the sciatic nerve as it exits the lumbar spine.[7]

Signs of Condition Compression of the sciatic nerve by the piriformis causes pain, numbness, and tingling in the butt that can extend below the knee and into the foot.[19] The pain may worsen as a result of sitting for a long period of time, climbing stairs, walking, or running.

Care Generally, treatment for the syndrome begins with stretching exercises and massage (Figure 17–16).

FIGURE 17–16 Stretching the piriformis is an important exercise in the treatment program. ©William E. Prentice

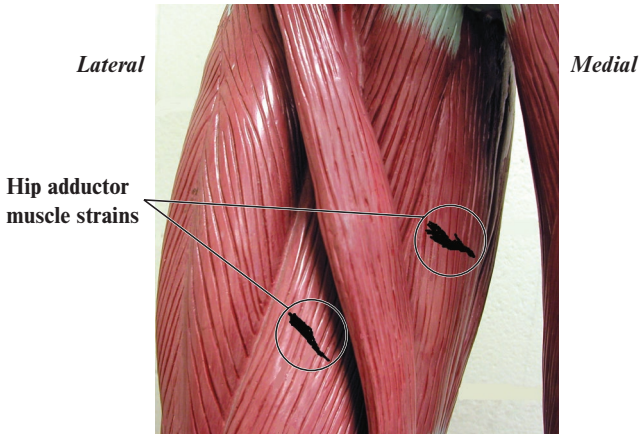


FIGURE 17–17 Many sports that require stretch of the hip region can cause a groin strain. ©William E. Prentice

Anti-inflammatory drugs may be prescribed. Cessation of running, bicycling, or similar activities may be advised. A corticosteroid injection near where the piriformis muscle and the sciatic nerve meet may provide temporary relief. In some cases, surgery is recommended. [21]

Groin Strain

The groin is the depression between the thigh and the abdomen. The muscles in the groin region are responsible for adduction and internal rotation of the thigh.

Cause of Injury Any one of the muscles in the groin region can be injured in sports activity and elicit a groin strain (Figure 17–17). In addition, overextension of the groin musculature may result in a strain.[8] Running, jumping, and twisting with external rotation can produce such injuries.[18] Groin injuries are very likely to occur in the early part of the season, particularly if an athlete has poor strength and flexibility in these muscles.[1]

A

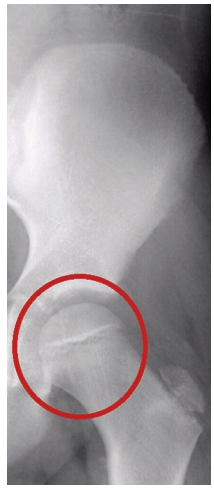
B

FIGURE 17–18 **Neoprene braces and supports can be used with a variety of injuries around the hip joint and thigh.** (A) Courtesy of Brace International, Inc.; (b) Courtesy of Cramer

Signs of Injury The strain can appear as a sudden twinge or feeling of tearing during a movement, or it may not be noticed until after termination of activity. As is characteristic of most tears, the groin strain also produces pain, weakness, and internal bleeding.[1]

Care If it is detected immediately after it occurs, the strain should be treated by intermittent ice, pressure, and rest for 48 to 72 hours.[12]

Rest has been found to be the best treatment for groin strains.[35] Until normal flexibility and strength return, a protective spica bandage can be applied. A groin wrap using an elastic bandage can help support the area (see Figure 10–4). Commercial restraints are also available to protect the injured groin (Figure 17–18). Note that a pelvic stress fracture may produce groin pain. Any athlete complaining of severe groin pain should be referred for medical attention.



A

B

FIGURE 17–19 **Legg-Perthes disease. (A) Normal femoral head X-ray. (B) Femoral head with avascular necrosis X-ray.** Courtesy of Jordan B. Renner, MD, Departments of Radiology and Allied Health Sciences, University of North Carolina

Hip Joint Problems in the Adolescent Athlete

Two problems may occur in the hip joint in adolescent athletes: Legg-Perthes disease (coxa plana) and a slipped capital femoral epiphysis.[22]

Legg-Perthes Disease (Coxa Plana)

Cause of Condition Legg-Perthes disease, or coxa plana, is due to a loss of blood circulation to the articular head of the femur (Figure 17–19). It occurs in children ages 3 to 12 and in boys more often than in girls. The reason for this condition is not clearly understood. Because of a disruption of circulation to the head of the femur, the articular cartilage dies and becomes flattened. This condition is referred to as avascular necrosis.

Signs of Condition The young athlete commonly complains of pain in the groin that sometimes is referred to the abdomen or knee. Limping is also typical. The condition can have a rapid onset, but more often it comes on slowly over a number of months. Examination may show limited hip movement and pain.[10]

Care This condition can warrant complete bed rest to reduce the chances of a chronic hip condition. A special brace to avoid direct weight bearing on the hip may have to be worn. If the condition

A young athlete who complains of pain in the groin, abdomen, or knee and who walks with a limp may display signs of coxa plana or a slipped capital femoral epiphysis.

is treated in time, the head of the femur will revascularize and regain its original shape.

Complications If the condition is not treated early enough, the head of the femur will become ill shaped, producing osteoarthritis in later life.

Slipped Capital Femoral Epiphysis

Cause of Condition A slipped capital femoral epiphysis is an unusual disorder of the adolescent hip in which the epiphysis (growing end) of the femur slips from the femoral head in a backward direction.[31] This is due to weakness of the growth plate. Most often, it develops during periods of accelerated growth, shortly after the onset of puberty.[25] A slipped capital femoral epiphysis (Figure 17–20) is found mostly in boys between the ages of 10 and 17 who are very tall and thin or are obese. Although the cause is unknown, the slipped capital femoral epiphysis may be related to the effects of a growth hormone. In one-quarter of the cases, both hips are affected.[28] The femoral head or proximal femoral epiphysis slips posterior and inferior relative to the femoral neck or femoral metaphysis.

Signs of Condition Symptoms of this condition are similar to those for Legg-Perthes disease. The athlete has a pain in the groin that arises suddenly as a result of trauma or over weeks or months as a result of prolonged stress. In the early stages of this condition, signs may be minimal; however, in its most advanced stage there is hip and knee pain and major limitations on movement together with a limp.

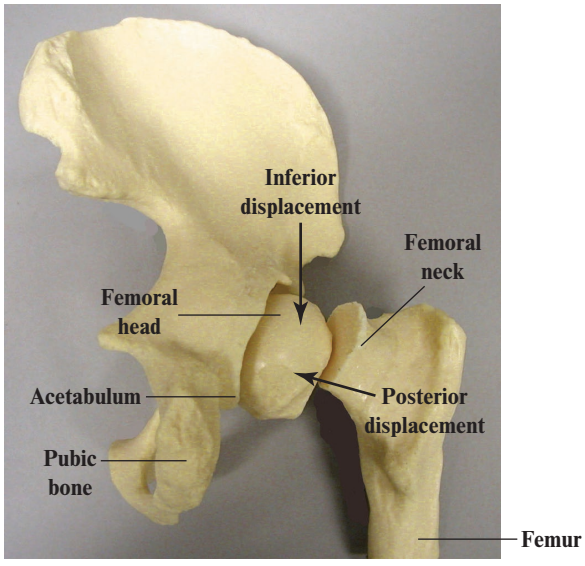


FIGURE 17–20 Slipped capital femoral epiphysis. The femoral head (proximal femoral epiphysis) slips posterior and inferior relative to the femoral neck (femoral metaphysis). ©William E. Prentice

Care In cases of minor displacement, rest and no weight bearing may prevent further slipping. Major displacement usually requires corrective surgery.

Complications If the displacement goes undetected or if surgery fails to restore normal hip mechanics, severe hip problems may occur later in life.

17–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A 15-year-old male football player complains of pain in his hip off and on during the season. There is increasing hip and knee pain during movement. The athlete has a restriction of hip abduction, flexion, and medial rotation. He is beginning to walk with a limp.

? What should be the concern in this 15-year-old, and what steps should be taken to manage this condition?

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF INJURIES TO THE PELVIS

Athletes who perform activities involving violent jumping, running, and collisions can sustain serious acute and overuse injuries to the pelvic region.[13]

Iliac Crest Contusion (Hip Pointer)

An iliac crest contusion, commonly known as a *hip pointer*, occurs most often in contact sports.

Cause of Injury A hip pointer is caused by a direct blow that results in an extremely painful contusion to the iliac crest causing bleeding in the transversus abdominus and oblique muscles that attach to the iliac crest. In some cases the greater trochanter and the tensor fascia lata muscle are also affected (Figure 17–21). The hip pointer is one of the most handicapping injuries in sports.

Signs of Injury The hip pointer produces immediate pain, muscle guarding, and transitory paralysis of the soft structures. As a result, the athlete is unable to rotate the trunk or to flex the thigh without pain.[13]

Care Cold and pressure should be applied immediately after injury and should be maintained intermittently for at least 48 hours. In severe cases, bed rest for 1 to 2 days

FIGURE 17–21 **A blow to the pelvic rim can cause a bruise and hematoma known as a hip pointer.** Courtesy of Scott Barker

will speed recovery. Referral to a physician must be made and an X-ray examination given. When the athlete returns to play, a protective pad should be used to minimize the chances of recurrent injury. Protection is the key to recovery.

Osteitis Pubis

Cause of Injury Since the popularity of distance running has increased, a condition known as *osteitis pubis* has become more prevalent. It also occurs in soccer, football, and wrestling.[2] Repetitive stress on the *pubic symphysis* and adjacent bony structures by the pull of muscles in the area creates a chronic inflammatory condition.[15]

17–4 Critical Thinking Exercise

A football player who is not wearing hip pads receives a hard compressive hit to his left iliac crest region.

? What injury has this athlete sustained? What are the expected symptoms and signs?

Signs of Injury The athlete has pain in the groin region and in the bony projection under the pubic hair called the symphysis pubis. There is point tenderness on the pubic tubercle and pain when movements such as running, sit-ups, and squats are performed.[36] The pubic bones should be symmetrical from one side to the other.

Care Follow-up care usually consists of rest and an oral anti-inflammatory agent. A return to activity should be gradual.[15]

Acute Fracture of the Pelvis

The pelvis is an extremely strong structure, and fractures stemming from sports are rare.

Cause of Injury The acute pelvic fracture usually occurs as the result of a direct trauma.

Signs of Injury The athlete responds to this injury with severe pain, loss of function, and shock.

Care If a pelvic fracture is suspected, the athlete should be immediately treated for shock and referred to a physician. The seriousness of this injury depends on the extent of shock and the possibility of internal injury.

Stress Fractures of the Pelvis

Cause of Injury As with other stress fractures, pelvic stress fractures can be produced by repetitive abnormal overuse forces. Pelvic stress fractures tend to occur during intensive training or competitive racing.[3]

Signs of Injury Commonly, the athlete complains of groin pain along with an aching sensation in the thigh that increases with activity and decreases with rest.

Care The athlete complains of pelvic pain following intense exercise. Referral to a physician for a detailed examination with an X-ray is a must. Once this injury is verified, rest is the treatment of choice for 2 to 5 months.

Avulsion Fractures

Cause of Injury An avulsion is the tearing away of a body part from its point of attachment. An avulsion fracture occurs when a tendon that attaches a muscle to a bone pulls part of the bone away after sudden, forceful contraction of that muscle. There are several muscles of the thigh that attach to various parts of the pelvis. Common sites for avulsion fractures in the pelvis include where the sartorius muscle attaches to the anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS), where the rectus femoris muscle attaches to the front anterior inferior iliac spine (AIIS), and where the hamstring muscle group attaches to the ischial tuberosity.[7]

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of a sudden localized pain with limited movement. On inspection, swelling and a point tenderness can be observed.

Care Early conditions require rest, limited activity, and graduated exercise.

SUMMARY

- The thigh is composed of the femoral shaft, musculature, nerves and blood vessels, and the fascia that envelops the soft tissue. It is the part of the leg between the hip and the knee.
- The quadriceps contusion and hamstring strain are the most common sports injuries to the thigh, with the quadriceps contusion having the highest incidence.
- Of major importance in acute thigh contusion is early detection and the avoidance of internal bleeding.
- One major complication to repeated contusions is myositis ossificans.
- Hamstring strain occurs most often to the short head of the biceps femoris.
- The groin is the depression between the thigh and abdominal region. Groin strain can occur to any one of a number of muscles in this region. Running, jumping, or twisting can produce a groin strain.
- The hip joint, the strongest and best-protected joint in the human body, has a low incidence of acute sports injuries.
- Some young athletes develop conditions that stem from an immature hip joint. These conditions are coxa plana, or Legg-Perthes disease, and the slipped capital femoral epiphysis.
- A common problem in the pelvic region is the hip pointer, which results from a blow to the inadequately protected iliac crest. The contusion causes pain, spasm, and malfunction of the muscles in the area.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

17-1 One of the best ways to determine the grade of a contusion to the quadriceps muscle is through the degree of restriction of knee flexion. With grade 1, there is a knee flexion of no more than 90 degrees; with grade 2, less than 90 degrees; and with grade 3, between 45 and 90 degrees.

17-2 It is likely there is a moderate to severe hamstring strain.

17-3 Because of the age of the athlete, consider the possibility of a growth problem. If it is a growth problem, it is most likely a slipped capital femoral epiphysis. This athlete should be immediately referred to a physician for X-ray examination.

17-4 This athlete has sustained a hip pointer or contusion to the skin and musculature in the region of the iliac crest. The athlete most likely will experience severe pain, muscle spasm, and an inability to rotate his trunk or flex his hip without pain.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. What signs and symptoms are seen in each of the three degrees of quadriceps contusions? How are they managed?
2. What complications can occur if a thigh contusion is mishandled?
3. Why do hamstring strains often become recurrent?
4. Where do fractures occur most often in the femur? How are they recognized? What emergency care must be given?
5. What muscles are most often injured in a groin strain? How is this type of injury managed?
6. What type of hip problems occur in the young athlete?
7. Describe hip pointer prevention and care.

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Atkins, J. 2010. Acute and overuse injuries of the abdomen and groin in athletes. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 9(2):115–120.
2. Beatty, T. 2012. Osteitis pubis in athletes. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 11(2):96–98.
3. Behrens, S. 2013. Stress fractures of the pelvis and legs in athletes: A review. *Sports Health: A Multidisciplinary Approach* 5(2):165–174.
4. Blankenbaker, D. 2010. Hip injuries in athletes. *Radiologic Clinics of North America* 48(6):1155–1178.
5. Brukner, P. 2016. Anterior thigh pain. In P. Brukner & B. Clarsen (eds.), *Bruckner & Kahn's Clinical sports medicine*. Sydney: McGraw-Hill.
6. Brukner, P. 2016. Hip and groin pain. In P. Brukner & B. Clarsen (eds.), *Bruckner & Kahn's Clinical sports medicine*. Sydney: McGraw-Hill.
7. DePalma, B., & Halverson, D. 2019. Rehabilitation of groin, hip, and thigh injuries. In W. Prentice (ed.), *Rehabilitation techniques in sports medicine and athletic training*, 6th ed. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.
8. Emery, C. 2012. Identifying risk factors for hamstring and groin injuries in sport: A daunting task. *Clinical Journal of Sports Medicine* 22(1):75–77.
9. Foulk, D., & Mullis, B. 2010. Hip dislocation: Evaluation and management. *Journal of the American Academy of Orthopedic Surgeons* 18(4):199–209.
10. Frank, J. 2013. Hip pathology in the adolescent athlete. *Journal of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons* 21(11):665–674.
11. Frank, R. 2014. Evaluation of hip pain in young adults. *Physician and Sports Medicine* 42(2). doi: 10.3810/psm.2014.05.2056.
12. Hackney, R. 2012. Groin pain in athletes. *Orthopedics and Trauma* 26(1):25–32.
13. Hall, M. 2013. Hip pointers. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 32(2):325–330.
14. Heiderscheit, B. 2010. Hamstring strain injuries: Recommendations for diagnosis, rehabilitation and injury prevention. *Journal of Orthopedic and Sports Rehabilitation* 40(2):67–81.
15. Hiti, C. 2011. Athletic osteitis pubis. *Sports Medicine* 45(5):361–376.
16. Hoth, P. 2014. Contusions, myositis ossificans, and compartment syndrome of the thigh. In C. Kaeding (ed.), *Hamstring and quadriceps injuries in athletes*. New York, NY: Springer.
17. Huang, R. 2012. Acetabular labral tears: Focused review of anatomy, diagnosis, and current management. *Physician and Sports Medicine* 40(2):87–93.
18. Hureibi, K. 2010. Groin pain in athletes. *Scottish Medical Journal* 55(2):8–11.
19. Jankovic, D. 2013. Brief review: Piriformis syndrome: Etiology, diagnosis, and management. *Canadian Journal of Anesthesia* 60(10):1003–1012.
20. Kary, J. 2010. Diagnosis and management of quadriceps strains and contusions.

Current Reviews in Musculoskeletal Medicine 3(1–4):26–31.
21. Kirschner, J. S., Foye, P. M., & Cole, J. L. 2009. Piriformis syndrome, diagnosis and treatment. *Muscle and Nerve* 40(1):10–18.
22. Kovacevic, D. 2011. Injuries about the hip in the adolescent athlete. *Sports Medicine and Arthroscopy Review* 19(1):64–74.
23. Martelli, S. 2014. Femoral shaft strains during daily activities: Implications for atypical femoral fractures. *Clinical Biomechanics* 29(8):869–876.
24. Martin, H. 2013. History and physical examination of the hip: The basics. *Current Reviews in Musculoskeletal Medicine* 6(1):219–225.
25. Muchow, R. 2013. Slipped capital femoral epiphysis: An update on the current management and outcomes. *Current Orthopedic Practice* 24(6):612–616.
26. Obakponovwe, O. 2011. Traumatic hip dislocation. *Orthopedics and Trauma* 25(3):214–222.
27. Pizzari, T. 2013. Recurrent hamstring injuries—Risks and prevention: A review. *Clinical Journal of Sports Medicine* 23(2):119–120.
28. Punnoose, A. 2013. Slipped capital femoral epiphysis. *Journal of the American Medical Association* 309(6):620.
29. Seidenberg, P. 2016. *The hip and pelvis in sports medicine and primary care.* New York, NY: Springer.
30. Slider, A. 2013. Clinical and morphological changes following 2 rehabilitation programs for acute hamstring strain injuries: A randomized clinical trial. *Journal of Orthopaedic & Sports Physical Therapy* 43(5):284–299.
31. Smith, D. 2010. Hip injuries in young athletes. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 9(5):278–283.
32. Tammareddi, K. 2013. The athlete's hip and groin. *Primary Care: Clinics in Office Practice* 40(2):313–333.
33. Thorborg, K. 2014. What are the most important risk factors for hamstring muscle injuries? *Clinical Journal of Sports Medicine* 24(2):160–161.
34. Trojian, T. 2013. Muscle contusion (thigh). *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 32(2):317–324.
35. Tyler, T. 2014. Rehabilitation of soft tissue injuries of the hip and pelvis. *International Journal of Sports Physical Therapy* 9(6):785–797.
36. Wilson, J. 2014. Evaluation of the patient with hip pain. *American Family Physician* 89(1):27–34.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Gaunche, C. 2009. *Hip and pelvis injuries in sports medicine.* Baltimore, MD: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.

This comprehensive clinical reference covers the diagnosis and treatment of hip and pelvis injuries seen in sports medicine practices.

Kelly, B. 2015. *Sports hip injuries: Diagnosis and management.* Thorofare, NJ: Slack.

In a concise manner focusing on hip and pelvis, this book covers all of the typical disorders seen in athletes presenting with hip and pelvic pain.

Seidenberg, P. 2016. *The hip and pelvis in sports medicine and primary care.* New York, NY: Springer.

This book brings together many excellent clinician authors to provide the basis for an improved approach to the patient and athlete who have complaints involving the hip and pelvis.

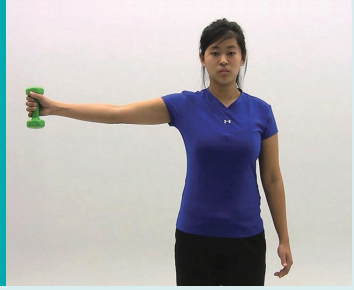
WEBSITES

About Health: www.verywellfit.com/common-causes-of-hip-pain-in-athletes-3120415
Information about hip and groin pain and injuries, including cause, diagnosis, and treatment.

Family Practice Notebook; Hip Pain: www.fpnotebook.com/Ortho/Hip/index.htm
Provides a detailed discussion of a wide variety of thigh injuries and conditions in an easy-to-follow outline format.

Sports Injury Clinic: www.sportsinjuryclinic.net/sport-injuries/hip-groin-pain/synovitis-hip
Offers a free archive of practical sports injury advice for physios, coaches, and athletes.

18



©William E. Prentice

The Shoulder Complex

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Identify the bones, articulations, stabilizing ligaments, and musculature of the shoulder complex.
- Explain how shoulder injuries may be prevented.
- Describe the process for assessing injuries to the shoulder.
- Recognize specific injuries that occur around the shoulder joint and describe plans for management.

The anatomy of the shoulder complex allows for a great degree of mobility. To achieve this mobility, stability of the complex is sometimes compromised and instability of the shoulder frequently leads to injury, particularly in those sports that involve overhead activity.[35] Sport activities such as throwing, swimming, or serving in tennis or volleyball place a great deal of stress on the supporting structures (Figure 18–1). Consequently, injuries related to overuse in the shoulder are common in the athlete.[17]

Dynamic movement and stabilization of the shoulder complex require integrated function of the rotator cuff muscles, the joint capsule, and the muscles that stabilize and position the scapula.[26]

ANATOMY OF THE SHOULDER

Bones

The bones that comprise the shoulder complex and shoulder joint are the clavicle, scapula, and humerus (Figure 18–2). These three bones form the four major articulations associated with the shoulder complex: the sternoclavicular joint, the acromioclavicular joint, the glenohumeral joint, and the scapulothoracic joint.

Shoulder complex articulations:

- Sternoclavicular
- Acromioclavicular
- Glenohumeral
- Scapulothoracic

Stabilizing Ligaments

Ligaments at each of the four articulations act collectively to provide stability to the shoulder complex (Figure 18–3).

The clavicle articulates with the sternum to form the sternoclavicular joint, the only direct connection between the upper extremity and the trunk. The sternoclavicular joint is extremely weak because of its bony arrangement, but it is held securely by the sternoclavicular ligament that pulls the clavicle downward and toward the sternum, in effect anchoring it. The clavicle is permitted to move up and down, forward and backward, and in rotation.[36]

The acromioclavicular joint is a gliding articulation of the lateral end of the clavicle with the acromion process of the scapula. This junction is rather weak. The acromioclavicular ligament along with the coracoclavicular ligament helps to maintain the position of the clavicle relative to the acromion. The coracoacromial ligament connects the coracoid process to the acromion. This ligament along with the acromion forms the coracoacromial arch.[15]

At the glenohumeral joint (the true shoulder joint), the round head of the humerus articulates with the shallow glenoid cavity of the scapula. The position of the glenohumeral joint is maintained by the surrounding glenohumeral ligaments that form the joint capsule and by the rotator cuff muscles.[2]

FIGURE 18–1 Overhead activities can produce a number of shoulder problems. ©William E. Prentice

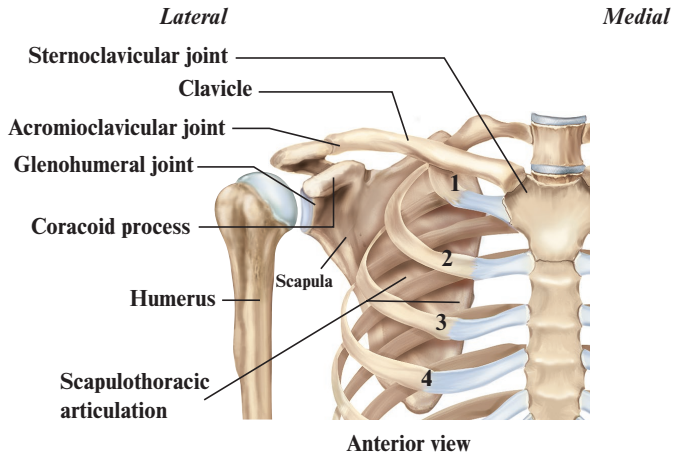


FIGURE 18–2 Skeletal anatomy of the shoulder complex (anterior view). (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

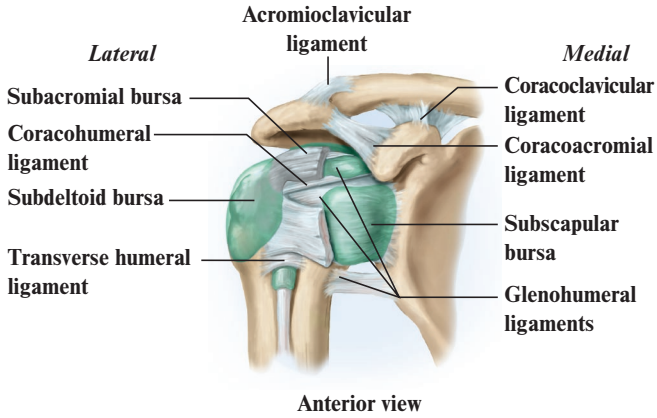


FIGURE 18–3 Shoulder complex articulations, ligaments, and bursae. (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

The scapulothoracic joint is not a true joint; however, the movement of the scapula on the wall of the thoracic cage is critical to shoulder joint motion. Contraction of the scapular muscles that attach the scapula to the axial skeleton is critical in stabilizing the scapula, thus providing a base on which a highly mobile glenohumeral joint can function.[2]

Muscles

The muscles that cross the glenohumeral joint produce dynamic motion and establish stability to compensate for a bony and ligamentous arrangement that allows for a great deal of mobility (Figure 18–4).[2] Movements at the glenohumeral joint include flexion, extension, abduction, adduction, and rotation. The muscles acting on the glenohumeral joint can be separated into three groups. The first group consists of muscles that originate on the axial skeleton and attach to the humerus, including the latissimus dorsi and the pectoralis major. The second group originates on the scapula and attaches to the humerus, including the deltoid, the teres major, the coracobrachialis, and the rotator cuff (subscapularis, supraspinatus, infraspinatus, teres minor).

Glenohumeral joint movements:

- Flexion
- Extension
- Abduction
- Adduction
- External rotation
- Internal rotation

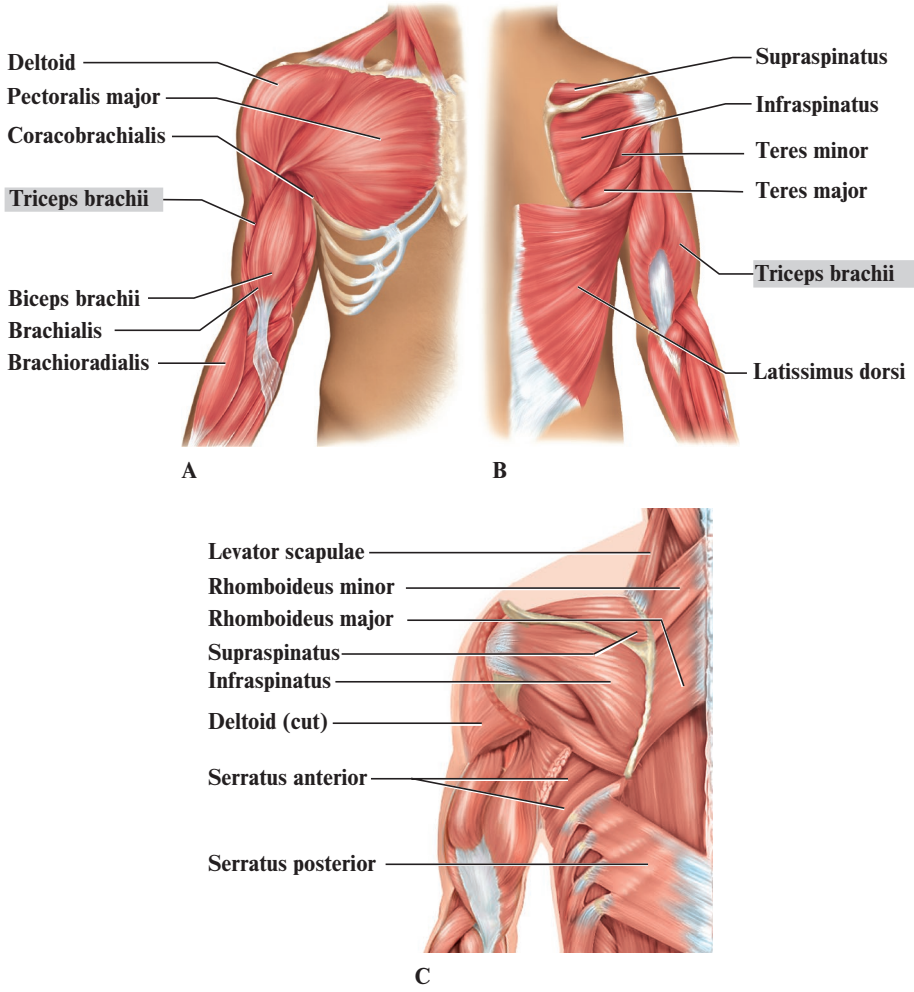


FIGURE 18–4 Muscles of the shoulder complex: **(A)** Anterior view. **(B)** Posterior view. **(C)** Scapular muscles (posterior view). (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

A third group of muscles attach the axial skeleton to the scapula and includes the levator scapula, the trapezius, the rhomboids, and the serratus anterior and posterior. The scapular muscles are important in providing dynamic stability to the shoulder complex (Table 18–1).[2] Visual examples of the movements of the shoulder appear in Appendix C.

PREVENTION OF SHOULDER INJURIES

Ensuring proper physical conditioning is important in preventing many shoulder injuries. As with all preventive conditioning, the program should be directed toward general body development and development of specific body areas for a given sport. If a sport places extreme, sustained demands on the arms and shoulders or if the shoulder is at risk for sudden traumatic injury, extensive conditioning must be used. All the muscles involved in movement of the shoulder complex, including the rotator cuff muscles and the scapular stabilizers that collectively function to stabilize the shoulder complex during dynamic functional movements, should be strengthened through a full range of motion.

In particular, emphasis should be placed on strengthening the muscles of the rotator cuff to improve dynamic function and control in overhead activities such as throwing and swimming. Likewise, attention should be given to strengthening the scapular stabilizers by incorporating exercises to resist scapular abduction, adduction, elevation, depression, upward rotation, and downward rotation. Strengthening the muscles that control the stability of the scapula helps provide a base for the function of the highly mobile glenohumeral joint.[2] Proximal stability is required for pain-free distal mobility.

Proper warm-up must be performed gradually before dynamic arm movements are attempted. This warm-up causes a general increase in body temperature and is followed by sport-specific stretching of selected muscles.

TABLE 18–1	Muscles of the Shoulder Complex
Flexion	Pectoralis major Anterior deltoid Biceps
Extension	Latissimus dorsi Teres major Posterior deltoid
Abduction	Supraspinatus Middle deltoid
Adduction	Pectoralis major Latissimus dorsi
Medial rotation	Pectoralis major Subscapularis Latissimus dorsi Teres major
Lateral rotation	Infraspinatus Teres minor
Shoulder horizontal adduction	Anterior deltoid Pectoralis major Coracobrachialis
Shoulder horizontal abduction	Posterior deltoid Latissimus dorsi Teres minor
Scapular abduction and upward rotation	Serratus anterior
Scapular elevation	Trapezius Levator scapulae
Scapular adduction	Middle trapezius Rhomboideus major
Scapular depression and adduction	Lower trapezius
Scapular adduction and downward rotation	Rhomboideus major Rhomboideus minor

All athletes in collision and contact sports should be instructed and drilled on how to fall properly. They must be taught not to try to catch themselves with an outstretched arm. Performing a shoulder roll is a safer way to absorb the shock of the fall. Specialized protective equipment such as shoulder pads must be properly fitted to avoid some shoulder injuries in tackle football.

Using Correct Throwing Technique

To prevent overuse of shoulder injuries, it is essential that athletes be correctly taught the appropriate techniques of throwing a baseball or football, throwing a javelin, serving or spiking a volleyball, and serving or hitting an overhead smash in tennis.[17] If the thrower uses faulty technique, the joints are affected by atypical stresses that result in trauma to the joint and its surrounding tissues.[14,17]

Throwing phases:

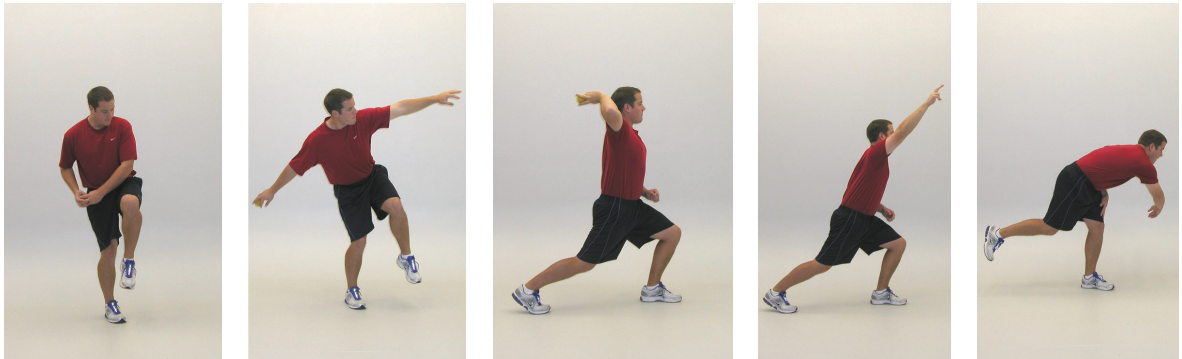
- Wind-up
- Cocking
- Acceleration
- Deceleration
- Follow-through

Relative to the shoulder complex, throwing involves five distinct phases: wind-up, cocking, arm acceleration, arm deceleration, and follow-through (Figure 18–5).

Wind-Up Phase The wind-up or preparation phase lasts from the first movement until the ball leaves the gloved hand. During this phase, the lead leg strides forward. Both shoulders abduct, externally rotate, and horizontally abduct.

Cocking Phase The cocking phase begins when the hands separate and ends when maximum external rotation of the humerus has occurred. During this phase, the foot comes in contact with the ground.

Acceleration Phase The acceleration phase lasts from maximum external rotation until ball release. The humerus abducts, horizontally abducts, and internally rotates at velocities approaching



A B C D E

FIGURE 18–5 Phases of throwing: **(A)** wind-up, **(B)** cocking, **(C)** acceleration, **(D)** deceleration, and **(E)** follow-through. ©William E. Prentice

8,000 degrees per second. The scapula elevates, abducts, and upward rotates.

Deceleration Phase The deceleration phase lasts from ball release until maximum shoulder internal rotation. During this phase, the external rotators of the rotator cuff contract eccentrically to decelerate the humerus. The rhomboids contract eccentrically to decelerate the scapula. Most throwing injuries occur during either the acceleration phase or the deceleration phase.

Follow-Through Phase The follow-through phase lasts from maximum shoulder internal rotation until the end of the motion, when there is a balanced position.

ASSESSING THE SHOULDER COMPLEX

The shoulder complex is one of the most difficult regions of the body to evaluate.[13] One reason for this difficulty is that the biomechanical demands placed on these structures during overhand accelerations and decelerations are not yet clearly understood.[8] It is essential to understand the athlete's major complaints and the possible mechanisms of the injury.

Generally, fitness professionals, coaches, and others working in areas related to exercise and sports science are not adequately trained to evaluate injuries. It is strongly recommended that injured athletes be referred to qualified medical personnel (i.e., physicians, athletic trainers, physical therapists) for injury evaluation. Information on the following special tests has been included simply to give some idea about the different basic tests that nonmedical personnel may do to determine the nature and severity of the athlete's injury. The primary responsibility of those who are not health care personnel is to be able to recognize any potential "red flags" associated with the injury, provide appropriate first aid for the injury, and make correct decisions about how the injury should be managed initially, including immediate return to play or activity decisions. (Refer to Chapter 8.)

History

The following questions in regard to the athlete's complaints can help determine the nature of the injury:

- What happened to cause this pain?
- Have you ever had this problem before?
- What is the duration and intensity of the pain?
- Where is the pain located?
- Is there crepitus during movement or numbness or distortion in temperature such as a cold or warm feeling?
- Is there a feeling of weakness or a sense of fatigue?
- What shoulder movements or positions seem to aggravate or relieve the pain?
- If therapy has been given before, what, if anything, offered pain relief (e.g., cold, heat, massage, or analgesic medication)?
- Have there been any recent changes in the training program?

Observation

The athlete should be generally observed while walking and standing. Observation during walking can reveal asymmetry of arm swing or a lean toward the painful shoulder. The athlete is next observed from the front, side, and back while in a standing position. Observe for postural asymmetries, bony or joint deformities, or muscle spasm or guarding patterns.[13]

Anterior Observation

- Are both shoulder tips even with one another, or is one depressed?
- Is one shoulder held higher because of muscle spasm or guarding?
- Does one shoulder look square relative to the other, which is more rounded (indicating a shoulder dislocation)?
- Is the lateral end of the clavicle easily visible (indicating acromioclavicular sprain or dislocation)?
- Is one lateral acromion process more easily visible than the other (indicating a possible glenohumeral dislocation)?
- Does the clavicular shaft appear deformed (indicating possible fracture)?
- Is there loss of the normal lateral deltoid muscle contour (indicating glenohumeral dislocation)?
- Is there an indentation in the upper biceps region (indicating rupture of biceps tendon)?

Lateral Observation

- Is there thoracic kyphosis (see Figure 20–11A) or are the shoulders slumped forward (indicating weakness of the erector muscles of the spine and tightness in the pectoral region)?
- Is there forward or backward arm hang (indicating possible scoliosis; see Figure 20–11C)?

Posterior Observation

- Is there asymmetry such as a low shoulder or an uneven scapula (indicating postural scoliosis)?
- Is the scapula protracted because of constricted pectoral muscles?
- Is there a distracted or winged scapula on one or both sides? A winged scapula on both sides could indicate a general weakness of the serratus anterior muscles; if only one side is winged, the long thoracic nerve may be injured (Figure 18–6).

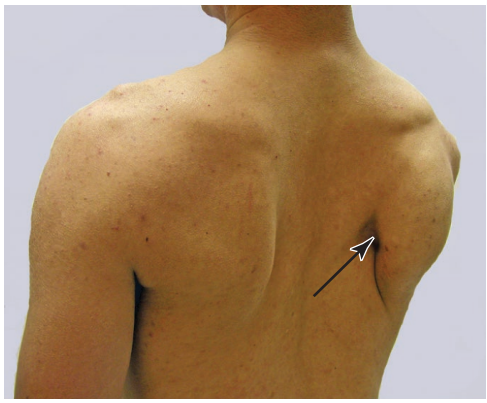


FIGURE 18–6 **Winged scapula.** ©William E. Prentice

Palpation

Palpation of the bony structures should be done with the examiner standing in front of and then behind the athlete. Both shoulders are palpated at the same time for pain sites and deformities. Palpation of the muscles around the shoulder detects point tenderness, abnormal swelling or lumps, muscle spasm or guarding, and trigger points. The shoulder is then also palpated anteriorly and posteriorly.[13]

Special Tests

A number of special tests can help to determine the nature of an injury to the shoulder complex.[12] The shoulder's active and passive range of motion should be noted and compared to the opposite side. Strength of the shoulder musculature should be assessed by resisted manual muscle testing. Both the muscles that act on the glenohumeral joint and those that act on the scapula should be tested.

Following are descriptions of other tests used to assess shoulder instability, shoulder impingement, and muscle weakness.

Apprehension Test With the arm abducted 90 degrees, the shoulder is slowly and gently externally rotated as far as the athlete will allow. The athlete with a history of anterior glenohumeral instability shows great apprehension that is reflected by a facial grimace before an end point can be reached. At no time should this movement be forced (Figure 18–7).[12]

FIGURE 18–7 **Shoulder apprehension test.** ©William E. Prentice

Tests for Shoulder Impingement Forced flexion and adduction of the humerus in the overhead position may cause impingement of soft-tissue structures between the humeral head and the coracoacromial ligament (Figure 18-8A). A second test involves horizontal adduction with forced internal rotation of the humerus that also produces impingement (Figure 18–8B). A positive sign is indicated if the athlete feels pain and reacts with a grimace.[16]

Test for Supraspinatus Muscle Weakness The full can test for supraspinatus muscle weakness has the athlete bring both arms into 90 degrees of forward flexion and 30 degrees of horizontal adduction (Figure 18–9). In this position, the arms are externally rotated, thumbs pointing upward. A downward pressure is then applied. Weakness and pain can be detected as well as comparative strength between the two arms.[12]

One test for supraspinatus weakness is the empty can test.

A

B

FIGURE 18–8 **Shoulder impingement tests.** ©William E. Prentice

FIGURE 18–9 Full can test for supraspinatus muscle weakness. Performed in 30 degrees of horizontal adduction with the thumbs pointed up. The examiner applies pressure to force the arm downward. ©William E. Prentice

A

B

FIGURE 18–10 **(A)** Assessing sternoclavicular joint instability. **(B)** Assessing acromioclavicular joint instability. ©William E. Prentice

Test for Sternoclavicular Joint Instability With the patient sitting, pressure is applied anteriorly, then superiorly, and then inferiorly to the proximal clavicle to determine any instability or increased pain associated with a sprain (Figure 18–10A). Pressure applied to the tip of the shoulder in a medial direction may also increase pain.[1]

Test for Acromioclavicular Joint Instability The acromioclavicular joint is first palpated to determine whether there is any displacement of the acromion process and the distal head of the clavicle. Next, pressure is applied to the distal clavicle in all four directions to determine stability and any associated increase in pain (Figure 18–10B). Pressure is applied to the tip of the shoulder, which compresses the acromioclavicular joint and may also increase pain.[1]

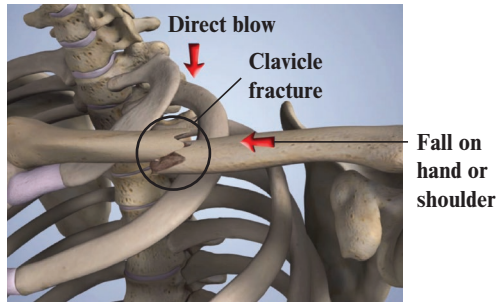
RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF SHOULDER INJURIES

Clavicle Fractures

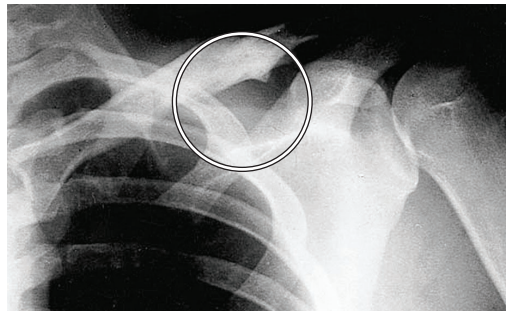
Cause of Injury Clavicle fractures (Figure 18–11) are one of the most frequent fractures in sports.[27] Fractures of the clavicle result from a fall on the outstretched arm, a fall on the tip of the shoulder, or a direct impact.[5] They most often occur in the middle ⅓ of the clavicle.

Signs of Injury The athlete with a fractured clavicle usually supports the arm on the injured side and tilts his or her head toward that side, with the chin turned to the opposite side. During inspection, the injured clavicle appears a little lower than the unaffected side. Palpation may also reveal swelling, point tenderness, and mild deformity.[5]

Care The clavicle fracture is cared for immediately by applying a shoulder immobilizer



A



B

FIGURE 18–11 Clavicle fractures. **(A)** Typically occur from either a direct blow or a fall on the shoulder. **(B)** X-ray of clavicle fracture. (B) ©William E. Prentice

FIGURE 18–12 **Shoulder immobilizer.** ©2014 Breg, Inc.

FIGURE 18–13 **Clavicle strap for clavicle fracture.**
Courtesy of DJO Global

and by treating the athlete for shock, if necessary (Figure 18–12). If X-ray examination reveals a fracture, a closed reduction should be attempted by the physician, followed by immobilization with a clavicle strap (Figure 18–13). Immobilization should be maintained for 6 to 8 weeks. Following this period of immobilization, gentle isometric and mobilization exercises should begin with the athlete using a sling for an additional 3 to 4 weeks to provide protection. Occasionally, clavicle fractures may require surgical management.[26]

Fractures of the Humerus

Cause of Injury Fractures of the humerus (Figure 18–14) happen occasionally in sports, usually as the result of a direct blow, a dislocation, or the impact of falling onto the outstretched arm.

Signs of Injury A fracture of the humerus is difficult to recognize by visual inspection alone; X-ray examination gives the only positive proof. Some of the more prevalent signs that may be present are pain, inability to move the arm, swelling, point tenderness, and discoloration of the superficial tissue.[21]

Care Recognition of humeral shaft fractures requires immediate application of a splint or immediate support with a sling, treatment for shock, and referral

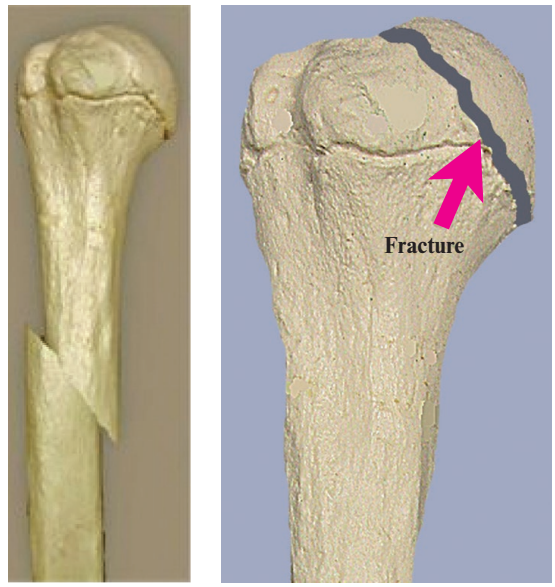


FIGURE 18–14 **Humerus fracture: (A) Mid-shaft humerus fracture. (B) Fracture of the humeral head.** ©William E. Prentice

to a physician. The athlete with a fracture to the humerus will be out of competition for approximately 2 to 6 months, depending on the location and severity of the fracture.[21]

Sternoclavicular Joint Sprain

Cause of Injury A sternoclavicular sprain (Figure 18–15) is a relatively uncommon occurrence in sports. The mechanism of the injury is either an indirect force transmitted through the humerus, the shoulder joint, and the clavicle, or a direct impact to the clavicle. Usually the clavicle is displaced upward and forward.

Signs of Injury A sprain to the sternoclavicular joint can be described in three degrees. A grade 1 sprain is characterized by little pain and disability, with some point tenderness but no joint deformity. A grade 2 sprain displays subluxation of the sternoclavicular joint with visible deformity, pain, swelling, point tenderness, and an inability to abduct the shoulder through a full range of motion or to bring the arm across the chest, indicating disruption of the stabilizing ligaments. The grade 3 sprain, which is the most severe, presents a picture of complete dislocation with gross displacement of the clavicle at its sternal junction, swelling, and disability, indicating complete rupture of the sternoclavicular ligament.[31] A posterior or "retro-sternal" dislocation of the clavicle is rare but has the potential to be a life-threatening injury due to hemorrhage and compromise of the nearby trachea.[11]

Care POLICE should be used immediately, followed by immobilization (refer to Figure 18–13). Immobilization is usually maintained for 3 to 5 weeks, followed by graded reconditioning exercises.[11] There is a high

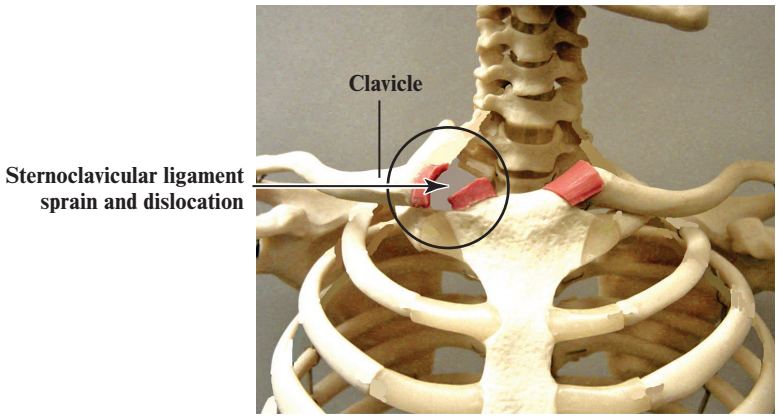


FIGURE 18–15 Sternoclavicular sprain and dislocation. ©William E. Prentice

18–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A soccer player is tripped to the ground on a hard tackle and lands on the tip of her left shoulder. She complains of pain both in the tip of her shoulder and in her chest. She has difficulty lifting her arm above her shoulder because of the pain.

? What injury diagnosis might result from this mechanism of injury?

incidence of recurrence of sternoclavicular sprains.

Acromioclavicular Joint Sprain

Cause of Injury The acromioclavicular joint is extremely vulnerable to sprains, especially in collision sports.[30] The primary mechanisms are a fall on an outstretched arm or direct impact to the tip of the shoulder that forces the acromion process downward, backward, and inward while the clavicle is pushed down against the rib cage (Figure 18–16A).[15]

Signs of Injury In a grade 1 acromioclavicular sprain, there is point tenderness and discomfort during movement at the junction between the acromion process and the outer end of the clavicle. There is no deformity, indicating only mild stretching of the acromioclavicular and coracoclavicular ligaments (Figure 18–16B).[1]

A grade 2 sprain shows tearing or rupture of the acromioclavicular ligament and associated

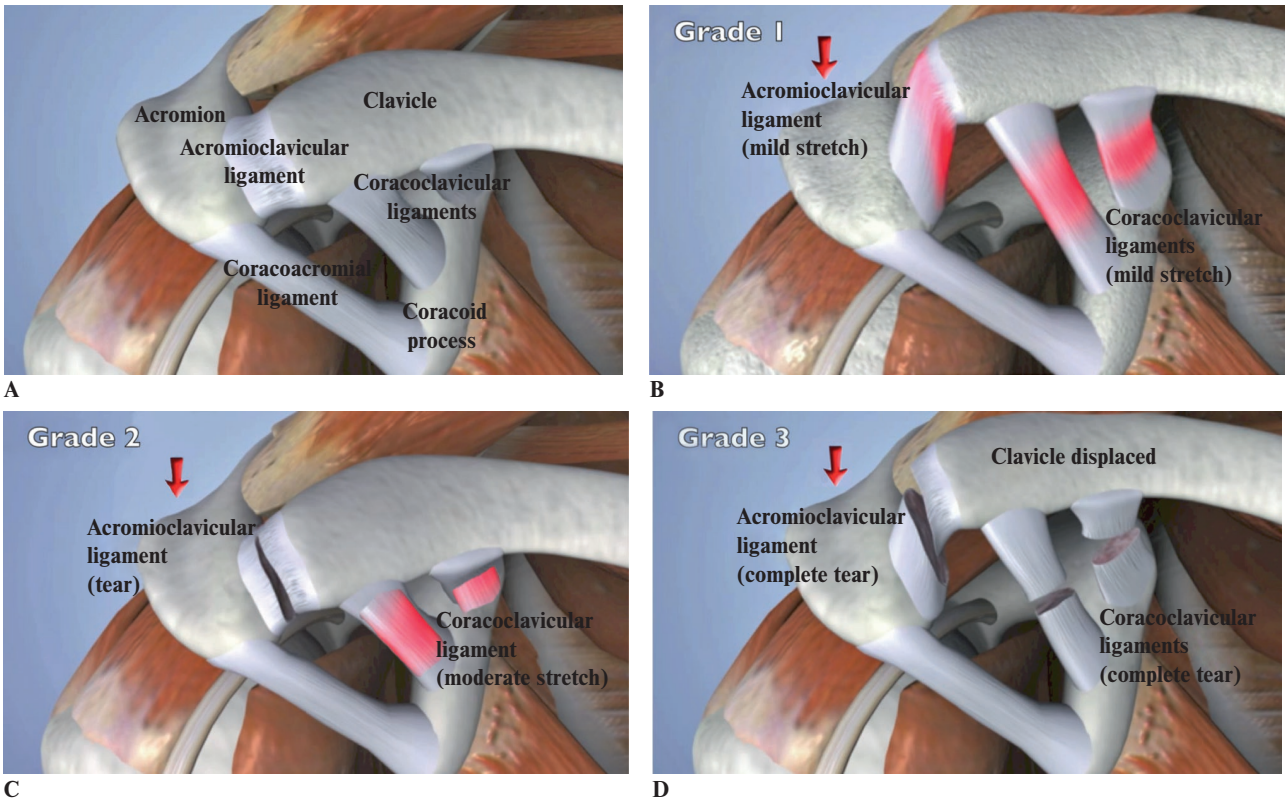


FIGURE 18–16 **(A)** Joint and ligament anatomy. **(B)** Grade 1 AC sprain. **(C)** Grade 2 AC sprain. **(D)** Grade 3 AC sprain.

stretching of the coracoacromial ligament. There is point tenderness during palpation of the injury site, and the athlete is unable to fully abduct through a full range of motion or to bring the arm completely across the chest (Figure 18–16C).[1]

A grade 3 sprain involves rupture of the acromioclavicular and coracoclavicular ligaments with dislocation of the clavicle. Such an injury has gross deformity and prominence of the distal clavicle, severe pain, loss of movement, and instability of the shoulder complex (Figure 18–16D).[1]

Care Immediate care of the acromioclavicular sprain involves three basic procedures: (1) application of cold and pressure to control local hemorrhage, (2) stabilization of the joint by a shoulder immobilizer (refer to Figure 18–12), and (3) referral to a physician for definitive diagnosis and treatment.[15] Immobilization ranges from 3 to 4 days with a grade 1 to approximately 2 weeks with a grade 3. With all grades, an aggressive rehabilitation program involving joint mobilization, flexibility exercises, and strengthening exercises should begin immediately following the recommended period of protection.[26] Progression should be as rapid as the athlete can tolerate without increased pain or swelling.

Glenohumeral Dislocations

Cause of Injury The most common glenohumeral dislocation is one in which the head of the humerus is forced out of its joint capsule in an anterior direction past the glenoid labrum and then downward to rest under the coracoid process (Figure 18–17).[6] The mechanism for an anterior dislocation is abduction, external rotation, and extension that forces the humeral head out of the glenoid cavity (see Figure 18–7 for the apprehension test).[6] An arm tackle in football or rugby or abnormal forces created in executing a throw can produce a sequence of events resulting in dislocation. On rare occasions, the humerus dislocates in an inferior direction.

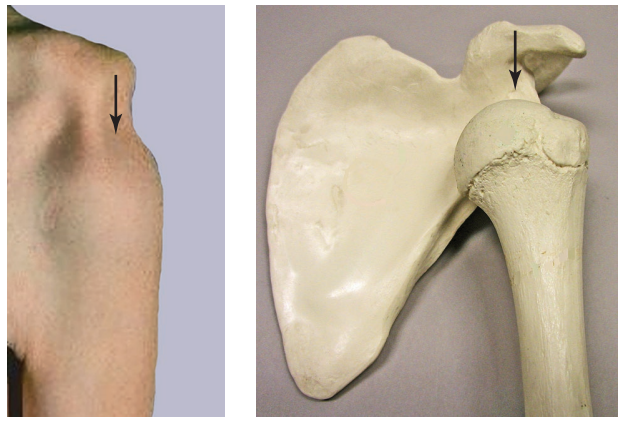
18–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A gymnast has a recurrent anterior dislocation of the glenohumeral joint. He is extremely worried that his shoulder will dislocate again.

? What types of activities should he concentrate on during rehabilitation to help reduce the likelihood of a subsequent dislocation?

One test for glenohumeral instability is the apprehension test.

Once an athlete has suffered a glenohumeral dislocation, he or she faces a high probability of recurrence because of chronic instability resulting from stretching or tearing of the glenohumeral joint capsule, the glenohumeral ligaments, defects in the glenoid labrum, or weakness of the rotator cuff muscles that function to dynamically stabilize the glenohumeral joint.[1,3,19,29]



A B

FIGURE 18–17 **(A)** Anterior shoulder dislocation appearance. **(B)** Model of an anterior/inferior shoulder dislocation. ©William E. Prentice

Signs of Injury The athlete with an anterior dislocation displays a flattened deltoid contour. Palpation of the axilla reveals prominence of the humeral head. The athlete carries the affected arm in slight abduction and external rotation and is unable to touch the opposite shoulder with the hand of the affected arm. There is often moderate to severe pain and disability.[9]

Care Initial management of the shoulder dislocation requires immediate immobilization in a position of comfort using a sling; immediate reduction by a physician; and control of the hemorrhage by cold packs.[4] After the dislocation has been reduced and immobilized, muscle reconditioning should be initiated as soon as possible.[26,34] Protective sling immobilization should continue for approximately 1 week after reduction (refer to Figure 18–12). The athlete is instructed to begin a strengthening program, progressing as quickly as pain allows. Protective shoulder braces may help limit shoulder motion (Figure 18–18).[7]

Shoulder Impingement Syndrome

Cause of Injury Shoulder impingement involves a mechanical compression of the supraspinatus tendon, the subacromial

18–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A volleyball player consistently experiences pain when serving the ball overhead. She also indicates that most of the time when she spikes a ball at the net she experiences pain. During an evaluation, it is observed that when the humerus is flexed and internally rotated, the pain is worse.

? What is most likely causing the pain when the athlete's shoulder is placed in this overhead position?

FIGURE 18–18 Protective braces for the shoulder prevent overhead motion. Courtesy of DJO Global

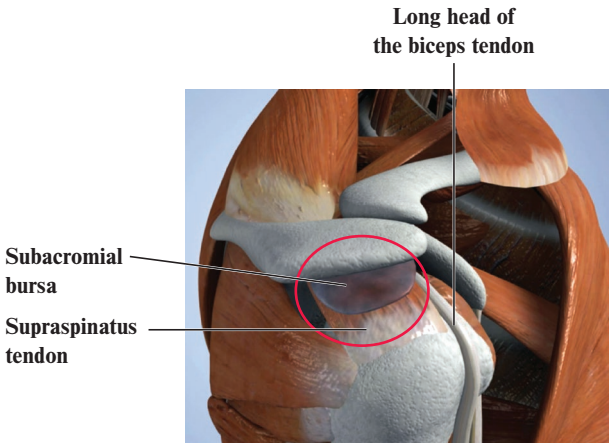


FIGURE 18–19 Shoulder lateral view showing the structures that are compressed when there is shoulder impingement.

bursa, and the long head of the biceps tendon, all of which are located under the coracoacromial arch (Figure 18–19).[25] Repetitive compression eventually leads to irritation and inflammation of these structures.[28] Impingement most often occurs in repetitive overhead activities such as throwing, swimming, serving a tennis ball, or spiking a volleyball.[24]

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of diffuse pain around the acromion whenever the arm is in an overhead position. There may be a painful arc in the range of motion between 70 and 120 degrees of abduction.[25] The external rotators are generally weaker than the internal rotators. There may be some tightness in the posterior and inferior joint capsule. There usually is a positive impingement test, and the empty can test may increase pain.[16]

Care Management of impingement involves restoring normal biomechanics to the shoulder joint in an effort to maintain space under the coracoacromial arch during overhead activities.[10] POLICE can be used to modulate pain initially. Exercises should concentrate on strengthening the rotator cuff muscles and those muscles that produce movement of the scapula, and on stretching the posterior and inferior joint capsule.[20] The activity that caused the problem in the first place should be modified so that the athlete has initial control over the frequency and the level of the activity, with a gradual and progressive increase in intensity.[18]

Shoulder impingement involves a mechanical compression of the supraspinatus tendon, the subacromial bursa, and the long head of the biceps tendon under the coracoacromial arch.

Rotator Cuff Strains

Cause of Injury The most common rotator cuff tendon strain involves the supraspinatus muscle, although any of the rotator cuff tendons are subject to injury (Figure 18–20).[33] The mechanism of rotator cuff strains involves dynamic rotation of the arm at a high velocity, as occurs during overhead throwing or any other activity in which there is rotation of the humerus.[22] Most rotator cuff tears

Rotator cuff muscles:

- Subscapularis
- Supraspinatus
- Infraspinatus
- Teres minor

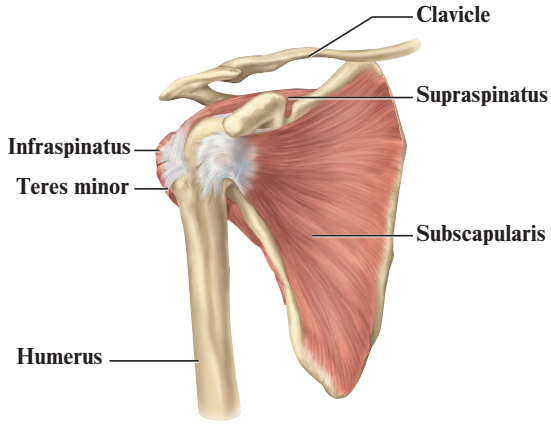


FIGURE 18–20 Medial rotator cuff muscles (anterior view). (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

occur in the supraspinatus in individuals with a long history of shoulder impingement or instability and are relatively uncommon in athletes under the age of 40.[26] Tears of the rotator cuff muscles are almost always near their insertion on the humerus.

Signs of Injury Like other muscle strains, rotator cuff strains present pain with muscle contraction, some tenderness on palpation, and loss of strength because of pain. A tear or complete rupture of one of the rotator cuff tendons produces an extremely disabling condition in which pain, loss of function, swelling, and point tenderness are symptoms.[33] In the case of a tear of the supraspinatus tendon, both the impingement tests and the empty can test are positive.[12]

Care POLICE can be used to modulate pain initially. Exercises should concentrate on progressive strengthening of the rotator cuff muscles. The frequency and level of the activity should be reduced initially, with a gradual and progressive increase in intensity.[26]

Subacromial Bursitis

Cause of Injury The shoulder joint is subject to chronic inflammatory conditions resulting from trauma or overuse.[26] Bursitis may develop from a direct impact, a fall on the tip of the shoulder, or as a result of shoulder impingement. The bursa that is most often inflamed is the subacromial bursa (see Figure 18–3).

Signs of Injury The athlete has pain when trying to move the shoulder, especially in abduction or with flexion, adduction, and internal rotation. There is also tenderness to palpation in the area just under the acromion. Impingement tests are positive.

Care The use of cold packs and anti-inflammatory medications to reduce inflammation is necessary. If impingement is the primary mechanism precipitating bursitis, then, as previously discussed, measures should be taken to correct this activity.[26] The athlete must maintain a consistent program of exercise, with emphasis placed on maintaining a full range of motion, so that muscle contractures and adhesions do not immobilize the joint.

Biceps Tenosynovitis

Cause of Injury Tenosynovitis of the long biceps muscle tendon is common among athletes engaged in overhead activities. Biceps tenosynovitis is prevalent among pitchers, tennis players, volleyball players, and javelin throwers.[32] The repeated stretching of the biceps in these highly ballistic activities may eventually cause an inflammation of both the tendon and its synovial sheath.[32] Tenosynovitis may also be associated with weakness of the rotator cuff muscles.

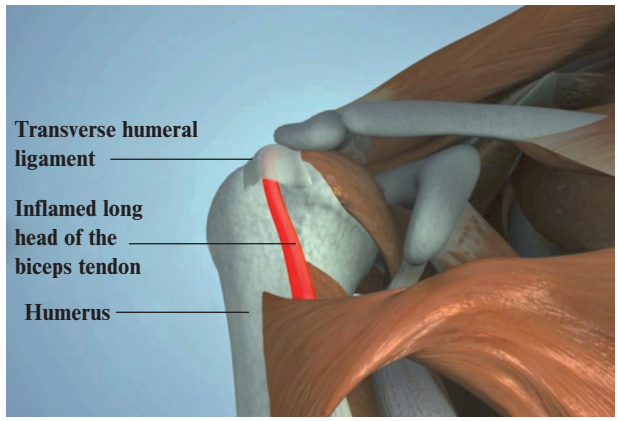


FIGURE 18–21 Biceps tenosynovitis is an inflammation of the long head of the biceps tendon.

Signs of Injury There is tenderness in the anterior upper arm. There may also be some swelling, increased warmth, and crepitus caused by the inflammation (Figure 18–21). The athlete may complain of pain when performing dynamic overhead throwing activities.[22]

Care Biceps tenosynovitis is best cared for by complete rest for several days, combined with daily applications of cold to reduce inflammation. Anti-inflammatory medications are also beneficial in reducing inflammation. After the inflammation is controlled, a gradual program of strengthening and stretching the biceps muscle should be initiated.[26]

18–4 Critical Thinking Exercise

A football offensive lineman contuses his upper arm while blocking.

? What should the coach be mainly concerned about, and how can this be avoided?

Contusions of the Upper Arm

Cause of Injury Contusions of the upper arm are frequent in contact sports. Although any muscle of the upper arm is subject to bruising, the area most often affected is the lateral aspect, primarily the brachialis muscle and portions of the triceps and biceps muscles. Repeated contusions to the lateral aspect of the upper arm can lead to myositis ossificans, more commonly known as linebacker's arm or blocker's exostosis. In myositis ossificans,

abnormal calcification or bone growth occurs in a muscle or in soft tissues adjacent to bone.[26]

Signs of Injury Bruises to the upper arm area can be particularly handicapping, causing pain and tenderness, increased warmth, discoloration, and difficulty in achieving full extension and flexion of the elbow.

Care POLICE should be applied for a minimum of 24 hours after injury. In most cases, this condition responds rapidly to treatment, usually within a few days. The key to treatment is to provide protection to the contused area to prevent repeated episodes that increase the likelihood of myositis ossificans.[26] It is also important for the athlete to maintain a full range of motion through stretching of the contused muscle.

SUMMARY

- For the shoulder complex to have such a great degree of mobility, some compromise in stability had to be made; thus, the shoulder is highly susceptible to injury. Many sport activities that involve repetitive overhead movements place a great deal of stress on the shoulder joint.
- Four major articulations are associated with the shoulder complex: the sternoclavicular joint and ligament, the acromioclavicular joint and ligament, the glenohumeral joint and ligament, and the scapulothoracic joint.
- The muscles acting on the shoulder joint consist of those that originate on the axial skeleton and attach to the humerus, those that originate on the scapula and attach to the humerus, and a third group that attaches the axial skeleton to the scapula.
- When evaluating injuries to the shoulder complex, the coach must take into consideration all four joints. A number of special tests can provide insight relative to the nature of a particular injury.
- Fractures may occur to the clavicle or humerus, whereas sprains may occur at the sternoclavicular, acromioclavicular, or glenohumeral joints.
- Shoulder dislocations are relatively common, with an anterior dislocation the most likely to occur. After a dislocation has been reduced and immobilized, muscle reconditioning should be initiated as soon as possible.
- Shoulder impingement most often occurs in athletes involved with overhead activities. Shoulder impingement involves a mechanical compression of the supraspinatus tendon, the subacromial bursa, and the long head of the biceps tendon under the coracoacromial ligament.
- A number of injuries, including rotator cuff strain, bursitis, contusions, and biceps tenosynovitis, are all common injuries to the shoulder complex in athletes.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

18-1 Falling on the tip of the shoulder is a typical mechanism of injury for a sprain of the acromioclavicular joint, the sternoclavicular joint, or both. It is also possible that a clavicle fracture has occurred.

18-2 Exercises should be designed to strengthen the muscles of the rotator cuff in particular and the muscles that allow the scapula to provide a stable base of support. Exercises that stress neuromuscular control should begin immediately in the rehabilitation program.

18-3 This athlete's pain is likely caused by mechanical impingement or compression of the supraspinatus tendon, the subacromial bursa, or the long head of the biceps under the coracoacromial arch as the arm moves into a fully abducted or flexed position. The space under the arch becomes even more compressed as the humerus is internally rotated, which occurs during the follow-through.

18-4 The biggest concern is that following repeated contusions myositis ossificans may develop in the biceps or brachialis. This can be prevented by having the athlete wear a protective pad to prevent subsequent contusion.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. What are the bony and soft-tissue structures associated with the shoulder complex?
2. What four major joints make up the shoulder complex?
3. How can shoulder injuries be prevented?
4. Discuss the throwing motion and the injuries that can occur in each phase.
5. What causes clavicular fractures? How are they cared for?
6. Discuss the mechanism of injury of sternoclavicular and acromioclavicular ligament sprains.
7. What is the common mechanism of an anterior glenohumeral dislocation? How is it cared for?
8. What structural anatomic problems need to be addressed when treating shoulder impingement?
9. Briefly describe the history of a rotator cuff tear.
10. How does an athlete develop bursitis in the shoulder?
11. What is myositis ossificans, and how can you prevent its development?
12. How may an athlete develop biceps tenosynovitis?

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Balcik, B. 2013. Evaluation and treatment of sternoclavicular, clavicular, and acromioclavicular injuries. *Primary Care: Clinics in Office Practice* 40(4):911–923.
2. Bozkurt, M., & Acar, H. 2017. *Clinical anatomy of the shoulder: An atlas*. New York, NY: Springer.
3. Burns, T. 2010. Management of shoulder instability in in-season athletes. *Physician and Sports Medicine* 38(3):55–60.
4. Cools, A., & Borms, D. 2016.Evidence-based rehabilitation of athletes with glenohumeral instability. *Knee Surgery, Sports Traumatology, Arthroscopy* 24(2):382–389.
5. Craig, E. 2016. Fractures of the clavicle. In C. Rockwood & F. Masten (eds.), *The shoulder*. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Health Sciences.
6. Dodson, C. 2008. Anterior glenohumeral joint dislocations. *Orthopedic Clinics of North America* 39(4):507–518.
7. Finestone, A. 2009. Bracing in external rotation for traumatic anterior dislocation of the shoulder. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery* 91(7):918–921.
8. Greenberg, D. L. 2014. Evaluation and treatment of shoulder pain. *Medical Clinics of North America* 98(3):487–504.
9. Franceschi, F., & Vasta, S.2016. Shoulder anterior instability. In P. Volpi (ed.), *Arthroscopy and sport injuries: Applications in high-level athletes*. New York, NY: Springer.
10. Gebremariam, L., & Hay, E. 2014. Subacromial impingement syndrome: Effectiveness of physiotherapy and manual therapy. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 48(16):1202–1208.
11. Groh, G. 2011. Management of traumatic sternoclavicular joint injuries. *Journal of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons* 19(1):1–7.
12. Hegedus, E. 2008. Physical examination tests of the shoulder: A systematic review with meta-analysis of individual tests. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 42:82–90.
13. House, J. 2010. Evaluation and management of shoulder pain in primary care clinics. *Southern Medical Journal* 103(11):1129–1135.
14. Jancosko, J., & Kazanjian, J. 2012. Shoulder injuries in the throwing athlete. *Physician and Sportsmedicine* 40(1):84–90.
15. Johansen, J. 2011. Acromioclavicular joint injuries: Indications for treatment and treatment options. *Journal of Shoulder and Elbow Surgery* 20(2):70–82.
16. Kelly, S. 2010. The value of physical tests for subacromial impingement syndrome: A study of diagnostic accuracy. *Clinical Rehabilitation* 24(2):149–158.
17. Kibler, B, Kuhn ,J. The disabled throwing shoulder: Spectum of pathology-10-year update. *Arthroscopy: The Journal of Arthroscopic & Related Surgery* 2013;29(1):141–161.
18. Kromer, T. 2013. Physiotherapy in patients with clinical signs of shoulder impingement syndrome: A randomized controlled trial. *Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine* 113(1):58–64.
19. Kuhn, J. 2010. A new classification system for shoulder instability. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 44:341–346.
20. Kuhn, J. 2009. Exercise in the treatment of rotator cuff impingement: A systematic review and a synthesized evidence-based rehabilitation protocol. *Journal of Shoulder and Elbow Surgery* 18(1):138–160.
21. Kumar, V. 2013. Fractures of the shaft of the humerus. *Orthopedics and Trauma* 27(6):393–402.
22. Laudner, K., & Sipes, R. 2009. The incidence of shoulder injury among collegiate overhead athletes. *Journal of Intercollegiate Sport* 2(2):260–268.
23. Lewis, J. 2010. Rotator cuff tendinopathy: A model for the continuum of pathology and related management. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 44:918–923.
24. Manske, R., & Grant-Newman, M. 2013. Shoulder posterior internal impingement in the overhead athlete. *International Journal of Sports Physical Therapy* 8(2):194–204.
25. Masten, F., & Arntz, C. 2016. Subacromial impingement. In C. Rockwood & F. Masten (eds.), *The shoulder*. Philadelphia, PA: W. B. Saunders.
26. Myers, J., Rucinski, T., Prentice, W., & Schneider, R. 2015. Rehabilitation of shoulder injuries. In W. Prentice (ed.), *Rehabilitation techniques in sports medicine and athletic training*. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.
27. Nan Tassel, D. 2014. Incidence of clavicle fracture in sports: Analysis of the NEISS database. *International Journal of Sports Medicine* 65(1):83–86.
28. Norris, C. 2014. Shoulder impingement. *SportEx Dynamics* 42(10):21–28.
29. Owens, B. 2009. Incidence of glenohumeral instability in collegiate athletics. *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 37(9):1750–1754.
30. Pallis, M. 2012. Epidemiology of acromioclavicular joint injury in young athletes. *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 40(9):2072–2077.
31. Phillipson, M. 2012. Traumatic dislocation of the sternoclavicular joint. *Orthopedics and Trauma* 26(6):380–384.
32. Raney, E., & Thankam, F. 2017. Pain and pathogenesis of biceps teninopathy. *American Journal of Translational Research* 9(6):2668–2683.
33. Shaffer, B., & Huffman, D. 2014. Rotator cuff tears in the throwing athlete. *Sports Medicine & Arthroscopy Review* 22(2):101–109.
34. Smith, D. 2013. Sideline management of acute dislocation of the glenohumeral joint: A unique approach to athlete self-reduction. *International Journal of Sports Physical Therapy* 8(1):80–83.
35. Wilk, K., Hooks, T., & Andrews, J. 2016. The athlete's shoulder: Surgical treatment and rehabilitation In G. Di Giacomo & S. Bellachioma (eds.), *Shoulder surgery rehabilitation*. New York, NY: Springer.
36. Wrath, R. 2014. Anatomy and biomechanics of the sternoclavicular joint. *Operative Techniques in Sports Medicine* 42(10):2517–2524.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Andrews, J., & Wilk, K. 2009. *The athlete's shoulder*. New York, NY: Churchill Livingstone.

Concentrates on both conservative and surgical treatment of shoulder injuries occurring specifically in the athletic population.

Donatelli, R. 2011. *Physical therapy of the shoulder*. Philadelphia, PA: Churchill Livingstone.

Clinical reference on shoulder rehabilitation, for physical therapists and rehabilitation professionals.

Iannotti, J., & Williams, G. 2013. *Disorders of the shoulder*, vols. 1 & 2: *Diagnosis and management*. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott, Williams, & Wilkins.

A complete two-volume set that covers essentially every subject relative to the shoulder complex.

Krishnan, S., & Hawkins, R. 2004. *The shoulder and the overhead athlete*. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.

This text delivers comprehensive and up-to-date information on the evaluation, treatment, rehabilitation, and prevention of shoulder injuries in throwing and other overhead activities.

WEBSITES

AAOS OthoInfo: Common Shoulder Injuries: https://orthoinfo.aaos.org/en/diseases-conditions/common-shoulder-injuries

Information on causes and management of shoulder injuries from the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons.

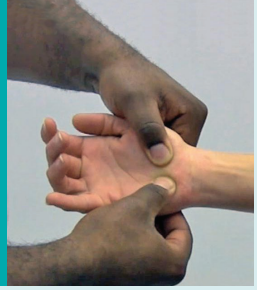
MedlinePlus: Shoulder Injuries and Disorders: www.medlineplus.gov/shoulderinjuriesanddisorders.html

Search Medline for recent research articles on shoulder injuries and disorders.

WebMD: www.webmd.com/pain-management/why-does-my-shoulder-hurt

Discusses a variety of shoulder injuries in nonmedical format for the layperson.

19



©William E. Prentice

The Elbow, Forearm, Wrist, and Hand

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Describe the bony, ligamentous, and muscular anatomy of the elbow, forearm, wrist, and hand.
- List considerations for preventing injuries to the elbow, forearm, wrist, and hand.
- Describe assessment of common elbow, forearm, wrist, and hand injuries.
- Discuss the possible causes and signs of various injuries that can occur in the elbow, forearm, wrist, and hand.
- Explain the procedures that can be used in caring for elbow, forearm, wrist, and hand injuries.

ANATOMY OF THE ELBOW JOINT

Bones

The elbow complex is composed of three bones: the humerus, the radius, and the ulna (Figure 19–1). The distal end of the humerus forms the medial and lateral epicondyles. The olecranon process of the ulna (see Figure 19–11) articulates with the trochlea and olecranon fossa on the posterior humerus. The radial head articulates with the capitellum of the ulna. Three separate joints collectively form the elbow complex: the humeroulnar joint, the humeroradial joint, and the radioulnar joint. Flexion and extension occur at the humeroulnar and humeroradial joints. Pronation (rotating the forearm inward) and supination (rotating the forearm outward) occur at the radioulnar joint.[33]

Ligaments

The ulnar (medial) collateral ligament is most important for stability to a valgus force of the elbow and extends from the medial epicondyle to the proximal ulna. The annular ligament extends from the ulna, forming a sling around the radial head and thus allowing free rotation of the radius while providing stability and preventing radial head luxation. The radial (lateral) collateral ligament, which provides stability to a varus force, extends from the lateral epicondyle and attaches primarily to the annular ligament (refer to Figure 19–1).[16]

Muscles

The muscles of the elbow consist of the biceps brachii, the brachialis, and the brachioradialis muscles, all of which are flexors of the elbow. The brachialis is the primary elbow flexor. Extension is controlled by the triceps brachii muscle. The biceps brachii and supinator muscles allow supination of the forearm; the pronator teres, in the proximal forearm, and pronator quadratus, in the distal forearm, act as pronators (Figure 19–2) (Table 19–1).[33] For additional information on movements at the elbow, see Appendix C.

ASSESSING ELBOW INJURIES

Generally, fitness professionals, coaches, and others working in areas related to exercise and sports science are not adequately trained to evaluate injuries. It is strongly recommended that injured athletes be referred to qualified medical personnel (i.e., physicians, athletic trainers, physical therapists) for injury evaluation. Information on the following special tests has

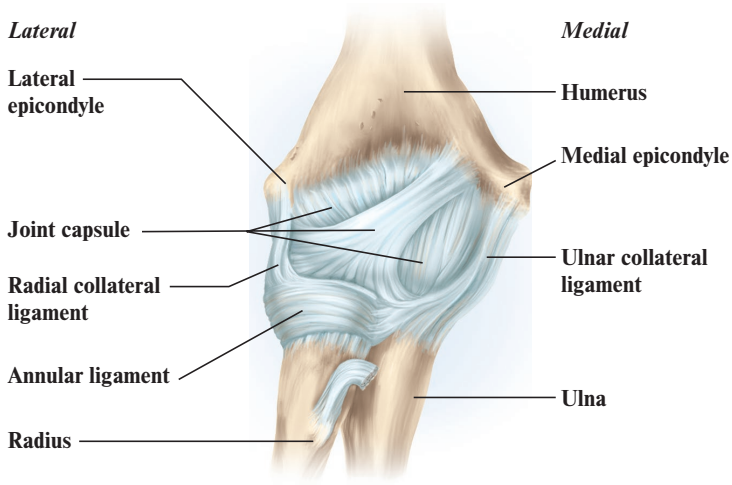


FIGURE 19–1 Bones and ligaments of the elbow joint (anterior view).
(From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

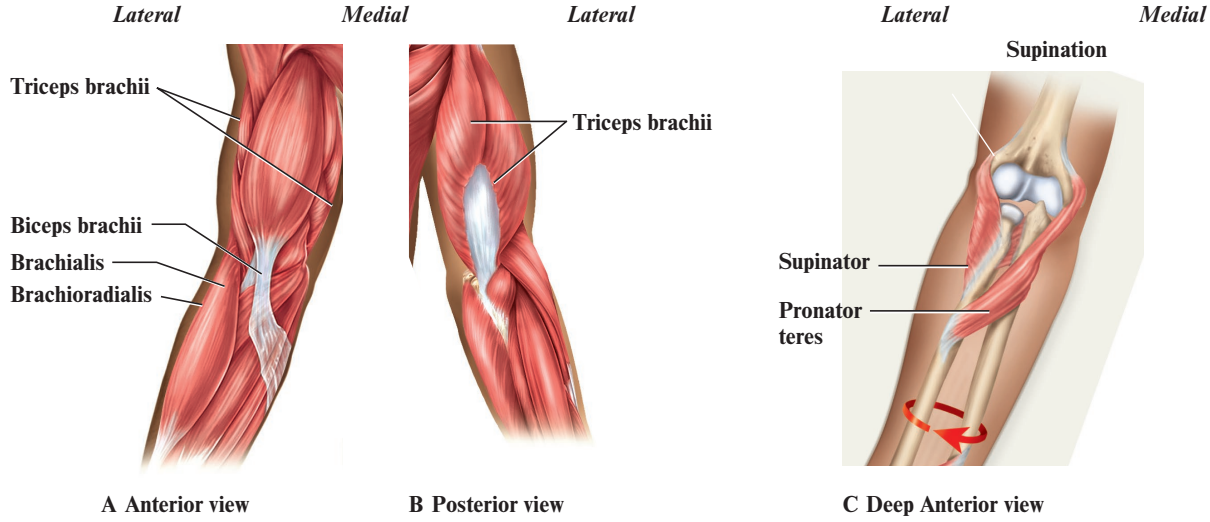


FIGURE 19–2 **(A)** Anterior view. **(B)** Posterior view. **(C)** Deep pronator teres and supinator muscles (anterior view).
(From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

TABLE 19–1	Muscles of the Elbow
Elbow flexion	Biceps brachii Brachialis Brachioradialis
Elbow extension	Triceps brachii Anconeus

been included simply to give some idea about the different basic tests that nonmedical personnel may do to determine the nature and severity of the athlete's injury. The primary responsibility of those who are not health care personnel is to be able to recognize any potential "red flags" associated with the injury, provide appropriate first aid for the injury, and make correct decisions about how the injury should be managed initially, including immediate return to play or activity decisions (refer to Chapter 8).

History

As with all sports injuries, it is important to understand how the injury occurred. The following questions aid in evaluation of the elbow:[17]

- Is this a new injury, or is this a chronic problem that has existed for some time?
- Is the pain or discomfort caused by a direct trauma such as falling on an outstretched arm or landing on the tip of a bent elbow?

- Can the problem be attributed to sudden overextension of the elbow or to repeated overuse of a throwing-type motion?
- Are there movements or positions of the arm that increase or decrease the pain?
- Has a previous elbow injury been diagnosed or treated?
- Is there a feeling of locking or a grating during movement?
- Is there any tingling or numbness radiating down the forearm or in the hand and fingers?

The location and duration should be ascertained. Like shoulder pain, elbow pain or discomfort may be from internal organ dysfunction or referred from a nerve root irritation or nerve impingement.[17]

NOTE: Elbow pain may not be directly associated with an elbow injury but rather may be referred pain from the neck or shoulder.

Observation

The athlete's elbow should be observed for obvious deformities and swelling. Flexion, extensibility, and the carrying angle of the elbow should be observed:

- An abnormally increased or abnormally decreased carrying angle may indicate an injury (Figure 19–3). A normal carrying angle is 5 to 15 degrees.
- A carrying angle that is too great or too little may indicate a bone or growth plate fracture.
- A decrease in normal flexion, an inability to extend fully, or a beyond-normal extension on one side more than the other (Figure 19–4) may be a sign of joint problems. Elbow hyperextension (Figure 19–5) is more common in females than in males.[33]

Palpation

Pain sites and deformities are determined through careful palpation of the epicondyles, olecranon process, distal aspect of the humerus, proximal aspect of the ulna, and proximal radial head.[16]

Soft tissue to be palpated includes the muscles and muscle tendons, joint capsule, and ligaments surrounding the joint.

FIGURE 19–3 Testing for elbow carrying angle and the extent of cubitus valgus and cubitus varus. Normal is 5-15 degrees. ©William E. Prentice

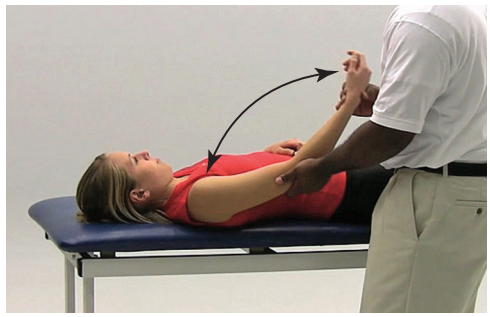


FIGURE 19–4 Testing for elbow flexion and extension. ©William E. Prentice

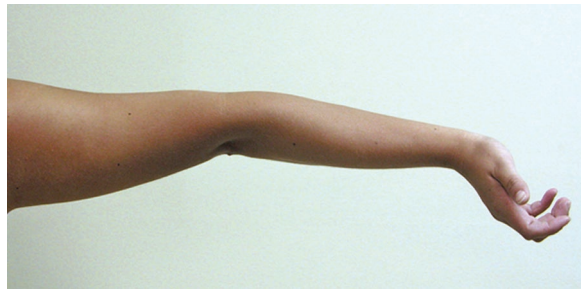


FIGURE 19–5 Observing elbow hyperextension. ©William E. Prentice

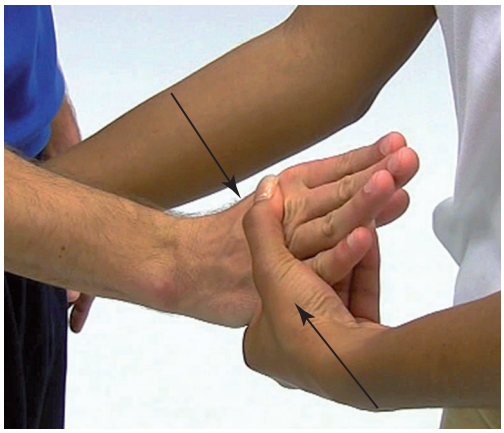
Special Tests

Lateral and Medial Epicondylitis Tests The elbow is flexed to 45 degrees and wrist extension is resisted, which increases pain at the lateral epicondyle (Figure 19-6A). When wrist flexion is resisted, pain increases at the medial epicondyle.[16]

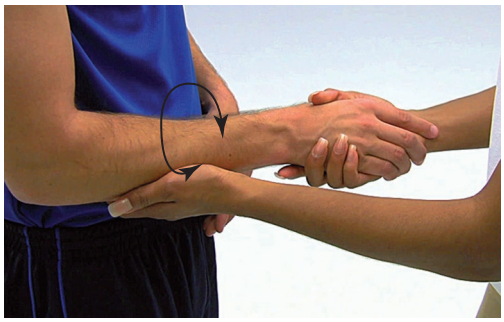
Functional Evaluation The joint and muscles are evaluated for pain sites and weakness through passive, active, and resistive motions consisting of elbow flexion and extension and forearm pronation and supination (Figure 19–6B). Range of motion is particularly noted in passive and active pronation and supination.[16]

PREVENTION OF ELBOW, FOREARM, AND WRIST INJURIES

The elbow, forearm, and wrist are vulnerable to a variety of both acute traumatic injuries and chronic overuse type injuries. Acute injuries usually occur from either a direct blow or falling on an outstretched hand. In contact sports such as football or in high-impact collision sports like baseball,



A



B

FIGURE 19–6 (A) Medial and lateral epicondylitis test. (B) Elbow evaluation includes performing passive, active, and resistive forearm pronation and supination. ©William E. Prentice

wearing appropriate protective padding can reduce the force of the impact, thus minimizing both the likelihood and the severity of the injury. Learning how to fall correctly by landing and rolling without putting the hand out to break the fall can help to prevent many of the injuries that would normally occur in the wrist, forearm, or elbow.[40]

The chances of developing chronic overuse injuries that typically occur in the elbow or in the wrist may be reduced by using several strategies. The athlete should limit the number of repetitions in throwing a baseball or in hitting a tennis ball. Make certain that the mechanics of the throwing or hitting techniques being used are correct and are not creating unnecessary stresses and strains. Select and use equipment that is appropriate for a specific skill level (e.g., tennis racket with the appropriate grip size). The athlete should maintain appropriate levels of strength and endurance in the muscles surrounding these joints by engaging in strength training. He or she should routinely stretch the muscles in the elbow, forearm, and wrist to make certain that they have the necessary flexibility to allow movement through a full range of motion. If a chronic overuse problem seems to be developing, the athlete should take some time off and give the injury a chance to heal so that it won't get worse.[40]

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF INJURIES TO THE ELBOW

Olecranon Bursitis

Cause of Injury The olecranon bursa (Figure 19–7), lying between the end of the olecranon process and the skin, is the most frequently injured bursa in the elbow. The superficial location of the olecranon bursa makes it prone to acute or chronic injury, particularly as the result of direct blows or falling on the tip of the bent elbow.[30]

Signs of Injury The inflamed bursa produces pain, marked swelling, and point tenderness. Occasionally, swelling will appear almost spontaneously and will occur without the usual pain and heat.

Care If the condition is acute, ice and compression should be applied for 20 minutes. Chronic olecranon bursitis requires a program of protective therapy. In rare cases, aspiration by a physician hastens healing. Although seldom serious, olecranon bursitis can be annoying and should be well protected by padding while the athlete is engaged in competition.[7]

Elbow Sprains

Cause of Injury Sprains to the elbow are usually caused by hyperextension or a force that bends or twists the lower arm outward (valgus force), causing injury to the medial collateral ligament, as occurs during the cocking phase of throwing (see Figure 18–5B).[39]

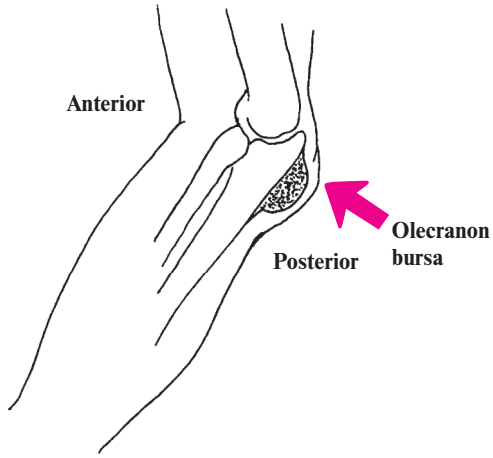


FIGURE 19–7 Olecranon bursitis.

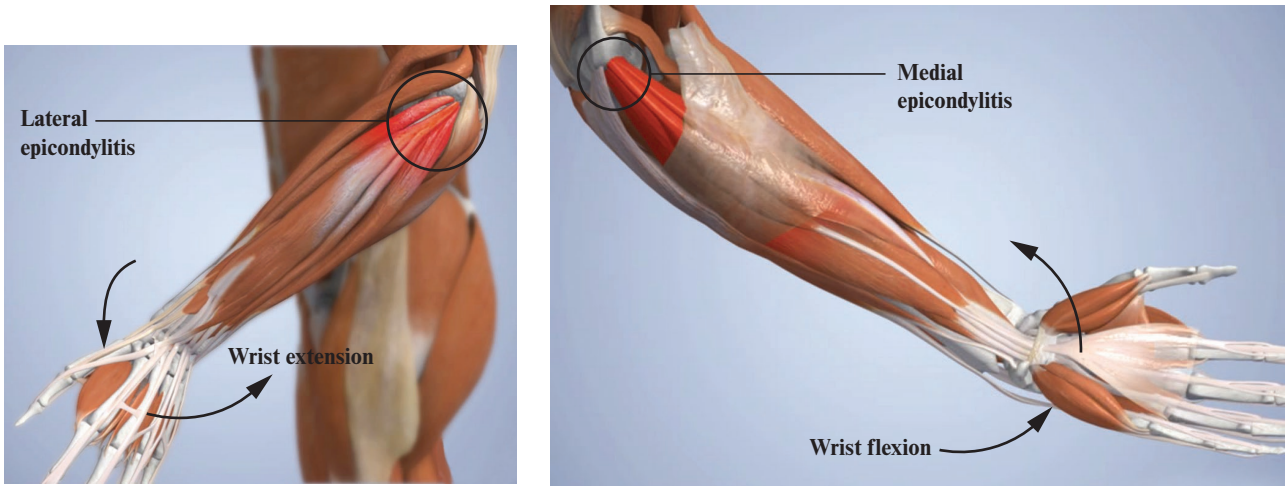


FIGURE 19–8 **(A)** Lateral epicondylitis. **(B)** Medial epicondylitis.

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of pain and the inability to throw or grasp an object. There is point tenderness over the medial collateral ligament.

Care Immediate care for an elbow sprain consists of cold and a pressure bandage for at least 24 hours, with sling support fixed at 90 degrees of flexion. A main concern should be to progressively aid the elbow in regaining a full range of motion, followed by active exercises. During rehabilitation, throwing activities should be controlled by limiting and gradually progressing the number of throws until full mobility and strength have returned. If the elbow is unstable, a surgical procedure that has been called a "Tommy John" procedure is often used to repair the medial collateral ligament and joint capsule.[40]

Lateral Epicondylitis

Cause of Injury *Lateral epicondylitis* is one of the most common problems of the elbow occurring in sports.[2] Tennis elbow is another name for lateral epicondylitis stemming from the backhand stroke involving extension of the wrist.[36] The cause of lateral epicondylitis is repetitive forceful extension of the wrist, which eventually causes irritation and inflammation to the insertion of the extensor muscle of the lateral epicondyle.[2]

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of an aching pain in the region of the lateral epicondyle during and after activity (Figure 19–8A). The pain gradually becomes worse, with weakness in the hand and wrist. Inspection reveals tenderness at the lateral epicondyle and pain on resisted extension of the wrist and full extension of the elbow.[36]

Care Treatment includes immediate use of POLICE, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), and analgesics as needed.[2] Rehabilitation includes range-of-motion exercises, progressive resistance exercises, deep friction massage, hand grasping while in supination (palm up), and avoiding pronation (palm down) movements. Mobilization and stretching may be used within pain-free limits.[40] The athlete may wear a counterforce brace or neoprene elbow sleeve for 1 to 3 months (Figure 19–9). The athlete must be taught proper skill techniques and the proper use of equipment to avoid recurrence of the injury.[2]

Medial Epicondylitis

Cause of Injury Irritation and inflammation of the medial epicondyle may result from a number of different sport activities that require repeated forceful flexions of the wrist (Figure 19–8B). It has also been referred to as Little League elbow, pitcher's elbow, racquetball elbow, golfer's elbow, and javelin-thrower's elbow.[34]

Signs of Injury Pain occurs around the medial epicondyle of the humerus during forceful wrist flexion

FIGURE 19–9 Counterforce brace for treatment of elbow and epicondylitis. Source: Tennis Elbow Band 2.0/Nike

and may radiate down the arm. There is usually point tenderness and in some cases mild swelling. Passive movement of the wrist seldom elicits pain, although active movement does.[12]

Care Conservative management of moderate–severe medial epicondylitis usually includes use of rest, cryotherapy, or heat through the application of ultrasound.[40] Analgesics and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agents may be prescribed by a physician. A counterforce brace applied just below the bend of the elbow is highly beneficial in reducing elbow stress (refer to Figure 19–9). For more severe cases, elbow splinting and complete rest for 7 to 10 days may be warranted.[34]

Elbow Osteochondritis Dissecans

Although osteochondritis dissecans is more common in the knees, it can also occur in the elbow.

Cause of Injury The cause of osteochondritis dissecans is unknown; however, impairment of the blood supply can lead to fragmentation and separation of a portion of the articular cartilage and bone, creating loose bodies within the joint.[26,38]

Signs of Injury The adolescent athlete usually complains of sudden pain and locking of the elbow joint. Range of motion returns slowly over a few days. Swelling, pain, and crepitus may also occur.[26,38]

Care Repeated episodes of locking may warrant surgical removal of the loose bodies. If they are not removed, traumatic arthritis can eventually occur.[40]

Ulnar Nerve Injuries

Cause of Injury Because of the exposed position of the medial humeral condyle, the ulnar nerve is subject to a variety of problems. The athlete with a pronounced outward angle (cubitus valgus) of the elbow may develop a nerve friction problem.[37] The ulnar nerve can also become recurrently dislocated because of a structural deformity or can become impinged by a ligament during flexion-type activities.[37]

Athletes with a pronounced cubitus valgus are prone to injuring the ulnar nerve.

Signs of Injury Rather than being painful, ulnar nerve injuries usually respond with a **paresthesia** to the fourth and fifth fingers. The athlete complains of burning and tingling in the fourth and fifth fingers.[37]

paresthesia Lack of sensation.

Care The management of ulnar nerve injuries is conservative; aggravation of the nerve, such as placing direct pressure on it, is avoided. When stress on the nerve cannot be avoided, surgery may be performed to transpose it anteriorly to the elbow.[40]

Dislocation of the Elbow

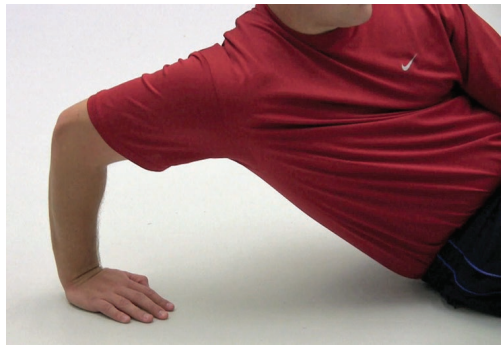
Cause of Injury Dislocation of the elbow has a high incidence in sports activity and most often is caused either by a fall on the outstretched hand with the elbow hyperextended or by a severe twist while the elbow is flexed (Figure 19–10).[3]

Signs of Injury The bones of the forearm (ulna and radius) may be displaced backward, forward, or laterally. The appearance of the most common dislocation is a deformity of the olecranon process wherein it extends backward, well beyond its normal alignment with the upper arm.

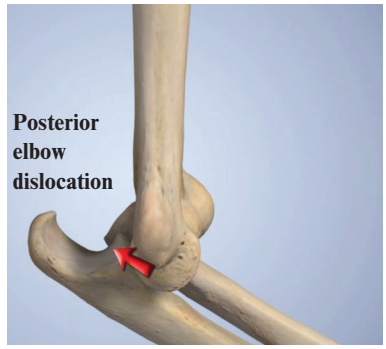
19–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A female javelin thrower complains of pain on the medial aspect of her elbow that is also referred distally to the forearm. The athlete senses an intermittent numbness, a burning sensation, and tingling in the fingers.

? What condition does this athlete have, and how could it have occurred?



A



B

FIGURE 19–10 **(A)** A fall on the outstretched hand (FOOSH) with the elbow flexed can produce an elbow dislocation and/or fracture. **(B)** Posterior dislocation.
(A) ©William E. Prentice

Elbow dislocations involve rupturing and tearing of most of the stabilizing ligamentous tissue accompanied by bleeding and subsequent swelling.[22] There is severe pain and disability. The complications of such a trauma may include injury to the major nerves and blood vessels.[3] Check to see whether there is a pulse present in the wrist following elbow dislocation. The absence of a pulse creates a more emergent situation.

Care The primary responsibility is to provide the athlete with an immobilizing splint and to refer him or her immediately to a physician for reduction as soon as possible. In most cases, the physician administers an anesthetic before reduction to relax the muscles. After reduction, the physician often immobilizes the elbow in a position of flexion and applies a splint, which should be used for approximately 3 weeks. A dislocated elbow, like a fracture, may also have possible neurovascular problems.[40]

Neurovascular problems are a possibility when an elbow is dislocated or fractured.

Fractures of the Elbow

Cause of Injury An elbow fracture can occur in almost any sporting event and is usually caused by a fall on the outstretched hand or the flexed elbow or by a direct blow to the elbow.[40] Children and young athletes have a much higher rate of this injury than do adults. A fracture can take place in any one or more of the bones that comprise the elbow. A fall on the outstretched hand can fracture the humerus above the condyles or the bones of the forearm or wrist.

Signs of Injury An elbow fracture may or may not result in visible deformity. There usually is hemorrhage, swelling, and muscle spasm in the injured area.

Care Because of the seriousness of an elbow fracture, careful immediate care must be rendered. Following the application of ice and a sling support, the athlete must be referred immediately for medical attention. A fractured elbow is associated with rapid swelling that may cause a condition called Volkmann's contracture, an extremely serious and often irreversible condition.[40]

ANATOMY OF THE FOREARM

Bones

The bones of the forearm are the ulna and the radius (Figure 19–11). The ulna, which may be thought of as a direct extension of the humerus, is long, straight, and larger at its upper end than at its lower end. The radius, considered an extension of the hand, is thicker at its lower end than at its upper end.

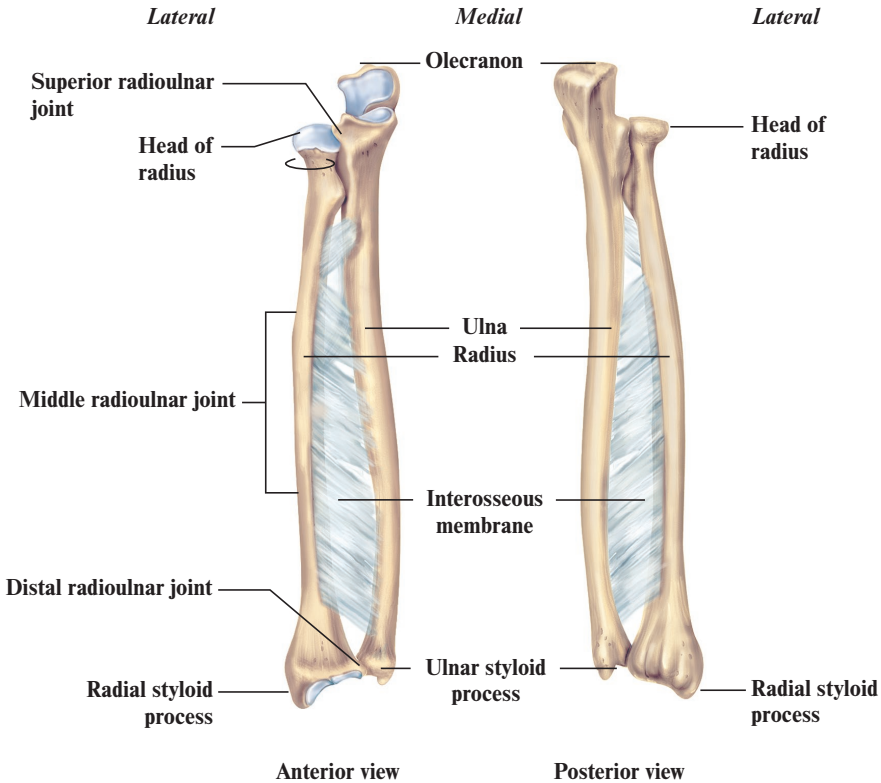


FIGURE 19–11 **Bones of the forearm with interosseous membrane.** (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

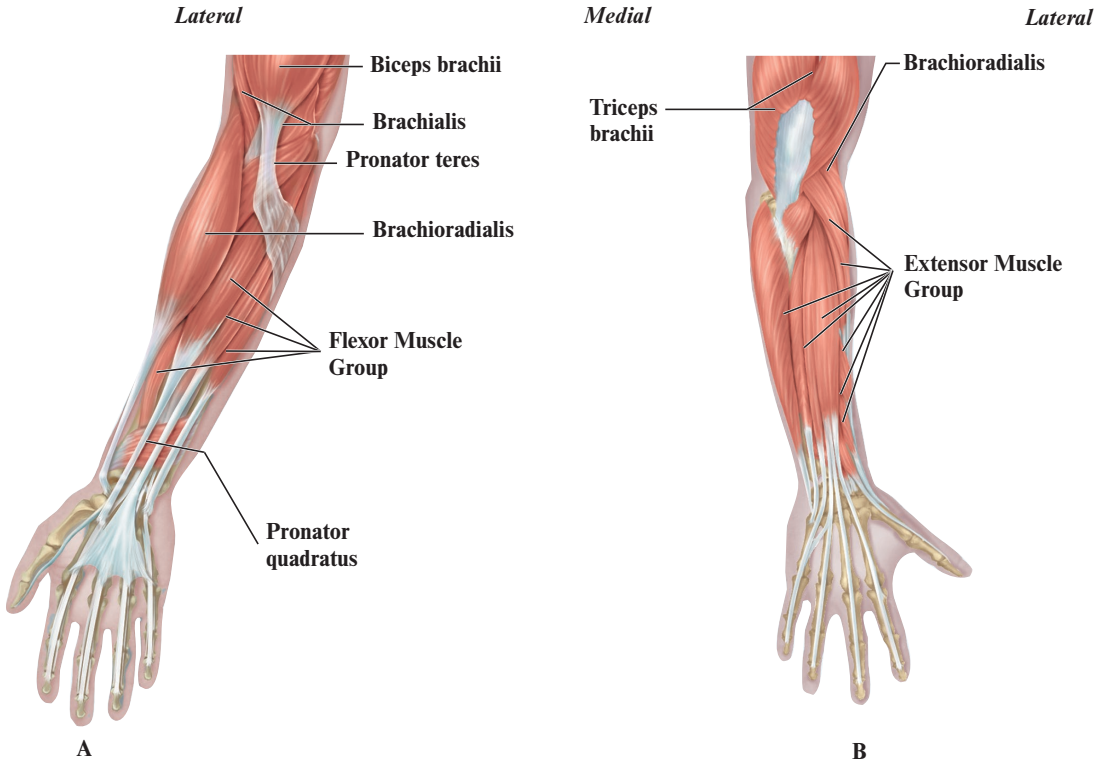


FIGURE 19–12 Muscles of the forearm: **(A)** Anterior view. **(B)** Posterior view. (From Saladin, K. S., *Human anatomy*, 10th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

TABLE 19–2	Muscles of the Forearm
Forearm pronation	Pronator teres Pronator quadratus
Forearm supination	Supinator Biceps brachii

Joints

The forearm has three articulations: the superior, middle, and distal radioulnar joints.

Muscles

The forearm muscles consist of flexors and pronators, positioned anteriorly and attached to the medial epicondyle, and of extensors and supinators, which lie posteriorly and are attached to the lateral epicondyle (Figure 19–12). The flexors of the wrist and fingers are separated into superficial muscles and deep muscles (Table 19–2). For additional information on movements of the forearm, see Appendix C.

ASSESSING FOREARM INJURIES

Generally, fitness professionals, coaches, and others working in areas related to exercise and sports science are not adequately trained to evaluate injuries. It is strongly recommended that injured athletes be referred to qualified medical personnel (i.e., physicians, athletic trainers, physical therapists) for injury evaluation.

History

The following questions are asked in the evaluation of forearm injuries:

- What caused the injury (e.g., blunt trauma, throwing, or chronic overuse)?
- What were the symptoms at the time of injury? Did symptoms occur later?
- Were symptoms localized or diffuse?
- Was there swelling or discoloration?
- Was there immediate loss of function?
- What treatment was given?
- Did this injury occur immediately or has it occurred gradually?

Observation

The entire forearm is first visually inspected, including the wrist and elbow, looking for obvious deformities, swelling, and skin defects. If a deformity is not present, the athlete is then observed pronating and supinating the forearm.

Palpation

The injured forearm is palpated at the point of injury and in areas distant to that site and the point

of injury. Palpation can reveal tenderness, edema, fracture deformity, change in skin temperature, bone fragments, or a lack of continuity between bones.

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF INJURIES TO THE FOREARM

Contusion

Cause of Injury The forearm is constantly exposed to bruising in contact sports such as football. The ulnar side receives the majority of blows in arm blocks and consequently the greater amount of bruising. Bruises to this area may be classified as acute or chronic. The acute contusion can, on rare occasions, result in a fracture.[10] The chronic contusion develops from repeated blows to the forearm with attendant multiple irritations.

Signs of Injury Most often, muscles or bones develop varying degrees of pain, swelling, and accumulation of blood (hematoma). Extensive scar tissue may replace the hematoma, and in some cases a bony callus replaces the scar tissue.

Care Care of the contused forearm requires proper attention in the acute stages by application of POLICE for 20 minutes every 1½ waking hours, followed the next day by cold and exercise. Protection of the forearm is important for athletes who are prone to this condition. The best protection consists of providing a full-length sponge rubber pad for the forearm early in the sports season.

Forearm Splints and Other Strains

Cause of Injury Forearm strains occur in a variety of sports, most often from repeated static contractions. Forearm splints occur often in gymnastics. The reason for this problem is likely static muscle contractions of the forearm, such as those that occur when an athlete performs on the side horse. Constant static muscle contraction causes minute tears in the deep connective tissues of the forearm.

Forearm splints, like shin splints, commonly occur early and late in the sports season.

Signs of Injury The main symptom of forearm splints is a dull ache in the extensor muscles crossing the back of the forearm. Muscle weakness may accompany the dull ache. Palpation reveals an irritation of the deep tissue between the muscles. The cause of this condition is uncertain; like shin splints, forearm splints usually appear either early or late in the season, indicating poor conditioning or chronic fatigue.

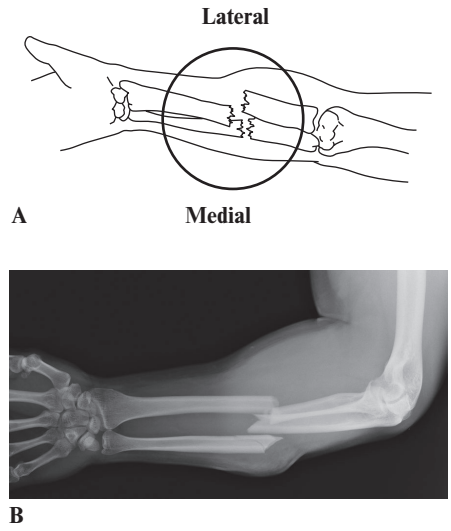


FIGURE 19–13 **(A) Fracture of the radius and ulna. (B) Open fracture of the ulna.** (B) Courtesy of Jordan B. Renner, MD, Departments of Radiology and Allied Health Sciences, University of North Carolina

Care Care of forearm splints should be focused on treating the symptoms. The athlete should concentrate on increasing the strength of the forearm through resistance exercises. Emphasis should also be placed on rest, cold or heat, and use of a supportive wrap during activity.

Forearm Shaft Fractures

Cause of Injury Fractures of the forearm (Figure 19–13) are particularly common among active children and youths. Forearm fractures occur as the result of a blow or a fall on the outstretched hand. Fractures to the ulna or the radius singly are much rarer than simultaneous fractures to both.[10]

Signs of Injury The break usually presents all the features of a long-bone fracture: pain, swelling, deformity, and nonunion. The older the athlete, the greater the danger of extensive damage to soft tissue and the greater the possibility of paralysis.[10]

Care To prevent complications, a cold pack must be applied immediately to the fracture site, the arm splinted and put in a sling, and the athlete referred to a physician. The athlete usually is incapacitated for about 8 weeks.[10]

Colles' Fracture

Cause of Injury A Colles' fracture (Figure 19–14), among the most common forearm fractures, involves the lower (distal) end of the radius.[14] The cause of a

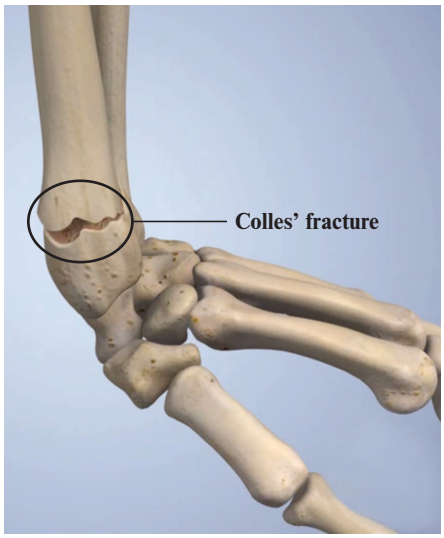


FIGURE 19–14 Common appearance of the forearm in Colles' fracture.

Colles' fracture is usually a fall on the outstretched hand with an extended wrist, forcing the forearm backward and upward into hyperextension. The distal fracture fragment is displaced backward resulting in what is sometimes referred to as a *dinner fork deformity*. A Smith's fracture is similar to a Colles' fracture in that both involve a fall on the hand. But in a Smith's fracture, the wrist is flexed, causing the distal radius fragment to be displaced anteriorly. A Smith's fracture is much less common than a Colles' fracture.[31]

Signs of Injury In most cases, there is a visible deformity to the wrist. Sometimes no deformity is present, and the injury may be passed off as a bad sprain. Bleeding is profuse in this area, with the accumulated fluids causing extensive swelling in the wrist and, if unchecked, in the fingers and forearm. Ligamentous tissue is usually unharmed, but tendons may be torn away from their attachment, and there may be median nerve damage.[31]

Care The main responsibility is to apply ice, splint the wrist, put the limb in a sling, and then refer the athlete to a physician for X-ray examination and immobilization. Lacking complications, a Colles' fracture will keep an athlete out of sports for 1 to 2 months.

ANATOMY OF THE WRIST, HAND, AND FINGERS

Bones

The wrist is formed by the distal aspect of the radius and the ulna with a proximal row of four carpal bones and a distal row of four carpal bones that articulate with five metacarpals. The metacarpal bones join the carpal bones above and the phalanges below, forming metacarpophalangeal (MCP) articulations. The four fingers each have a proximal, middle, and distal phalanx, whereas the thumb has only two phalanges (Figure 19–15).[29]

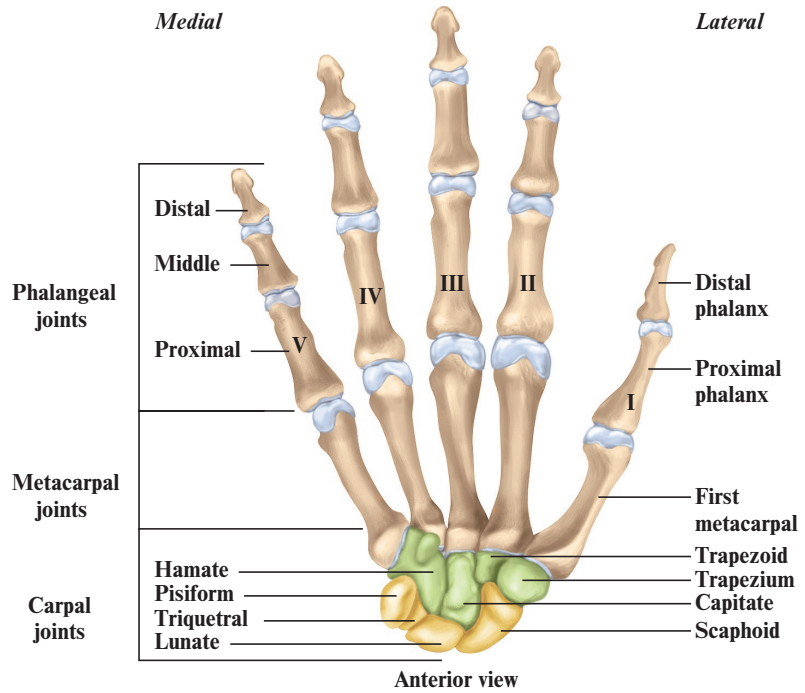


FIGURE 19–15 Bones of the wrist, hand, and fingers (anterior view).
(From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

Ligaments

The wrist is composed of a complex series of multiple ligaments that bind the carpal bones to one another, to the ulna and radius, and to the proximal metacarpal bones. Of major interest in wrist injuries are the ulnar collateral ligament and radial collateral ligament. Crossing the volar (anterior) aspect of the carpal bones is the flexor retinaculum. This ligament serves as the roof of the carpal tunnel, in which the median nerve is often compressed (Figure 19–16A). The interphalangeal joints have medial and lateral collateral ligaments and a thickened joint capsule on the palmar surface that is referred to as the *volar plate.*[29]

19–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A young athlete falls off the parallel bars onto his outstretched left hand, forcing the wrist into hyperextension. There is a visible deformity to the wrist.

? Describe the deformity presented and the actions that should be taken.

Muscles

The wrist and hand are a complex of extrinsic muscles (which originate outside of the hand) and intrinsic muscles (which originate in the hand) muscles. In general, both the extrinsic and intrinsic muscles located on the medial aspect and front of the wrist and hand flex the wrist and fingers. The muscles on the posterior and lateral aspect of the wrist and hand extend the wrist and fingers (Figure 19–16). Intrinsic muscles of the hand also abduct, adduct, and in the thumb create opposition of the metacarpals (Table 19–3).[29] For additional information on movements of the wrist hand and fingers, see Appendix C.

ASSESSMENT OF THE WRIST, HAND, AND FINGERS

Generally, fitness professionals, coaches, and others working in areas related to exercise and sports science are not adequately trained to evaluate injuries. It is strongly recommended that injured athletes be referred to qualified medical personnel (i.e., physicians, athletic trainers, physical therapists) for injury evaluation.

History

As with other conditions, the evaluator asks about the location and type of pain:

- What increases or decreases the pain?
- Has there been a history of trauma or overuse?
- What therapy or medications, if any, have been given?

Observation

As the athlete is observed, arm and hand asymmetries are noted:

- Are there any postural deviations?
- Does the athlete hold the injured part in a stiff or protected manner?
- Is the wrist or hand swollen?

Hand usage such as writing or unbuttoning a shirt is noted. The general attitude of the hand is observed. When the athlete is asked to open and close the hand, the evaluator notes whether this movement can be performed fully and rhythmically. Another general functional activity is to have the athlete touch the tip of the thumb to each fingertip several times. The last factor to be observed is the color of the fingernails. Nails that are very pale instead of pink may indicate a problem with blood circulation.

Palpation

The bones of the wrist region are palpated for pain and deformity. The examiner palpates each carpal bone, metacarpal bone, MCP joint, and phalanx, starting with the PIP joint and progressing to the distal interphalangeal (DIP) joint. Each tendon is palpated as it crosses the wrist region. The examiner palpates the flexor muscles of the fingers and thumb. On the dorsal aspect, the examiner palpates the extensor tendons and phalanges.

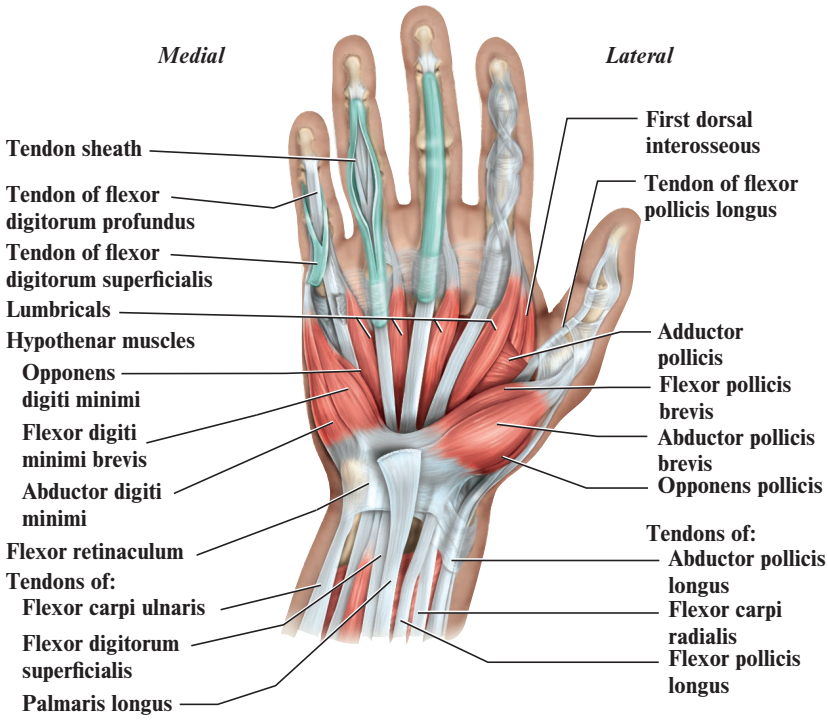
RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF WRIST AND HAND INJURIES

Wrist Sprain

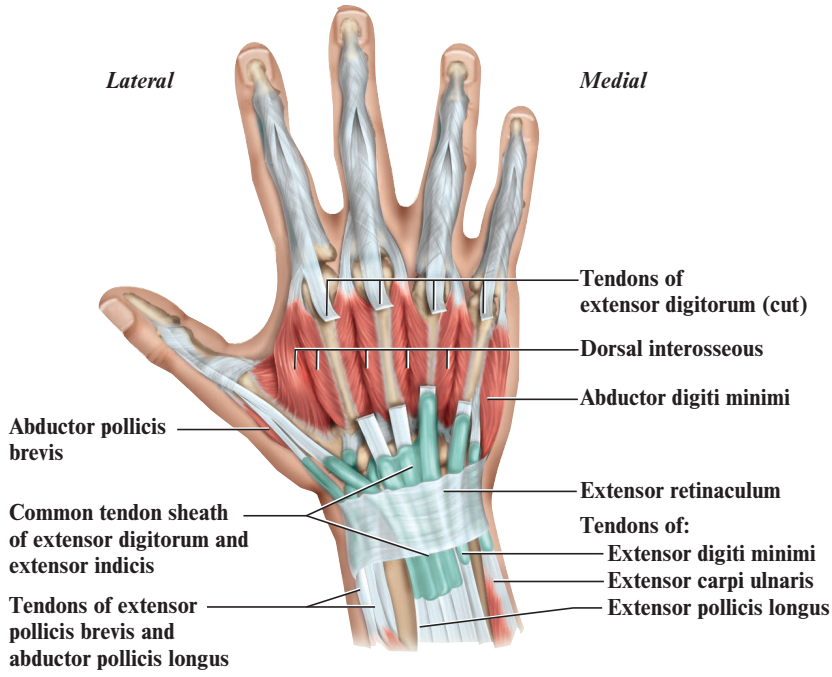
Cause of Injury It is often very difficult to distinguish between a wrist sprain and a tendon strain in the carpal region. A sprain is by far the most common wrist injury.[21] It can occur from any abnormal, forced movement of the wrist. Falling on the hyperextended wrist is the most common cause of wrist sprain, but violent flexion or torsion can also cause injury (see Figure 19–10).[14]

Sprains are the most common wrist injury in sports and often the worst managed.

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of pain, swelling, and difficulty moving the wrist. On examination, there is tenderness, swelling, and limited range of motion.



A Palmar aspect (anterior)



B Dorsal aspect (posterior)

FIGURE 19–16 Muscles of the hand: **(A)** Palmar aspect (anterior view). **(B)** Dorsal aspect (posterior view). (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

TABLE 19–3	Muscles of the Wrist, Hand, and Fingers
Wrist flexion	Flexor carpi radialis Flexor carpi ulnaris
Wrist extension	Extensor carpi radialis longus Extensor carpi radialis brevis Extensor carpi ulnaris
Finger flexion	Flexor digitorum profundus Flexor digitorum superficialis
Finger extension	Extensor digitorum communis Extensor digiti minimi Extensor indicis
Thumb flexion	Flexor pollicis longus
Thumb extension	Extensor pollicis longus Extensor pollicis brevis
Thumb abduction	Abductor pollicis longus
Thumb adduction	Adductor pollicis

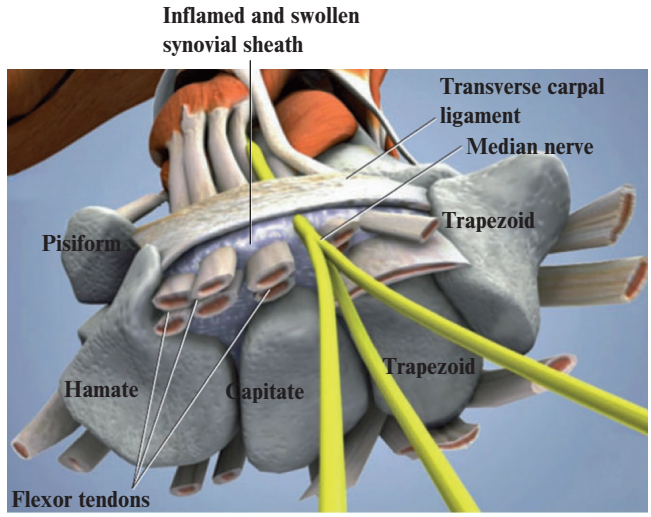


FIGURE 19–17 Cross section of the wrist shows the carpal tunnel that lies under the transverse carpal ligament, with the flexor tendons, an inflamed and swollen synovial sheath, and a compressed median nerve.

Care All athletes who have severe sprains should be referred to a physician for X-ray examination to determine possible fractures. Mild and moderate sprains should initially be given POLICE, splinting, and analgesics. It is desirable to have the athlete start wrist-strengthening exercises almost immediately after the injury has occurred. Taping for support can benefit healing and help prevent further injury.

Wrist Tendinitis

Cause of Injury Wrist tendinitis occurs in weight lifters, rowers, and participants in other sports that require the athlete to perform repetitive wrist accelerations and decelerations.[31]

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of pain with use or pain in passive stretching. There is tenderness and swelling over the tendon.

Care Acute pain and inflammation are managed by ice massage for 10 minutes four times a day for the first 48 to 72 hours, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory medication, and rest. A wrist splint may protect the injured tendon. When swelling has subsided, range of motion is stressed. When pain and swelling have subsided, progressive resistance exercise can be instituted.[31]

Carpal Tunnel Syndrome

Cause of Injury The carpal tunnel is located on the anterior aspect of the wrist. The floor of the carpal tunnel is formed by the carpal bones and the roof by the transverse carpal ligament (see Figure 19–17). A number of anatomical structures course through this limited space, including eight long finger flexor tendons, their synovial sheaths, and the median nerve. Carpal tunnel syndrome results from an inflammation of the tendons and synovial sheaths within this space, which ultimately leads to compression of the median nerve.[35] Carpal tunnel syndrome most often occurs in athletes who engage in activities that require repeated wrist flexion, although it can also result from direct trauma to the anterior aspect of the wrist.[35]

Signs of Injury Compression of the median nerve usually results in both sensory and motor deficits.[24] Sensory changes can result in tingling, numbness, and paresthesia in the arc of median nerve innervation over the thumb, index and middle fingers, and palm of the hand. The median nerve innervates the lumbrical muscles of the index and middle fingers and three of the thenar muscles. Thus, weakness in thumb movement is associated with this condition.[24]

Care Initially, conservative treatment involving rest, immobilization in slight wrist extension, and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory medication is recommended. If the syndrome persists, injection with a corticosteroid and possible surgical decompression of the transverse carpal ligament may be necessary.[19]

19–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A basketball player stumbles and falls on an outstretched hand. She complains of pain at the base of the thumb at the wrist. She is very point tender.

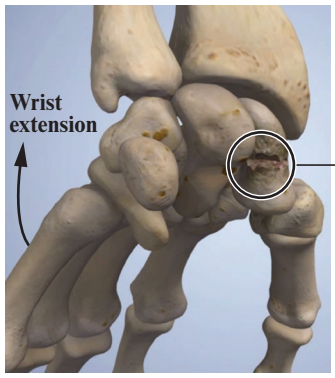
? What specific injury might be causing her pain and what should be done?

Scaphoid Fracture

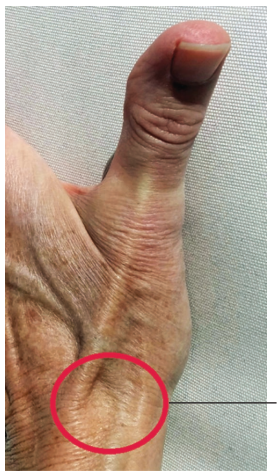
Cause of Injury The scaphoid bone is the most frequently fractured carpal bone.[9] The injury is usually caused by a fall on an outstretched hand, which compresses the scaphoid bone between the radius and the second row of carpal bones (Figure 19–18A).[4]

Signs of Injury The signs of a recent scaphoid fracture include swelling in the area of the carpal bones and severe point tenderness over the scaphoid bone in the anatomic snuffbox (Figure 19–18B).[9]

Care In an athlete with these signs, cold should be applied, the area should be splinted, and the athlete should be referred to a physician for an X-ray study and casting.[32] It is not uncommon for a scaphoid fracture to be missed on an initial X-ray. In most cases, cast immobilization lasts for approximately 6 weeks and is followed by strengthening exercises coupled with protective taping. Immobilization is discontinued for rehabilitation.[9] The wrist needs protection against impact loading for an additional 3 months. In many cases, the scaphoid does not heal properly, and surgery is often necessary.[4]



A



B

FIGURE 19–18 **(A)** Falling with the wrist hyperextended causes a fracture of the scaphoid. **(B)** A fracture of the scaphoid results in point tenderness in the anatomic snuffbox. (B) ©William E. Prentice

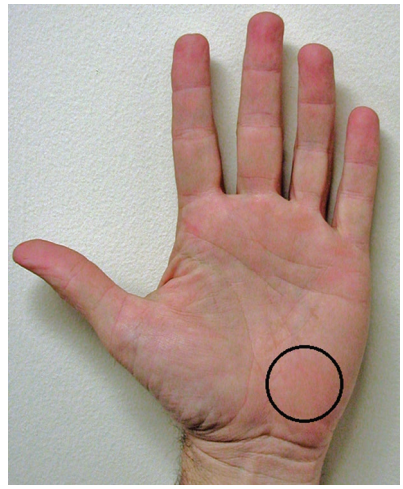


FIGURE 19–19 Point of tenderness with a hook of the hamate fracture. ©William E. Prentice

Hamate Fracture

Cause of Injury A fracture of the hamate bone, and in particular the hook of the hamate, can occur from a fall but more commonly occurs from contact when holding a sports implement such as the handle of a tennis racket, a baseball bat, a lacrosse stick, a hockey stick, or a golf club.[15]

Signs of Injury Wrist pain and weakness and point tenderness are experienced (Figure 19–19). There is possibly tingling, numbness, and weakness in the little and ring fingers because the ulnar nerve may be compromised due to of its close proximity to the hamate.[15]

Care Casting of the wrist is usually the treatment of choice. The hook of the hamate can be protected by wearing a doughnut pad to take pressure off the area.[25]

Wrist Ganglion

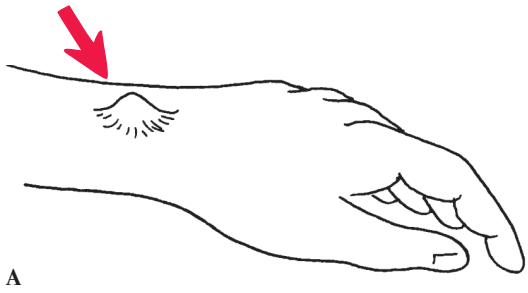
Cause of Injury A wrist ganglion (Figure 19–20) is considered by many to be either a herniation of the joint capsule, of the synovial sheath of a tendon, or a cystic structure. It usually appears slowly, after repeated forced hyperextension of the wrist, and contains a clear, mucinous fluid. The ganglion most often appears on the back of the wrist.[23]

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of occasional pain, and there is a lump at the site. Pain

19–4 Critical Thinking Exercise

A football player gets into a fistfight on the field and injures his right hand.

? What type of injury should be suspected?



A

B

FIGURE 19–20 **Dorsal wrist ganglion.** (b) ©William E. Prentice

increases with wrist extension. There is a cystic structure that may feel soft, rubbery, or very hard.[27]

Care An old method of treatment was first to break down the swelling through digital pressure and then apply a felt pressure pad for a time to encourage healing. A newer approach is the use of a combination of aspiration and chemical cauterization, with subsequent application of a pressure pad.[31] Neither of these methods prevents the ganglion from recurring. Surgical removal is the best of the various methods of treatment.[27]

Fifth Metacarpal Fracture (Boxer's Fracture)

Cause of Injury Fractures of the fifth metacarpal are associated with boxing and the martial arts and are usually called a *boxer's fracture* (Figure 19–21).

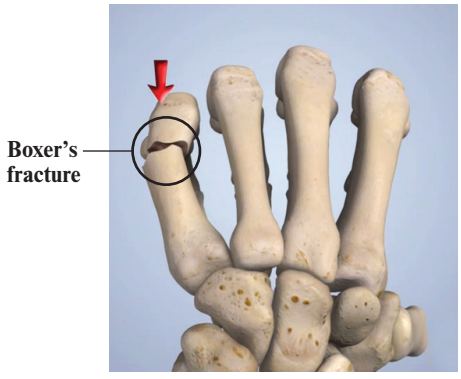


FIGURE 19–21 **Boxer's fracture of the fifth metacarpal.**

The cause of metacarpal fractures is commonly a direct axial force caused by punching the wall or another person.[8]

Signs of Injury There is point tenderness and likely a palpable defect in the shaft of the fifth metacarpal. When the athlete makes a fist, the knuckle will appear depressed or sunken. Swelling is rapid.

Care An athlete with a suspected boxer's fracture should be referred to a physician for reduction and immobilization for a period lasting 3 to 4 weeks.[8]

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF FINGER INJURIES

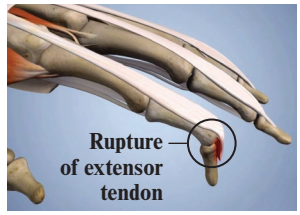
The fingers are extremely vulnerable to injury in contact sports. Although finger injuries are very often not considered to be serious by most people, they can create serious long-term dysfunction in many cases. Thus, it is imperative that these injuries be correctly managed.

Mallet Finger

Cause of Injury The mallet finger is sometimes called *baseball finger* or *basketball finger*. It is caused by a blow from a thrown ball that strikes the tip of the finger, jamming and avulsing the extensor tendon from its insertion along with a piece of bone (Figure 19–22A).[1,5]

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of pain at the distal interphalangeal joint. X-ray examination may show a bony avulsion from the dorsal proximal distal phalanx. He or she is unable to extend the finger, carrying it at approximately a 30-degree angle. There is also point tenderness at the site of the injury, and the avulsed bone often can be palpated (Figure 19–22B).[28]

Care POLICE is given for the pain and swelling. If there is no fracture, the distal phalanx should immediately be splinted in a position of extension



A

B

FIGURE 19–22 **Mallet finger.** (b) ©William E. Prentice

FIGURE 19–23 Splinting of a mallet finger. ©William E. Prentice

24 hours a day for a period of 6 to 8 weeks (Figure 19–23).[5]

Boutonnière Deformity

Cause of Injury The boutonnière, or buttonhole, deformity is caused by a rupture of the extensor tendon over the middle phalanx. Trauma occurs to the tip of the finger, which forces the DIP joint into extension and the PIP joint into flexion.[5]

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of severe pain and inability to extend the DIP joint. There is swelling, point tenderness, and an obvious deformity.[5]

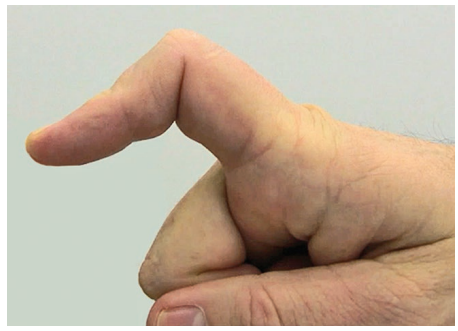
Care Care of the boutonnière deformity includes cold application followed by splinting of the PIP joint in extension.[28] NOTE: If this condition is inadequately splinted, the classic boutonnière deformity will develop (Figure 19–24). Splinting is continued for 5 to 8 weeks. While splinted, the athlete is encouraged to flex the distal phalanx.[31]

Jersey Finger

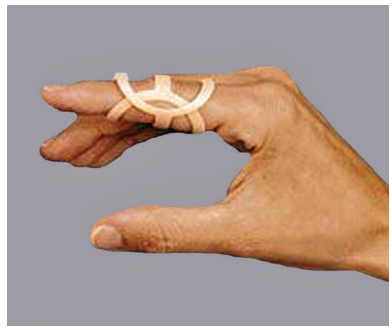
Cause of Injury Jersey finger is a rupture of the flexor digitorum profundus tendon from its insertion on the distal phalanx. It most often occurs in the ring finger when the athlete tries to grab a jersey of an opponent, either rupturing the tendon or avulsing a small piece of bone (Figure 19–25).[13]

Signs of Injury Because the tendon is no longer attached to the distal phalanx, the DIP joint cannot be flexed, and the finger is in an extended position. There is pain and point tenderness over the distal phalanx.[13]

Care If the tendon is not surgically repaired, the athlete will never be able to flex the DIP joint, causing weakness in grip strength; otherwise, function is relatively normal. If surgery is done, the course of rehabilitation requires about 12 weeks, and there is often poor gliding of the tendon, with the possibility of re-rupture.



A



B

FIGURE 19–24 **(A)** Boutonnière deformity. **(B)** Oval-8 Splint. ©William E. Prentice

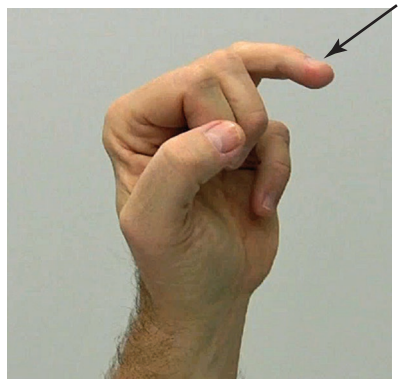


FIGURE 19–25 A Jersey finger involves rupture of the flexor tendon and loss of ability to flex the finger. ©William E. Prentice

Gamekeeper's Thumb

Cause of Injury A sprain of the ulnar collateral ligament of the MCP joint of the thumb is common among athletes, especially skiers and tackle football players. It can also occur in baseball and softball players when the thumb is hit by a ball, exerting torque on the joint.[21] The mechanism of injury is usually a forceful abduction of the proximal phalanx, which is occasionally combined with hyperextension.[18]

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of pain over the ulnar collateral ligament, with a weak and

painful pinch. Inspection demonstrates tenderness and swelling over the medial aspect of the thumb.

Care Because the stability of pinching can be severely reduced, proper immediate and follow-up care must be performed. If there is instability in the joints, the athlete should be immediately referred to an orthopedist.[18] If the joint is stable, X-ray examination should be performed to rule out fracture. Splinting of the thumb should be applied for protection over a 3-week period or until it is pain free.[21]

Collateral Ligament Sprain

Cause of Injury A collateral ligament sprain of a finger is very common in sports such as basketball, volleyball, and football. A common cause of collateral sprains is an axial force to the tip of the finger, producing the "jammed" effect.[28]

Signs of Injury Severe point tenderness exists at the joint site, especially in the region of the collateral ligaments. There may be a lateral or medial joint instability when the joint is flexed to 150 degrees.

Care Care of a collateral sprain includes ice packs for the acute stage, X-ray examination, and splinting.

Dislocations of the Phalanges

Cause of Injury Dislocations of the phalanges (Figure 19–26) occur frequently in sports and are caused mainly by a blow to the tip of the finger by a ball. The force of injury is usually directed upward from the palmar side, displacing either the first or second joint dorsally.[11] The resultant problem is primarily a tearing of the supporting capsular tissue, accompanied by hemorrhaging. However, there may be a rupture of the flexor or extensor tendon and chip fractures in and around the dislocated joint.[11]

Care Reduction of the dislocated thumb should be performed by a physician. To ensure the most complete healing of dislocated finger joints, splinting should be maintained for about 3 weeks in 30 degrees of flexion.[20] Inadequate immobilization can cause an unstable joint and/or excessive scar tissue and possibly a permanent deformity. When the athlete returns to activity, the dislocated finger can be "buddy-taped" to the adjacent finger for additional support.

Special consideration must be given to dislocations of the thumb and second or third joints of the fingers.[11,29] A properly functioning thumb is necessary for hand dexterity; consequently, *any injury to the thumb should be considered serious.*[20] Thumb dislocations occur frequently at the second joint, resulting from a sharp blow to its tip with the trauma forcing the thumb into hyperextension and dislocating the second joint downward. Any dislocation of the third joint of the finger can lead to complications and requires the immediate care of an orthopedist. *All finger or thumb dislocations must be X-rayed to rule out fracture.*[11]

Phalanx Fractures

Cause of Injury Phalanx fractures can occur from a variety of actions: The fingers are stepped on, hit by a ball, or twisted.[11]

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of pain and swelling in a finger. Tenderness is felt at the point of fracture.

Care The finger suspected of fracture should be splinted in flexion around a gauze roll or a curved splint to avoid full extension. Flexion splinting reduces the deformity by relaxing the flexor tendons. Fracture of the distal phalanx is less complicated than fracture of the middle or proximal phalanx.

Subungual Hematoma

Cause of Injury A contusion or a crushing injury to the distal finger can cause blood to accumulate in the nail bed under the fingernail (Figure 19–27). Blood that accumulates in a confined space underneath the

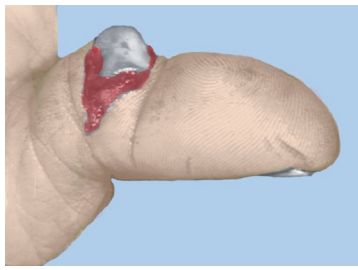


FIGURE 19–26 Open dislocation of the thumb.
©William E. Prentice

FIGURE 19–27 Subungual hematoma in the finger.
©William E. Prentice

nail is likely to produce extreme pain and can ultimately cause loss of the nail.[6]

Signs of Injury Bleeding into the nail bed may be either immediate or slow, producing considerable pain. The area under the fingernail assumes a bluish-purple color, and gentle pressure on the nail greatly exacerbates pain.

Care An ice pack should be applied immediately, and the hand should be elevated to decrease bleeding. Within the next 12 to 24 hours, the pressure of the blood under the nail should be released by drilling a small hole through the nail into the nail bed. This drilling must be done under sterile conditions and is best done by either a physician or an athletic trainer. It is not uncommon to have to drill the nail a second time because more blood is likely to accumulate.[6]

SUMMARY

- The humeroradial and humeroulnar joints of the elbow allow the movements of flexion and extension, and the radioulnar joint allows forearm pronation and supination.
- Olecranon bursitis occurs from falling on the tip of the elbow.
- The ulnar collateral ligament of the elbow is injured as a result of a valgus force from repetitive overhead throwing.
- Medial epicondylitis is also called golfer's elbow, raquetball elbow, or pitcher's elbow and occurs because of repetitive forced flexion of the wrist.
- Lateral epicondylitis or tennis elbow occurs with repetitive wrist extension.
- Elbow dislocations result from elbow hyperextension from a fall on an extended arm, with the radius and ulna dislocating posteriorly. The degree of stability present determines the course of rehabilitation. If the elbow is stable, a brief period of immobilization is followed by rehabilitation.
- Fractures in the elbow may occur from a direct blow or from falling on an outstretched hand. They may be treated by casting or in some cases by surgical reduction and fixation.
- The forearm is composed of two bones, the ulna and the radius, and the flexors and extensors of the wrist. Sports injuries to the region commonly consist of contusions, chronic forearm splints, acute strains, and fractures.
- Injuries to the wrist usually occur as the result of a fall on an outstretched hand or repeated movements of flexion, extension, and/or rotation. Common injuries are sprains, tendinitis, carpal tunnel syndrome, scaphoid fracture, hamate fracture, and wrist ganglion.
- Injuries to the hand and fingers occur frequently in sports activities. Common injuries include a boxer's fracture, mallet finger, boutonnière deformity, jersey finger, gamekeeper's thumb, sprains, dislocations and fractures of the phalanges, and subungual hematoma.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

19-1 This javelin thrower has sustained an ulnar nerve injury. Because of a pronounced elbow cubitus valgus, the ulnar nerve recurrently subluxates. Because of ligamentous laxity, there is nerve impingement and compression.

19-2 This injury is a Colles' fracture, which is caused by the fracture displacement of the distal radius. An ice compress, a splint, and a sling should be applied. The athlete is then referred to a physician for an X-ray and definitive treatment.

19-3 This is likely a scaphoid fracture. The wrist and thumb should be immobilized in a splint, and she should be sent to a physician for an X-ray.

19-4 Suspect a fracture of a metacarpal bone. The injury may appear as an angular or rotational deformity. POLICE and analgesics are given along with an X-ray examination. The injury is splinted for about 4 weeks, and early range-of-motion exercises are prescribed.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. Describe the procedures for assessing an elbow injury.
2. Describe the mechanism and management of elbow sprains.
3. How does the elbow develop medial and lateral epicondylitis?
4. What are the symptoms and signs of elbow osteochondritis dissecans?
5. Describe a dislocated elbow—its cause, appearance, and care.
6. Compare forearm splints and shin splints. How does each occur?
7. What is the difference between a wrist strain and a wrist sprain?
8. Describe the Colles' fracture of the forearm—its cause, appearance, and care.
9. How does carpal tunnel syndrome develop, and how would you care for it?
10. Discuss injuries that can occur to the lunate, scaphoid, and hamate bones in the wrist.
11. What is the difference between a mallet finger, a boutonnière deformity, and a jersey finger?
12. What is gamekeeper's thumb, and how should it be treated?
13. Should a dislocated finger be reduced by an athletic trainer?
14. How should a subungual hematoma be managed?

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Anderson, D. 2012. Mallet finger—Management and patient compliance. *Australian Family Physician* 40(1):47–48.
2. Behrens, A. 2012. A review of modern management of lateral epicondylitis. *Physician and Sportsmedicine* 40(2):34–40.
3. Boyles, R. 2013. Posterior dislocation of the elbow. *Journal of Orthopedics and Sports Physical Therapy* 43(9):673.
4. Buijze, G. 2012. Management of scaphoid nonunion. *Journal of Hand Surgery* 37(5):1095–1100.
5. Chauhan, A. 2014. Extensor tendon injuries in athletes. *Sports Medicine and Arthroscopy Reviews* 22(1):45–55.
6. Dean, B. 2012. The management of the acute traumatic subungual hematoma: A systematic review. *Hand Surgery* 16(1):151.
7. Del Buono, A. 2012. Diagnosis and management of olecranon bursitis. *Surgeon* 10(5):297–300.
8. Diaz-Garcia, R., & Waljee, J. 2013. Current management of metacarpal fractures. *Hand Clinics* 29(4):507–518.
9. Duckworth, A. 2011. Assessment of the suspected fracture of the scaphoid. *Bone and Joint Journal* 93(6):713–719.
10. Edwards, S. 2013. Proximal forearm fractures. *Orthopedic Clinics of North America* 44(1):67–80.
11. Elfar, J. 2013. Fracture-dislocations of the proximal interphylangeal joint. *Journal of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons* 21(2):88–98.
12. Fleck, K., & Field, E. 2017. Lateral and Medical epicondylitis in the athlete. *Operative Techniques in Sports Medicine* 25(4):269–278.
13. Freilich, A. 2015. Evaluation and treatment of jersey finger and pully injuries in athletes. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 34(1):151–166.
14. Gaston, R. 2015. Sports-specific injuries of the wrist and hand. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 34(1):1–10.
15. Gill, N. 2010. Hook of the hamate fracture. *Journal of Orthopedic and Sports Physical Therapy* 40(5):325.
16. Hausman, M., & Lang, P. 2014. Examination of the elbow: Current concepts. *Journal of Hand Surgery* 39(12):2534–2541.
17. Hsu, S. 2012. Physical examination of the athlete's elbow. *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 40(3):699–708.
18. Ingari, J. 2010. Ulnar collateral ligament injuries of the thumb (gamekeeper's thumb, skier's thumb). In M. Miller (ed.), *Essential orthopedics*. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders/Elsevier
19. Jaworski, C. 2010. Rehabilitation of the wrist and hand following sports injury. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 29(1):61–80.
20. Kraus, C. K., & Weaver, K. R. 2014. Traumatic dislocation of the first carpometacarpal joint. *American Journal of Emergency Medicine* 32(12):1561e1–1561e2.
21. Madan, S., & Pai, D. 2014. Injury to ulnar collateral ligament of the thumb. *Orthopedic Surgery* 6(1):1–7.
22. McGuire, D., & Bain, G. 2014. Management of dislocations of the elbow in the athlete. *Sports Medicine & Arthroscopy Reviews* 22(3):188–194.
23. Meena, S., & Gupta, A. 2014. Dorsal wrist ganglion: Current review of the literature. *Journal of Clinical Orthopedics and Trauma* 5(2):39–64.
24. Middleton, S. 2014. Carpal tunnel syndrome. *British Medical Journal* 349(7982):6437.
25. O'Shea, K. 2012. Fractures of the hamate and pisiform bones. *Hand Clinics* 28(3):287–300.
26. Nissen, C. 2014. Osteochondritis dissecans of the elbow. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 33(2):251–265.
27. Peters, F. 2013. Ganglions of the hand and wrist: Determinants of treatment choice. *Journal of Hand Surgery* 38(2):151–157.
28. Prucz, R. 2015. Finger joint injuries. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 34(1):99–116.
29. Rayan, G. 2012. *The hand: Anatomy, examination, and diagnosis*. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.
30. Sayegh, E. 2014. Treatment of olecranon bursitis. *Journal of Orthopedic and Trauma Surgery* 134(11):1517–1536.
31. Schneider, A. M. 2019. Rehabilitation of wrist, hand, and finger injuries. In W. Prentice (ed.), *Rehabilitation techniques in sports medicine and athletic training*, 6th ed. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.
32. Sendher, R., & Ladd, A. 2013. The scaphoid. *Orthopedic Clinics* 44(1):107–120.
33. Silvia, M, Sanchez, E. 2013. Anatomy and biomechanics of the elbow joint. *Seminars in Musculoskeletal Radiology* 17(5):429–436.
34. Taylor, S. 2012. Evaluation and management of elbow tendinopathy. *Sports Health: A Multidisciplinary Approach* 4(5):384–393.
35. Thurston, A. 2013. Carpal tunnel syndrome. *Orthopedics and Trauma* 27(5):332–341.
36. Tosti, R. 2013 Lateral epicondylitis of the elbow. *American Journal of Medicine* 126(4):357.
37. Tyser, A. 2012. Nerve injuries about the elbow: Treatment options. *Current Orthopedic Practice* 23(1):29–33.
38. van Bergen, C. J. A., van den Ende, K. I. M., ten Brinke, B., & Eygendaal, D. 2016. Osteochondritis dissecans of the capitellun in adolescents. *World Journal of Orthopedics* 7(2):102–108.
39. Wilk, K., & Ellenbecker, T. 2015. Rehabilitation of the overhead athlete's elbow. In J. Dines & D. Altchek (eds.), *Elbow ulnar collateral ligament injury: A guide to diagnosis and treatment*. Boston, MA: Springer.
40. Zulia, P., & Prentice, W. 2015. Rehabilitation of elbow injuries. In W. Prentice (ed.), *Rehabilitation techniques in sports medicine and athletic training*, 6th ed. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Culp, R., & Jacoby, S. 2012. *Musculoskeletal examination of the elbow, wrist, and hand: Making the complex simple.* Thorofare, NJ: Slack.

Provides a thorough review of the most common pathologic elbow, wrist, and hand conditions, techniques for diagnosis, as well as the appropriate treatment for each condition.

Saunders, R., & Burke, S. 2015 *Hand and upper extremity rehabilitation: A practical guide.* Philadelphia, PA: Churchill Livingston.

Skirven, T., & Osterman, L. 2011. *Rehabilitation of the hand and upper extremity.* New York, NY: Mosby.

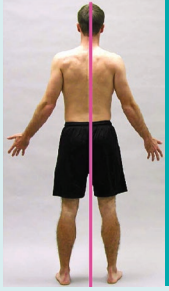
Provides the best patient care and optimal outcomes with trusted guidance from this multidisciplinary, comprehensive resource covering the entire upper extremity, now with increased coverage of wrist and elbow problems.

Weiland, A., & Rohde, R. 2008. *Acute management of hand injuries.* Thorofare, NJ: Slack.

A concise and user-friendly book including the most common acute hand and wrist complaints.

WEBSITES

American Family Physicians- Acute Finger Injuries
https://www.aafp.org/afp/2006/0301/p810.html
eMedicieHealth- Hand Injuries
https://www.emedicinehealth.com/hand_injuries/article_em.htm
MedlinePlus- Hand injuries and disorders
https://medlineplus.gov/handinjuriesanddisorders.html
Mayo Clinic-Elbow Pain
https://www.mayoclinic.org/symptoms/elbow-pain/basics/definition/sym-20050874



©William E. Prentice

20

The Spine

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Describe the anatomy of the cervical, thoracic, and lumbar spine.
- Explain how the nerve roots from the spinal cord combine to form specific peripheral nerves.
- Formulate measures to prevent injury to the spine.
- Describe a process to assess injuries of the cervical and lumbar spine.
- Recognize specific injuries that can occur to the various regions of the spine.

The spine is one of the most complex regions of the body. It contains a multitude of bones, joints, ligaments, and muscles, all of which are collectively involved in spinal movement. The relationship of the spinal cord and the peripheral nerves and their proximity to the vertebral column adds to the complexity of this region. Injury to the cervical spine has potentially life-threatening implications.[18] Low back pain is one of the most common ailments known to humans. Thus, some understanding of the anatomy, assessment techniques, and specific injuries of the spine is essential. **Coaches and fitness professionals should routinely refer athletes complaining of back pain to trained health care professionals for treatment.**

Regions of the spinal column:

- Cervical
- Thoracic
- Lumbar
- Sacrum
- Coccyx

ANATOMY OF THE SPINE

Bones

The spine, or vertebral column, is composed of 33 individual bones called *vertebrae* (Figure 20–1).[22] Twenty-four are classified as movable, or true, and nine are classified as immovable, or false. The movable vertebrae are the cervical vertebrae, thoracic vertebrae, and lumbar vertebrae. The false vertebrae, which are fixed by fusion, form the sacrum and the coccyx. The design of the spine allows a high degree of flexibility forward and laterally and limited mobility backward. Rotation around a central axis in the areas of the neck and the lower back is also permitted.

Movements of the vertebral column:

- Flexion
- Extension
- Lateral flexion
- Rotation

The Cervical Spine Because of the vulnerability of the cervical spine to sports injuries, coaches and

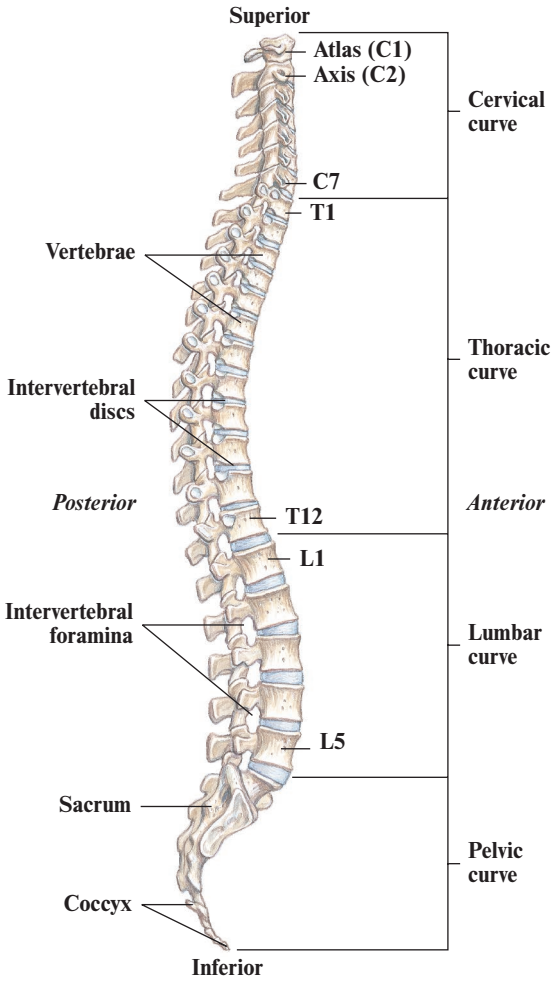


FIGURE 20–1 Vertebrae and curves of the different regions of the spinal column. (From Van De Graaff, K., *Human anatomy*, 6th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2002.)

fitness professionals should have a general knowledge of the cervical spine anatomy and its susceptibility to sports injuries.[5,21] The cervical spine consists of seven vertebrae, with the first two differing from the other true vertebrae (Figure 20–2). These first two are called the *atlas* and the *axis*, respectively, and they function together to support the head on the spinal column and to permit cervical rotation.

The Thoracic Spine The thoracic spine consists of twelve vertebrae (Figure 20–3). Thoracic vertebrae have long transverse processes and prominent but thin spinous processes. Thoracic vertebrae 1 through 10 articulate with the ribs. There is very little movement in the thoracic vertebrae.

The Lumbar Spine The lumbar spine is composed of five vertebrae (Figure 20–4). They are the major support of the low back and are the largest and thickest of the vertebrae, with large spinous and transverse processes. Movement occurs in all the lumbar vertebrae; however, there is much less extension than

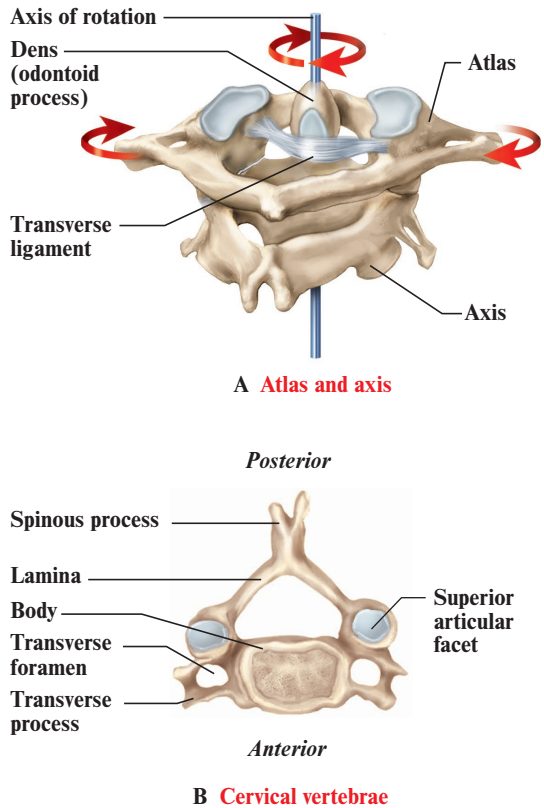


FIGURE 20–2 Anatomy of **(A)** the atlas, axis, and **(B)** cervical vertebrae. (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

flexion due to the presence of the spinous processes and facet joints posteriorly. Rotation is important in the lumbar region.[32]

The Sacrum The sacrum is formed by the fusion of five vertebrae and, with the two hip bones, constitutes the pelvis (Figure 20–5). The sacrum articulates with the ilium to form the sacroiliac joints. (See Figure 20–8.) During both sitting and standing, the body's weight is transmitted through these joints. A complex of ligaments serves to make these joints very stable.[26]

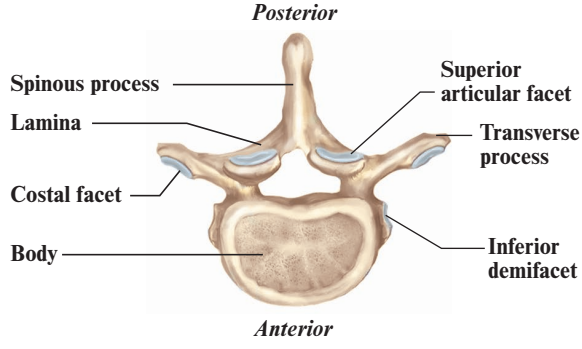


FIGURE 20–3 Anatomy of the thoracic vertebrae. (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

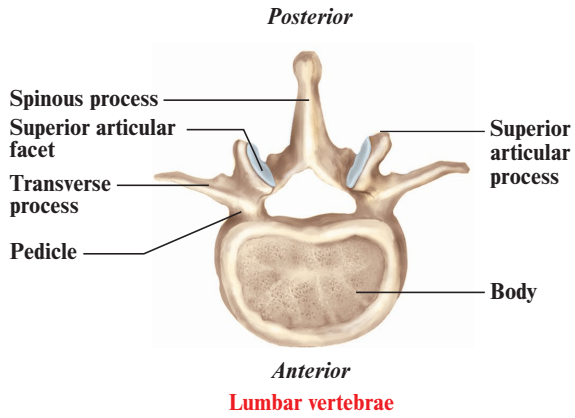


FIGURE 20–4 Anatomy of the lumbar vertebrae. (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

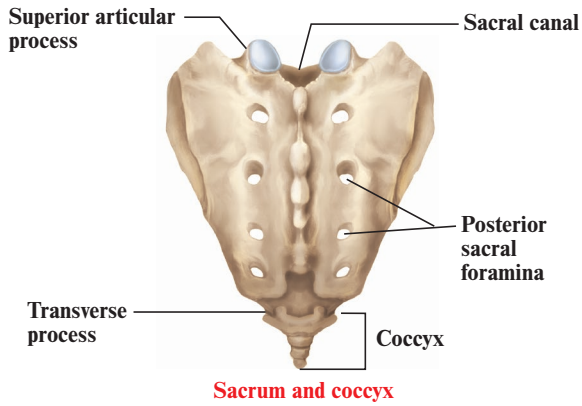


FIGURE 20–5 Anatomy of the sacrum and coccyx. (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

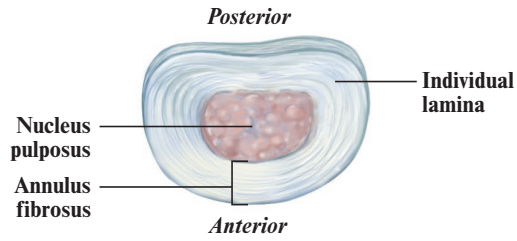


FIGURE 20–6 Intervertebral disc. (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

The Coccyx The coccyx, or tailbone, is the most inferior part of the vertebral column and consists of four or more fused vertebrae (refer to Figure 20–5).[36] The gluteus maximus muscle attaches to the coccyx posteriorly.

Intervertebral Articulations and Discs

Intervertebral articulations are between vertebral bodies. Between each of the cervical, thoracic, and lumbar vertebrae lie fibrocartilaginous intervertebral discs (Figure 20–6). Each disc is composed of the annulus fibrosus and the nucleus pulposus. The annulus fibrosus forms the periphery of the intervertebral disc and is composed of strong, fibrous tissue. In the center is the semifluid nucleus pulposus, compressed under pressure. The discs act as important shock absorbers for the spine.[32]

Ligaments

The major ligaments that join the various vertebral parts are the anterior longitudinal ligament, the posterior longitudinal ligament, and the supraspinous ligament (Figure 20–7). The ligamentum

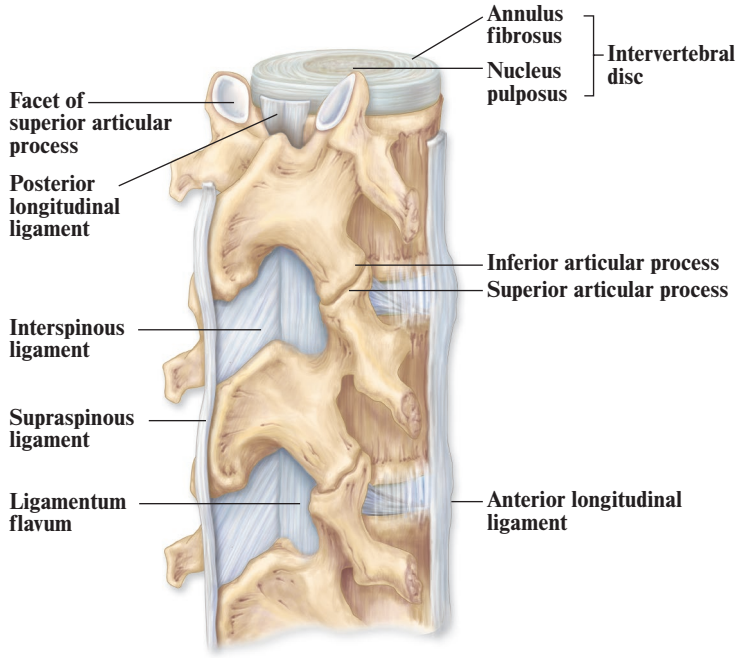


FIGURE 20–7 Ligaments of the vertebral column (dorsolateral view). (From McKinley, M., & O'Loughlin, V., *Human anatomy*, 2nd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

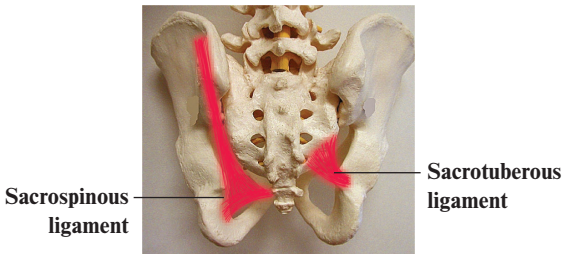


FIGURE 20–8 The sacrotuberous and sacrospinous ligaments maintain the position of the sacrum relative to the pelvis. ©William E. Prentice

flavum connects the laminae of adjacent vertebrae from the axis to the sacrum. The interspinous and supraspinous ligaments stabilize the transverse and spinous processes, extending between adjacent vertebrae. The sacroiliac joint is maintained by the extremely strong dorsal sacral ligaments. The sacrotuberous and sacrospinous ligaments maintain the position of the sacrum relative to the ischium (Figure 20–8).[32]

Muscles

The muscles that extend the spine and rotate the vertebral column can be classified as either superficial or deep (Figure 20–9). The superficial muscles, or erector spinae, extend from the vertebrae to ribs. The erector spinae are a group of paired muscles made up of three columns, or bands: the longissimus group, the iliocostalis group, and the spinalis group. Each of these groups is further divided into regions: the cervicis region in the neck, the thoracis region in the middle back, and the lumborum region in the low back. Generally, the erector spinae muscles extend the spine.

The deep muscles extend from one vertebra to another. The deep muscles include the interspinalis, multifidus, rotatores, thoracis, and the semispinalis cervicis. These muscles extend and rotate the spine (Table 20–1).

The muscles that flex the spine are the sternocleidomastoid muscle, located in the neck, and the abdominal muscles that will be discussed in Chapter 21.

Spinal Cord and Spinal Nerves

The spinal cord is that portion of the central nervous system that is contained within the vertebral canal of the spinal column.[13] It extends from the cranium to the first or second lumbar vertebra. The lumbar roots and the sacral nerves form a horsetail-like structure called the cauda equina.

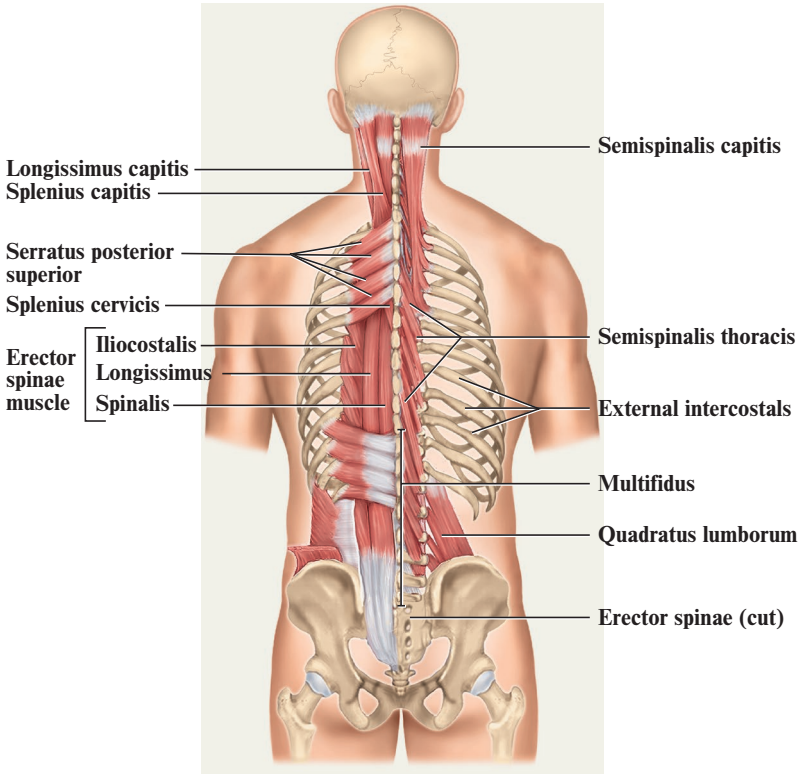


FIGURE 20–9 Muscles of the vertebral column. (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

TABLE 20–1 Muscles of the Spine	
Extend the spine (Superficial muscles)	Erector spinae Longissimus group Cervicis Thoracis Lumborum Iliocostalis Cervicis Thoracis Lumborum Spinalis Cervicis Thoracis Lumborum
Extend and rotate the spine (Deep muscles)	Interspinalis Multifidus Rotatores Thoracis Semispinalis cervicis
Flex the spine (Abdominal muscles)	Sternocleidomastoid

Thirty-one pairs of spinal nerves extend from the sides of the spinal cord: eight cervical, twelve thoracic, five lumbar, five sacral, and one coccygeal (not shown in figure) (Figure 20–10).

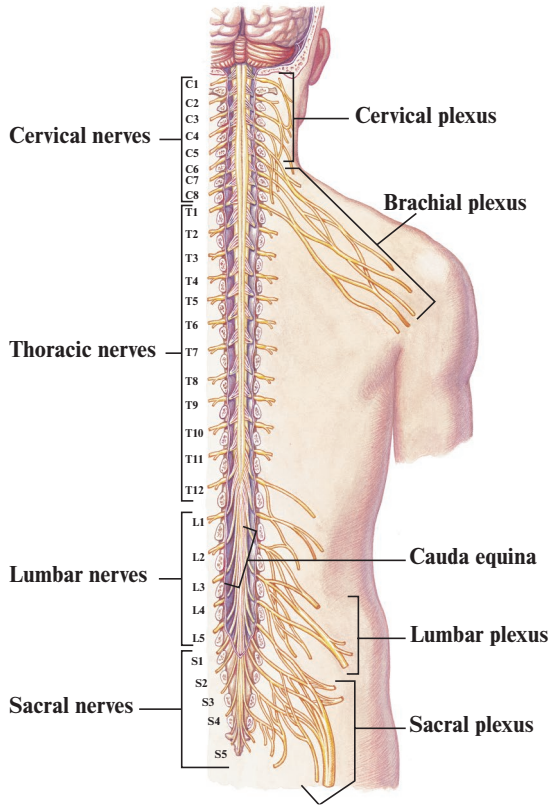


FIGURE 20–10 **The regions of the spinal cord and its nerve roots.** (From Saladin, K. S., *Anatomy and physiology,* 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

PREVENTING INJURIES TO THE SPINE

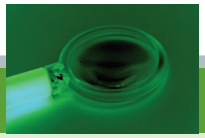
Cervical Spine

Strength Acute traumatic injuries to the spine can be potentially life threatening, particularly if the cervical region of the spinal cord is involved.[21] Thus, the athlete must do everything possible to minimize the chance of injury. Strengthening the musculature of the neck is critical. The neck muscles can function to protect the cervical spine by resisting excessive hyperflexion, hyperextension, or rotational forces.[27] During participation, the athlete should be in a constant state of readiness when making contact with an opponent. Protection is accomplished by elevating both shoulders and isometrically contracting the muscles surrounding the neck. Protective cervical collars can also help limit movement of the cervical spine. Athletes with long, weak necks are especially at risk. Tackle football players and wrestlers must have highly stable necks. Specific strengthening exercises are essential for the development of stability.[17] A variety of different exercises that incorporate isotonic, isometric, or isokinetic contractions can be used.

Long-necked football players and wrestlers are at risk and need to establish neck stability through strengthening exercises.

Flexibility In addition to strong muscles, the athlete's neck should have a full range of motion. Ideally, the athlete should be able to place the chin on the chest and to extend the head back until the face is parallel with the ceiling.[22] There should be at least 40 to 45 degrees of lateral flexion and enough rotation to allow the chin to reach a level even with the tip of the shoulder. Flexibility is increased through stretching exercises and strength exercises that are in full range of motion. When flexibility is restricted, manual static stretching can be beneficial.

Using Proper Technique Athletes involved in collision sports—in particular football and rugby, which involve tackling an opponent—must be taught and required to use techniques that reduce the likelihood of cervical injury.[18] It must be emphasized the using proper techniques can help to minimize the chance of injury to the spine. The head, especially one in a helmet, should not be used as a weapon. Football helmets do not protect players against neck injury. In the illegal spearing situation, the athlete uses the helmet as a weapon by striking the opponent with its top.[3] Most serious cervical injuries in football result from axial



FOCUS BOX 20–1

Recommended postures and practices for preventing low back pain

Sitting

1. Do not sit for long periods.
2. Avoid sitting forward on a chair with back arched.
3. Sit on a firm, straight-backed chair.
4. The low back should be slightly rounded or positioned firmly against the back of the chair.
5. The feet should be flat on the floor with knees above the level of the hips (if unable to adequately raise the knees, the feet should be placed on a stool).
6. Avoid sitting with legs straight and raised on a stool.

Standing

1. If standing for long periods:
   a. Shift position from one foot to the other.
   b. Place one foot on a stool.
2. Stand tall, flatten low back, and relax knees.
3. Avoid arching back.

Lifting and carrying

1. To pick up an object:
   a. Bend at knees and not the waist.
   b. Do not twist to pick up an object—face it squarely.
   c. Tuck in buttocks and tighten abdomen.
2. To carry an object:
   a. Hold object close to body.
   b. Hold object at waist level.
   c. Do not carry object on one side of the body—if it must be carried unbalanced, change from one side to the other.

Sleeping

1. Do not stay in one position too long.
2. The bed should be flat and firm yet comfortable.
3. Do not sleep on the abdomen.
4. Do not sleep on the back with legs fully extended.
5. If sleeping on the back, a pillow should be placed under the knees.
6. Ideally, sleep on the side with the knees drawn up.
7. Arms should never be extended overhead.
8. The least strain on the back is in the fully recumbent position with the hips and knees at angles of 90 degrees. In the case of a chronic or a subacute low back condition, a firm mattress affords better rest and relaxation of the lower back. Placing a ¾-inch plywood board underneath the mattress gives a firm, stable surface for the injured back.

loading while spearing.[21] **The importance of using appropriate tackling techniques cannot be stressed enough to the athlete.** In other sports, such as diving, wrestling, and bouncing on a trampoline, the athlete's neck can be flexed at the time of contact. Energy of the forward-moving body mass cannot be fully absorbed, and fracture or dislocation or both can occur.[9] Diving into shallow water causes many catastrophic neck injuries. Many of the same forces are applied in wrestling. In such trauma, paraplegia, quadriplegia, or death can result.

Lumbar Spine

Low back pain is caused by many factors, many of which can be prevented by using proper body mechanics when sitting, lying, standing, or bending (*Focus Box 20–1*).[23]

Flexibility and Core Strength It is important to be aware of any postural anomalies that an athlete has (see Figure 20–9). With this knowledge, an individual corrective program can be established.[23] Basic conditioning should include an emphasis on trunk flexibility. Every effort should be made to produce maximum range of motion in rotation and in both lateral and forward flexion. Both strength and flexibility should be developed in the spinal extensors (erector spinae). Abdominal strength is essential to ensure proper postural alignment.[17] Muscle strength imbalances between the abdominals and the erectors can very often be the cause of low back pain. It is also essential to incorporate exercises to improve core stability (see Chapter 4). The core is composed of the muscles of the lumbar, pelvic, and hip regions. Strengthening of the core muscles is extremely critical for normal function of the spine.[4]

Using Proper Technique In weight lifters, the chance of injury to the lumbar spine can be minimized by using proper lifting techniques. Incorporating appropriate breathing techniques that involve inhaling and exhaling deeply during lifting can help stabilize the spine. Weight belts can also help stabilize the lumbar spine. Spotters can greatly enhance safety by helping lift and lower the weight.

ASSESSMENT OF THE SPINE

Generally, fitness professionals, coaches, and others working in areas related to exercise and sports science are not adequately trained to evaluate injuries. It is strongly recommended that injured athletes be referred to qualified medical personnel (i.e., physicians, athletic trainers, physical therapists) for injury evaluation.

Assessment of injuries to the spine is somewhat more complex than assessment of the joints of the extremities because of the number of articulations involved in spinal movement.[22] It is also true that injury to the spine, in particular the spinal cord, may have life-threatening or life-altering implications.[8] Thus, the coach or fitness professional must be able to rule out spinal injury by asking the appropriate questions.

History

The most critical part of the evaluation is to rule out the possibility of spinal cord injury.[30] Questions that address this possibility should first establish the mechanism of injury:

- What do you think happened?
- Did you hit someone with or land directly on the top of your head?
- Were you knocked out or unconscious? (Any time an impact is sufficient to cause unconsciousness, the potential for injury to the spine exists.)
- Do you have any pain in your neck or directly over your spine?
- Do you have tingling, numbness, or burning in your shoulders, arms, or hands?
- Do you have equal muscle strength in both hands?
- Are you able to move your ankles and toes? (Any sensory or motor changes bilaterally may indicate some spinal cord injury.)
- Any changes in bowel or bladder routines?

A yes response to any of these questions necessitates that the athlete not be moved except by the rescue squad.[30] Emergency care of the athlete with suspected cervical spine injury was discussed in detail in Chapter 8.

Once cervical spine injury has been ruled out, other general questions may provide some indication as to the nature of the problem:

Dial 911 to access the rescue squad.

- Where is the pain located?
- What kind of pain do you have?
- What were you doing when the pain began?
- Were you standing, sitting, bending, or twisting?
- Did the pain begin immediately?
- How long have you had this pain?
- Do certain movements or positions cause more pain?
- Can you assume a position that gets rid of the pain?
- Is there any tingling or numbness in the arms or legs?
- Is there any pain in the buttocks or the back of the legs?
- Have you ever had any back pain before?
- What position do you usually sleep in? How do you prefer to sit?

It is important to remember that pain in the back may be caused by many different conditions. The source may be musculoskeletal or visceral, or it may be referred.[22]

Observation

Observing the posture and movement capabilities of the athlete during the evaluation can help clarify the nature and extent of the injury.[17] General observations relative to posture include the following:

- Does posture exhibit signs of kyphosis, lordosis, or scoliosis (Figure 20–11)?
- Is the athlete willing to move the head and neck freely?
- Are the shoulders level and symmetrical?
- Is the head tilted to one side?
- Is one scapula lower or more prominent than the other?
- Is the trunk bent or curved to one side?
- Is the space between the body and arm greater on one side?
- Is one hip more prominent than the other?
- Are the hips tilted to one side?
- Is the pelvis in a neutral position or tilted either anteriorly or posteriorly?
- Are the ribs more pronounced on one side?
- Does one arm hang longer than the other?
- Does one arm hang farther forward than the other?
- Is one patella lower than the other?

Palpation

Palpation should be performed with the athlete lying prone and the spine as straight as possible. The head and neck should be slightly flexed. In cases of low back pain, a pillow placed under the hips might make the athlete more comfortable. The spinous processes and transverse process of each vertebra along with the sacrum and coccyx should be palpated for spots of tenderness or increases in pain. The musculature on each side of the spine should also be palpated for tenderness or guarding. Palpation should progress from proximal to distal. Remember that referred pain can produce tender areas away from the site of injury.[17]

Special Tests

Information on the following special tests has been included to give some idea about the different basic

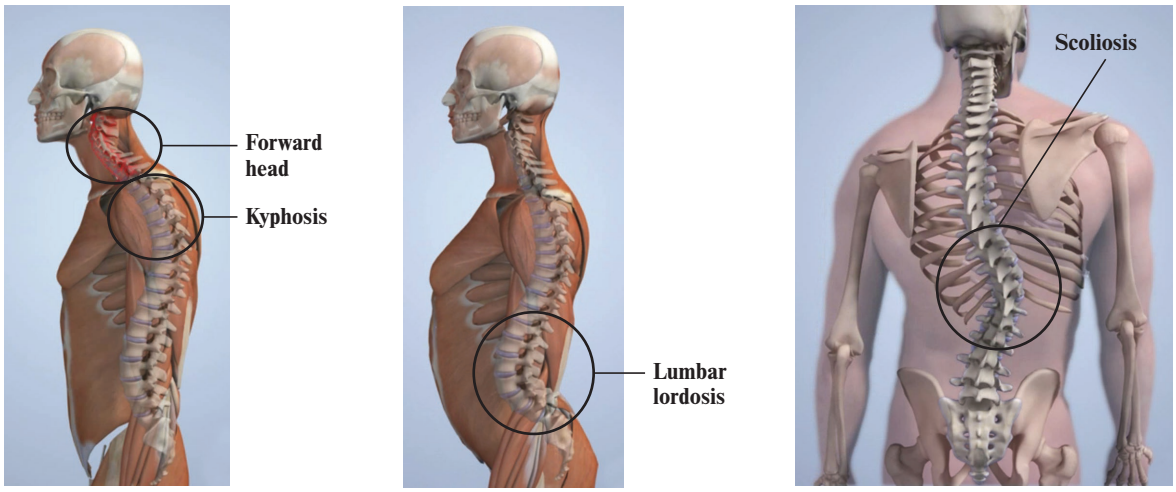


FIGURE 20–11 Abnormal postures: **(A)** Kyphosis. **(B)** Lordosis. **(C)** Scoliosis.

tests that nonmedical personnel may do to determine the nature and severity of the athlete's injury. **The primary responsibility of those who are not health care professionals is to be able to recognize any potential "red flags" associated with the injury, provide appropriate first aid for the injury, and make correct decisions about how the injury should be managed initially,** including immediate return to play or activity decisions (refer to Chapter 8).

Special tests for the lumbar spine should be performed in standing, sitting, supine, side-lying, and prone positions.[17] Special tests include testing both the cervical and lumbar spines in forward bending, backward bending, side bending, and rotation. Any increase in pain or restriction in movement indicates the existence of some condition or injury that should be referred for further evaluation.[14]

Straight Leg Raises Straight leg raising applies pressure to the sacroiliac joint and may indicate a problem in the sciatic nerve, the sacroiliac joint, or the lumbar spine (Figure 20–12).[17]

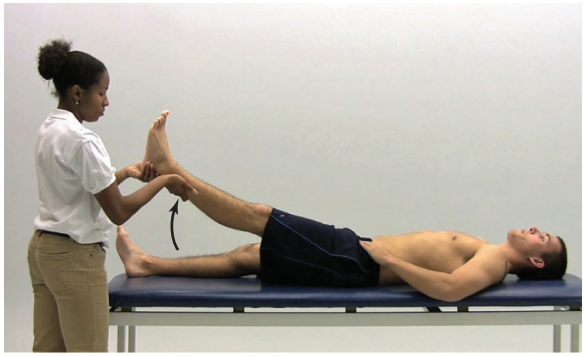


FIGURE 20–12 Straight leg raising test: pain during the SLR test may indicate a problem in the sciatic nerve, sacroiliac joint, or lumbar spine. ©William E. Prentice

Compression and Distraction Tests Sacroiliac compression and distraction tests are useful in determining whether there is a problem in the sacroiliac joint (Figure 20–13).[17]

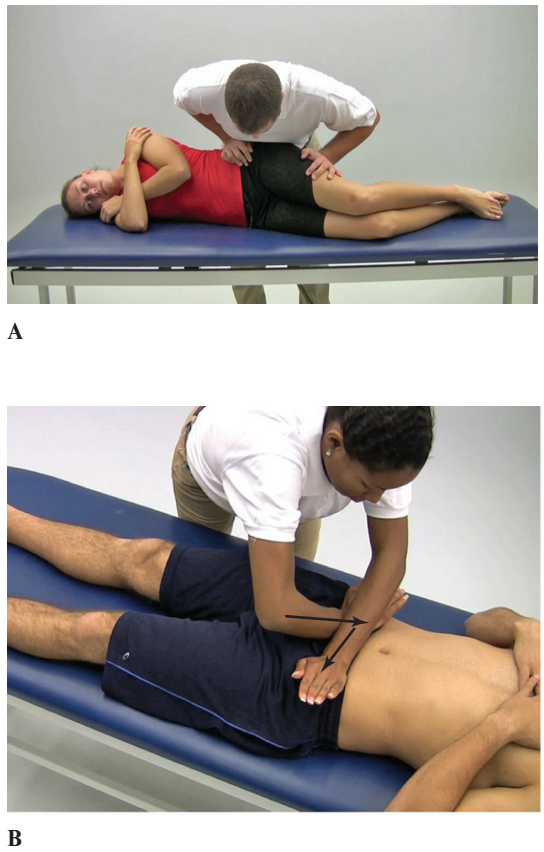


FIGURE 20–13 **(A)** Sacral compression. **(B)** Sacral distraction; both tests can help determine if there is a problem in the sacroiliac joint. ©William E. Prentice

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF CERVICAL SPINE INJURIES AND CONDITIONS

Because the neck is so mobile, it is extremely vulnerable to a wide range of sports injuries.[7] Although relatively uncommon, severe sports injury to the neck can produce catastrophic impairment of the spinal cord.[18] The neck is also prone to subtle injuries stemming from stress, tension, and postural malalignments.[10]

Cervical Fractures

Cause of Injury Fortunately, neck fractures are relatively uncommon in athletics. Nevertheless, be prepared to handle such a situation should it arise.

axial loading A blow to the top of the athlete's head while in flexion.

Axial loading of the cervical vertebrae from a force to the top of the head combined with flexion of the neck can result in an anterior compression (Figure 20–14).[30] In axial loading, the normal anterior curve in the cervical spine flattens out. If the head is also rotated when making contact, a dislocation may occur along with the fracture.[21] Those sports having the highest incidence of neck fractures are gymnastics, ice hockey, diving, football, and rugby.[18]

Signs of Injury The athlete may have one or more of the following signs of cervical fracture: neck point tenderness and restricted movement, cervical muscle spasm, cervical pain and pain in the chest and extremities, numbness in trunk and/or limbs, weakness or paralysis in limbs and/or trunk, or a loss of bladder and/or bowel control.[30]

Care An unconscious athlete should be treated as if a serious neck injury were present until a physician rules out this possibility.[30] In cases of suspected cervical fracture, the athlete should not be moved except by individuals specifically trained to do so (i.e., EMS, athletic trainers).[30] Always be aware that an athlete can sustain a catastrophic spinal injury from improper handling and transportation (see Chapter 8 for a detailed description of the emergency care of spinal injuries).[30]

FIGURE 20–14 In axial loading, contact is made with the top of the head with the neck in a flexed position.
©William E. Prentice

Cervical Dislocations

Cause of Injury Cervical dislocations are not common, but they do occur much more frequently in sports than do fractures. Dislocations usually result from violent flexion and rotation of the head, as occurs in pool diving accidents.[19]

Signs of Injury For the most part, a cervical dislocation produces many of the same signs as a fracture. Both can result in considerable pain, numbness, and muscle weakness or paralysis.[19] The most easily discernible difference is the position of the neck in a dislocation: a unilateral dislocation causes the neck to be tilted toward the dislocated side, with extreme muscle tightness on the elongated side and a relaxed muscle state on the tilted side.[9]

A unilateral cervical dislocation can cause the neck to tilt toward the dislocated side, with tight muscles on the elongated side and relaxed muscles on the tilted side.

Care Because a dislocation of a cervical vertebra has a greater likelihood of causing injury to the spinal cord, even greater care must be exercised when moving the patient.[9] The procedures described in Chapter 8 should be applied to cervical dislocations.

Acute Muscle Strains of the Neck and Upper Back

Cause of Injury In a strain of the neck or upper back, the athlete has usually turned the head suddenly or has forced flexion, extension, or rotation. Muscles involved are typically the upper trapezius, sternocleidomastoid, the scalenes on the front of the neck, and the splenius capitis and cervicis.[7]

Signs of Injury Localized pain, point tenderness, and restricted motion are present. Muscle guarding resulting from pain is common, and there is a reluctance to move the neck in any direction.[15]

Care Care usually includes use of ice immediately after the strain occurs and use of a soft cervical collar for protection (Figure 20–15). Follow-up management may include range-of-motion exercises followed by isometric exercises progressing to

FIGURE 20–15 Wearing a soft cervical collar helps reduce pain and spasm in an athlete with an injured neck. ©William E. Prentice

full-range isotonic strengthening exercises. In addition, cold or superficial heat and analgesic medications are used as prescribed by the physician.[17]

Cervical Sprain (Whiplash)

Cause of Injury A cervical sprain or "whiplash" can occur from the same mechanism as the strain but usually results from a more violent motion. More commonly, a cervical sprain occurs when the head snaps suddenly, such as when the athlete is tackled or blocked while unprepared (Figure 20–16). Frequently muscle strains occur with ligament sprains. A sprain of the neck produces tears in the supporting tissue of the anterior or posterior longitudinal ligaments, the interspinous ligament, or the supraspinous ligament.[33]

Signs of Injury The sprain displays all the signs of the strained neck, but the symptoms persist longer. There may also be tenderness over the transverse and spinous processes that serve as sites of attachment for the ligaments. Pain may not be experienced initially but is always present the day after the trauma.

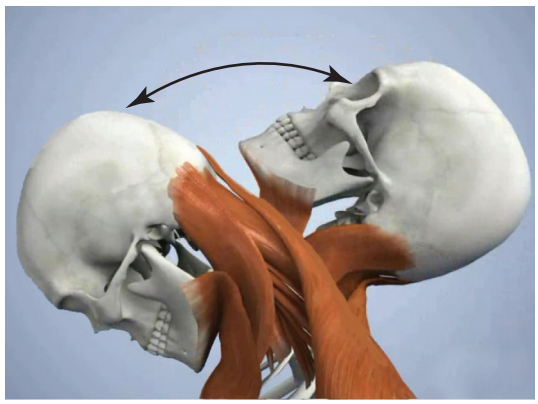


FIGURE 20–16 Whiplash or cervical sprain injury involves a sudden forward or backward acceleration of the head relating to the vertebral column.

Care As soon as possible, the athlete should have a physician evaluation to rule out the possibility of fracture, dislocation, or disc injury.[1] A soft cervical collar may be applied to reduce muscle spasm. Ice is used for 48 to 72 hours while the injury is in the acute stage of healing. In an athlete with a severe injury, the physician may prescribe 2 to 3 days of bed rest along with analgesics and anti-inflammation agents. Therapy might include cold or heat and massage. Mechanical traction may also be prescribed to relieve pain and muscle spasm.[17]

Acute Torticollis

Cause of Injury Acute torticollis is a very common condition in which the athlete usually complains of pain on one side of the neck when awakening.[2] This stiff neck happens when a small piece of synovial membrane lining the joint capsule is impinged or trapped between the cervical vertebrae.[17] This problem can also occasionally follow exposure to a cold draft of air or holding the head in an unusual position over time.

Signs of Injury During inspection, there is palpable point tenderness and muscle spasm. Head movement is restricted to the side opposite the irritation, with marked muscle guarding. X-ray examination rules out a more serious injury.

Care Cold or heat and massage may be used to modulate pain in an attempt to break a pain-guarding-pain cycle. Gentle traction, rotation, and lateral bending, first in the pain-free direction, then in the direction of pain, can help reduce the guarding.[2] The athlete should gradually engage in strengthening and stretching exercises, not only for the neck but also for the shoulder complex to help prevent recurrence.[15] The athlete may find it helpful to wear a soft cervical collar for comfort (refer to Figure 20–15). This muscle guarding generally lasts for 2 to 3 days, during which the athlete progressively regains motion. He or she should not return to activity until full range of motion has been regained.[17]

Pinched Nerve (Brachial Plexus Injury)

Cause of Injury A pinched nerve resulting from stretching or compression of the brachial plexus is the most common cervical neurological injury in the athlete.[8] Other terms commonly used to indicate this

20–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

When making a tackle, a football player experiences burning and tingling with a loss of strength in his left arm.

? What condition has most likely occurred, and how should the coach manage this problem?

condition are *stinger* or *burner*.[10] The primary mechanism of injury is the stretching of the brachial plexus of nerves when the neck is forced laterally to the opposite side while the shoulder is depressed, as occurs with a shoulder block in football.[8]

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of a burning sensation, numbness and tingling, and pain extending from the shoulder down to the hand, with some loss of function of the arm and hand that lasts for several minutes.[8] Rarely, symptoms may persist for several days. Neck range of motion is usually normal. Repeated brachial plexus nerve stretch injuries may result in permanent damage.

Care Once the symptoms have completely resolved and there are no associated neurological symptoms, the athlete may return to full activity.[8] Thereafter, he or she should begin strengthening and stretching exercises for the neck musculature.[17] A football player should be fitted with a cervical neck collar attached to the shoulder pads to limit neck range of motion during impact (see Figure 6–16C).

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF LUMBAR SPINE INJURIES AND CONDITIONS

Low Back Pain

Cause of Injury Low back pain is one of the most common and disabling ailments known to humans. In sports, back problems are common and are most often the result of congenital anomalies, mechanical back defects caused mainly by faulty posture, or trauma to the back, including sprains, strains, or contusions.[6]

Signs of Injury With repeated episodes of injury, the athlete may develop recurrent or chronic low back pain. Gradually, this problem can lead to muscular weakness and impairment of sensation and reflex responses.[14] The older the athlete, the more prone he or she is to developing chronic low back pain. The incidence of this condition at the secondary school level is low, but it becomes progressively greater with increasing age.[17]

Care The athlete, like everyone else in the population, can prevent low back pain by avoiding unnecessary stresses and strains associated with standing, sitting, lying, working, or exercising.[25] Care should be taken to avoid postures and positions that can cause injuries (refer to Focus Box 20–1).

Lumbar Vertebral Fracture and Dislocation

Cause of Injury Fractures in the lumbar region of the vertebral column are not serious in terms of bone injury, but they pose dangers when related to spinal cord damage. Lumbar vertebral fractures of the greatest concern in sports are compression fractures and fractures of the transverse and spinous processes.[29]

The compression fracture may occur as a result of hyperflexion of the trunk. Falling from a height and landing on the feet or buttocks may also produce a compression fracture. Fractures of the transverse and spinous processes result most often from a kick or other direct impact to the back.[29] Dislocations of the lumbar vertebrae in sports are rare, occurring only when there is an associated fracture.

Signs of Injury Recognition of the compression fracture is difficult without an X-ray examination. A basic evaluation may be made with a knowledge of the history and point tenderness over the affected vertebrae.[29] Fractures of the transverse and spinous processes may be directly palpable. There will be point tenderness and some localized swelling along with muscle guarding to protect the area.

Care If the symptoms and signs associated with a fracture are present, the injured athlete should be X-rayed. Transporting and moving the athlete should be done on a spine board, as described in Chapter 8, to minimize movement of the fractured segment.

Low Back Muscle Strains

Cause of Injury There are two mechanisms of the typical low back strain in sports activities. The first happens from a sudden extension, usually in combination with trunk rotation. The second is the chronic strain commonly associated with faulty posture.[17]

Signs of Injury Evaluation should be performed immediately after injury, to rule out the possibility of fracture. Discomfort in the low back may be diffused or localized in one area. Pain is present on active extension and with passive flexion.[6]

Care Initially, cold packs and/or ice massage should be used to decrease muscle guarding. An elastic wrap or an abdominal support corset-type brace helps compress the area (Figure 20–17). A graduated

FIGURE 20–17 An abdominal brace helps support the lumbar area. ©William E. Prentice

program of stretching and strengthening begins slowly during the acute stage. Injuries of moderate to severe intensity may require complete bed rest to help break the pain–muscle guarding cycle.

Lumbar Sprains

Cause of Injury Sprains may occur in any of the ligaments in the lumbar spine. The most common sprain occurs when the athlete is bending forward and twisting while lifting or moving some object.[23] Lumbar sprain can occur with a single episode or with chronic repetitive stress that becomes progressively worse with activity.

Signs of Injury The pain is localized and located just lateral to the spinous process. Pain becomes sharper with certain movements or postures, and the athlete limits movement in painful ranges. Flexion, extension, and rotational movements of the vertebrae can increase pain.[22]

Care Initial treatment should include ice to reduce pain. Strengthening exercises for abdominals and back extensors and stretching in all directions should be limited to a pain-free range. An abdominal brace or support should be worn to limit movement during early return to activity.[17] As with sprains to other joints in the body, some time is required for healing.

Back Contusions

Cause of Injury Back contusions rank third to strains and sprains in incidence. Because of its surface area, the back is quite vulnerable to bruises in sports. Football produces the greatest number of these injuries. A significant impact to the back can cause serious injury to the kidneys, leading to the presence of some blood in the urine (see Chapter 21). Contusion of the back must be distinguished from a vertebral fracture. In some instances, this distinction is possible only through an X-ray examination.

Signs of Injury The bruise causes local pain, muscle spasm, and point tenderness. A swollen, discolored area may be visible also.

Care Cold and pressure should be applied intermittently for approximately the first 72 hours or longer, with rest. Ice massage combined with gradual stretching benefits soft-tissue contusion in the low back. Recovery usually ranges from 2 days to 2 weeks.

Sciatica

Cause of Injury The term *sciatica* has been incorrectly used as a general term to describe all low back pain without reference to exact causes. **Sciatica** is an inflammatory condition of the sciatic nerve that can accompany recurrent or chronic low back pain.[11] This nerve is particularly vulnerable to torsion or direct blows that tend to impose abnormal stretching and pressure on it as it emerges from the spine (Figure 20–18).[16]

sciatica (sigh-at-tika) Inflammatory condition of the sciatic nerve; commonly associated with peripheral nerve root compression.

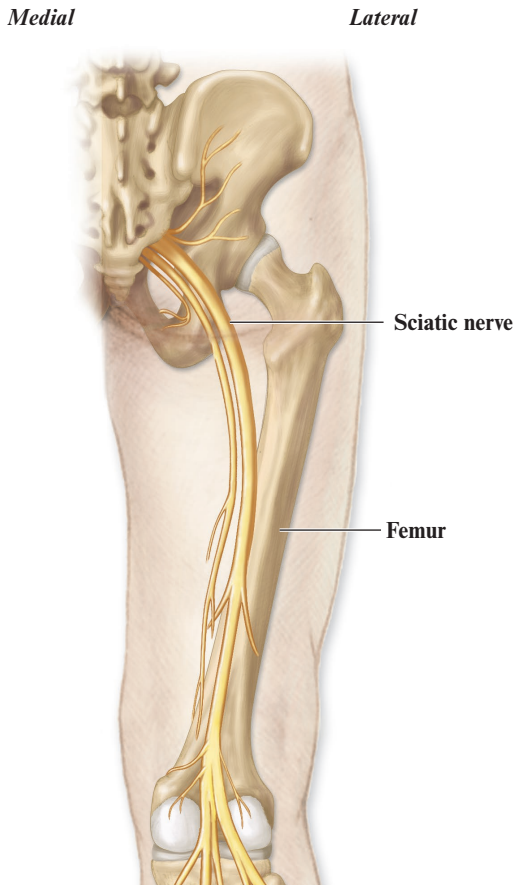


FIGURE 20–18 Sciatic nerve (posterior view) in the posterior hip and thigh.

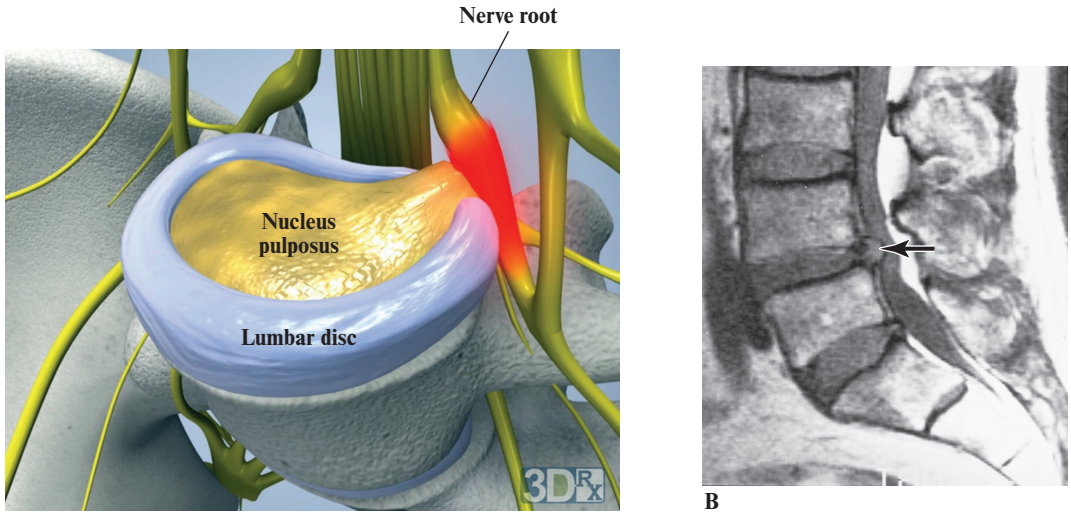


FIGURE 20–19 **(A)** A herniated disc causes pressure on a nerve root. **(B)** MRI of herniated disc. (B) ©William E. Prentice

Signs of Injury Sciatica may begin either abruptly or gradually. It produces a sharp shooting pain that follows the nerve pathway along the posterior and medial thigh. There may also be some tingling and numbness along its path. The nerve may be extremely sensitive to palpation.[11] Straight leg raising usually intensifies the pain (see Figure 20–12).

Care In the acute stage, rest is essential. The cause of the inflammation must be identified and treated. If there is a disc protrusion, lumbar traction may be appropriate. Because recovery from sciatia usually occurs within 2 to 3 weeks, surgery should be delayed to see whether symptoms resolve. Oral anti-inflammatory medication may help reduce inflammation.

Herniated Lumbar Disc

Cause of Injury The mechanism of a disc injury is the same as that of the lumbar sprain—forward bending and twisting that places abnormal strain on the lumbar region. This movement produces herniation of the nucleus pulposus of a disc, which can impinge on a nerve root (Figure 20–19).[20] The pain associated with disc herniation is substantial. The disc most often injured lies between the L4 and the L5 vertebrae.[12]

Signs of Injury A herniated lumbar disc usually creates centrally located pain that radiates on one side to the buttocks and down the back of the leg or pain that spreads across the back.[16] Symptoms are worse on rising in the morning. Onset may be sudden or gradual, with pain increasing after the athlete sits and then tries to resume activity. Posture exhibits a slight forward bend with side bending away from the side of pain. Straight leg raising increases pain.[17]

Care Initially, rest and ice should be used to help relieve pain. In many cases, but certainly not all, backward bending or extension makes the athlete more comfortable. As pain and posture return to normal, back extensor and core stabilization exercises should be used.[12] Sometimes the symptoms resolve with time. But signs of nerve damage may necessitate surgery.

Spondylolysis and Spondylolisthesis

Cause of Condition Spondylolysis refers to a degeneration of the vertebrae and, more commonly, a defect in the articular processes of the vertebrae (Figure 20–20).[34] It is often attributed to a congenital weakness, with the defect occurring as a stress fracture, and is more common among boys.[34] Sports movements that characteristically hyperextend the spine, such as arching the back in gymnastics, lifting weights, blocking in football, kicking in football, serving in tennis, spiking in volleyball, and the butterfly stroke in swimming, are most likely to cause this condition.[35]

Spondylolisthesis is considered to be a complication of a spondylolysis.

Spondylolisthesis is a complication of spondylolysis, often resulting in hypermobility of a

20–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A gymnast constantly hyperextends her low back. She complains of stiffness and persistent aching pain across the low back, with increased pain after, but not during, practice. The athlete feels that she needs to change positions frequently or self-manipulate her low back to reduce the pain. She is beginning to develop pain in her buttock and some muscle weakness in her leg.

? What type of injury should be suspected? Can anything be done about it?

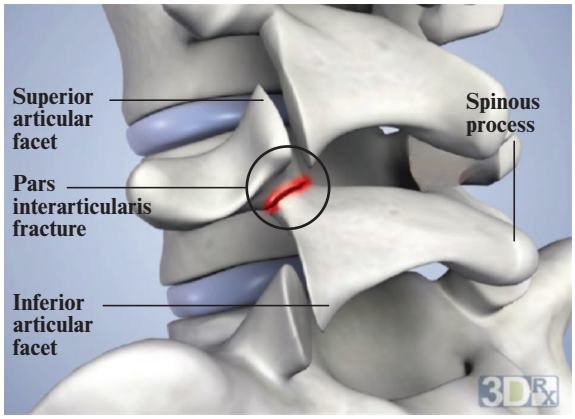


FIGURE 20–20 Spondylolysis: Fracture of the pars interarticularis between superior and inferior articular facets.

vertebral segment.[31] Spondylolisthesis has the highest incidence with L5 slipping on S1. A direct blow or sudden twist or chronic low back strain may cause the defective vertebra to displace itself forward on the sacrum (Figure 20–21).[34]

Signs of Condition The athlete complains of persistent aching pain or stiffness across the low back, with increased pain after, not usually during, physical activity. The athlete feels the need to change positions frequently or "pop" the low back to reduce the pain. There may be tenderness localized to one segment.[34]

Care Initially, bracing and occasionally bed rest for 1 to 3 days helps to reduce pain. The major focus in rehabilitation should be directed toward exercises that control or stabilize the hypermobile lumbar segment.[24] Progressive trunk-stabilization strengthening exercises, especially through the midrange, should be incorporated. Braces are most helpful during high-level activities. It may be necessary for the athlete to avoid vigorous activity.[35]

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF SACROILIAC JOINT AND COCCYX INJURIES

The sacroiliac is the joint formed by the ilium and the sacrum, and it is fortified by strong ligaments that allow little motion to take place. Because the sacroiliac joint is a synovial joint, disorders can include sprain, inflammation, hypermobility, and hypomobility.[28]

Sacroiliac Sprain

Cause of Injury A sprain of the sacroiliac joint may result from twisting with both feet on the ground, stumbling forward, falling backward, stepping too far down (i.e., stepping off of a curb) and landing heavily on one leg, or forward bending with the knees locked during lifting.[26]

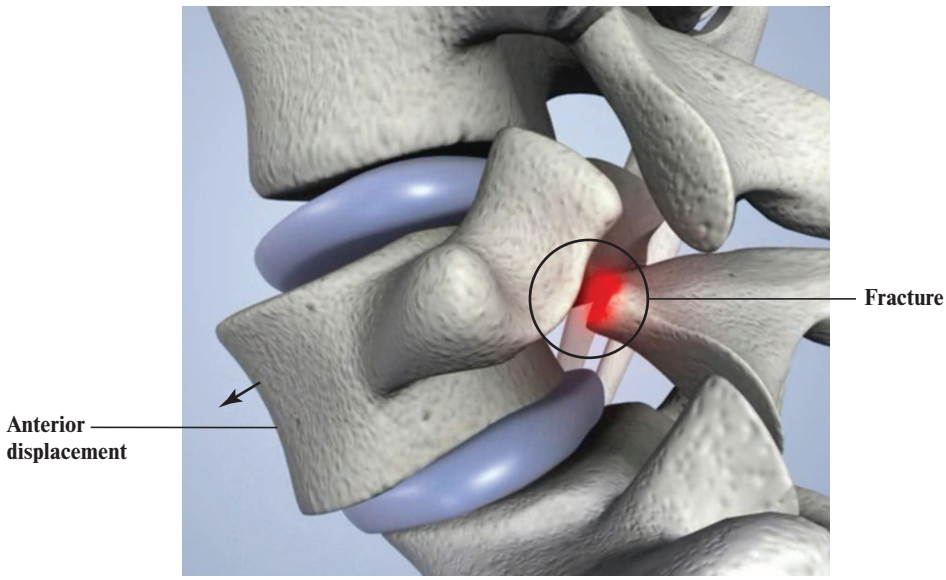


FIGURE 20–21 Spondylolisthesis: Anterior displacement of vertebrae with pars articularis fracture.

20–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

During a takedown move, a wrestler falls down hard on his buttocks in a sitting position. He complains of intense localized pain at the tip of his spine.

? What has most likely been injured?

Signs of Injury A sprain of the sacroiliac joint may have palpable pain and tenderness directly over the joint, with some associated muscle guarding. Hip levels may appear to be asymmetrical.[28]

Care Ice can be used to reduce pain. A supportive brace is also helpful in an acute sprain. Core strengthening exercises for the lumbopelvic-hip complex should be incorporated to improve stability to a hypermobile joint.[26]

Coccyx Injuries

Cause of Injury Coccygeal injuries in sports are prevalent and occur primarily from direct impact, which may result from falling on the butt or being kicked by an opponent. Injuries to the coccyx may include sprains, contusions, or fractures.[36]

Signs of Injury Pain in the coccygeal region is often prolonged and at times chronic. There is tenderness over the bone, and the athlete has difficulty sitting.

Care Treatment consists of analgesics and a ring seat pillow to relieve the pressure on the coccyx while sitting. It should be noted that pain from a fractured coccyx may last for many months.[36] Once a coccygeal injury has healed, the athlete should be protected against reinjury by appropriately applied padding.

SUMMARY

- The spine, or vertebral column, is composed of thirty-three individual vertebrae. The design of the spine allows for flexion, extension, lateral flexion, and rotation. The movable vertebrae are separated by intervertebral discs, and position is maintained by a series of muscular and ligamentous supports. The spine can be divided into three different regions: the cervical, thoracic, and lumbar regions. The sacrum and coccyx are fused vertebrae within the vertebral column.
- The spinal cord is that portion of the central nervous system that is contained within the vertebral canal of the spinal column. Thirty-one pairs of spinal nerves extend from the sides of the spinal cord.
- Acute traumatic injuries to the spine can be potentially life threatening, particularly if the cervical region of the spinal cord is involved. Thus, the athlete must do everything possible to minimize injury. Strengthening of the musculature of the neck is critical. In addition to strong muscles, the athlete's neck should have a full range of motion. Athletes involved in collision sports must be taught and required to use techniques that reduce the likelihood of cervical injury.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

20-1 It is most likely that the athlete has a brachial plexus injury that is sometimes called a stinger or burner. Normally the symptoms resolve on their own over several minutes. Consider having the athlete wear a cervical collar.

20-2 The gymnast likely has a spondylolisthesis that has resulted in hypermobility of a vertebral segment. Initially, rest will help to reduce pain. The major focus in rehabilitation should be directed toward exercises that control or stabilize the hypermobile segment. Progressive trunk-strengthening exercises, especially to the abdominal muscles through the midrange, should be incorporated. A brace can be helpful during practice.

20-3 The wrestler has most likely contused his coccyx. Fractures of this bone are relatively uncommon. It may be necessary to apply a protective pad over the injured area.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Identify the various regions of the spine.
2. What is the relationship between the spinal cord and the nerve roots?
3. Discuss the various considerations in prevention of cervical injuries.
4. Describe the special tests used in evaluating the lumbar and sacroiliac portions of the spine.
5. What can be done to minimize the incidence of low back pain?
6. Describe the mechanism of injury for a herniated disc.
7. How does a spondylolysis become a spondylolisthesis?
8. What is the usual mechanism for injury to the sacroiliac joint?

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Baccus, H. 2011. Soft tissue considerations and treatment in sports-induced whiplash. *SportEx Dynamics* 27(1):17–23.
2. Bakers, R. 2013. Treatment of acute torticollis using positional release—Parts 1 and 2. *International Journal of Athletic Therapy and Training* 18(2):34–46.
3. Benjamin, H. 2013. Sports-related cervical spine injuries. *Clinical Pediatric Emergency Medicine* 14(4):255–266.
4. Bliven, K. 2013. Core stability training for injury prevention. *Sports Health: A Multidisciplinary Approach* 5(6):514–522.
5. Bogduk, N. 2011. The anatomy and physiology of neck pain. *Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation Clinics of North America* 22(3):367–382.
6. Brukner, P. 2016. Low back pain. In P. Brukner & B. Clarsen (eds.), *Clinical sports medicine*, 5th ed. Sydney: McGraw-Hill.
7. Brukner, P. 2016. Neck pain. In P. Brukner & B. Clarsen (eds.), *Clinical sports medicine*, 5th ed. Sydney: McGraw-Hill.
8. Chao, P. 2010. The pathomechanics, pathophysiology, and prevention of cervical spinal cord and brachial plexus injuries in athletics. *Sports Medicine* 40(1):59–75.
9. Charan, R., & Kumar, S. 2017. Management of facet joint dislocation of cervical spine. *Journal of Evidence Based Medicine in Healthcare* 4(42):2558–2563.
10. Cohen, S. 2015. Epidemiology, diagnosis and treatment of neck pain. *Mayo Clinic Proceedings* 90(2):284–299.
11. Cook, C., & Taylor, J. 2014. Risk factors for first time incidence sciatica: A systematic review. *Physiotherapy Research International* 19(2):65–78.
12. Cook, R., & Massel, D. 2017. Management of sports-related lumbar disc herniation. *Contemporary Spine Surgery* 118(3):1–5.
13. Cramer, G., & Darby, S. 2014. *Clinical anatomy of the spine, spinal cord, and ANS*. St. Louis, MO: Elsevier.
14. Daniels, J. 2011. Evaluation of low back pain in athletes. *Sports Health: A Multidisciplinary Approach* 3(4):336–345.
15. Donatelli, R. 2012. Sport-specific biomechanics of spinal injuries in the athlete (throwing athletes, rotational sports, and contact-collision sports). *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 31(3):381–396.
16. Haswell, K. 2008. Clinical decision rules for identification of low back pain patients with neurologic involvement in primary care. *Spine* 133(1):68–73.
17. Hooker, D., & Prentice, W. 2019. Rehabilitation of injuries to the spine. In W. Prentice (ed.), *Rehabilitation techniques in sports medicine and athletic training*, 6th ed. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.
18. Hutton, M., & McGuire, R. 2016. Catastrophic cervical spine injuries in contact sports. *Global Spine Journal* 6(7):721–734.
19. Lam, K. 2013. Fractures and dislocations of the cervical spine. *Orthopedics and Trauma* 27(1):56–62.
20. LeMaitre, C., & Binch, A. 2015. Degeneration of the intervertebral disc with new approaches for treating low back pain. *Journal of Neurological Science* 59(1):47–61.
21. Mayer, J. 2012. Cervical spine injury in athletes. *Current Orthopedic Practice* 23(3):181–187.
22. McGee, D. 2014. *Orthopedic physical assessment*. St. Louis, MO: Elsevier.
23. McGill, S. 2015. *Low back disorders: Evidence-based prevention and rehabilitation*, 3rd ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.
24. Moon, H., & Choi, K. 2013. Effect of lumbar stabilization and dynamic lumbar strengthening exercises in patients with chronic low back pain. *Annals of Rehabilitation Medicine* 37(1):110–117.
25. Petering, C. 2011. Treatment options for low back pain in athletes. *Sports Health: A Multidisciplinary Approach* 3(6):550–555.
26. Rashbaum, R., & Ohnmeiss, D. 2016. Sacroiliac joint pain and its treatment. *Clinical Spine Surgery* 29(2):42–48.
27. Schmidt, J. 2014. The influence of cervical muscle characteristics on head impact biomechanics in football. *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 42(9): 2056–2066.
28. Sembrano, J. 2011. Diagnosis and treatment of sacroiliac joint pain. *Current Orthopedic Practice* 22(4):344–350.
29. Stauff, M. 2014. Vertebral compression fracture rules. *Spine Journal* 14(6):971–972.
30. Swartz, E. 2009. Summary of the National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement on the acute management of the cervical spine-injured athlete. *Physician and Sportsmedicine* 37(4):20–30.
31. Tao, M., & Lark, R. 2016. Spondylolysis and spondylolisthesis in the athlete. In J. Neumann & D. Kirkendall (eds.), *Sports medicine for the orthopedic resident*. Hackensack, NJ: World Scientific Publishing Company.
32. Todd, A., & Vaccaro, A. 2016. *Physical examination of the spine*. New York, NY: Thieme Medical Publishers.
33. Tsoumpos, P. 2013. Whiplash injuries in sport activities: Clinical outcomes and biomechanics. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 47(10):3.
34. Vernese, L., & Chu, S. 2017. Spondylolysis: Assessment and treatment on youth athletes. *Current Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation Reports* 5(2):72–82.
35. Walker, K. 2011. Spondylolysis: An update on imaging and nonoperative treatment. *Athletic Training & Sports Health Care: The Journal for the Practicing Clinician* 3(5):208–210.
36. Woon, J. 2012. Clinical anatomy of the coccyx: A systematic review. *Clinical Anatomy* 25(2):158–167.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Chevan, J., & Clapis, P. 2012. *Physical therapy management of low back pain: A case-based approach*. Burlington, MA: Jones and Bartlett Learning.

This text provides a detailed review of the theory and practice of the most common approaches to treating low back pain.

Hecht, A. 2017. *Spine injuries in athletes*. Philadelphia, PA: Lippencott, Williams & Wilkins.

This practical clinical reference puts together the best approaches for managing injuries to the spine, optimizing function, and ensuring quick but safe return to play.

McGill, S. (ed.). 2015. *Low back disorders: Evidence-based prevention and rehabilitation*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Prevention and rehabilitation approaches are presented to help professionals make clinical decisions for building prevention and rehabilitation programs.

McKenzie, R. 2006. *The cervical and thoracic spine: Mechanical diagnosis and therapy*. Philadelphia, PA: Orthopedic Physical Therapy Products.

Written by a world authority on back pain, this text explains how back pain occurs and how it is best treated.

Stetts, D. 2013. *Physical therapy management of patients with spinal pain: An evidence-based approach*. Thorofare, NJ: Slack.

Provides a comprehensive research-based overview of the examination of the spine and physical therapy interventions.

WEBSITES

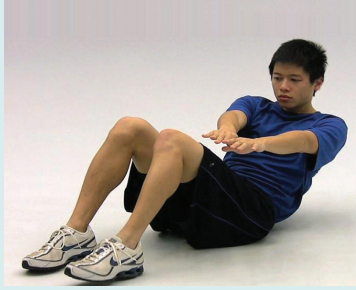
AAFP—Diagnosis and Management of Acute Low Back Pain: www.aafp.org/afp/2000/0315/p1779.html
Information on managing low back pain from the American Academy of Family Practice.

The Cleveland Clinic Foundation: Spinal Cord Trauma: https://my.clevelandclinic.org/health/articles/8720-spinal-cord—injury

MedlinePlus: Back Pain: www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/backpain.html
Information on back pain from the Mayo Foundation for Medical Education and Research.

Spine-Health: www.spine-health.com
Written and updated by a multispecialty team of medical professionals. It provides a comprehensive overview of causes and treatments for low back pain, and a variety of services and in-depth features.

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images



©William E. Prentice

21

The Thorax and Abdomen

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Describe the anatomy of the thorax and abdomen.
- Identify the location and function of the heart and lungs.
- Indicate the location and function of the abdominal viscera.
- Explain the techniques for assessing thoracic and abdominal injuries.
- Differentiate between various injuries to the structures of the thorax.
- Recognize various injuries and conditions in structures of the abdomen.

This chapter covers injuries to the thorax and abdomen. In an athletic environment, injuries to the thorax and abdomen have a lower incidence than injuries to the extremities and the spine. However, unlike the musculoskeletal injuries to the extremities discussed to this point, injuries to the heart, lungs, and abdominal viscera can be potentially serious and even life threatening if not recognized and managed appropriately.[2] It is essential to be familiar with anatomy and the more common injuries seen in the abdomen and thorax (Figure 21–1).

FIGURE 21–1 Collision sports can produce serious trunk injuries. ©William E. Prentice

ANATOMY OF THE THORAX

The thorax is that portion of the body commonly known as the chest, which lies between the base of the neck and the diaphragm. It is contained within the thoracic vertebrae and the twelve pairs of ribs that give it its shape (Figure 21–2). Its main function is to protect the vital respiratory and circulatory organs and to assist the lungs in inspiration and expiration during breathing.[27]

The thoracic cage protects the heart and lungs.

The ribs are flat bones that are attached to the thoracic vertebrae in the back and to the sternum in the front. The upper seven ribs are called sternal, or true, ribs, and each rib is joined to the sternum by a separate costal cartilage. The eighth, ninth, and tenth ribs (false ribs) have cartilages that join each other and the seventh rib before uniting with the sternum. The eleventh and twelfth ribs (floating ribs) remain unattached to the sternum but do have muscle attachments. The intercostal muscles, which lie between the ribs, and the diaphragm muscle, which separates the thoracic cavity from the abdominal cavity, function in inspiration and expiration (Figure 21–3) (Table 21–1).[27]

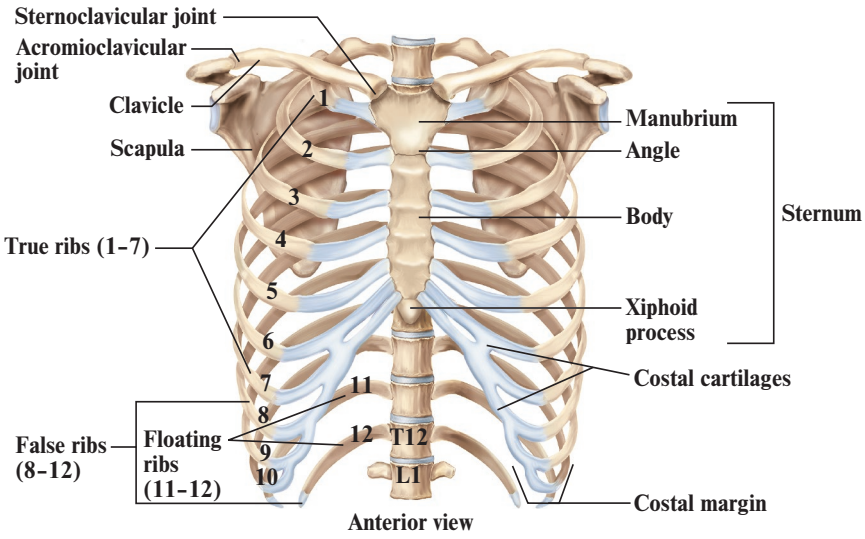


FIGURE 21–2 Bony anatomy of the thoracic cage.

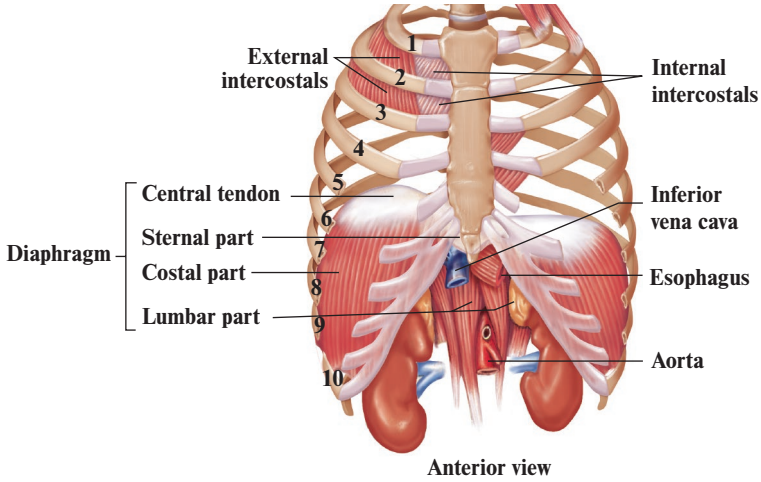


FIGURE 21–3 Anatomy of the thoracic muscles.

TABLE 21–1 Muscles of the Abdomen and Thorax*

Trunk rotation	Rectus abdominis External oblique Internal oblique
Trunk flexion	Internal oblique External oblique Transverse abdominis Rectus abdominis
Muscles of respiration	Intercostals Diaphragm
Trunk lateral flexion	Internal oblique External oblique Quadratus lumborum

*For muscles that extend the trunk, refer to Table 20–1.

ANATOMY OF THE ABDOMEN

The abdominal cavity lies between the diaphragm and the pelvis and is bounded by the margin of the lower ribs, the abdominal muscles, and the vertebral column. The abdominal muscles—the rectus abdominis, the external and internal obliques, and the transverse abdominis—collectively produce trunk flexion and rotation, but more important, they function to protect the underlying abdominal viscera (Figure 21–4) (Table 21–1).[27]

Abdominal viscera are part of the digestive, urinary, reproductive, and lymphatic systems. They are composed of both hollow and solid organs. The solid organs are the kidneys, spleen, liver, pancreas, and adrenal glands. The

Solid internal organs are more at risk for injury than are hollow organs.

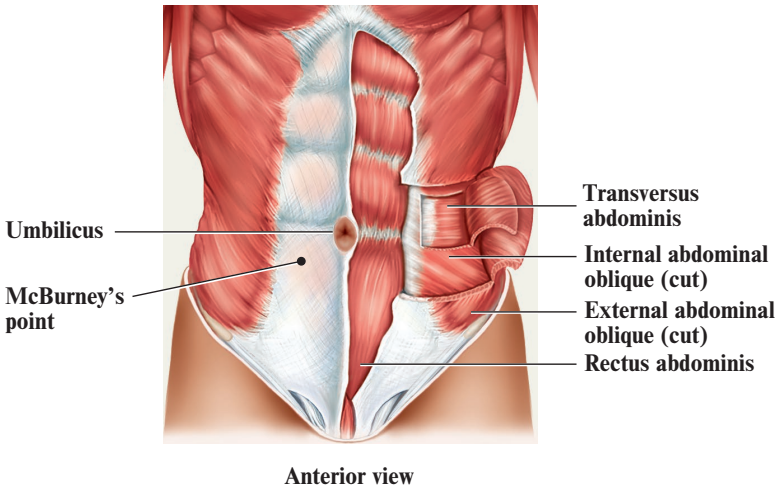


FIGURE 21–4 Muscles of the abdominal wall (anterior view).

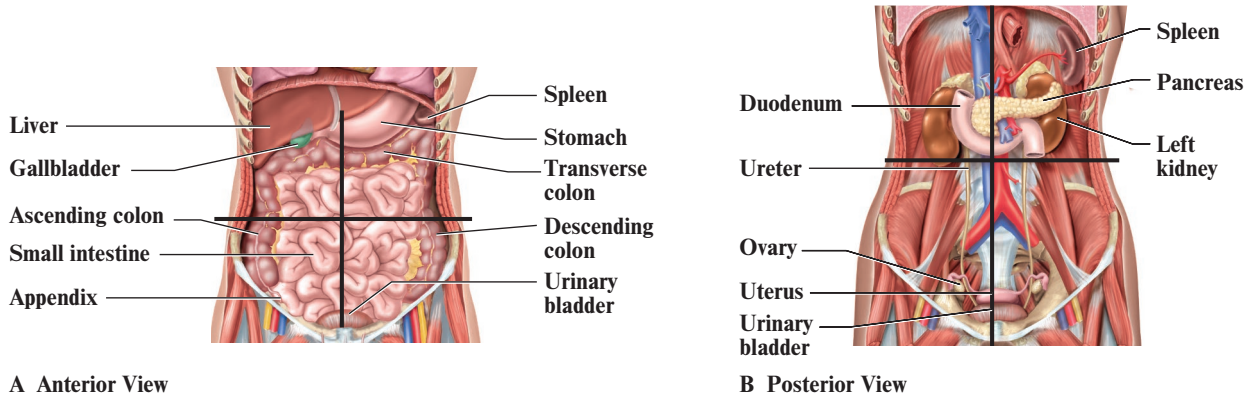


FIGURE 21–5 Abdominal viscera: **(A)** Anterior abdominal viscera divided into four quadrants. **(B)** Posterior abdominal viscera.

hollow organs include the stomach, intestines, gallbladder, and urinary bladder (Figure 21–5). Organs in the abdominal cavity may be classified as part of the urinary system, the digestive system, the reproductive system, or the lymphatic system.[27]

PREVENTING INJURIES TO THE THORAX AND ABDOMEN

Injuries to the thorax may be prevented by wearing appropriate protective equipment, particularly in collision sport activities. In football, for example, shoulder pads are usually designed to extend to at least below the level of the sternum. Rib protectors may be worn to cover the entire thoracic cage if necessary (Figure 21–6).

The muscles of the abdomen should be strengthened to protect the underlying viscera.[8] A consistent regimen of core exercises done in various positions can markedly increase the strength and size of the abdominal musculature.

Making sure that the hollow organs, in particular the stomach and bladder, are emptied before competition can reduce the chance of injury to those structures.[13] Meals should be eaten at least 3 to 4 hours before competition to allow foods to clear the stomach. Urinating immediately before stepping onto the field or court protects the bladder from injury.

FIGURE 21–6 Protective rib belt. Source: Power SPK Flat/Riddell

ASSESSMENT OF THE THORAX AND ABDOMEN

Generally, fitness professionals, coaches, and others working in areas related to exercise and sports science are not adequately trained to evaluate injuries. It is strongly recommended

that injured athletes be referred to qualified medical personnel (i.e., physicians, athletic trainers, physical therapists) for injury evaluation. Information on the following evaluation sequence has been included simply to give some idea about the basic evaluation that nonmedical personnel may do to determine the nature and severity of the athlete's injury. The primary responsibility of those who are not health care personnel is to be able to recognize any potential "red flags" associated with the injury, provide appropriate first aid for the injury, and make correct decisions about how the injury should be managed initially, including immediate return to play or activity decisions (refer to Chapter 8).

Injuries to the thorax and abdomen can produce potentially life-threatening situations.[9] An injury that may seem relatively insignificant at first may rapidly develop into one that requires immediate and appropriate medical attention.[28] The initial primary survey should focus on those signs and symptoms that indicate some life-threatening condition. The injured athlete should be continually monitored to identify any disruption of normal breathing or circulation or any indication of internal hemorrhage that could precipitate shock. Most injuries to the thorax and abdomen require immediate referral to a physician and imaging techniques to clearly identify the extent of the trauma to the internal organs.[20]

History

The questions asked to determine a history in the case of thoracic and abdominal injuries are somewhat different from those questions pertinent to musculoskeletal injuries of the extremities.[14] The primary mechanism of injury should be determined first:

- What happened to cause this injury?
- Was there direct contact or a direct blow?
- What position were you in?
- What type of pain is there (sharp, dull, localized, etc.)?
- Was there immediate or gradual pain?
- Do you feel any pain other than in the area where the injury occurred? (See Figure 21–9.)
- Have you had any difficulty breathing?
- Are certain positions more comfortable than others?
- Do you feel faint, lightheaded, or nauseous?
- Do you feel any pain in your chest?
- Did you hear or feel a pop or crack in your chest?
- Have you had any muscle spasms?
- Have you noticed any blood in your urine?
- Is there any difficulty or pain in urinating?
- Was the bladder full or empty?
- How long has it been since you have eaten?

Observation

If the athlete is observed immediately following injury, check for normal breathing and respiratory patterns:[8]

- Most important, is the athlete breathing at all?
- Is the athlete having difficulty breathing deeply, or is the athlete struggling to catch his or her breath?
- Does breathing cause pain?
- Is the athlete holding the chest wall?
- Is there symmetry in movement of the chest during breathing?
- If the wind was knocked out, did normal breathing return rapidly, or was there prolonged difficulty? This difficulty may indicate a more severe injury.
- What is the body position of the athlete?
- Is there protrusion or swelling of any portion of the abdomen? This may indicate internal bleeding.
- Does the thorax appear to be symmetrical? Rib fractures can cause one side to appear different.
- Are the abdominal muscles tight and guarding?
- Is the athlete holding or splinting a specific part of the abdomen?

It is important to monitor vital signs, including pulse, respiration, and blood pressure (see Table 8–1). A rapid, weak pulse and/or a significant drop in blood pressure indicates some potentially serious internal injury often involving loss of blood. Other signs of abdominal injury might include blood in the urine, abdominal splinting, rapid weak pulse, and signs of shock.[2]

Palpation

Thorax The hands should first be placed on either side of the chest wall to check for asymmetry in chest wall movement during deep inspiration and expiration and to begin to isolate areas of tenderness (Figure 21–7).[1] Once a tender area is identified, palpate along the rib and in the space between the ribs to locate a specific point of tenderness.

Abdomen To palpate the abdominal structures, the athlete should be supine with the arms at the sides and the abdominal muscles relaxed (Figure 21–8). Uninjured areas should be palpated first with the tips of the fingers to feel for any tightness or rigidity. An athlete with an abdominal injury voluntarily contracts the abdominal muscles to guard or protect the tender area. If there is bleeding or irritation inside the abdominal cavity, the abdomen will exhibit what is referred to as "boardlike rigidity" and cannot be voluntarily relaxed.[2]

In acute abdominal injury, boardlike rigidity is likely.

FIGURE 21–7 Checking for asymmetry of chest wall during breathing. ©William E. Prentice

FIGURE 21–8 Palpating the abdomen for guarding or rigidity. ©William E. Prentice

Referred Pain Occasionally, pain that is felt in one area of the body does not accurately represent where the problem actually is. Pressure from palpation of the abdominal organs may elicit pain in predictable patterns at some part of the body away from the source (Figure 21–9).[28] For example, pain that is felt in the right shoulder area may actually be occurring due to some injury or condition in the liver or gallbladder.

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF THORACIC INJURIES

Rib Contusions

Cause of Injury A blow to the rib cage can contuse intercostal muscles between the ribs or, if severe enough, produce a fracture. Because the intercostal muscles are essential for breathing, when they are bruised, both expiration and inspiration become painful.[29]

Signs of Injury Characteristically, the pain is sharp during breathing, there is point tenderness, and pain is elicited when the rib cage is compressed. X-ray examination should be routine in such an injury.

Care POLICE and anti-inflammatory agents are commonly used. As with most rib injuries, contusions to the thorax are self-limiting, responding best to rest and cessation of sports activities.

Rib Fractures

Cause of Injury Rib fractures are not uncommon in sports and have their highest incidence in collision sports.[1] Fractures can be caused either by direct impact, as by a kick, or by compression of the rib cage, as may occur in football or wrestling. Ribs 5 through 9 are the most commonly fractured. There is always the possibility that a rib fracture can cause damage to or puncture the underlying lung.

Signs of Injury The rib fracture is usually quite easily detected. The athlete complains of severe pain during inspiration and point tenderness with sharp pain during palpation.[29]

A rib fracture may be indicated by a severe, sharp pain during breathing.

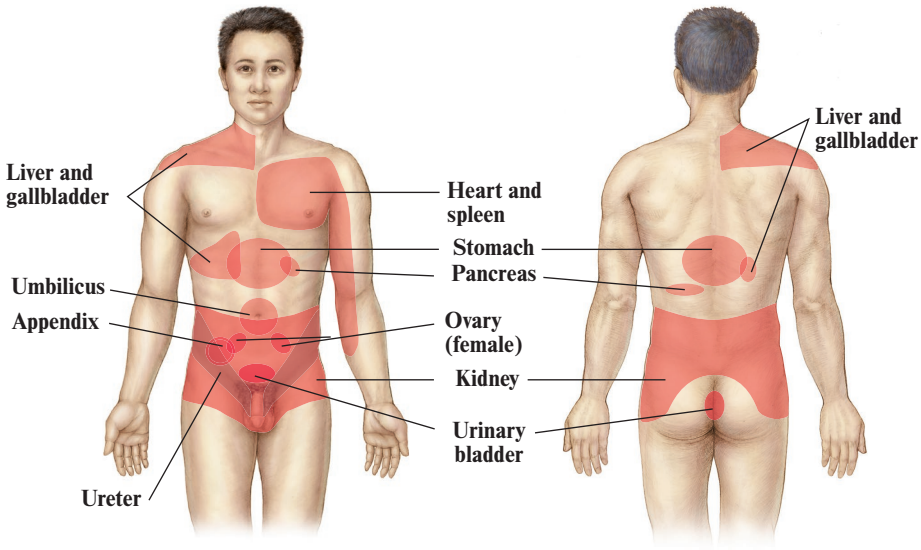


FIGURE 21–9 Patterns of pain referred from abdominal structures.

FIGURE 21–10 **A commercial rib brace can provide moderate support to the thorax.** Courtesy of La Pointique Int'l Ltd./Oppo Medical Inc.

Care The athlete should be referred to a physician for X-ray examination if there is any indication of fracture. The rib fracture is usually managed with support and rest. Simple fractures heal within 3 to 4 weeks. A rib brace can offer the athlete some thorax stabilization and comfort (Figure 21–10).

Costal Cartilage Injury

Cause of Injury Costal cartilage injuries have a higher incidence than do fractures. This injury can occur from a direct blow to the thorax or indirectly from a sudden twist or a fall on a ball, compressing the rib cage. A costal cartilage injury displays signs similar to the rib fracture, with the exception that pain is localized in the junction of the rib cartilage and rib (Figure 21–11).[1]

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of sharp pain during sudden movement of the trunk and of difficulty in breathing deeply.[1] Palpation reveals point tenderness with swelling. In some cases, there is a rib deformity and a complaint that the rib makes a crackling noise (crepitus) as it moves in and out of place.

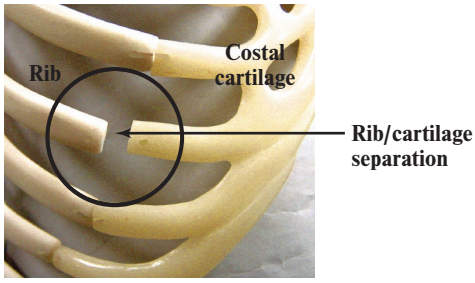


FIGURE 21–11 **A costal cartilage injury involves separation of the rib and costal cartilage.** ©William E. Prentice

Care As with a rib fracture, the costal cartilage injury is managed by rest and immobilization by a rib brace. Healing takes anywhere from 1 to 2 months, precluding any sports activities until the athlete is symptom free.

Intercostal Muscle Injuries

Cause of Injury The muscles of the thorax are all subject to contusions and strains in sports. The intercostals are especially vulnerable. Traumatic injuries occur most often from direct blows or sudden torsion of the athlete's trunk.

Signs of Injury Like other muscle strains, pain occurs on active motion. However, injuries to muscles in this region are particularly painful during inspiration and expiration, laughing, coughing, or sneezing.

Care Care requires immediate application of cold and compression for approximately 20 minutes. After hemorrhaging has been controlled, immobilization with a rib brace should be used to make the athlete more comfortable (refer to Figure 21–10).

Injuries to the Lungs

Cause of Injury Fortunately, injuries to the lungs resulting from sports trauma are rare.[11] However, because of the seriousness of this type of injury, the coach must be able to recognize the basic signs. The most serious of the conditions are pneumothorax, tension pneumothorax, hemothorax, and traumatic asphyxia.

Lung injuries can result in:

- Pneumothorax
- Tension pneumothorax
- Hemothorax
- Traumatic asphyxia

Pneumothorax is a condition in which the pleural cavity surrounding the lung becomes filled with air that has entered through an opening in the chest (Figure 21–12A).[21] As the pleural cavity fills with air, the lung on that side collapses.

A *tension pneumothorax* occurs when the pleural cavity on one side fills with air and displaces the lung and the heart toward the opposite side, thus compressing the opposite lung (Figure 21–12B).

Hemothorax is the presence of blood within the pleural cavity (Figure 21–12C). It results from the tearing or puncturing of the lung or pleural tissue, involving the blood vessels in the area.

Traumatic asphyxia occurs as the result of a violent blow to or compression of the rib cage, causing a cessation of breathing.[11] A condition of this type demands immediate mouth-to-mouth resuscitation and immediate medical attention.

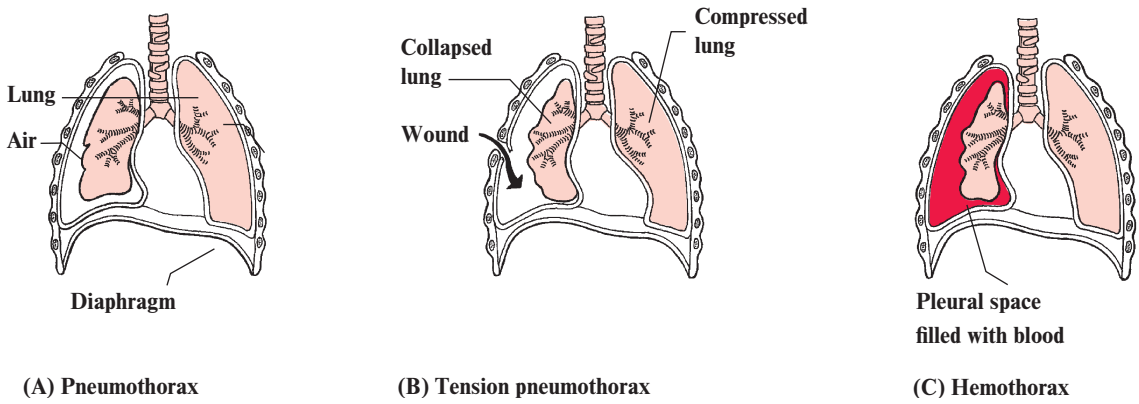


FIGURE 21–12 **(A)** Pneumothorax. **(B)** Tension pneumothorax. **(C)** Hemothorax.

Signs of Injury Signs may include difficulty breathing or shortness of breath, chest pain on the side of the injury, coughed up blood, cyanosis (bluish skin), and potentially shock. With a total collapse of the lung, medical attention is required immediately.[21]

Care Each of these conditions is a medical emergency requiring immediate physician attention. Thus, the athlete must be transported to the emergency room as quickly as possible.

Sudden Death Syndrome in Athletes

Cause of Condition In athletes younger than 35 years, the most common cause of exercise-induced sudden death is some congenital cardiovascular abnormality.[18] The three most prevalent causes are hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, anomalous origin of the coronary artery, and Marfan's syndrome.[6,26]

Common causes of sudden death syndrome:

- Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy
- Anomalous origin of the coronary artery
- Marfan's syndrome

Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy is a condition in which there is thickened cardiac muscle with no evidence of chamber enlargement, and extensive myocardial scarring.[17] In an *anomalous origin of the coronary artery,* one of the two coronary vessels originates in a different site from normal, thus compromising or obstructing that artery because of its unusual course. In people with *Marfan's syndrome,* there is an abnormality of the connective tissue, resulting in weakening of the aorta and cardiac valves, which can lead to a rupture of either a valve or of the aorta itself. Another potential cause of sudden death in athletes is coronary artery disease (CAD) resulting from atherosclerosis, in which there is a narrowing of the coronary arteries, usually due to high cholesterol in the young athlete.[25] Sudden death may also rarely occur in a young athlete who sustains a blow to the chest from some external object that results in *commotio cordis,* which is a disruption of normal heart rhythm at a critical point during the heartbeat.[6]

Noncardiac causes of sudden death in athletes have been attributed to but are not limited to asthma, catastrophic brain injuries, cervical spine injuries, diabetes mellitus, exertional heatstroke, exertional hyponatremia, exertional sickling, and lightning strikes.[6] Additionally, the use of certain drugs including alcohol, cocaine, amphetamines, and erythropoietin (which stimulates red blood cell production) has also been identified as a cause of sudden death.[18]

Signs of Condition Common symptoms and signs associated with cardiac causes of sudden death may include chest pain or discomfort during exertion, heart palpitations or flutters, fainting, nausea, profuse sweating, heart murmurs, shortness of breath, general malaise, and fever.[32]

Care This condition is a life-threatening emergency situation that requires immediate access of the rescue squad.[10,26] Be prepared to perform CPR until the rescue squad arrives (see Chapter 8).

Prevention It has been suggested that a major number of deaths could be avoided by counseling, screening, and early identification of preventable causes of sudden death during a comprehensive physical examination.[6,10] Initial screening should include the following questions:

- Has a physician ever told you that you have a heart murmur?
- Have you had chest pain during exercise?
- Have you fainted during exercise?
- Has anyone in your family under age 35 ever died suddenly?
- Has anyone in your family been diagnosed with a thickened heart?
- Does anyone in your family have Marfan's syndrome?

If the answer is yes to any of these questions, a more in-depth medical examination should be performed. Resting and exercise electrocardiograms and echocardiograms may be necessary to determine existing pathology.[10]

Breast Problems

Cau se of Injury Violent up-and-down and lateral movements of the breasts, such as are encountered in running and jumping, can *bruise* and *strain* the breast, especially in large-breasted women. Constant uncontrolled movements of the breast over time can stretch the Cooper's ligament, which supports the breast at the chest wall, leading to premature sagging of the breasts.[19] "*Runner's nipples*," in which the shirt rubs the nipples and causes an abrasion, can be prevented by placing an adhesive bandage over each nipple before participation. "*Bicyclist's nipples*" can occur as the result of a combination of cold and evaporation of sweat, causing the nipples to become painful.[4] Wearing a windbreaker can prevent this problem.

Care Wearing a well-designed bra that has minimum elasticity and allows little vertical or horizontal breast movement is most desirable (refer to Figure 6–17).[19] Breast injuries usually occur during physical contact with either an opponent or equipment. In sports such as fencing or field hockey, female athletes should protect their breasts by wearing plastic cup protectors.

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF ABDOMINAL INJURIES

Although abdominal injuries comprise only about 10 percent of sports injuries, they can require long recovery periods and can be life threatening.[2] The abdominal area is particularly vulnerable to injury in all contact sports. A blow can produce superficial or even deep internal injuries, depending on its location and intensity. With internal injuries of the abdomen that occur in sports, the solid organs are most often affected.[8] Strong abdominal muscles give good protection when they are tensed, but when relaxed, the underlying organs may be more easily injured. It is important to protect the trunk region properly against the traumatic forces of collision sports. Good conditioning is essential, as is the use of proper protective equipment and the application of safety rules.[2]

Abdominal Strains and Contusions

Cause of Injury Abdominal muscle strains occur with sudden twisting of the trunk or reaching overhead. The rectus abdominus is the most commonly strained abdominal muscle. Potentially, these types of injuries can be incapacitating.[2]

Contusions to the abdominal wall occur because of compressive forces. Although not very common, when they do happen, they are more likely to occur in collision sports such as football or ice hockey; however, any sports implement or high-velocity projectile can cause injury. Hockey goalies and baseball catchers are vulnerable to injury without their protective torso pads. The extent and type of injury varies depending on whether the force is blunt or penetrating.

Signs of Injury An abdominal muscle strain or contusion of the rectus abdominis muscle can be disabling. A severe blow may cause a hematoma that develops under the fascial tissue surrounding this muscle. The pressure that results from hemorrhage causes pain and tightness in the region of the injury.[2]

Care Initially, ice and an elastic compression wrap should be used. Also look for signs of possible internal injury. Treatment should be conservative, and exercise should be kept within pain-free limits.

Hernia

Cause of Injury The term *hernia* refers to the protrusion of abdominal viscera through a portion of the abdominal wall. Hernias most often occur in the groin area.[16] Inguinal hernias, most often occurring in men (more than 75 percent), and femoral hernias, most often occurring in women, are the most prevalent types. The inguinal hernia results from an abnormal enlargement of the opening of the inguinal canal through which the vessels and nerves of the male reproductive system pass (Figure 21–13A).[16] occurring In contrast, the femoral hernia arises in the canal that transports the vessels and nerves that go to the thigh and lower limb (Figure 21–13B).[5]

Inguinal hernias occur in males; femoral hernias occur in females.

When intra-abdominal tension is produced in these areas, muscles produce contraction around these canal openings. If the muscles fail to react, abdominal contents may be pushed through the opening, creating a palpable, tender bulge.

The term *sports hernia* that is commonly used in both the professional literature and media should not be confused with a traditional femoral or inguinal hernia and should more correctly be labeled *athletic pubalgia*, which is a catchall term that refers to multiple causes of pain occurring around the pubis.[22]

Signs of Injury A hernia may be recognized by the following: previous history of a blow or strain to the groin area that produced pain and prolonged

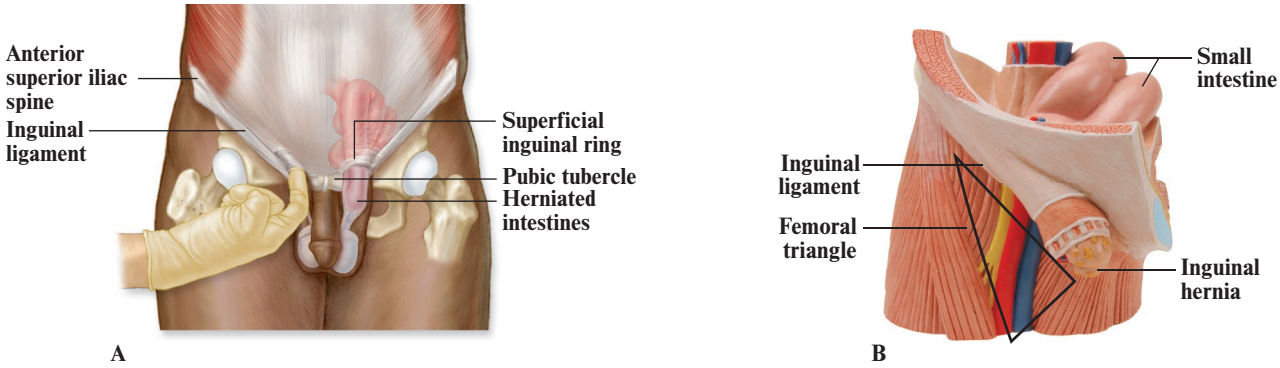


FIGURE 21–13 **(A)** Inguinal canal where inguinal hernias appear. **(B)** Femoral hernias are found in the femoral triangle.
(From McKinley, M., & O'Loughlin, V., *Human anatomy,* 2nd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.); (b) Courtesy of 3B Scientific

discomfort, superficial protrusion in the groin area that is increased by coughing, or reported feeling of weakness and pulling sensation in the groin area.[16]

Care Most physicians think that any athlete who has a hernia should be prohibited from engaging in vigorous physical activity until surgical repair has been made. Mechanical devices designed to prevent hernial protrusion are for the most part unsuitable in sports because of the friction and irritation they produce. Exercise has been thought by many to be beneficial to a mild hernia, but such is not the case. Exercise will not affect the stretched inguinal or femoral canals positively.[5,16]

Blow to the Solar Plexus

Cause of Injury A blow to the middle portion of the abdomen, or solar plexus, produces a transitory paralysis of the diaphragm (having the wind knocked out).[23] There should always be some concern that a blow hard enough to knock out the wind could also cause internal organ injury.

A blow to the solar plexus can lead to transitory paralysis of the diaphragm and to unconsciousness.

Signs of Injury Paralysis of the diaphragm stops respiration and leads to anoxia (lack of oxygen). When the athlete is unable to inhale, short-term panic may result. These symptoms are usually transitory. It is necessary to allay such fears and instill confidence in the athlete.[23]

Care In dealing with an athlete who has had the wind knocked out, adhere to the following procedures: Help the athlete overcome apprehension by talking in a confident manner; loosen his or her belt and the clothing around the abdomen; have the athlete bend the knees; and encourage him or her to relax by initiating short inspirations and long expirations.

Because of the fear of not being able to breathe, the athlete may hyperventilate. Hyperventilation is an increased rate of ventilation that results in increased levels of oxygen. It causes a variety of physical reactions such as dizziness, a lump in the throat, pounding heart, or fainting. Have the athlete breathe slowly into a paper bag to increase levels of carbon dioxide.[31,32]

Stitch in the Side

Cause of Injury A "stitch in the side" is the name given an idiopathic condition that occurs in some athletes.[23] The cause is unknown, although several hypotheses have been advanced. Among these causes are constipation, intestinal gas, overeating, diaphragmatic spasm as a result of poor conditioning, lack of visceral support because of weak abdominal muscles, distended spleen, breathing techniques that lead to a lack of oxygen in the diaphragm, and ischemia of either the diaphragm or the intercostal muscles.[23]

Signs of Injury A stitch in the side is a cramplike pain that develops on either the left or right costal border during hard physical activity. Sports that involve running apparently produce this condition.

Care Immediate care of a stitch in the side demands relaxation of the spasm, for which two methods have proved beneficial. First, the athlete is instructed to

21–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A wrestler is engaged in a strenuous off-season weight-lifting program. Recently, he has begun to experience pain in his groin. Whenever he strains hard to lift a weight, especially if he holds his breath, the pain appears. He is concerned that he has developed a hernia.

? What symptoms and signs indicate that the athlete does have a hernia?

21–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A cross-country runner complains of a recurring stitch in the side. She has a cramplike pain that develops on the left costal angle during a hard run. She indicates that when she stops running, the cramp disappears but seems to come back if she starts to run again.

? What can be recommended to help this runner alleviate this problem?

stretch the arm on the affected side as high as possible. If this is inadequate, flexing the trunk forward on the thighs may prove of some benefit.[23]

Athletes with recurrent abdominal spasms may need evaluation by a physician. Identification of poor eating habits, poor elimination habits, or an inadequate conditioning program may explain the athlete's particular problem. A stitch in the side, although not considered serious, may require further evaluation by a physician if abdominal pains persist.

Injury of the Spleen

Cause of Injury Injuries to the spleen are uncommon but occur most often because of a fall or a direct blow to the left upper quadrant of the abdomen. When some existing medical condition has caused enlargement of the spleen, the chances of injury are increased.[3] Infectious mononucleosis is the most likely cause of spleen enlargement.

Infectious mononucleosis can cause spleen enlargement.

Signs of Injury The gross indications of a ruptured spleen must be recognized so that an immediate medical referral can be made.[8] Indications include a history of a severe blow to the abdomen and possibly signs of shock, abdominal rigidity, nausea, and vomiting. There may be a reflex pain occurring approximately 30 minutes after injury, called Kehr's sign, which radiates to the left shoulder and one-third of the way down the left arm.[32] A ruptured spleen can hemorrhage slowly into the abdominal cavity, causing the athlete to die of internal bleeding days or weeks after the injury.

Athletes who complain of external pain in the shoulders, trunk, or pelvis after a severe blow to the abdomen or back may be describing referred pain from an injury to an internal organ.

Care Conservative nonoperative treatment is recommended initially along with a week of hospitalization.[15] At 3 weeks, the athlete can engage in light conditioning activities and at 4 weeks can fully return to activity as long as no symptoms appear. If surgical repair is necessary, the athlete will require 3 months to recover, whereas removal of the spleen will require 6 months before the athlete can return to activity. If the spleen is enlarged due to mononucleosis, the athlete may resume training 3 weeks after the onset if the spleen is not enlarged or painful and if there is no fever.

Kidney Contusion

Cause of Injury The kidneys are seemingly well protected within the abdominal cavity. However, on occasion, contusions and even ruptures of these organs occur.[33] The kidney may be susceptible to injury because of its normal distention by blood. An external force applied to the back of the athlete causes abnormal extension of an engorged kidney, resulting in injury.[12]

Kidney and bladder contusions can cause hematuria.

Signs of Injury An athlete who has received a contusion of the kidney may display signs of shock, nausea, vomiting, rigidity of the back muscles, and hematuria (blood in the urine). As with injuries to other internal organs, kidney injury may cause referred pain. Pain may radiate forward around the trunk into the lower abdominal region.[33]

21–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A football receiver jumps to catch a high pass thrown over the middle. A defensive back hits the receiver in the low back. The athlete does not seem to have a specific injury. After the game he notices blood in his urine and becomes worried.

? Is blood in the urine a cause for concern, and what should be done to manage it?

Care Any athlete who reports having received a severe blow to the abdomen or back region should be instructed to urinate two or three times and to look for the appearance of blood in the urine.[12,33] If there is any sign of blood in the urine, immediate referral to a physician must be made.[12] Medical care of the contused kidney usually consists of a 24-hour hospital observation, with a gradual increase of fluid intake. If the hemorrhage fails to stop, surgery may be indicated. Controllable contusions usually require 2 weeks of bed rest and close surveillance after activity is resumed. In questionable cases, complete withdrawal from one active playing season may be required.

Liver Contusion

Cause of Injury In sports activities, liver injury is very rare. A hard blow to the right side of the rib cage can tear or seriously contuse the liver, especially if it is enlarged as a result of some disease such as hepatitis.[7]

Hepatitis can cause enlargement of the liver.

Signs of Injury An injury to the liver can cause hemorrhage and shock, requiring immediate surgical

intervention. Liver injury commonly produces a referred pain that is just below the right scapula, right shoulder, substernal area, and on occasion, the anterior left side of the chest.[15]

Care A liver contusion requires immediate referral to a physician for diagnosis and treatment.

Gallstones

Cause of Condition Gallstones are hard stonelike deposits that are found in the gallbladder. These deposits are usually composed of cholesterol or bile and can be as small as a grain of sand or as large as a marble.[32]

Signs of Condition Individuals who have gallstones are often symptom free until a larger stone blocks the common bile duct, causing cramping pain in the middle to right upper abdomen that may radiate to the back on the right side below the scapula. There is also occasionally nausea and vomiting as well as increased pain after eating.[31]

Care Patients should be referred to a physician for diagnosis using ultrasound imaging. A surgical technique that uses a laparoscope to make small surgical cuts in the gallbladder to remove the gallstones is most commonly used.

Appendicitis

Cause of Injury Inflammation of the appendix can be chronic or acute. It is caused by a variety of factors, for example, a fecal obstruction. Its highest incidence is in males between the ages of 15 and 25.[24] Appendicitis can be mistaken for a common gastric complaint. In its early stages, the appendix becomes red and swollen; in later stages, it may become gangrenous, rupturing into the bowels and causing peritonitis, which is an inflammation of the thin tissue that lines the inner wall of the abdomen and covers most of the abdominal organs. Bacterial infection is a complication of rupture of the inflamed appendix.[24]

21–4 Critical Thinking Exercise

A soccer player is kicked in the abdomen above the umbilicus. Initially she had the wind knocked out of her. Now, she is complaining of pain and her abdomen is tight on palpation.

? What should be of greatest concern, and what organs may potentially be involved?

Signs of Injury The athlete may complain of a mild to severe pain or cramps in the lower abdomen, associated with nausea, vomiting, and a low-grade fever ranging from 99°F to 100°F (37°C to 38°C). Later, the cramps may localize into a pain in the lower right side, and palpation may reveal abdominal rigidity and tenderness at a point between the anterior superior spine of the ilium and the umbilicus (McBurney's point) (see Figure 21–4).[24,32]

Appendicitis is often mistaken for a common gastric problem.

Care Surgical removal of the inflamed appendix is often necessary. If the bowel is not obstructed, there is no need to rush surgery. However, an obstructed bowel with an acute rupture is a life-threatening condition.

Injuries to the Bladder

Cause of Injury On rare occasions a blunt force to the lower abdominal region may injure the urinary bladder, particularly if it is distended by urine.[13] The appearance of red blood cells within the urine (hematuria) is often associated with contusion of the bladder during running and has been referred to as a "runner's bladder."[13]

Signs of Injury With any impact to the abdominal region, the possibility of internal damage must be considered, and after such trauma the athlete should be instructed to check periodically for blood in the urine.[13] Bladder injury commonly causes referred pain to the lower trunk, including the upper thigh anteriorly. With a bladder rupture, the athlete will be unable to urinate.

Scrotal/Testicular Contusion

Cause of Injury As the result of their considerable sensitivity and particular vulnerability, the scrotum and the testicles may sustain a contusion that causes a very painful, nauseating, and disabling condition.[8]

Injuries to the reproductive organs in sports are much more likely to occur in the male because the male genitalia are more exposed.

Signs of Injury As is characteristic of any contusion or bruise, there is hemorrhage, fluid effusion, and muscle spasm, the degree of which depends on the intensity of the impact to the tissue.[32]

Care Immediately following a testicular contusion, the athlete is placed on his side and instructed to flex his thighs to his chest (Figure 21–14). As the pain diminishes, a cold pack is applied to the scrotum. Increasing or unresolved pain after 15 to 20 minutes requires prompt referral to a physician for evaluation.

FIGURE 21–14 Typical body position after injury to the testicles. ©William E. Prentice

Gynecological Injuries

Cause of Injury In general, the female reproductive organs have a low incidence of injury in sports.[30] By far the most common gynecological injury in the female athlete involves a contusion to the external genitalia, or vulva, which includes the labia, clitoris, and the vestibule of the vagina.[30] A hematoma results from the contusion, which most often occurs with a direct impact to this area. A contusion of this area may also injure the pubic symphysis, producing *osteitis pubis* (see Chapter 17).[31]

Signs of Injury As is characteristic of any contusion or bruise, there is pain, hemorrhage, fluid effusion, and muscle spasm, the degree of which depends on the intensity of the impact to the tissue.[31]

Care Immediately following a contusion of the genitalia, a cold pack is applied.

Increasing or unresolved pain after 15 to 20 minutes requires prompt referral to a physician for evaluation.

SUMMARY

- The thorax is that portion of the body commonly known as the chest, which lies between the base of the neck and the diaphragm. Its main functions are to protect the vital respiratory and circulatory organs and to assist the lungs in inspiration and expiration during the breathing process. Within the thoracic cage lie the lungs and the heart.
- The abdominal cavity lies between the diaphragm and the bones of the pelvis and is bounded by the margin of the lower ribs, the abdominal muscles, and the vertebral column. The abdominal viscera are composed of both hollow and solid organs. Organs in the abdominal cavity may be classified as part of the urinary system, the digestive system, the reproductive system, or the lymphatic system.
- Injuries to the heart, lungs, and abdominal viscera can be potentially serious and even life threatening if not recognized and managed appropriately.
- When evaluating an injury to the abdomen or thorax, the initial primary survey should focus on those signs and symptoms that indicate some life-threatening condition. Asking pertinent questions, observing body positioning, and palpating the injured structures are critical in assessing the nature of the injury.
- Rib fractures and contusions, costal cartilage injuries, muscle strains, and breast injuries are all common injuries to the chest wall.
- Injuries involving the lungs include pneumothorax, tension pneumothorax, hemothorax, and traumatic asphyxia.
- The most common cause of exercise-induced sudden death is some congenital cardiovascular abnormality. The three most prevalent conditions are hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, anomalous origin of the coronary artery, and Marfan's syndrome.
- Injuries to the abdominal wall include muscle strains, getting the wind knocked out, and the development of an inguinal or femoral hernia.
- With any injury to the abdominal region, internal injury to the abdominal viscera must be considered. Injuries to the spleen and kidneys are among the more common athletic injuries associated with the abdominal viscera.
- Injuries to the reproductive organs in sports are much more likely to occur in males than in females because the male genitalia are more exposed.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

21-1 Most often, an athlete with a hernia has some previous history of a blow or strain to the groin area that produced pain and prolonged discomfort. There may be a superficial protrusion in the groin area that is increased by coughing, or the athlete may have a feeling of weakness and a pulling sensation in the groin area. An inguinal hernia results from an abnormal enlargement of the opening of the inguinal canal through which the abdominal contents may be pushed.

21-2 Try to modify this athlete's eating habits, which might be producing constipation or gas. Cramps can be caused by improper breathing techniques that may cause a lack of oxygen in the diaphragm and ischemia of either the diaphragm or the intercostal muscles. Cramps may also be caused by a diaphragmatic spasm that results from poor conditioning or a lack of visceral support because of weak abdominal muscles. Athletes with recurrent abdominal spasms should have further evaluation by a physician if the abdominal pains persist.

21-3 Any time blood appears in the urine, there is cause for concern. In this case, it is likely that the kidneys have been contused and the blood that appears in the urine will disappear over the next couple of days. Nevertheless, the athlete should be referred to the team physician for diagnosis.

21-4 Be concerned about the possibility of injury to an organ that can potentially lead to internal blood loss and eventually result in shock. It is possible that the spleen, liver, stomach, small intestine, pancreas, or gallbladder may be injured. It is also possible that there may be a contusion to the muscles of the abdominal wall that is causing muscle guarding.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. Describe the anatomy of the thorax.
2. Differentiate among rib contusions, rib fractures, and costal cartilage injuries.
3. Compare the signs of pneumothorax, tension pneumothorax, hemothorax, and traumatic asphyxia.
4. Identify the possible causes of sudden death syndrome among athletes.
5. List the abdominal viscera and other structures associated with the urinary system, the digestive system, the lymphatic system, and the reproductive system.
6. What muscles protect the abdominal viscera?
7. What conditions of the abdominal viscera produce pain in the abdominal region?
8. Contrast the signs of a ruptured spleen with the signs of a severely contused kidney.
9. How do you manage an athlete who has had his or her wind knocked out?
10. Distinguish an inguinal hernia or a femoral hernia from a groin strain.
11. Describe the signs of a stitch in the side.

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Ayloo, A. 2013. Evaluation and treatment of musculoskeletal chest pain. *Primary Care: Clinics in Office Practice* 49(4):863–887.
2. Barrett, C. 2012. Recognition and management of abdominal injuries at athletic events. *International Journal of Sports Physical Therapy* 7(4):448–451.
3. Becker, J. 2014. Return to play after infectious mononucleosis. *Sports Health: A Multidisciplinary Approach* 6(3):232–238.
4. Brown, N. 2014. An investigation into breast support and sports bra use in female runners of the 2012 London Marathon. *Journal of Sport Sciences* 32(9):801–809.
5. Cabry, R. 2014. Understanding non-inguinal abdominal hernias in the athlete. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 13(2):86–93.
6. Casa, D., et al. 2012. NATA position statement: Preventing sudden death in sports. *Journal of Athletic Training* 47(1):96–118.
7. Casiero, D. 2013. Closed liver injury. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 32(2):229–238.
8. De Berardino, T. 2013. Blunt trauma injuries in the athlete: An issue of *Clinics in Sports Medicine. Clinics in Sports Medicine* 32(2).
9. Eberman, L. 2014. Physical examination of the thorax and abdomen. *International Journal of Athletic Therapy and Training* 18(5):32–37.
10. Evans, C. 2008. Screening for heart disease in athletes by athletic trainers and sports physical therapists. *Journal of Sport Rehabilitation* 17(2):171.
11. Feden, J. 2013. Closed lung trauma. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 32(2):255–265.
12. Grinsell, M. 2012. Sport-related kidney injury among high school athletes. *Pediatrics* 130(1):40–45.
13. Guttmann, I. 2013. Blunt bladder injury. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 32(2):239–246.
14. Intravia, J. 2013. Evaluation of blunt abdominal trauma. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 32(2):211–218.
15. Jujia, R. 2014. Return to play after liver and spleen trauma. *Sports Health: A Multidisciplinary Approach*. doi:10.1177/1941738114528468.
16. LeBlanc, K. 2013. Inguinal hernias: Diagnosis and management. *American Family Physician* 87(12):844–848.
17. Maron, B. 2013. Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. *The Lancet* 381(9862):242–255.
18. Maron, B. 2014. Incidence and causes of sudden death in U.S. college athletes. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology* 63(16):1636–1643.
19. McGhee, D. 2010. Breast elevation and compression decrease exercise-induced breast discomfort. *Medicine & Science in Sport & Exercise* 42(7):1333–1338.
20. Mehrzad, H. 2014. Imaging in abdominal trauma. *Trauma* I16(4):269–278.
21. Mesinger, J. 2013. Pneumothorax in a recreational athlete. *International Journal of Athletic Therapy and Training* 18(6):27–31.
22. Meyers, W. 2012. Understanding "sports hernia" (athletic pubalgia): The anatomic and pathophysiological basis for abdominal and groin pain in athletes. *Operative Techniques in Sports Medicine* 20(1):33–45.
23. Morton, D. 2014. Exercise-related transient abdominal pain. *Sports Medicine* 45(1):23–35.
24. Murphy, E. 2014. Clinical evaluation of acute appendicitis. *Clinical Pediatric Emergency Medicine* 15(3):223–230.
25. Myerberg, R. 2012. Sudden cardiac death caused by coronary artery disease. *Circulation* 125(1):1043–1052.
26. Pigozzi, F., & Rizzo, M. 2008. Sudden death in competitive athletes. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 27(1):153.
27. Saladin, K. 2017. *Anatomy and physiology: The unity of form and function.* Boston, MA: McGraw-Hill.
28. Sengupta, J. 2009. Visceral pain: The neurophysiological mechanism. *Sensory Nerves* 194(1):31–74 .
29. Smith, D. 2011. Chest injuries, what the sports physical therapist should know. *International Journal of Sports Physical Therapy* 6(4):357–360.
30. Speed, C. 2011. Injuries in the female athlete. In M. Hutson, & C. Speed (eds.), *Sports injuries* (pp. 430–436). New York, NY: Oxford University Press.
31. *Stedman's Medical Dictionary.* 2014. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.
32. *Tabor's cyclopedic medical dictionary.* 2017. Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.
33. Viola, T. 2013. Closed kidney injury. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 32(2):219–227.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

De Berardino, T. 2013. Blunt trauma injuries in the athlete: An issue of *Clinics in Sports Medicine. Clinics in Sports Medicine* 31(2).

This special issue includes papers on several of the most common blunt trauma injuries, including muscle contusions, genitourinary injuries, splenic and liver injuries.

Saladin, K. 2017. *Anatomy & physiology: The unity of form and function.* Boston. MA: McGraw-Hill.

This anatomy text helps to clarify anatomy of the various systems of the abdomen and thorax.

Tabor's cyclopedic medical dictionary. 2017. Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.

Despite the dictionary format, this is an excellent guide for the athletic trainer searching for clear, concise descriptions of various injuries and illnesses, accompanied by brief recommendations for management and treatment.

WEBSITES

American Thoracic Society—About ATS: www.thoracic.org

Chest Trauma: www.madsci.com/manu/trau_che.htm#30

National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute: www.nhlbi.nih.gov

Trauma.org: www.trauma.org/index.php/main/category/c13

Abdominal trauma and goals of management.

Web MD:
www.webmd.com/digestive-disorders/picture-of-the-spleen
www.webmd.com/kidney-stones/picture-of-the-kidneys
www.webmd.com/lung/picture-of-the-lungs
www.webmd.com/heart/picture-of-the-heart#1

Provides additional information about abdominal and thoracic organs and conditions.

22

©William E. Prentice

The Head, Face, Eyes, Ears, Nose, and Throat

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Describe the anatomy of the head, face, eyes, ears, nose, and throat.
- Explain how injuries to the head, face, eyes, ears, nose, and throat can be prevented.
- Discuss the assessment process in dealing with injuries to the head and face.
- Discuss recognition and management of concussions and mild head injuries.
- Recognize common injuries to the face, eyes, ears, nose, and throat.

Injuries to the region of the head, face, eyes, ears, nose, and throat are common in sports. The severity of injuries to this region can vary from something as benign as a nosebleed to a severe concussion.

Sports injuries to the head can be life threatening.

PREVENTING INJURIES TO THE HEAD, FACE, EYES, EARS, NOSE, AND THROAT

Although injuries to the head and face are more prevalent in collision and contact sports, the potential for head injuries exists in all sports.[9] Wearing a helmet or protective headgear and in some instances a face mask in sports like football, ice hockey, lacrosse, wrestling, and baseball has dramatically reduced the incidence of injuries to the head, face, eyes, ears, and nose. Some have argued that if the face mask were eliminated in a sport like football, the number of cervical spine and head injuries would likely be reduced because the athlete would be less likely to use the head when making contact. However, it is certain that the incidence of injuries to the face, eyes, ears, and nose would significantly increase. A helmet can only do so much in preventing injury to the brain.

Unquestionably, the single most important consideration in reducing injuries to this region is teaching athletes to use correct techniques when initiating contact. All football helmets have written warnings that discourage the use of the head as a weapon. **It is imperative to make certain that athletes are taught and are using correct and safe techniques.**

ANATOMY OF THE HEAD

Bones

The skull is composed of twenty-two bones. With the single exception of the mandible, all of the bones are joined together in immovable joints called *sutures*. The cranial vault, which houses the brain, is enclosed by the cranium or skull and is made up of the frontal, ethmoid, sphenoid, two parietal, two temporal, and the occipital bones (Figure 22–1).[41]

The Brain

The brain is the part of the central nervous system that is contained within the bony cavity of the cranium and is divided into four sections (Figure 22–2). The *cerebrum*, or *cortex*, coordinates all voluntary muscle activities and interprets sensory impulses in addition to controlling higher mental functions including memory, reasoning, intelligence, learning, judgment, and emotions. The *cerebellum* controls

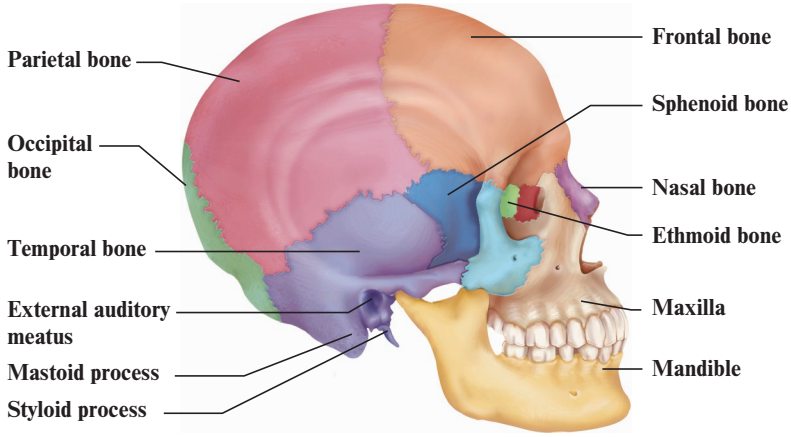


FIGURE 22–1 Bones of the skull and face (lateral view). (From Saladin, K.S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

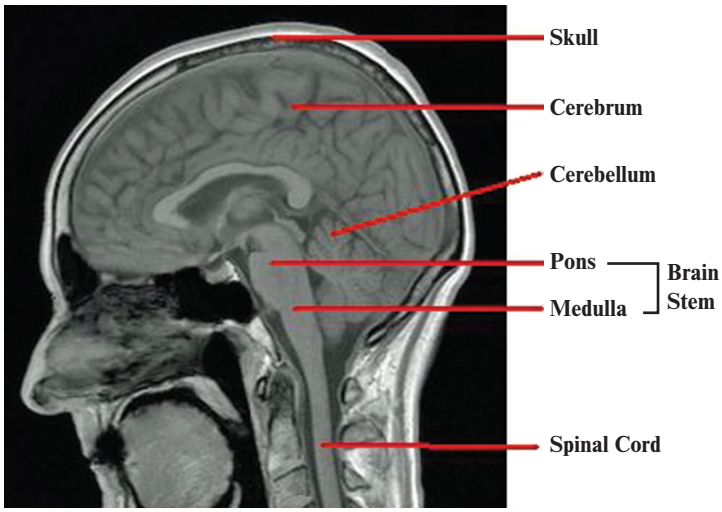


FIGURE 22–2 MRI showing major areas of the brain. Courtesy of Jordan B. Renner, MD, Departments of Radiology and Allied Health Sciences, University of North Carolina.

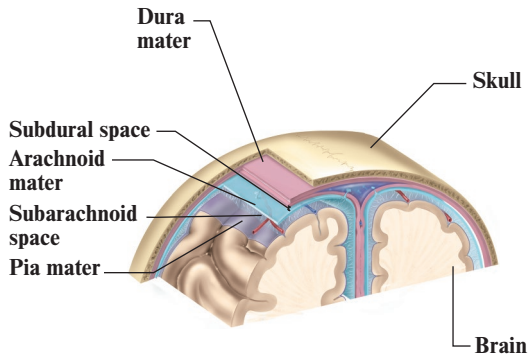


FIGURE 22–3 Cross section of the meningeal membranes. (From Saladin, K. S., *Human anatomy*, 2nd ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

movements of skeletal muscle and plays a critical role in the coordination of voluntary muscular movements. The *pons* controls sleep, posture, respiration, swallowing, and the bladder. The *medulla oblongata* is the lowest part of the brain stem and regulates heart rate, breathing (in conjunction with the pons), blood pressure, coughing, sneezing, and vomiting.[41]

Meninges The *meninges* are three membranes that protect the brain and the spinal cord. Outermost is the *dura mater*. A layer of fat that contains vital arteries and veins separates this membrane from the bony wall and forms the epidural space. The *arachnoid* lines the dura mater. The space between the arachnoid and the *pia mater*, the membrane that helps contain the spinal fluid, is called the subarachnoid space (Figure 22–3).[41]

Cerebrospinal fluid is contained between the arachnoid and the pia mater membrane and completely surrounds and suspends the brain. Its main function is to act as a cushion, helping to diminish the transmission of shocking forces.

ASSESSING HEAD INJURIES

Traumatic brain injury is common in contact sports, such as football, soccer, lacrosse, boxing, ice hockey, and wrestling.[9] But head trauma has also been reported in noncontact sports, such as track, baseball, gymnastics, softball, field hockey, volleyball, and cheerleading.[9] An individual who receives either a direct blow to the head or body contact that causes the head to snap forward, backward, or rotate to the side must be carefully evaluated for injury to the brain. These injuries are best defined as *brain injuries*, and they represent the most common type of head trauma.[38] *Concussions* are a type of brain injury. Concussion may result in disorientation or amnesia; motor, coordination, or balance deficits; cognitive deficits; and, rarely, unconsciousness.

Dealing with an Unconscious Athlete

It must be emphasized that the majority of head injuries do not result in a loss of consciousness.[23]

All unconscious athletes should be handled as if they have a serious neck injury.

On-the-field management of the unconscious athlete was discussed in detail in Chapter 8. It is essential to be able to recognize and interpret the signs that an unconscious athlete presents. Priority first aid for any head injury must always deal with any life-threatening condition, but in particular loss of breathing. **When dealing with an unconscious athlete, always suspect a cervical neck injury and manage the situation accordingly,** as described in Chapter 8.[33] An athlete who has been unconscious must be removed from the field on a spine board by the rescue squad.

If no life-threatening conditions exist, note the length of time that the athlete is unconscious, and do not attempt to move him or her until consciousness is regained and the rescue squad has arrived. Once the athlete regains consciousness, or in cases in which the athlete may never have lost consciousness, try to obtain a history from the athlete.[36]

History

An athlete who has sustained a head injury may or may not be able to respond to questions about exactly what happened to cause the loss of consciousness. Nevertheless, the following questions should be asked:

- Do you know where you are?
- Can you tell me what happened to you?
- Can you remember if you have ever been knocked out before?
- Does your head hurt?
- Do you have any pain in your neck?
- Can you move your hands and feet?

Observation

The following observations should be made:

- Is the athlete disoriented and unable to tell where he or she is, what time it is, what date it is, who the opponent is?
- Is there a blank or vacant stare? Does the athlete have difficulty keeping his or her eyes open?
- Is there slurred or incoherent speech?
- Are there delayed verbal and motor responses (slow to answer questions or follow instructions)?
- Is there gross disturbance to coordination (i.e., stumbling, inability to walk a straight line, can't touch finger to nose)?
- Is there an inability to focus attention, and is the athlete easily distracted?
- Does there appear to be a memory deficit exhibited by repeated asking of the same questions or not knowing what happened?
- Does the athlete have normal cognitive function (serial 7s, assignment on a particular play)?
- Is there a normal emotional response from the athlete?
- How long was the athlete's affect abnormal?
- Is there a clear, straw-colored fluid in the ear canal and/or nose (cerebrospinal fluid leakage that occurs with skull fracture)?

Palpation

Palpation of the skull should be performed in a systematic manner to identify areas of point tenderness or deformity of the skull that may indicate the presence of a skull fracture.

Special Tests

Neurological Exam A neurological exam consists of testing five major areas: cerebral testing to assess cognitive function, cranial nerve testing, cerebellar testing to assess coordination and motor function, sensory testing, and reflex testing. **The neurological exam must be done by a licensed health care professional.**

Eye Function Abnormal function of the eyes is often related to head injuries, and the following observations should be made:[24]

1. Pupils should be equal, accommodate, round, and reactive to light (PEARL).
2. Eyes should track smoothly. A constant involuntary back and forth, up and down, or rotary movement of the eyeball is called *nystagmus*.[29]
3. Blurred vision is determined by difficulty or inability to read a game program or the scoreboard.

Checking for eye signs can yield important information about possible brain injury.

Balance Tests If the athlete is capable of standing, a modified Romberg test can be used to assess static balance. The best on-the-field balance test uses a tandem stance on an unstable surface (Figure 22–4).[18] A positive sign is seen when the athlete begins to sway, cannot keep the eyes closed, or obviously loses balance.

Coordination Tests A number of tests have been used to determine whether the head injury has affected coordination. These tests include the finger-to-nose test, heel-to-toe walking, and the standing heel-to-knee test.[40] Inability to perform any of these tests may be indicative of injury to the cerebellum.

Cognitive Tests The purpose of cognitive testing is to establish the effects of head trauma on various cognitive functions and obtain an objective measure

FIGURE 22–4 **A modified Romberg test using a tandem stance on an unstable surface.** ©William E. Prentice

22–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A soccer player is attempting to head a ball and collides with another player. He does not have a loss of consciousness but appears dazed and confused.

? What questions should be asked to determine his cognitive function?

to assess the athlete's status and improvement.[40] Two commonly used on-the-field cognitive tests are serial 7s, in which the athlete counts backward from 100 by 7, and naming the months in reverse order. Several cognitive tests referred to as *neuropsychological assessments* have been developed for use in both on- and off-the-field evaluation.[11] Currently, the most widely used on-the-field test for assessing concussion-related signs and symptoms, cognition, balance, and coordination is the Sport Concussion Assessment Tool 5 (SCAT5).[12] It represents a standardized method of evaluating injured athletes for concussion. The SCAT5 can be used in athletes aged 13 years and older. It measures symptoms, orientation, memory, recall, balance, and gait.[12] The SCAT5 can be administered by a licensed health care professional on the sidelines or in an office once an athlete has been pulled off the field because a concussion is suspected.

The Concussion Recognition Tool 5 (CRT5) is a modification of the SCAT5 developed to help non-medically trained individuals recognize signs and symptoms of potential sport-related concussion. Additionally, it provides guidance for removing an athlete from play and referring to trained medical personnel.[13]

For young athletes between the ages of 5 and 12 years, the Child Sport Concussion Tool (CSCAT5) is most often used to assess concussion.[8] Computerized neuropsychological assessments such as the *Automated Neuropsychological Assessment Metrics (ANAM), CNS Vital Signs, AXON,* and the *Immediate PostConcussion Assessment and Cognitive Test (ImPACT)* are the most commonly used tests.[20] These tests are being administered as baseline tests during the preseason. Should a concussion occur, they can be readministered to compare current results with those obtained during the baseline test to help in making a decision whether to return a concussed athlete to play.[34]

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF SPECIFIC HEAD INJURIES

Head injuries occur from direct and blunt forces to the skull. It is estimated that at least 30 to 40 major head injuries and occasionally a death occur during sport-related activities each year.[21]

Skull Fracture

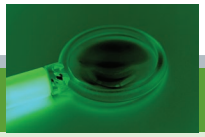
Cause of Injury Skull fractures occur most often from a blunt trauma, such as a baseball to the head, a shot to the head, or a fall from a height.[22]

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of severe headache and nausea. Palpation may infrequently reveal a defect such as a skull indentation. There may be blood in the middle ear, blood in the ear canal, bleeding through the nose, or discoloration around the eyes called "raccoon eyes" or behind the ear called "Battle's sign." Cerebrospinal fluid (straw colored) may appear in the ear canal and nose.[22]

Care It is not the skull fracture itself that causes the most serious problem but complications that stem from intracranial bleeding, bone fragments embedded in the brain, and infection.[22] Such an injury requires immediate hospitalization and referral to a neurosurgeon.

Cerebral Concussions (a Form of Traumatic Brain Injury)

Cause of Injury Concussion, a type of traumatic brain injury, has become a widely publicized public health concern.[12] Concussion has been defined as trauma-induced alteration of mental status that may or may not involve loss of consciousness.[4] Concussion in athletics is a growing public health concern with increased attention focusing on treatment and management. Despite the increasing occurrence and prevalence of concussions in athletics, there is no universally accepted definition, or standard, for its assessment.



FOCUS BOX 22–1

When an athlete shows *any* signs of a concussion:

1. The athlete should be medically evaluated on-site using standard emergency management principles, and particular attention should be given to excluding a cervical spine injury.
2. The appropriate disposition of the athlete must be determined by the treating health care provider in a timely manner. If no health care provider is available, the athlete should be safely removed from practice or play and urgent referral to a physician arranged.
3. Once the first-aid issues are addressed, then an assessment of the concussive injury should be made using the SCAT3 or a similar tool.
4. The athlete should not be left alone following the injury, and serial monitoring for deterioration is essential over the initial few hours following injury.
5. An athlete with diagnosed concussion should not be allowed to return to play on the day of injury.

Modified from: Consensus statement on concussion in sport: The 3rd International Conference on Concussion in Sport, Zurich, November 2008, *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 43:176–184, 2008.

Direct blows occur when the athlete is struck in the head by some object (e.g., a ball, a baseball bat, a lacrosse stick, or contact with another player). A direct blow may also occur when the athlete's moving head strikes some fixed object (e.g., the floor, a goalpost), resulting in impact deceleration of the brain. A blow to the head can produce an injury to the brain either at the point of contact (coup injury) or on the opposite side, which is referred to as a *contrecoup* injury. An example of a contrecoup mechanism would be a whiplash injury. Acceleration, deceleration, and particularly rotational forces produce shaking of the brain within the skull.[4]

Most concussions do not involve loss of consciousness.

Signs of Injury The most current thinking relative to diagnosing an acute concussion is that assessment should involve a variety of symptoms and signs, including these:[12,26]

- Clinical symptoms
- Somatic (e.g., headache),
- Cognitive (e.g., feeling "in a fog")
- Emotional (e.g., unusually emotional)
- Physical signs (e.g., loss of consciousness, amnesia)
- Behavioral changes (e.g., irritability)
- Cognitive impairment (e.g., slowed reaction times)
- Sleep disturbance (e.g., drowsiness)

If any one or more of these signs or symptoms is present, a concussion should be suspected and the appropriate management strategy instituted.

For many years, the medical community in general, and sports medicine practitioners in particular, attempted to classify concussions into various grades by looking primarily at the physical symptoms, which included the level of consciousness and post-traumatic amnesia.[26,32] It now seems that there may have been too much emphasis placed on these grading scales.[4] **It appears that the most logical approach is to determine the severity of the concussion based on the presence and overall duration of symptoms only after all concussion signs and symptoms have resolved.**[27] This approach places less emphasis on loss of consciousness as a potential predictor of subsequent impairment and additional weight on overall symptom duration.[27] It has also been proposed that determining the severity of a concussion should be based on the signs and symptoms present at the time of the concussion and within the first 15 minutes after injury.[27] Additionally, attention should be focused on the patient's recovery via symptoms, neuropsychological tests, and postural stability tests, and not by using a grading scale.[23,27] In this approach, the focus is on whether the patient is symptomatic or asymptomatic.[4] The Graded Symptoms Checklist in Table 22–1 lists the most common signs and symptoms that occur with concussion.

Care The immediate care for an athlete who has sustained a concussion or mild traumatic brain injury is clear and leaves no room for doubt. **Any athlete who sustains a concussion must be removed from competition immediately and not allowed to return to physical activity until cleared by a physician.**[4,26] In fact, since 2009, all 50 states and the District of Columbia have passed laws to address how traumatic brain injury should be managed. The majority of these states enacted legislation directed at youth sports-related concussions. The laws in individual states vary somewhat but, in general, they require development of an athletic concussion safety training program for coaches, school nurses, athletic directors, volunteers, student athletes, and their parents. The laws require that any athlete who exhibits signs of concussion be immediately removed from the activity and not permitted to practice that day or any

TABLE 22–1 The Graded Symptoms Checklist

	None				Moderate		Severe
Score According to Severity	**0**	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**
Symptom	**Preseason Baseline**	**Time of Injury**	**24 Hours Postinjury**	**Day 3 Postinjury**	**Day 4 Postinjury**	**Day 5 Postinjury**	
Blurred vision							
Dizziness							
Drowsiness							
Sleeping more than usual							
Easily distracted							
Fatigue							
Feeling “in a fog”							
Feeling “slowed down”							
Headache							
Unusually emotional							
Irritability							
Loss of consciousness							
Loss of orientation							
Memory problems							
Nauseous							
Nervousness							
Personality changes							
Poor balance/ coordination							
Ringing in the ears							
Sadness							
Seeing stars							
Sensitivity to light							
Sensitivity to noise							
Sleep disturbances							
Vacant stares/glassy eyes							
Vomiting							
Total Symptom Score:							

subsequent day until he or she is evaluated by, and receives written clearance for such participation from, a qualified health care professional. Schools are also required to develop emergency action plans and maintain records of any concussive events.

Any time an athlete loses consciousness for any reason, he or she must be removed from further activity immediately.[33] If he or she has sustained a concussion that causes unconsciousness, a cervical neck injury must also always be suspected. In this case, the rescue squad should be called and must remove the athlete from the field, using a spine board.[26]

Focus Box 22–1 details the procedures that should be followed on the sidelines with an athlete

who has sustained a concussion. It is certainly possible that the athlete's condition may deteriorate, either immediately (within minutes to hours) or over several days after the injury.[5,26,33]

The decision about when to allow an athlete with a concussion to return to play is not so clear cut. The recovery period following even a mild head injury may be longer than has been thought in the past, requiring at least 3 to 5 days to be symptom free. Athletes who have sustained a concussion should not be permitted to return to any type of physical activity until it is either self-reported or directly observed that *all* postconcussive symptoms have resolved.[4,18] Once the athlete is free of postconcussive symptoms, he or she should not be placed back into practice or competition immediately. Instead, the athlete should be gradually progressed through physical activities that have specific criteria for progression. **Again, the athlete may not return to play unless a physician clears him or her to return.**[4,27]

Even after postconcussive symptoms have disappeared and the athlete has returned to play, there is still a danger of recurrent concussions that can produce cumulative traumatic injury to the brain.[7] In cases of repetitive concussion or mild traumatic brain injury, the athlete could develop *chronic traumatic encephalopathy (CTE)*, a progressive degenerative disease that can ultimately cause dementia, depression, confusion, memory loss, or aggression.[39] Permitting an athlete, particularly one in a contact sport, to return before postconcussive symptoms resolve may place that athlete at risk of postconcussion syndrome or second-impact syndrome.[4,28]

Postconcussion Syndrome

Cause of Condition Postconcussion syndrome is a poorly understood condition that occurs following concussion. It may occur in cases of concussion that do not involve loss of consciousness or amnesia, or in severe concussions.[32]

22–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A football player receives his second concussion this season.

? What guidelines should be followed regarding his return to play?

Signs of Condition The athlete complains of a range of postconcussion problems including persistent headache, impaired memory, lack of concentration, anxiety and irritability, giddiness, fatigue, depression, and visual disturbances. These symptoms can begin immediately or within several days following the initial trauma and may last for weeks or even months before resolving.[32]

Care Unfortunately, there is no clear-cut treatment for postconcussion syndrome. The athlete should not be allowed to return to play until all of the symptoms of this condition have resolved. Once symptoms have resolved, a gradual return to activity is recommended while continuing to monitor signs and symptoms that could return in consultation with the athlete, his or her family, the physician, and the coach.

Second Impact Syndrome

Cause of Injury Second impact syndrome occurs as a result of rapid swelling of the brain following a second concussion occurring before the symptoms of a previous concussion have resolved.[43] This second impact may be relatively minor and in some cases may not even involve a blow to the head. A blow to the chest or back may create enough force to snap the athlete's head and create acceleration and deceleration forces upon an already compromised brain. Second impact syndrome is most likely to occur in athletes under 18 years of age.[28]

Second impact syndrome is a life-threatening emergency that must be dealt with immediately.

Signs of Injury Often, athletes do not even lose consciousness and may look "stunned." They may remain on their feet and be able to leave the playing field under their own power. However, within 15 seconds to several minutes, their condition worsens rapidly, with loss of consciousness leading to coma, dilated pupils, loss of eye movement, and respiratory failure.[28] This is a life-threatening situation that has a mortality rate of approximately 50 percent.

22–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A volleyball player is knocked to the ground and hits the back of her head on the court, briefly losing consciousness. A few minutes after regaining consciousness, she appears to be absolutely normal with no residual signs of concussion.

? Should she be allowed to return to the game?

Care Second impact syndrome is a life-threatening emergency that must be dealt with within a matter of approximately 5 minutes by dramatic lifesaving measures performed in an emergency care facility.[28] The best way to manage second impact syndrome is to prevent it from occurring. Thus, decisions to allow an athlete

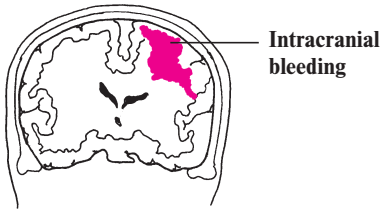


FIGURE 22–5 Intracranial bleeding.

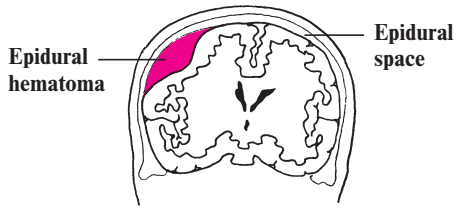


FIGURE 22–6 Epidural hematoma.

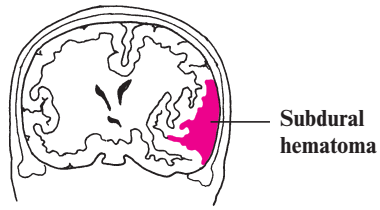


FIGURE 22–7 Subdural hematoma.

to return to play following an initial head injury must be carefully made based on the absence of postconcussive symptoms.[23]

Cerebral Contusion

Cause of Injury A contusion of the cerebrum is a focal injury to the brain that involves small hemorrhages or *intracranial* (inside the skull) *bleeding* within the cortex, the brain stem, or the cerebellum (Figure 22–5).[28] Brain contusions usually result from an impact injury in which the head strikes a stationary immovable object such as the floor.

Signs of Injury Depending on the extent of trauma and the injury site, signs of injury may vary significantly. In most instances, there is loss of consciousness in an athlete who upon regaining consciousness becomes very alert and talkative. A neurological exam is normal; however, symptoms such as headaches, dizziness, and nausea persist.

Care Hospitalization with a variety of imaging tests is standard for a cerebral contusion. Treatment varies according to the clinical status of the athlete.[33] A decision to return to play can only be made by the physician when the athlete is asymptomatic and a computed tomography (CT) scan is normal.

Epidural Hematoma

Cause of Injury A blow to the head, often resulting in a skull fracture, can cause a tear of the meningeal arteries that are embedded in bony grooves in the skull (Figure 22–6). Because of arterial blood pressure, blood accumulation and the creation of an *epidural hematoma* are extremely fast.[33]

Signs of Injury In most cases, initially there is a loss of consciousness. In some cases, once consciousness is regained, the athlete may be lucid, with few or none of the symptoms of serious head injury. Gradually, symptoms begin to worsen, with severe head pains, dizziness, nausea, dilation of one pupil (usually on the same side as the injury), or sleepiness. Later stages of cerebral hemorrhage are characterized by deteriorating consciousness, neck rigidity, depression of pulse and respiration, and convulsions. This is a life-threatening situation, necessitating urgent neurosurgical care.

Care A CT scan is necessary to diagnose an epidural hematoma. The pressure of an epidural hematoma must be surgically relieved as soon as possible to avoid the possibility of death or permanent disability.

Subdural Hematoma

Cause of Injury Acute *subdural hematomas* occur much more frequently than epidural hematomas. Subdural hematomas result from acceleration and deceleration forces that tear vessels that bridge the dura mater and the brain.[33] Subdural hematomas usually involve venous bleeding, and thus signs of injury tend to appear more slowly, maybe even after several hours (Figure 22–7).

Signs of subdural hematoma may appear several hours after injury.

Signs of Injury With subdural hematoma, the athlete may be unconscious, with dilation of one pupil, usually on the same side as the injury. There may also be signs of headache, dizziness, nausea, or sleepiness.[33]

Care An acute subdural hematoma is a life-threatening situation that requires immediate medical attention. A diagnostic CT scan or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is necessary to determine the extent and location of the hemorrhage.[33]

Migraine Headaches

Cause of Condition Migraine is a disorder characterized by recurrent attacks of severe headache with sudden onset, with or without visual or gastrointestinal problems. The athlete who has a history of repeated minor blows to the head, such as those that may occur in soccer, or who has sustained a major cerebral injury may, over time, develop migraine headaches. The exact cause of migraine is unknown, but it is believed by many to be a vascular disorder.[31]

Signs of Condition Flashes of light, blindness in half the field of vision (hemianopia), and paresthesia are thought to be caused by vasoconstriction of intercerebral vessels. Headache is believed to be caused by dilation of scalp arteries. The athlete complains of a severe headache that is diffused throughout the head and often accompanied by nausea and vomiting. There is evidence of a familial predisposition for those athletes who experience migraine headaches after head injury.[14]

Care The best management is prevention. Prophylactic medications are available to help reduce the recurrence of migraines. For severe attacks, administration of a prescription drug called Triptan has a high success rate.

Scalp Injuries

Cause of Injury The scalp can receive lacerations, abrasions, contusions, and hematomas. The cause of scalp injury is usually blunt or penetrating trauma. A scalp laceration can exist in conjunction with a serious skull or cerebral injury.[19]

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of being hit in the head. Bleeding is often extensive, making it difficult to pinpoint the exact site. Matted hair and dirt can also disguise the actual point of injury.

Care The treatment of a scalp laceration poses a special problem because of its general inaccessibility. Wounds that are more than ½ inch (1.25 cm) long and ⅛ inch (0.3 cm) deep should be referred to a physician for treatment. In less severe wounds, the bleeding should be controlled and an antiseptic applied, followed by the application of a protective coating such as collodion and a sterile gauze pad. A tape adherent is then painted over the skin area to ensure that the tape sticks to the skin.[19]

ANATOMY OF THE FACE

The facial skin covers primarily subcutaneous bone with very little protective muscle, fascia, or fat. The supraorbital ridges house the frontal sinuses. In general, the facial skeleton is composed of dense bony buttresses combined with thin sheets of bone. The middle third of the face consists of the maxillary bone, which supports the nose and nasal passages. The lower aspect of the face consists of the lower jaw or mandible. Besides supporting teeth, the mandible also supports the larynx, trachea, upper airway, and upper digestive tract (refer to Figure 22–1).[41]

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF SPECIFIC FACIAL INJURIES

Mandible Fracture

Cause of Injury Fractures of the lower jaw or mandible (Figure 22–8) occur most often in collision sports. They are second in incidence of all facial fractures. Because it has relatively little padding and sharp contours, the lower jaw is prone to injury from a direct blow. The most frequently fractured area is near the jaw's frontal angle.[1]

Signs of Injury The main indications of a fractured mandible are deformity, loss of normal occlusion of the teeth, pain when biting down, bleeding around teeth, and lower lip anesthesia.

Care Fracture of the mandible requires temporary immobilization with an elastic bandage, followed by reduction and fixation of the jaw by the physician. Mild repetitive activities can be carried out, such as light weightlifting, swimming, or cycling during recovery. Fixation is from 4 to 6 weeks. Full activity can be resumed in 2 to 3 months with appropriate special headgear and customized mouth guard.

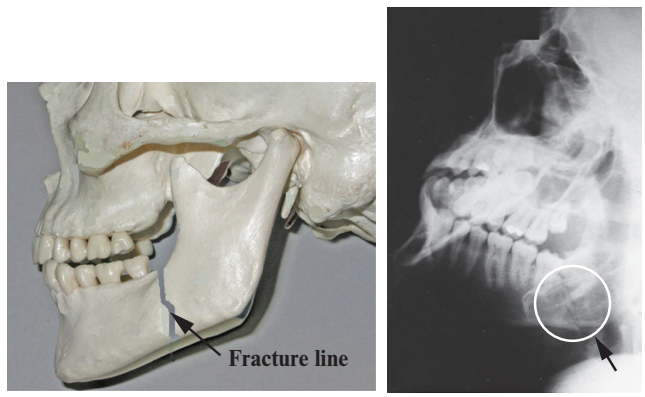


FIGURE 22–8 **Mandible fracture.** ©William E. Prentice

Zygomatic Complex (Cheekbone) Fracture

Cause of Injury A fracture of the zygoma represents the third most common facial fracture. The mechanism of injury is a direct blow to the cheekbone.[1]

Signs of Injury An obvious deformity occurs in the cheek region, or a bony discrepancy can be felt during palpation. There is usually a nosebleed (*epistaxis*), and the athlete commonly complains of seeing double (*diplopia*). There is also numbness of the cheek.

Care Care usually involves cold application for the control of edema and immediate referral to a physician. Healing takes from 6 to 8 weeks. Proper protective gear must be worn when returning to activity.

Facial Lacerations

Cause of Injury Facial lacerations are common in contact and collision sports. Lacerations about the face are caused by a direct impact to the face with a sharp object or by an indirect compressive force.[1]

Signs of Injury The athlete feels pain, and there is substantial bleeding and obvious tearing of the epidermis, dermis, and often the subcutaneous layer of skin. (See Figure 9–5B.)

Care Refer to the physician for definitive care, such as suturing. In cases of *eyebrow lacerations,* do not shave the eyebrow because it may not regrow, or if it does, it may do so in an irregular pattern. Lip, oral, ear, cheek, and nasal lacerations, as with all facial lacerations, are grossly contaminated and must be carefully cleaned before suturing can be successful. Infection must be avoided. Systemic antibiotics and tetanus prophylaxis may be necessary.[19]

DENTAL ANATOMY

The tooth is a composite of mineral salts, of which calcium and phosphorus are most abundant. The portion protruding from the gum, called the *crown,* is covered by the hardest substance within the body, enamel. The portion that extends into the alveolar bone of the mouth is called the *root* and is covered by a thin, bony substance known as *cementum.* Underneath the enamel and cementum lies the bulk of the tooth, a hard material known as *dentin.* Within the dentin is a central canal and chamber containing the *pulp,* which is composed of nerves, lymphatics, and blood vessels that supply the entire tooth (Figure 22–9). With the use of face guards and properly fitting mouth guards, most dental injuries can be prevented (see Chapter 6).[41]

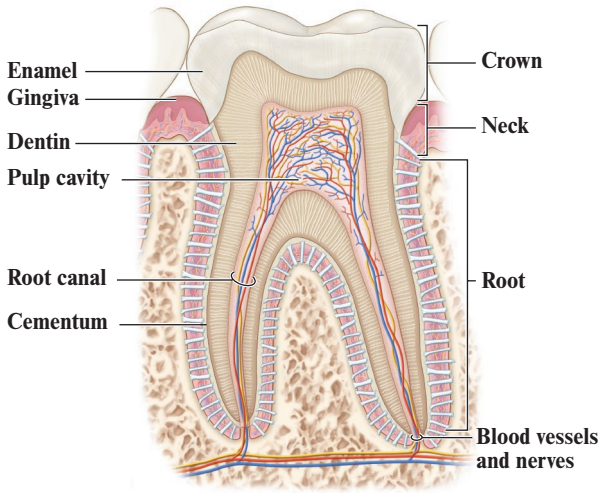


FIGURE 22–9 Normal tooth anatomy. (From McKinley, M., & O'Loughlin, V., *Human anatomy,* 2nd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

PREVENTING DENTAL INJURIES

There is universal agreement within the dental community that all athletes, but particularly those in contact and collision sports, should routinely wear mouth guards to prevent injuries to the teeth (see Chapter 6).[17,37] Without question the mandatory use of mouth guards by both secondary school and collegiate football players has significantly reduced the incidence of oral injuries in those sports. However, there is still a high incidence of dental injuries in those sports that do not require mouth guards to be worn.[44]

Athletes should practice good dental hygiene that includes regular brushing, rinsing, and flossing.[16] Like everyone else, athletes should have dental screenings at least once each year to prevent the development of dental caries (cavities) in which the soft or bony tissue of a tooth gradually decays and degenerates. If this decay progresses, the tissue surrounding the tooth can become inflamed, and an *abscess* forms from a bacterial infection of the tooth. Poor dental hygiene can also lead to *gingivitis,* which is an inflammation of the gums with swelling, redness, tenderness, and a tendency to bleed easily. Chronic gingivitis can lead to *periodontitis,* which involves an inflammation and/or a degeneration of the dental periosteum, the surrounding bone, and the cementum; loosening of the teeth; a recession of the gingiva; and infection.[42]

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF SPECIFIC DENTAL INJURIES

Tooth Fractures

Tooth fractures:

- Uncomplicated crown fracture
- Complicated crown fracture
- Root fracture

Cause of Injury Any impact to the upper or lower jaw or direct trauma can potentially fracture the teeth.[45] There are essentially three types of fractures that can occur to the teeth: an uncomplicated crown fracture, a complicated crown fracture, and a root fracture (Figure 22–10).[42]

Signs of Injury In an uncomplicated crown fracture, a small portion of the tooth is broken but there is no bleeding from the fracture and the pulp chamber is not exposed. In a complicated crown fracture, a portion of the tooth is broken and there is bleeding from the fracture. The pulp chamber is exposed, and there is a great deal of pain. Because a root fracture occurs below the gum line, diagnosis is difficult and may require X-ray. Root fractures account for only 10 to 15 percent of all fractures. The tooth may appear to be in the normal position, but there is bleeding from the gum around the tooth, and the crown of the tooth may be pushed back or loose. Any impact great enough to cause a fracture of a tooth can also produce a fracture of the mandible or even a concussion.[42]

Care Neither uncomplicated nor complicated crown fractures require immediate treatment by a dentist.[16] The fractured piece of tooth can be placed in a plastic bag, and if the fractured tooth is not extremely sensitive to air or cold, the athlete can continue to play and see the dentist within 24 to 48 hours after the game. If there is bleeding, a piece of gauze can be placed over the fracture. For the sake of appearance, the fractured piece of tooth can be either glued in place or capped using a synthetic composite material.[42,45]

In the case of a root fracture, the athlete may continue to play but should see the dentist as soon as possible after the game. If the tooth is pushed back, do not try to force it forward because doing so is likely to make the fracture worse. The dentist will reposition the tooth and apply a brace to be worn for 3 to 4 months.[42] A mouth guard should be worn while competing.

Tooth Subluxation, Luxation, and Avulsion

Cause of Injury The same mechanisms that cause fractures of the teeth may also cause loosening or dislocation of the tooth.[45] Loosening of the tooth can result in concussion or subluxation, luxation, or avulsion (Figure 22–11).

Signs of Injury A tooth may be slightly loosened or totally dislodged. In the case of a concussion or subluxation, the tooth is still in its normal place and only slightly loose. There is little if any pain; however, the

22–4 Critical Thinking Exercise

A field hockey player is accidentally hit in the mouth with a stick. One of her front teeth is knocked completely out, and she spits the tooth out into her hand.

? How should this situation be handled?

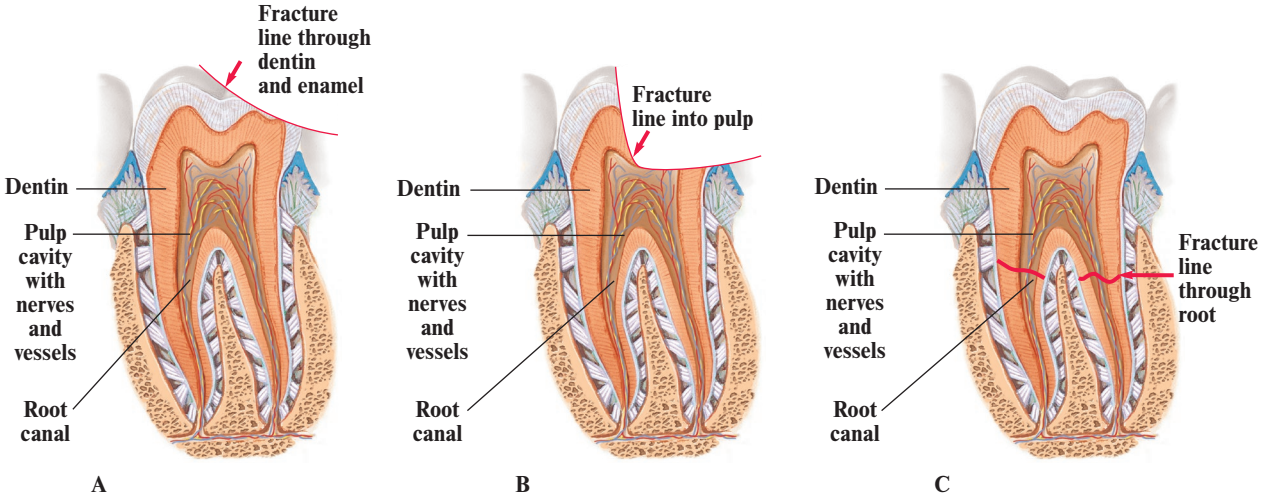


FIGURE 22–10 Tooth fractures: **(A)** Uncomplicated crown fracture; **(B)** Complicated crown fracture; **(C)** Root fracture.

A B

FIGURE 22–11 Tooth injuries. **(A)** A fractured tooth. **(B)** Avulsed tooth.
(a) ©Andy Wetherill; (b) Source: Prabhakar AR, et al. "Esthetic Management of an Anterior Avulsed Tooth: A Case Report," *International Journal of Clinical Pediatric Dentistry*, vol. 2, no. 3, 2009, 35–38.

tooth just feels different. In a luxation, there is no fracture but the tooth is very loose and has moved either forward to an extruded position or backward to an intruded position. In an avulsion the tooth is knocked completely out of the mouth.

Care For a subluxation, no immediate treatment is required, and the athlete should be referred to a dentist within 48 hours for evaluation only. In a luxation, the tooth should be moved back into its normal position only if it is easy to move. The athlete should be referred to a dentist as soon as possible, especially if it is not possible to put the tooth back in its normal position. With an avulsion, it is safe to try to reimplant the tooth. The avulsed tooth can be rinsed off but should never be scraped or scrubbed to get dirt off. If it is not possible to reimplant the tooth, it should be stored in a "Save a Tooth" kit, which contains Hank's Balanced Salt Solution (HBSS), or in milk or saline.[42] The athlete should be referred to a dentist immediately. The sooner the tooth can be reimplanted, the better the prognosis. If the tooth can be reimplanted within 30 minutes, there is a good chance that it can be saved.

An avulsed tooth should be reimplanted immediately.

Dentist

ANATOMY OF THE NOSE

The nose functions to clean, warm, and humidify inhaled air. The external portion of the nose is formed by a combination of bone in the superior portion and fibrocartilage inferiorly that spreads laterally to form the ala. The nasal cavity extends from the nostrils posteriorly to the choane. A nasal septum divides the nasal cavity into right and left chambers.[41]

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF SPECIFIC NASAL INJURIES

Nasal Fractures and Chondral Separation

Cause of Injury A fracture of the nose is one of the most common fractures of the face. The force of the blow to the nose may come either from the side or from a straight frontal force. A lateral force causes greater deformity than a straight-on blow.[25]

Signs of Injury Nasal fractures appear frequently as a separation of the frontal processes of the maxilla, a separation of the lateral cartilages, or a combination of the two (Figure 22–12). With nasal fractures, hemorrhage is common but may or may not be present depending on whether the nasal mucosa was torn because of the fracture. Swelling is immediate. Deformity is usually present if the nose has received a lateral blow, but may not be present if the blow was straight on.

Care Control the bleeding, and then refer the athlete to a physician for X-ray examination and reduction of the fracture.[25] Simple and

FIGURE 22–12 A serious nose fracture may be a medical emergency. ©powerofforever/Getty Images

uncomplicated fractures of the nose do not hinder and are not unsafe for the athlete, and he or she can return to competition within a few days. Fracture deformity reduction must be performed by a trained person.[35] Adequate protection can be provided through splinting and by wearing a protective face mask.

Septal Hematoma (Deviated Septum)

Cause of Injury A nasal hematoma is due to a fracture of the cartilaginous portion of the nasal septum. It is usually the result of a forceful blow directly to the nasal tip.

Signs of Injury A septal hematoma will not show up for at least 24 to 48 hours after the nasal injury. The two most common symptoms are persistent low-grade pain in the septal area and persistent nasal congestion, usually more on one side than the other. Examination of the nasal passages using a penlight or other light source will show obstruction, usually of one side of the nose, by what appears to be a deviated septum, but which, in fact, is blood underneath the septal mucosa, bulging it into the nasal passage.

Care At the site where a hematoma may occur, compression is applied. When a hematoma is present, it must be drained immediately through a surgical incision through the nasal septal mucosa. After surgical drainage, a small wick is inserted for continued drainage, and the nose is firmly packed to prevent the hematoma from reforming. If a hematoma is neglected, an abscess will form, causing bone and cartilage loss and ultimately a difficult-to-correct deformity.[35]

Nosebleed (Epistaxis)

Cause of Injury Nosebleeds in sports are usually the result of direct blows that cause varying degrees of contusion to the septum. *Epistaxis* can be classified as either anterior or posterior. Anterior epistaxis originates from the nasal septum and posterior epistaxis from the lateral wall. Anterior epistaxis is by far the more common and may result from a direct blow, a sinus infection, high humidity, allergies, a foreign body lodged in the nose, nasal dryness, inflamed capillaries secondary to a viral or allergic rhinitis, or some other serious facial or head injury.[25]

Signs of Injury Hemorrhages arise most often from the highly vascular anterior aspect of the nasal septum. In most situations, the nosebleed presents only a minor problem and stops spontaneously after a short time. However, there are persistent types that require medical attention and possibly cauterization. As always when dealing with blood, universal precautions must be used.

Care An athlete with an acute nosebleed should sit upright with a cold compress placed over both the nose and the ipsilateral carotid artery while applying finger pressure to the affected side nasal bone/nostril for 5 minutes. It has also been suggested that a piece of rolled-up gauze be placed between the upper lip and gum, thus placing direct pressure on the arteries that supply the nasal mucosa.[25]

If this procedure fails to stop the bleeding within 5 minutes, more extensive measures should be taken. The application of gauze or a felt plug provides corking action and encourages blood clotting. If a plug is used, the ends should protrude from the nostrils at least ½ inch to facilitate removal unless the athlete is immediately going back to competition. The nose plug should then completely fit into the nostril. After bleeding has ceased, the athlete may resume activity but should be reminded not to blow the nose under any circumstances for at least 2 hours after the initial insult.

ANATOMY OF THE EAR

The ear (Figure 22–13) is responsible for the sense of hearing and equilibrium. It is composed of three parts: the external ear; the middle ear (tympanic membrane) lying just inside the skull; and the internal ear (labyrinth), which is formed in part by the temporal bone of the skull. The middle ear and internal ear are structured to transport auditory impulses to the brain. Aiding the organs of hearing and equalizing pressure between the middle and the internal ear is the eustachian tube, a canal that joins the nose and the middle ear.[41]

Sports injuries to the ear occur most often to the external portion. The external ear is separated into the auricle (pinna) and the external auditory canal (meatus). The auricle, which is shaped like a shell, collects and directs waves of sound into the auditory canal. It is composed of flexible yellow cartilage, muscles, and fat padding and is covered by a closely adhering, thin layer of skin. Most of the blood vessels and nerves of the auricle turn around its borders, with just a few penetrating the cartilage proper.

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF SPECIFIC INJURIES TO THE EAR

Auricular Hematoma (Cauliflower Ear)

Cause of Injury Hematoma of the ear is common in boxing, rugby, and wrestling. Hematomas are most common in athletes who do not wear protective

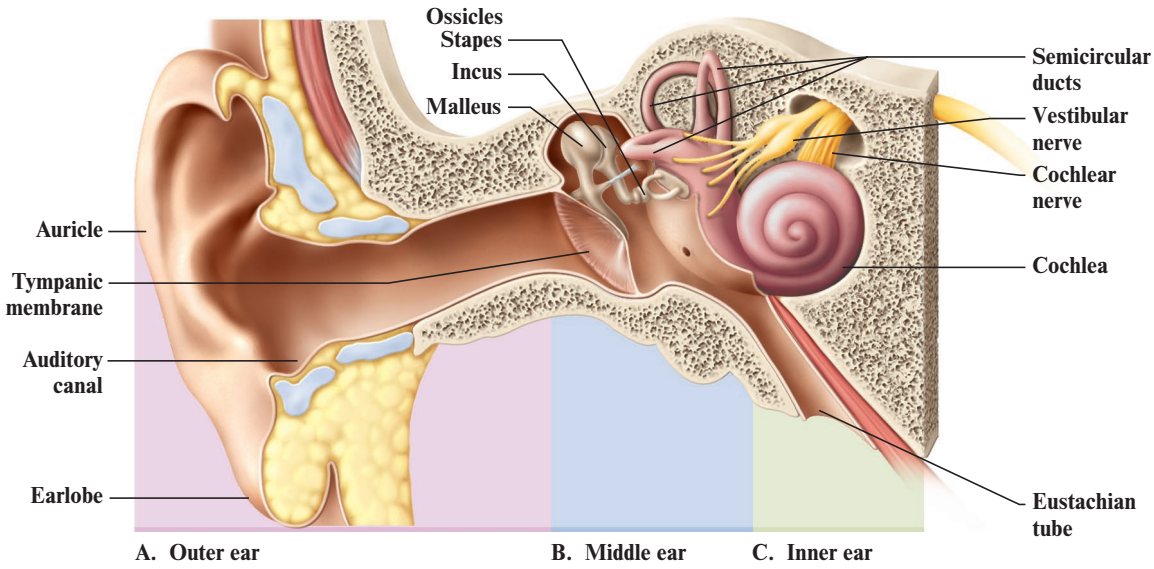


FIGURE 22–13 Ear anatomy. **(A)** External ear. **(B)** Middle ear. **(C)** Inner ear. (From Saladin, K.S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

headgear. This condition usually occurs from either compression or a shearing injury (single or repeated) to the auricle that causes subcutaneous bleeding into the auricular cartilage.[3]

Signs of Injury Trauma may tear the overlying tissue away from the cartilaginous plate, resulting in hemorrhage and fluid accumulation. A hematoma usually forms before the limited circulation can absorb the fluid. If the hematoma goes unattached, a sequence of coagulation, organization, and fibrosis results in a keloid (excessive scar) that appears elevated, rounded, white, nodular, and firm, resembling a cauliflower (Figure 22–14). Often it forms in the region of the helix fossa or concha; once developed, the keloid can be removed only through surgery.[3]

FIGURE 22–14 Cauliflower ear. ©William E. Prentice

Care To prevent this disfiguring condition, some friction-reducing agent such as petroleum jelly should be applied to the ears of athletes susceptible to this condition. They should also routinely wear ear guards in practice and in competition. Wearing headgear markedly reduces the chances of developing a hematoma.

If an ear becomes "hot" because of excessive rubbing or twisting, the immediate application of a cold pack to the affected spot alleviates hemorrhage. Once swelling is present in the ear, special care should be taken to prevent the fluid from solidifying; a cold pack should be placed immediately over the ear and held tightly by an elastic bandage for at least 20 minutes. If the swelling is still present at the end of this time, aspiration by a physician is required.[3] After drainage, a pressure bandage is applied to the area to prevent return of the hematoma.

Rupture of the Tympanic Membrane

Cause of Injury Rupture of the tympanic membrane is commonly seen in contact and collision sports, and in water polo and diving.[10] A fall or slap to the unprotected ear or sudden underwater pressure variation can rupture the tympanic membrane. It can also be a problem for an individual

who is traveling on an airplane who has an existing ear infection or inflammation. When the pressure changes abruptly in the cabin, the tympanic membrane can be ruptured.

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of a loud pop followed by pain in the ear, nausea, vomiting, and dizziness. He or she demonstrates hearing loss, and a physician can see a visible rupture of the tympanic membrane through an otoscope.

Rupture of the tympanic membrane can cause temporary hearing loss.

Care Small to moderate perforations of the tympanic membrane usually heal spontaneously in 1 to 2 weeks.[10] Infection can occur and must be continually monitored. Individuals with a ruptured tympanic membrane should not fly until the condition has resolved.

Swimmer's Ear (Otitis Externa)

Cause of Injury A common condition in athletes engaged in water sports is *swimmer's ear*, or external otitis. Swimmer's ear is a general term for a bacterial infection of the ear canal.[10] Contrary to current thought among swimming coaches, swimmer's ear is not usually associated with a fungal infection. Water can become trapped in the ear canal as a result of obstructions created by cysts, bone growths, earwax plugs, or swelling caused by allergies.[10]

Signs of Injury The athlete may complain of itching, discharge, or even a partial hearing loss. He or she also complains of pain and dizziness.

Care Ear infection is best prevented by drying the ears thoroughly with a soft towel, using ear drops containing a mild acid (3 percent boric acid) and alcohol solution before and after each swim, and avoiding situations that can cause ear infections, such as overexposure to cold wind or sticking foreign objects into the ear.[10]

When the swimmer displays symptoms of external otitis, immediate referral to a physician must be made. Tympanic membrane rupture should be ruled out. Antibiotics may be used in athletes with a mild ear infection.[10] In the event of a perforated eardrum, custom-made ear plugs must be used.

Middle Ear Infection (Otitis Media)

Cause of Injury Otitis media is an accumulation of fluid in the middle ear caused by local and systemic inflammation and infection.

Signs of Injury There usually is intense pain in the ear, fluid draining from the ear canal, a transient loss of hearing, and possibly dizziness. In addition, the systemic infection may also cause fever, headache, irritability, loss of appetite, and nausea.[10]

Care A physician may choose to draw a small amount of fluid from the middle ear to determine the most appropriate antibiotic therapy. Analgesics can be used to help reduce pain. The problem generally begins to resolve within 24 hours, although pain may last for 72 hours.

Impacted Cerumen

Cause of Condition *Cerumen*, or earwax, is secreted by glands in the outer portion of the ear canal. Occasionally an excessive amount of earwax may accumulate, clogging the ear canal.[8]

Signs of Condition When cerumen becomes impacted, there is some degree of hearing loss that is usually muffled. However, there generally is little or no pain because no infection is involved.[10]

Care Initially, an attempt can be made to remove excess cerumen by irrigating the ear canal with warm water. The athlete should not attempt to remove the cerumen with a cotton tip applicator because that may increase the degree of impaction. If irrigation fails, the impacted cerumen must be physically removed by a physician using a curette.[10]

ANATOMY OF THE EYE

The eye has many anatomical protective features. It is firmly retained within an oval socket formed by the bones of the head. A cushion of soft fatty tissue surrounds it, and a thin skin flap (the eyelid), which functions by reflex action, covers the eye for protection. The lashes and eyebrows, which act as a filtering system, prevent foreign particles from entering the eye. A soft mucous lining that covers the inner conjunctiva transports and spreads tears, which are secreted by many accessory lacrimal glands. A larger lubricating organ is located above the eye and secretes quantities of fluid through the lacrimal duct to help wash away foreign particles. The eye proper is well protected by the sclera, a tough white outer layer possessing a transparent center portion called the *cornea*.[41]

The cornea covers the pupil, which is the central opening of the eye. Light passes through the cornea, then through the anterior chamber past the iris to the lens, and finally through the vitreous body, all of which function collectively to focus an image on the retina that the optic nerve detects (Figure 22–15).

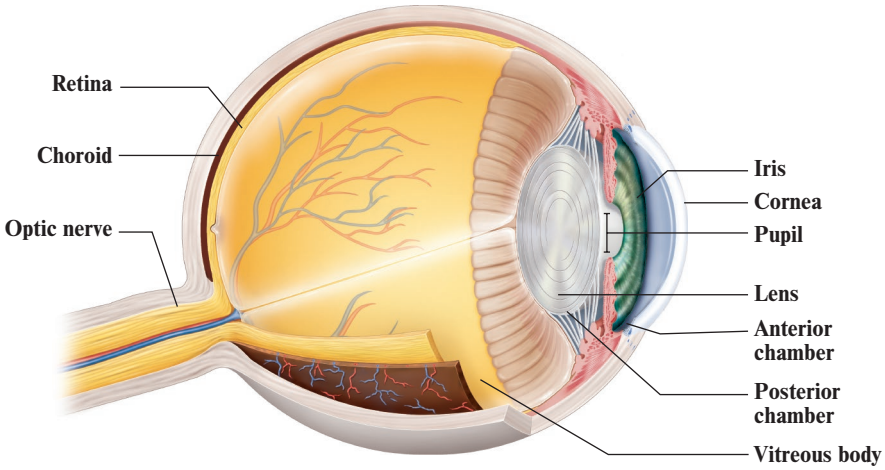


FIGURE 22–15 **Eye anatomy.** (From Saladin, K.S., *Anatomy and physiology*, 5th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2010.)

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF SPECIFIC EYE INJURIES

It should be strongly recommended that athletes wear appropriate eye guards to reduce the likelihood of injury to the eye (see Chapter 6). This is particularly true in sports that involve the use of some projectile object (e.g., racquetball, lacrosse, baseball).

Orbital Hematoma (Black Eye)

Cause of Injury Although well protected, the eye may be bruised by direct contact during sports activity. The severity of eye injuries varies from a mild bruise, to an extremely serious condition affecting vision, to fracture of the orbital cavity. Fortunately, most of the eye injuries sustained in sports are mild. A blow to the eye may initially injure the surrounding tissue and produce capillary bleeding into the tissue spaces. If the hemorrhage goes unchecked, the result may be a classic "black eye" (Figure 22–16).[6]

FIGURE 22–16 **A blow to the orbit can cause a black eye.** ©William E. Prentice

Signs of Injury The signs of a more serious contusion may be displayed as a subconjunctival hemorrhage or as faulty vision.

Care Care of an eye contusion requires cold application for at least half an hour, plus a 24-hour rest period if the athlete has distorted vision. Under no circumstances should an athlete blow the nose after an acute eye injury. To do so might increase hemorrhaging.

Orbital Fractures

Cause of Injury A fracture of the bony framework of the orbit surrounding the eye can occur when a blow to the eyeball forces it backward, compressing the orbital fat until a blow-out or rupture occurs to the floor of the orbit. Both fat and the inferior extraocular muscles can bulge through this fracture.[2]

Signs of Injury The athlete with a fracture of the orbit often exhibits *diplopia* (double vision); an eye that is stuck in an upward gaze, with the individual unable to move the eyeball below the horizontal; a downward displacement of the eye; and pain accompanied by soft-tissue swelling and hemorrhage. There may be numbness associated with injury to the infraorbital nerve on the floor of the orbit. An X-ray or CT scan must be taken to confirm the fracture.[15]

Care A physician should administer antibiotics prophylactically to decrease the likelihood of infection. A fracture in the orbital floor allows communication with the maxillary sinus, which may contain potentially infectious bacteria. Most orbital fractures are treated surgically, although some physicians prefer to wait and see whether the symptoms resolve on their own.

Foreign Body in the Eye

Cause of Injury Foreign bodies in the eye are a frequent occurrence in sports and are potentially dangerous.[2]

Signs of Injury A foreign object produces considerable pain and disability. No attempt should be made to remove the body by rubbing or by using the fingers.

Care Have the athlete close the eye until the initial pain has subsided, and then attempt to determine whether the object is under the upper or lower lid. Foreign bodies in the lower lid are relatively easy to remove by depressing the tissue and then wiping it with a sterile cotton applicator. Foreign bodies in the area of the upper lid are usually much more difficult to localize. Gently pull the upper eyelid over the lower lid while the subject looks downward. This causes tears to be produced, which may flush the object down onto the lower lid. If this method is unsuccessful, gently pull the eyelid up then grasp the lashes and turn the lid back. Holding the lid in place with one hand, use the sterile cotton swab to dap and lift out the foreign body (Figure 22–17). After the foreign particle is removed, the affected eye should be washed with saline solution. Often, there is residual soreness after removal of the foreign body, which may be alleviated by the application of petroleum jelly or some other mild ointment. If there is extreme difficulty in removing the foreign body or if it has become embedded in the eye itself, the eye should be closed and "patched" with a gauze pad, which is held in place by strips of tape. The athlete should be referred to a physician as soon as possible.[2]

Corneal Abrasions

Cause of Injury An athlete who gets a foreign object in his or her eye usually tries to rub it away. In doing so, the cornea can become abraded.[2]

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of severe pain and watering of the eye, photophobia (sensitivity to light), and spasm of the orbicular muscle of the eyelid.

Care The eye should be patched, and the athlete should be sent to a physician. Antibiotic ointment prescribed by the physician is applied and a semipressure patch placed over the closed eyelid.[6]

Hyphema

Cause of Injury A blunt blow to the anterior aspect of the eye can produce a *hyphema*, which is a collection of blood within the anterior chamber (Figure 22–18).[2] This injury is often caused by being struck in the eye with a racquetball or squash ball when not wearing appropriate protective eyewear.

Signs of Injury Initially, there is a reddish tinge in the anterior chamber, and within the first 2 hours the blood settles inferiorly or may fill the entire chamber. The blood may turn pea green. Vision is partially or completely blocked. A hyphema is a major eye injury that can lead to serious problems of the lens, choroid, or retina.

Care Athletes with a hyphema should be immediately referred to a physician. Conventional treatment involves hospitalization and bed rest with the head elevated 30 to 45 degrees, patching of both eyes, sedation, and medication to reduce pressure in the anterior chamber. The initial hemorrhage resorbs in a few days, although occasionally there is rebleeding. If a hyphema is not managed properly, irreversible vision damage can occur.

Retinal Detachment

Cause of Injury A blow to the athlete's eye can partially or completely separate the retina from its underlying attachment. Retinal detachment is more common among athletes who have myopia (nearsightedness).[6]

FIGURE 22–17 Removing a foreign object from the eye. ©William E. Prentice

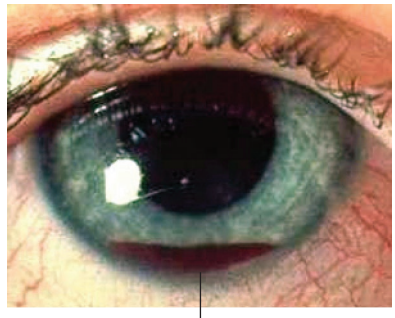


FIGURE 22–18 A hyphema is a collection of blood in the anterior chamber of the eye. ©William E. Prentice

Signs of Injury Detachment is painless; however, early signs include seeing specks floating before the eye, flashes of light, or blurred vision. As the detachment progresses, the athlete complains of a "curtain" falling over the field of vision.

Care Initial treatment is bed rest with patches on both eyes. The athlete should immediately be referred to an ophthalmologist to determine whether surgery is required.

Acute Conjunctivitis (Pink Eye)

Cause of Injury The conjunctiva is the tissue that lines the back of the eyelid, moves into the space between the eyelid and eye globe, and spreads up over the sclera to the cornea.[2] Acute conjunctivitis is usually caused by various bacteria or allergens. It may begin with conjunctival irritation from wind, dust, smoke, or air pollution. It may also be associated with the common cold or other upper respiratory conditions.

Signs of Injury The athlete complains of eyelid swelling, sometimes with a purulent discharge. Itching is associated with allergy. Eyes may burn or itch (Figure 22–19).

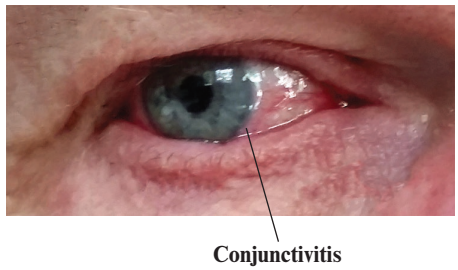


FIGURE 22–19 Acute conjunctivitis in the eye. ©William E. Prentice

Care Acute conjunctivitis can be highly infectious. The athlete should be referred to a physician for treatment.

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF INJURIES TO THE THROAT

Contusions

Cause of Injury Blows to the throat do not occur frequently in sports, but occasionally an athlete may receive a kick or blow to the throat. One type of trauma is known as "clotheslining," in which the athlete is struck in the throat region. Such a force can conceivably injure the carotid artery, causing a clot to form that occludes the blood flow to the brain. This same clot can become dislodged and migrate to the brain. In either case, serious brain injury may result.

Signs of Injury Immediately after throat trauma, the athlete may experience severe pain and spasmodic coughing, speak with a hoarse voice, and complain of difficulty in swallowing. A fracture of the larynx is rare, but it is possible and may be indicated by an inability to breathe and expectoration of frothy blood.[30] Cyanosis may be present. Throat contusions are extremely uncomfortable and are often frightening to the athlete.

Care The most immediate concern is the integrity of the airway. If the athlete is experiencing difficulty in breathing, he or she should be taken to an emergency care facility immediately.[30] In most situations, cold may be applied intermittently to control superficial hemorrhage and swelling, and after a 24-hour rest period moist hot packs may be applied. For the most severe neck contusions, stabilization with a well-padded collar is beneficial.

SUMMARY

- An athlete who receives either a direct blow to the head or body contact that causes the head to snap forward, backward, or rotate to the side must be carefully evaluated for injury to the brain. Injuries to the brain may or may not result in unconsciousness; disorientation, or amnesia; motor, coordination, or balance deficits; or cognitive deficits.
- It is important to realize that in the athletic population, the majority of concussions do not involve loss of consciousness.
- Concussions usually occur as a result of a direct impact or through a combination of rotational acceleration and deceleration forces.
- Determination of the severity of a concussion should be based on the presence and duration of the associated symptoms.
- Returning an athlete to competition following concussion often creates a difficult dilemma for the sports medicine team. There must be ongoing concern about second impact syndrome and epidural and subdural hematomas.
- Injuries to the face can involve fractures of the mandible, maxilla, or zygoma, dislocations of the mandible, and facial lacerations.
- Any impact to the upper or lower jaw or direct trauma can cause one of three types of fractures

to the teeth: an uncomplicated crown fracture, a complicated crown fracture, or a root fracture. A tooth may also be subluxated, luxated, or avulsed. Be aware of when to refer an athlete for dental care.

- Most injuries to the ear involve the auricle; cauliflower ear is the most common injury. Rupture of the tympanic membrane, swimmer's ear, and middle ear infections are also common in athletes.
- Orbital fractures, a foreign body in the eye, a hyphema, and retinal detachments are all considered serious injuries to the eye.
- The most serious consequence of a throat contusion is airway interference.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

22-1 Ask him to count backward from 100 by 7s and to name the months in reverse order. Both of these tests assess cognitive function.

22-2 The athlete should be out of play until all symptoms have resolved. After this period, he may return to play if asymptomatic during activity for 1 week. The physician may consider terminating the athlete for the rest of the season.

22-3 Absolutely not. Whenever an athlete suffers a loss of consciousness, they are automatically finished for that day and should be cleared by a physician before being allowed to return to play.

22-4 Take the tooth and, without trying to clean it off, attempt to reimplant the tooth. The athlete should then be immediately referred to a dentist.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. What is the difference between the terms *concussion* and *mild head injury*?
2. Identify signs and symptoms associated with a concussion.
3. How is second impact syndrome related to concussion?
4. What immediate care procedures should be performed for athletes with facial lacerations?
5. Describe the immediate care procedures that should be performed when a tooth is fractured and when it is dislocated.
6. Describe the procedures that should be performed for an athlete with a nosebleed.
7. How can cauliflower ear be prevented?
8. How should a foreign body in the eye be treated?

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Black, A., & Patton, D. 2017. Prevention of sport-related facial injuries. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 36(2):257–278.
2. Boden, B., & Pierpoint, L. 2017. Eye injuries in high school and collegiate athletes. *Sports Health* 9(5):444–449.
3. Brickman, K. 2013. Acute management of auricular hematoma: A novel approach and retrospective review. *Clinical Journal of Sport Medicine* 23(4):321–323.
4. Broglio, S., et al. 2014. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Management of sport concussion. *Journal of Athletic Training* 49(2):245–265.
5. Broglio, S., & Guskiewicz, K. 2014. Management of collegiate sport-related concussions. In S. M. Slobounov & W. J. Sebastianelli (eds.), *Concussions in athletics: From brain to behavior* (pp. 313–329). New York, NY: Springer.
6. Cass, S. 2012. Ocular injuries in sports. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 11(1):11–15.
7. Covassin, T. 2013. Concussion symptoms and neurocognitive performance of high school and college athletes who incur multiple concussions. *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 41(12):2885–2889.
8. Davis G., & Purcell L. 2017.The Child Sport Concussion Assessment Tool 5th edition (Child SCAT5): Background and rationale. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 51:859–861.
9. Delaney, S. 2014. Mechanisms of injury for concussions in university football, ice hockey, and soccer. *Clinical Journal of Sport Medicine* 24(3):233–237.
10. Eagles, K. 2013. Ear trauma. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 32(2):303–316.
11. Echemendia, R. 2013. Advances in neuropsychological assessment of sport-related concussion. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 47(5):294–298.
12. Echemendia, R., Meeuwisse, W., & McCrory, P. 2017. The Sport Concussion Assessment Tool 5th edition (SCAT5): Background and rationale. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 51:848–850.
13. Echemendia, R. J., Meeuwisse, W., & McCrory P. 2017. The Concussion Recognition Tool 5th edition (CRT5): Background and rationale. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 51:870–871.
14. Ellis, M. 2017. Migraine with aura or sports-related concussion: Case report, pathophysiology, and multidisciplinary approach to management. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 16(1):14–18.
15. Fowell, C. 2013. Return-to-play guidelines following facial fractures. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*. doi: 10.1136/bjsports-2012-091697.
16. Gould, T., & Piland, S. 2016. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Preventing and managing sport-related dental and oral injuries. *Journal of Athletic Training* 51(10):821–839.
17. Green, J. 2017. The role of mouthguards in preventing and reducing sports-related trauma. *Primary Dental Journal* 6(2):27–34.
18. Guskiewicz, K. 2011. Balance assessment in the management of sport-related concussion. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 30(1):89–102.
19. Hoogenboom, B. 2012. Management of bleeding and open wounds in athletes. *International Journal of Sports Physical Therapy* 7(3):350.
20. Iverson, G., & Schatz, P. 2015. Advanced topics in neuropsychological assessment following sport-related concussion. *Brain Injury* 29(2):263–275.
21. Kenzi, E., & Parks, E. 2017. Concussion as a multi-scale complex system: An interdisciplinary synthesis of current knowledge. *Frontiers in Neurology* 8:513. doi: 10.3389/fneur.2017.00513.
22. Liu, R. 2009. Skull fracture and brain contusion in a baseball player: A case report. *Athletic Therapy Today* 14(1):35–38.
23. Lynall, R. 2013. Concussion-assessment and -management techniques used by athletic trainers. *Journal of Athletic Training* 48(6):844.
24. Marinides, Z. 2014. Vision testing is additive to the sideline assessment of sports-related concussion. *Neurology: Clinical Practice* 10:1212.
25. 25. Marston, A., & O'Brien, E. 2017. Nasal injuries in sports. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 36(2):337–353.
26. McCrea, M. 2013. Day of injury assessment of sport-related concussion. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 47(5): 272–284.
27. McCrea, M., & Guskiewicz, K. 2013. Incidence, clinical course, and predictors of prolonged recovery time following sport-related concussion in high school and college athletes. *Journal of the International Neuropsychological Society* 19(1):22–33.

28. McCrory, P. 2012. Second impact syndrome or cerebral swelling after sporting head injury. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 11(1):21–23.
29. McCracken, W., & Smith, D. 2017. Sports-related eye injuries. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 16(2):64–65.
30. Mendis, D., & Anderson, A. 2017. Blunt laryngeal trauma secondary to sporting injuries. *Journal of Laryngology and Otology* 131(8):728–735.
31. Mihalik, J. P., et al. 2013. Recovery of posttraumatic migraine characteristics in patients after mild traumatic brain injury. *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 41(7):1490–1496.
32. Moran, B., Tadikonda, P., et al. 2015. Postconcussive syndrome following sports-related concussion: A treatment overview for primary care physicians. *Southern Medical Journal* 108(9):553–558.
33. Morris, S. 2014. Emergent treatment of athletes with brain injury. *Neurosurgery* 75:S96–S105.
34. Nakayama, Y., & Covassin, T. 2014. Examination of the test-retest reliability of a computerized neurocognitive test battery. *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 42(8):2000–2005.
35. Navarro, R. 2013. Nasal issues in athletes. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 12(1):22–27.
36. Okonkwo, D. 2014. Sideline assessment tools for the evaluation of concussion in athletes: A review. *Neurosurgery* 75:S82–S95.
37. Patrick, D. 2014. Making better mouthguards to prevent sports injury. *Dental Nursing* 10(8):445–447.
38. Patricios, J., & Fuller, G. 2017. What are the critical elements of sideline screening that can be used to establish the diagnosis of concussion? A systematic review. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 51(11):888–894.
39. Perrine, K., & Helcer, J. 2017. The current status of research on chronic traumatic encephalopathy. *World Neurosurgery* 102:533–544.
40. Register-Mihalik, J., & Guskiewicz, K. 2013. Reliable change, sensitivity, and specificity of a multidimensional concussion assessment battery: Implications for caution in clinical practice. *Journal of Head Trauma Rehabilitation* 28(4):274–283.
41. Saladin, K. 2017. *Anatomy and physiology: The unity of form and function.* Boston, MA: McGraw-Hill.
42. Sigurdsson, A. 2013. Evidence-based review of prevention of dental injuries. *Journal of Endodontics* 39(3):S88–S93.
43. *Taber's cyclopedic medical dictionary.* 2017. Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.
44. Tuna, E. 2014. Factors affecting sports-related orofacial injuries and the importance of mouthguards. *Sports Medicine* 44(6):777–783.
45. Young, E. J., Macias, C. R., & Stephens, L. 2013. Common dental injury management in athletes. *Sports health: A multidisciplinary approach* 7(3):250–255.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Andreasen, J., & Bakland, L. 2011. *Traumatic dental injuries.* Hoboken, NJ: Wiley-Blackwell.

Discusses step-by-step treatment protocols for commonly occurring traumatic dental injuries.

Cantu, R. 2013. *Concussions and our kids: America's leading expert on how to protect young athletes and keep sports safe.* New York, NY: Mariner Books.

This is an important, cutting-edge work by the premier specialist in his field.

McCrea, M. 2007. *Mild traumatic brain injury and postconcussion syndrome: The new evidence base for diagnosis and treatment.* New York, NY: Oxford University Press.

This is the first neuropsychology book to translate findings from the recent explosion of research on sport-related concussion to the broader context of mild traumatic brain injury (MTBI) and post-concussive syndrome (PCS) in the general population.

Slobounov, S., & Sebastianelli, W. 2014. *Concussions in athletics: From brain to behavior.* New York, NY: Springer.

Comprehensively addresses the neuromechanisms, predispositions, and latest developments in the evaluation and management of concussive injuries.

WEBSITES

American Academy of Neurology: www.aan.com
American Academy of Ophthalmology: www.aao.org
American Academy of Otolaryngology Head and Neck Surgery: www.entnet.org
American Dental Association Online: www.ada.org
Online Sports Dentistry: www.drraypadilla.com/services/sports-dentistry
NATA Management of Sport Concussion: www.nata.org/sites/default/files/Concussion_Management_Position_Statement.pdf

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

23

©William E. Prentice

General Medical Conditions and Additional Health Concerns

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Explain the causes, prevention, and care of the most common skin infections in sports.
- Describe respiratory tract illnesses common to athletes.
- Identify disorders of the gastrointestinal tract.
- Describe how the diabetic athlete can avoid problems.
- Describe the dangers that hypertension presents to an athlete.
- Describe the adverse effects that various anemias have on the athlete.
- Explain what a coach should do with an athlete who is having a grand mal seizure.
- Identify contagious viral diseases that may be seen in athletes.
- Explain the concerns of the female athlete in terms of menstruation, osteoporosis, and reproduction.
- Identify specific sexually transmitted diseases.

In addition to the injuries that have been discussed in previous chapters, a variety of other medical and health-related conditions can potentially affect athletes and their ability to compete or practice. Like everyone else, athletes inevitably become ill. When illnesses occur, it becomes important to recognize these conditions and to follow up with referral to appropriate care. For the illnesses and conditions discussed in this chapter, appropriate care usually means referring the athlete to a physician to provide medical care. **The majority of illnesses and conditions discussed in this chapter require referral to a physician for care.** The information provided in this chapter serves as a reference for making appropriate decisions regarding care of the sick athlete.

SKIN INFECTIONS

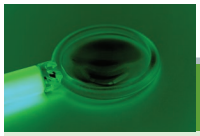
The skin is the largest organ of the human body. It is composed of three layers—epidermis, dermis, and subcutis.[38] The most common skin infections in sports are caused by viruses, bacteria, and fungi.[27] *Focus Box 23–1* lists the most common skin infections. To some extent, these viral, bacterial, and fungal infections can be prevented by taking appropriate measures such as using universal precautions, avoiding direct contact with infected individuals, and washing your hands.[44]

Viral Infections

A virus is the smallest of the microorganisms that can live only inside a cell. When the virus enters a cell, it may immediately trigger a disease (influenza), or it can remain dormant for years (herpes). A virus can damage the host cell by blocking its normal function and using the metabolism of the host cell for its own reproduction. Eventually, the virus destroys the host cell and progressively invades other cells.[8]

Herpes is a common virus that attacks the skin of athletes.

Viral infections most likely to affect the skin are herpes simplex and herpes zoster.



FOCUS BOX 23–1

Common viral, bacterial, and fungal skin infections found in athletes*

Viral Infections

- Herpes simplex type 1—cold sore, fever blister
- Herpes simplex type 2—genital herpes
- Herpes gladiatorum (back or shoulders)
- Herpes zoster
- Verruca virus (warts)

Bacterial Infections

- Staphylococcus
  - Boils
  - Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)
- Streptococcus
  - Impetigo
  - Infected hair follicles (boil)
  - Infected sweat glands (folliculitis)
  - Infected hair follicles and sebaceous glands (acne vulgaris)

Fungal Infections

- Ringworm (tinea)
  - Tinea cruris (jock rash)
  - Tinea pedis (athlete's foot)
  - Tinea capitis (head)
  - Tinea corporis (body)
  - Tinea unguium (toenails and fingernails)

*All of these conditions should be referred to a physician or dermatologist for treatment.

Herpes

Cause of Condition Herpes simplex is a viral infection that results in a skin eruption of vesicles that tends to recur in the same place, usually at sites at which mucous membranes join the skin. Herpes simplex is further classified as either type 1 or type 2.[36] Type 1 occurs as a cold sore or fever blister around the lips (Figure 23–1). It is transmitted though oral secretions or open sores on the skin. Type 2 usually occurs around the genitals and is usually transmitted by sexual contact.[15] It is classified as a sexually transmitted infection.[36] Herpes simplex that appears on the back or shoulders is called *herpes gladiatorum* and occurs most often in wrestlers.[12,33]

Herpes zoster appears in a specific pattern on the body in an area that is innervated by a specific nerve root. It may appear on the face or anywhere on the trunk. Herpes zoster is the reappearance of the chicken pox virus that has remained dormant for many years. It is most likely to appear when the immune system is compromised.[42]

FIGURE 23–1 Herpes simplex type 1 on the lower lip. Source: Centers for Disease Control

Symptoms of Condition Athletes about to experience an outbreak of herpes usually feel a tingling, itching soreness immediately before a small area of redness appears. The athlete also reports feeling ill, particularly with the first outbreak. These symptoms are followed by the appearance of painful, fluid-filled vesicles that take on a crusty appearance. These vesicles usually heal in about 10 days.[36]

Care Athletes with active lesions should be held out of any contact activity until the fluid-filled vesicles have disappeared.[12] It is important to take universal precautions when dealing with the herpes virus. Herpes may spread by contact with the fluid inside the vesicles. Outbreaks of herpes must run their course. Warm baths can help to relieve pain associated with genital sores. Drugs such as acyclovir (Zovirax) and Valtrex, taken orally and applied topically, have been effective in reducing the frequency and duration of outbreaks. They may also reduce the risk of transmitting type 2 herpes to a partner. However, athletes must realize that the virus is not destroyed and that the herpes will probably reappear in the same area.[36]

Verrucae Warts

Cause of Condition Numerous forms of verrucae warts exist, including the verruca plana (flat wart), verruca plantaris (plantar wart), and the condyloma acuminatum (venereal wart). These verruca warts are caused by the human papillomavirus. Different isotypes of human papillomavirus have been identified. The human papillomavirus uses the skin's epidermal layer for reproduction and growth. The verruca wart enters the skin through a lesion that has been exposed to contaminated fields, floors, or clothing. Contamination can also occur from exposure to other warts.[16]

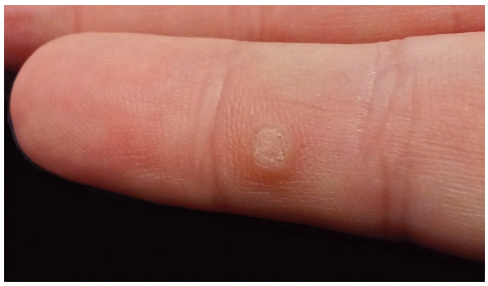


FIGURE 23–2 **Common wart on a finger.** ©William E. Prentice

Symptoms of Condition The verruca wart appears as a small, round, elevated lesion with rough, dry surfaces (Figure 23–2). It may be painful if pressure is applied. These warts are subject to secondary bacterial infection, particularly if they are located on the hands or feet, where they may be constantly irritated.

Care Vulnerable warts must be protected until they can be treated by a physician. The application of a topical salicylic acid preparation or liquid nitrogen and electrocautery are the most common ways of managing this condition.[16]

Bacterial Infections

Cause of Condition Bacteria are one-celled plant-like microorganisms that are capable of multiplying in an environment that supports their reproduction. Bacteria that cause disease are called *pathogens*. Millions of nonpathogenic bacteria normally live on the skin and mucous membranes of the body. Development of a disease involves entry of the bacterial pathogen into a host, growth of bacteria and production of toxic substances, and the response of the host to fight that infection.[38] Many different types of bacterial pathogens can produce infection in the body. The two types of bacteria most likely to infect the skin are *streptococcus* (strep) and *staphylococcus* (staph).[27] **Impetigo** contagiosa is a common skin disease, primarily observed in children, with the greatest number of cases occurring in late summer and early fall. It is caused by streptococci and spreads rapidly when athletes are in close contact with one another. It is characterized by the eruption of small vesicles that form into pustules and later yellow crustations (Figure 23–3A).[20] A **boil,** or furuncle, is a localized, pus-forming infection of staphylococcus bacteria that originates in a hair follicle (Figure 23–3B). Boils can become large and very painful. They commonly occur in athletes wearing protective equipment, such as where football shoulder pads come in contact with the skin.[27] **Folliculitis** is an inflammatory reaction of the hair follicles, usually around the face or neck, on the buttocks, or in the groin area (Figure 23–3C).[47]

impetigo A bacterial strep infection.

boil (furuncle) A staph infection originating in a hair follicle.

folliculitis Inflammation of hair follicles.

Acne vulgaris is an inflammatory disease that involves the hair follicles and the sebaceous glands. Most adolescents experience some form of acne near puberty. Acne can present with different types of lesions, including whiteheads, blackheads, flesh- or red-colored papules, pustules, or cysts (Figure 23–3D). Commonly affected areas are the face, neck, and back. The superficial lesions usually heal spontaneously, whereas the deeper ones may become chronic and form disfiguring scars.[47]

Acne vulgaris Infected hair follicles and sebaceous glands.

Symptoms of Condition The symptoms of localized infection are similar to the signs of inflammation, including tenderness, warmth, redness, and swelling. Pus may form in an infected area from either staph or strep.

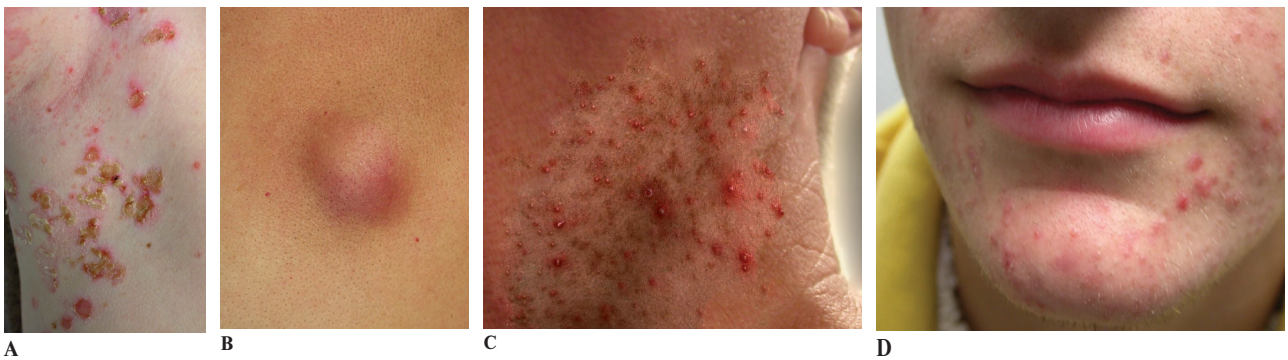


FIGURE 23–3 **Bacterial infections. (A)** Impetigo contagiosa on the forearm. **(B)** Boil on the chest. **(C)** Folliculitis on the neck. **(D)** Acne vulgaris on the face. Courtesy of Dean Morrell, MD, Department of Dermatology, University of North Carolina

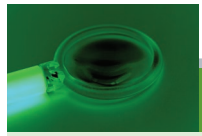
Care Bacterial infections should be treated with specific antibiotic medications that inhibit the growth and proliferation of a particular bacterium. The area should also be treated with warm compresses. If an open, pus-filled lesion develops, it should be drained. Every precaution should be taken to minimize the spread of infection and transmission to another person.[27,47]

Methicillin-Resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)

Cause of Condition MRSA stands for methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. In recent years, some strains of staphylococcus bacteria have become resistant to some antibiotics.[32] MRSA strains are not only resistant to the antibiotic called methicillin but also to many other types of antibiotics.[37] MRSA occurs most commonly in people who are already in the hospital and ill or have wounds or open sores such as bedsores or burns. The wounds or sores may become infected with MRSA, and the infection is then difficult to treat. MRSA can also cause infections in healthy individuals not in a hospital but just living normal lives within a community. MRSA is spread by coming in direct contact with another person or object that has the MRSA bacteria.[4] The spread of MRSA seems to occur most often in groups of individuals who tend to have a higher likelihood of direct physical contact such as athletes on a team, day-care workers, people riding on a bus, etc.[4]

Symptoms of Condition MRSA infections typically begin as small red bumps that look like a pimple or perhaps an insect bite. Infection often results in redness, swelling, and tenderness at the site of infection (Figure 23–4). However, these can rapidly transform into a painful boil or abscess. Once the infection becomes bloodborne, it can affect joints, the lungs, and the heart, creating potentially life-threatening symptoms. Sometimes, people may carry MRSA without having any symptoms.[37] Infection often results in redness, swelling, and tenderness at the site of infection.

FIGURE 23–4 Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) on the forearm. Source: CDC/Gregory Moran, M.D.



FOCUS BOX 23–2

Preventing the spread of MRSA[4,32,37]

- Check your body for small pimples or sores.
- Do not pick at or pop a sore.
- Cover the sore with a clean, dry bandage until it can be examined by a health care provider.
- Practice good personal hygiene.
- Wash your hands frequently with both plain and antimicrobial soap or alcohol-based hand rubs.
- Do not share personal items such as soap, razors, or deodorant.
- Keep your clothes clean, and wash them after each use.

Care Any time you suspect that an athlete may have an MRSA infection, you should cover the wound and refer the person to a health care provider immediately.[37] An abscess may have to be surgically drained. Antibiotics are not completely powerless against MRSA, but individuals infected with this bacteria may require a much higher dose over a much longer period, or the use of an alternative antibiotic. Many MRSA infections can only be treated with antibiotics that have to be given directly into a vein. The course of treatment is often for several weeks.[4] *Focus Box 23–2* suggests ways to help prevent the spread of MRSA.

Fungal Infections

Cause of Condition The most common fungal infection found in athletes is *ringworm* (Figure 23–5). Ringworm fungi are the cause of most skin, nail, and hair fungal infections.[18] Ringworm can be found all over the body and is more appropriately referred to by the term *tinea* plus the Latin term for whatever body part is affected.[18] The two most common sites for ringworm are in the groin (tinea cruris) and in the foot (tinea pedis).[18]

23–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

Fungal infections (ringworm) are commonly found among athletes. Fungi tend to grow in a warm, moist, dark environment.

? What are the symptoms and signs of the fungal infection tinea pedis, and how is this problem best prevented?

Symptoms of Tinea of the Groin (Tinea Cruris) Tinea of the groin (tinea cruris), more commonly called jock rash, appears as a bilateral and often symmetrical brownish or reddish lesion resembling the outline of a butterfly in the groin area.[12]

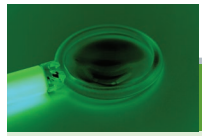
FIGURE 23–5 **Tinea (cruris).** Courtesy of Dean Morrell, MD, Department of Dermatology, University of North Carolina

The athlete complains of mild to moderate itching, which can lead to scratching and the possibility of a secondary bacterial infection.

Care Conditions of this type must be treated until cured. Infection not responding to normal management must be referred to a physician. Most ringworm infections respond to the many nonprescription medications that are available as aerosol sprays, liquids, powders, or ointments. Medications that are irritating or tend to mask the symptoms of a groin infection must be avoided.[12]

Symptoms of Athlete's Foot (Tinea Pedis) The foot is the area of the body most commonly infected by dermatophytes, usually by tinea pedis, or athlete's foot. The fungus is usually found in the space between the third and fourth digits and on the plantar surface of the arch (Figure 23–6).[22] The same organism attacks toenails. This fungus causes scaling and thickening of the soles. The athlete wearing shoes that are enclosed sweats, encouraging fungal growth. However, the likelihood of getting athlete's foot is based mainly on the athlete's individual susceptibility. Other conditions that may be thought to be athlete's foot include a dermatitis caused by allergy or an eczema-type skin infection.[47]

FIGURE 23–6 **Athlete's foot (tinea pedis).** Source: CDC/Dr. Lucille K. Georg



FOCUS BOX 23–3

Basic care of athlete's foot

- Keep the feet as dry as possible through frequent use of talcum powder.
- Wear clean socks to avoid reinfection, changing them daily.
- Use a standard fungicide for specific medication. Over-the-counter medications are useful in the early stages of the infection. For stubborn cases, a dermatologist may need to make a culture from foot scrapings to determine the best medication to use.

The best cure for athlete's foot is prevention. To keep the condition from spreading to other athletes, the following steps should be faithfully followed by individuals in the sports program:

- Powder the feet daily.
- Dry the feet thoroughly, especially between and under the toes, after every shower.
- Keep sports shoes and street shoes dry by dusting the insides with powder daily.
- Wear clean sports socks and street socks daily.
- Clean and disinfect shower and dressing rooms daily.
- Do not go barefoot in the showers or locker room.

Athlete's foot can reveal itself in many ways but appears most often as an extreme itching on the soles of the feet and between and on top of the toes. It appears as a rash, with small pimples or minute blisters that break and exude a yellowish serum. Scratching because of itchiness can cause the tissue to become inflamed and infected, manifesting a red, white, or gray scaling of the affected area.[22]

Care Treatment usually consists of a topical antifungal cream, such as 2 percent miconazole, 1 percent clotrimazole, or 1 percent econazole nitrate, applied once or twice a day. Of primary importance is good foot hygiene. Topical medications used for tinea corporis can be beneficial (*Focus Box 23–3*).[22]

RESPIRATORY CONDITIONS

The respiratory tract is an organ system through which various communicable diseases can be transmitted.[14] It is commonly the port of entry for acute

infectious diseases that are spread from person to person or by direct contact.[7] Some of the more prevalent conditions affecting athletes are the common cold, sore throat, asthma, seasonal allergies, and influenza.

The Common Cold

Cause of Condition Upper respiratory tract infections, especially colds and associated conditions, are common in the sports program and can play havoc with entire teams. The common cold is attributed to a filterable virus, which produces an infection of the upper respiratory tract of a susceptible individual.[23] The susceptible person is believed to be one who has, singly or in combination, any of the following characteristics:[13]

- Physical debilitation from overwork or lack of sleep
- Chronic inflammation from a local infection
- Inflammation of the nasal mucosa from an allergy
- Inflammation of the nasal mucosa from breathing foreign substances such as dust
- Sensitivity to stress

Symptoms of Condition The onset of the common cold is usually rapid; symptoms vary among individuals. The typical effects are a general feeling of **malaise** with an accompanying headache, sneezing, and nasal discharge. Some individuals may register a fever of 100°F to 102°F (38°C to 39°C) and have chills. Various aches and pains may also accompany the symptoms. The nasal discharge starts as a watery secretion and gradually becomes thick and discolored from the inflammation.[21]

malaise (muh-laze) Discomfort and uneasiness caused by an illness.

Care Care of the cold is usually symptomatic, with emphasis on isolation, bed rest, and light eating. Medications include acetominophen for relieving general discomfort, rhinitis tablets for drying the secreting mucosa, and nasal drops to relieve nasal congestion.[21] If a cough is present, various syrups may be given to afford relief. The athlete should avoid intense training while experiencing a severe respiratory infection. Intense training can suppress the immune system.[13]

Sinusitis

Cause of Condition Sinusitis is an inflammation of the nasal sinuses that can stem from an upper respiratory infection caused by a variety of bacteria. As a result, nasal mucous membranes swell and block the sinuses. A painful pressure occurs from an accumulation of mucus.[31]

Symptoms of Condition The skin area over the sinus may be swollen and painful to the touch. The athlete may experience a headache and generally not feel well.

Care If an infection is present, antibiotics may be warranted. Nasal vasoconstrictors may be helpful in nasal drainage.[31]

Sore Throat (Pharyngitis)

Cause of Condition A sore throat, or pharyngitis, usually is the result of postnasal drip associated with a common cold or sinusitis. It may also be an indication of a more serious condition, including either viral or bacterial infection.[19]

Symptoms of Condition Frequently the condition starts as a dryness in the throat and progresses to soreness with pain and swelling. It is sometimes accompanied by a headache, a fever of 101°F to 102°F (38.5°C to 39°C), chills, coughing, and a general feeling of fatigue. On examination, the throat may appear dark red and swollen, and mucous membranes may be coated.[19]

Care Topical gargles and rest are considered the best treatments. Acetaminophen may be helpful for treating fever and pain. A physician may prescribe antibiotics if other measures are inadequate.

Tonsillitis

Etiology The tonsils are pieces of lymphatic tissue covered by epithelium that are found at the entrance of the pharynx. Within each tonsil are deep clefts, or pits, lined by lymphatic nodules. Ingested or inhaled pathogens collect in the pits and penetrate the epithelium, where they come in contact with lymphocytes and cause an acute inflammation and bacterial infection.[21] Complications include sinusitis, middle ear infections (otitis media), or tonsillar.

Symptoms and Signs The tonsils appear inflamed, red, and swollen, with yellowish exudate in the pits. The athlete has difficulty swallowing and may have a relatively high fever with chills. Headache and pain in the neck and back may also be present.[21]

Management The throat should be cultured by a physician to look for streptococcal bacteria, and if the culture is positive, antibiotics should be used for 10 days. Gargling with warm saline solution, a liquid diet, and antifever medication should all be recommended. Frequent bouts of tonsillitis may eventually necessitate surgical removal of the tonsils.

Influenza

Cause of Condition Influenza, or the flu, is one of the most persistent and debilitating diseases. It usually occurs in various forms as an annual epidemic, causing severe illness among the populace.[26]

Influenza is caused by a virus that enters the tissue's cell through its genetic material. Within the tissue, the virus multiplies and is released from the cell by a budding process and is spread throughout the body. It is recommended that virtually everyone in the population receive a flu shot on a yearly basis.[26] Athletes engaging in winter sports, basketball, wrestling, and swimming require vaccinations.[26]

Symptoms of Condition The athlete with the flu has the following symptoms: fever, cough, headache, malaise, and inflamed respiratory mucous membranes with a runny nose, congestion, and loss of smell. It should be noted that certain viruses can increase the body's core temperature. Flu generally has an incubation period of 48 hours and comes on suddenly, accompanied by chills and a fever of 102°F to 103°F (39°C to 39.5°C), which develop over a 24-hour period. The athlete complains of a headache and general aches and pains—mainly in the back and legs. The headache increases in intensity, along with photophobia and aching at the back of the skull. There is often a sore throat, burning in the chest, and in the beginning, a nonproductive cough, which later may develop into bronchitis. The skin is flushed, and the eyes are inflamed and watery. The acute stage of the disease usually lasts up to 5 days. Weakness, sweating, and fatigue may persist for many days.[26]

23–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A swimmer complains of fever, cough, headache, malaise, aching in the back and neck, and a sore throat.

? What is probably wrong with this athlete, and how can it be managed?

Care Flu prevention includes staying away from infected persons, maintaining good resistance through healthy living, and annual flu vaccinations. If the flu is uncomplicated, its management consists of bed rest. During the acute stage, the temperature often returns to normal. Symptomatic care such as acetaminophen, steam inhalation, cough medicines, and gargles may be given.[26]

Seasonal Allergies (Hay Fever)

Cause of Condition Hay fever is an acute seasonal allergic condition that results from airborne pollens, dust, or mold. It can occur during the spring as a reaction to tree pollens such as oak, elm, maple, alder, birch, and cottonwood. During the summer, grass and weed pollens can be the culprits. In the fall, ragweed pollen is the prevalent cause. Airborne fungal spores also have been known to cause hay fever.[39]

Symptoms of Condition In the early stages, the athlete's eyes, throat, mouth, and nose begin to itch, followed by watering of the eyes, sneezing, and a clear, watery, nasal discharge. In the later stages, the athlete may complain of a sinus-type headache, emotional irritability, difficulty in sleeping, red and swollen eyes and nasal mucous membranes, and a wheezing cough. It should be noted that other common adverse allergic conditions are asthma, **rhinitis, anaphylaxis, urticaria,** and **angioedema.**[39]

rhinitis (rye-nye-tis) Inflammation of the nasal mucous lining.

anaphylaxis An immediate transient allergic reaction resulting in swelling of tissues and dilation of capillaries.

urticaria Sudden vascular reaction of skin resulting in wheals or papules and itching.

angioedema A well-defined area of swelling, occurring as a result of an allergic response.

Care Most athletes obtain relief from hay fever through over-the-counter oral antihistamines. To avoid the problem of sedation stemming from these drugs, the athlete should ingest a decongestant during the day and a long-acting antihistamine before going to bed.[39]

Acute Bronchitis

Cause of Condition Bronchitis is an inflammation of the mucous membranes of the bronchial tubes. It occurs in both acute and chronic forms. Bronchitis in an athlete is more likely to be in the acute form. Acute bronchitis usually occurs as an infectious winter disease that follows a common cold or other viral infection of the upper respiratory region. Secondary to this inflammation is a bacterial infection that may follow overexposure to air pollution. Fatigue, malnutrition, and/or chills could be predisposing factors.[14]

Symptoms of Condition The symptoms of an athlete with acute bronchitis usually start with an upper respiratory tract infection, nasal inflammation and profuse discharge, slight fever, sore throat, and back and muscle pains.[21] A cough signals the beginning of bronchitis. In the beginning the cough is dry, but in a few hours or days a clear mucous secretion begins, becoming yellowish, indicating an infection. In most

cases, the fever lasts 3 to 5 days and the cough lasts 2 to 3 weeks or longer. The athlete may wheeze and rale when auscultation of the chest is performed. Pneumonia can complicate bronchitis.[14]

Care To avoid bronchitis, an athlete should not sleep in an area that is extremely cold or exercise in extremely cold air without wearing a face mask to warm inhaled air. Management of acute bronchitis involves rest until fever subsides, drinking at least four glasses of water per day, and taking an antifever medication, a cough suppressor, and an antibiotic (when severe lung infection is present) daily.

Asthma

Cause of Condition As one of the most common respiratory diseases, asthma can be produced from a number of stressors, such as a viral respiratory tract infection, emotional upset, changes in barometric pressure or temperature, exercise, inhalation of a noxious odor, or exposure to a specific allergen.[1]

The athlete undergoing a sudden asthma attack should:

- Be relaxed and reassured
- Use a previously specified medication
- Drink water
- Perform controlled breathing
- Be removed from what might be triggering the attack

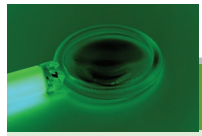
Symptoms of Condition Asthma is characterized by a spasm of the bronchial smooth muscles, edema, and inflammation of the mucous lining. In addition to asthma's narrowing of the airway, copious amounts of mucus are produced. Difficulty in breathing may cause the athlete to hyperventilate, resulting in dizziness. The attack may begin with coughing, wheezing, shortness of breath, and fatigue (*Focus Box 23–4*).[1]

Care Prevention should include efforts to identify and control the causative factors. Acute attacks can be managed by using physician-prescribed medications administered through inhalers. Relief from an inhaler usually occurs in a matter of minutes. If breathing difficulty persists, the athlete should be taken to an emergency care facility.[1]

Exercise-Induced Asthma (EIA)

Cause of Condition Exercise-induced asthma (EIA) is also known as exercise-induced bronchial obstruction.[40] It is a disease that occurs almost exclusively in asthmatic persons. An asthmatic attack can be stimulated by exercise in some individuals and can be provoked in others, only on rare occasions, during moderate exercise.[40] The exact cause of EIA is not clear. Loss of heat and water causes the greatest loss of airway reactivity. Eating certain foods such as shrimp, celery, and peanuts can cause EIA. Sinusitis can also trigger an attack in an individual with chronic asthma.[40]

Symptoms of Condition The athlete with EIA may show signs of swelling of the face, swelling of the palms and soles of the feet, chest tightness, shortness of breath, coughing, nausea, hypertension, diarrhea, fatigue, itching, respiratory stridor (high-pitched noise on respiration), headaches, and redness of the skin.[40]



FOCUS BOX 23–4

Symptoms and management of the acute asthmatic attack

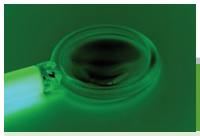
Athletes who have a history of asthma usually know how to care for themselves when an attack occurs. However, the coach or fitness professional must be aware of what to look for and what to do if called on.

Early Symptoms and Signs

- Anxious appearance
- Sweating and paleness
- Flared nostrils
- Breathing with pursed lips
- Fast breathing
- Vomiting
- Hunched-over body posture
- Physical fatigue unrelated to activity
- Indentation in the notch below the Adam's apple
- Sinking in of rib spaces as the athlete inhales
- Coughing for no apparent reason
- Excess throat clearing
- Irregular, labored breathing or wheezing

Actions to Take

- Attempt to relax and reassure the athlete.
- If medication has been cleared by the team physician, have the athlete use it.
- Encourage the athlete to drink water.
- Place in a semireclining position to make breathing easier.
- Have the athlete perform controlled breathing along with relaxation exercises.
- If an environmental factor triggering the attack is known, remove it or the athlete from the area.
- If these procedures do not help, immediate medical attention may be necessary.



FOCUS BOX 23–5

Using a metered-dose inhaler

A metered-dose inhaler includes a pressurized canister with measured doses of medication inside. The athlete squeezes the top of the canister. The pressure within the canister converts the medication into a fine mist. The athlete places his or her mouth near the inhaler's mouthpiece to inhale the mist. Using a metered-dose inhaler calls for coordinating two actions: squeezing the canister and inhaling the medication (Figure 23–7). Many individuals who use the metered-dose inhaler use it improperly; however, with careful and repeated instruction, more than 90 percent of people can use it correctly. Metered-dose inhalers can use a spacer, which is a tube 4 to 8 inches long that attaches to the inhaler and allows the user time to inhale more slowly. The spacer acts as a holding chamber that keeps medication from escaping into the air.

People with asthma can rely too much on inhaled bronchodilators. Because these fast-acting medications can relieve symptoms quickly, there is a tendency, particularly among athletes, to use them too often, leading to an overdose.[45]

Care Long, continuous running causes the most severe bronchospasm. Swimming causes the least severe bronchospasm, which may be because of the moist, warm air environment. A regular exercise program can benefit asthmatics and nonasthmatics.[40] Fewer symptoms occur with short, intense work followed by rest than occur with sustained exercise. There should be a gradual warm-up and cool-down. The duration of exercise should build slowly to 30 to 40 minutes four or five times a week. Exercise intensity and loading also should be graduated slowly. An example is 10 to 30 seconds of work followed by 30 to 90 seconds of rest. Many athletes with chronic asthma and/or EIA use an inhaled bronchodilator (Figure 23–7). Metered-dose inhalers are preferred for administration. It has also been found that prophylactic use of the bronchodilator 15 minutes before exercise delays the symptoms by 2 to 4 hours.[41] *Focus Box 23–5* discusses using a metered-dose inhaler. Asthmatic athletes who receive medication for their condition should make sure that what they take is legal for competition. They should also be certain that they always have their inhaler with them in case of an emergency. *Remind the athletes who have asthma that they need to be responsible for having their inhalers with them or at least accessible at all times.*[1]

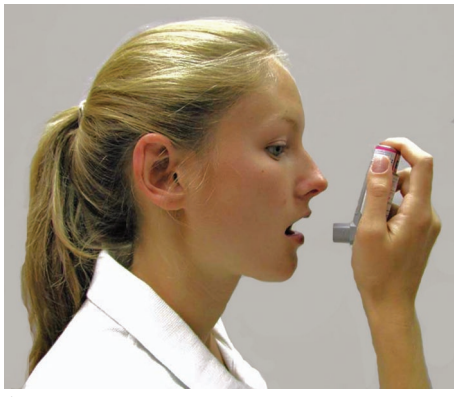
GASTROINTESTINAL DISORDERS

Like any other individual, the athlete may develop various complaints associated with the digestive system.[5] The athlete may display various disorders of the gastrointestinal tract as a result of poor eating habits or the stress related to competition. It is important to recognize the more severe conditions so that early referrals to a physician can be made. It is also essential to make certain that with all of these gastrointestinal problems, the athlete replaces fluids and electrolytes to prevent dehydration.[5]

A balanced diet is as important as brushing the teeth in preventing gum disease.

Indigestion

Cause of Condition Indigestion (dyspepsia) can be caused by any number of conditions, including food



A

B

FIGURE 23–7 **(A)** Metered-dose inhalers are commonly used by patients who have asthma. **(B)** A spacer helps keep medication from dissipating into the air. ©William E. Prentice

idiosyncrasies, emotional stress before competition, esophageal and stomach spasms, and/or inflammation of the mucous lining of the esophagus and stomach.[10]

Symptoms of Condition Indigestion can cause sour stomach, nausea, and flatulence (gas). In some cases, the individual may occasionally experience intense burning chest pain that is similar to a mild heart attack. This is often referred to as heartburn. Constant irritation of the stomach may lead to more serious disorders such as gastritis, an inflammation of the stomach wall, or ulcerations of the gastrointestinal mucosa.[10]

Care Care of acute dyspepsia involves the elimination of irritating foods from the diet, development of regular eating habits, and avoidance of anxieties that may lead to gastric distress. Ingestion of antiacid tablets may ease discomfort.

Vomiting

Cause of Condition Vomiting results from some type of irritation, most often in the stomach, that stimulates the vomiting center in the brain to cause a series of forceful contractions of the diaphragm and abdominal muscles, compressing the stomach and forcefully expelling the contents.[10]

Care Antinausea medications should be administered. Fluids to prevent dehydration should be administered by mouth if possible. If vomiting persists, fluids and electrolytes must be administered intravenously.

Diarrhea

Cause of Condition Diarrhea can be caused by problems in diet, inflammation of the intestinal lining, gastrointestinal infection, ingestion of certain drugs, and psychogenic factors.[5]

Indigestion, vomiting, diarrhea, and constipation are common problems in the athlete.

Symptoms of Condition Diarrhea is characterized by abdominal cramps, nausea, and possibly vomiting coupled with frequent elimination of stools. Extreme weakness caused by fluid dehydration is usually present. The cause of diarrhea is often difficult to establish.[9]

Care Less severe cases can be cared for by omitting foods that cause irritation, eating bland food until symptoms have ceased, and using over-the-counter medications to control intestinal activity. The BRAT diet, which consists of bananas, rice, apples, and toast, has been recommended.

Constipation

Cause of Condition Constipation can be caused by insufficient moisture in the feces, causing it to be hard and dry, lack of sufficient roughage and bulk in the diet, poor bowel habits, nervousness and anxiety, or overuse of laxatives and enemas.[9]

Symptoms of Condition There is occasional intense cramping and pain in the lower abdomen, with difficulty eliminating hard-packed stools.

Care Athletes can eliminate constipation by eating cereals, fruits, vegetables, and fats that stimulate bowel movement.[9] Laxatives or enemas should be avoided unless prescribed by a physician.

Food Poisoning

Cause of Condition Food poisoning (gastroenteritis), which may range from mild to severe, results from infectious organisms (bacteria) that enter the body in either food or drink. Foods become contaminated by improper food refrigeration or from an infected food handler.[5]

Symptoms of Condition Infection results in nausea, vomiting, cramps, and diarrhea that usually subside in 3 to 6 hours.

Care The athlete should be referred to a physician. Management requires replacement of lost fluids and electrolytes, which in severe cases may need to be replaced intravenously. If tolerated, light fluids or foods such as clear, strained broth, bouillon, or bland cereals may be given.

Gastrointestinal Bleeding

Cause of Condition Gastrointestinal bleeding that is reflected in bloody stools can be caused by gastritis, iron-deficiency anemia, ingestion of aspirin or other anti-inflammatory agents, colitis, or even stress and bowel irritation.[9] Distance runners often have blood in their stools during and following a race.

Care Athletes with gastrointestinal bleeding must be referred immediately to a physician.

OTHER CONDITIONS THAT CAN AFFECT THE ATHLETE

Infectious Mononucleosis

Cause of Condition Infectious mononucleosis is an acute viral disease that affects mainly young adults and children. It has major significance to athletes

because it can produce severe fatigue and raise the risk of spleen rupture.[2] Incubation is 4 to 6 weeks. The virus is carried in the throat and transmitted to another person by saliva. It has been called the "kissing disease."[30]

Symptoms of Condition The disease usually starts with a 3- to 5-day period of headache, fatigue, loss of appetite, and general muscle ache. From the fifth to the fifteenth day, there is fever, swollen lymph glands, and a sore throat.[30] By the second week, 50 to 70 percent of those infected have an enlarged spleen, 10 to 15 percent have jaundice, and 5 to 15 percent have a skin rash, a pinkish flush to the cheeks, and puffy eyelids.[30]

Care Care of mononucleosis is supportive and symptomatic. In many cases the athlete with this disease may resume easy training in 3 weeks after the onset of illness if (1) the spleen is not markedly enlarged or painful; (2) the athlete is without a fever; (3) liver function tests are normal; and (4) the sore throat and any other complications have been resolved.[30]

The spleen should not be enlarged when the athlete returns to practice and competition.

Anemia in Athletes

Iron-Deficiency Anemia

Cause of Condition Iron deficiency is the most common form of true anemia among athletes. It occurs as the result of low levels of **hemoglobin** (the oxygen-carrying molecules in blood) and also of red blood cells (hematocrit). For men, iron deficiency is usually caused by blood loss in the gastrointestinal tract. For women, the most common causes are menstruation and not taking in enough iron in the diet. Athletes who are vegetarians might lack iron.[34]

hemoglobin Molecules that carry oxygen in blood.

Symptoms of Condition In the first stages of iron deficiency, the athlete's performance begins to decline. The athlete may complain of feeling tired and lethargic. During training, there may also be complaints of muscle fatigue and nausea. Athletes with mild iron-deficiency anemia may exhibit some mild impairment in their maximum performance.[34]

Care The athlete with symptoms of anemia should be sent to a physician for blood work to determine the level of hemoglobin and the hematocrit. It is important to differentiate anemia from mononucleosis because symptoms are similar. Some ways that athletes can manage iron deficiency are to (1) follow a proper diet, including more red meat or dark chicken; (2) avoid coffee or tea, which hamper iron absorption from grains; (3) ingest vitamin C sources, which enhance iron absorption; and (4) take an iron supplement.[34]

Sickle-Cell Anemia

Cause of Condition Sickle-cell anemia is a chronic hereditary anemia. The red blood cell with an abnormal sickle shape has less potential for transporting oxygen and is more fragile than normal cells. A sickle cell's life span is 15 to 25 days, compared to the 120-day life span of a normal red cell; this short life of the sickle cell can produce severe anemia in individuals with acute sickle-cell anemia.[11] Approximately 35 percent of the black population in the United States has this condition; 8 to 13 percent are not anemic but carry this trait in their genes (sicklemia). The person with the sickle-cell trait may participate in sports and never encounter problems until symptoms are brought on by some unusual circumstance.

Symptoms of Condition An athlete may never experience any complications from having the sickle-cell trait. However, a sickle-cell crisis can be brought on by exposure to high altitudes or by elevated body temperature. Crisis symptoms include fever, severe fatigue, skin pallor, muscle weakness, and severe pain in the limbs and abdomen. Abdominal pain in the right upper quadrant is somewhat common. The athlete may also experience headache and convulsions.[11]

Care In the past few years, the NCAA has begun requiring sickle-cell testing for Division I student-athletes to be tested for the trait, show proof they have been tested previously, or opt out of the test by signing a written release. Treatment of a sickle-cell crisis under the supervision of a physician is usually symptomatic. The physician may elect to give anticoagulants and analgesics for pain.

Diabetes

Cause of Condition Diabetes is a complex hereditary disease in which blood sugar (glucose) is abnormally high. With diabetes there is abnormal metabolism of carbohydrates and thus there are elevated levels of glucose in the blood and urine. This occurs due to the inability of the pancreas

to produce or respond to the hormone insulin, which helps glucose move from the blood into a cell.[46]

Diabetes may be classified as either *prediabetes*, *Type 1*, or *Type 2*. With prediabetes blood glucose levels are too high to be considered normal but not high enough to be labeled as diabetes. An individual with prediabetes has a higher risk of developing diabetes in the future, as well as a higher risk of heart disease. In Type 1 diabetes the pancreas produces little or no insulin because insulin-producing cells in the pancreas are destroyed by the immune system. With Type 2, which is more common than Type 1, the pancreas produces insulin, occasionally at a level higher than normal, but the body develops resistance to the effects of insulin, so there is insufficient insulin to meet the needs of the body. Type 1 diabetes can develop during childhood or adolescence, although it can occur at any age, while Type 2 diabetes most often occurs in people older than 40.

Symptoms of Diabetes Symptoms of Type 1 diabetes develop suddenly and may include dry mouth, increased thirst, frequent urination, hunger after eating, fatigue, blurred vision, and unexplained weight loss. Symptoms of Type 2 diabetes develop gradually and in addition to those listed for Type 1 include slow healing sores, itching of the skin, numbness or tingling in the hands and feet, irritability, recent weight gain, and frequent infections.

A1C is a blood test for prediabetes and Type 2 diabetes that measures average blood glucose, or blood sugar, level over the past 3 months. This test is different from the blood sugar checks that people with diabetes do every day. The A1C test result is given in percentages. The higher the percentage, the higher blood sugar levels have been. A normal A1C level is below 5.7 percent. Prediabetes is between 5.7 to 6.4 percent. Type 2 diabetes is above 6.5 percent.[46]

Care Many diabetics participate effectively in almost all sports. Because the key to the control of diabetes is the control of blood sugar, the athlete must constantly juggle food intake, insulin, and exercise to maintain blood sugar in its proper range if he or she is to perform at optimal levels. Diet, exercise, and insulin are the major factors in the everyday lifestyle of the diabetic athlete, who out of necessity must develop an ordered and specific living pattern to cope with the demands of daily existence and strenuous physical activity.[46]

Diabetic athletes engaging in vigorous physical activity should eat before exercising and, if the exercise is protracted, should have hourly glucose supplementation. As a rule, the insulin dosage is not changed, but food intake is increased. The response of diabetics varies among individuals and depends on many variables. Although there are some hazards, with proper medical evaluation and close supervision by a physician, diabetics can feel free to engage in most physical activities.[46]

Epilepsy

Cause of Condition Epilepsy is not a disease but is a symptom manifested by a large number of underlying disorders.[6] Some types of epilepsy involve a genetic predisposition and a low threshold to having seizures. In others, altered brain metabolism or a history of injury may be the cause.

Individuals who have daily or weekly seizures may be prohibited from collision sports.

Each person with epilepsy must consider whether he or she should engage in competitive sports.[6] The general recommendation is that an individual who has daily or even weekly major seizures should not participate in collision sports. This prohibition is not because a hit in the head necessarily triggers a seizure, but because unconsciousness during participation could result in a serious injury. If the seizures are properly controlled by medication or occur only during sleep, little if any sports restriction should be imposed except for scuba diving, swimming alone, or participation in activities at some height.[25]

Symptoms of Condition Epilepsy is defined as "a recurrent disorder of cerebral function characterized by a sudden, brief attack of altered consciousness, motor activity, sensory phenomena, or inappropriate behavior."[6] A seizure can range from extremely brief episodes (petit mal seizures) to major episodes (grand mal seizures), unconsciousness, and tonic-clonic muscle contractions.[25]

Care The athlete commonly takes an anticonvulsant medication that is specific for the type and degree of seizures that occur. On occasion, an athlete may experience some undesirable side effects from drug therapy, such as drowsiness, restlessness, nystagmus, nausea, vomiting, problems with balance, skin rash, or other adverse reactions.[25]

When an athlete with epilepsy becomes aware of an impending seizure, he or she should immediately sit or lie down to avoid injury. When a seizure occurs without warning, the following steps should be taken:[25]

- Be emotionally composed.
- If possible, cushion the athlete's fall.
- Keep the athlete away from surrounding objects that may cause injury.
- Loosen restricting clothing.
- Do not try to force anything between the athlete's teeth.
- Allow the athlete to awaken normally after the seizure.

Meningitis

Cause of Condition Meningitis is an inflammation of the meninges, or membranes, that surround the spinal cord and brain that is caused by infection, usually from the meningococcus bacteria. Bacteria may enter the central nervous system through the nose or throat following infections of the ear, throat, or respiratory tract. The bacteria get into the meninges, and inflammation spreads to the adjacent nervous tissue, causing swelling of the brain, enlargement of the ventricles, and hemorrhage of the brain stem. Meningitis is a serious disease in children; it usually occurs between the ages of 3 months and 2 years. It is also common among college students living in dormitories.[35]

Athletes should not share water bottles because of the chances of transmitting meningitis.

Symptoms of Condition Symptoms include a high fever, stiff neck, intense headache, and sensitivity to light and sound, and they progress to vomiting, convulsions, and coma.[35]

Care A vaccine is available to help prevent meningitis. However, if the symptoms of meningitis appear, immediately get the athlete to a physician. The cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) must be analyzed for bacteria and the presence of white blood cells. CSF is taken through a puncture in the lumbar area, or spinal tap. If meningococcus bacteria are identified, isolation is necessary for at least 24 hours due to their highly contagious nature. Intravenous antibiotics must begin immediately. Because of the severity of this condition, the patient should be monitored and treated in an intensive care unit.[35]

Hypertension (High Blood Pressure)

Cause of Condition Hypertension is classified as primary, or essential, and secondary. Primary hypertension accounts for 90 percent of all cases and has no disease associated with it. Secondary hypertension is related to a specific underlying cause, such as kidney disorder, overactive adrenal glands (increased blood volume), hormone-producing tumor, narrowing of the aorta, pregnancy, and medications (oral contraceptives, cold remedies, etc.). The presence of prolonged high blood pressure increases the chances of premature mortality and morbidity due to such causes as coronary artery disease, congestive heart failure, and stroke.[3]

Hypertension may be a factor that excludes players from sports participation.

Symptoms of Condition Primary hypertension is usually asymptomatic until complications occur.[1] High blood pressure may cause dizziness, flushed appearance, headache, fatigue, epistaxis, and nervousness.

Care The upper range of normal blood pressure is a systolic pressure of 120 mm/Hg and a diastolic pressure of 80 mm/Hg. The risk of death from heart disease and stroke begins to rise at blood pressures as low as 115 over 75, and it doubles for each 20 over 10 mm/Hg increase. Blood pressure is classified as follows: normal—less than 120/less than 80 mm/Hg; prehypertension—120–139/80–89 mm/Hg; stage 1 hypertension—140–159/90–99 mm/Hg; stage 2 hypertension—at or greater than 160/at or greater than 100 mm/Hg (Table 23–1).[3] Medication is not recommended for those with prehypertension unless it is required by another condition, such as diabetes or chronic kidney disease. However, those with prehypertension should make any needed lifestyle changes, including losing excess weight, becoming physically active, limiting alcoholic

TABLE 23–1 Classifying Blood Pressure

Blood Pressure Classification	Systolic (mm/Hg)		Diastolic (mm/Hg)
Normal	Less than 120	and	Less than 80
Prehypertension	120–139	or	80–89
High			
Stage 1	140–159	or	90–99
Stage 2	160 or higher	or	100 or higher

TABLE 23–2 Some Infectious Viral Diseases[21]

Disease	Sites Involved	Signs of Conditions	Care	Prevention
Measles (rubeola)	Skin, respiratory tract, and conjunctivae	Appearance—like common cold with fever, cough, conjunctivitis, photophobia, and spots in throat, followed by skin rash	Bed rest and use of smoked glasses; symptomatic	Vaccine available
German measles (rubella)	Skin, respiratory tract, and conjunctivae	Cold symptoms, skin rash, and swollen lymph nodes behind ear	Symptomatic	Vaccine available; gamma globulin given in postexposure situations
Chicken pox (varicella)	Trunk; then face, neck, and limbs	Mild cold symptoms followed by appearance of vesicles	Symptomatic	Vaccine available, including zoster immune globulin (ZIG) or varicellazoster immune globulin (VZIG)
Mumps (epidemic parotiditis)	Salivary glands	Headache, drowsiness, fever, abdominal pain, pain during chewing and swallowing, swelling of neck under jaw	Symptomatic	Temporary immunization by virus vaccine
Influenza (flu)	Respiratory tract	Aching of low back, generalized aching, chills, headache, fever, and bronchitis	Symptomatic	Moderate temporary protection from polyvalent influenza virus
Cold (coryza)	Respiratory tract	Mild fever, headache, chills, and nasal discharge	Symptomatic	Possible help from vitamins and/or cold vaccine; avoid exposure
Infectious mononucleosis	Trunk	Sore throat, fever, skin rash, general aching, and swelling of lymph glands	Symptomatic	None; avoid extreme fatigue

beverages, quitting smoking, and following a heart-healthy eating plan. It is recommended that those who have Stage 1 or 2 hypertension should also be on medication.[3]

Common Contagious Viral Diseases

It is not within the scope of this text to describe in detail all the various infectious diseases to which athletes may be prone. However, on occasion the athlete may exhibit recognizable manifestations of such a disease. There are signs that might indicate a contagious viral disease (Table 23–2). When indications of a contagious disease are present, the athlete should be referred to a physician without delay.[23]

CANCER

Testicular Cancer

Cause of Condition Testicular cancer is the most common cancer in American males between the ages of 15 and 34. Although the exact cause of testicular cancer is unknown, several factors seem

to increase risk, including a past medical history of undescended testicle(s), abnormal testicular development, low levels of male hormones, sterility, development of previous testicular cancer, or family history of testicular cancer. Cancer usually affects only one testicle.[17]

Symptoms of Condition Testicular cancer can result in pain or discomfort in a testicle or the scrotum, a lump or enlargement in either testicle, swelling or sudden collection of fluid in the scrotum, a feeling of heaviness in the scrotum, a dull ache in the abdomen or groin, unexplained fatigue, and/or enlargement or tenderness of the breasts.[17]

Care Testicular cancer is highly treatable when diagnosed early. Depending on the type and stage of testicular cancer, a patient may receive one of several treatments, including surgical removal of the testicle, chemotherapy or radiation therapy, or a combination. Regular testicular self-examinations can help identify dangerous growths early, when the chance for successful treatment of testicular cancer is highest.[17]

Breast Cancer

Cause of Condition Breast cancer is the most common type of cancer in women and the second leading cause of death by cancer in women. Breast cancer may occur at any age, though the risk of breast cancer increases with age. Family history has long been known to be a risk factor for breast cancer. The risk is highest if the affected relative developed breast cancer at a young age, had cancer in both breasts, or if she is a close relative. Hormonal influences play a role in the development of breast cancer. The most common place for breast cancer to metastasize is into the lymph nodes under the arm or to the brain, the bones, and the liver.[28]

Symptoms of Condition In the early stages, breast cancer usually has no symptoms and is not painful. Quite often, breast cancer is discovered before symptoms are present, either by feeling a lump on the breast or in the armpit or by finding an abnormality on mammography.[28]

Care Self breast exams should be done frequently. Not all lumps are malignant but all should be evaluated by a physician who may use mammogram, MRI, ultrasound, or biopsy. If a malignancy is found, surgery is the primary treatment for breast cancer. Additional treatments may include radiation therapy, chemotherapy, or hormonal therapy.[28]

MENSTRUAL IRREGULARITIES AND THE FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

During the prepubertal period, girls are the equal of, and are often superior to, boys of the same age in activities requiring speed, strength, and endurance. The difference between males and females is not readily apparent until after puberty. At puberty, males begin to exhibit a slow, gradual increase in strength, speed, and endurance.

During the prepubertal period, girls are the equal of, and are often superior to, boys of the same age in activities requiring speed, strength, and endurance.

Menarche, the onset of the menses, normally occurs between the tenth and the seventeenth year, and the majority of girls enter it between 13 and 15 years of age. There is some indication that strenuous training and competition may delay the onset of menarche. The greatest delay is related to higher-caliber competition. The late-maturing girl commonly has longer legs, narrower hips, and less adiposity and body weight for her height, all of which are more conducive to sports.[41]

The onset of menarche may be delayed by strenuous training and competition.

As interest and participation in girls' and women's sports grow, the various myths that have surrounded female participation and the effects of participation on menarche, menstruation, and childbirth are gradually being dispelled. The effects of sustained and strenuous training and competition on the menstrual cycle and the effects of menstruation on performance, however, still cannot be fully explained.

Menstrual Irregularities

Menarche may be delayed in highly physically active women. **Amenorrhea** (absence of menses) and *oligomenorrhea* (diminished flow) have been common in professional female ballet dancers, gymnasts, and long-distance runners.[41] Runners who decrease training, because of an injury for example, often report a return of regular menses. Weight gain together with less intense

amenorrhea (amen-oh-ree-ah) Absence or suppression of menstruation.

exercise also is reported to reverse amenorrhea and oligomenorrhea. Because these irregularities may or may not be normal aspects of thinness and hard physical training, it is advisable that a physician be consulted. To date, there is no indication that these conditions adversely affect reproduction. Almost any type of menstrual disorder can be caused by overly stressful and demanding sports activity—amenorrhea, dysmenorrhea, menorrhagia (excessive menstruation), oligomenorrhea, polymenorrhea (abnormal frequent menstruation), irregular periods, or any combination of these.[41]

Dysmenorrhea Dysmenorrhea (painful menstruation) apparently is prevalent among more active women; however, it is inconclusive whether specific sports participation can alleviate or produce dysmenorrhea. For women with moderate to severe dysmenorrhea, gynecological consultation is warranted to rule out a pathological condition.[41]

Dysmenorrhea is caused by ischemia (a lack of normal blood flow to the pelvic organs) or by a possible hormonal imbalance. This syndrome, which is identified by cramps, nausea, lower abdominal pain, headache, and, on occasion, emotional lability, is the most common menstrual disorder. Physicians usually prescribe mild to vigorous exercises that help ameliorate dysmenorrhea. Physicians also generally advise a continuance of the usual sports participation during the menstrual period, provided the performance level of the individual does not drop below her customary level of ability. Among athletes, swimmers have the highest incidence of dysmenorrhea; it occurs most often, quite probably, as the result of strenuous sports participation during the menses. Generally, oligomenorrhea, amenorrhea, and irregular or scanty flow are more common in sports that require strenuous exertion over a long period. A great deal of variability exists among female athletes with regard to the menstrual pattern and its effect on physical performance. Each individual must learn to make adjustments to her lifestyle that permit her to function effectively and efficiently with a minimum of discomfort or restriction.[41]

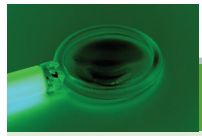
Women who have moderate to severe dysmenorrhea require examination by a physician.

The Female Athletic Triad

A young female athlete, driven to excel in her chosen sport and pressured to fit a specific athletic image to reach her goals, is at risk for the development of the *female athletic triad*.[24] It is a combination of three medical disorders including *disordered eating*, *amenorrhea*, and *osteoporosis*, a condition marked by softening and decreased density of the bones.[24] *Focus Box 23–6* identifies lifestyle habits that may place a woman at risk for female athletic triad.

Disordered eating can include any combination of anorexia, bulimia, binge eating, and/or excessive exercise. It can lead to malnutrition, which obviously has a negative impact on the ability of the female to perform athletically.[24] In addition, chronic fatigue, compromise of the immune system, and often depression have been associated with disordered eating. Certainly disordered eating can lead to serious illness and even death.[24]

Amenorrhea is the absence of the menstrual cycle for more than 6 months. Normal hormonal cycles stop when body weight is too low. Normal estrogen levels are essential for bones to use calcium. A decrease in estrogen levels also interferes with the activity of bone-producing cells, which eventually causes the bones to become weak and increases the likelihood of stress fracture.[24]



FOCUS BOX 23–6

Identifying a woman at risk for female athletic triad

- Compulsive exercise for more than 1 hour a day beyond that normally required as part of practice and competition.
- Cannot skip a day of exercise.
- Restricts the amounts and kind of foods consumed.
- Eats alone most of the time.
- Thinks and talks a lot about food and body weight.
- Seems depressed.
- Has excessive injuries related to activity.
- Irregular or absent menstrual periods.

23–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A female athlete has been diagnosed as having both an eating disorder and amenorrhea.

? Why may these two medical disorders eventually be associated with osteoporosis?

Osteoporosis includes not only bone loss but also new bone formation. Fractures can occur in the hip, spine, foot, or other sites without any visible evidence.[24]

The effects of female athletic triad can be reversed by returning to normal exercise and eating patterns that allow for return of normal menstrual periods, thus preventing further bone loss.[24]

Contraceptives

Female athletes have been known to take extra oral contraceptive pills to delay menstruation during competition. This practice is not recommended because the pills should be taken for 21 days, followed by a 7-day break. There are now birth control pills available that allow the female to reduce the number of periods that she has each year.[29] Side effects range from nausea, vomiting, fluid retention, and amenorrhea to the extreme effects of hypertension and double vision. Some oral contraceptives make women hypersensitive to the sun. Any use of oral contraceptives related to physical performance should be under the express direction and control of a physician. However, oral contraceptive use is acceptable for females with no medical problems who have coitus at least twice a week. New low-dose preparations, containing less than 50 mg of estrogen, add negligible risks for the healthy woman.[29]

A number of other contraceptive options are available to female athletes such as an intrauterine device (IUD) inserted into the uterus, one type made of copper that lasts for 10 to 12 years and another type which releases the hormone progestin that lasts for 3 years; the NuvaRing, inserted into the vagina for 3 weeks and then removed for a week; a birth-control shot that lasts for 3 months; a birth-control implant that is a match-sized rod inserted into the upper arm and that lasts for 3 years; and the transdermal birth-control patch, which adheres to the skin and must be changed every 7 days.[29]

Exercise During Pregnancy

There is no evidence that mild to moderate exercise during pregnancy is harmful to fetal growth and development or causes reduced fetal mass, increased perinatal or neonatal mortality, or physical or mental retardation. It has been found, however, that extreme exercise may lower birth weight. Many females compete during pregnancy with no ill effects. Most physicians, although advocating moderate activity during this period, believe that especially vigorous performance, particularly in activities with severe body contact, heavy jarring, or falls, should be avoided. Contraindications to exercise include the following:

- Pregnancy-induced hypertension
- Preterm rupture of membranes
- Preterm labor during the prior or current pregnancy or both
- Incompetent cervix or cerclage
- Persistent second- or third-trimester bleeding
- Intrauterine growth retardation

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES (STDs)

Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) are of significant concern in sports because many athletes are at an age during which they are more sexually active than they will be at any other time in their lives. Although it is true that STDs do not occur with participation in sport activities, because of the personal relationships that exist among coaches, fitness professionals, health care providers, and athletes, some understanding of how these infections can affect an individual athlete is warranted. Sexually transmitted diseases are infectious diseases that can be contracted through sexual contact.[45] Any of the STDs can potentially be transmitted through sexual contact (including vaginal and anal intercourse and oral–genital contact) with an infected partner who may or may not show any signs or symptoms. STDs may be caused by bacteria or viruses. Bacterial infections such as gonorrhea, syphilis, and chlamydia may be cured with antibiotics in the majority of cases. Serious health problems are prevented if these infections are diagnosed and treated early. Viral infections such as herpes, genital warts, and HIV are much more difficult to treat, and in some cases no cure exists.[45]

STDs do not go away by themselves, and in many cases relatively quick, painless treatments are available. No one is immune to STDs.[45] Everyone who is sexually active can get or transmit an STD. The current trend is to emphasize prevention through “safer sex” practices and treatment of STDs rather than focus on the ethics of sexual behavior. Most important, some of these diseases have the potential to cause serious, long-term health problems, even death.

Table 23–3 discusses the common STDs, their symptoms, treatment, and potential effects.

TABLE 23–3 Sexually Transmitted Diseases[6]

STD	Signs	Care	Possible Problems
Chlamydia	About 75% of infected people have no symptoms. However, there may be a mild mucuslike discharge from the genitals or stinging when urinating. Also, there may be pain in the testicles (men) or abdomen (women).	Infected persons and their sexual partners must be tested and treated with antibiotics.	Painful infections of the reproductive organs, which may lead to infertility in both men and women.
Genital herpes	Sores around genitals or anus, often with small, painful blisters. Some people have no symptoms but are still infected and contagious.	Infected persons should avoid intimate sexual contact while sores persist. Acyclovir capsules or ointment may be helpful but will not cure herpes.	May contribute to cervical cancer and be transmitted to infants during childbirth.
Crab lice	Visible, blood-sucking lice in pubic hair. Causes itching. Eggs (nits) attached to hair shafts.	Treatments to kill lice. Recent sexual partners, clothing, and bed linen should be treated.	None.
Genital warts	Usually painless growths around the genitals or anus occur about 1–3 months after contact. In rare cases, growths may itch, burn, or bleed, or may not appear for years.	Chemical treatment, liquid nitrogen, laser beam, or surgery. May return after treatment.	May obstruct the urethra or complicate vaginal delivery in childbirth; may be connected to cervical cancer.
Trichomoniasis	Among women, symptoms may include a vaginal discharge, discomfort during sexual intercourse, abdominal pain, pain when urinating, and itching in the genital area. Most men have no symptoms, but some men may experience a penile discharge, painful urinating, or a “tingly” feeling in the penis.	Infected persons and their partners are treated with antibiotics.	If untreated, may lead to bladder and urethral infections in men and women.
Gonorrhea	Men may have a creamy puslike penile discharge and pain when urinating, or they may have no symptoms. Women may have vaginal discharge and pain when urinating, but often have no symptoms.	Infected persons and their sexual partners must be tested and treated with antibiotics.	If untreated, can cause arthritis, dermatitis, heart problems, and reproductive problems in both men and women. Can be transmitted to infants at birth, causing blindness.
Syphilis	Painless ulcer (chancre) at point of contact, usually penile shaft, around vaginal opening, or anus. Secondary stage may include rash or swollen lymph nodes.	Infected persons and their sexual partners must be tested and treated with antibiotics.	If untreated, may affect brain or heart, or even be fatal. Pregnant women can transmit to unborn infants.
AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome)	Increased susceptibility to common infections and unusual cancers. Most people infected with the virus may show no symptoms for many years but are still contagious.	No current proven treatment. Avoid sexual contact or practice safe sex.	Full-blown AIDS almost always is fatal. Outlook for carriers of the virus is uncertain.

For more information on HIV/AIDS, see Chapter 9.

SUMMARY

- Most common skin infections in athletes are caused by viruses, bacteria, and fungi. Viral infections include herpes simplex (e.g., the cold sore) and herpes zoster. The two most common types of bacterial infections are streptococcus and staphylococcus. Ringworm, or tinea, is the fungus infection commonly attacking all areas of the body; tinea pedis (athlete's foot) is the most common.
- The common cold, sinusitis, sore throat, hay fever, and asthma are respiratory tract illnesses that can adversely affect the athlete. Asthma can be chronic (e.g., bronchial) or induced by physical activity. Care of the athlete who is having an acute asthmatic attack requires an understanding of the early symptoms and signs and responding accordingly.
- A number of conditions of the digestive system, such as diarrhea, vomiting, constipation, and gastroenteritis, commonly affect the athletic population.
- Anemia is a problem for some athletes. Iron-deficiency anemia is a condition found most often in women. In an athlete with iron-deficiency anemia, the red blood cells are either too small or too large, and hemoglobin is decreased. The athlete with sickle-cell anemia may have an adverse reaction at high altitudes, where the sickle-shaped red blood cell is unable to transport oxygen adequately.
- Diabetes is a complex hereditary disease in which blood sugar (glucose) is abnormally high. With diabetes there is abnormal metabolism of carbohydrates and thus there are elevated levels of glucose in the blood and urine. This occurs due to the inability of the pancreas to produce or respond to the hormone insulin.
- Epilepsy is defined as "a recurrent disorder of cerebral function characterized by sudden, brief attacks of altered consciousness, motor activity, sensory phenomena, or inappropriate behavior." A coach must recognize that an athlete is going into a seizure and be able to provide immediate care.
- The athlete with high blood pressure may have to be carefully monitored by the physician. Hypertension may require the avoidance of heavy resistive activities.
- Because communicable viral diseases such as German measles, mumps, and infectious mononucleosis can infect many athletes on a team, early recognition is necessary. When such a disease is suspected, the athlete should be isolated from other athletes and immediately referred to a physician for diagnosis.
- The highly active female may have menstrual irregularities, including dysmenorrhea, amenorrhea, or oligomenorrhea. Female athletic triad is a combination of amenorrhea, disordered eating, and osteoporosis.
- Many female athletes compete during pregnancy with no ill effects. There is no indication that mild to moderate exercise during pregnancy is harmful to fetal development.
- Sexually transmitted diseases have their highest incidence among younger, sexually active persons. Because most athletes are in this high-risk age group, coaches should be concerned about the spread of these diseases. Suggestions to avoid these infections are safe sex, which involves the use of a condom or the elimination of multiple partners, and complete abstinence from sexual intercourse. The sexually transmitted infections with the highest incidence among the young athletic population are chlamydia, genital herpes, trichomoniasis, genital warts, crab lice, gonorrhea, and syphilis.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

23-1 Tinea pedis causes severe itching underneath and between the toes and on the sole of the foot. A red, white, or grayish scaling appearance may also be present. Scratching can cause infection. Generally, this condition can be prevented by wearing clean, dry socks and making certain that the feet and toes are dry following bathing.

23-2 It appears that the athlete is exhibiting signs and symptoms associated with the flu. In general, the flu is caused by a viral infection, and thus the illness must simply be allowed to run its course while dealing with it symptomatically.

23-3 The female athletic triad includes some form of eating disorder, amenorrhea, and osteoporosis. The eating disorder causes amenorrhea, in which menstruation stops, thus reducing the production of estrogen, which ultimately causes a loss of calcium from the bone.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. Describe the organisms underlying the common skin infections seen in athletes. Name a disease caused by each one.
2. Invite a dermatologist or other professional to speak to the class about skin conditions, skin disease, and their care. He or she may wish to discuss specific conditions

that pose a serious threat to the athlete's health and to others.
3. Describe the anemias that most often affect the athlete. How should each be managed?
4. What are the most common conditions related to the digestive system?
5. What is diabetes mellitus? What is the difference between diabetic coma and insulin shock? How is each managed?
6. What is epilepsy? What should be done for the athlete during a seizure? After it?
7. What is hypertension, and how should it be addressed in athletics?
8. In a sports setting, what is the indication that an athlete has a contagious disease?
9. Discuss menstrual irregularities that occur in highly active athletes. Why do they occur? How should they be managed? How do they relate to reproduction? What is the female athletic triad, and how can it be prevented?

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Balcerek, T., & Lutomski, P. 2015. Asthma in athletes and the use of asthma treatment. *Trends in Sport Sciences* 22(1):13–18.
2. Bathala, S., & Eccles, R. 2013. A review on the mechanism of sore throat in tonsillitis. *Journal of Laryngology & Otology* 127(3):227–232.
3. Berge, H., & Isern, C. 2015. Blood pressure and hypertension in athletes: A systematic review. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 49**:**716–723.
4. Braun T., & Kahanov, L. 2016. CA-MRSA infection incidence and care in high school and intercollegiate athletics. *Medicine and Science in Sport and Exercise* 48(8):1530–1539.
5. Brukner, P. 2016. Gastrointestinal symptoms during exercise. In P. Brukner & B. Clarsen (eds.), *Brukner and Kahn's clinical sports medicine*, 5th ed. Sydney: McGraw-Hill.
6. Brukner, P. 2016. The athlete with epilepsy. In P. Brukner & B. Clarsen (eds.), *Brukner and Kahn's clinical sports medicine*, 5th ed. Sydney: McGraw-Hill.
7. Collins, C. 2012. Infectious disease outbreaks in competitive sports, 2005–2010. *Journal of Athletic Training* 47(5):516.
8. Dawson, A. 2012. Infectious skin diseases: A review and needs assessment. *Dermatologic clinics* 30(1):141–151.
9. de Oliveira, E. 2014. Gastrointestinal complaints during exercise: Prevalence, etiology, and nutritional recommendations. *Sports Medicine* 44(1):79–85.
10. Diduch, B. 2017. Gastrointestinal conditions in female athletes. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 36(4):655–670.
11. Eichner, E. 2011. Sickle cell considerations in athletes. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 30(3):537–549.
12. Estes, K. 2015. Skin infections in high school wrestlers: A nurse practitioner's guide to diagnosis, treatment and return to participation. *Journal of the American Association of Nurse Practitioners* 27(1):4–10.
13. Fashner, J. 2012. Treatment of the common cold in children and adults. *American Family Physician* 86(2):153.
14. Gleeson, M., & Pynw, D. 2016. Respiratory inflammation and infections in high-performance athletes. *Immunology and Cell Biology* 94:124–131.
15. Gnann, J., & Whitley, R. 2016. Genital herpes. *New England Journal of Medicine* 375:666–674.
16. Grce, M. 2014. Human papillomavirus–associated diseases. *Clinics in Dermatology* 32(2):253–258.
17. Hanna, N., & Einhorn, L. 2014. Testicular cancer: Discoveries and updates. *New England Journal of Medicine* 317:2005–2016.
18. Hay R. 2016. Fungal infections of the skin. In J. Ólafsson & R. Hay (eds.), *Antibiotic and antifungal therapies in dermatology*. New York, NY: Springer.
19. Harris, M. 2011). Infectious disease in athletes. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 10(2):84–89.
20. Hartman-Adams, H. 2014. Impetigo: Diagnosis and treatment. *American Family Physician* 90(4):229–235.
21. Hull, J. 2012. Managing respiratory problems in athletes. *Clinical Medicine* 12(4):351–356.
22. Ilkit, M., & Merat, D. 2013. Tinea pedis: The etiology and global epidemiology in a common fungal infection. *Critical Reviews in Microbiology* 41(3):374–388.
23. Jaworski, C. 2011. Infectious disease. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 30(3):575–590.
24. Joy, E., & Nattiv, A. 2017. Clearance and return to play for the female athlete triad: Clinical guidelines, clinical judgment, and evolving evidence. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 16(6):382–385.
25. Knowles, B. 2012. Athletes with seizure disorders. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 11(1):16–20.
26. Lautermilch, J., & Doyle-Baker, P. 2014. The athlete and the flu vaccine: Melodrama, common sense or ignorance. *Journal of Science and Medicine in Sport* 18(1):54.
27. Likness, L. 2011. Common dermatologic infections in athlete and return to play guidelines. *Journal of the American Osteopathic Association* 111(6):373–379.
28. Lynch, B. 2011. Physical activity and breast cancer prevention. In B. Lynch (ed.), *Physical activity and cancer* (pp. 13–42). Heidelberg: Springer Berlin.
29. Mansour, D. 2010. Efficacy of contraceptive methods: A review of the literature. *European Journal of Contraception & Reproductive Health Care* 15(1):4–16.
30. Moran, B., & Corris, E. 2017. Infectious mononucleosis in an athlete: Another potentially life-threatening complication. *International Journal of Athletic Therapy & Training* 22(6):28–32.
31. Navarro, R. 2013. Nasal issues in athletes. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 12(1):22–27.
32. Nazari, M., & Sekawi, Z. 2015. Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: A systematic review. *Reviews in Medical Microbiology* 26(1):1–7.
33. Nomikos, N. 2015. Is the naming of herpes simplex gladiatorum correct? *British Journal of Medicine and Medical Research* 5(11):1441–1446.
34. Parks, R., & Hetzel, S. 2017. Iron deficiency and anemia among collegiate athletes: A retrospective chart review. *Medicine and Science in Sport and Exercise* 49(8):1711–1745.
35. Piper, T. 2013. Infectious meningitis: An evidence-based approach to diagnosis. *International Journal of Athletic Therapy & Training* 19(2):8–13.
36. Ruderfer, D. 2015. Herpes simplex viruses 1 and 2. *Pediatrics in Review* 36(2):86–90.
37. Saben, B. 2010. Physician perspective: MRSA in athletes: What athletic trainers and therapists need to know. *International Journal of Athletic Therapy & Training*, 14(6):133.
38. Saladin, K. 2017. *Anatomy and physiology: The unity of form and function*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
39. Schmidt, C. 2016. Pollen overload: Seasonal allergies in a changing climate. *Environmental Health Perspectives* 124(4):A70–A75.
40. Sidiropoulou, M. 2012. Incidence of exercise-induced asthma in adolescent athletes under different training and environmental conditions. *Journal of Strength & Conditioning Research* 26(6):1644–1650.
41. Thein-Nissenbaum, J. 2011. Associations between disordered eating, menstrual dysfunction, and musculoskeletal injury among high school athletes. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy* 41(2):60–69.
42. Wallis, K. 2014. Herpes zoster: When do patients present and who gets antiviral treatment? *Journal of Primary Health Care* 6(2):108–113.
43. Weder, M. 2011. Pulmonary disorders in athletes. *Clinics in Sports Medicine* 30(3):525–536.
44. Weesner, T. 2017. Skin infections: Which student-athletes are at greatest risk? *NASN School Nurse* 32(4):235–237.
45. Workowski, K., & Bolan, G. 2015. Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines. *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report* 64(RR3):1–37.
46. Yardley, J., & Colberg, S. 2017. Update on management of type 1 diabetes and type 2 diabetes. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 16(1):38–44.
47. Zinder, S., et al. 2010. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Skin diseases. *Journal of Athletic Training* 45(4):411–428.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Flannigan, K., & Cuppett, M. 2017. *General medical conditions in the athlete*. St. Louis, MO: Elsevier Mosby.

Provides a comprehensive discussion of general medical conditions and associated pathologies in the athletic population.

McCance, K., & Huethe, S. 2014. *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children*. St. Louis, Mosby.

An excellent reference guide for the health professional on the most common human diseases.

Porter, R. (ed.). 2011. *The Merck manual of medical information: Home Edition*. New York, NY: Merck & Co.

This textbook is one of the classical medicine references available to the health care professional. It covers most medical conditions.

Tabor's cyclopedic medical dictionary. 2017. Philadelphia, PA: F.A. Davis.

Despite the dictionary format, this volume contains a wealth of valuable information on various health conditions.

WEBSITES

American Academy of Dermatology: www.aad.org

The American Academy of Dermatology is committed to advancing the science of promoting a lifetime of healthier skin, hair, and nails.

American Board of Obstetrics and Gynecology: www.abog.org

American Gastroenterological Association: www.gastro.org

Includes information for physicians and the public about digestive disease symptoms, treatments, and research.

American Diabetes Association: www.diabetes.org

This site offers the latest information on diabetes and living with the disease.

American Epilepsy Society: www.aesnet.org

The American Epilepsy Society promotes research and education for professionals dedicated to the prevention, treatment, and cure of epilepsy.

Asthma and Allergy Foundation of America (AAFA): www.aafa.org

Asthma and Allergy Foundation of America (AAFA) is dedicated to helping people with asthma and allergic diseases through education and support for research.

Sexually Transmitted Diseases: www.cdc.gov/std

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

©William E. Prentice

24

Substance Abuse

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Discuss the issue of substance abuse in the athletic and physically active population.
- Identify the signs of substance abuse.
- Describe the effects of performance-enhancing drugs commonly used by athletes.
- Discuss the negative effects of alcohol and tobacco on an athlete's health.
- Identify the primary recreational drugs and their effects.
- Briefly discuss drug-testing programs to identify the substance abuser.

The use of nutritional supplements by athletes to improve performance was discussed in Chapter 5. This chapter focuses on the abuse of a variety of substances, particularly drugs and medications, performance-enhancing drugs, and the negative impact they can potentially have on the health of the athlete.[28]

Certainly, concern about the number of athletes engaging in substance abuse is increasing (*Focus Box 24–1*).[6] Some athletes use performance-enhancing drugs in an attempt to improve performance, whereas others use drugs as a recreational pursuit.[15] The use of performance-enhancing drugs among recreational, middle school, secondary school, collegiate, professional, and Olympic athletes has been much written about and discussed.[20] **Clearly, use and abuse of performance-enhancing drugs has no place in the athletic population.**[17]

PERFORMANCE-ENHANCING DRUGS

In sports medicine, the administration of a drug that is designed to improve the competitor's performance is known as **doping.**[23] Doping has been defined as "the administration or use of substances in any form alien to the body or of physiological substances in abnormal amounts and with abnormal methods by healthy persons with the exclusive aim of attaining an artificial and unfair increase in performance in sports."[12]

doping The administration of a drug that is designed to improve the competitor's performance.

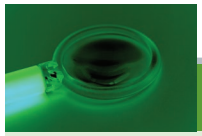
The abuse of illegal substances is no longer the only risk for the athlete. There are many examples of medications prescribed by a physician that are being used to enhance performance in sport.[18,19]

Stimulants

The intention of the athlete when he or she ingests a stimulant may be to increase alertness; reduce fatigue; or in some instances, increase competitiveness; use can produce hostility.[25] Some athletes respond to stimulants with a loss of judgment that may lead to personal injury or injury to others. Amphetamines, caffeine, and cocaine are the stimulant drugs most commonly used in sports.[25]

Amphetamines Amphetamines present an extremely difficult problem in sports because they are commonly found in cold remedies, nasal and ophthalmic decongestants, and most asthma preparations.

Amphetamines are extremely powerful and dangerous drugs. They may be injected, inhaled, or taken as tablets. Amphetamines are among the most abused of the drugs used for enhancing sports performance. In ordinary doses, amphetamines can produce an increased sense of well-being and heightened mental



FOCUS BOX 24–1

Identifying an individual who may be using performance-enhancing drugs

The following are signs of potential abuse:

1. Sudden personality changes
2. Severe mood swings
3. Changing peer groups
4. Decreased interest in leisure activities
5. Worsening grades
6. Disregard for household chores and curfews
7. Feeling of depression most of the time
8. Breakdown in personal hygiene habits
9. Increased sleep and decreased eating
10. Sudden weight loss
11. Lying, cheating, stealing, etc.
12. Defensiveness at the mention of drugs
13. Increased isolation (spends time in room)
14. Deterioration of family relationships
15. Others making observations about negative behavior
16. Constantly missing appointments
17. Falling asleep in class or at work
18. Financial problems
19. Missing assignments or deadlines
20. Diminished productivity

activity—until fatigue sets in (from lack of sleep), accompanied by nervousness, insomnia, and anorexia.[11] In high doses, amphetamines reduce mental activity and impair performance of complicated motor skills. The athlete's behavior may become irrational. The chronic user may get hung up—in other words, become stuck—in a repetitive behavioral sequence that may last for hours, becoming increasingly more irrational. The long-term, or even short-term, use of amphetamines can lead to amphetamine psychosis, manifested by auditory and visual hallucinations and paranoid delusions. Physiologically, high doses of amphetamines can cause abnormal pupillary dilation, increased blood pressure, and hyperthermia.

Athletes believe that amphetamines improve sports performance by promoting quickness and endurance, delaying fatigue, and increasing confidence, thereby causing increased aggressiveness.[25] Studies indicate that there is no improvement in performance, but there is an increased risk of injury, exhaustion, and circulation collapse.

Caffeine Caffeine is found in coffee, tea, cocoa, and cola and is readily absorbed into the body (Table 24–1).[26] It is a central nervous system stimulant and diuretic and also stimulates gastric secretion. One cup of coffee can contain from 100 to 150 mg of caffeine.

TABLE 24–1 Examples of Caffeine-Containing Products

Product	Dose
Coffee (1 cup)	100 mg
Diet Coke (12 oz)	45.6 mg
Diet Pepsi (12 oz)	36.0 mg
No-Doz (1)	100.0 mg
Anacin (1)	32.0 mg
Excedrin (1)	65.0 mg
Midol (1)	32.4 mg
Jolt (12 oz)	200.0 mg
Mountain Dew (12 oz)	54.0 mg

In moderation, caffeine results in wakefulness and mental alertness.[26] In larger amounts and in individuals who ingest caffeine daily, it raises blood pressure and decreases, then increases, the heart rate. It affects coordination, sleep, mood, behavior, and thinking processes. In terms of exercise and sports performance, caffeine is controversial.[30] Like amphetamines, caffeine can affect some athletes by acting as a performance enhancer during prolonged exercise. A habitual user of caffeine who suddenly stops may experience withdrawal, including headache, drowsiness, lethargy, runny nose, irritability, nervousness, depression, and loss of interest in work.[30] Caffeine also acts as a diuretic when hydration is important.[26]

24–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A women's lacrosse player is concerned that she has been chosen for a random drug test later that afternoon. She met her boyfriend for lunch and drank a large cup of espresso. She is worried that she will test positive for a performance-enhancing drug.

? What should she be told to reduce her anxiety about the drug test?

Narcotic Analgesic Drugs

Narcotic analgesic drugs are derived directly or indirectly from opium. Morphine and codeine (methylmorphine) are examples of substances made from opium. Narcotic analgesics are used for the management of moderate to severe pain. They have a high risk of physical and psychological dependency and many other problems stemming from their use. Slight to moderate pain can be effectively dealt with by drugs other than narcotics.[10]

Beta Blockers

In sports, beta blockers have been used by athletes who require steadiness, whose signs of nervousness must be in control while engaging in sports such as

target shooting, sailing, archery, fencing, ski jumping, and luge. Beta blockers relax the blood vessels. This relaxation, in turn, slows heart rate and decreases cardiac output. Therapeutically, beta blockers are used for a variety of cardiac diseases and for treating hypertension.[21]

Diuretics

Diuretics are used for a variety of cardiovascular and respiratory conditions (e.g., hypertension) in which elimination of fluids from tissues is necessary.[22] Sports participants have misused diuretics mainly in two ways: to reduce body weight quickly or to decrease a drug's concentration in the urine (increasing its excretion to avoid the detection of drug misuse). In both cases, there are ethical and health grounds for banning certain classes of diuretics from use during competition.

Anabolic Steroids, Human Growth Hormone, and Androstenedione

Three substances related to increasing muscle build, strength, power, and growth are anabolic steroids, human growth hormone (HGH), and androstenedione.

Anabolic Steroids Androgenic hormones are products of the male testes. Of these hormones, testosterone is the principal one. It possesses the ability to function androgenically (to stimulate male characteristics) and anabolically (through improved protein assimilation, increased muscle mass and weight, general growth, bone maturation, and virility).[16] When prescribed by a physician to improve certain physiological conditions, these drugs have value. In 1984, the American College of Sports Medicine (ACSM) reported that anabolic androgenic steroids taken with an adequate diet could contribute to an increase in body weight and, with a heavy resistance program, to a significant gain in strength. However, in sports, anabolic steroids constitute a major threat to the health of the athlete (*Focus Box 24–2*).[13] Anabolic steroids present an ethical dilemma for the sports world. It is estimated that more than a million young male and female athletes are taking them, with most being purchased through the black market. An estimated 4.1 percent of male and 2.9 percent of female high school students take or have taken anabolic steroids.[7] Also an estimated 1 percent of college students take anabolic steroids (Figure 24–1).[27]

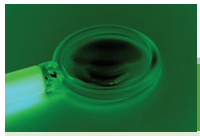
Anabolic steroids are different from corticosteroids, which have anti-inflammatory capabilities.

If these drugs are given to the prepubertal boy, a most certain hazard is a decrease in his ultimate height because of the cessation of long bone growth. Acne, hirsutism, a deepening of the voice in the prepubescent boy, and in some cases, a swelling of the breasts, called *gynecomastia*, are among other androgen effects.[13] The ingestion of steroids by

24–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A high school football player has been taking anabolic steroids to get stronger and faster.

? What are the potential negative side effects of using anabolic steroids?



FOCUS BOX 24–2

Examples of deleterious effects of anabolic steroids

- *Teens*—premature closure of long bones, acne, hirsutism, voice deepening, enlarged mammary glands (gynecomastia) of the male
- *Men*—male pattern baldness, acne, voice deepening, mood swings, aggressive behavior, decreased high-density lipoprotein, increased cholesterol, reduction in size of testicles, reduced testosterone production, changes in libido
- *Women*—female pattern baldness, acne, voice deepening (irreversible), increased facial hair, enlarged clitoris (irreversible), increased libido, menstrual irregularities, increased aggression, decreased body fat, increased appetite, decreased breast size
- *Abuse*—may lead to liver tumors and cancer, heart disease, and hypertension

A B

FIGURE 24–1 Anabolic steroids in either **(A)** injectable or **(B)** pill form are used by both male and female athletes to increase speed, strength, and muscle size. They have many harmful side effects. Source: United States Drug Enforcement Agency

hirsutism (her-soot-ism) Excessive hair growth and/or the presence of hair in unusual places.

females can result in **hirsutism** (excessive hair growth or the presence of hair in unusual places) and a deepening of the voice because of vocal cord alteration. When the dosage is halted, the hirsutism may cease, but the change in the vocal cords is irreversible.[14] As the duration and dosage increase, the possibility of producing androgen effects also increases. Because self-administered overdosage seems to be the pattern of those who use steroids, the preceding statement is most significant. Abuse of these drugs may also lead to cancer of the liver and prostate glands and to heart disease.[1]

Anabolic steroids are most abused in sports that involve strength.[13] Power lifting, the throwing events in track and field, baseball, and American football are some of the sports in which the use of anabolic steroids is a serious problem.[13] Because female athletes are developing the attitude of "win at all costs," their abuse of anabolic steroids is also becoming a major health concern.

Human Growth Hormone Human growth hormone (HGH) is a hormone produced by the pituitary gland. It is released into circulation in a pulsating manner. This release can vary with a person's age and developmental period. A lack of HGH can result in dwarfism. In the past, HGH was in limited supply because it was extracted from cadavers. Now, however, it can be made synthetically and is more available.[29]

Experiments indicate that HGH can increase muscle mass, skin thickness, connective tissues in muscle, and organ weight and can produce lax muscles and ligaments during rapid growth phases. It also increases body length and weight and decreases body fat percentage.[4]

The use of HGH by athletes throughout the world is on the increase because it is more difficult to detect in urine than anabolic steroids are.[29] There is currently a lack of concrete information about the effects of HGH on the athlete who does not have a growth problem. It is known that an overabundance of HGH in the body can lead to premature closure of long-bone growth sites or, conversely, can cause acromegaly, a condition that produces elongation and enlargement of bones of the extremities and thickening of bones and soft tissues of the face.[29] Also associated with acromegaly is diabetes mellitus, cardiovascular disease, goiter, menstrual disorders, decreased sexual desire, and impotence. *It may decrease the life span by up to 20 years.* Like anabolic steroids, HGH presents a serious problem for the sports world. At this time, there is no proof that an increase of HGH combined with weight training contributes to strength and muscle hypertrophy.[4]

Androstenedione Androstenedione is a relatively weak androgen that is produced primarily in the testes.[19] It has been used in humans to produce transient increases in testosterone in males and particularly in females, primarily for the purpose of enhancing athletic performance.[19] To date, there is no scientific evidence or research to support the efficacy or safety of using this performance enhancer.[19] In 2004, the FDA banned its sale, and it is currently illegal to buy or sell androstenedione.

Blood Reinjection (Blood Doping, Blood Packing, and Blood Boosting)

Not only is the use of blood reinjection in competition unethical, but when conducted by nonmedical personnel, it could prove dangerous.

Endurance, acclimatization, and altitude make increased metabolic demands on the body, which responds by increasing blood volume and red blood cells to meet the increased aerobic demands.[5]

Recently, researchers have replicated these physiological responses by removing 900 ml of blood, storing it, and reinfusing it after 6 weeks. The reason for waiting at least 6 weeks before reinfusion is it takes that long for the athlete's body to reestablish a normal hemoglobin and red blood cell concentration. Using this method, endurance performance has been significantly improved. From the standpoint of scientific research, such experimentation has merit and is of interest. However, not only is use of such methods in competition unethical, but when conducted by nonmedical personnel, it could prove to be dangerous, especially when an unmatched donor is used.[5]

There are serious risks with transfusing blood and related blood products. The risks include allergic reactions, kidney damage (if the wrong type of blood is used), fever, jaundice, the possibility of transmitting infectious diseases (viral hepatitis or HIV), or blood overload, resulting in circulatory and metabolic shock.

24-3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A shot-putter comes to you for advice. He wants to increase his muscle mass and admits that he has considered using anabolic steroids. However, he has heard about all of the health problems that anabolic steroid use can create. So he is now thinking about using human growth hormone because he has heard it is safer and won't show up in a drug test.

? What advice will you give him about using any performance-enhancing substance?

RECREATIONAL DRUG ABUSE

Just as it has become a part of the general world, recreational drug use has become a part of the world of sports.[33] Reasons for using these substances may include desire to experiment, temporarily escape from problems, or just be part of a group (peer pressure).[28] For some, recreational drug use often leads to abuse and dependence. There are two general aspects of dependence: psychological and physical. *Psychological dependence* is the drive to repeat the ingestion of a drug to produce pleasure or to avoid discomfort. *Physical dependence* is the state of drug adaptation that manifests itself as the development of tolerance and, when the drug is removed, causes a withdrawal syndrome. The *withdrawal syndrome* consists of an unpleasant physiological reaction when the drug is abruptly stopped. Some drugs that are abused by the athlete overlap with those thought to enhance performance. Examples of drugs that are commonly abused recreationally include alcohol, illegal drugs, and prescription drugs.

Alcohol Use

Alcohol is the most widely used substance of abuse.[2] Alcohol depresses the central nervous system. It is absorbed from the digestive system into the bloodstream very rapidly. An excess causes an increase in the level of alcohol circulating in the blood. As blood alcohol levels continue to increase, predictable signs of intoxication appear. Signs of alcohol abuse in an individual include mood changes, missed practices, isolation, attitude changes, fighting or inappropriate outbursts of violence, changes in appearance, hostility toward authority figures, complaints from family, and changes in peer group.[9] Alcohol has no place in sports participation.[2,9]

Abused Illegal Drugs

Obviously, many drugs are abused in our society. Often referred to as "recreational drugs," these not only are a deterrent to a healthy lifestyle, but their use or possession is illegal as well. Among the more common illegal drugs are marijuana, cocaine, crystal methamphetamine, and ecstasy.[33]

Marijuana When used in small doses, marijuana produces a "high" feeling, a sense of relaxation, and heightened awareness of visual, auditory, and tactile sensations lasting for several hours after use.[3] Currently, the majority of states have legalized the use of marijuana for medical purposes, while only a few states have legalized it for recreational use.

Cocaine Cocaine is a stimulant with effects of short duration. Cocaine use produces immediate feelings of euphoria, excitement, decreased sense of fatigue, and heightened sexual drive. It may be snorted, taken intravenously, or smoked ("free-based"). Crack is a rock-like crystalline form of cocaine that is heated in a small pipe and then inhaled, producing an immediate rush. The initial effects are extremely intense, and because they are pleasurable, users rapidly develop strong psychological dependence, regardless of whether they can afford this expensive habit. An overdose can cause abnormal heart rhythms, which can result in death.[33]

Crystal Methamphetamine This drug is used by individuals of all ages and is popular as a club drug. It is a highly addictive synthetic stimulant that has intense long-lasting euphoric effects. It may be smoked or injected. Crystal methamphetamine use is associated with numerous serious physical problems. The drug can produce psychotic symptoms that persist for months or years after an individual has stopped using it.[33]

Ecstasy Ecstasy is a hallucinogenic stimulant that is usually consumed orally as a pill, although it can also be injected. It can cause euphoria and feelings of well-being. Heavier doses can cause hallucinations, depression, paranoid thinking, and violent, irrational behavior.[33] Some reactions have been reported to persist up to 14 days. Some reactions after taking ecstasy have been reported to persist up to 14 days.

Heroin Heroin is a dangerous opioid drug whose use has seen a significant and alarming increase in recent years. It can be injected, smoked, sniffed, or snorted. Users report an immediate rush of euphoria or pleasure. Heroin is highly addictive, and overdoses can produce life-threatening reactions where the user stops breathing, too often resulting in death.

Abused Prescription Drugs

Certainly the abuse of illegal drugs is a major concern. However, several government agencies have indicated that more people are abusing prescription drugs than the typical illegal drugs discussed previously.[18] A majority of abused prescription drugs are obtained from family and friends, most coming from the home medicine cabinet. But prescription drugs are also sometimes sold on the street like other illegal drugs. The prescription drugs that are commonly abused in the United States fall into several broad categories including pain relievers, depressants, and stimulants.

ADHD Medications The abuse of medications commonly used for treating attention deficit and hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) has become a major cause for concern.[34] These medications usually are amphetamines such as Ritalin, Adderall, and Dexedrine. They stimulate a part of the brain that facilitates concentration and focus. When these medications are taken by individuals who do not have ADHD, common signs and

symptoms include shakiness, rapid speech or movements, difficulty sitting still, difficulty concentrating, lack of appetite, sleep disturbance, and irritability.[34]

OxyContin (Oxycodone) OxyContin is a prescription drug used to treat moderate to severe pain by altering the way the brain and nervous system respond to pain. It has become the most widely abused prescription drug.[32] Tablets may be crushed, then snorted, chewed, or injected to obtain a heroin-like high. It is rare to become addicted to OxyContin when the drug is used as recommended.[18]

DRUG-TESTING PROGRAMS

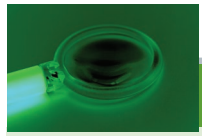
Professional sports leagues, the NCAA, and the United States Anti-Doping Agency (USADA) have clearly established "banned substance" lists and drug-testing programs in response to problems created by drug use among athletes at those levels.[24,31] *Focus Box 24–3* summarizes classes of drugs that are banned by the NCAA and the USADA.

During a drug test, the athlete must first provide positive identification. Then, under direct observation, the athlete must urinate into two separate specimen bottles (labeled A and B), which are sealed and submitted to an official NCAA or USADA testing laboratory for analysis. In the laboratory, specimen A is used for both screening and confirmation tests. A confirmation test uses analysis techniques that are more sensitive and accurate, should a positive test result occur during the screening test. Specimen B is used only when a reconfirmation is needed for a positive test of specimen A. The athlete is then notified of a positive test result and becomes subject to sanctions from either the NCAA or the USADA.[24,31]

Some athletes have conditions or illnesses that require them to take a particular medication. If that medication appears on the prohibited list, the athlete can apply for a therapeutic use exemption (TUE) by completing a form that is available from the USADA, which may give that athlete permission to continue taking the needed medication.[24]

The National Federation of State High School Associations (NFHS) does not currently have a list of banned substances or specific policies on drug testing. It has left the choice of whether to drug test athletes up to individual schools. However, it has provided guidelines for those schools wishing to institute a drug-testing program.[24]

Testing secondary school athletes for drugs has been occurring since the mid-1970s, when efforts to reduce drug use increased. Drug testing among secondary school athletes has been done infrequently and with varying degrees of success. However, court decisions in 1995 removed some hurdles for drug testing of high school athletes. Drug testing can be done for a variety of different drugs. It appears that secondary school drug-testing programs most commonly screen athletes for amphetamines, marijuana, cocaine, opiates, and phencyclidine (PCP). These standard drug-testing packages leave out several commonly used substances such as alcohol, tobacco, and steroids.



FOCUS BOX 24–3

Banned drugs—common ground

Drugs Banned by Both NCAA and USADA[24,31]

- Alcohol*
- Anti-estrogens (promote the development and maintenance of female sex characteristics)
- Anabolic steroids
- Diuretics
- Beta blockers* (used to lower blood pressure, decrease heart rate, decrease cardiac arrythmias)
- Beta-2 agonists (asthma medications)**
- Hormones (human growth hormone, corticotropin, erythropoietin, human chorionic gonadotropin, etc.)
- Stimulants
- Blood doping
- Marijuana

Drugs Banned by USADA Only

- Narcotics (specific drugs prohibited)
- Corticosteroids** (intramuscular, intravenous, rectal, and oral use is banned; most topical and inhaled use is permitted with written permission)

Drugs Banned by NCAA Only

- Local anesthetics

Dietary Supplements

(not banned, but both groups recommend using at your own risk)

*Banned only for certain sports.

**Permits with prior written therapeutic use exemption (TUE).

Dietary Supplements

Many nutritional or dietary supplements contain banned substances. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) does not strictly regulate the supplement industry. Therefore, purity and safety of nutritional or dietary supplements cannot be guaranteed. Impure supplements may lead to a positive NCAA or USADA drug test. The athlete is at his or her own risk when using supplements. Student-athletes should contact their institution's team physician or athletic trainer for further information.

SUMMARY

- Substance abuse involves the use of performance-enhancing drugs and the widespread use of recreational drugs, or street drugs. It is important to be knowledgeable about substance abuse in the athletic population and to be able to recognize signs that an athlete is engaging in substance abuse. Substance abuse has no place in the athletic population.
- The use of performance-enhancing drugs by athletes must be discouraged because of potential health risks and to ensure equal competition. Among the more common ones used by athletes are stimulants, beta blockers, narcotic analgesics, diuretics, anabolic steroids, human growth hormone, and blood doping.
- Recreational drug abuse among athletes is of major concern. It can lead to serious psychological and physical health problems. Examples of drugs that are commonly abused recreationally include alcohol, illegal drugs, and prescription drugs.
- Drug testing of athletes for the purpose of identifying individuals who may have some problems with drug abuse is done routinely by the NCAA and the USADA. The major goals of drug testing are to protect the health of athletes and to help ensure that competition is fair and equitable. Most professional teams and colleges and universities have initiated drug-testing programs for their athletes. Unfortunately, drug testing is rarely done at the high school level because of cost constraints.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

24-1 The athlete should be informed that her drug test is designed to screen for recreational drugs rather than for performance-enhancing drugs, and so this should not be a problem, Additionally, even if the test was screening for performance-enhancing drugs, it is highly unlikely that one cup of espresso would contain enough caffeine for her to test positive.

24-2 The visible signs of anabolic steroid abuse include male pattern baldness, acne, voice deepening, mood swings, aggressive behavior, gynecomastia, reduction in the size of a testicle, and changes in libido.

24-3 With regard to HGH, there is no evidence that increasing HGH combined with weight training contributes to strength and muscle hypertrophy. In addition, there are side effects and health consequences to using any performance-enhancing substance. You should advise him to hit the weights and try to build muscle mass through natural physiological mechanisms that over time cause a muscle to hypertrophy.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. How do stimulants enhance an athlete's performance?
2. What are the purposes of narcotic analgesic drugs in sports? How do they affect performance?
3. What type of athlete would use beta blockers? Why are they used?
4. Describe why athletes use anabolic steroids, diuretics, and growth hormone. What are their physiological effects on the athlete?
5. Describe blood doping in sports. Why is it used? What are its dangers?
6. Contrast psychological and physical dependence, and withdrawal syndromes.
7. How can an athlete who is abusing drugs be identified? Describe behavioral identification as well as drug testing.
8. Debate the issue of drug testing in athletics.
9. What is the greatest concern for the athlete when taking dietary supplements to enhance performance?

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Angell, M. 2012. Anabolic steroids and cardiovascular risk. *Sports Medicine* 42(2):119–134.
2. Barnes, M. 2014. Alcohol: Impact on sports performance and recovery in male athletes. *Sports Medicine* 44(7):909–919.
3. Buckman, J. 2011. Risk of marijuana use in male and female college student athletes and non-athletes. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol and Drugs* 72(4):586.
4. Clemmons, D., & Molitch, M. 2014. Growth hormone should be used only for approved indications. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology & Metabolism* 99(2):409–411.
5. de Oliveira, C. 2014. Blood doping: Risks to athletes' health and strategies for detection. *Substance Use & Misuse* 49(9):1168–1181.
6. De Hon, O., & Kuipers, H. 2015. Prevalence of doping use in elite sports: Numbers and methods. *Sports Medicine* 45(1):57–69.
7. DiClemente, R. 2014. Steroid use, health risk behaviors and adverse health indicators among US high school students. *Family Medicine and Medical Science Research* 3(127):2.
8. Druckman, J., & Gilli, M. 2015. Measuring drug and alcohol use among college student-athletes. *Social Science Quarterly* 96(2):369–380.
9. Dziedzicki, D. 2013. Alcohol consumption behaviors among collegiate athletes. *International Journal of Athletic Therapy & Training* 18(1):35–38.
10. Elliott, P. 2012. Narcotic analgesic drugs. In D. Mottram (ed.), *Drugs in sport*. New York, NY: Taylor & Francis.
11. Gallucci, A., & Martin, R. 2015. Misuse of prescription stimulant medication in a sample of college students: Examining differences between varsity athletes and non-athletes. *Addictive Behaviors* 51:44–50.
12. Green, G. 2001. NCAA study of substance use and abuse habits of college student athletes. *Clinical Journal of Sport Medicine* 11(1):51–56.
13. Harmer, P. 2010. Anabolic-androgenic steroid use among young male and female athletes: Is the game to blame? *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 44(1):26–31.
14. Ip, E. 2012. Psychological and physical impact of anabolic-androgenic steroid dependence. *Pharmacotherapy: The Journal of Human Pharmacology and Drug Therapy* 32(10):910–919.
15. Jozkow P. 2017. Drug abuse, doping, and extreme sports. In F. Feletti (ed.), *Extreme sports medicine*. New York, NY: Springer.

16. Kersey, R., et al. 2012. National Athletic Trainers' Association position statement: Anabolic-androgenic steroids. *Journal of Athletic Training* 47(5):567.
17. Loland, S. 2012. Justifying anti-doping: The fair opportunity principle and the biology of performance enhancement. *European Journal of Sport Science* 12(4):347–353.
18. Manubay, J. 2011. Prescription drug abuse: Epidemiology, regulatory issues, chronic pain management with narcotic analgesics. *Primary Care: Clinics in Office Practice* 38(1):71–90.
19. Momaya, A. 2015. Performance-enhancing substances in sports: A review of the literature. *Sports Medicine* 45(4):517–531. doi: 10.1007/s40279-015-0308-9.
20. Morente-Sánchez, J., 2013. Doping in sport: A review of elite athletes' attitudes, beliefs, and knowledge. *Sports Medicine* 43(6):395–411.
21. Mottram, D. 2015. Beta blockers. In D. Mottram (ed.), *Drugs in sport*. New York, NY: Routledge.
22. Mottram, D. 2015. Diuretics and other masking agents. In D. Mottram (ed.), *Drugs in sport*. New York, NY: Routledge.
23. Mottram, D. 2015. A historical perspective of doping and anti-doping in sport. In D. Mottram (ed.), *Drugs in sport*. New York, NY: Routledge.
24. National Collegiate Athletic Association. 2014. *NCAA drug testing programs*. Indianapolis, IN: NCAA.
25. Outram, S. 2013. Enhancement drug use in society and in sport: The science and sociology of stimulant use and the importance of perception. *Sport in Society* 16(6):789–804.
26. Pickering, C., & Kiely, J. 2018. Are the current guidelines on caffeine use in sport optimal for everyone? Inter-individual variation in caffeine ergogenicity, and a move towards personalised sports nutrition. *Sports Medicine* 48(1):7–16.
27. Pope, H. 2014. The lifetime prevalence of anabolic androgenic steroid use and dependence in Americans: Current best estimates. *American Journal on Addictions* 23(4):371–377.
28. Reardon, C. 2014. Drug abuse in athletes. *Substance Abuse and Rehabilitation* 5(1):95.
29. Rogol, A. 2014. Can anabolic steroids or human growth hormone affect the growth and maturation of adolescent athletes? *Pediatric Exercise Science* 26(4):423–427.
30. Spriet, L. 2014. Exercise and sport performance with low doses of caffeine. *Sports Medicine* 44(2):175–184.
31. U.S. Anti-Doping Agency. 2014. *USADA athlete handbook*. Colorado Springs, CO: USADA.
32. Veliz, P., & Boyd, C. 2017. Nonmedical use of prescription opioids and heroin use among adolescents involved in competitive sports. *Journal of Adolescent health* 60(3):346–349.
33. Waddington, I. 2013. Recreational drug use and sport: Time for a WADA rethink? *Performance Enhancement & Health* 2(2):41–47.
34. White, R. 2014. Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder and athletes. *Sports Health: A Multidisciplinary Approach* 6(2):149–156.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

Mottram, D. 2015. *Drugs in sport*. New York, NY: Routledge.

Taking into account the latest regulations, methods, and landmark cases, the book explores the hard science behind drug use in sport, as well as the ethical, social, political, and administrative context.

Newton, D. 2013. *Steroids and doping in sports*. Santa Barbara, CA: ABC-CLIO.

Provides not only information about all aspects of performance-enhancing drugs in sport, but also a thorough, scientific background about the drugs themselves.

Ruiz, P., & Strain, E. 2014. *The substance abuse handbook*. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.

Provides authoritative, clinically oriented information on the subject of substance use, abuse, and dependence, with an emphasis on diagnosis, treatment, and prevention.

WEBSITES

The National Center for Drug-Free Sport: www.drugfreesport.com

NCAA Drug Testing Program: www.ncaa.org/sport-science-institute/ncaa-drug-testing-program
Provides an updated list of banned drugs and drug testing information.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Service Administration: www.samhsa.gov

U.S. Anti-Doping Agency: www.usada.org
This organization is dedicated to eliminating the practice of doping in sport.

USADA Supplement 411: www.usada.org/substances/supplement-411

World Anti-Doping Agency Prohibited List: www.wada-ama.org/en/what-we-do/prohibited-list
A comprehensive list of all medicines (over 5,000), showing which are prohibited or permitted in international sport.

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

©Erik Isakson/Blend Images

25

Preventing and Managing Injuries in Young Athletes

Objectives

When you finish this chapter you will be able to:

- Explain why young athletes are more susceptible to injuries than adults.
- Identify where, how, and to whom youth sports injuries are occurring in the United States.
- Discuss matching of young athletes as a criterion for determining competitive levels.
- Understand that young athletes can safely engage in a strength-training program.
- Discuss the psychological considerations relative to young athletes competing in sport activities.
- Identify different organizations that have established certification programs for coaches of youth sports.
- Discuss recognition and management of the types of injuries that are likely to occur in the young athlete.
- Explain what parents and coaches can do to help prevent or minimize injuries in the young athlete.

Under the best of circumstances, sports programs for young participants promote responsible social behaviors, greater academic success, confidence in physical abilities, an appreciation of personal health and fitness, and the development of strong social bonds. Sports, when specifically planned for, can provide a venue for learning positive ethical behaviors.[34,47]

Sports can promote:

- Responsible social behaviors
- Greater academic success
- Confidence in physical abilities
- Appreciation of health and fitness
- Positive ethical behaviors

CULTURAL TRENDS

In recent years, there has been a significant increase in the participation of young children, particularly females, in both organized and informal sports, as well as recreational activities (Figure 25–1).[1,3] Approximately 75 percent of U.S. households with school-age children have at least one child who plays organized sports.[31] Unfortunately, along with this growth in sports participation comes an increase in sports- and recreation-related injuries. One in three children who plays a team sport is injured seriously enough to miss practice or games.[31] Certainly, the risk of physical injury is inherent in sports participation. Young athletes are more susceptible to these injuries because they are continuously gaining motor and cognitive skills throughout the growth process.[43]

Parents and professionals in the areas of education, psychology, and medicine have long questioned whether vigorous physical training and competition are advisable for the immature child.[43] Increasingly, children, particularly females, are engaging in intense programs of training that may require many hours of daily commitment extending over many years.[20] Swimmers may practice 2 hours, two times a day, covering 6,000 to 10,000 meters each session; gymnasts may practice 3 to 5 hours per day; and runners may cover as many as 70 miles each week.

Many parents and health professionals question the value of sports for the immature child.

FIGURE 25–1 **Unsupervised play is generally more dangerous than organized sports activities.** ©Natalya Gerasimova/iStockphoto/Getty Images

The number of young people between 5 and 17 years of age in the United States engaging in youth sports is estimated at more than 46 million.[31] The National Youth Sports Safety Foundation estimates that between 20 and 30 million U.S. children are in organized out-of-school sports, with another 25 million participating in competitive school sports (Table 25–1).[34]

Forty-six million young people between the ages of 5 and 17 engage in sports.

TABLE 25–1 Estimated Number of Young People Ages 6–17 Enrolled in Specific Categories of Youth Sports

Activities	Estimated Number of Participants
All Youth Sports in the United States	46 million
Organized Team Sports	21.5 million
Recreational sports programs	24.5 million
Secondary School Sports	7.97 million

Where Are Injuries Occurring? The Facts*[51]

- Approximately 46.5 million children play team sports each year in the United States.[33]
- More than 7.87 million student-athletes participated in school sports during the 2015 to 2016 academic year.[30]
- There were as many as 23 sports-related deaths of young athletes in 2016, 50 in 2015, 25 in 2014, 32 in 2013, 33 in 2012, 39 in 2011, and 40 in 2010.[28]
- In 2013, there were an estimated 1.35 million emergency room visits for injuries related to 14 commonly played sports in children ages 6 to 19.[13]
- Sports injuries account for 20 percent of all injury-related emergency department visits for children aged 6 to 19.[13]
- Among children, those aged 12 to 17 experience the highest rate of emergency room visits for sports injuries.[49]
- Rates of sports injury visits to emergency rooms are highest in remote rural settings.[49]
- Medical costs for sports injury emergency department visits exceed $935 million each year.[5,13]
- Prevention of injury is critical because previous history is often a risk factor for future injury. Players with one or more previous injuries have two to three times greater risk of incident injury compared to those without previous injury.[19]
- In 2014 to 2015, 59.2 percent of injuries reported to an athletic trainer by high school athletes were sustained in competition, while the rest occurred during practice.[6]
- Up to 25 percent of public schools in the United States do not have a school nurse. Forty-seven percent of schools fall short of the federally recommended nurse-to-student ratio, and less than half of U.S. public schools have a school nurse on-site during all school hours every day.[26]
- Ninety-six percent of Americans feel it's important for young athletes to be evaluated by a qualified health care professional before they begin playing sports.[17]
- A total of 72 percent of children who are secondary school age play a sport; among these children, 29 percent play year-round.[40]
- Athletes who only play one sport year-round have a 50 percent increased risk of knee injuries and a greater overall injury risk.[23]
- Fifty-four percent of athletes reported they have played while injured.[31]
- In 2012 there were 163,670 young athletes seen in the emergency department for a concussion, which is more than 8 percent of the 1.35 million youth sports–related injuries reported to the

*Modified from Youth Sports Safety Alliance statistics, http://www.youthsportssafetyalliance.org/sites/default/files/Statistics.pdf.

ED, meaning every 3 minutes a child is seen in an emergency department for a sports-related concussion.[13]

- Children aged 12 to 15 suffer 47 percent of sports-related concussions seen in the ED, followed by the 16 to 19 age group (29 percent), then children 8 to 11 years (19 percent) and children 7 years or younger (5 percent).[13]
- Sudden cardiac arrest (SCA) is the leading cause of death in exercising young athletes.[10]
- An estimated 12,000 new cases of spinal cord injury occur each year in the United States. Approximately 80 percent of these injuries occur in males.[32]
- Football is associated with the highest number of cervical spine injuries of any sport in high school, while cheerleading is associated with the highest number of direct catastrophic head and neck injuries for high school females.[22]
- High school gymnastics and ice hockey have higher incidence rates of direct catastrophic head and neck injuries than football when comparing participation numbers.[22]

Proven Interventions

- Children should have access to and consistently use the appropriate gear necessary for each sport.
- Organized sports through schools, community clubs, and recreation areas that are properly maintained assist in preventing injuries to children.
- Coaches should be trained in first aid and CPR and should have a plan for responding to emergencies. Coaches should be well versed in the proper use of equipment and should enforce rules on equipment use.
- Sports programs with adults on staff who are Certified Athletic Trainers are ideal because they can help prevent or provide immediate care for athletic injuries.

PHYSICAL MATURITY ASSESSMENT IN MATCHING ATHLETES

Children are at greater risk than adults for sports and recreational injuries because they are unable to assess the risks involved and have less coordination, slower reaction times, and less accuracy (Figure 25–2). Children aged 5 to 14 account for nearly 40 percent of all sport-related injuries treated in hospital emergency departments.[31] The rate and severity of sport-related injuries increase with a child's age. Among children aged 5 to 9, sport-related injuries occur more frequently among girls than boys. However, during puberty, ages 10 to 14, boys are injured more frequently and more severely than girls. Among children aged 5 to 14, boys account for nearly 75 percent of all sport-related injuries. In addition, boys are more likely than girls to suffer from multiple injuries.[31]

FIGURE 25–2 The risk of injury is inherent in both recreational and organized youth sport activities.
©Russell Illig/Getty Images

However, the risk of sports injury is associated more with a child's stage of development than age. A less developed child competing against a more mature child of the same age and weight is at a disadvantage and may be at greater risk for injury. **Therefore, all youth sports participants should be matched by physical maturation, weight, size, and skill level.**

Maturity assessment should be part of the preparticipation physical examination as a means of protecting the young physically developing athlete. The most commonly used method for estimating physical maturity is the Tanner Stages of Maturity, indicating development of secondary sexual characteristics.[37] The Tanner approach evaluates pubic hair and genitalia development in boys and pubic hair and breast development in girls (Table 25–2). Other indicators that may be noted are facial and axillary hair. Stage 1 indicates that puberty is not evident, and stage 5 indicates full development. The crucial stage in terms of collision and high-intensity noncontact sports is stage 3, in which there is the fastest bone growth. In this stage, the growth plates are two to five times weaker than the joint capsule and tendon attachments. Tanner's staging emphasizes that young athletes in grades 7 to 12 must be matched by maturity, not age.[37]

The American Academy of Pediatrics indicates that there is no physical reason to separate preadolescent girls and boys by gender in recreational or competitive

There is no need to separate preadolescent girls and boys in competitive sports.

TABLE 25–2	Tanner Stages of Maturity
Males	Stage 1. No evidence of pubic hair. Stage 2. Slightly pigmented hair laterally at the base of the penis, usually straight. Stage 3. Hair becomes darker, coarser, begins to curl, and spreads over the pubes. Stage 4. Hair is adult in type but does not extend onto thighs. Stage 5. Hair extends onto the thighs and frequently up the linea alba.
Females	Stage 1. No evidence of pubic hair. Stage 2. Long, slightly pigmented, downy hair along the edges of the labia. Stage 3. Darker, coarser, slightly curled hair spread sparsely over the mons pubis. Stage 4. Adult type of hair, but it does not extend onto thighs. Stage 5. Adult distribution including spread along the medial aspects of the thighs.

sports activities. Separation of genders should occur in collision-type sports once boys have attained greater muscle mass in proportion to their body weight.[2]

PHYSICAL CONDITIONING AND TRAINING

Guidelines and training philosophies developed for and used by adults should not be imposed on youngsters who are anatomically, physiologically, or psychologically less mature.[9,31] In conditioning programs, young athletes should focus on developing muscular strength and endurance, cardiovascular fitness, and flexibility (see Chapter 4).[12] Young athletes should work with fitness professionals, coaches, and/or athletic trainers, if available, year-round, to ensure they maintain their conditioning with appropriate exercises and nutrition. In addition, young athletes should engage in appropriate conditioning programs for a minimum of 6 weeks before the start of daily practice.[12] A minimum of a 15-minute warm-up period before any game or practice, and an appropriate cool-down period afterward, is recommended. Young athletes should also warm up for 5 minutes during any prolonged breaks in activity (including half time, between periods, etc.). Young athletes should routinely stretch properly before and after workouts of any kind. Workouts and practices should be limited to no more than 2 hours because injuries are more likely to occur when the athlete becomes fatigued.[11]

Strength training refers to a systematic program of exercises designed to increase an individual's ability to exert or resist force (Figure 25–3).[11] Contrary to the traditional belief that strength training is dangerous for children, the American College of Sports Medicine (ACSM),[12] the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons,[1] and the American Academy of Pediatrics[2] maintain that for young athletes who have the emotional maturity to accept and follow directions, strength training can be a safe and effective activity, provided that the program is properly designed and competently supervised (Table 25–3).[1,2,4,28] Even some 7- and 8-year-old boys and girls have benefited from strength training. There is no reason younger children should not participate in strength-related activities such as push-ups and sit-ups, if they can safely perform the exercises and follow instructions.[23] In general, if children are ready for participation in organized sports or activities—such as Little League baseball, soccer, or gymnastics—then they are ready for some type of strength training.[11] It must be emphasized, however, that strength training is a form of physical conditioning distinct from the competitive sports of competitive weightlifting and powerlifting.[4] It has been suggested that in young athletes strength training may also decrease the

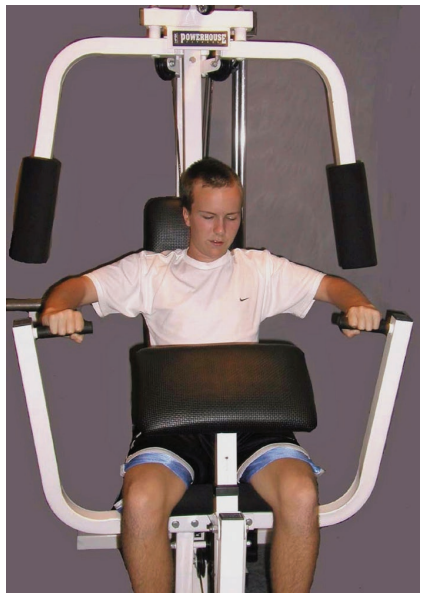


FIGURE 25–3 **Several professional organizations have recommended strength training for young athletes in properly designed and supervised programs.** ©William E. Prentice

25–1 Critical Thinking Exercise

A parent of a 10-year-old boy asks the coach of a youth football team if it is all right to have his son begin strength training with weights.

? How should the coach respond to this?

TABLE 25–3 Guidelines for Youth Strength Training*

- **Seek instruction.** Start with a coach or personal trainer who has experience with youth strength training. The coach or trainer can create a safe, effective strength training program based on your child's age, size, skills, and sports interests. Or, enroll your child in a strength training class designed for kids.
- **Warm up and cool down.** Encourage your child to begin each strength training session with 5–10 minutes of light aerobic activity, such as walking, jogging in place, or jumping rope. This warms the muscles and prepares them for more vigorous activity. Gentle stretching after each session is a good idea, too.
- **Keep it light.** Kids can safely lift adult-size weights, as long as the weight is light enough. In most cases, one set of 12–15 repetitions is all it takes. The resistance doesn't have to come from weights, either. Resistance tubing and body-weight exercises, such as push-ups, are other effective options.
- **Stress proper technique.** Rather than focusing on the amount of weight your child lifts, stress proper form and technique during each exercise. Your child can gradually increase the resistance or number of repetitions as he or she gets older.
- **Supervise.** Adult supervision by someone who knows proper strength training technique is an important part of youth strength training. Don't let your child go it alone.
- **Rest between workouts.** Make sure your child rests at least one full day between exercising each specific muscle group. Two or three strength training sessions a week are plenty.
- **Keep it fun.** Help your child vary the routine to prevent boredom.

*From: "Tween and teen health: What's the best way to start a strength training program for kids?," January 30, 2015, *Mayo Clinic*, www.mayoclinic.org/healthy-lifestyle/tween-and-teen-health/in-depth/strength-training/art-20047758?pg = 2.

incidence of some sports injuries by increasing the strength of tendons, ligaments, and bone.[12]

PSYCHOLOGICAL AND LEARNING CONCERNS

Of even more concern than the physical aspects of sports are the psychological stresses that may be placed on children by overzealous parents, coaches, and fitness professionals.[15] Children must not be considered to be miniature adults. Although children can mimic adult skills, they often cannot understand sports concepts such as playing fair unless specifically taught.

Children usually are eager to please adults, making them vulnerable to coercion and manipulation. A positive approach should be used by giving children frequent encouragement with positive reinforcements followed by corrective feedback.[35] With this approach, the young athlete has the opportunity to develop a sense of self-worth and positive self-esteem.[15]

Sports should allow boys and girls to develop positive self-esteem.

Not all children are equal in ability. Some children respond well to competition, others respond poorly, as usually demonstrated by their level of performance. A child must be shown that there are benefits in experiencing a loss and that trying to the best of his or her ability is the most important factor in competition. Parents and coaches must realize that children are not good at making performance corrections unless instructions are given instantly at the time of the situation.[18] In other words, half-time performance suggestions given a half-hour later may have little effect on the child.[15]

Enjoyment of an activity, rather than winning at all costs, should be the focus of a child's training, conditioning, and competition (Figure 25–4).[48] Parents who were fine athletes or who wanted to be great athletes should not coerce their young children to the point of anxiety and a dislike for the sport.[4]

FIGURE 25–4 It is critical that the young athlete makes enjoying the activity the focus rather than concentrating on training, competition, and winning. ©William E. Prentice

There are many differences between free-flowing play and organized sports. Organized sports, fortunately or unfortunately, carry the obligatory win or lose connotations of competition and also involve adults who coach and train the youngster, as well as adults who interpret and enforce the rules that govern competition. The adverse effect of adult influences upon the young athlete is but one potential negative psychological aspect of youth sport participation.[14]

A recent trend seems to be emerging for young athletes to be encouraged by parents and/or coaches to decide at an early age to specialize and focus on a single specific sport rather than playing multiple sports simultaneously. It appears to be true that at some point specializing in a single sport is critical for developing elite-level skill in that sport.[24] However, for younger athletes, intense training in a single sport to the exclusion of others should be delayed until late adolescence to optimize potential success while minimizing injury, psychological stress, and burnout.[16]

Further, for most sports, delaying specialization with early diversification has been shown to be most likely to lead to elite status.[7] In addition, those who engaged in sport-specific training at a young age have shorter athletic careers.[7]

Intensive participation, or participation in organized sport taken to an extreme, can be described in terms of frequency and/or intensity.[48] Examples of intensive participation include the ice skater or gymnast who trains daily for hours and competes year-round for years on end. Higher rates of injury, increased psychological stress, and quitting sports at a young age are all risks of early sports specialization.[16] Other examples include the multisport athlete who trains and competes on a daily basis year-round. This intensive participation places significant physical demands on the body, demands that may result in serious overuse or stress-failure injury.[9] Just as the young body grows to accept greater physical demands, so does the young mind. Intensive participation places many demands on the young athlete, some of which may be unrealistic. As this relates to intense competition, research demonstrates that a child's cognitive ability to develop a mature understanding of the competition process does not occur until the age of 12. Not until between the ages of 10 and 12 years of age do children develop the capacity to comprehend more than just one other viewpoint. Finally, after the age of 12, the youngster can readily adopt a team perspective.[8]

Psychological issues may also enter the picture when rehabilitating youth sport participants involved in intense competition and training. Risk factors for psychological complications in the injured child include stress in the family, high-achieving siblings, over- or underinvolved parent(s), a paradoxical lack of leisure in athletic activity, self-esteem that is reliant on athletic prowess, and a narrow range of interests beyond athletics.

COACHING QUALIFICATIONS

No federal laws require coaching education at any level of competition.[45] Currently, the way to become trained as a coach in the United States is to complete a university degree program, a National Body of Sports certification program, and/or a youth sports coaching education program.[45] Until 1996, no coaching standards had been developed.[27] The National Association for Sport and Physical Education (NASPE) has developed the National Standards for Athletic Coaches.[27] The standards are not intended to be a certification program or the basis of a single national assessment for all coaches. Rather, the standards are put forth to help organizations and agencies who currently certify coaches, provide coach education/training, evaluate select coaches, or design programs to meet the needs of prospective and practicing coaches.[27] The United States Olympic Committee (USOC) Coaching Education Department supports the National Governing Bodies (NGB) of 40 sports. It encourages coaches at all levels of sport to continually improve their core knowledge and their sport-specific understanding by developing and delivering resources and practical application of research-based educational programming.[44]

Often coaches of youth sports have little or no background in providing safe and positive sports experiences. Volunteer coaches are critical to the existence of youth sports in the United States.[25] Every youth sports coach should be certified and dedicated to the highest ideals of coaching.[36] One organization that promotes such ideals is the National Alliance for Youth Sport (NAYS), which was originally named the National Youth Sports Coaches Association (NYSCA).[25] The NYSCA is a volunteer coaches training program that has been utilized by more than 3 million volunteer coaches worldwide.[25] This association offers three levels of certification, consisting of the fundamentals of coaching, first aid and safety, and common sports injuries; it also

Youth sport coaches must be certified and educated in:

- Techniques of coaching
- Supervising conditioning
- Sport safety
- First aid
- Child development
- CPR/AED

Ten percent of youth in organized sports sustain an injury.

offers instruction in the psychological aspects of losing and in discipline. All youth sports coaches must also have a good understanding of normal child development—physical, emotional, and psychological.[41]

Other nationally recognized coaching certification programs include the American Sport Education Program (ASEP), the Program for Athletic Coaches Education (PACE), the National Council for Accreditation of Coaching Education (NCACE), and the United States Sports Academy Certification Program in Sports Coaching.

COMMON INJURIES IN THE YOUNG ATHLETE

Children are susceptible to many of the same sport injuries that the physically mature athlete is, including joint sprains, muscle and tendon strains, and skeletal fractures, which account for about 50 percent of all youth sports–related injuries.[23,29]

Many pediatric physicians are concerned about these repeated microtraumas that can occur to the young athlete over time.[29] Such small traumas can compound and produce chronic and, in some cases, degenerative conditions within the immature musculoskeletal system.[37]

Growth Plate Fractures

The bones of young athletes and adults share many of the same risks for injury. However, a young athlete's bones are also subject to an injury called a growth plate fracture. The growth plate (physis) is an area of developing tissue near the ends of long bones, between the shaft of the bone (the diaphysis) and the end of the bone (the epiphysis) (see Figure 13–1).[8] The long bones of the body do not grow from the center outward but grow instead at each end of the bone around the growth plate.[8] The growth plate regulates and determines the length and shape of the mature bone and is the last portion of the bone to harden (ossify), thus leaving it vulnerable to fracture. Fractures can result either from a single traumatic event, such as a fall, or from chronic stress and overuse. Most growth plate fractures occur in the radius of the forearm, the tibia and fibula in the lower leg, and the fingers.[8]

About one-third of all growth plate injuries occur in competitive sports, such as football, basketball, or gymnastics, while about 20 percent occur with participation in recreational activities, such as biking, sledding, skiing, or skateboarding. Females between the ages of 11 and 12 and 14-year-old males are most likely to experience this injury, although all children who are still growing are at risk. Males are twice as likely to have growth plate fractures as females.[8]

If a fracture of any bone is suspected, the young athlete should be immediately referred to a physician for X-ray to determine the type of fracture. If a fracture of the growth plate has occurred, the severity of the injury is determined depending on the degree of damage to the growth plate itself. Treatment may range from immobilization in a cast to surgery for repair and internal fixation.

Growth plate fractures must be carefully monitored to ensure proper long-term results. In some cases, the injury prevents the bone from getting longer. In other cases, the fracture actually stimulates growth so that the injured bone is longer than the uninjured bone. Complicated fractures need to be followed by a physician until the young athlete reaches skeletal maturity.

Apophysitis

The apophysis is a specialized area of cartilage within the growth plate. At certain locations throughout the body, a large tendon inserts into the bone at the apophysis. The apophysis is very susceptible to injury because it is developing cartilage, not mature bone. The repetitive stresses of running, jumping, and other actions produce an inflammation or irritation of the apophysis at these tendon insertions.

Apophysitis is inflammation of an apophysis. The most common sites for apophysitis are at the insertion of the patellar tendon on the tibial tubercle in the knee and at the insertion of the Achilles tendon on the calcaneus at the heel. Osgood-Schlatter disease[37] is an apophysitis of the tibial tubercle in the knee (see Figure 16–25), and Sever's disease is an apophysitis of the calcaneus.[37] They usually result from repetitive actions rather than from a specific episode, though sometimes an injury will first bring attention to the problem. The symptoms of these conditions usually begin between 8 and 15 years of age. The pain that occurs is primarily related to activities and does not typically awaken the adolescent at night. In these conditions, the tenderness is localized, and there are no other significant abnormalities of the knee, ankle, or other surrounding parts.

Diagnosis is usually made from information from the history and physical examination. A physician may order X-rays to confirm the diagnosis or to exclude other problems. It is important to understand that Osgood-Schlatter disease and Sever's disease are not serious conditions. They do not affect the joints themselves, so they do not lead to anything serious such as arthritis, though they can take up to several years to resolve. Most treatment is directed toward reducing the symptoms.

Avulsion Fractures

In a growing child, it is clear that the muscles must grow and adapt to the increasing length of the skeletal

bones. It appears that a change in muscle length results from changes within the muscle belly itself and/or an increase in tendon length. When changes in muscle length do not match changes in long bone growth, stresses occurring in the muscle predispose the young athlete to injury.[37] Injuries range from varying degrees of muscle strain to situations where the bony attachment of the muscle fails before the muscle is damaged. An avulsion fracture as defined in Chapter 15 is one in which a piece of bone is fractured and pulled away from the rest of the bone at the site of tendon or ligament attachment (see Figure 15–15).[37] The most common sites for these avulsion injuries in the young athlete include the anterior superior and inferior iliac spines in the ilium, the ischial spine, and the fifth metatarsal in the foot. As forces across the joints of the lower extremity exceed most forces across the upper extremity, due to running, jumping, and kicking, avulsion fractures of the lower extremity outnumber avulsion fractures of the upper extremity. Stresses across the shoulder and elbow of the young throwing athlete, however, are sufficient to result in avulsion of the medial humeral epicondyle and proximal humerus.

Spondylolysis

Spondylolysis is a defect or fracture in the bony structures of the spine that occurs most often in young athletes.[42] Physical forces encountered by youngsters involved in physical activities play a significant role in the development of spondylolysis. Activities that involve repetitive loading, especially with the lumbar spine in extension/hyperextension, such as ballet, gymnastics, diving, football, weight lifting, and wrestling, have been implicated in spondylolysis. Spondylolysis originates in children between the ages of 5 and 10 years and most frequently occurs at the fifth lumbar vertebra, with the fourth lumbar vertebra being involved second most frequently. Many youngsters with spondylolysis remain asymptomatic for long periods of time and are often not diagnosed until later in their skeletal development. X-rays are required to visualize the fracture.[42]

Spondylolisthesis is a condition in which a vertebra slips anterior to the vertebra immediately below it.[42] Spondylolisthesis most frequently takes place between the fifth lumbar and first sacral vertebrae, although the condition can occur at more than one spinal segment (see Figures 20–20 and 20–21).

Treatment of spondylolysis and spondylolisthesis centers on healing the bony defect and decreasing the patient's symptoms. Treatment depends on the physician's personal preference and ranges from relative rest without a brace to 23 hours of bracing each day. When bracing is used, the brace is typically a rigid custom-fit lumbar spinal orthosis designed to keep the youngster out of extension. In addition to activity modification, hamstring stretching is an integral part of the treatment program.[42]

SPORTS INJURY PREVENTION

One of the primary goals of every parent, coach, and administrator involved with youth sports should be to do everything possible to minimize the chances of injury to the young athlete.[21,37] Although it is certainly true that injuries are inherent with participation in sport activities, it is also true that many sports injuries can be prevented by paying attention to some commonsense guidelines such as ensuring proper physical and psychological conditioning, using appropriate safety equipment, creating a safe playing environment, providing adequate adult supervision, and enforcing safety rules in any sports program. Table 25–4 summarizes tips for preventing sports injuries.

Parents and coaches should ensure that each athlete receives a preparticipation physical exam, either from the family physician or from a team physician.[39] The physical should consist of a general exam, which includes checks on height, weight, pulse, respiration, blood pressure, eyes, ears, nose, chest, and abdomen. It should also include an orthopedic exam that focuses on joint flexibility, joint range of motion, muscle strength, and a history of past bone and joint injuries (see Chapter 2).[37]

25–2 Critical Thinking Exercise

A 14-year-old female soccer player is playing in a junior high soccer game. She is accidentally kicked in her shin just above the ankle. She has immediate pain, swelling, and point tenderness over the distal tibia.

? How should this situation be handled, and what injury should be of most concern with this athlete?

As stressed earlier in this chapter, young athletes should be encouraged to focus on developing muscular strength and endurance, cardiovascular fitness, and flexibility. Those who consistently work on conditioning and training are not only likely to enhance their performance but also to reduce the likelihood of injury because they are more fit (see Chapter 4).[37]

Youth athletes must practice good hygiene and other health habits.

Young athletes should be educated about, and pay attention to, sound nutritional practices, which include eating a balanced diet from the basic food groups. Their diets should be high in carbohydrates while also including essential proteins and fats (see Chapter 5).[37]

Young athletes must be acclimatized to practicing or playing in hot, humid, sunny environments. Practices and games should be held early in the morning

TABLE 25–4 Sports Safety Tips*

Parents and coaches can take simple steps to help reduce preventable injuries.

Prepare Kids for the Demands of Playing a Sport

- Before playing organized sports, make sure your child receives a preparticipation physical exam, or PPE, performed by a doctor, or a nurse practitioner or qualified clinician under the supervision of a physician. Whoever performs the exam, the same practices should be followed including the need for a medical history.
- Just in case of an emergency, share contact information (phone numbers, doctor information, and allergy information) with your athlete's coaches.
- If your athlete has any history of asthma or other medical conditions that require special attention, meet with the coach before the first practice.

Warm Up and Stretch Before Games and Practices

- Make sure there is time set aside before every practice and game for athletes to warm up properly.
- Stretching before practice and games can release muscle tension and help prevent sports-related injuries, such as muscle tears or sprains.
- Kids should start with about 10 minutes of jogging or any light activity, and then stretch all major muscle groups, holding each stretch for 20–30 seconds.

Remember to Hydrate

- Learn the signs and symptoms of dehydration and other forms of heat illness.
- Have your kids bring a water bottle to practice and games. Encourage children to stay well hydrated by drinking plenty of water before, during, and after play.
- Encourage your athletes to drink fluids (water is the best option) 30 minutes before the activity begins and every 15–20 minutes during activity.
- If you're a coach, mandatory fluid breaks during practice and games are a great idea—don't wait for your athletes to tell you they're thirsty.

Wear Appropriate Sports Gear

- Having kids wear the appropriate and properly fitted sports gear during practice and games can help avoid minor and serious injuries.
- Make sure athletes have the right equipment and are wearing it for both practices and games. The right equipment may include helmets, shin guards, mouth guards, ankle braces, shoes with rubber cleats, and sunscreen.

Don't Take Chances with the Brain: Know the Signs and Symptoms of Concussions

- Learn the signs and symptoms of a concussion. This information is important for coaches, parents, and athletes.
- A player with a suspected concussion must be immediately sidelined until evaluated and released by a medical professional. The important thing is to protect players who have had a concussion from getting another one.
- A good rule of thumb: When in doubt, sit them out.

Make Rest a Priority

- To help avoid overuse injury, rest all players during practices and games.
- Encourage players to communicate any pain, injury, or illness they may have during or after any practices or games. Make sure they know it's smart to tell coaches, parents, or another adult if they're hurt or not feeling well.
- Kids should have at least 1 or 2 days off from any particular sport each week.
- Take time off from one sport to prevent overuse injuries. It is an opportunity to get stronger and develop skills learned in another sport.

Be a Prepared Coach

- As a coach, establish safety guidelines that athletes and parents can follow during every practice and game, such as creating hydration breaks, encouraging players to sit out if injured, resting if not feeling well, and facilitating a proper warm-up.
- It's also a good idea for coaches to get certified in first aid and CPR and have a stocked first-aid kit handy at all practices and games.
- Coaches should consider adding to their sports skills and knowledge with free sports safety training at a Safe Kids Sports Safety Clinic.

Be a Supportive Parent

- Learn ways to help your child stay injury free and healthy while playing sports.
- Attend a sports safety clinic in your area. These clinics, such as ones held by Safe Kids across the United States, provide coaches and parents with ways to keep young athletes healthy and injury free throughout their sporting careers.

*From: "Sports safety tips," © 2015, *Safe Kids Worldwide,* www.safekids.org/tip/sports-safety-tips.

or late in the afternoon if at all possible. Coaches and parents can minimize the chances of young athletes having a heat-related problem by making certain that they are appropriately hydrated. Fluid breaks should be offered at consistent intervals, and young athletes should be strongly encouraged to consume sufficient fluids to help prevent dehydration (see Chapter 7).

Athletes should use appropriate, properly fitted protective equipment. This equipment should be constantly checked to ensure that it is in good condition. Defective equipment should be replaced or repaired immediately. Appropriate protective equipment should be worn in all practices as well as during competitions (see Chapter 6).

Coaches and parents should take responsibility for making certain that schools at the middle school or secondary school levels establish and implement specific plans, guidelines, and policies for dealing with injuries to the young athletes competing at that institution. To that end, the Youth Sports Safety Alliance, composed of more than 100 organizations committed to keeping young athletes safe, launched the first-ever "National Action Plan for Sports Safety" to ensure comprehensive action to protect America's student athletes (Table 25–5).[49]

Additionally, the Secondary School Student Athletes' Bill of Rights, which was discussed in Chapter 2 (see Focus Box 2–2), reinforces the important rights of young secondary school athletes when participating in a sports program. It addresses key elements that should be essential to the athletes themselves, along with their parents, school and sports officials, and policy makers at all levels.

Parents and coaches should do everything possible to create a safe playing environment.[39] They must ensure adequate adult supervision, make sure playing conditions (e.g., field surfacing, maintenance) are safe, and develop and enforce safety rules that help reduce the number and severity of sports and recreational injuries.

25–3 Critical Thinking Exercise

A 12-year-old gymnast, who first began gymnastics at age 4, complains of pain in her low back whenever she hyperextends or arches her back. Her pain has gotten so bad that she has to stop activity.

? What likely is causing her pain, and how should this complaint be managed?

25–4 Critical Thinking Exercise

A new secondary school has opened, and the athletic director has been directed by the school board to develop a written policies and procedures plan for dealing with the injured athlete.

? What issues should be addressed and included in this document?

SPORTS PARENTS SAFETY CHECKLIST*[31]

- ❑ Before your child plays organized sports, make sure he or she receives a preparticipation physical exam (PPE) by a doctor. This can help rule out any potential medical conditions that may place the young athlete at risk.
- ❑ To be prepared in case of an emergency, share contact information (phone numbers, allergy information, doctor information) with the coaches and save this information in your child's phone as well.
- ❑ Make sure there is a time set aside before every practice and game for athletes to warm up and stretch properly.
- ❑ Young athletes should start with about 10 minutes of jogging or light activity and then stretch all major muscle groups holding each stretch for 20–30 seconds.
- ❑ Encourage your athletes to drink fluids 30 minutes before the activity begins and then every 15–20 minutes during activity.
- ❑ If you are a coach, mandatory fluid breaks during practice and games are a great idea—don't wait for your athletes to tell you they are thirsty.
- ❑ Make sure athletes have the right equipment and are wearing it for both practices and games. The right equipment may include helmets, shin guards, mouth guards, ankle braces, shoes with rubber cleats, and sunscreen.
- ❑ Encourage players to speak up when they are injured. A player with a suspected concussion must be immediately sidelined until evaluated and released by a medical professional. The important thing is to protect players who have had a concussion from getting another one. A good rule of thumb: When in doubt, sit them out.
- ❑ Encourage players to take time off from one sport to prevent overuse injuries. It is an opportunity to get stronger and develop skills learned in another sport. It is a good idea for coaches to get certified in first aid and CPR and have a stocked first-aid kit handy at all practices and games.

*From Safe Kids Worldwide. 2014. Changing the culture of youth sports, www.safekids.org/research-report/research-report-changing-culture-youth-sports-august-2014.

TABLE 25–5 National Action Plan for Sports Safety*[50]

The National Action Plan for Sports Safety requires that all schools:

- Have a comprehensive athletic health care program and a health care team.
- Ensure that practice and play facilities are safe and regularly inspected and cleaned.
- Provide an area in which injured athletes may be evaluated and treated and privacy of medical information is ensured.
- Have a plan for selection, fit, and maintenance of athletic equipment.
- Adopt injury and illness prevention strategies.
- Inform athletes and parents of potential risks in sports as well as individual responsibility.
- Ensure that every student athlete has a preparticipation physical examination including cardiac and concussion testing where appropriate.
- Provide immediately available, properly trained health care professionals.
- Inform parents of the school's emergency policies and procedures.
- Provide automated external defibrillators (AEDs) in locations that are easily and immediately accessible; ensure that equipment is properly maintained and regularly inspected.
- Train coaches and athletic officials in CPR and use of AEDs.
- Adopt venue-specific emergency action plans (EAPs) and routinely rehearse them with local emergency personnel.
- Make coaches, parents, and student athletes aware of the potential problems related to the misuse of nutritional supplements, performance-enhancing substances, and energy drinks.
- Make school personnel aware of the psychosocial problems of student athletes and ensure referral to qualified health care professionals as appropriate.
- Use established protocols for heat acclimatization, lightning, poor air quality, and other environmental factors.

*Modified from Youth Sports Safety Alliance. 2014. National action plan for sports safety. www.youthsportssafetyalliance.org/sites/default/files/docs/National-Action-Plan.pdf.

ATHLETIC INJURY MANAGEMENT CHECKLIST

Following is a checklist of things that might increase the risk of youth sports injuries.

- ❑ Inadequate preparticipation exams
- ❑ Improper, poorly fitted, or lack of protective equipment
- ❑ Training errors
- ❑ Undue fatigue or overtraining
- ❑ Lack of coaching education
- ❑ Insufficient or incorrect instruction
- ❑ Failure to do proper warm-up stretching and cool-down
- ❑ Allowing the athlete to play when injured
- ❑ Delayed or insufficient medical care
- ❑ Poor nutrition
- ❑ Poor health habits
- ❑ Teaming up by age instead of size
- ❑ Stress and inappropriate pressure to win
- ❑ Hazardous environmental conditions

SUMMARY

- The extent to which young athletes train and compete must be carefully monitored to avoid physical and emotional injuries.
- The estimated number of young people engaging in some sport in the United States is 46 million.
- A major concern to some parents and health care professionals is the stress placed on the young body from intense sports competition and training.
- All youth sport participants should be matched by physical maturation, weight, size, skill level, and experience.
- Young athletes can positively respond to some type of conditioning exercises if the exercises are properly supervised and conducted.
- Activities such as falling, jumping, landing on straight legs, repeated hard throwing motions, running very long distances, and lifting heavy weights may produce injuries to the immature musculoskeletal system.
- Children are not miniature adults; coaching must be based on their emotional and cognitive level.

- Separation of genders in sport activities should occur only when boys have attained greater muscle mass in proportion to their body weight.
- Enjoyment of an activity, rather than winning at all costs, must be stressed to children as the most important factor in sports participation.
- An overzealous coach can cause the young athlete great emotional stress.
- Coaches participating in youth sports must be trained in techniques and skills, safety and injury prevention, first aid, and growth and development.
- Coaches should be certified.
- Each year, more than 1.35 million young athletes under 15 years of age are treated for sport-related injuries.
- Young athletes are prone to the same injuries that the mature athlete is, but they must also contend with injuries to their skeletal growth centers.
- Injuries to young athletes can be avoided through proper conditioning and supervision, proper matching, use of proper equipment, and appropriate rules of competition.
- Young athletes must be encouraged to practice good health habits.

SOLUTIONS TO CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

25-1 Strength training is safe and effective for this 10-year-old as long as (1) the program is properly designed and competently supervised, and (2) the boy has the emotional maturity to accept and follow directions. If this boy is ready to participate in organized sports, he is ready for some type of strength training.

25-2 Based on the symptoms, it is likely this soccer player has a fracture. Call the rescue squad, and do not move her until the injury has been immobilized. Of greatest concern in a 14-year-old female is that she has fracture of the physis or growth plate.

25-3 It is likely the young gymnast has a spondylolysis. This condition typically occurs from repeated forced hyperextensions of the low back. Make certain that this girl is evaluated by her family physician before she is allowed to resume practice or competition.

25-4 Some of the more important issues that should be addressed in the policies and procedures plan include having an emergency action plan; providing preparticipation physical evaluations for all athletes; compiling emergency medical authorization cards that give parental permission for emergency medical care; establishing inclement weather guidelines; developing a field/facility maintenance plan; employing a certified athletic trainer and identifying a team physician; requiring coaches to be certified in CPR/AED and first aid; developing policies on purchase and maintenance of protective equipment; and providing a supervised year-round conditioning program.

REVIEW QUESTIONS AND CLASS ACTIVITIES

1. Why are young athletes more susceptible to injuries than adults?
2. Discuss where, how, and to whom youth sports injuries are occurring in the United States.
3. What criteria should be used for matching young athletes in terms of their competitive levels?
4. Describe the Tanner Stages of Maturity, and explain how this scale is applied to maturing athletes.
5. Under what circumstances is it all right for young athletes to engage in a strength-training program?
6. What are some of the psychological considerations relative to young athletes' competing in organized sport activities?
7. Identify different organizations that have established certification programs for coaches of youth sports.
8. Discuss recognition and management of the types of injuries that are likely to occur in the young athlete.
9. What can parents and coaches do to help prevent or minimize injuries in the young athlete?

RECOMMENDED REFERENCES

1. Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons. 2015. A guide to safety for young athletes. http://orthoinfo.aaos.org/topic.cfm?topic=A00307.
2. American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Sports Medicine and Fitness. 2018. Strength training by children and adolescents. *Pediatrics* 107(6):1470–1472.
3. American Academy of Pediatrics. 2017. Sports injury prevention tip sheet. https://www.aap.org/en-us/about-the-aap/aap-press-room/news-features-and-safety-tips/pages/sports-injury-prevention-tip-sheet.aspx.
4. Appleton, P. 2010. Family patterns of perfectionism: An examination of elite junior athletes and their parents. *Psychology of Sport and Exercise* 11(5):363–371.
5. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. 2018. Web-Based Injury Statistics Query and Reporting System (WISQARS) cost of injury reports. https://www.cdc.gov/injury/wisqars/index.html.
6. Comstock, D., & Currie, D. 2015. National High School Sports-Related Injury Surveillance Study. http://www.ucdenver.edu/academics/colleges/PublicHealth/research/ResearchProjects/piper/projects/RIO/Documents/2012–13.pdf.
7. Côté J., & Lidor R. 2009. ISSP position stand: To sample or to specialize? Seven postulates about youth sport activities that lead to continued participation and elite performance. *International Journal of Sport and Exercise Psychology* 7(1):7–17.
8. Diamond, A. 2016. Physeal (growth plate) injuries: What to know and what to be aware of in young athletes. *ACSM's Health and Fitness Journal* 29(6):45–47.
9. DiFiori, J. 2014. Overuse injuries and burnout in youth sports: A position statement from the American Medical Society for Sports Medicine. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 48(4):287–288.
10. Drezner, J. 2009. Preparing for sudden cardiac arrest—The essential role of automated external defibrillators in athletic medicine: A critical review. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 43(9):702–707.
11. Duehring, M. 2009. Strength and conditioning practices of United States high school strength and conditioning coaches. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research* 23(8):2188–2203.
12. Faigenbaum, A., & Micheli, L. 2017. Youth strength training. http://www.acsm.org/docs/default-source/files-for-resource-library/smb-youth-strength-training.pdf?sfvrsn=85a44429_2.
13. Ferguson, R. 2013. Game changers: Stats, stories and what communities are doing to

protect young athletes. https://www.safekids.org/sites/default/files/documents/Research Reports/final_sports_study_2013.pdf.
14. Gould, D. 2009. The professionalization of youth sports: It's time to act! *Clinical Journal of Sport Medicine* 19(2):81–82.
15. Harwood, C. 2015. Parenting in youth sport: A position paper on parenting expertise. *Psychology of Sport and Exercise* 16(1):24–35.
16. Jayanthi, N. 2013. Sports specialization in young athletes: Evidence-based recommendations. *Sports Health: A Multidisciplinary Approach* 5(3):251–257.
17. Kelton Research. 2011. Online survey representative of the U.S. population. American College of Sports Medicine. www.acsm.org/about-acsm/media-room/acsm-in-the-news/2011/08/01/athletes-physicians-urge-adoption-of-new-medical-screening-tool.
18. Knight, C., & Dorsch, T. 2016. Influences on parental involvement in youth sport. *Sport, Exercise, and Performance Psychology* 5(2):161–178.
19. Kucera, K., & Marshall, S. 2005. Injury history as a risk factor for incident injury in youth soccer. *British Journal of Sports Medicine* 39(7):462.
20. Lloyd, R. 2012. Long-term athletic development and its application to youth weightlifting. *Strength and Conditioning Journal* 34(4):55–66.
21. Merkel, D. 2012. Medical sports injuries in the youth athlete: Emergency management. *International Journal of Sports Physical Therapy* 7(2):242–251.
22. Mueller, F. O., & Cantu, R. C. 2011. *National Center for Catastrophic Sport Injury Research: Twenty-ninth annual report, fall 1982–spring 2011*. Chapel Hill, NC: University of North Carolina.
23. Myer, G. 2011. When to initiate integrative neuromuscular training to reduce sports-related injuries in youth. *Current Sports Medicine Reports* 10(3):155.
24. Myer, G., & Jayanthi, N. 2015. Sport specialization, Part I: Does early sports specialization increase negative outcomes and reduce the opportunity for success in young athletes? *Sports Health* 7(5):437–442.
25. National Alliance for Youth Sport. 2018. NAYS coach training and membership. www.nays.org/coaches/.
26. National Association of School Nurses. 2008. Survey. www.nasn.org.
27. National Association for Sports and Physical Education (NASPE). www.shapeamerica.org/admin/loader.cfm?csModule=security/getfile&pageid=4574.
28. National Athletic Trainers' Association. 2017. Less risk, more reward: Emphasizing safety and encouraging success is theme of eighth Youth Sports Safety summit hosed by HATA and Youth Sport Safety Alliance. https://www.nata.org/press-release/030717/less-risk-more-reward-emphasizing-safety-and-encouraging-success-theme-eighth.
29. National Athletic Trainers' Association. 2011. Position statement: Prevention of pediatric overuse injuries. *Journal of Athletic Training* 46(2):206–220.
30. National Federation of State High School Associations. 2015. 2014–2015 High School Athletics Participation Survey. www.nfhs.org/.
31. National SAFE KIDS Campaign. 2014. Changing the culture of youth sports. www.safekids.org/research-report/research-report-changing-culture-youth-sports-august-2014.
32. National Spinal Cord Injury Statistical Center. 2011. *Spinal cord injury: Facts and figures at a glance, 2011*. Birmingham: University of Alabama.
33. National Sporting Goods Association. 2011 vs 2001 youth sports participation, NSGA. www.nsga.org/files/public/2011vs2001_Youth_Participation_website.pdf.
34. National Youth Sports Safety Foundation. www.momsteam.com/national-youth-sports-safety-foundation.
35. O'Rourke, D. 2014. Relations of parent- and coach-initiated motivational climates to young athletes' self-esteem, performance anxiety, and autonomous motivation: Who is more influential? *Journal of Applied Sport Psychology* 26(4):395–408.
36. Perkins, D. 2007. Coaches: Making youth sports a positive experience. *Coaching Update* 22(2):4–5, 24–25.
37. Prentice, W. 2017. *Principles of athletic training*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
38. Smith, J. 2017. Overcoming resistance: The case for strength training in children and adolescents. *Sport Health*, 35(1):15–18.
39. Smoll, F. 2011. Enhancing coach-parent relationships in youth sports: Increasing harmony and minimizing hassle. *International Journal of Sports Science and Coaching* 6(1):13–26.
40. Sports and Health in America. 2015. http://media.npr.org/documents/2015/june/sportsandhealthpoll.pdf.
41. Stoszkowski, J., & Collins D. 2014. Communities of practice, social learning and networks: Exploiting the social side of coach development. *Journal of Sport, Education, and Society* 19(6):773–788.
42. Tao, M., & Lark, R. Spondylolysis and spondylolisthesis in the athlete. In J. A. Neumann, D. T. Kirkendall, & C. T. Moorman III (eds.), *Sports medicine for the orthopedic resident*. Hackensack, NJ: World Scientific Publishing Company.
43. Till, K. 2013. An individualized longitudinal approach to monitoring the dynamics of growth and fitness development in adolescent athletes. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research* 27(5):1313–1321.
44. U.S. Olympic Committee (USOC), National Governing Bodies of Sports. 2018. Coaching education. http://www.teamusa.org/About-the-USOC/Athlete-Development/Coaching-Education.
45. Vickers, B., & Schoenstedt, L. J. 2011. Coaching development: Methods for youth sport introduction. *Strategies* 24(4):14–19.
46. Weber, M. 2014. Heel pain in youth: A guide to potential management strategies. *International Journal of Athletic Therapy and Training* 19(5):44–55.
47. Wells, M. 2008. Good (youth) sports: Using benefits-based programming to increase sportsmanship. *Journal of Park & Recreation Administration* 26(1):1.
48. Whisenant, W. 2008. Fairness and enjoyment in school-sponsored youth sports. *International Review for the Sociology of Sport* 43(1):91.
49. Wier, L., Miller, A., & Steiner, C. 2009. Sports injuries in children requiring hospital emergency care, 2006. HCUP Statistical Brief No. 75. www.hcup-us.ahrq.gov/reports/statbriefs/sb75.pdf
50. Youth Sports Safety Alliance. 2014. National action plan for sports safety. www.youthsportssafetyalliance.org/sites/default/files/docs/National-Action-Plan.pdf.
51. Youth Sports Safety Alliance. 2014. Youth sport safety statistics. www.youthsportssafetyalliance.org/sites/default/files/Statistics.pdf.

ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

American Academy of Pediatrics. 2009. *Care of the young athlete*. Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics.

A comprehensive guide to training, conditioning, and injury care of the young athlete.

Bompa, T. 2015. *Conditioning young athletes*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Provides coaches, instructors, teachers, and parents of future sport stars the best training advice, exercises, and programs for establishing an overall fitness base and maximizing athletic development for youth.

Hardman, A. 2010. *The ethics of sport coaching*. New York, NY: Taylor & Francis.

Critically examines this moral aspect, develops a powerful idea of what sports coaching ought to be, and argues strongly that coaches must be aware of the ethical implications of their acts.

Mangieri, H. 2016. *Fueling young athletes*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Breaks down the nutrition needs of young athletes and explains what the latest research suggests.

Lloyd, R. S., & Oliver, J. L. (Eds.). 2013. *Strength and conditioning for young athletes: Science and application*. New York, NY: Routledge.

An evidence-based introduction to the theory and practice of strength and conditioning for children and young athletes.

Rouzier, P. 2017. *The sports medicine parent advisor*. Amherst, MA: SportsMed Press.

This book uses lay term descriptions of the different sports medicine–related diagnoses along with nice illustrations of the joints and surrounding muscles.

Simon, R. 2013. *The ethics of coaching sports: Moral, social, and legal issues*. Florence, KY: Routledge.

Examines a broad range of normative or evaluative issues that arise from the role of the coach in competitive sports.

WEBSITES

Academy for Youth Sports Administrators: www.nays.org/academy

American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons Ortho Info: A Guide to Safety for Young Athletes: https://orthoinfo.aaos.org/en/staying-healthy/a-guide-to-safety-for-young-athletes/

American Academy of Pediatrics: www.aap.org

The Institute for the Study of Youth Sports: www.educ.msu.edu/ysi

KidsHealth: www.kidshealth.org

NATA Position Statement: Prevention of Pediatric Overuse Injuries: www.nata.org/sites/default/files/Pediatric-Overuse-Injuries.pdf

National Alliance for Youth Sports: www.nays.org

National Safe Kids Campaign: www.safekids.org/sports-safety-101

National Youth Sport Coaches Association: www.nays.org/coaches

National Youth Sports Safety Foundation: www.momsteam.com/national-youth-sports-safety-foundation

North American Youth Sports Institute: www.naysi.com

Parents Alliance for Youth Sports: www.nays.org/parents

Shape America: www.shapeamerica.org

Stop Sports Injuries: www.stopsportsinjuries.org/sports-injury-prevention.aspx

Youth Sports Safety Alliance: www.youthsportssafetyalliance.org

Youth Sports Network: www.myteam.com

APPENDIX A

Employment Settings for the Athletic Trainer

Opportunities for employment as an athletic trainer have changed dramatically in recent years. Athletic trainers no longer work only in athletic training clinics at the college, university, or secondary school level. The employment opportunities for athletic trainers are more diverse than ever. A discussion of the various employment settings follows.

Clinics and Hospitals

Today, more than 40 percent of certified athletic trainers are employed in clinics and hospitals—more than in any other employment setting. The role of the athletic trainer varies from one clinic to the next. Athletic trainers may be employed in an outpatient ambulatory rehabilitation clinic working in general patient care; as health, wellness, or performance enhancement specialists; or as clinic administrators. Their job may also involve ergonomic assessment, work hardening, CPR training, or occasionally overseeing drug-testing programs. They may also be employed by a hospital but work in a clinic. Other clinical athletic trainers see patients during the morning hours in the clinic. In the afternoons, athletic trainers' services are contracted out to local high schools or small colleges for practice, game, or single event coverage. For the most part, private clinics have well-equipped facilities in which to work. In many sports medicine clinics, the athletic trainer may be responsible for formulating a plan to market or promote athletic training services offered by the clinic throughout the local community.

Athletic Trainers in Physician Practices

Some athletic trainers work in clinics that are owned by physicians. Although virtually all athletic trainers work under the direction of a physician, those employed as athletic trainers in physician practices actually work in the physician's office, where patients of all ages and backgrounds are being treated. The educational preparation for athletic trainers allows them to function in a variety of domains, including injury prevention, evaluation, management and rehabilitation, health education, nutrition, training and conditioning, preparticipation physicals, and maintenance of essential documentation. Although contact with only the physically active population may not be as great as in other employment settings, the athletic trainer in a physician practice can expect regular hours, few weekend or evening responsibilities, opportunity for growth, and, in general, better pay. All these factors collectively make these positions attractive for the athletic trainer. Potentially, many new jobs can be created as physicians become more and more aware of the value that an athletic trainer in a physician practice can provide.

Industrial/Occupational Settings

It is becoming relatively common for industries to employ athletic trainers to oversee fitness and injury rehabilitation programs for their employees. The athletic trainer working in an industrial or occupational setting must have a sound understanding of the principles and concepts of workplace ergonomics, including inspecting, measuring, and observing dimensions of the work space, as well as specific tasks that are performed at the workstation. Once a problem has been identified, the athletic trainer must be able to implement proper adjustments to workplace ergonomics to reduce or minimize possible risks for injury. In addition to these responsibilities, athletic trainers may be assigned to conduct wellness programs and provide education and individual counseling. It is likely that many job opportunities will exist for the athletic trainer in industrial/occupational settings in the next few years.

Corporate Settings

Opportunities are expanding for athletic trainers to use their educational background as preparation for working in business, sales, or marketing of products that other athletic trainers may use. Athletic trainers might also be employed by a company to administer

health, wellness, and fitness programs or to provide some patient care to their employees.

Colleges or Universities

At the college or university level, clinical positions for athletic trainers vary considerably from institution to institution. In smaller institutions, the athletic trainer may be a half-time teacher in physical education and half-time athletic trainer. In some cases, if the athletic trainer is a physical therapist rather than a teacher, he or she may spend part of the time in the school health center and part of the time in athletic training. Increasingly at the college level, athletic training services are being offered to members of the general student body who participate in intramural and club sports. In most colleges and universities, the athletic trainer is full-time, does not teach, works in the department of athletics, and is paid by the institution. A number of athletic trainers working at colleges and universities are employed as faculty members. These individuals may or may not be assigned clinical responsibilities. In addition to faculty responsibilities, it is most likely that these faculty members serve as program directors and/or as researchers.

Secondary Schools

There are more than 42,000 public and private secondary schools in the United States. It would be ideal to have certified athletic trainers serve every secondary and middle school in the country. Many of the physical problems that occur later as a result of improperly managed sports injuries could be avoided if proper care from an athletic trainer had been provided in the first place. If a secondary school or middle school hires an athletic trainer, it is very often in a faculty-athletic trainer capacity. This individual is usually employed as a teacher who carries a reduced teaching load and performs athletic training duties. In this instance, compensation usually is on the basis of their teaching, a stipend as an athletic trainer, or both. Salaries for the secondary school athletic trainer are continuing to improve. Another less desirable means of obtaining secondary school athletic training coverage is using a certified graduate student from a nearby college or university. However, this practice may prevent a school from employing a certified athletic trainer on a full-time basis.

Professional Sports

Although the availability of positions for athletic trainers working at the professional level is limited, opportunities to work in this setting continue to expand. Virtually every professional team, regardless of the sport, employs at least one and occasionally as many as four certified athletic trainers. Athletic trainers work with both male and female professional teams, including football, basketball, baseball, hockey, soccer, lacrosse, softball, golf, and tennis. They are also employed in professional rodeo, auto racing (NASCAR), and wrestling. The athletic trainer for professional sports teams usually performs specific team athletic training duties for 6 to 8 months out of the year; the other 4 to 6 months are spent in off-season conditioning and individual rehabilitation. The athletic trainer working with a professional team is involved with only one sport and is paid according to contract, much as a player is. Playoff and championship money may be added to the yearly income.

Amateur/Recreational/Youth Sport

Athletic trainers are working at all levels of amateur sport. The United States Olympic Committee employs athletic trainers and interns at three training centers. The national governing body for each of the Olympic sports employs either a single athletic trainer or a group of athletic trainers to work with the national teams and developmental programs for younger athletes. Some municipal or community-based recreational programs employ athletic trainers either full-time or as independent contractors to work with participants in their programs. The Amateur Athletic Union also employs athletic trainers to cover its tournaments.

Performing Arts

A relatively new and expanding employment opportunity exists in the performing arts and entertainment industry. Athletic trainers can be found working with dance companies and theater performance groups. They are employed by Disney and the large casinos. Some touring bands even employ athletic trainers to work with their performers and road crew who sustain injuries while traveling.

The Military/Law Enforcement/ Government

The U.S. military, particularly the Navy, the Marines, and the Army, have demonstrated increased emphasis on injury prevention and health care for the troops. Treatment centers are being developed that closely resemble and, to a great extent, function as athletic training clinics. The centers are staffed by sports medicine physicians, orthopedists, athletic trainers, physical therapists, and support staff. Injured personnel are seen as soon as possible by an

athletic trainer, who evaluates an injury, makes decisions on appropriate referral, and begins an immediate rehabilitation program. Currently, over 100 athletic trainers are in the military as either active duty or reserve personnel. Occasionally, some contract positions are available. It is likely that the role of the athletic trainer in the military will increase substantially over the next several years. Opportunities are increasing for athletic trainers to become involved with local, state, and federal law enforcement groups and agencies. Athletic trainers are working with police and firefighters as well as with agencies such as the FBI. Other athletic trainers are employed by government agencies such as the U.S. Senate, NASA, and the Pentagon.

Health and Fitness Clubs

It is likely that a significant number of job opportunities for athletic trainers exist in health and fitness clubs. Some clubs may offer patient care, but it is more likely that the athletic trainer is a performance enhancement specialist or an instructor. These clubs may be a chain, a franchise, or an independent club.

APPENDIX B

Requirements for Certification as an Athletic Trainer

An athletic trainer who is certified by the Board of Certification (BOC) is a highly qualified health care professional educated and experienced in dealing with the injuries that occur with participation in sports.[1] Candidates for certification are required to have an extensive background of both formal academic preparation and supervised practical experience in a clinical setting, according to guidelines established by the Committee for Accreditation of Athletic Training Education (CAATE).[2]

THE CERTIFICATION EXAMINATION

The guidelines listed in *Focus Box B-1* have been established by the Board of Certification. Once the requirements have been fulfilled, applicants are eligible to apply for the certification examination. The certification examination is computer based. Successful performance on the certification exam leads to certification as an athletic trainer (ATC).

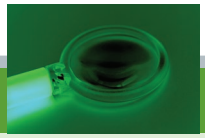
CONTINUING EDUCATION REQUIREMENTS

To ensure ongoing professional growth and involvement by the certified athletic trainer, the BOC has established requirements for continuing education.[1] To maintain certification, all certified athletic trainers must document a minimum of 50 CEUs* attained during each 2-year recertification term. CEUs may be awarded for attending symposiums, seminars, workshops, or conferences; serving as a speaker, panelist, or certification exam model examiner; authoring a research article in a professional journal; completing an NATA journal quiz; or completing postgraduate course work. All certified athletic trainers must also demonstrate proof of Professional Rescuer CPR/AED certification throughout the 2-year term.

REFERENCES

1. Board of Certification: www.bocatc.org
2. www.nata.org/about/athletic-training/obtain-certification

*Ten of the 50 required CEUs must be from approved evidence-based practice (EBP) courses or presentations.



FOCUS BOX B–1

Board of certification requirements for certification as an athletic trainer

Purpose of Certification

The Board of Certification (BOC) was incorporated in 1989 to provide a certification program for entry-level athletic trainers and recertification standards for certified athletic trainers. The purpose of this entry-level certification program is to establish standards for entry into the profession of athletic training. Additionally, the BOC has established continuing education requirements that a certified athletic trainer must satisfy to maintain current status as a BOC-certified athletic trainer.

The Process

Annually, the Board of Certification reviews the requirements for certification eligibility and standards for continuing education. The BOC utilizes annual examination development meetings during which athletic trainers and recognized experts in the science of athletic training develop, review, and validate examination items and problems. Subsequently, the Board reviews and revises the certification examination in accordance with the test specifications of the BOC Practice Analysis, which is reviewed and revised every 5 years.

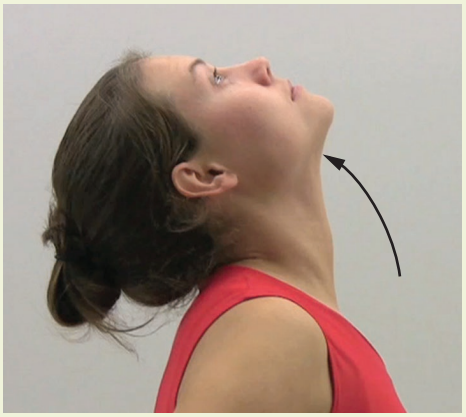
Procedures for Certification

Requirements for Candidacy for the BOC Certification Examination

1. Candidates must successfully complete an entry-level athletic training program at either the bachelor's or master's level accredited by the Committee for Accreditation of Athletic Training Education (CAATE).
2. Students who have begun their last semester or quarter of college are permitted to apply to take the certification examination prior to graduation, provided they have satisfied all academic and clinical requirements.
3. A candidate will be permitted to take the examination on the date closest to his or her date of graduation.
4. Endorsement of the examination application by the CAATE Accredited Program Director.
5. Proof of current certification in CPR/AED. (Note: CPR certification must be current at the time of initial application and at any subsequent exam retake registration.)

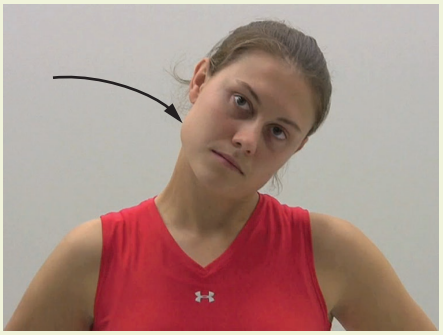
APPENDIX C

Directional Movements for Body Joints



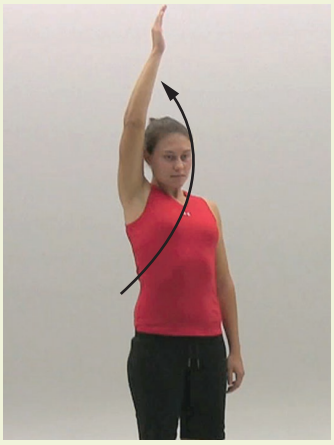
C–1 **Neck extension.** ©William E. Prentice

C–2 **Neck flexion.** ©William E. Prentice

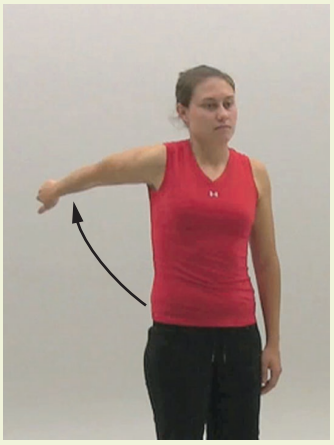


C–3 **Neck lateral side-bending.** ©William E. Prentice

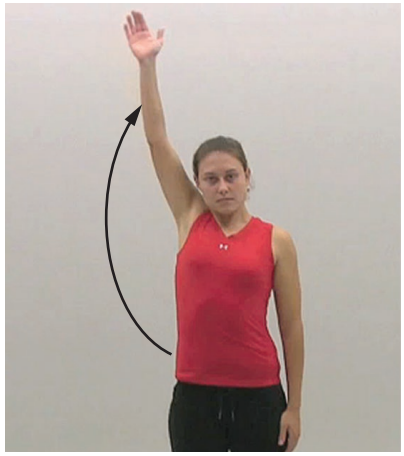
C–4 **Neck rotation.** ©William E. Prentice



C–5 **Shoulder flexion.** ©William E. Prentice



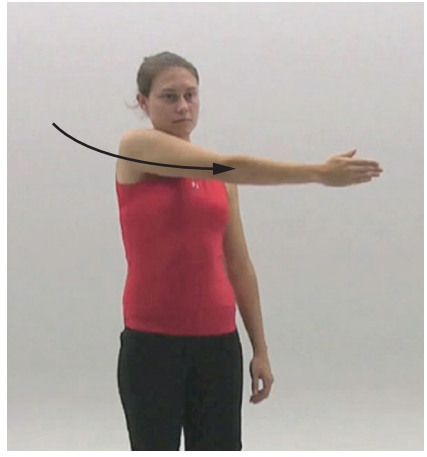
C–6 **Shoulder extension.** ©William E. Prentice



C–7 **Shoulder abduction.** ©William E. Prentice

C–8 **Shoulder adduction.** ©William E. Prentice

C–9 **Shoulder horizontal abduction.** ©William E. Prentice

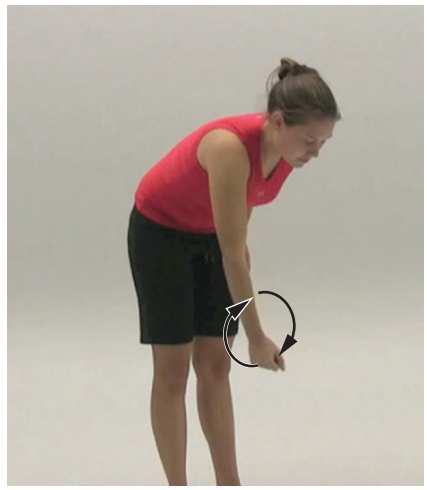


C–10 **Shoulder horizontal adduction.** ©William E. Prentice

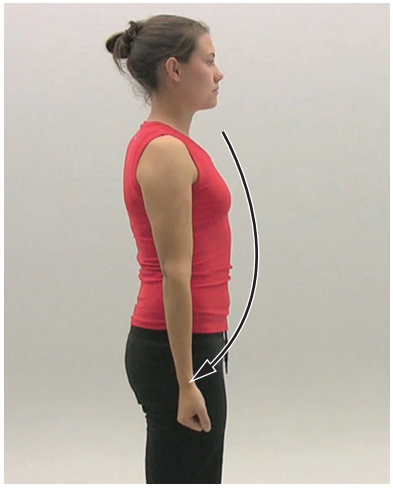
C–11 **Shoulder internal rotation.** ©William E. Prentice

C–12 **Shoulder external rotation.** ©William E. Prentice

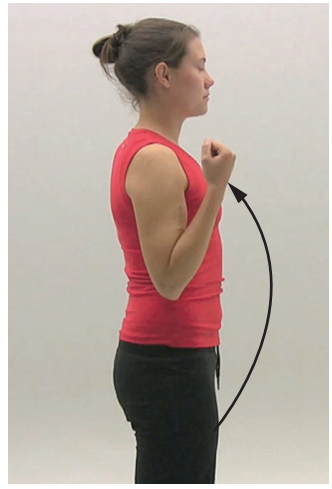
C–13 **Shoulder scaption.** ©William E. Prentice



C–14 **Shoulder circumduction.** ©William E. Prentice

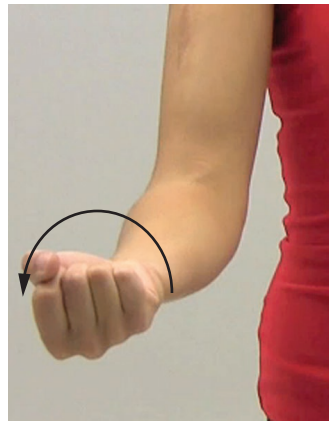


C–15 **Elbow extension.** ©William E. Prentice

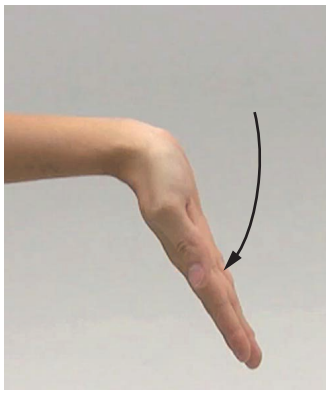


C–16 **Elbow flexion.** ©William E. Prentice

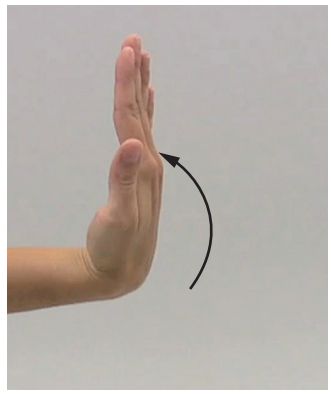
C–17 **Forearm pronation.** ©William E. Prentice



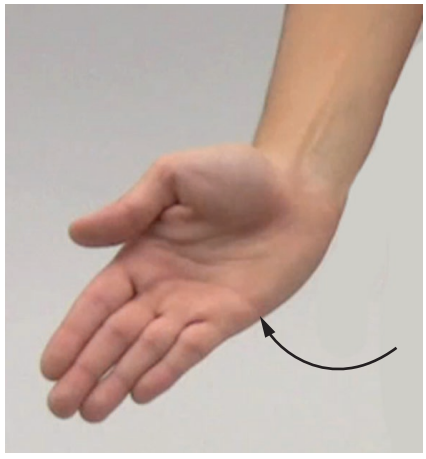
C–18 **Forearm supination.** ©William E. Prentice



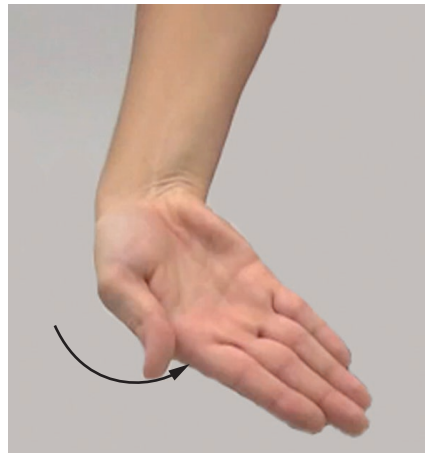
C–19 **Wrist extension.** ©William E. Prentice



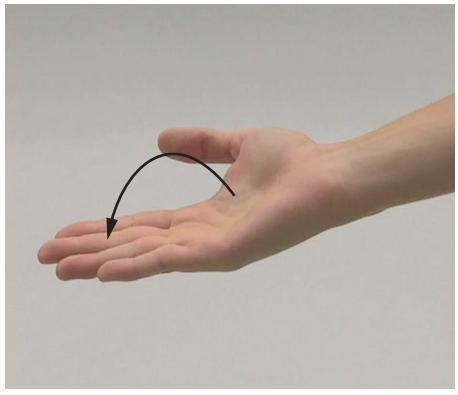
C–20 **Wrist flexion.** ©William E. Prentice



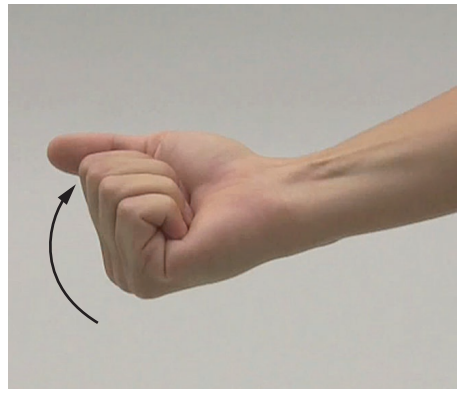
C–21 **Wrist radial deviation.** ©William E. Prentice



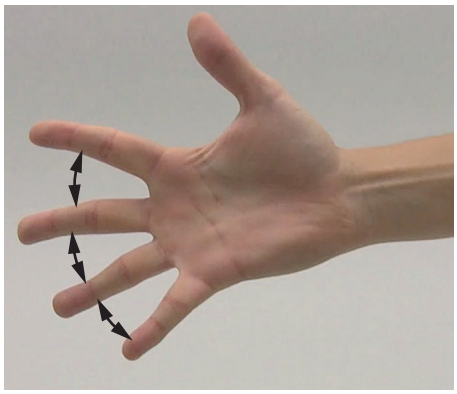
C–22 **Wrist ulnar deviation.** ©William E. Prentice



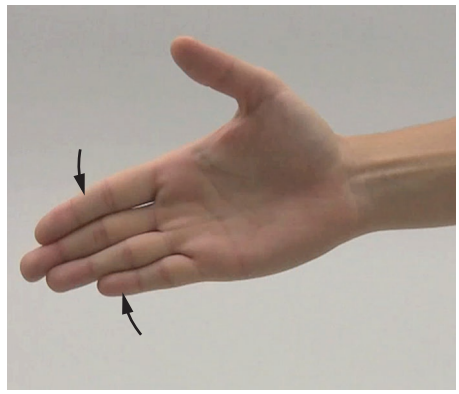
C–23 **Finger extension.** ©William E. Prentice



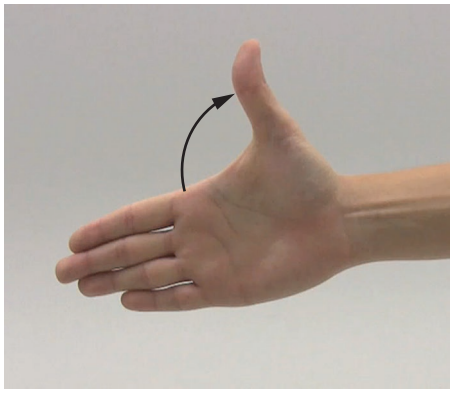
C–24 **Finger flexion.** ©William E. Prentice



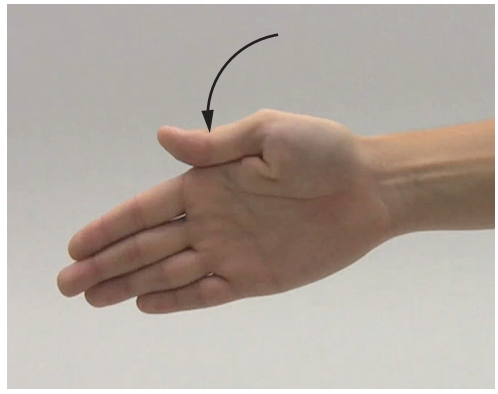
C–25 **Finger abduction.** ©William E. Prentice



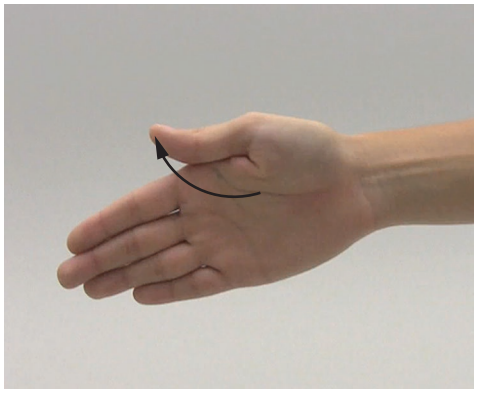
C–26 **Finger adduction.** ©William E. Prentice



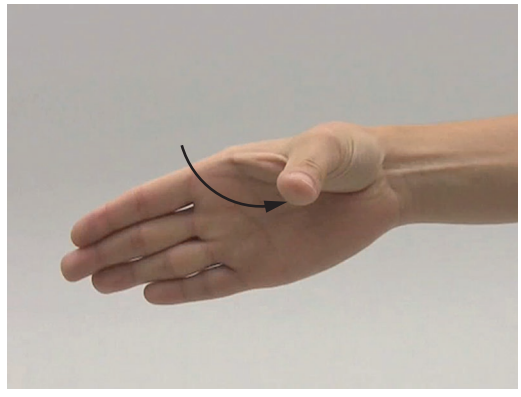
C–27 **Thumb abduction.** ©William E. Prentice



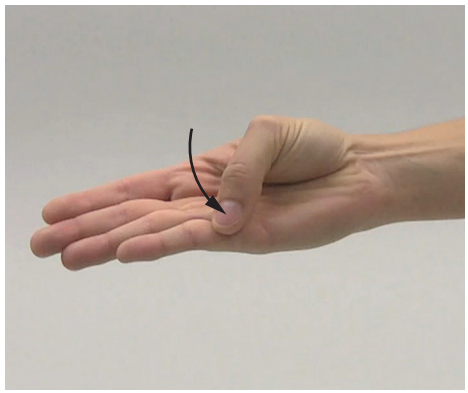
C–28 **Thumb adduction.** ©William E. Prentice



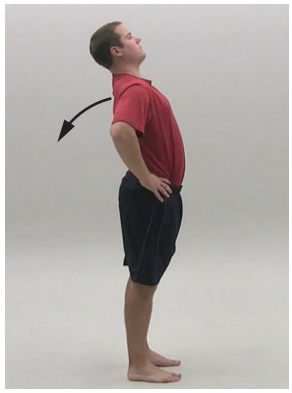
C–29 **Thumb extension.** ©William E. Prentice



C–30 **Thumb flexion.** ©William E. Prentice



C–31 **Thumb opposition.** ©William E. Prentice



C–32 **Trunk extension.** ©William E. Prentice

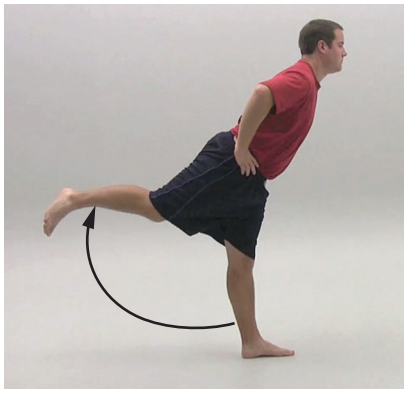
C–33 **Trunk flexion.** ©William E. Prentice

C–34 **Trunk lateral side-bending.** ©William E. Prentice

C–35 **Trunk rotation.** ©William E. Prentice

C–36 **Hip abduction.** ©William E. Prentice

C–37 **Hip adduction.** ©William E. Prentice

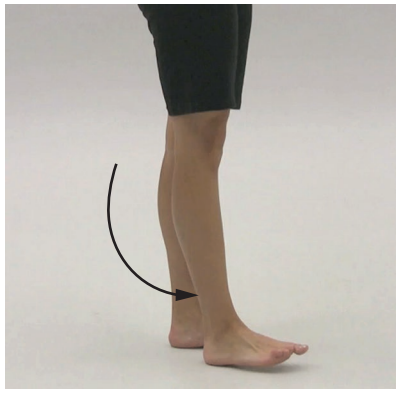


C–38 **Hip extension.** ©William E. Prentice

C–39 **Hip flexion.** ©William E. Prentice

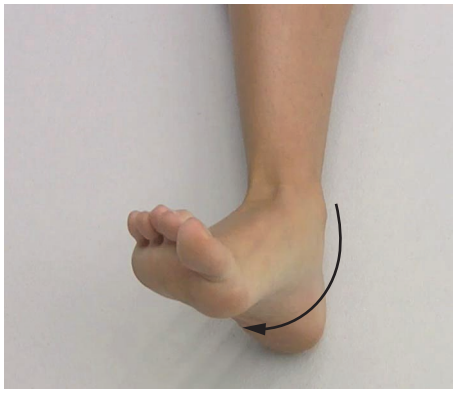
C–40 **Hip external rotation.** ©William E. Prentice

C–41 **Hip internal rotation.** ©William E. Prentice

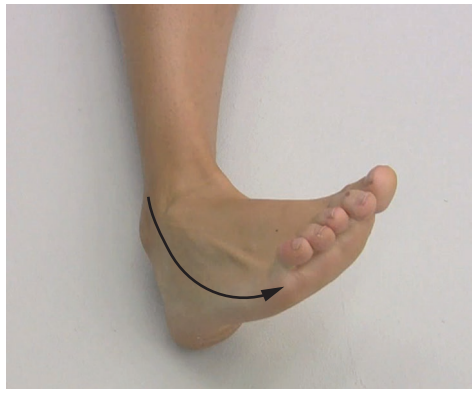


C–42 **Knee extension.** ©William E. Prentice

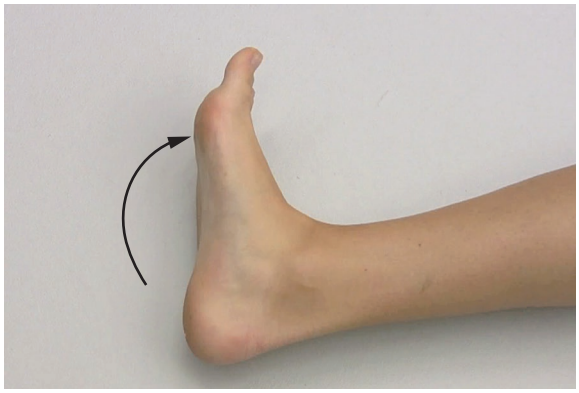
C–43 **Knee flexion.** ©William E. Prentice



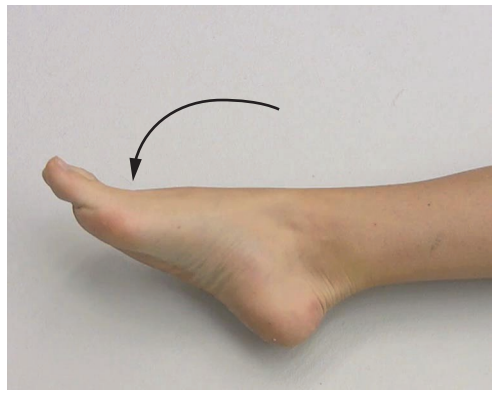
C–44 **Ankle eversion.** ©William E. Prentice



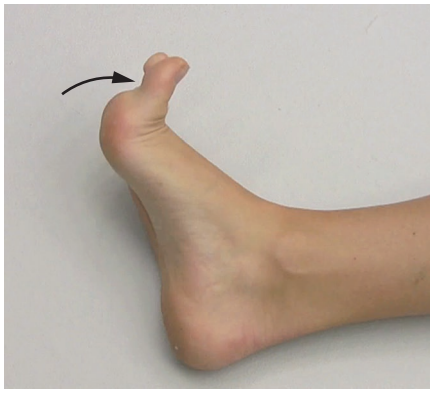
C–45 **Ankle inversion.** ©William E. Prentice



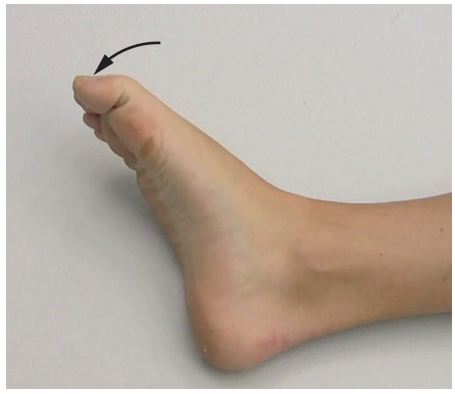
C–46 **Ankle dorsiflexion.** ©William E. Prentice



C–47 **Ankle plantar flexion.** ©William E. Prentice



C–48 **Toe extension.** ©William E. Prentice



C–49 **Toe flexion.** ©William E. Prentice

(Focus box photo): ©juliardi/Getty Images

Glossary

A

abduction A movement of a body part away from the midline of the body.

accident An act that occurs by chance or without intention.

acne vulgaris Infected hair follicles and sebaceous glands.

acute injury An injury with sudden onset and short duration.

ad libitum In the amount desired.

adduction A movement of a body part toward the midline of the body.

Affordable Care Act Mandates the availability of affordable health care insurance for every American.

agonist muscles Muscles directly engaged in contraction as related to muscles that relax at the same time.

ambulation Moving or walking from place to place.

amenorrhea Absence or suppression of menstruation.

amnesia Loss of memory.

analgesia Pain inhibition.

anaphylaxis An immediate transient allergic reaction resulting in swelling of tissues and dilation of capillaries.

anemia Lack of iron.

anesthesia Partial or complete loss of sensation.

angioedema A well-defined area of swelling, occurring as a result of an allergic response.

anorexia Lack or loss of appetite; aversion to food.

anorexia nervosa Eating disorder characterized by a distorted body image.

anoxia Lack of oxygen.

antagonist muscles Muscles that counteract the action of the agonist muscles.

anterior Before or in front of.

anterior cruciate ligament Ligament that stops external rotation.

anxiety A feeling of uncertainty or apprehension.

apophysis A bone outgrowth to which muscles attach.

arrhythmia Irregular movement.

arthroscopic examination Viewing the inside of a joint via the arthroscope, which utilizes a small camera lens.

articulation A joint.

assumption of risk The individual, through expressed or implied agreement, assumes some risk or danger will be involved in a particular undertaking.

asymmetries (body) A lack of symmetry of sides of the body.

ATC An athletic trainer certified by the Board of Certification.

atrophy Wasting away of tissue or of an organ; diminution of the size of a body part.

avascular necrosis Death of tissue resulting from a lack of blood supply.

avulsion A tearing away.

axial loading A blow to the top of the athlete's head while in flexion.

axilla Armpit.

B

ballistic stretching Older stretching technique that uses repetitive bouncing motions.

bandage A strip of cloth or other material used to hold a dressing in place.

bilateral Pertaining to both sides.

biomechanics Branch of study that applies the laws of mechanics to living organisms and biological tissues.

body composition Percent body fat plus lean body weight.

boil (furuncle) A staph infection originating in a hair follicle.

bulimia Binge-purge eating disorder.

bursae Pieces of synovial membrane that contain a small amount of fluid.

bursitis Inflammation of a bursa, especially those bursae located between bony prominences and a muscle or tendon, such as those of the shoulder or knee.

C

calcific tendinitis Deposition of calcium in a chronically inflamed tendon, especially the tendons of the shoulder.

calisthenic Exercise involving free movement without the aid of equipment.

callus New bone formation over a fracture.

calorie (large) Term used to express the fuel, or energy, value of food or the heat output of the organism.

catastrophic injury A permanent injury to the spinal cord that leaves the athlete quadriplegic or paraplegic.

cauterization A purposeful destruction of tissue.

chondromalacia A degeneration of a joint's articular surface, leading to softening.

chronic injury An injury with long onset and long duration.

circuit training Exercise stations that consist of various combinations of weight training, flexibility, calisthenics, and aerobic exercises.

circumduct Act of moving a limb such as the arm or hip in a circular motion.

closed fracture Fracture that does not penetrate superficial tissue.

collision sport Sport in which athletes use their bodies to deter or punish opponents.

commission (legal liability) Performing an act outside of an individual's legal jurisdiction.

communicable disease A disease that may be transmitted directly or indirectly from one individual to another.

concentric (positive) contraction The muscle shortens while contracting against resistance.

conduction Heating by direct contact with a hot medium.

conjunctivae Mucous membrane that lines the eyes.

contact sport Sport in which athletes make physical contact, but not with the intent to produce bodily injury.

contrecoup brain injury Condition in which, after head is struck, brain continues to move within the skull and becomes injured opposite the force.

convection Heating indirectly through another medium such as air or liquid.

conversion Heating by other forms of energy (e.g., electricity).

convulsions Paroxysms of involuntary muscular contractions and relaxations.

core Muscles that make up the lumbo-pelvic-hip complex.

core temperature Internal, or deep body, temperature monitored by cells in the hypothalamus, as opposed to shell, or peripheral, temperature, which is registered by the layer of insulation

provided by the skin, subcutaneous tissues, and superficial portions of the muscle masses.

corticosteroid A steroid produced by the adrenal cortex.

coryza Profuse nasal discharge.

crepitus A crackling feel or sound.

cryotherapy Cold therapy.

cyanosis Slightly bluish, grayish, slatelike, or dark purple discoloration of the skin due to a reduced amount of blood hemoglobin.

D

debride Removal of dirt and dead tissue from a wound.

degeneration Deterioration of tissue.

diaphragm A musculomembranous wall separating the abdomen from the thoracic cavity.

diastolic blood pressure The residual pressure when the heart is between beats.

diplopia Seeing double.

dislocation A bone is forced out of alignment and stays out until surgically or manually replaced or reduced.

distal Farthest away from a point of reference.

doping The administration of a drug that is designed to improve the competitor's performance.

dorsiflexion Bending toward the dorsum or rear; opposite of plantar flexion.

dorsum The back of a body part.

dressing A material, such as gauze, applied to a wound.

duration Length of time that an athlete works during a bout of exercise.

duty of care A requirement that a person act toward others and the public with the watchfulness, attention, caution, and prudence that a reasonable person in the circumstances would. If a person's actions do not meet this standard of care, then the acts are considered negligent, and any damages resulting may be claimed in a lawsuit for negligence.

dysmenorrhea Painful or difficult menstruation.

dyspepsia Imperfect digestion.

E

eccentric (negative) contraction The muscle lengthens while contracting against resistance.

ecchymosis Black and blue skin discoloration due to hemorrhage.

ectopic Located in a place different from normal.

ectopic bone formation Bone formation occurring in an abnormal place.

edema Swelling as a result of the collection of fluid in connective tissue.

electrolyte Solution that is a conductor of electricity.

electrotherapy Treating disease by electrical devices.

endurance The ability of the body to undergo prolonged activity.

epilepsy Recurrent paroxysmal disorder characterized by sudden attacks of altered consciousness, motor activity, and sensory perception.

epiphysis The cartilaginous growth region of a bone.

epistaxis Nosebleed.

etiology Pertaining to the cause of a condition.

eversion of the foot To turn the foot outward.

exostoses Benign bony outgrowths that protrude from the surface of a bone and are usually capped by cartilage; callus formations.

F

fascia Fibrous membrane that covers, supports, and separates muscles.

fasciitis Fascia inflammation.

fibroblast Any cell component from which fibers are developed.

fibrocartilage A type of cartilage in which the matrix contains thick bundles of collagenous fibers (e.g., intervertebral discs).

fibrosis Development of excessive fibrous connective tissue; fibroid degeneration.

flash-to-bang method Provides an estimation of how far away lightning is occurring.

folliculitis Inflammation of hair follicles.

foot pronation Combined foot movements of eversion and abduction.

foot supination Combined foot movements of inversion and abduction.

fracture Break or crack in a bone.

frequency Number of times per week that an athlete exercises.

functional strength A type of strength training that involves exercises that increase both strength and neuromuscular control.

functional strength training A type of strength training that uses concentric, eccentric, and isometric contractions in three planes simultaneously.

G

genitourinary Pertaining to the reproductive and urinary organs.

glycemic index (GI) A scale that indicates the effects of different carbohydrates on blood glucose levels.

glycogen supercompensation High carbohydrate diet.

Good Samaritan law Provides limited protection to someone who voluntarily chooses to provide first aid.

H

health insurance A contract between the insurance company and policyholder.

hemarthrosis Blood in a joint cavity.

hematoma Blood tumor.

hematuria Blood in the urine.

hemoglobin Molecules that carry oxygen in the blood.

hemorrhage Discharge of blood.

hemothorax Bloody fluid in the pleural cavity.

high-intensity interval training Alternating periods of work with active recovery.

hirsutism Excessive hair growth and/or the presence of hair in unusual places.

hyperextension Extreme stretching out of a body part.

hypermobility Mobility of a joint that is extreme.

hypertension High blood pressure; abnormally high tension.

hyperthermia Increased body temperature.

hypertrophy Enlargement of a part caused by an increase in the size of its cells.

hyperventilation Abnormally deep breathing that is prolonged, causing a depletion of carbon dioxide, a fall in blood pressure, and fainting.

hypothermia Decreased body temperature.

hypoxia Lack of an adequate amount of oxygen.

I

idiopathic Of unknown cause.

iliotibial band friction syndrome Runner's knee.

impetigo A bacterial strep infection.

injury An act that damages or hurts.

intensity Increasing the workload.

interosseous membrane Connective tissue membrane between bones.

intervertebral Between two vertebrae.

intramuscular hematoma Bleeding within a muscle.

intraoral mouth guard A protective device that fits within the mouth and covers the teeth.

intravenous Substances administered to a patient via a vein.

inversion of the foot To turn the foot inward. Inner border of the foot lifts.

ions Electrically charged atoms.

ipsilateral Situated on the same side.

ischemia Local anemia.

isokinetic exercise Resistance is given at a fixed velocity of movement with accommodating resistance.

isokinetic muscle resistance Accommodating and variable resistance.

isometric exercise Contracts the muscle statically without changing its length.

isometric muscle contraction Muscle contracts statically without a change in its length.

isotonic exercise Form of exercise that shortens and lengthens the muscle through a complete range of motion.

isotonic muscle contraction Shortens and lengthens the muscle through a complete range of motion.

J

joint Point at which two bones join together.

joint capsule Saclike structure that encloses the ends of bones in a diarthrodial joint.

K

keloid An overgrowth of collagenous scar tissue at the site of a wound of the skin.

kyphosis Exaggeration of the normal thoracic spine.

L

lactase deficiency Difficulty digesting dairy products.

lateral Pertaining to point of reference away from the midline of the body.

liability Legal responsibility for the harm one causes to another person.

lordosis Abnormal lumbar vertebral convexity.

luxation Total dislocation.

M

macerated skin Skin softened by soaking.

malaise Discomfort and uneasiness caused by an illness.

malfeasance, or an act of commission Occurs when an individual commits an act that is not legally his or hers to perform.

managed care Costs of health care are monitored closely by insurance carriers.

mechanoreceptors Located in muscles, tendons, ligaments, and joints; provide information on position of a joint.

medial Pertaining to point of reference closest to the midline of the body.

menarche Onset of menses.

meninges Any one of the three membranes that enclose the brain and the spinal cord, comprising the dura mater, the pia mater, and the arachnoid.

menorrhagia Abnormally heavy or long menstrual periods.

metabolites Products left after metabolism has taken place.

metatarsalgia Pain in the metatarsal.

metatarsophalangeal joint Joint at which the phalanges meet the metatarsal bones.

misfeasance Occurs when an individual improperly does something he or she has the legal right to do.

mononucleosis (infectious) A disease, usually of young adults, causing fever, sore throat, and lymph gland swelling.

muscle Tissue that when stimulated contracts and produces motion.

muscle contracture Abnormal shortening of muscle tissue in which there is a great deal of resistance to passive stretch.

muscle cramps Involuntary muscle contractions.

muscle guarding Muscle contraction in response to pain.

muscle soreness Pain caused by overexertion in exercise.

muscular endurance The ability to perform repetitive muscular contractions against some resistance.

muscular strength The maximum force that can be applied by a muscle during a single maximum contraction.

musculoskeletal Pertaining to muscles and the skeleton.

myositis Inflammation of muscle.

myositis ossificans Calcium deposits that result from repeated trauma.

N

necrosis Death of tissue.

negative resistance Slow eccentric muscle contraction against resistance with muscle lengthening.

negligence The failure to use ordinary or reasonable care.

neuritis Chronic nerve irritation.

neuroma Enlargement of a nerve.

NOCSAE National Operating Committee on Standards for Athletic Equipment.

noncontact sport Sport in which athletes are not involved in any physical contact.

nonfeasance, or an act of omission Occurs when an individual fails to perform a legal duty.

nystagmus A constant involuntary back and forth, up and down, or rotary movement of the eyeball.

O

occlusion Alignment of the teeth; malocclusion means that the upper and lower teeth do not line up.

omission (legal) Person fails to perform a legal duty.

open fracture Overlying skin has been lacerated by protruding bone fragments.

orthosis Used in sports as an appliance or apparatus to support, align, prevent, or correct deformities or to improve function of a movable body part.

orthotic A custom-designed insert that can be placed in the shoe and worn to correct a variety of biomechanical abnormalities that can potentially lead to injury.

osteoarthritis A wearing down of hyaline cartilage.

osteoblasts Bone-forming cells.

osteochondritis Inflammation of bone and cartilage.

osteochondritis dissecans Fragment of cartilage and underlying bone is detached from the articular surface.

osteoclasts Cells that absorb and remove osseous tissue.

osteoporosis A decrease in bone density.

P

palpate To use the hands or fingers to examine.

palpation Feeling an injury with the fingers.

papule Pimple.

paraplegia Paralysis of lower portion of the body and of both legs.

paresthesia Abnormal sensation such as numbness, prickling, and tingling.

patellar tendinosis Jumper's knee.

pathology Study of the nature and cause of disease.

pediatrician A specialist in the treatment of children's diseases.

periodization An approach to conditioning that attempts to bring about peak performance while reducing injuries and overtraining in the athlete by developing a training and conditioning program to be followed throughout the various seasons.

periosteum The fibrous covering of a bone.

pes planus Flat feet.

phalanges Bones of the fingers and toes.

phalanx Any one of the bones of the fingers and toes.

photophobia An intense intolerance of light.

plantarflexion The forepart of the foot is depressed relative to the ankle.

plica A fold of tissue within the body.

plyometric exercise Uses a quick eccentric stretch of the muscle to facilitate a concentric contraction.

pneumothorax A collapse of a lung due to air in the pleural cavity.

point tenderness Pain that is produced when the site of injury is palpated.

POLICE Acronym for protection, optimal loading, ice, compression, elevation. Treatment techniques used with acute injuries.

positive resistance Slow concentric muscle contraction against resistance with muscle shortening.

posterior Toward the rear or back.

posterior cruciate ligament A ligament that stops internal rotation.

power The ability to generate force against some resistance very rapidly.

primary assessment Initial first-aid evaluation.

prophylactic Pertaining to prevention, preservation, or protection.

proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) Stretching techniques that involve combinations of alternating contractions and stretches.

proprioceptors Organs within the body that provide the athlete with an awareness of where the body is in space (kinesthesis).

proximal Nearest to the point of reference.

psychogenic Of psychic origin; that which originates in the mind.

psychophysiological Involving the mind and the body.

psychrometer An instrument with two thermometers that is used to measure the heat index.

pump bump Another term for retrocalcaneal bursitis.

Q

quadriplegia Paralysis affecting all four limbs.

R

referred pain Pain that is felt at a point of the body other than its actual origin.

regeneration Repair, regrowth, or restoration of a part such as tissue.

residual That which remains; often used to describe a permanent condition resulting from injury or disease (e.g., a limp or a paralysis).

retrograde amnesia Memory loss for events occurring immediately before trauma.

revascularize Restoration of blood circulation to an injured area.

rhinitis Inflammation of the nasal mucus lining.

rotation Turning around an axis in an angular motion.

S

SAID principle Specific adaptations to imposed demands.

sciatica Inflammatory condition of the sciatic nerve; commonly associated with peripheral nerve root compression.

sclera White outer coating of the eye.

scoliosis A lateral deviation curve of the spine.

secondary assessment Follow-up; a more detailed examination.

seizure Sudden attack.

Sever's disease A chronic inflammation at the attachment of the Achilles tendon on the posterior calcaneous in young athletes.

shin splints Medial tibial stress syndrome; anterior lower-leg pain.

sign Objective evidence of an abnormal situation within the body.

sling psychrometer Instrument for establishing the wet-bulb, globe temperature index.

sovereign immunity Neither the government nor any of its employees can be held liable for negligence.

spasm A sudden, involuntary muscle contraction.

spica A figure-eight, with one of the two loops being larger.

spondylolisthesis Forward slipping of a vertebral body, usually a lumbar vertebra.

spondylolysis A degeneration of the vertebrae and a defect in the pars intermedia of the articular processes of the vertebrae.

sprain Injury to a ligament that connects bone to bone.

staleness Deterioration in the usual standard of performance.

standard of reasonable care Assumes that an individual is a person of reasonable and ordinary prudence.

staphylococcus A genus of micrococci, some of which are pathogenic, causing pus and tissue destruction.

static stretching Passively stretching an antagonist muscle by placing it in a maximal stretch position and holding it there.

statute of limitation A specific length of time to sue for damages from negligence.

strain A stretch tear, or rip in the muscle or its tendon.

strength Ability of a muscular contraction to exert force to move an object (dynamic) or to perform work against a fixed object (static).

streptococcus Oval bacteria that appear in a chain.

stress The positive and negative forces that can disrupt the body's equilibrium.

stress fracture A fracture at an area of periosteal irritation on the bone.

stressor Anything that affects the body's physiological or psychological condition.

stroke volume The heart's capacity to pump blood.

subcutaneous Beneath the skin.

subluxation A bone is forced out of alignment but goes back into place.

symptom Subjective evidence of an abnormal situation within the body.

syndrome Group of typical symptoms or conditions that characterize an injury, a deficiency, or a disease.

synovia A transparent lubricating fluid found in joints, bursae, and tendons.

synovitis Inflammation of a synovial membrane.

systolic blood pressure The pressure caused by the heart's pumping.

T

tendinitis Inflammation of a tendon.

tendon Tough band of connective tissue that attaches muscle to bone.

tenosynovitis Inflammation of a tendon and its synovial sheath.

tinea Ringworm; skin fungus disease.

tonic muscle spasm Rigid muscle contraction that lasts over a period of time.

tonus (muscle) Residual state of muscle contraction.

torque A twisting force produced by contraction of the medial femoral muscles that tends to rotate the thigh medially.

torsional Rotating or twisting of a body part.

tort Legal wrong committed against another.

training effect Stroke volume increases while heart rate is reduced at a given exercise load.

transitory paralysis Temporary inability to move.

traumatic Pertaining to the course of an injury or wound.

traumatic arthritis Arthritis stemming from repeated joint injury.

traumatic asphyxia Result of a violent blow to, or compression of, the rib cage, causing cessation of breathing.

trigger point Area of tenderness in a tight band of muscle.

U

urticaria Sudden vascular reaction of skin resulting in weals or papules and itching.

V

valgus Bent outward.

variable resistance Resistance is varied throughout the range of motion.

varus Bent inward.

vasoconstriction Decrease in the diameter of a blood vessel.

vasodilation Increase in the diameter of a blood vessel.

verruca Virus causing a wart.

viscera Internal organs.

volar Referring to the palm or the sole.

W

water ad libitum Unlimited access to water.

X

xiphoid process Smallest of three parts of the sternum.

Index

Note: Page numbers set in bold are defined terms appearing in the text.

A

A1C test, diabetes and, 385
ABC (airway, breathing, and circulation), 147
Abdomen, 341–345
  anatomy of, 342–343
  assessing injuries of, 343–345
  history of injuries, 344
  observation of injuries, 344
  palpation of, 344–345
  preventing injuries of, 343
  recognizing and managing injuries of, 348–352
  referred pain from, 345
Abdominal and anterior chest wall stretch exercise, 53
Abdominal brace, 335–336
Abdominal contusions, 348
Abdominal muscles, 342–343
Abdominal strains, 348
Abdominal strength, 330
Abdominal viscera, 342–343
Abrasions, 170, 172
Abscess, dental, 363
Abused prescription drugs, 399–400
Acceleration phase, of throwing, 295–296
Accident insurance, 37–38
Acclimatization, gradual, 132
Accommodating resistance, 62
Achilles tendon
  rupture of, 255
  strain, 218
  strengthening of, 243, 244
  stretching of, 55, 243, 244
  taping of, 185–186
  tendinitis, 220, 254–255
Acne vulgaris, 376
Acquired immunodeficiency virus (AIDS), 165, 391
Acromioclavicular joint, 293–294, 298, 300–301
Act of commission (malfeasance), **33**
Act of omission (nonfeasance), **33**
Active range of motion, 49
Activity specialists, 6
Acute bronchitis, 380–381
Acute compartment syndrome, 254
Acute conjunctivitis, 371
Acute exertional compartment syndrome, 254
Acute injuries
  critical management of, 153
  definition of, 212
  recognizing, 212–219
Acute-onset muscle soreness, 219
Acute torticollis, 334
Adderall, 399–400
Adductor brevis, 278, 279
Adductor longus, 278, 279
Adductor magnus, 278, 279
ADHD medications, 399–400
Adhesive tape
  elastic, 180
  nonelastic, 180
  removal of, 182–183
  storage of, 180
  tearing of, 182
  waterproof, 180
Aerobic capacity, maximum, 76–77
Aerobic exercise, 75, 77–79
Affordable Care Act (ACA), **36**–37
Agonist muscle, 49
AIDS, 165, 391
Air-filled helmets, 108
Air splints, 155
Alcohol use, 95, 399
Allergies, seasonal, 380
Ambulatory aid, 158
Amenorrhea, **388**–389
American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, 15, 406
American Academy of Pediatrics, 4, 17, 405–406
American Board of Physical Therapy, 4
American College of Sports Medicine (ACSM), 3, 4, 5, 15, 397, 406
American Council on Exercise (ACE), 5
American Dietetic Association, 104
American Heart Association, 146–147, 161
American Medical Association, 17
American Orthopaedic Society for Sports Medicine, 4, 15, 122
American Osteopathic Academy of Sports Medicine, 4
American Red Cross, 146, 161, 225
American Society for Testing Materials, 106
American Sport Education Program (ASEP), 7, 409
American Sports Medicine Institute, 15
Americans with Disabilities Act of 1991, 167
America's Health Insurance Plans, 41
Amphetamines, 395–396
Anabolic steroids, 397–398
Anaerobic exercise, 75, 79
Analgesic drugs, narcotic, 396
Anaphylaxis, **380**
Androgenic effects, steroids, 397
Androstenedione, 397–398
Anemia, **93**, 384
Anger, 202–205, 205
Angioedema, **380**
Ankle
  anatomy of, 241–243
  assessing injuries of, 245–246
  bracing of, 244–245
  footwear and, 243–244
  functional examination of, 245–246
  history of injuries, 245
  neuromuscular control in, 243, 244
  observation of injuries, 245
  palpation of, 245
  preventing injuries of, 243–245
  recognizing and managing injuries of, 246–251
  special tests for, 245, 246
  strengthening exercises for, 63–68
  taping of, 184–185, 244
Ankle and foot spica, 176–177
Ankle braces, 121
Ankle dorsiflexion, 67
Ankle eversion, 67
Ankle fractures, 155, 249–250
Ankle inversion, 67, 246, 247
Ankle sprains, 246–248
Annual reports, 26
Anomalous origin of coronary artery, 347
Anorexia athletica, 102
Anorexia nervosa, 101–102
Antagonist muscle, 49
Anterior cruciate ligament (ACL), 259, 267–268
Anterior drawer test, 245, 246, 264
Anticonvulsant medication, 385
Antioxidants, 87
Anxiety, **204**, 206
Apley's compression test, 264–265
Apophysitis, 409
Appendicitis, 351
Apprehension test, shoulder complex, 297
Arachnoid, 355
Arch taping, 183–184
Arches of foot
  anatomy of, 226, 227
  strains of, 233–234
  support for, 118, 119
Arm fractures, splinting of, 155
Arm hang exercise, 52
Arterial blood, 148
Articular cartilage, 212–213, 216
Ascorbic acid, 85
Asphyxia, traumatic, 346
Assessment of injuries
  abdomen and thorax, 343–345
  ankle, 245–246
  athletic trainer's role in, 9
  checklist for, 160
  documentation of, 24
  elbow, 306–308
  emergency, 142–161
  eye, 150–151, 356
  facility area for, 28–29
  flowchart for, 146
  foot, 229–230
  forearm, 313–314
  head, 355–357
  history of injury in, 152
  knee, 262–265
  lower leg, 251
  observation for, 152
  off-field, 152
  on-field, 145, 150–152
  palpation for, 151, 152
  primary, 145–150
  secondary, 145, 150–152
  shoulder complex, 296–298
  special tests for, 152
  spinal, 331–332
  thigh, hip, groin, and pelvis, 278–281
  wrist, hand, and fingers, 317
Assumption of risk, **35**–36
Asthma
  bronchial, 381
  exercise-induced, 381–382
Asthmatic attack, 382
ATC (athletic trainer certification), **8**

Athletes
assumption of risk, **35**–36
defined, 2
goal setting for, 205
health habits of, 19, 21
injury-prone, 203–204
insurance protecting, 36–38
psychological response to injury, 202–209
sport medicine focus on, 10–11
See also Female athletes; Male athletes; Young athletes
Athlete's foot, 377–378
Athletic administrator, 6
Athletic Equipment Manufacturers Association, 106
Athletic health care program, 16–31
checklist for, 30
developing budget for, 26–27
Emergency Action Plan in, 19
establishing rules of operation, 16–19
facility planning for, 27–29
facility policies of, 18–19
providing care in, 16–17
record keeping in, 20–26
secondary school, athletic trainer for, 17–18
Athletic pubalgia, 348
Athletic supporter, 118
Athletic trainers
certification of, 8
coaches' relationship with, 7
definition of, 8
employment settings for, 8
facility work areas for, 28–29
rehabilitation as responsibility of, 9, 192
relationship with athlete, 10–11
relationship with athlete's family, 11
relationship with injured athlete, 202, 203, 205–208
role in organized sports, 4
roles and responsibilities of, 7–9, 16–17
secondary school, 17–18
strength and conditioning coach and, 5
Atlas (first cervical vertebra), 326
Atrophy, 56
Auricular hematoma, 366–367
Automated external defibrillator (AED), 5–7, 9, 142, 143, 147, 148
Automated Neuropsychological Assessment Metrics (ANAM), 357
Avascular necrosis, 285
Avulsion fractures, 250, 289, 409–410
Avulsion of tooth, 364–365
Avulsion wounds, 170, 172
Axial loading, 333
Axis (second cervical vertebra), 326

B

Back contusions, 336
Back pain, 325, 330, 335
Back strains, 333–336
Bacterial infections
sexually transmitted, 390–391
skin, 374, 375, 376–377
Balance, regaining, 196–197
Balance tests, 356, 357
Ballistic stretching, **50**
Bandaging; *See* Dressings; Taping; Wrapping and taping
Banned drugs, 400
BAPS Board, 197
Barbells, 60–61
Baseball
chest protector, 114
face mask, 111
helmets, 110
laryngotracheal (throat) protectors, 112
medial epicondylitis in, 310–311
throwing technique in, 295–296
Baseball finger, 320–321
Basketball, flexibility in, 48
Basketball finger, 320–321
Batting helmets, 110
Battle's sign, 357
Bench press, 63
Bent-over rows, 64
Beta blockers, 396–397
Bicep curls, 64
Biceps brachii muscle, 306–307
Biceps contusions, 217
Biceps tenosynovitis, 302
Bicycle exercise, 72
Bicycle helmets, 110, 111
Bicyclist's nipples, 348
Bill of Rights, for secondary school athletes, 17–18, 412
Billing, insurance, 39
Binge eating, 100–101
Bioelectrical impedance, 989
Biohazards, 168–169
Biomechanists, 13
Black eye, 369
Bladder; *See* Urinary bladder
Blanket authorization, 21
Bleeding during pregnancy, 390
Blisters, 236, 237
Blocker's exostosis, 302–303
Blood and bleeding, 148–149
direct pressure for, 148
elevation for, 148
external, controlling, 148
internal, 148–149
pressure points for, 149
universal precautions for, 148, 166–169
venous versus arterial, 148
Blood boosting, 398–399
Blood doping, 398–399
Blood packing, 398–399
Blood pressure, 150–151, 386–387
Blood reinjection, 398–399
Blood sugar tests, 385
Bloodborne pathogens, 148, 163–170
in athletics, dealing with, 165–166
contact and dangers of, 163–164
definition of, 163
emergency action plan for, 163
equipment and supplies for handling, 168–169
policy regulation on, 166
postexposure procedures for, 169
protecting athlete from, 169
protecting caregiver from, 167–169
transmission of, 163, 165
universal precautions against, 148, 167–170
Board of Certification, 9
Bodily fluids
universal precautions against, 167–170
Body composition, **99**
Body image, 100
Body language, 206
Body temperature, 127–135, 150–151
Body weight, 98–100
Bodyweight exercise, 60, 71–73
Boil, 376
Bone spurs, 217
Bones
anatomy of, 212–213
ankle and lower leg, 241, 242
elbow, 306–307
foot, 226, 227
forearm, 312
head (skull), 354–355
knee, 258–259
pelvis, 277, 278
shoulder complex, 292, 293
spinal, 325–326
thigh, 277, 278
thorax, 341–342
wrist, hand, and fingers, 315
Bosu Balance Trainer, 197
Boutonnière deformity, 321
Boxer's fracture, 320
Boxing, ear guards in, 113
Bra(s), 115, 117, 348
Braces
abdominal, 335–336
ankle, 121, 244–245
elbow, 123, 310, 311
knee, 121–122, 261, 262
lumbar spine, 336
patellar, 275
rib, 346
shoulder, 301, 302
Brachial plexus injury, 334–335
Brain
anatomy of, 354–355
assessing injury to, 355–357
recognizing and managing injury to, 357–360
return to play after injury to, 359–360
second impact syndrome of, 360–361
Breast(s)
bra support for, 115, 117, 348
problems of, 348
Breast cancer, 388
Breathing rate, 150
Bronchitis, acute, 380–381
Bruise; *See* Contusion
Budget, 25–27
Bulumia nervosa, 101
Bump test, 245, 246
Bunions, 234–235
Burner, 219, 334–335
Burnout, 204–205
Bursae, **220**, 270
Bursitis, 220–221
knee, 270–271
olecranon, 221, 309
prepatellar, 221, 270–271
retrocalcaneal, 230–231
subacromial, 220–221, 302
Buttock pads, 116, 117
Buttock tucks, 73

C

CAB (circulation, airway, and breathing), 145, 147
Caffeine, 94–95, 396
Calcium, 87–89, 92–93, 129
Callus, in healing, **215**
Calluses, foot, 236
Caloric balance, 99
Camp counselors, 6
Canadian Standards Association (CSA), 106, 110
Cancer, 387–388
Cane, 159–160
Cantilevered shoulder pads, 114–115
Capitation, 39
Carbohydrates, 83–85, 89–90, 97–98
Cardiomyopathy, hypertrophic, 347
Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR); *See* CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation)
Cardiorespiratory endurance/fitness, 75–79
checklist for, 80
in rehabilitation, 197
training techniques for, 77–79
in young athletes, 406
Cardiovascular anomalies, 347–348
Caring image, projecting, 206, 207
Carpal bones, 315, 319
Carpal tunnel, 316, 318
Carpal tunnel syndrome, 318
Carrying angle, 308
Cascara, 94
Catastrophic insurance, 38
Cauda equina, 328–329
Cauliflower ear, 366–367
Cayenne, 94
Celiac disease, 96
Center of gravity, 277

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), 167
Cerebellum, 355
Cerebral contusion, 361
Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), 355, 386
Cerebrum, 354–355
Certified athletic trainers, 8, 17–18
Cerumen, impacted, 368
Cervical collar, 330, 333–334
Cervical dislocations, 333
Cervical fractures, 333
Cervical nerves, 329
Cervical spine, anatomy of, 325–326
Cervical spine injury
  assessing, 331–332
  moving and transported athlete with suspected, 156–157
  preventing, 329–330
  recognizing and managing, 333–335
  stabilization of, 156
Cervical sprain, 334
Cheekbone fracture, 363
Chest; *See* Thorax
Chest and shoulder stretch exercise, 53
Chicken pox, 387
Chilblain, 135
Child Sport Concussion Tool 5 (CSCAT5), 357
Children; *See* Young athletes
Chin-ups, 73
Chiropractors, 12
Chlamydia, 390–391
Chloride, 87–89, 129
Chondral separation, nasal, 365–366
Chondromalacia patella, 273
ChooseMyPlate.gov, 90
Chronic compartment syndrome, 254
Chronic injuries, 212
Chronic overuse injuries, 219–221, 309
Chronic traumatic encephalopathy (CTE), 360
Circuit training, 60, **68**–69
Circulation, airway, and breathing (CAB), 145147
Circumpubertal maturity, 21
Clavicle, 292, 293
Clavicle fractures, 298–299
Cleated shoes, 120
Cleats, 120, 261
Closed basket weave ankle taping, 184–185
Closed fracture, 213
Closed-kinetic chain exercises, 68
Club drugs, 399
Coach
  relationship with athlete, 10–11
  relationship with athlete's family, 11
  relationship with injured athlete, 202, 203, 205–208
  role in sports medicine team, 6–7
  of young athletes, qualifications of, 408
Cocaine, 399
Coccygeal pads, 116, 117
Coccyx, 277, 278, 325–327, 339
Cocking phase, of throwing, 295
Codeine, 396
Cognitive tests, 356–357
Cohesive elastic wrap, 176
Cold, common, 379, 387
Cold and cold disorders, 127, 134–135
Cold application (ice), 154, 193, 198–199, 249
Collateral ligament sprain, finger, 322
Colles' fracture, 314–315
Comminuted fractures, 214
Common cold, 379, 387
Commotio cordis, 347
Communication, with injured athlete, 206–207
Compartment syndromes, 254
Competition phase, of conditioning, 45
Complex carbohydrates, 84–85
Comprehensive core stabilization training, 58
Comprehensive insurance, 37
Compression, 154, 176–180, 193, 249
Compressive bra, 115, 117
Computerized neuropsychological assessments, 357
Concentric contraction, 56, 60–62, 195
Concussion Recognition Tool 5 (CRT5), 357
Concussions, 107, 355
  assessment for, 355–357
  Graded Symptoms Checklist for, 359
  long-term effects of, 360
  recognizing and managing, 357–360
  return to play after, 359–360
  sideline procedures for, 359–360
Conditioning
  checklist for, 80
  competition, 45
  cross training in, 45–46
  foundations of, 46
  inadequate, 44
  periodization of, **44**–46
  preparatory, 45
  principles of, 46
  therapeutic exercise versus, 192
  transition, 45
  warm-up and cool-down in, 46–47
  for young athletes, 406–407
Conduction, 128
Condyloma acuminata, 375–376
Conjunctivitis, acute, 371
Connective tissue, elasticity of, 48
Consciousness, state of, 150
  See also Unconscious athlete
Consistency, in conditioning, 46
Constipation, 383
Consultation, 11
Contact lenses, 113
Contagious viral diseases, 387
Continuous training, 77–79
Contraceptives, 390
Contract-relax techniques, 51
Contrecoup injury, 358
Contusion, 217
  abdominal, 348
  back, 336
  breast, 348
  cerebral, 360–361
  forearm, 314
  heel, 231
  iliac crest, 288–289
  kidney, 350
  knee, 269
  liver, 350–351
  myositis ossificans with, 217, 282–283, 302–303
  rib, 345
  scrotal/testicular, 351–352
  shin, 253–254
  thigh (quadriceps), 217, 281–283
  throat, 371
  upper arm, 302–303
  vulvar, 352
Convection, 128
Cool-down, 47, 406
Coordination tests, 356
Core, definition of, **57**
Core stability, reestablishing, 194–195
Core stabilization training, 57–59
Core strength, 330
Cornea, 368
Corns, 236–237
Coronary artery, anomalous origin of, 347
Costal cartilage injury, 346
Counseling, for injured athlete, 208–209
Counterforce brace, for elbow, 310, 311
Coxa plana, 287–288
CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation), 146–148
  legal issues in, 146–147
  for life-threatening injuries, 145
  techniques for, 147
  training and certification, 5–7, 9, 142, 146
  for unconscious athlete, 145
Crab lice, 391
Cramps-related
  heat, 129–130, 130
  muscle, 218
Creatine supplements, 93
Crepitus, **220**
Crisis management, 19–20
Cross-country running, fartlek technique of, 79
Cross training, 45–46
Crown of tooth, 363
Crutches, 159–160
Crystal methamphetamine, 399
Cultural trends, participation of young children, 403–404
Cup protection, 118
Custom protective equipment, 107
Cycling, helmets, 110, 111

D

Deceleration phase, of throwing, 295–296
Defective equipment, 412
Dehydration, 87, 129–131, 410
Delayed-onset muscle soreness (DOMS), 219
Delaying specialization in young athletes, 408
Dental anatomy, 363
Dental injuries, 363–365
Dental traumas, 112
Dentin, 363
Dentist, 12
Dependence, substance, 399
Depression, 206
Dermatologist, 11
Deviated septum, 366
Dexedrine, 399–400
Diabetes, 384–385
Diabetic coma, 385
Diagnosis
  athletic trainer and, 9
  documentation of, 24
  team physician and, 10
Diaphysis, 212–213, 409
Diarrhea, 383
Diet, definition, **83**
Dietary reference intake (DRI), 91–92
Dietary supplements, 91–94
  banned substances in, 400
  FDA regulation of, 92, 400
  glucose, 94
  government agency and, 92
  herbal, 93–94
  mineral, 92–93
  myths and misconceptions about, 91–92
  vitamin, 92
Dieting (weight loss), 99–100
Dinner fork deformity, 315
Diplopia, 362, 369
Direct pressure, for bleeding, 148
Discs, intervertebral, 327, 337
Disinfectants, 169–170
Dislocations, **215**–216
  cervical, 333
  elbow, 311–312
  glenohumeral, 301
  hip, 285
  lumbar, 335
  patella, 272–273
  phalangeal, finger or thumb, 322
  reduction of, 216
  toe, 234
Disqualification, 10, 21
  See also Return to play
Diuretics, 397
Documentation (record keeping), 20–26
Dong quai, 94
Doping, **395**, 398–399
Double vision, 362, 369
Dressings, for wound, 171
Drug-testing programs, 400

Drugs, 395–402
banned, 400
illegal, 399
performance-enhancing, 395–399
prescription, abused, 399–400
recreational abuse of, 399–400
Therapeutic Use Exemption for, 400
Dumbbells, 60–61
Dura mater, 355
Duration of activity, 79
Duty of care, **33**
Dying bug (exercise), 194
Dynadisc, 197
Dynamic stretching, 50–52
Dynamic warm-up, 47
Dysmenorrhea, 389
Dyspepsia (indigestion), 382–383

E

Ear(s)
anatomy of, 366–367
preventing injuries of, 354
protective equipment for, 113
recognizing and managing injuries of, 367–368
Earwax, impacted, 368
Eating disorders, 101–103, 389
Eccentric contraction, 56, **60**–62, 195
Echinacea, 94
Ecstasy (drug), 399
Elastic wraps, 154, 176–180
Elbow
anatomy of, 306–307
assessing injuries of, 306–308
functional evaluation of, 308
history of injuries, 307–308
observation of injuries, 308
palpation of, 308
preventing injuries of, 308–309
protective equipment for, 123, 308–309
recognizing and managing injuries of, 309–312
rehabilitation of, 310
special tests for, 308, 309
strengthening exercises for, 63–68, 309
taping of, 187
"Tommy John" surgery for, 310
Elbow dislocation, 311–312
Elbow figure-eight wrap, 179
Elbow fractures, 155, 312
Elbow hyperextension, 308
Elbow sprains, 309–310
Electrolytes, 87–89, 129, 132
Elevation
for bleeding control, 148
for musculoskeletal injury, 154, 193, 249
for shock, 149
Emergency Action Plan, 19, 142–144, 163
Emergency medical specialists (EMS), 13, 143
Emergency medical technicians (EMTs), 144
Emergency phones, 19, 143
Emergency situations, 142–161
athletic trainer and, 9
blood and bleeding in, 148–149
bloodborne pathogen precautions in, 163
checklist for, 160
consent form for treating minors in, 144–145
cooperation between care providers in, 144
CPR in, 146–148
critical management of acute injuries in, 153
definition of, 142
flowchart for, 146
immediate treatment of musculoskeletal injury in, 153–154
life-threatening injuries in, 145
moving and transporting injured athlete in, 155–160
off-field injury assessment in, 152
on-field injury assessment in, 145, 150–152
parent notification in, 144
planning for, 19, 142–144
primary survey in, 145–150
secondary survey in, 145, 150–152
shock in, 149–150
unconscious athlete in, 145, 356, 358
vital signs in, 150, 151
Endurance
cardiorespiratory, 75–79
glycogen loading for, 98
muscular, 55–57, 62–63
restoring, in rehabilitation, 195–196
in young athletes, 406
Endurance training, 62–63
Energy, from foodstuffs, 89–90
Energy drinks, 95
Enjoyment, by young athletes, 407–408
Environmental conditions, 127–139
checklist for, 137
cold (hypothermia), 127, 134–135
heat (hyperthermia), 127–133
lightning and thunderstorms, 136–137
sun overexposure, 135–136
for young athletes, 413
Ephedrine, 92, 93–94
Epicondylitis, 308, 309, 310–311
Epidural hematoma, 361
Epilepsy, 385–386
Epiphysis, 212–213, 409
Epistaxis, 362, 366
Equipment
defective, 412
definition of, 26
fixed and nonfixed, 26
for handling blood/bodily fluids, 168–169
inventory of, 25–26
ordering of, 26
product liability over, 36
safety standards for, 105–106
for young athletes, 412
See also Protective equipment
Equipment personnel, 13
Erector spinae, 328, 330
Essential nutrients, 84
Evaporation, 128
Eversion sprains, ankle, 247, 248
Examination, athletic trainer, 9
Exercise-associated muscle (heat) cramps, 129–130
Exercise-induced asthma (EIA), 381–382
Exercise machines, 60–61
Exercise physiologists, 12
External bleeding, 148
Exertional heat exhaustion, 130–131, 130
Exertional heatstroke, 130, 131
Exostosis**, 230**, 234, 302–303
Eye(s)
anatomy of, 368
assessing function of, 150–151, 356
foreign body in, 370
preventing injuries of, 354
protective equipment for, 113–114
recognizing and managing injuries of, 368–370
Eyebrow lacerations, 363

F

Face
anatomy of, 355, 362
preventing injuries of, 354
protective equipment for, 111–114, 354
recognizing and managing injuries of, 362–363
Face guards, 111–112
Facial lacerations, 363
Fall on the outstretched hand (FOOSH), 308, 311–312, 314–315, 316, 319
Fallen arches, 233–234
Falling technique, 295
False vertebrae, 325
Family, importance in sports medicine, 11
Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act (FERPA), 24
Family medicine physician, 11
Fartlek training, 79
Fast food, 97, 98
Fast-twitch fibers, 56–57
Fat(s), 83–84, 85, 89–90
Fat loading, 98
Fat-soluble vitamins, 85, 86
Fatigue, aerobic capacity and, 76
Fear, 203–204, 206
Female athletes
ACL injuries in, 267
anabolic steroid use by, 397–398
anemia in, 93
body composition of, 99
body temperature regulation in, 133
bone health of, 92
contraceptives for, 390
eating disorders in, 101–102
gynecologic injuries in, 352
menstrual irregularities in, 388–389
osteoporosis in, 89, 389
pregnant, 390
sports bras for, 115, 117
strength training for, 74–75
young, matching of, 405–406
Female athletic triad, 102, 389–390
Femoral fracture, acute, 284
Femoral hernia, 348–349
Femur, anatomy of, 258, 259, 277, 278
Fencing, face protection in, 111
Feverfew, 94
Fibroblastic repair phase, of healing, 222, 223
Fibroplasia, 222
Fibula, 241, 242, 258, 259
Fibular fractures, 250, 251–252
Field hockey, protective equipment in, 114, 121
Field kit, 26, 28
Fifth metacarpal fracture, 320
Fifth metatarsal (Jones) fracture, 232
Figure-eight wraps, 179–180
Fingers
anatomy of, 315–316
assessing injuries of, 317
history of injuries, 316
observation of injuries, 317
palpation of, 317
recognizing and managing injuries of, 320–323
taping of, 188–189
First aid
certification in, 5–6
on-field (emergency), 150–152
rehabilitative impact of, 193
Fitness professionals, on sports medicine team, 4–6
Fitness training, 44–82
cross training in, 45–46
flexibility in, 47–55
periodization in, **44**–46
warm-up and cool-down in, 46–47
Fixed equipment, 26
Flexibility, 47–55
assessment of, 49–50
body structures limiting, 48–49
definition of, 47
extreme, activities requiring, 48
performance link to, 48
specificity of, 47
strength training and, 55
stretching exercises for, 52–55
stretching techniques for, 50–52
in young athletes, 406
Flexor digitorum profundus tendon rupture, 321
Fluid replacement, 87, 129, 131–133, 410–411
Flys, 64
Folliculitis, 376
Follow-through phase, of throwing, 295–296
Food and Drug Administration (FDA), 92, 400

Food labels, 91
Food poisoning, 383
Foot, 226–240
  anatomy of, 226–229
  assessing injuries of, 229–230
  history of injuries, 229–230
  observation of injuries, 230
  palpation of, 230
  preventing injuries of, 228–229
  recognizing and managing injuries of, 230–238
  tinea of, 377–378
Foot and ankle spica, 176–177
Football
  eye guards, 113–114
  face mask, 111
  forearm contusions in, 314
  helmets, 107–110
  shoes, 120
  shoulder pads, 114–116
  tackling technique in, 329–330
  throwing technique in, 295–296
  upper arm contusions in, 302–303
Footwear, 118–121
  blisters and, 236
  bunions and, 235
  corns and, 236–237
  ingrown toenails and, 238
  injury prevention and, 228–229, 243–244, 261
  knee injuries and, 261
  Morton's neuroma and, 235
  orthotics, 120–121, 228–229
  shoes, 118–120
  socks, 118
  turf toe and, 236
Forearm
  anatomy of, 312–313
  assessing injuries of, 313–314
  history of injuries, 313
  observation of injuries, 313
  palpation of, 313–314
  preventing injuries of, 308–309
  recognizing and managing injuries of, 314
Forearm fractures
  Colles', 314–315
  shaft, 314
Forearm splints, 314
Forearm strains, 314
Foreign body, in eye, 370
Forward lunge exercise, 54
Fractures, **212**–215
  ankle, 155, 249–250
  arm, 155
  avulsion, 250, 289, 409–410
  cervical, 333
  clavicle, 298–299
  closed, 213
  Colles', 314–315
  comminuted, 214
  elbow, 155, 312
  emergency splinting of, 154–155
  femoral, acute, 284
  fibular, 250, 251–252
  fifth metacarpal (boxer's), 320
  forearm shaft, 314
  greenstick, 214
  growth plate, 409
  hamate, 319
  hand, 155
  healing of, 213–215
  humerus, 299
  Jones, 232
  leg, 155
  linear, 214
  lumbar vertebral, 335
  mandible, 362
  metatarsal, 232–233
  nasal, 365–366
  oblique, 213, 214
  open, 213
  orbital, 369
  patella, 272
  pelvic, 155, 289
  phalanx (hand), 322
  rib, 345–346
  scaphoid, 319
  shoulder, 155
  skull, 357
  Smith's, 315
  spiral, 213, 214
  stress, 215, 252
  tibial, 251–252
  toe, 234
  tooth, 364
  transporting athlete with, 155–160
  transverse, 213, 214
  zygomatic complex (cheekbone), 363
Free weights, 60–61, 195
Frequency, in training, 62–63, 78
Frostbite, 135
Frostnip, 134
Full return to activity, criteria for, 199–200
Functional progressions, in rehabilitation, 197–198
Functional strength training, 60, 71–**74**
Functional testing, 198
Fungal infections, skin, 374, 375, 377–378
Furuncle, 376

G

Gallstones, 351
Gamekeeper's thumb, 321–322
Garcinia cambogia, 94
Garlic, 94
Gastritis, 383
Gastroenteritis, 383
Gastrointestinal bleeding, 383
Gastrointestinal disorders, 382–383
Gatorade Sports Science Institute, 104, 138
Gender
  and matching of young athletes, 405–406
Genital herpes, 391
Genital warts, 391
Genitalia protection, 118
German measles, 387
Gingivitis, 363
Ginkgo biloba, 94
Ginseng, 94
Girdle-style hip pads, 116, 117
Glasses, 113
Glasses guards, 113–114
Glenohumeral joint
  anatomy of, 292–293
  dislocation of, 301
Gloves
  for protection against bloodborne pathogens, 167–168
  for protection against injury, 123, 124
Glucagon, 97
Glucose supplements, 94
  diabetes and, 385
Gluten, 96
Gluten-free diets, 96
Glycemic index (GI), **96**
Glycogen supercompensation, **98**
Goal setting, 205
Golfer's elbow (medial epicondylitis), 308, 309, 310–311
Gonorrhea, 390–391
Good Samaritan law, **34**, 146
Gracilis, 278, 279
Grand mal seizures, 385. *See also* Epilepsy
Great toe, taping of, 184
Greenstick fractures, 214
Groin
  anatomy of, 277–280
  assessing injuries of, 278–281
  history of injuries, 280
  observation of injuries, 280
  palpation of, 280
  preventing injuries of, 281
  protective equipment for, 118
  recognizing and managing injuries of, 284–288
  tinea of, 377–378
Groin strain, 286–287
Groin stretch exercise, 54
Groin wrap, 177–178
Growth hormone, 397–398
Growth plate fractures, 409
Guarana, 94
Gynecological injuries, 352
Gynecologist, 11
Gynecomastia, 397

H

Hallucinogenic stimulants, 399
Hallux valgus deformity, 234–235
Hamate fracture, 319
Hammertoes, 236–237
Hamstring curls, 67
Hamstring muscle group
  anatomy of, 260
  strains of, 218, 283–284
  stretching of, 51, 52, 54, 281
Hand
  anatomy of, 315–316
  assessing injuries of, 317
  history of injuries, 316
  observation of injuries, 317
  palpation of, 317
  recognizing and managing injuries of, 317–323
  taping of (thumb and fingers), 188–189
Hand and wrist figure-eight wrap, 179–180
Hand fractures, splinting of, 155
Hand protection, 123, 124
Hands-only CPR, 147
Hank's Balanced Salt Solution (HBSS), 365
Hard corn, 236–237
Hard-shell pads, 189
Hay fever, 380
Head
  anatomy of, 354–355
  assessing injuries of, 355–357
  history of injuries, 356
  observation of injuries, 356
  palpation of, 356
  preventing injuries of, 354
  protective equipment for, 107–111
  special tests for, 356–357
Headaches, migraine, 362
Headminder's Concussion Resolution Index (CRI), 357
Healing process, 213–215, 222–223
  fibroblastic repair phase, 222, 223
  inflammatory response phase, 222
  maturation-remodeling phase, 222, 223
Health care administration, athletic trainer, 9
Health care facility
  area required for, 28–29
  checklist for, 30
  cleanliness of, 18–19, 20
  location of, 28
  organization of areas in, 28–29
  planning considerations for, 27–29
  policies of, 18–20
  rules of operation, 16–19
  storage in, 29
Health foods, 95
Health habits, 19, 21
Health insurance, **36**–38
Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA), 11
Health maintenance organizations (HMOs), 38
Heart
  cardiorespiratory endurance and, 75–79
  exercise effect on, 76

function of, 76
Valsalva effect on, 60
Heartburn, 382–383
Heart rate, 77–79, 150
Heart rate reserve (HRR), 78
Heat and heat illnesses, 127–133
acclimatization to heat, 132
exercise-associated muscle (heat) cramps, 129–130, 130
heat exhaustion, 130–131, 130
heat stress, 127–128
heat syncope, 129, 130
heatstroke, 130, 131
hyponatremia, 132
prevention of illnesses, 131–133
susceptibility to illnesses, 133
uniforms and, 133
weight records in, 133
Heat cramps, 129–130
Heat gain and loss, 128
Heat index, 128–129
Heat treatment, 199
Heel bruise, 231
Heel counters, 118, 119
Heel cups, 121, 231–232
Heel pads, 181–182
"Heel wedges," 119
Helmets, 107–111, 354
baseball/softball, 110
cycling, 110, 111
football, 107–110
ice hockey, 107–108, 110
lacrosse, 110–111
safety standards for, 106, 107
Hematoma
auricular, 367
epidural, 361
iliac crest (hip pointer), 288–289
orbital, 369
subdural, 361
subungual, 238, 322–323
Hemianopia, 362
Hemoglobin, **384**
Hemorrhage, 148–149
Hemothorax, 346–347
Hepatitis B (HBV), 163–165
Hepatitis B vaccine, 164
Hepatitis C (HCV), 163–165
Herbal supplements, 93–94
Hernia, 348–349
Herniated lumbar disc, 337
Heroin, 399
Herpes gladiatorum, 375
Herpes simplex, 374–375
type 1, 375
type 2, 375
Herpes zoster, 374–375
High ankle sprains, 247–248
High blood pressure, 386–387
High-intensity interval training, **79**
Hip
anatomy of, 277–280
assessing injuries of, 278–281
history of injuries, 280
observation of injuries, 280
palpation of, 280
preventing injuries of, 281
problems in adolescent athlete, 287–288
protective equipment for, 116, 117
recognizing and managing injuries of, 284–288
special tests for, 280–281
strengthening exercises for, 63–68
Hip abductors, 278–280
Hip adductors, 278–280
Hip dislocation, 285
Hip extensors, 278–281
Hip flexors, 278–280
Hip labral tear, 285
Hip lateral rotation, 66
Hip medial rotation, 66
Hip pads, 116, 117
Hip pointer, 288–289
Hip rotators, 278–280
Hip spica, 178
Hip sprain, 284–285
HIPAA, 11
Hirsutism, **398**
History of injury, 152
HIV, 163–167
HMOs, 38
Hockey; *See* Field hockey; Ice hockey
Hockey Equipment Certification Counsel, 106
Hold-relax techniques, 51
HOPS (history, observation, physical examination, and special tests), 152
Hot packs, 199
Human growth hormone (HGH), 397–398
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), 163–167
Humerus, 292, 293, 306–307
Humerus fractures, 299
Hyaline cartilage, 216
Hydration, 87, 129, 131–133
Hydrocollator packs, 199
Hyperesthesia, 219
Hyperinsulinemia, 97
Hypertension, 386–387
Hypertension, pregnancy-induced, 390
Hyperthermia, **127**–133
Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, 347
Hypertrophy, 56, 57
in female athlete, 74–75
Hypertrophy/endurance phase, 45
Hyphema, 370
Hypoesthesia, 219
Hyponatremia, 132
Hypothermia, **127**, 134–135

I

Ice (ice packs or bags), 154, 193, 198–199, 249
Ice hockey
eye guards, 113–114
face mask, 111–112
gloves, 123, 124
helmets, 107–108, 110
laryngotracheal (throat) protectors, 112
shoulder pads, 114–116
thorax protector, 114
Iliac crest contusion, 288–289
Iliotibial band friction syndrome, **271**–272
Illegal drug use
cocaine, 399
crystal methamphetamine, 399
ecstasy, 399
heroin, 399
marijuana, 399Illnesses, 374–394
Immediate care
athletic trainer and, 9
for musculoskeletal injury, 153–154
for skin wounds, 171–172
for swelling control, 193, 249
Immediate PostConcussion Assessment and Cognitive Test (ImPACT), 357
Impacted cerumen, 368
Impetigo, 376
In-season conditioning, 45
Incisions, 170, 172
Incline press, 63
Incompetent cervix, 390
Indemnity plan, 39
Indigestion, 382–383
Individuality, in conditioning, 46
Infection(s)
contagious diseases, 387
skin, 374–378
Infection prevention, 18, 148, 167–170
Infectious mononucleosis, 383–384, 387
Inflammation, 219, 222–223
Inflammatory response phase of healing, 222
Influenza, 380, 387
Infraspinatus muscle, 293–294, 302–303
Ingrown toenails, 237–238
Inguinal hernia, 348–349
Inhalers, for asthma, 381–382
metered-dose inhaler, 382
Injuries
acute (traumatic), 153, 212–219
athletic trainer's role in, 7–9
chronic, 212
chronic overuse, 219–221, 309
flexibility and, 47
history, 152
predictors of, 203–205
prevention (See Prevention of injuries)
proven interventions, 405
psychological response to, 202–209
recognizing, 2, 9, 212–225
severity classification of, 202–203
shoes and, 120
warm-up and, 47
weak core and, 58
in young athlete, 409–410
See also Assessment of injuries; Prevention of injuries
Injury-prone athlete, 203–204
Injury reports, 24, 25
Innominate bones, 277, 278
Insulin, 385
Insulin shock, 385
Insurance
checklist for, 39
to protect athlete, 36–38
to protect professional, 39
Insurance billing, 39
Insurance information form, 37
Intensity, in exercise and training, 46, 62, 75, 78–79
Intercostal muscle, injuries of, 346
Internal hemorrhage, 148–149
Internist, 11–12
Interval training, high-intensity, 79
Intervertebral articulations, 327
Intervertebral discs, 327, 337
Intracranial bleeding, 360–361
Intrauterine device (IUD), 390
Intrauterine growth retardation, 390
Inventory, 25–26
Inversion sprains, ankle, 246, 247
Iron supplements, 93
Irregular periods, 388–389
Isokinetic exercise, 60, **68**, 195–196
Isometric contraction, 56
Isometric exercise, **59**–60, 195
Isotonic contractions, 60–62
Isotonic exercise, **61**

J

"Jammed" finger, 322
Javelin, throwing technique for, 295–296
Javelin-thrower's elbow (medial epicondylitis), 308, 309, 310–311
Jersey finger, 321
Jock rash, 377–378
Jockstrap, 118
Jog, 47
Joint(s)
bursitis, 220–221
dislocations of, 215–216
flexibility of, 47–55
range of motion, 49
sprains and, 216–217
subluxations of, 215–216
synovial, 216
Jones fracture, 232
Jumper's knee, 273–274
Junk foods, 91, 97, 98

K

Kava, 94
Kehr's sign, 350
Kidney contusion, 350
Kinesio tape, 189
Knee, 258–276
  anatomy of, 258–261
  assessing injuries of, 262–265
  functional tests of, 265
  history of injuries, 262–263
  observation of injuries, 263
  palpation of, 263
  POLICE technique in injuries, 265, 269
  preventing injuries of, 261
  recognizing and managing injuries of, 265–274
  recurrent or chronic injury of, 262–263
  rehabilitation of, 261
  special tests for, 263–265
  taping of, 186–187
Knee braces, 121–122, 261, 262
Knee plica, 269–270
Knee sprains, 265–268
Kyphosis, 296, 332

L

Lace pads, 181–182
Lacerations, 170, 172
  eyebrow, 363
  facial, 363
Lachman's test, 264
Lacrosse
  chest protector, 114
  eye guards, 113–114
  face mask, 111
  gloves, 123, 124
  helmets, 110–111
  laryngotracheal (throat) protectors, 112
Lactase deficiency, **92**
Laryngotracheal (throat) protection, 112
Last, of shoe, 118, 119
Lat pull-downs, 64
Lateral collateral ligament (LCL) of knee, 260, 266–267
Lateral epicondylitis, 308, 309, 310
Lateral longitudinal arch, 226, 227
Lateral meniscus, 258–259, 268–269
Lateral trunk stretch exercise, 54
Laundry, 169
Learning concerns, young athletes, 407–408
Leg; *See* Lower leg; Upper leg
Leg fractures, splinting of, 155
Leg lifts, 65, 66, 73
Leg pulls, 65
Legal Information Institute at Cornell, 41
Legal issues, 32–41
  assumption of risk, **35**–36
  checklist for decreasing litigation risk, 34–35
  CPR, 146–147
  Good Samaritan law, **34**
  negligence, **32**–34
  protective equipment, 106–107
  rehabilitation, 192
  standard of reasonable care, **32**–34
  statute of limitations, **34**
  torts, **33**
Legg–Perthes disease, 287–288
Liability
  definition of, **32**
  insurance for, 39
  product, 36
Life support, unconscious patient, 145
Life-threatening injuries, 145
Ligament(s)
  ankle and lower leg, 241–243
  elasticity of, 48
  elbow, 306–307
  foot, 226
  hip, 277, 278
  knee, 259–260
  shoulder complex, 292–293
  vertebral column, 327–328
  wrist, 316
Ligament sprains, 216–217
Lightning, 136–137
Lightning detectors, 136–137
Linear fractures, 214
Linebacker's arm, 302–303
Lipids (fats), 83–84, 85, 89–90
Liquid food supplements, 97
Listening, to injured athlete, 206
Little League elbow (medial epicondylitis), 308, 309, 310–311
Liver
  anatomy of, 342–343
  contusion of, 350–351
Loading, glycogen, 98
Longitudinal arch
  lateral, 226, 227
  medial, 226, 227
Longitudinal arch strain, 233–234
Loose bodies, knee, 271
Lordosis, 332
Low back muscle strains, 335–336
Low back pain, 325, 335
  prevention of, 330
Low back twister exercise, 54
Lower extremity
  protective equipment for, 118–123
  splinting of, 155
Lower leg
  anatomy of, 241–243
  assessing injuries of, 251
  footwear and, 243–244
  history of injuries, 251
  observation of injuries, 251
  palpation of, 251
  preventing injuries of, 243–245
  protective equipment for, 121, 122
  recognizing and managing injuries of, 251–255
  special tests for, 251
Lower leg spiral wrap, 177
Lower-limb fractures, splinting of, 155
Lumbar nerves, 329
Lumbar spine
  anatomy of, 326–327
  assessing injuries of, 331–332
  preventing injuries of, 330
  recognizing and managing injuries of, 335–338
Lumbar sprains, 336
Lumbar vertebral fracture/dislocation, 335
Lung injuries, 346–347
Luxation of tooth, 364–365

M

Ma huang (ephedrine), 92, 93–94
Macronutrients, 83–84
Magnesium, 87–89, 129
Malaise, **379**
Male athletes
  anabolic steroid use by, 397–398
  body composition of, 99
  body temperature, regulation in, 133
  cup protection for, 118
  eating disorders in, 101
Malfeasance, **33**
Malleolar fractures, 249–250
Mallet finger, 320–321
Managed care, **36**, 38–39
Mandible fracture, 362
Manual conveyance, 158
March fractures, 232–233
Marfan's syndrome, 347
Marijuana, 399
Massage therapists, 13
Maté (CNS stimulant), 94
Material durability standards, 105–106
Maturation-remodeling phase, of healing, 222–223
Maturity assessment, 21, 405–406
Maximum aerobic capacity, 76–77
Maximum heart rate (MHR), 78
McBurney's point, 351
Measles, 387
Mechanoreceptors, **216**
Medial collateral ligament of elbow, sprains of, 309–310
Medial collateral ligament (MCL) of knee, 260, 265–266
Medial epicondylitis, 308, 309, 310–311
Medial longitudinal arch, 226, 227
Medial meniscus, 258–259, 268–269
Medial tibial stress syndrome, 252–253
Median nerve compression, 316, 318–319
Medicaid, 38
Medical conditions, 374–394
Medical histories, 20–21
  compilation of, 9–10
Medical records, 11, 21–24
Medicare, 38
Medulla oblongata, 355
Menarche, 388
Meninges, 355
Meningitis, 386
Meniscal tears, 268–269
Meniscus, 216, 258–259, 268–269
Menstrual irregularities, 388–389
Metacarpal bones, 315
Metacarpophalangeal (MCP) joints, 315
Metatarsal arch, 226, 227
Metatarsal arch strain, 233
Metatarsal bones, 226, 227
Metatarsal fractures, 232–233
Metatarsalgia, **233**
Metered-dose inhaler (MDI), 382
Methamphetamine, crystal, 399
Methicillin, 377
Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), 18, 171, 377
Micronutrients, 84
Middle ear infection, 368
Migraine headaches, 362
Military press, 63
Mineral supplements, 92–93
Minerals, 83–84, 87, 88
Minisquats, 68
Misfeasance, 33
Modified push-ups, 71
Mononucleosis, infectious, 383–384, 387
Morphine, 396
Morton's neuroma, 235
Morton's toe, 232
Motivation, 46, 205
Mouth guards, 112–113
Moving injured athlete, 155–160
MRSA, 18, 171, 377
Mumps, 387
Muscle(s)
  abdominal and thoracic, 342
  agonist and antagonist, 49
  ankle and lower leg, 241–243
  atrophy of, 56
  contraction of, 56, 60–62, 195
  elasticity of, 48–49
  elbow, 306–307
  fast-twitch and slow-twitch, 56–57
  foot, 226–229
  forearm, 313
  hip and groin, 278–280
  hypertrophy of, 56, 57
  knee, 260–261
  shoulder complex, 293–295
  size of, 56
  spinal, 328–329
  thigh, 277–279
  trigger point in, **48**

wrist and hand, 316–318
"Muscle bound," 55
Muscle cramps, **218**
Muscle guarding, **218**
Muscle (heat) cramps, exercise-associated, 129–130
Muscle soreness, **219**
Muscle strains, 217–218
Muscle temperature during warm-up, 47
Muscle tone, 74–75
Muscular endurance, **56**, 62–63
Muscular strength
definition of, **55**–56
restoring, in rehabilitation, 195–196
Musculoskeletal injury
immediate treatment of, 153–154, 249
MyFitnessPal-FoodTracker, 104
Myofascial trigger points, 221–222
Myofilaments, 57
Myositis ossificans, **217**, 282–283, 302–303
MyPlate, **90**–91, 104

N

Narcotic analgesic drugs, 396
Nasal fracture, 365–366
National Academy of Sports Medicine (NASM), 5
National Action Plan for Sports Safety, 412
National Alliance for Youth Sport (NAYS), 408–409
National Association for Sport and Physical Education (NASPE), 408
National Association of Intercollegiate Athletics, 106
National Athletic Trainers' Association, 4, 15, 17, 106, 138
National Collegiate Athletic Association (NCAA), 4, 15, 93, 106, 166, 400
National Council for Accreditation of Coaching Education (NCACE), 7, 409
National Eating Disorders Association, 104
National Federation of State High School Athletic Associations, 4, 106, 400
National Operating Committee on Standards for Athletic Equipment (NOCSAE), 105–107, 108, 110, 126
National Safety Council, 162
National Strength and Conditioning Association, 4, 5, 8
National Youth Sports Safety Foundation, 404
Natural foods, 95
Nautilus machine, 62
Neck
flexibility of, 329
muscle strains of, 333–334
preventing injuries of, 329–330
strengthening muscles of, 329
Negative (eccentric) contraction, 56, **60**–62
Negligence, **32**–34, 39
Neoprene braces with medial and lateral supports, 122
Neoprene sleeves
elbow, 123, 310
hip and groin, 287
knee, 122, 273, 274
thigh, 123, 283
Nerve injuries, 219, 334–335
Neuritis, **219**
Neurological exam, 356
Neurologist, 12
Neuroma, **235**
Neuromuscular control, 71–74
ankle, 243, 244
reestablishing, 196, 197
Neuromuscular efficiency, 56, 75
Neuropraxia, 219
Neuropsychological assessments, 357
Night splint, for plantar fasciitis, 231
Nonfeasance, **33**
Nonfixed equipment, 26
Nose
anatomy of, 365
preventing injuries of, 354
recognizing and managing injuries of, 365–366
Nosebleed, 362, 366
Nurse/nurse practitioner, 11, 16–17
Nutrient-dense foods, 91
Nutrients, 83–89
Nutrition, 83–103
antioxidants, 87
carbohydrates, 83–85, 89–90
checklist for, 102
eating disorders and, 100–102
energy production from, 89–90
fat loading in, 98
fats, 83–84, 85, 89–90
food labels, 91
gluten-free diets, 96
glycogen supercompensation in, 98
minerals, 83–84, 87, 88
MyPlate guideline for, 90–91, 104
popular eating and drinking practices in, 94–98
postevent, 97
preevent, 96–97
proteins, 83–84, 85, 89–90
recommendations for, 84, 90–91
supplements, 91–94
vitamins, 83–87
water, 83–84, 87–89
Nutrition Facts label, 91
Nutritionists, 13
Nystagmus, 356

O

Oblique fractures, 213, 214
Observation, in injury assessment, 152
Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), 18, 28, 164, 166, 167–170
Off-field assessment, 152
Off-season conditioning, 45
Off-the-shelf protective equipment, 107
Olecranon bursitis, 221, 309
Olecranon process, 306–307
Oligomenorrhea, 388, 389
Olympic athletes, caffeine and, 95
On-field injury inspection, 145, 150–152
Open fracture, **213**
Open-kinetic chain exercises, 68
Ophthalmologist, 12
Opioid drugs, 399
Optimal loading, 154
Oral contraceptives, 390
Orbital fractures, 369
Orbital hematoma, 369
Organic foods, 95
Organized sports
children and, 404
sports medicine in, 3–4
Orthopedic screening, 21
Orthopedist, 11
Orthotics, 120–121, **228**–229, 232
Orthotists/prosthetists, 12
Osgood–Schlatter disease, 275, 409
Osteitis pubis, 289, 352
Osteoarthritis, **221**
Osteoblasts, **213**
Osteochondritis dissecans, elbow, 311
Osteoclasts, **215**
Osteopath, 12
Osteoporosis, **92**, 389
Otitis externa, 368
Otitis media, 368
Overhead activities, 292, 293
Overload, 46, 59, 63, 79
Overtraining, 57, 204–205
Overuse injuries, 219–221, 309
Oxycodone (OxyContin), 400
Oxygen, aerobic capacity and, 76–77

P

Pads
hip and buttock, 116, 117
shoulder, 114–116
thigh and upper-leg, 122–123
Pain
controlling, 193–194
playing through, 208
referred, 345
Palpation, 151, 152
abdomen, 344–345
ankle, 245
elbow, 308
foot, 230
forearm, 313–314
knee, 263
lower leg, 251
shoulder complex, 297
skull, 356
spine, 331
thigh, hip, groin, and pelvis, 280
thorax, 344–345
wrist, hand, and fingers, 317
Parents
emergency notification of, 144
FERPA rights of, 24
safety checklist for, 412
sports medicine and, 11
Paresthesia, 311
Passive range of motion, 49
Passive stretching, 47
Patella
anatomy of, 258, 259
chondromalacia of, 273
fracture of, 272
subluxation or dislocation of, 272–273
Patellar strap or brace, 275
Patellar tendinosis, 273–274
Patellar tracking, 273
Patellofemoral pain syndrome, 272–276
Pathogens, 376
See also Bloodborne pathogens
Pectineus, 278, 279
Pediatrician, 12
Pelvic fractures, 155, 289
Pelvis
anatomy of, 277–279
assessing injuries of, 278–281
history of injuries, 280
observation of injuries, 280
palpation of, 280
preventing injuries of, 281
recognizing and managing injuries of, 288–289
Performance-enhancing drugs, 395–399
Periodization, **44**–46
Periodontitis, 363
Periosteum, 212–213
Personal fitness trainers, 5–6
certification of, 8
clarifying role of, 8
growth of industry, 5–6
qualifications of, 5
Personal information card, 24
Personal liability insurance, 39
Personal protective equipment, for health care personnel, 167–168
Pes planus, **233**–234
Petit mal seizures, 385. See also Epilepsy
Phagocytic cells, 222
Phalanges
foot, 226, 227, 234
hand, 315, 322
Pharyngitis, 379
Phases of injury process, 203
Phencyclidine (PCP), 400
Photochromic lenses, 113
Physiatrist, 12
Physical dependence, 399

Physical examination, preparticipation, 20–23
Physical maturity, matching young athletes by, 405–406
Physical therapists, 12
Physicians
  specializations of, 11–12
  team, 9–11
Physicians' assistants, 12
Pia mater, 355
Pinched nerve (brachial plexus injury), 334–335
Pink eye, 371
Piriformis syndrome, 286
Pitcher's elbow (medial epicondylitis), 308, 309, 310–311
Plantar aponeurosis, 226, 228
Plantar fascia, 226, 228
Plantar fasciitis, 189, 231–232
Plantar wart, 375–376
Play, criteria for return to, 199–20
Plica, knee, 269–270
Plyometric exercise, 60, **69**–71, 195–196
Pneumothorax, 346–347
Podiatrist, 12
Point of service plan, 38
Point tenderness, 230
POLICE technique (protection, optimal loading, ice, compression, and elevation), **153**–15
  ankle sprains, 249
  contusions of the upper arm, 304
  fractures of the metatarsals, 232
  hip sprains, 285
  lateral epicondylitis, 310
  mallet finger, 320
  MCL sprain, 265
  meniscus injuries, 269
  reducing pain, 193
  rib contusions, 345
  rotator cuff strains, 303
  shoulder impingement syndrome, 302
  sternoclavicular sprain, 299
Polymenorrhea, 389
Pons, 355
Portable hand-held lightning detector, 136–137
Positive (concentric) contraction, 56, **60**–62
Postconcussion syndrome, 360
Posterior cruciate ligament (PCL), 259–260, 268
Posterior drawer test, knee, 264
Postevent meal, 97
Postseason conditioning, 45
Postural stability, 196–197
Posture, 330, 331, 332
Potassium, 87–89, 129
Power, 55–57
  definition of, **56**
  restoring, in rehabilitation, 195–196
Power phase, of conditioning, 45
PPOs, 38
Prediabetes, 385
Predictors of injury, 203–205
Preevent nutrition, 96–97
Preferred provider organizations (PPOs), 38
Pregnancy, exercise during, 390
Preparatory period, 45
Preparticipation health examinations, 20–23
Preparticipation physical exam (PPE), 412
Prepatellar bursitis, 221, 270–271
Prescription drugs, abused, 399–400
Preseason conditioning, 45
Pressure points, 148, 149
Preterm labor, 390
Preterm rupture of membranes, 390
Prevention of injuries
  abdomen and thorax, 343
  ankle and lower leg, 243–245
  athletic trainer's role in, 8–9
  checklist for, 13
  dental, 363
  elbow, 308–309
  fitness training for, 44–82
  foot, 228–229
  forearm, 308–309
  head and face, 354
  knee, 261
  protective equipment for, 105–126
  shoulder, 294–296
  spinal, 329–330
  stretching and, 47
  thigh, hip, groin, and pelvis, 281
  thorax and abdomen, 343
  throat, 354
  in weight training, 330
  wrist, 308–309
  in young athletes, 410–413
Prewrap, 181–182
Primary survey, 145–150
Privacy, 11
Product liability, 36
Professional responsibilities, athletic trainer, 9
Program for Athletic Coaches Education (PACE), 409
Progress note, 24
Progression, in conditioning, 46
Progressive resistance exercise, 60–68
  amount of weight selected for, 62–63
  equipment for, 60–61
  for rehabilitation, 195
  techniques of, 62–68
  terminology in, 62
Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF), **51**–52
Prosthetists, 12
Protection, of musculoskeletal injury, 153–154, 193, 249
Protective equipment, 105–126
  ankle, 122
  breast (sports bras), 115, 117
  checklist for, 124
  ear, 113
  elbow, wrist, and hand, 123, 308–309
  eye, 113–114
  face, 111–114
  footwear, 118–121
  groin, 118
  head (helmets), 107–111
  hips and buttocks, 116, 117
  knee, 122–123
  laryngotracheal (throat), 112
  legal concerns in using, 106–107
  lower-extremity, 118–123
  mouth, 112–113
  off-the-shelf versus custom, 107
  reconditioning and recertification of, 105–107
  rib, 116
  safety standards for, 105–106
  shin and lower-leg, 122, 123
  shoulder (shoulder pads), 114–116
  spinal, 329
  thigh and upper-leg, 122–123
  trunk and thorax, 114–118, 343
  for young athletes, 412
Protective Eyewear for Young Athletes, 126
Protein supplements, 93
Proteins, 83–84, 85, 89–90
Psychiatrist, 12
Psychological concerns, young athletes, 407–408
Psychological dependence, 399
Psychological response to injury, 202–209
  goal setting and, 205
  phases of injury process and, 203
  referring athlete for help with, 208–209
  severity of injury and, 202–203
  social support and, 205–208
Psychologists, 12
Psychrometer, **128**–129
Pubertal Development Scale (PDS), 21
Pulp of tooth, 363
Pulse, 150–151
Pump bump, 230–231
Puncture wounds, 170, 172
Pupils, assessment of, 150–151, 356
Purchasing systems, 26
Push-ups, 71

Q

Quadriceps extensions, 66
Quadriceps muscle group
  anatomy of, 260, 277–280
  contusions of, 217, 281–283
  recognizing and managing injuries of, 281–284
  strains of, 283
  stretching and strengthening of, 66, 281

R

Raccoon eyes, 357
Racquetball elbow (medial epicondylitis), 308, 309, 310–311
Radial (lateral) collateral ligament, 306–307, 316
Radiation, 128
Radioulnar joints, 306, 313
Radius
  anatomy of, 306–307, 312, 315
  fractures of, 314–315
Range of motion
  active and passive, 49
  restoring full range of, 194
Rapid form vacuum immobilizer, 155
Rating of perceived exertion (RPE), 78–79
Reactive phases, in injury process, 203
Reasonable care standard, 32–34
Recertification of equipment, 105–107
Reconditioned equipment, 105–107
Record keeping, 20–26
Recovery period, 62, 79
Recreation and parks directors, 6
Recreation leaders, 6
Recreation supervisors, 6
Recreational drug abuse, 399–400
Recreational specialists, 6
Recreational sports, sports medicine in, 3–4
Recreational therapist, 6
Referees, 13
Referred pain, 345
Regeneration, nerve, 219
Rehabilitation, 192–201
  athletic trainer's role in, 9, 192
  cardiorespiratory fitness in, 197
  components and goals of, 193–198
  elbow, 310
  functional progressions in, 197–198
  functional testing in, 198
  goal setting and motivation in, 205
  knee, 261
  legal issues in, 192
  philosophy of, 192–193
  psychological response of athlete during, 202–209
  reestablishing core stability in, 194–195
  reestablishing neuromuscular control in, 196, 197
  regaining balance in, 196–197
  restoring full range of motion in, 194
  restoring muscular strength, endurance, and power in, 195–196
  return to activity in, 199–200, 207–208
  sprains, 217
  strains, 218
  therapeutic modalities in, 198–199
Reimbursement, 38–39
Repetitions, 62–63, 79
Repetitions maximum (RM), 62
Reproductive system, female, 388–390
Resistance training, 59–75
  amount of weight selected for, 62–63
  basic principle of, 59

bodyweight exercise in, 60, 71–73
circuit training in, 60, 68–69
exercise equipments, 61
for female athletes, 74–75
functional strength training in, 60, 71–74
isokinetic exercise in, 60, 68, 195–196
isometric exercise in, 59–60, 195
plyometric exercise in, 60, 69–71, 195–196
progressive resistance exercise in, 60–68, 195
for rehabilitation, 195–196
techniques in, 59, 60, 62–68
for young athletes, 406–407
Respiration, assessment of, 150
Respiratory conditions, 378–382
Retinal detachment, 370–371
Retrocalcaneal bursitis, 230–231
Return to play
concussion and, 359–360
decisions on, 208
full, criteria for, 199–200
functional progressions for, 197–198
helping athlete with, 207–208
Reverse leg lifts, 66
Rhinitis, **380**
Rib(s)
anatomy of, 341–342
protective equipment for, 116, 117, 343
Rib belt, 343
Rib brace, 346
Rib contusions, 345
Rib fractures, 345–346
Ringworm, 377–378
Risk management plan, developing, 19–20
Ritalin, 399–400
Romberg test, modified, 356, 357
Root of tooth, 363
Rotational traction, 261
Rotator cuff, 293–294, 294, 302–303
Rubella, 387
Rubeola, 387
Runner's knee, 271–272
Runner's nipples, 348
Running, return to after injury, 197
Ruptured spleen, 350

S

Sacral compression, 332
Sacral distraction, 332
Sacral nerves, 329
Sacroiliac joint, 332, 338–339
Sacroiliac sprain, 338–339
Sacrum, anatomy of, 277, 278, 325–327
Safety, conditioning, 46
Safety in young athletes. *See also* Prevention of injuries; Protective equipment
defective equipment and, 412
National Action Plan for Sports Safety, 412
sports parents checklists, 412
tips, 411
Safety standards, 105–106
SAID principle, **46**
St. John's wort, 94
"Save a Tooth" kit, 365
Saw palmetto, 94
Scalp injuries, 362
Scaphoid fracture, 319
Scapula
anatomy of, 292, 293
winged, 296, 297
Scapulothoracic joint, 292–293
Scar formation, 222–223
Sciatic nerve, 332
Sciatica, 286, 336–337
Scoliosis, 296, 332
Scrotal/testicular contusion, 351–352
Seasonal allergies, 380
Seasons, conditioning, 44–46
Seated push-ups, 68
Second impact syndrome, 360–361
Second metatarsal stress fractures, 232–233
Second Skin by Spenco, 236
Secondary insurance, **36**–37
Secondary School Student Athletes' Bill of Rights, 17–18, 412
Secondary schools
budgets of, 26–27
certified athletic trainer for, 17–18
health care facility planning for, 27–29
Secondary survey, 145, 150–152
Seizure disorders, 385–386
Senna, 94
Sensory changes, 150
Septal hematoma (deviated septum), 366
Serial 7s, as cognitive test, 356–357
Set, 62–63, 79
Severity classification of injury, 202–203
Sever's disease, **230**, 409
Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), 390–391
Shank, of shoe, 118, 119
Shark tape cutter, 183
Sharps, 169
Shin contusions, 253–254
Shin guards, 121, 122
Shin splints, **252**–253
Shock, 149–150
Shoe(s), 118–121
blisters and, 236
bunions and, 235
calluses and, 236
cleated shoe, 120
comparison of types, 119
corns and, 236–237
fitting of, 119–120
ingrown toenails and, 238
injury prevention and, 228–229, 243–244, 261
knee injuries and, 261
Morton's neuroma and, 235
parts of, 118–119
price of, 120
selection of, 118–119
turf toe and, 236
Shoe uppers, 118, 119
Shoulder braces, 301, 302
Shoulder complex, 292–305
anatomy of, 292–295
assessing injuries of, 296–298
history of injuries, 296
observation of injuries, 296
overhead activities and, 292, 293
palpation of, 297
preventing injuries of, 294–296
recognizing and managing injuries of, 298–304
special tests for, 297–298
strengthening exercises for, 63–68
throwing technique and, 295–296
Shoulder dislocation, 301
Shoulder extension test, 49–50
Shoulder fractures, 155, 298–299
Shoulder immobilizer, 298–299
Shoulder impingement syndrome, 301–302
Shoulder impingement tests, 297
Shoulder medial rotation, 64
Shoulder pads, 114–116
Shoulder rotation, 63
Shoulder sling, 155
Shoulder spica, 178–179
Shoulder towel stretch exercise, 53
Sickle-cell anemia, 384
Simple carbohydrates, 84
Single leg bridge, 194
Sinusitis, 379
Sit and reach test, 49
Sitting tucks, 72
Skeletal muscle, 56–57
atrophy of, 56
contractions of, 56, 60–62, 194
in female athlete, 74–75
hypertrophy of, 56, 57
Skin, sun exposure and, 135–136
Skin cancer, 135
Skin color, 150
Skin-fold measurement, 99
Skin infections, 374–378
Skin preparation, for taping, 180–182
Skin wounds
caring for, 170–172
infection of, 171
types of, 170
Skull
anatomy of, 354–355
palpation of, 356
Skull fracture, 357
Slide board, 68
Slipped capital femoral epiphysis, 288
Slow-reversal-hold-relax techniques, 51, 52
Slow-twitch fibers, 56–57
Smith's fracture, 315
Soccer
flexibility in, 48
goalie gloves, 123, 124
shin guards, 121, 122
Social support, for injured athlete, 205–208
Socks, 118
Sodium, 87–89, 129, 130, 132
Soft corn, 237
Softball, helmets, 110
Solar plexus, blow to, 349
Sole, of shoe, 118, 119, 120
Sore throat, 379
Soreness, muscle, 218–219
Sovereign immunity, **34**
Spasm, 218
Spasticity, 218
Special tests, 152
Specialists, 11–12
Specialization in young athletes, 408
Specificity, in conditioning, 46
Spica wrap
ankle and foot, 176–177
defined, **176**
hip, 178
shoulder, 178–179
Spinal cord, anatomy of, 328–329
Spinal injury
assessing, 331–332
history of, 331
moving and transported athlete with suspected, 156–157
observation of, 331
preventing, 329–330
recognizing and managing, 333–339
special tests for, 331–332
stabilization of, 156
Spinal nerves, 328–329
Spine, 325–340
anatomy of, 325–329
palpation of, 331
Spine board, 156–157
Spiral fractures, 213, 214
Spiral wrap, 177
Spleen, 342–343, 350
Splinting
air splint, 155
emergency, 154–155
lower extremity, 155
mallet finger, 321
for plantar fasciitis, 231
principles of, 155
rapid form vacuum immobilizer, 155
spine and pelvis, 155
upper extremity, 155

Spondylolisthesis, 337–338, 410
Spondylolysis, 337–338, 410
Sport Concussion Assessment Tool 5 (SCAT5), 357
Sporting Goods Manufacturers Association, 106
Sports bras, 115, 117
Sports chiropractors, 12
Sports drinks, 87, 132
Sports hernia, 348
Sports Lawyers Journal, 41
Sports medicine, 2–15
  athletic administrator and, 6
  athletic trainers and, 7–9
  clinical application of, 3
  coach and, 6–7
  definition of, 3
  fitness professionals on team, 4–6
  injury management checklist for, 13
  need for, 2
  organizations, 3, 4
  organized versus recreational sports, 3–4
  recreation specialists and, 6
  relationship with athlete in, 10–11
  relationship with family in, 11
  specialties in, 3
  support personnel in, 11–13
  team physician and, 9–10
Sports parents safety checklist, 412
Sports physical therapists, 12
Sports psychologists, 12
Sports safety tips, young athletes, 411
Sprains
  acromioclavicular, 300–301
  ankle, 246–248
  cervical, 334
  collateral ligament of finger, 322
  definition of, **216**
  elbow, 309–310
  grades of, 216–217
  great toe (turf toe), 235–236
  hip, 284–285
  knee, 265–268
  ligament, 216–217
  lumbar, 336
  rehabilitation in, 217
  sacroiliac, 338–339
  sternoclavicular, 299–300
  ulnar collateral ligament, 321–322
  wrist, 316–318
Stability ball, 194
Stability ball pike-ups, 194
Staleness, **57**, 204
Standard of reasonable care, **32**–34
Staphylococcus, 376
Staphylococcus aureus, methicillin-resistant (MRSA), 18, 171, 377
State of consciousness, 150
Static stretching, **51**–52
Statute of limitations, **34**
Sterile dressings, 171
Sternoclavicular joint, 292–293, 298, 299–300
Steroids, anabolic, 397–398
Stimulants
  ADHD medications, 399–400
  performance-enhancing, 395–396
Stinger, 219, 334–335
Stitch in side, 349–350
Stomach, preventing injuries to, 343
Storage facilities, 29
Storm safety, 136–137
Straight leg raises, 280–281, 332
Strains, 217–218
  abdominal, 348
  Achilles tendon, 218
  breast, 348
  definition of, **218**
  forearm, 314
  grades of, 218
  groin, 286–287
  hamstring, 218, 283–284
  longitudinal arch, 233–234
  low back, 335–336
  metatarsal arch, 233
  neck, 333–334
  quadriceps muscle, 283
  rehabilitation in, 218
  rotator cuff, 302–303
  upper back, 333–334
Strength, 55–57
  abdominal, 330
  biomechanical factors in, 56
  core, 330
  factors determining, 56–57
  fast-twitch versus slow-twitch muscle fibers and, 56–57
  female athlete, 74–75
  flexibility and, 55
  level of physical activity and, 57
  muscle fiber number and, 56
  muscle size and, 56
  neuromuscular efficiency and, 56
  overload and, 46, 59, 63, 79
  overtraining and, 57
  physiological changes and, 57
  restoring, in rehabilitation, 195–196
  in young athletes, 406–407
Strength and conditioning coach, 4–5, 8, 12
Strength/body weight ratio, 75
Strength phase, of conditioning, 45
Strength training, youth, 40
Strengthening programs
  checklist for, 80
  core stabilization in, 57–59
  for female athletes, 74–75
  for rehabilitation, 195–196
  resistance training in, 59–75
  techniques in, 59, 60
  for young athletes, 406–407
Streptococcus, 376
Stress
  in conditioning, 46
  injury risk with, 204
  recognizing and dealing with, 204, 207
  in young athletes, 407–408
Stress fractures, **215**
  pelvic, 289
  second metatarsal, 232–233
  tibial and fibular, 252
Stretch-shortening cycles (SSCs), 48
Stretcher carrying, 157–158
Stretching
  ballistic, 50
  benefits of, 48
  dynamic, 50–52
  exercises for, 52–55
  guidelines and precautions for, 50
  injury prevention and, 47
  passive, 47
  PNF, 51–52
  practical applications of, 51–52
  static, 51–52
  techniques of, 50–52
  warm-up and, 47
  by young athletes, 406
Subacromial bursitis, 220–221, 302
Subdural hematoma, 361
Subluxations, **215**–216
  patella, 272–273
  tooth, 364–365
Subscapularis muscle, 293–294, 302–303
Substance abuse, 395–402
  banned drugs, 400
  illegal drugs, 399
  performance-enhancing, 395–399
  prescription drugs, 399–400
  recreational, 399–400
  testing for, 400
Subtalar joint, 241, 242
Subungual hematoma, 238, 322–323
Sudden cardiac arrest (SCA), 405
Sudden death syndrome, 347–348
Sun exposure, 135–136
Sun protection factor (SPF), 135
Sunscreens, 135–136
SuperTracker, 104
Supplements, dietary; *See* Dietary supplements
Supplies
  definition of, 26
  for handling blood/bodily fluids, 168–169
  inventory of, 25–26
  lists of recommended, 28
  ordering of, 26
  for taping, 182
Support bras, 115, 117, 348
Support personnel, 11–13
Supraspinatus muscle, 293–294, 297, 302–303
Surgical tubing (Theraband), 61
Sutures, for wounds, 171
Sutures, of skull, 354
Sweat glands, 128
Sweating, 87–89, 128, 129
Swelling
  immediate control of, 193, 249
  POLICE technique for, 153–154, 192
Swimmer's ear, 368
Synovial fluid, 216, 220–221
Synovial joint, 216
Synovial membrane, 216
Syphilis, 390–391

T

Tackling technique, 329–330
Tailbone; *See* Coccyx
Talar tilt test, 245, 246
Talocrural joint; *See* Ankle
Tanner stages, 21, 405–406
Tape adherent spray, 181
Tape grade, 180
Tape remover, 183
Taping, 180–189
  Achilles tendon, 185–186
  advantages and disadvantages of, 175
  ankle, 184–185, 244
  arch, 184–185
  checklists, 189–190
  common techniques of, 183–189
  elastic adhesive tape for, 180
  elbow, 187
  facility area for, 28
  fingers, 188–189
  foam or gauze pads for, 181–182
  kinesio, 189
  knee, 186–187
  nonelastic white adhesive tape for, 180
  objectives of, 175
  preparation for, 180–182
  proper technique for, 182
  removing tape in, 182–183
  supplies for, 182
  tearing tape for, 182
  thumb, 188
  toe, 184, 236
  training and experience in, 175
  waterproof tape for, 180
  wrist, 187–188
Target heart rate, 78
Tarsal bones, 226, 227
Team involvement, of injured athlete, 207
Team physician, 9–11
Tendinitis, 219–220
  Achilles tendon, 254–255
  ankle, 250–251
  wrist, 318

Tendinopathy, 219–220
Tendinosis, 219–220
  Achilles tendon, 254–255
  ankle, 250–251
  patellar, 274–275
Tendons
  definition of, **219**
  elasticity of, 48
Tennis elbow (lateral epicondylitis), 308, 309, 310
Tenodesis strap or brace, patellar, 275
Tenosynovitis, **220**, 302
Tension pneumothorax, 346–347
Terminal knee extensions, 68
Testicular cancer, 387–388
Testicular contusion, 351–352
Testosterone, 74
Tetanus, 171
Theraband, 61
Therapeutic exercise, 192
Therapeutic intervention, athletic trainer, 9
Therapeutic use exemption (TUE), 400
Thigh
  anatomy of, 277–280
  assessing injuries of, 278–281
  history of injuries, 280
  observation of injuries, 280
  palpation of, 280
  preventing injuries of, 281
  protective equipment for, 122–123
  recognizing and managing injuries of, 281–284
Third-party payers, 38
Thomas test, 280
Thompson test, 251
Thoracic nerves, 329
Thoracic spine, anatomy of, 326
Thorax, 341–348
  anatomy of, 341–342
  assessing injuries of, 343–345
  history of injuries, 344
  observation of injuries, 344
  palpation of, 344–345
  preventing injuries of, 343
  protective equipment for, 114–118, 343
  recognizing and managing injuries of, 345–348
Throat
  contusions of, 371
  preventing injuries of, 354
  protective equipment for, 112
  sore, 379
Throwing
  elbow injuries from, 309–311
  proper technique of, 295–296
  shoulder injuries from, 292, 294–296
Thumb
  dislocation of, 322
  taping of, 188
Thunderstorms, 136–137
Tibia, anatomy of, 241, 242, 258, 259
Tibial fractures, 251–252
"Time out," athletic event, 143
Tinea, 377
Tinea cruris, 377–378
Tinea pedis, 378, 377
Toe(s)
  fractures and dislocations of, 234
  taping of, 184, 236
  turf, 235–236
Toe box, 118–119
Toe raises, 67
Toenails
  blood under, 238
  ingrown, 237–238
"Tommy John" surgery, 310
Tonsillitis, 379
Tooth
  anatomy of, 363
  fractures of, 364
  subluxation, luxation, and avulsion of, 364–365
Torticollis, acute, 334
Torts, **33**
Toxic effects, 92
Traction, shoe, 261
Trainer, versus athletic trainer, 8
Training distance, 79
Training period, 79
The Training Room, 126
Training time, 79
Trans fat in food label, 91
Transition period, 45
Translational traction, 261
Transporting injured athlete, 155–160
Transverse arch, 226, 227
Transverse fractures, 213, 214
Traumatic asphyxia, 346
Traumatic brain injury
  assessing, 355–357
  concussion, 357–360
  Graded Symptoms Checklist for, 359
  recognizing and managing, 357–360
  return to play after, 359–360
  second impact syndrome in, 360–361
  sideline procedures for, 359–360
  special tests for, 356–357
Traumatic (acute) injuries
  critical management of, 153
  definition of, 212
  recognizing, 212–219
Treatment, consent form for minors, 144–145
Treatment log, 24
Triceps brachii muscle, 306–307
Triceps extensions, 65, 72
Trichomoniasis, 391
Trigger point, **48**, **221**
Trunk
  protective equipment for, 114–118
Trunk extension test, 49
Trunk rotation, 72
Trunk twister exercise, 54
Turf toe, 235–236
2015–2020 Dietary Guidelines for Americans, MyPlate and, 90, 91
Tympanic membrane rupture, 367–368
Type 1 diabetes, 385
Type 2 diabetes, 385

U

Ulna, 306–307, 312, 314, 315
Ulnar collateral ligament, 306–307, 316, 321–322
Ulnar nerve injuries, 311
Ultraviolet radiation (UVR), 135
Unconscious athlete, 145, 356, 358
Uniforms, environmental temperature and, 133
United States Anti-Doping Agency (USADA), 400
United States Olympic Committee (USOC), 165, 408
United States Sports Academy Certification Program in Sports Coaching, 409
Universal precautions, 148, 166–169
Unsupervised play, 404
Upper arm contusions, 302–303
Upper back strains, 333–334
Upper extremity
  protective equipment for, 123
  splinting of, 155
Upper leg, protective equipment for, 122–123
Upper-limb fractures, splinting, 155
Urinary bladder
  anatomy of, 342–343
  injury to, 351
  protection of, 343
Urticaria, **380**
U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission, 106
U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), food label and, 91

V

Valerian, 94
Valgus stress test, 263–264
Valsalva effect, 60
Variable resistance, **62**
Varicella, 387
Varus stress test, 263–264
Vegetarianism, 95
Velcro straps, 155
Venous blood, 148
Verrucae warts, 375–376
Vertebrae, 325–327
Vertebral fracture/dislocation, lumbar, 335
Viral infections
  contagious diseases, 387
  sexually transmitted, 390–391
  skin, 374–376
Visual inspection, 151–152
Vital signs, 150–151
Vitamin supplements, 92
Vitamins, 83–87
Volar plate, 316
Volleyball, throwing technique in, 295–296
Vomiting, 383
Vulvar contusion, 352

W

Warm-up, 46–47, 294, 406
  dynamic, 47
muscle temperature and, 47Warts
  genital, 391
  verrucae, 375–376
Water, as nutrient, 83–84, 87–89
Water polo, ear guards, 113
Water-soluble vitamins, 85–87
Weak core, 58
Weakness of movement, 150
Weight belts, 330
Weight control, 99–100
Weight gain, 100
Weight loss, 99–100
Weight machines, 60–62, 68, 194
Weight records, 133
Weight training
  amount of weight selected for, 62
  conditioning, 45
  for female athletes, 74–75
  hypertrophy in, 57
  preventing injuries in, 330
  progressive resistance, 60–68
  for rehabilitation, 194
Wellness, athletic trainer and, 8–9
Wet area, 28
Wet bulb globe temperature (WBGT), 128–129
Wheat-related sensitivities, 96
Whiplash, 334
White adhesive tape, 179
Williams flexion exercise, 53
Wind chill factor, 134
"Wind knocked out," 349
Wind-up phase, of throwing, 295
Winged scapula, 296, 297
Withdrawal syndrome, 399
Wounds
  caring for, 169–171
  infections of, 170
  types of, 169
Wrapping and taping, 174–190
  advantages and disadvantages of, 174
  elastic wraps, 154, 175–179
  facility area for, 28
  hard-shell pads in, 188
  objectives of, 174
  training and experience in, 174

Wrestling, headgear, 113
Wrist
  anatomy of, 315–316
  assessing injuries of, 317
  history of injuries, 316
  observation of injuries, 317
  palpation of, 317
  preventing injuries of, 308–309
  recognizing and managing injuries of, 317–320
  taping of, 186–187
Wrist and hand figure-eight wrap, 178–179
Wrist curls, 65
Wrist extensions, 65
Wrist fractures, 319
Wrist ganglion, 319–320
Wrist protection, 123
Wrist splints, 123, 124
Wrist sprain, 316–318
Wrist tendinitis, 318

Y

Yohimbe, 94
Young athletes, 403–415
  anabolic steroid use by, 397–398
  common injuries in, 409–410
  cultural trends of, 403–404
  enjoyment by, 407–408
  facts on injuries in, 404–405
  injury management checklist for, 413
  interventions for, 405
  matching by physical maturity, 405–406
  physical conditioning and training of, 406–407
  preventing injuries in, 410–412
  psychological and learning concerns for, 407–408
  qualifications for coaches of, 408
  safety checklist for, 412
  safety plan for, 413
  sports benefits for, 403
  vulnerability to injury, 405
Youth Sports Safety Alliance, 17, 412–413
Youth strength training, 407

Z

Zip-cut tape cutter, 183
Zygomatic complex (cheekbone) fracture, 363

Mc Graw Hill Education
5011333